3

TRAVELS AND DISCOVERIES
IN
NORTII AND CENTRAL AFRICA.
BEING A
JOURNAL OF AN EXPEDITION
UNDERTAKEN
UNDER TiE AUSPICES OF I.B.M.'S GOVERNMENT,
IN TUE YEARS
1849--1855.
BY
HENRY BARTH, PH.D., D.C.L.,
FELLOW OF THE ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL AND ASIATIC SOCIETIES,
&C., &C.
IN THREE VOLUMES.
VOL. III.
NEW YORK:
HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,
FRANKLIN SQUARE.
1859.

CONTENTS
OF
THE THIRD VOLUME.
CHAPTER LIII.
DEPARTURE FOR TIMBUKTU.-THE HILLY NORTHERN
PROVINCES OF I3ORNU. My Situation at the Death of Mr. Overweg.-
Pecuniary Circumstances.-Inroad of
the Tawdrek.-Take Leave of the Sheikh.-Projects.-My Servants.-The two freed
Africans.-The Mgjebri.-Encampment in Kalfluwg.-Great Cold.-Swa Bdwa.-
District of Koydm.-The old Inhabitant of Birni.-Fertile Districts. The farming
Village.-The Drain of the Komddugu.-Fractions of Tribes. Character of the
Komddugu.-Ftilbe Cattle-breeders.-Site of Ghasrdggomo. The Ruins.-The
Komddugu at Zdngiri.-Considerable Current.-Province of Manga.-Manga
Warriors.-Manga Females.-Borzgi.-The Bedde and their Komddugu.-Meeting
with Mohammed ben A'had.-Daring Theft.-Wall of Gesma.-Immense Ant-hills.-
Dondri.-Reach again Zurrfkulo .......... Page 17

CHAPTER LIV.
THE HILLY NORTHERN TERRITORY OF M6NIY6 AND ITS GOVERNOR.
Busy Scene at Nggrruwa.-Well of Berbdruw.-Notice of Auy6k.-
Cheligiwi. Natron Lake of Btine.-New and Old Bifue.-Conflagration.-Peculiar
Character of Miiniy6. -Palm-grove of Ttingur6.-View of Gtire.-Estate of
Miiniy6ma.
-Audience with Miiniy6ma.-His Character.-Slave Hunting.-Site of Gtire. Peculiar
Site of Wilshek.-Sacred Site of Gdbat.-District of Keldno.-The Natron Lake or
A'bye.-Lakes of Badamini.-Plan of the Oasis of Badamini.
-Varied Vegetation.-Fresh Lake and Natron Lake.-Survey of the Lake. Governor
of Badamilni.-Mfirriya, a favored Locality.-Character of Zinder. Ground-plan of
Zinder. -Importance of the Town.-Pecuniary Supplies ...... 43

CHAPTER LV.
DEPARTURE FROM ZINDR.-THE BORDER REGION BETWEEN THE
136RNU AND THE
FULFULDE EMPIRES.-SECOND STAY IN KATSENA.
Line of Route.-Highway Robbers less to be feared than rapacious Governors. An
old Acquaintance.-Unusual Mode of drawing Water.-Conspicuous Valley, with
dense Grove of Ddm Palms.-Gaz6wa again.-The Ex-governor and rebel Chief
Sadiku.-Night's March.-Arrival before Katsena. -Interview with the Governor.-
The Ghaladima of S6koto.-New Stores laid in in KAtsena.-The Fiki 'Abd e'
Rahmn.-His Arguments in favor of Polygamy. Unforeseen Difficulty. -Conduct of
the Governor of Katsena ...................................................... 76

CHAPTER LVI.
JOURNEY FROM KATSENA TO SOKOTO.
Setting out from Katsena.-The Dor6wa-tree. -Tobacco and Yams.-Great De-
it occurs on account of hostile Army.-Kiflkadd.-K-iray6.-Expeditionary Corps. Kdreffi
and its Fortifications.-An agreeable Incident.-Unsafe District.-Town of Zeka.-
-State of Zinfara.-Trade with Dod6wa Cakes.-Ddchi.-Market of Badargwa.-The
Zinfarawa and G6beriwa.-Tribute of K6tsena.-First Rifdu.-Sansanne 'Aisa.-

viii CONTENTS.
Night's March through the Wilderness of Gandumi.-Arrival in Ggwasd.-First Meeting with 'Aliyu.-Kind Reception.-Presents, how received.-Letter of Franchise.-Arrival at Wurn6 ....................................... Page 88

CHAPTER LVII.
RESIDENCE IN WURNO.

CHAPTER LVIII.
STATE OF INSECURITY ALONG THE MOST FREQUENTED HIGH ROAD.-GANDO.

CHAPTER LIX.
THE PROVINCE OF KEBBI AND ITS EIVER.-THE VALLEY OF F6GIIA.-REACH THE NIGER.

CHAPTER LX.
THE HILLY COUNTRY OF GURMA.
Leave Say.-Low Situation.-Sand-wind and heavy Thunder-storm.-Town of
CONTENTS.
CHAPTER LXI.
PROVINCE OF LIBTAKO.-SOUTHEASTERN LIMIT OF THE RANGE OF THE COMMERCE OF TIMB6KTU.
CHAPTER LXII.
UNSETTLED PROVINCES OBSTRUCTED BY NATURE AND INFESTED BY MAN.-ARIBINDA.-HOMBORI.
CHAPTER LXIII.
IM6SHAGH OR TAWREK ENCAMPMENTS SOUTH OF THE NIGER.- LAKES AND BACKWATERS OF THE GREAT RIVER.
CHAPTER' LXIV.
The NETWORK OF CREEKS, BACKWATERS, AND LAKES BELONGING TO THE NIGER.SARAYIMO.-NAVIGATION TO KABARA.
Creek of Bmbara. -Character of Bimbara.-Great Heat.-Indiscreet Inquiries.Lake Nydngay.-Character of Country.-Somki's Camp.-Mohammed Bonydmi.-Town of Sarayimo.-Various Performances.-Embar on the Creek.Character of Creek.-
Good Fish.- Very winding Course.- Wide open Branch. Animated Scenery.- Town of Bangy.- Island of Koré.- Sanygre.- Enter the principal Branch of Niger.- Majestic Scenery ........................................ 249

CONTENTS.
CHAPTER LXV.
ARRIVAL AT KABARA.- ENTRANCE INTO TIMBUKTU.
Tisakal.- Kor6me.- Large Number of Boats.- Branch of Kor6me.- Arrival at Kdbara.- Description of Kibara.- The Inspector of the Harbor.- Unwelcome Visitors.- Interview with Sidi A'lawte. - Approach to Timbdktu.- Momentous Meeting.- Entrance into Timbiktu ........................................ Page 269

CHAPTER LXVI.
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY AND TIMBUKTU.
A’hmed Bibi, the Historian.- His Authority.- Origin of Timbiktu.- Form of Name.- Sonni 'Ali.- Hji Mohammed A’ski.- Condition of Songhay Empire.- List of Provinces.- Power of the Governors.- Despotism.- Heir Apparent.- Political Condition of Songhay.- Intercourse with Egypt.- Commerce.- Army.- The Rum6.- Political Situation of Timbiktu.- Latest Events ...... 281

CHAPTER LXVII.
FIRST MONTH OF RESIDENCE IN TIMB6KTU.

CHAPTER LXVIII.
FIRST RESIDENCE IN THE DESEET.- POLITICAL COMBINATIONS.- GREAT MOSQUE.- GROUND-PLAN OF THE TOWN.

CHAPTER LXIX.
POLITICAL STATE OF THE COUNTRY.- DANGEROUS CRISIS.
Interruption of Caravan Trade.- The Tijakint.- Position of the Filbe in relation to the Berber Tribes.- Dangerous Situation.- Officer sent from Hamda-All- bi to catch me.- Host repulsed.- Letter from Hamda- Allahi.- Interview with the Chief of the Tademdkket.- Knowledge is Power.- Presents.- Large Troop of Bdrabish Horsemen.- Letter and News from Europe.- Hostile Gathering. Leave Town again.- An Embassy.- Return to Town.- A'wb's Account of Mungo Park.- Letter of Franchise.- Momentous Death of the Chief of the Brabish, 'Ali Weled 'Abdda.- Out
to the Camp.-Chanting in the Desert. Christian and Mohammedan Principles.- The
Inundation.-Stream of running Water in the Desert.-State of Trade.- Small
Tdjakdnt Caravan.-Close of the Year

CONTENTS.
CHAPTER LXX.
BEGINNING OF THE NEW YEAR.-ANOMALOUS RISING OF THE NIGER.-
COMMERCIAL RELATIONS OF TIMBUKTU.
Cheering Prospects at the Beginning of the Year.-Material Existence.-
Unreasonable Dispute about a Point of religious Controversy.- Embarrassing
Circumstances.- Anomalous Rising of the River.- The Phenomenon explained.-
High State of the Waters.- Machinations of the Merchants from Morocco.-
Mysterious Attack of Sickness.- Rainy Days in January.- Departure put off.- Demon
Principle of the Mohammedans.- Small Loan.- Commercial Relations.-
Manufactures limited.- Leather Work.- Specimens.- No Weaving.- Foreign
Commerce.- Gold.- Gold and Salt.- Species and Prices of Salt.- Salt and Giro Nuts.-
Points in the Trade of Gdro Nuts.- Cotton Manufactures in former Times.
- Provisions.- Caravans from the North.- Exaggerated Accounts.- Articles of
European Commerce.- Important Position of Timbiiktu .............. Page 347
CHAPTER LXXI.
DIARY CONTINUED.
My Informants.- Continued Disappointment.- Family Reason of Delay.- Leave
again for the Tents.- Merits of the Prophets.- Boks sent out to Central Africa.
- Arrival of Sidi Mohammed.- Hamimddi.- Family Concerns.- Another Arrival from
Ghadimes.- Unlucky Fate of a Parcel.- The Waters subside.- Indications of a
political Storm.- Arrival of another Officer from Hamda- Alldhii.- Protest of the
Brothers.- A sleepless Night.- Interesting Episode.- The Kl-iilli... 369
CHAPTER LXXII.
GREAT CRISIS.- OBLIGED TO LEAVE THE TOWN.- MILITARY
DEMONSTRATION.
The T~bu or great Army of the Awelimmiden.- Who is a Moslim ?.- Celebration
of the Sebiwa.- The Gwanin.- The Kel-hekkan.- Political Crisis.- Hasty
Proceedings.- Warlike nightly Manoeuvres.- March of the T~ibu arrested. Camp
Inconveniences.- Political Meeting at the Rdia.- Consultation of the Brothers.-
Policy of the Fillbe.- Further Difficulties.- Life in the Camp.- The Gwanfn again.-
Turbulent State of the Country.- Presents.- Intrigues.- Native Estimate of
Europeans.- General political Relations ......................... 381
CHAPTER LXXIII.
ABORTIVE ATTEMPT AT DEPARTURE FROM TIMBUKTU.
Setting out from B6se-bingo.- Tawdrek Encampments.- Amalblle.- Camp of the
K41-n- Nokiinder at Ernesse.- Hospitality of the K6l-illii.- Camp of the
Tarabandsa.- Relations of various Chiefs.- Taltlit and the Chief W6ghda.- The
Weldd Moltik.- The chivalrous W6ghdugu ...................................... 403
CHAPTER LXXIV.
RETROGRADE MOVEMENT TOWARD TIMBUKTU.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER LXXV.
FINAL AND REAL START.-CREEKS ON THE NORTHERN BANK OF THE NIGER.GHERGO.-BAMBA.

CHAPTER LXXVI.
THE DESERT.-COUNTRY ALONG THE BORDER OF THE RIVER.-GREATEST NARROWING.-SOUTHEASTERLY BEND,
A Night March through Swamps. -Terirart, northernmost Creek of the Niger."Tah6nt-n-dgghis.".-Various Personalities.-The Chief Sadiktu.-Hot Camping-ground.-A poisonous Spider.-Encampment of Sidi Ilemf.-Beginning of the rocky District.-Tin-sherifen. -The KRI e' Sdk.-Tawgrek Ladies.-The River at Tin-sherffen. -Rocks in the River.-Cry of the young Zangway.... 448

CHAPTER LXXVII.
TOSAYE, OR THE NARROWING OF THE RIVER.-BURRUII; ANCIENT RELATION TO EGYPT.-GREAT SOUTH-SOUTHEASTERLY REACH.

CHAPTER LXXVIII.
The ANCIENT CAPITAL OF SONGHAY, AND ITS NEIGHBORHOOD.
G6g6 and Timbilktu.-General Description of G6g6.-Rich Vegetation.-The Mosque.-Meeting of native Chiefs.-Khzozmaten and Hanna.-The Gd-bhio.Their Hospitality. - Encamp in Barno. - Hippopotami. - Return to G6g6. Preparations to leave G6g6.-Arrival of the Chief Thdkkefi.-His Proposal.Survey of the River.............. ....................................................... 479

CHAPTER LXXIX.
SEPARATION FROM THE SHEIKH.-CROSS THE RIVER TO THE SOUTHWESTERN SIDE.
-VARIOUS ENCAMPMENTS.-RIVER STUDDED WITH ISLANDS.-ANS6NGIIIO.

CHAPTER LXXX.
DENSER POPULATION BEGINS.
Difficulty of determining the Water-courses.-Granite Boulders.-Ay6ru and its

CONTENTS. xiii

................................................................. Page 508
CHAPTER LXXXL
SECOND RESIDENCE IN SAY.-JOURNEY THROUGH DENDINA AND KEBBI.

................................................................. 534
CHAPTER LXXXII.
SECOND STAY IN GANDO, SOKOTO, AND WURN6.
CHAPTER LXXXIII.
SECOND RESIDENCE IN KAN6, UNDER UNFAVORABLE CIRCUMSTANCES.-IARCH TO KUKA-WA.
CHAPTER LXXXIV.
LAST RESIDENCE IN KUKAWVA.-BENEFIT OF EUROPEAN SOCIETY.-
UNPLEASANT CIRCUMSTANCES.
Arrangements with Mr. Vogel.-Departure of Mr. Vogel.-Attack of Rheumatism.
-Abortive Plan of Departure from Kiikawa.-Re-enter the Town.-Arrival of a
Caravan.-News from Mr. Vogel ................................. 592
CHAPTER LXXXV.
REAL START.-SMALL PARTY.
My Camels.-Real Start.-First Day's March.-Kdnembd I-lamlets.-Ngdgimi.Small
Alarm.-Treatment of Slaves.-The Well Bedwiram and Macguire's Death.-Desert
of Tintdmma.-A'gadem.-Fatigue in the Desert.-Crystallized
CONTENTS.
Tubes.-Well of Dlbbela.-Zaw-kur6.-Caravan of Tebu.-Bilma and Kaldla.Widi
Kawr.-Dirk.-A'shentimma, its picturesque Scenery, and its Chief.Singular Use of
dried Fish.-Anay.--Iggeba.-Siggedim.-Value of Horses in the De.-rt.-Heat of the
Desert.-Tiggera-n-D-imma.-El A'hamar.-Rugged
Passages.-Arrival at Tejdrri.-Madridea.-Meet Mr. Warrington.-Entrance into
Milrzuks.-Revolution in the Regency.-Leave Milrzuks.-W6idf Zemzem.Meet Mr.
Reade at 'Ain Zdra.-Return to Europe.-Conclusion .............. 602
APPENDIX.
Page
I. Present Condition of the Province of Zinfara .................... 633
II. A few historical Facts relating to G6ber and Zinfara.-Flbe Tribes... 631 III.
Song of Sheikh 'Othm Ln ........................................................... 0 36
IV. Partition of Kebbi.-Kebbi according to its Partition between the Empire of
S6koto and that of Gando ....................................................... 637
V. PART I.-Towns and Villages of Ddndina ................................ 639
PART II.-A few Remarks on the Province of Ydur, and on those of
M guri and Zabdrm a .................................................................... 641
VI. Information with regard to the Provinces of Gurma, M6si, and Tombo. 643
VII. Pedigree of the Sheikh Sidi A'hemd el Bak6y .......................... 649
VIII. Two Poems of the Sheikh el Bakiy, wherein he satirizes the Fiilbe of
M dsina ...................................................................................... 650
Translation of the two Poems of A'hemd el Bak-y ....................... 655
IX. Chronological Table of the History of Songbay and the neighboring K ingdoms
.......................................................... 657
X. Collection of Itineraries illustrating the Western Half of the Desert, its
Districts, and its Inhabitants, and the Course of the Upper Niger ..... 683 XI. List
of the Arab or Moorish Tribes scattered over the Western Part of the Desert,
according to the Districts of natural Divisions of the Desert in which they are
settled .................................................................................. 711
XII. Sections and Families of the great Southwesterly Group of the Im6shagh or
Taw ierek ........................................................................ 719
XIII. A Vocabulary of the Temishight or T6,rkfye, such as spoken by the
Awelimmiden, with some prefatory Remarks and Notes by Professor
Newman ................ ................................. 724
XIV. El Bak6y's Letter of Recommendation, translated by Dr. Nicholson ..... 764
XV. Chief Towns and Residences of the independent Soughay between the
Niger and my Route by Yigha and Libtakn ................................. 768
XVI. Fragments of a Meteorological Register ........................................... 769
INDBX to the three Volumes .............................................................. 785

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN
THE THIRD VOLUME.
Page
View of Timbiiktu from the Terrace of the Traveler's House ..........
Frontispiece.
A'bbega and Dyrregu .................................................................
22
Bird's-eye View of Site of Birni ......................................................
30
The Koimdadugu at Zdngiri ...........................................................
34
Repairing the Wall of Gesma ...........................................................
41
Salt Lake near Brine .................................................................
47
Bdwa-Kolosso .................................................................
50
View of Gilre ........................................................................
52
Ground-plan of W dishek ...........................................................
58
Wdshek .................................................................
60
Ground-plan of Oasis of Badamiini ..............................................
66
Badamtini .................................................................
70
Ground-plan of Zinder .............................................................
74
Remarkable Fortifications of Kirrefi .............................................
93
Ground-plan of Diichi ............................................................
99
Rdidu, or elevated Sleeping Hut ...................................................
102
My Quarters in W urn6 .....................................................
118
Ground-plan of W urn6 .....................................................
121
Market of S6koto ....................................................................
133
Ground-plan of S6koto ..........................................................
135
Ground-plan of Gando ..........................................................
View of Gillumbd ................................................................. 151
Valley of F6gha ................................................................. 162
The I'sa (Niger) at Say .......................................................... 173
Architecture of Champag6re .................................................. 181
Front of Residence of Galaijo ................................................. 181
Smelting Furnaces .............................................................. 188
Ground-plan of Hut at Namantiigu ........................................... 194
View of the Interior of same Hut .............................................. 195
The Lam6rde of A'ribfnda ..................................................... 212
Ground-plan of House in Tinge .............................................. 215
View of Tinge ........................................................................ 217
Isolated Cones of H6mbori Range ........................................... 223
Native Huts and Corn-stacks .................................................. 223
View of DT ina ...................................................................... 224
Peculiar Thatch-work ........................................................... 226

xvi LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page
Songhay Village ..................................................................... 228
H6mbori Range ...................................................................... 229
Variety of Huts at I'sayd ........................................................ 230
Cliffs resembling artificial Fortification .................................... 231
Castellated Mounts ................................................................ 232
Mountains of H6mbori .......................................................... 233
Interior of Im6shagh Tent ..................................................... 237
Mounts of Ndiggera. .............................................................. 238
Flat-topped Cones .................................................................. 241
View of Bdmbara ................................................................. 245
Niger at Kor6mo ...................................................................... 268
Arrival at K-barra ................................................................. 271
Entrance into Timbdiktu ........................................................ 280
Ground-plan of my Quarters in Timbdiktu .............................. 307
Ground-plan of Timbilktu ..................................................... 324
Leather Bag .......................................................................... 357
Two Leather Cushions ........................................................... 358
A "Bdt" or E'nnefi, a small Leather Pouch, with three Pockets and Cover, for Tobacco and Tinder; a Covering for Gun ................. 359
Camp of the Sheikh el Baky ................................................... 397
A Tawdrek Camp in Motion .................................................. 419
Amalelle ............................................................................. 423
B dm ba ............................................................................. 446
Ground-plan of Hut of Matting ............................................. 449
Gigho, or G666 ..................................................................... 478
Borno on the Niger ............................................................. 487
TRAVELS AND DISCOVERIES IN AFRICA.

CHAPTER LIII.

DEPARTURE FOR TIMBU'KTU.-THE HILLY NORTHWESTERN PROVINCES OF BO/RNU.

THE death of Mr. Overweg, happening at a period when the prospects of the mission just began to brighten, induced me to relinquish my original plan of once more trying my fortune in Kinem and on the N.E. shores of Tsid, as an undertaking too dangerous for me in my isolated position, and the results of which could not reasonably be expected to be great, even with the protection of a small force, in a disturbed country, in comparison with the dangers that accompanied it. Besides, such was the character of the horde of the Welid Slimin and their mode of warfare, that, after having received the sanction of the British government for my proceedings, and being authorized by them to carry out the objects of the mission as at first projected, I could scarcely venture to associate myself again with such a lawless set of people. I therefore determined to direct my whole attention toward the west, in order to explore the countries situated on the middle course of the great western river, the I'sa, or the so-called Niger, and at the same time to establish friendly relations with the powerful ruler of the empire of S6kot6, and to obtain full permission for myself or other Europeans to visit the southeastern provinces of his empire, especially A'damiwa, which I had been prevented from fully exploring by the real or pretended fear of the governor of that province to grant such a permission without the sanction of his liege lord. The treaty which I had at length succeeded in getting signed by the Sheikh of B6rnu and his vizier on the last of August, together with a map of all the parts of Central Africa which I had as yet visited, and containing at the same time all the information.
which I had been able to collect concerning the neighboring provinces,* I had forwarded home in the middle of October, addressing at the same time the request to H. M.'s consul at Tripoli to send me, by a special courier to Zinder, a certain sum of money. The road which I had before me was long, leading through the territories of a great many different chiefs, and partly even of powerful princes; and as soon as I should have left Zinder behind me, I could not expect to find fresh supplies, the sum of money which I had received on my return from Ba'rimi being almost all spent in paying the debts which we had incurred when left without means. A sum of 400 dollars, besides a box containing choice English ironware, had been some time before consigned to a Teb-i of the name of A'hmed Hij 'Ali Billama; but instead of proceedat once with the caravan with which he had left Fezz-n, as he ought to have done, he staid behind in his native town Bilma to celebrate a marriage. The caravan, with about twenty horses and a hundred camels, arrived, on the 10th of November, without bringing me any thing except the proof of such reckless conduct; and as I could not afford to lose any more time in waiting for this parcel, I left orders that it should be forwarded to Zinder as soon as it should arrive, but never received it. Nearly three fourths of the money in cash which we had received being required to pay off our debts, we had been obliged to give away a great portion even of the articles of merchandise, or presents, in order to reward friends who for so long a period had displayed their hospitality toward us, and rendered us services almost without the slightest recompense; so that, on the whole, it was only under the most pressing circumstances I could think of undertaking a journey to the west with the means then at my disposal. But, very luckily, a handsome sum of money was on the road to Zinder; I also expected to receive at that place a few new instruments, as the greater part of my thermometers were broken, and I had no instrument left for making hypsometrical observations.

An inroad on a large scale of a tribe of the Tawirek, or Kindin, as they are called in Börmu, under their chief, Mdsä, into the province of Muniy6, through which lay my road to Zinder, delay* This is the map which was published by Mr. Petermann in the account of the progress of the Expeditioni to Central Africa, adding from Mr. Richardson's and Mr. Overweg's journals, which I had sent home, an outline of those districts visited by themselves alone.

ed my departure for a considerable time. This inroad of the hordes of the desert claimed a greater interest than usual, especially when considered in connection with the facts which I have set forth on a former occasion,* the Tawirek or Berbers having originally formed an integral part of the settled population of Börmu. These Diggera of Milsä, who appear to have occupied these tracts at a former period, had evidently formed the firm intention of settling again in the fine valleys of the province of Muniy6, which are so favorable to the breeding of camels that even when the country was in the hands of the Börmu people they used to send their herds there.
At length, after a long series of delays, the road to the west became open, and I took leave of the sheikh on the 19th of November, in a private audience, none but the vizier being present. I then found reason to flatter myself that, from the manner in which I had explained to them the motives which had induced me to undertake a journey to the chiefs of the Fdlbe or Fellati, there were no grounds of suspicion remaining between us, although they made it a point that I should avoid going by Kano; and even when I rejected their entreaty to remain with them after my successful return from Timbuktu, they found nothing to object, as I assured them that I might be more useful to them as a faithful friend in my own country than by remaining with them in Bornu. At that time I thought that her majesty's government would be induced to send a consul to Bornu, and, in consequence, I raised their expectations on that point. But matters in Bornu greatly changed during my absence in the west, and, in consequence of the temporary interregnum of the usuper 'Abd e' Rahmin, and the overthrow and murder of the vizier, the state of affairs there assumed a less settled aspect. I concluded my leave-taking by requesting my kind hosts, once more, to send a copy of the history of Edris Alaw6ma, the most celebrated Bornu king, to the British government, as I was sure that, in their desire to elucidate the history and geography of these regions, this would be an acceptable present.

The vizier, in particular, took great interest in my enterprise, admiring the confidence which I expressed, that the Sheikh el Bakiy, in Timbuktu, of whom I had formed an opinion merely from hearsay, would receive me kindly and give me his full protection; and I did not fail to represent to them that, if the English

* See vol. ii., p. 28.

should succeed in opening these great high roads of the interior for peaceful intercourse, it would be highly advantageous even for themselves, as they would thus be enabled to obtain those articles which they were in want of from the regions of Western Africa, such as kola nuts and gold, with much less expense and greater security; and they were thus induced to endeavor to derive a profit even from this my enterprise. The sheikh, who had formed the intention of undertaking a journey to Mekka, wanted me to procure for him some gold in Timbuktu; but, uncertain as were my prospects, and difficult as would be my situation, I could not guarantee such a result, which my character as a messenger of the British government would scarcely allow. The sheikh sent, me two very fine camels as a present, which stood the fatigue of the journey marvelously, one of them only succumbing on my return journey, three days from Kidkawa, when, seeing that it was unable to proceed, I gave it as a present to a native niallem.

Having finished my letters, I fixed my departure for the 25th of November, without waiting any longer for the caravan of the Arabs, which was soon to leave for Zinder, and which, though it held out the prospect of a little more security, would have exposed me to a great deal of inconvenience and delay.

Thursday, November 25th, 1852. It was half past ten in the morning when I left the town of Kakawa, which for upward of twenty months I had regarded as my head-quarters, and as a place upon which, in any emergency, I might safely fall
back upon; for although I even then expected that I should be obliged to return to this place once more, and even of my own free will made my plans accordingly, yet I was convinced that, in the course of my proceedings, I should not be able to derive any farther aid from the friendship and protection of the Sheikh of B6runu, and I likewise fully understood that circumstances might oblige me to make my return by the western coast. For I never formed such a scheme voluntarily, as I regarded it of much greater importance for the government, in whose service I had the honor to be employed, to survey the coast of the great river from Timbikitu downward, than to attempt, if I should have succeeded in reaching that place, to come out on the other side of the continent, while I was fully aware that, even under the most favorable circumstances, in going, I should be unable to keep along the river, on account of its being entirely in the hands of the lawless tribes of Tawirek, whom I should not be able to pass before I had obtained the protection of

MY SERVANTS.
a powerful chief in those quarters. Meanwhile, well aware from my own experience how far man generally remains in arrear of his projects, in my letter to government I represented my principal object as only to reach the Niger at the town of Siy, while all beyond that was extremely uncertain. My little troop consisted of the following individuals. First, Mohammed el Gatrfni, the same faithful young lad who had accompanied me as a servant all the way from Fezzin to Kiikawa, and whom, on my starting for A'damwa, I had sent home, very reluctantly, with my dispatches and with the late Mr. Richardson's effects, on condition that, after having staid some time with his wife and children, he should return. He had lately come back with the same caravan which had brought me the fresh supplies. Faithful to my promise, I had mounted him on horseback, and made him my chief servant, with a salary of four Spanish dollars per month, and a present of fifty dollars besides in the event of my enterprise being successfully terminated. My second servant, -and the one upon whom, next to Mohammed, I relied most, was 'Abd-Allihi, or, rather, as the name is pronounced in this country, 'Abd-All6hi, a young Shdwa from K6tok6, whom I had taken into my service on my journey to Bagirmi, and who, never having been in a similar situation, and not having dealt before with Europeans, at first had caused me a great deal of trouble, especial. ly as he was laid up with the small-pox for forty days during my stay in that country. He was a young man of very pleasing manners and straightforward character, and, as a good and pious Moslim, formed a useful link between myself and the Mohammedans; but he was sometimes extremely whimsical, and, after having written out his contract for my whole journey to the west and back, I had the greatest trouble in making him adhere to his own stipulations. I had unbounded control over my men, because I agreed with them that they should not receive any part of their salary on the road, but the whole on my successful return to Hadsa. 'Abd-Allihi was likewise mounted on horseback, but had only a salary of two dollars, and a present of twenty dollars. Then came Mohammed ben A'hmed, the fellow of whom I have already spoken on my journey to Kinem, and who, though
a person of very indifferent abilities, and at the same time very self-conceited on account of his Islam, was yet valued by me for his honesty, while he, on his part, having been left by his countrymen and co-religionists in a very destitute situation, became attached to myself.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
I had two more freemen in my service, one a brother of Mohammed el Gatrônî, who was only to accompany me as far as Zinder; the other an Arab from the borders of Egypt, and called Slimin el Ferjini, a fine, strong man, who had once formed part of the band of the Welid Slimn in Kâum, and who might have been of great service to me from his knowledge of the use of fire-arms and his bodily strength; but he was not to be trusted, and deserted me in a rather shameful manner a little beyond Kitsena. Besides these freemen, I had in my service two liberated slaves, D'rregu, a Hadsa boy, and A'bêga, a Marghf lad, who had been set free by the late Mr. Overweg, the same young lads whom, on my return to Europe, I brought to this country, where they promised to lay in a store of knowledge, and who, on the whole, have been extremely useful to me, although A'bêga not unfrequently

THE TWO AFRICANS.
found some other object more interesting than my camels, which were intrusted to his care, and which, in consequence, he lost repeatedly. In addition to these servants, I had attached to my person another man as a sort of broker, and who was to serve as a mediator between me and the natives; this was the Mêjebf 'Ali el A'geren, a native of Jêio, the small commercial place near Afiïl, which has recently been visited and described by the Abbé Hamilton. He had traveled for many years in Negroland, and had traversed in various directions the region inclosed between Sôkotô, Kanô, Ba-ichi, Ziriya, and Gônja. But for the present, on my outset from Bornu, I had not made any fixed arrangements with this man; but in the event of his accompanying me beyond Sôkotô, he was to have two horses and a monthly salary of nine dollars, besides being permitted to trade on his own account. Such an arrangement, although rather expensive to me, considering the means at my disposal, was of very great importance if the man did his duty, he being able, in his almost independent situation, to render me extraordinary assistance in overcoming many difficulties; but, as an Arab, I only put full confidence in him as long as circumstances were propitious, while his wavering character as soon as dangers began to surround me did not put me in any way out of countenance. These people, besides an Arab, a so-called sheriff from Fs, who was going as far as Zinder, and who had likewise attached himself to my small party, composed the band with which I cheerfully set out on my journey toward the west on the 25th of November, being accompanied out of the town by the Hij Edris, whom I have had frequent occasion to mention. In order to get every thing in readiness, and to be sure of having neglected no precaution to secure full success to my
enterprise, I followed my old principle, and pitched my tent for the first day only a couple of miles distant from the gate, near the second hamlet of Kaliluwi, in the scanty shade of a bauire, when I felt unbounded delight in finding myself once more in the open country, after a residence of a couple of months in the town, where I had but little bodily exercise. Indulging in the most pleasing anticipations as to the success of the enterprise upon which I was then embarking, I stretched myself out at full length on my noble lion-skin, which formed my general couch during the day, and which was delightfully cool.

Friday, November 26th. This was one of the coldest, or perhaps the very coldest night which I experienced in the whole of my journeys since entering the fertile plains of Negroland, the thermometer in the morning, a little before sunrise, showing only 9. Fahr. above the freezing point. The interior of Africa, so far removed from the influence of the sea (which is warmer in winter than the terrafirma), forms, with regard to the cold season, an insulated cool space in the tropical regions in opposition to the warm climate of the West Indies, and the coasts and islands of the Pacific and Indian Oceans. We were all greatly affected by the cold; but it did us a great deal of good, invigorating our frames after the enervating influence of the climate of Kfikawa. We did not set out, however, before the sun had begun to impart to the atmosphere a more genial character, when we proceeded on our journey westward. The country which I traversed, passing by the frequented well of Beshdr, although already known to me from previous travels, now presented a very different aspect from what it had done on my first journey from Kan6 to Kdkawa, those bleak and dreary hollows of black argillaceous soil being now changed into the richest corn-fields, and waving with a luxuriant crop of maskkuwi, while the fields of small millet (Pennisetum) stood in stubble.

We encamped near the well S-dwa-biiwa, or, as it was called by others, Kabubiya, on the gentle slope of the rising ground toward the north, from whence the busy scene round the well, of cattle, asses, goats, and sheep being watered in regular succession, presented an interesting and animated spectacle, more especially coming after and contrasted with the dull life of the capital. The well measured fifteen fathoms in depth, and the inhabitants were so on the alert for gain that they thought it right to sell us the precious element for watering our camels. My whole party were in the best spirits, cheerful and full of expectation of the novelties, both in human life and nature, that were to be disclosed in the unknown regions in the far west. In order to protect ourselves from the cold, which had so much affected us the preceding night, we set fire to the whole of a large decayed tree, which, with great exertion, we dragged from some distance close to our tent, and thus enjoyed a very moderate degree of temperature in our open encampment.

Saturday, November 27th. I now entered Koyim, with its straggling villages, its well-cultivated fields, and its extensive forests of middle-sized mimosas, which afford food to the numerous herds

A LESSON.-GARANDA.
of camels constituting the wealth of this African tribe, who in former times, before the Berlin dynasty was driven away from its ancient capital Njimiye by the rival family of the BulAla, led a nomadic life on the pasture-grounds of Kinem. Having thus traversed the district called W6demi, we encamped about noon, at a short distance from a well in the midst of the forest, belonging to a district called Gigadi. The well was twenty-five fathoms deep, and was frequented during the night by numerous herds of cattle from different parts of the neighborhood. While making the round in the night in order to see whether my people were on the lookout, as a great part of the security of a traveler in these regions depends on the vigilance exercised by night, I succeeded in carrying away secretly the arms from all my people, even from the warlike Ferjini Arab, which caused great amusement and hubbub when they awoke in the morning, and enabled me to teach them a useful lesson of being more careful for the future.

November 28th. Having taken an early breakfast—an arrangement which, in this cold weather, when the appetite even of the European traveler in these regions is greatly sharpened, we found very acceptable—we pursued our journey, passing through the district of Garnda, with deep sandy soil, and rich in corn, cattle, and camels. A great proportion of the population consisted of Shiiwa, or native Arabs, who had immigrated from the east. As we proceeded on our march, the trees gradually assumed a richer character, plainly indicating that we were approaching a more favored district. There was the ngilisi, or hamig, a tree very common over the whole eastern part of Negroland, with its small leaves bursting forth from its branches; the karge, or giwo, now appearing as a small tree of scanty growth, farther on spreading out with a large and luxuriant crown not ceding to the ‘ardeb or tamarind-tree; and the k6rna, which, extending over the whole of these immense regions, is remarkable for bearing almost every where the same name.t The underwood was formed by the kilgo and g6nda bush, which latter, however, did not seem to bear here that delicious fruit which has so frequently served to refresh my failing energies during my marches through other districts; and, cold as had been the night, the sun even now was very powerful during the midday hours, there being a difference of 40'.

* See vol. ii., p. 81.  
† See vol. ii., p. 489, note.

26 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

We encamped after a march of about thirteen miles after mistake exchanged our westerly direction for a southwesterly one, near the well called Kagza, and were very hospitably and kindly treated by a patriotic old man, a citizen of the old capital or birni of Ghasr-6ggomo, who, when that splendid town was taken by the Filbe or Fell6ta in the year 1809, had fled to W6dAy, and had lived there several years among the Welid Rishid, Waiting for better times. This good man described to me, with a deep feeling of sorrow, the taking of that large and wealthy town, under the command of the Filbe chiefs Mali-Rfda, Mukhtir, and Hannfima, when the king, with his whole host of courtiers and his numerous army, fled through the eastern gate while the enemy was entering the western one, and the populous place was delivered up to all the horrors accompanying the sacking of a town. What with the pleasant character *of the country and the
friendly disposition of our host, I should have enjoyed my open encampment extremely if I had not been suffering all this time very severely from sore legs, ever since my return from Bagirmi, when I had to cross so many rivers, and was so frequently wet through.

Monday, November 29th. Pursuing still a southwesterly direction, our march led us through a district called Rgdani, in regard to which the state of the cultivation of the ground (the g-ro, the wealth of this country, lying in large heaps or "bagga" on the fields) and the uninterrupted succession of straggling hamlets left the impression of ease and comfort. But we had great difficulty in finding the right track among the number of small footpaths diverging in every direction; and in avoiding the northern route, which we knew would lead us to a part of the river where we should not be able to cross it, we had, by mistake, chosen a too southerly path, which, if pursued, would have led us to G-6jeba. While traversing this fertile district, we were astonished at the repeated descents which we had to make, and which convinced us that these sandy swells constitute a perfect separation between the komidugu and the Ts6d on this side. The district of R6danf was followed by another called Kangilla, and, after a short tract of forest, a third one, of the name of Meggi, consisting mostly of argillaceous soil, and not nearly so interesting as R6danf. We en'The depth of the well measured twenty-two fathoms. This is a complaint to which almost every European in these climes is exposed, and from which Clapperton suffered very severely. I found the best remedy to be mai-kadefia butter, which is very cooling; but in the eastern part of B6rnu it is rarely to be met with.

TEBU' '-GU'SSJM.
camped at length near a group of three wells, where, once a week, a small market is held. In the adjacent hollow a pond is formed in the rainy season. The wells were twenty fathoms in depth.

Tuesday, November 30th. The district through which we passed to-day, in a northwesterly direction, seemed to be rich in pasturegrounds and cattle. It was at the time inhabited by a number of Tebuti of the tribe of the Diza, or rather Bilgudi, who in former times, having been driven from A'gadem, B6lkashf Farri, and Saw by the Tawirek, had found refuge in this district, where they preserve their nomadic habits to some extent, and by no means contribute to the security of the country. Having been warned that along the road no water wv to be had,, we encamped a little outside the track, near the farming village of G6gor6, where the women were busy threshing or pounding their corn, which was lying in large heaps, while the men were idling about. They were cheerful Kaniiri people, who reside here only during the time of the harvest, and when that is over return to their village, Dfimmarruwi. The ground hereabout was full of ants, and we had to take all possible care in order to protect our luggage against the attacks of this voracious insect.

Wednesday, December 1st. We now approached the komidugu of B6rnu, presenting, with its network of channels and thick forests, a difficult passage after the rainy season. Fine groups of trees began to appear, and droves of Guinea-fowl
enlivened the landscape. In order to give the camels a good feed on the rich vegetation produced in this favorable locality, we made even a shorter march than usual, encamping near a dead branch of the river, which is called Kuldigu Gdissum, S.E. from the celebrated lake of Midggobf, which in former times, during the glorious period of the Bôrnu empire, constituted one of the chief celebrities and attractions of the country, but which at present, being overwhelmed by the surrounding swamps, serves only to interrupt the communication between the western and eastern provinces. Allured by the pleasing character of the place, I stretched myself out in the shade of a group of majestic tamarind-trees, while the man whom I had taken with me as a guide from the village where we had passed the night, gave me some valuable information with regard to the divisions of the Koyim, the present inhabitants of this region east of the komidugu, which had been conquered from the native tribe of the Sô. He told me that the K'ye o a nly , or as th name is generally pronounced in Bo'rnu, the Kay (the tribe which

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
I have mentioned in my historical account of Bôrnu,* originally formed the principal stock of the Koyim, together with whom the Miguni and the Firfer6 constitute the principal divisions, the chief of the latter clan bearing the title of Figo. The Temigheri, of whom I have also had occasion to speak, and the Ngaliga, fractions of both of whom are settled here, he described as Kinemb-6. But, besides these tribes, a great proportion of Teb6 have mixed with the ancient inhabitants of this district, probably since the time of the king Edris Alawôma, who forced the Tebi settled in the northern districts of Kinem to emigrate into Bôrnu. In connection with the latter wide-spread nation, my informant described the Tira (whose chief is called 1irkem, being a native of Dirki), the Dbirf or Dfbbfri (also spoken of by me on a former occasion), the U'nguman, and the Kiguwi. The Jetko or Jotko, who live along the komdugu, west from the town of Yô, he described to me as identical with the Kel6ti, the very tribe which is repeatedly mentioned by the historian of Edrfs Alawôma. Thus we find in this district a very interesting group of fractions'of former tribes who have here taken refuge from the destructive power of a larger empire.
I took a long walk in the afternoon along the sheet of water, which was indented in the most picturesque manner, and was bordered all around with the richest vegetation, the trees belonging principally to the species called karige and baggarfiwa. Farther on dim palms became numerous; and it was the more interesting to me, as I had visited this district, only a few miles farther north, during the dry season. Guinea-fowl were so numerous that one could hardly move a step without disturbing a group of these lazy birds, which constitute one of the greatest delicacies of the traveler in these regions. A sportsman would find in these swampy forests not less interesting objects for his pursuits than the botanist; for elephants, several species of antelopes, even including the oryx or t6tel, nay, as it would seem, even the large addax, the wild hog, besides an unlimited supply of water-fowl, Guinea-fowl, and partridges, would prove worthy of his attention,
while occasional encounters with monkeys would cause him some diversion and amusement.

At present the water was decreasing rapidly; but this part

* See vol. ii., p. 29.

† Compare what I have said with regard to the periods of the rising and decreasing of this river in vol. ii., p. 576.

SITE OF GHASR-E’GGOMO.

had been entirely dry at the beginning of September, when the late Mr. Overweg had visited it, and the conclusion then drawn by him, that the river inundates its banks in November, was entirely confirmed by my own experience. There was a great deal of cultivation along this luxuriant border, and even a little cotton was grown; but a very large amount of the latter article might be obtained here with a greater degree of industry. Besides a village at a short distance to the S.E., inhabited by Koyim, and which bears the same name as this branch of the river, there is a hamlet,

* consisting of about thirty cottages, inhabited by Fijibe, or Fellita, of the tribe of the Hillega, the same tribe whom we have met in A’damwa. They seemed to possess a considerable number of cattle, and appeared to lead a contented and retired life in this fertile but at present almost desolate region. But, unfortunately, they have been induced, by their close contact with the Kaniri, to give up the nice manner of preparing their milk, which so distinguishes the Filbe in other provinces; and even the cheerful way in which the women offered us their ware could not induce me to purchase of them their unclean species of sour milk, which is prepared by means of the urine of cattle.

Beautiful and rich as was the scenery of this locality, it had the disadvantage of harboring immense swarms of musquitoes, and our night’s rest, in consequence, was greatly disturbed.

Thursday, December 2d. Winding round the swamp (for the nature of a swamp or kulu’gu was more apparent at present than that of a branch of the river), we reached, after a march of about three miles, the site of the ancient capital of the Bôrnou empire, Ghasr-6ggomo, which, as I have stated on a former occasion,* was built by the King ’All Ghajid-ni, toward the end of the fifteenth century, after the dynasty had been driven from its ancient seats in Knem, and, after a desperate struggle between, unsettled elements, began to concentrate itself under the powerful rule of this mighty king. The site was visited by the members of the former expedition, and it has been called by them by the half-Arabic name of Birmi-Kadfm, the "old capital," even the Bôrnou people in general designating the place only by the name birni or burni. The town had nearly a regular oval shape, but, notwithstanding the great exaggerations of former Arab informants, who have asserted that this town surpassed Cairo (or Masr el Kihira) in size, and was a day’s march across, was little more than six English


s0 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
miles in circumference, being encompassed by a strong *all with six or seven* gates, which, in its present dilapidated state, forms a small ridge, and seems clearly to indicate that, when the town was conquered by the Filibe or Fellita, the attack was made from two different sides, viz., the southwest and northwest, where the lower part of the wall had been dug away. The interior of the town exhibits very little that is remarkable. The principal buildings consist of baked bricks; and in the present capital not the smallest approach is made to this more solid mode of architecture. The dimensions of the palace appear to have been very large, although nothing but the ground-plan of large empty areas can be made out at present, while the very small dimensions of the mosque, which had five aisles, seem to afford sufficient proof that none but the people intimately connected with the court used to attend the service, just as is the case at the present time; and it * The intelligent Arab Ben 'Alf, in the interesting account which he gave to Lucas (Proceedings of the African Association, vol. i., p. 148), distinctly states the number of the gates as seven; but it is remarkable that, in all the accounts of the taking of the place by the Filibe, mention is only made of two gates, and it is still evident, at the present time, that the western and the eastern gates were the only large ones.

It must be this circumstance (which to the natives themselves, in the degenerate age of the later kings, appeared as a miracle) which caused the report that in Ghimbari and Ghasr-dggomo there were buildings of the time of the Christians.

RUINS.-THE KOMA’DUGU.

serves, moreover, clearly to establish the fact that even in former times, when the empire was most flourishing, there was no such thing as a madrasa, or college, attached to the mosque. The fact is, that although Bôru at all times has had some learned men, study has always been a private affair among a few individuals, encouraged by some distinguished men who had visited Egypt and Arabia. Taking into consideration the great extent of the empire during the period of its grandeur, and the fertility and wealth of some of its provinces, which caused gold dust at that time to be brought to market here in considerable quantity, it can not be doubted that this capital contained a great deal of barbaric magnificence, and even a certain degree of civilization, much more so than is at present found in this country; and it is certainly a speculation not devoid of interest to imagine, in this town of Néroland, a splendid court, with a considerable number of learned and intelligent men gathering round their sovereign, and a priest writing down the glorious achievements of his-master, and thus securing them from oblivion. Pity that he was not aware that his work might fall into the hands of people from quite another part of the world, and of so different a stage of civilization, language, and learning! else he would certainly not have failed to have given to posterity a more distinct clew to the chronology of the history of his native country.

It is remarkable that the area of the town, although thickly overgrown with rank grass, is quite bare of trees, while the wall is closely hemmed in by a dense forest; and when I entered the ruins, I found them to be the haunt of a couple of tall
ostriches, the only present possessors of this once animated ground; but on the southwest corner, at some distance from the wall, there was a small hamlet. The way in which the komidugu, assisted probably by artificial means, spreads over this whole region, is very remarkable. The passage of the country at the present season of the year, covered as it is with the thickest forest, was extremely difficult, and we 'had to make a very large circuit in order to reach the village of Zngirf, Where the river could be most easily crossed. I myself went, on this occasion, as far southwest as Zaraima, a village lying on a steep bank near a very strong bend or elbow of the river, which, a little above, seems to be formed by the two principal branches, the one coming from the country of Bedde, and the other more from the south; but, notwithstanding the great cir-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
cuit we made, we had to ford several very extensive backwaters, stretching out, in the deeper parts of the valley, amid a thick belt of the rankest vegetation, before we reached the real channel, which wound along in a meandering course inclosed between sandy banks of about twenty-five feet in elevation, and, with its rich vegetation, presenting a very interesting spectacle. The forest in this part is full of t-tel, or Antelope oryx, and of the large antelope called "kargum." The few inhabitants of the district, although they do not cultivate a great deal of corn, can not suffer much from famine, so rich is the supply of the forest as well as of the water. Our evening's repast, after we had encamped near Z6ngiri, was seasoned by some excellent fish from the river. However, I must observe here that the Kaniri in general are not such good hunters as the Husa people, of whom a considerable proportion live by hunting, forming numerous parties or hunting clubs, who on certain days go out into the forest.

Friday, December 3d. Having made a good march the previous day, we were obliged, before attempting the passage of the river with our numerous beasts and heavy luggage, to allow them a day's repose; and I spent it most agreeably on the banks of the river, which was only a few yards from our encampment. Having seen this valley in the dry season, and read so many theories with regard to its connection with the Niger on one side and the Tsid on the other, it was of the highest interest to me to see it at the present time of the year, when it was full of water, and at its very highest point; and I could only wish that Captain William Allen had been able to survey this noble stream in its present state, in order to convince himself of the erroneous nature of his theory of this river running from the Tsid into the so-called Chadda, or rather B6nuw6. Though the current was not very strong, and probably did not exceed three miles an hour, it swept along as a considerable river of about one hundred and twenty yards breadth toward the Tsid, changing its course from a direction E. 12' S. to N. 350 E. While the bank on this side formed a steep sandy slope, the opposite one was flat, and richly adorned with reeds of different species, and luxuriant trees. Al was quiet and repose, there being no traffic whatever on the river, with the exception of a couple of homely travelers, a man and woman, who in the simple native style were crossing the river, riding on a pair of yoked calabashes, and immersed in the water up to their middle, while they had stowed away their little clothing inside
CROSSING A RIVER.-MANGA.

those very vessels which supported them above the water; but, notwithstanding their energetic labor, they were carried down by the force of the current to a considerable distance. Besides these two human beings, the river at present was only enlivened by one solitary spoonbill (or, as it is here called, b6ja or keddbbu-b-inibe), who, like a king of the water, was proudly swimming up and down, looking around for prey.

The following day we crossed the river ourselves. "I had some difficulty in concluding the bargain, the inhabitants, who belong to the Tebii-Z6nghi, * making at first rather exorbitant demands, till I satisfied them with a dollar; and we ourselves, camels, horses, and luggage, crossed without an accident, each camel being drawn by a man mounted on a pair of calabashes, while another man mounted the animal close to its tail. The scenery, although destitute of grand features, was highly interesting, and has been represented as correctly as possible in the plate opposite. The river proved to be fifteen feet deep in the channel, and about 120 yards broad; but there was a still smaller creek behind, about five feet deep.

At length we were again in motion; but our difficulties now commenced, the path being extremely winding, deeply hollowed out, and full of water, and leading through the thickest part of the forest; and I had to lament the loss of several bottles of the most valuable medicine, a couple of boxes being thrown from the back of the camel. The forest extended only to the border which is reached by the highest state of the inundation, when we emerged upon open country, and, leaving the town of Nghtuwa (where Mr. Richardson died) at a short distance on our right, we encamped a few hundred yards to the south of the town of Ala6ne, which I had also passed on my former journey.

Here we entered that part of the province of Manga which is governed by Kashglla Beil; and the difference in the character of this tract from the province of Koyim, which we had just left behind, was remarkable, the country being undulated in downs of red sand, famous for the cultivation of ground-nuts and beans, both of which constitute a large proportion of the food of the inhabitants, so that millet and beans are generally sown on the same

* I do not know exactly whether the ford has been called after this tribe; but the name Zgnghiri also occurs in other localities.

T These people wanted in general nothing but cloves. I, however, succeeded in buying a sheep from them for eight ggbagi, at the rate of eight dr'a each.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

field, the latter ripening later, and constituting the richest pasture for cattle and camels. Of grain, negro millet (Pennisetum typho deum) is the species almost exclusively cultivated in the country of Manga, sorghum not being adapted for this dry ground.
The same difference was to be observed in the architecture of the native dwellings, the corn-stacks, which impart so decided a character of peace and repose to the villages of Hiusa, but which are sought for in vain in the whole of B6rnu Proper, here again making their appearance. The Manga call them "s6be" or "gusi." The cottages themselves, although they were not remarkable for their cleanliness, presented rather a cheerful aspect, the thatch being thickly interwoven with and enlivened by the creepers of various cucurbitacem, but especially the favorite kobgwa or felopepo. The same difference which was exhibited in the nature of the country and the dwellings of the natives, appeared also in the character of the latter, the Kaniiri horseman or the Koyim camel-breeder being here supplanted by the Manga footman, with his leathern apron, his bow and arrow, and his battle-axe, while the more slender Manga girl, scarcely peeping forth from under her black veil, with which she bashfully hid her face, had succeeded to the B6rn female, with her square figure, her broad features, and her open and ill-covered breast. I have observed elsewhere that, although the Manga evidently form a very considerable element in the formation of the B6rnu nation, their name as guch does not occur in the early annals of the empire, and we therefore can only presume that they owe their origin to a mixture of tribes.

Having passed the important place of Kadagarruwa and some other villages, we encamped on the 5th near the extensive village M6mmarf, where the governor of the province at that time resided.*

Monday, December 6th. A small water-course joining the komidugu Wailbe from the north, separates the province of Kashiillla Belid from another part of Manga, placed under a special officer,

* To this province, although I do not know by what particular name it is called by the natives, belong the following places, besides Mdmmari or M6mmoli: Katikenw6 (a large place), Gubilgordm (touched at by me on my former route) at a short distance to the S.E., Tafiy6ri E., Kerbfhdduwa, Maind, Nay, Mammed Kanr, Wadi, Kulloram, Kari ngamduwd to the N., Kfrwi, Dtdgguli, Giddderam, Ngaloliya, Kajimma, Alalne, Nghurtituwa, Barn. The place Shdgori, although situated within the boundaries of this province, forms a separate domain of Mali Ibrim.

PECULIAR CHARACTER OF MANGA.-BORZA'RI.

The same difference was to be observed in the architecture of the native dwellings, the corn-stacks, which impart so decided a character of peace and repose to the villages of Hiusa, but which are sought for in vain in the whole of B6rnu Proper, here again making their appearance. The Manga call them "s6be" or "gusi." The cottages themselves, although they were not remarkable for their cleanliness, presented rather a cheerful aspect, the thatch being thickly interwoven with and enlivened by the creepers of various cucurbitacem, but especially the favorite kobgwa or felopepo. The same difference which was exhibited in the nature of the country and the dwellings of the natives, appeared also in the character of the latter, the Kaniiri horseman or the Koyim camel-breeder being here supplanted by the Manga footman, with his leathern apron, his bow and arrow, and his battle-axe, while the more slender Manga girl, scarcely peeping forth from under her black veil, with which she bashfully hid her face, had succeeded to the B6rn female, with her square figure, her broad features, and her open and ill-covered breast. I have observed elsewhere that, although the Manga evidently form a very considerable element in the formation of the B6rnu nation, their name as guch does not occur in the early annals of the empire, and we therefore can only presume that they owe their origin to a mixture of tribes.

Having passed the important place of Kadagarruwa and some other villages, we encamped on the 5th near the extensive village M6mmarf, where the governor of the province at that time resided.*

Monday, December 6th. A small water-course joining the komidugu Wailbe from the north, separates the province of Kashiillla Belid from another part of Manga, placed under a special officer,

* To this province, although I do not know by what particular name it is called by the natives, belong the following places, besides Mdmmari or M6mmoli: Katikenw6 (a large place), Gubilgordm (touched at by me on my former route) at a short distance to the S.E., Tafiy6ri E., Kerbfhdduwa, Maind, Nay, Mammed Kanr, Wadi, Kulloram, Kari ngamduwd to the N., Kfrwi, Dtdgguli, Giddderam, Ngaloliya, Kajimma, Alalne, Nghurtituwa, Barn. The place Shdgori, although situated within the boundaries of this province, forms a separate domain of Mali Ibrim.

PECULIAR CHARACTER OF MANGA.-BORZA'RI.

37 who has his residence in Borziri. Close on the western side of this water-course, which is only about thirty yards across, the Manga, at the time (in the year 1845) when, in consequence of the inroad of Widiy, the whole empire of B6rnu seemed to be falling to ruin, fortified a large place in order to vindicate their national independence against the rulers of the kingdom; but, having been beaten by 'Abd e' Rahnidn, the sheikh's brother, the town was easily taken by another k6kana or officer, of the name of 116j Sudini. It is called Miikonomai-kurg, the Large Miikonomarf, in order to distinguish it from a smaller place of the same name, and contains at present only a small number of dwellings, but was nevertheless distinguished from its more thriving neighbor by a larger supply of articles of comfort, such as a fine herd of cattle, well-filled granaries, and plenty of poultry,
while the neighboring province, which we had just left behind, appeared to be
exhausted by recent exactions and contributions, the greater part of the population
having even sought safety in a precipitate flight. The country, however, which we
traversed on our march to Borzifiri was not remarkable in any way for the beauty
of its scenery, although the former part of our march led through a well-cultivated
and populous district; and the heat reflected, during the middle of the day, from
the bleak soil, clad only with a scanty vegetation, was oppressive in the extreme,
although it was the month of December. Thus I passed the walled town of
Grdmar-* without feeling myself induced, by the herd of cattle just assembled
near the wall, to make a halt, the ground here becoming excessively barren and
hot. On reaching the town of Borz-ri. I preferred encamping outside, although
there was not the least shade; my heavy luggage and my numerous party
rendering quarters inside the town rather inconvenient. The governor, to whom I
sent a small present, treated me very hospitably, sending me a heifer, a large
provision of rice, several dishes of prepared food, and two large bowls of milk.
This excellent man, whose name is Kashe11a Manzo, besides the government of
his province, had to regu* I will here mention, as an instance how careful
travelers, even those tolerably well acquainted with the languages of the country
through which they travel, must be with regard to the names of places, that when
first passing this town I asked a man its name, and, not having distinctly heard
what he said, I asked another person who stood by, and he said "1 mannawgji."
Supposing at the time that this was the name of the place, I wrote it down, but
soon convinced myself that it meant nothing but "he does not want to speak," or
"refuses to answer," and I then learned on farther inquiry that the real name of the
town was Grdmarf.

38 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
late the whole intercourse along this road, being instructed at the time especially
to prevent the exportation of horses from the B6rnu territory into the Hiusa states.
The town, which is surrounded with a low orenulated wall and a ditch in good
repair, is of considerable size and well built, and may contain from 7000 to 8000
inhabitants; but there is no great industry to be seen, nor is there a good market.
The wells measure ten fathoms in depth.
Our direct road from this point would have led straight to Zurrfkulo; but an officer
of the name of A'dama, who was to accompany me to Zinder,. having joined me, I
was induced to take a more southerly road, by way of Dongri, which constituted
his estate; and I was very glad afterward that I did so, as this road made me
acquainted with the peculiar character of the territory of Bedde, which I should
not otherwise have touched at.
Tesda, December 7th. The first part of our march led through a more dreary tract
of country, which was neither very picturesque, nor exhibited any great signs of
industry among the natives; but after a stretch of a little more than eleven miles,
large, wide-spreading tamarind-trees announced a more fertile district, and a few
hundred yards farther on we reached the border of one of the great swampy creeks
connected with the southwestern branch of the komidugu, and intersecting tte
territory of Bedde, which we had now entered. We kept close along its border,
which was adorned by fine, luxuriant trees, till we encamped at a short distance from Diddeger, a place inhabited by Bedde, and at that time forming part of the estate of Mali T'Brim. The village is situated on a small mound close to the swamp or jungle, for the water is so thickly covered with forest that no portion of the aqueous element is to be seen. It forms rather what the Kanuiri call an ngijam (that is to say, a swampy shallow creek or backwater, having little or no inclination) than a kuliigu; and there can be no doubt of its connection with the great komidugu of B6rnu. The natives call it at this spot Gojigwa,* and, farther on, Mkje. They are pagans, and wear nothing but a narrow leather apron or fun6 round their loins,t with the exception of a few Ka* I almost suspect that this is the water of which Mr. Hutchinson, when in Ashanti, heard a report from the natives under the name "koumouda Gaiguina." (Bowdich's Mission to Ashantee, p. 213.) t What Koelle relates (Kandri Proverbs, p. 82, text; p. 211, transl.) on the authority of his informant, that the Bedde, or Bode, as he writes, wear wide shirts, THE BEDDE.-MONKEY-BREAD-TREES.

nmri, who are living among them, and who cultivate a small quantity of cotton, for which the banks of the swamp are very well suited, and would no doubt be extensively used for this purpose if the country were inhabited by civilized people.

The Bedde, according to their language, are closely related to the Manga, but, as far as I had an opportunity of judging, are much inferior to them in bodily development, being not at all distinguished for their stature; but it is very probable that the inhabitants of these places in the border district, who come into continual contact with their masters, the B6rnu people, are more degenerate than those in the interior, who, protected by the several branches of the komidugu and the swamps and forests connected with them, keep up a spirit of national independence, possessing even a considerable number of a small breed of horses, which they ride without saddle or harness, and in the same barbaric manner as the Miisgu.

Wednesday, December 8th. The district which we traversed in the morning was distinguished by a great number of k-dka or monkey-bread-trees, the first one we saw being destitute of leaves, though full of fruit; but gradually, as we approached a more considerable sheet of water, they became adorned with a profusion of rich foliage, and we here met several small parties laden with baskets, of an elongated shape, full of the young leaves of this tree, which, as "k1Uu kiika," constitute the most common vegetable of the natives. Besides the kiika, large karige and k6rna or jujubetrees (Zizyphus), and now and then a fine tamarind-tree, though not of such great size as I was wont to see, adorned the landscape.

We had just crossed a swamp, at present dry, surrounded on one side by fine fig-trees and gerrehd of such luxuriant growth that I was scarcely able to recognize the tree, and on the other by talha-trees, when, about noon, we emerged into open cultivated ground, and were here greeted with the sight of a pretty sheet of open water, breaking forth from the forest on our left, and dividing into two branches, which receded in the distance. The Bedde call it Thaba-kenmia. The water is full of fish, which is dried by the inhabitants, and, either in its natural form, or
pounded and formed into balls, constitutes an important article of export. We met a good many people laden with it.

It was here that, while admiring this river-like sheet of water, "kglgu," besides the fun6, of course (as is the case also with the Margh) can only have reference to those among them who have adopted Islgm.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

I recognized, among a troop of native travelers, my friend the sherff Mohammed Ben Ahmed, to whom I was indebted for a couple of hours very pleasantly and usefully spent during my stay in Y6la, and for the route from Mozambique to the Lake Nyanja, or, as it is commonly called, Nyassi. I for a moment hoped that it might be my fate, in the company of this man, to penetrate through the large belt of the unknown equatorial region of this continent toward the Indian Ocean. But as he was now on his way from Zfinder to K-ikawa, we had only a few moments allowed for conversation and the exchange of compliments, when we separated in opposite directions, never to meet again—my fate carrying me westward, while he was soon to succumb to the effects of the climate of Keqroland.

Three miles farther on, turning a little more southward from our westerly direction, we reached the town of Ggshiya, once a strong place and surrounded by a clay wall, but at present in a state of great decay, although it is still tolerably peopled, the groups of conical huts being separated by fences of matting into several quarters. Here we encamped on the north side, near a fine tamarind-tree, where millet was grown to a great extent. The south and west sides were surrounded by an extensive swamp or swampy water-course fed by the komidugu, and, with its dense forest, affording to the inhabitants a safe retreat in case of an attack from their enemies. All the towns of the Bedde are situated in similar positions, and hence the precarious allegiance of the people (who indulge in rapacious habits) to the ruler of B6rnu. The inhabitants of G6shiya,* indeed, have very thievish propensities; and as we had neglected to fire a few shots in the evening, a couple of daring men succeeded, during the night, in carrying away the woolen blanket in which my companion the M6jebrf merchant 'Alf el A'geren was sleeping at the side of his horse. Although he was a man of hardihood and experience, he was dragged or carried along to a considerable distance, until he was forced to let go his blanket; and, threatening him with their spear in case he should cry out, they managed this affair so cleverly and with such dispatch, that they were off in the dark before

* The bflama, or mayor, of this town, who has subjected himself to the authority of B6rnu, bears the title "Mai Omr Bddema." Fititi, the residence of the chief Bab~she or Babddji, and the chief town of Bedde, lies a short day's march from here S. S.W. I have more materials of itineraries traversing this region, but they are too indistinct with regard to direction to be used for a topographical sketch of the country.

GESMA,*

we were up to pursue them. It was a pity that these daring rascals escaped with their spoil; but, in order to prevent any farther depredations of this kind, we fired
several shots, and with a large accordion, upon which I played the rest of the
night, I frightened the people to such a degree that they thought every moment we
were about to ransack the town.
Thursday, December 9th. Keeping along the northeastern border of the swamp,
through a fine country where the tamarind and monkey-bread-tree were often
interlaced, as I have repeatedly observed to be the case with these species of trees,
we reached, after a march of about three miles, the town of Gesma, which is girt
and defended by the swamp on the south and east sides, the wall being
distinguished by the irregularity of its pinnacles, if pinnacles they may be called,
as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. The inhabitants, clad in nothing
but a leather apron,
were busy carrying clay from the adjacent swamp, in order to repair the wall,
which, however, on the west side, was in excellent condition.
Close to this town I observed the first rimi, or silk-cotton-tree. which in B6rnu
Proper is entirely wanting; and as we proceeded through the fine open country,
numerous species of trees which are peculiar to Hi6usa became visible, and
seemed to greet me as old acquaintances. I was heartily glad that I had left the
monot-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
onous plains of B6rnu once more behind me, and had reached the more favored
and diversified districts of this fine country. Small channels intersected the
country in every direction; and immense fishing-baskets were lying in some of
them, apparently in order to catch the fish which, during the period of the
inundation, are carried down by the river. But the great humidity of this district
made it swarm with ants, whose immense and thickly-scattered hills, together
with the ddim bush, filled out the intermediate spaces between the larger
specimens of the vegetable kingdom.
Having then crossed a tract of denser forest, we entered upon deep sandy soil,
where the k-ika became the sole tree, excluding almost every other kind, with the
exception of a few tamarinds, for whose company, as I have observed, the
monkey-bread-tree seems to have a decided predilection.
Thus we reached Donri, formerly a considerable place of the Manga, and
surrounded with a low rampart of earth, but at present greatly reduced, the
inhabited quarter occupying only a very small proportion of the area thus
inclosed. But a good many cattle were to be seen, and, lying just in the shade of
the majestic monkey-bread-trees which mark the place, afforded a cheerful sight.
This was the residence of the B6rnu officer A'dama, who had accompanied me
from Borziri, and who the previous day had gone on in advance to pass the night
here. But having once made it a rule to encamp in the open country, I preferred
the large though leafless trunk of a k-ika at a short distance from the eastern gate
to a’ cool shed inside the town; and the heat was by no means oppressive, a cool
wind blowing the whole day.
December 10th. We exchanged the domain of the monkey-breadtree for that of
the diim palm, by giving to our course a northwesterly direction toward Zurrikulo,
the queen of the region of diim palms and the residence of the hospitable Kashlla
S'aid, passing at some distance on our way a comfortable and populous little place, surrounded with a stockade, and bearing the attractive name of Kechlddiyi, "the sweetness of the world," where a little market was held, to which people were flocking from all sides, male and female, with sour milk, ground-nuts, grain, earthen pots, young cattle, and sheep.

In Zurnfkulo I fell into my former route, which I had followed

* His province comprises the following villages: Chando, Gfro, Ghasrmari, Kelleri, Gabchgri, Bilaijawa, Nkibtida, Lawandi, Dalari, Keri-zeman, Kgbi, Grdma Dalari.

THE WELL OF BERBE'RUWA.

in the opposite direction in March, 1851, and, crossing the northern branch of the komidugu, which at present was two feet and a half deep, and following almost the same road, encamped the next day in Shech6ri, the first village of the district of Biindi.

CHAPTER LIV.

THE MOUNTAINOUS TERRITORY OF MU'NIYO', AND ITS GOVERNOR.

December 12th. In Shech6ri I left my former route, which would have taken me to Buindi and Mdshena, and followed a N.N.W. direction, toward the mountainous province of Mi'iny6, which before the time of our expedition was entirely unknown. Passing through the district of Chej ssemo, to which Shech6ri belongs, we entered a forest where the kisulu or magiria,* with its small berries, was very common, the ground being covered with tall jungle. We then reached the town of Ngdrruwd, surrounded with a clay wall in decay, and here watered our animals. The wells were ten fathoms deep; and crowds of boys and girls were busy drawing water from two other richer wells situated on the north side of the place. The path was also frequented by numbers of people who were carrying the harvest into the town, in nets made from the leaves of the dimn palm, and borne on the backs of oxen. Farther on, forest and cultivated ground alternated; and leaving a rocky mound called Miva, which marks the beginning of the northwestern hilly portion of the Manga country on our right, we reached, after a good march of altogether about twenty-two miles, the rich well of Berb6ruwi, a small miserable hamlet which lies at a short distance to the west.

The well, however, which was scarcely a fathom in depth, was surrounded by six fine wide-spreading tamarind-trees at regular distances from each other, and afforded quite a pleasant restingplace. The well is important as a station for travelers, while the hamlet is so poor that it does not possess a single cow or goat. It still belongs to the province of the ghaladfma, who about thirty years ago had a caravan of from sixteen to twenty Arabs exterminated in this neighborhood, when Mukn, the then ruler of Fezzan and one of the greatest slave-hunters of the time, penetrated as far as the Komidugu W~idbe. Sheikh 'Omar also, when on his

* See what I have said about this tree in vol. i., p. 404.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
expedition against Zinder, in order to subjugate the rebellious governor of that
town (Ibrahim or Ibr-ın), encamped on this spot. The temperature of the water of
the well was 660.
On inquiring to-day for the small territory of Auy6k or Nkiz m, the situation as
well as the name of which had been erroneously given by former travelers, I
learned that it is situated between Khad6ja and Gummel, and that it comprises
the following places: Tshina, U'nik, Shdgat6, Shibiyay, Belingu, Badda, R6meri,
S6ngolom, Melebgtiye, and U'mari.
. Monday, December 13th. A band of petty native traders, or dangarina, who
carried their merchandise on their heads, here joined our party. Their merchandise
consisted of cotton, which they had bought in Diggera, and were carrying to
Sull6ri, the market of Miiniy6, where cotton is dear. While proceeding onward,
we met another party of native traders from Cheluigiwi, laden with earthenware.
In the forest which we then entered, with undulating ground, the karfge was the
predominant tree. Farther on the road divided; and while I took the western one,
which led me to Yimiy, my people, mistaking a sign which some other persons
had laid across the path as if made by myself, took the easterly one to Cheliigiw,
where M6le, the lord of this little estate, resided, so that it was some time before I
was joined by my party.
The well (which, as is generally the case in this district, lies at the foot of a granite
mount, where the moisture collects) in the afternoon presented an interesting
scene, a herd of 120 head of fine cattle being watered here; and it was the more
interesting, as the herdsmen were Fellita, or Fleile, of the tribe of the Hirlge. The
well measured two fathoms in depth; and the temperature of the water was 80° at
1.20 P.M., while that of the air was 840.
Tuesday, December 14th. After a march of about six miles through a fine country,
ocasionally diversified by a rocky eminence, and adorned here and there by fine
tamarind-trees, we reached Sullgri, a considerable place, consisting of several
detached hamlets, where the most important market in the territory of Mdniy6 is
held every Friday. The place contains about 5000 inhabitants, and was enlivened
at the time by a considerable herd of cattle. Millet is grown to a great extent,
although ddin bush or ngille, with its obstructing roots, renders a great portion of
the soil unfit for cultivation, and scarcely any cotton at all is raised, so that this
forms an important article of importation. Toward

NATRON LAKE.-NEW AND OLD BU'NE.
the south lies another place, called Deggeriri, and to the southwest a third one,
called Dfigura. Granitic eminences dotted the whole country; but the foggy state
of the atmosphere did not allow me to distinguish clearly the more distant hills.
Proceeding in a northwesterly direction through this hilly country, and leaving at
a short distance on our right a higher eminence, at the western foot of which the
village of New Bdne is situated, we descended considerably into a hollow of
clayey soil of a most peculiar character. For all of a sudden an isolated date palm
started up on our right, while on our left the unwonted aspect of a tall slender
g6nda, or Erica Papaya, attracted our attention, the intermediate ground being
occupied by a rich plantation of cotton. Suddenly a large "sirge" or lake of natron
of snowy whiteness, extending from the foot of the height which towers over Bine, approached on our right, the rich vegetation which girded its border, along which the path led, forming a very remarkable contrast to the barrenness of the "sirge;" for the whole surface of the basin, which did not at present contain a drop of water, was formed of natron, while people were busy digging saltpetre, from pits about six feet deep and one foot and a half in diameter, on its very border. A short distance off, fresh water is to be found close under the surface, giving life to the vegetation, which bears a character so entirely new in this district; and I gazed with delight on the rich scenery around, which presented such a remarkable contrast to the monotonous plains of B6ru. Widespreading tamarind-trees shaded large tracts of ground, while detached date palms, few and far between, raised their feathery foliage like a fan over the surrounding country. The ground was clothed, besides, with "retem," or broom, and dihm bush, with the Tamarix gallica, or "tarfa," which I scarcely remember to have seen in any other spot during the whole of my travels in Negroland.

Ascending from the clayey soil on a sandy bottom, we reached the western foot of the eminence of Old Bine, which is built in a recess of the rocky cliffs on the western slope of the mount. But the village, which has already suffered greatly by the foundation of New BDiine at so short a distance, and which is important only as the residence of Yeg-dddi, the eldest son of Mfiniy6ma, had been almost destroyed some time before by a great conflagration, with the exception off the clay dwelling of the governor, situated at the foot of the cliffs. It was just rebuilding--only the dnddal, or principal street, being as yet fit for habitation, while the rest of the place wore a very cheerless aspect.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Returning, therefore, a few hundred yards in the direction from whence I had come, I chose my camping-ground on an eminence at the side of the path, shaded by a majestic tamarind-tree, and affording an open prospect over the characteristic landscape in the bottom of the irregular vale. Here I spent the whole afternoon enjoying this pleasant panorama, of which I made a sketch, which has been represented in the plate opposite. I had now been suffering for the last two months from sore legs, which did not allow me to rove about at pleasure, otherwise I would gladly have accompanied my companion 'Alf el A'geren on a visit to his friend Bashi Bti-Khaluim, a relative of that Bii-Khal6m who accompanied Denham and Clapperton. At this time he was residing in New Bine, where he had lately lost, by another conflagration, almost the whole of his property, including eight female slaves, who were burned to death while fettered in a hut. As conflagrations are very common all over Negroland, especially in the dry season, a traveler must be extremely careful in confiding his property to these frail dwellings, and he would do well to avoid them entirely.

Wednesday, December 15th. A cold northerly wind, which blew in the morning, made us feel very chilly in our open and elevated encampment, so that it was rather late when we set out, changing now our course entirely from a northwesterly into a north-northeasterly direction. The whole neighborhood was enveloped in a thick fog. The country, after we had passed the mountain B6ro,
which gives its name to the village B6rmarf, became rather mountainous. The path wound along through a succession of irregular glens and dells, surrounded by several more or less detached rocky eminences, all of which were clothed with bush. The bottom of the valleys, which consisted mostly of sand, seemed well adapted for the cultivation of sorghum. We passed a large store of grain, where the people were busy pounding or threshing the harvested corn.

In many places, however, the ground was intersected by numerous holes of the fenek or Megalotis; and at times clay took the place of the sandy soil. Numerous herds of camels enlivened the landscape, all of which belonged, not to the present owners of the country, but to the Tawirek, the friends and companions of the people of M-6sa, who had lately made a foray on a grand scale into this very province.

We encamped at length, after a march of about thirteen miles,

PECULIAR CHARACTER OF MU'NIYO."

near the second well of Suiwa-Kol6lluwa, which was two fathoms in depth, and, unlike the first well, contained a good quantity of water.

The scenery had nothing very remarkable about it; but it exhibited a cheerful, homely character, surrounded as it was by hills, and enlivened by herds of camels, horses, and cattle, which toward evening gathered round the well to be watered; and the character of peace and repose which it exhibited induced me to make a sketch of it.

Among the animals there were some excellent she-camels, which, as evening advanced, were crying and eagerly looking out for their young ones, that had been left in the surrounding villages. The inhabitants, who treated us hospitably, seemed to be tolerably well off; and the feasting in my little encampment continued almost the whole night long.

Thursday, December 16th. With the greater eagerness we started early in the morning, in order to reach the capital of this little hilly country, which forms a very sharp wedge or triangle of considerable length, projecting from the heart of Negroland toward the border of the desert, and exhibiting fixed settlements and a tolerably well-arranged government, in contrast to the turbulent districts of nomadic encampments. Our direction meanwhile remained the same as on the preceding day, being mostly a northeasterly one. The situation of this province, as
laid down from my route upon the map, seems very remarkable; but we must not forget that in ancient times, during the flourishing period of the empire of Börmu, the whole country between this advanced spur and Kinem formed populous provinces subjected to the same government, and that it is only since the middle of the last century that, the Berbers or Tawgrek having politically separated entirely from the Kaniiri, the whole eastern part of these northern provinces has been laid waste and depopulated, while the energetic rulers of the province of M-ini6 have not only succeeded in defending their little territory, but have even extended it in a certain degree, encroaching little by little upon the neighboring province of Dfggera, a tribe of the Tawgrek, whom I have mentioned on a former occasion.*

The country in general preserved the same character as on the previous day, the narrow vales and glens inclosed by the granitic eminences being well cultivated, and studded with small hamlets,

* Vol. i., p. 472.

52 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
in some of which the huts approached the architecture usual in KAnem. Several troops of natives met us on the road, with packoxen, over the backs of which large baskets were thrown by means of a sort of network; they were returning from the capital, having delivered their quota of the ‘ashir or "kdingona mdibe." The system of tax-paying in these western provinces is very different from that usual in Börmu Proper, as I shall soon have another opportunity of relating.

After a march of about six miles, an isolated date palm announced a different region, and a little farther on we entered the valley of Tingur6, running from west to east, and adorned with a fine plantation of cotton, besides a grove of about two hundred date palms. Having traversed this valley where the road leads to Bllla M'allem Gdrgebe, we entered a thicket of mimosas, while the eminences assumed a rounder shape. The country then became gradually more open, scarcely a single tree being met with, and we obtained a distant view of Guire, situated at the southern foot and on the lower slope of a rocky eminence, when we began to descend considerably along the shelving ground of the expansive plain laid out in stubble-fields, with here and there a few trees, and intersected by several large and deep ravines.

Having first inspected the site of the town, I chose my camping-ground in a small recess of the sandy downs which border the

WEALTH OF MU'NIYOMA.
south side of a concavity or dell surrounding the town on this side, and laid out in small kitchen gardens and cotton plantations, as shown in the accompanying wood-cut; for, notwithstanding the entreaties of the governor, I did not like to take up my quarters inside the place.

In the evening I received a visit from Yusuf Muknf, the late Mr. Richardson's interpreter, who at present had turned merchant, and, having sold several articles to Miiniy6ma, the governor of the country, had been waiting here three months for payment. He was very amiable on this occasion, and apparently was not
indisposed to accompany me to S6koto, if I had chosen to make him an offer; but I knew his character too well, and feared rather than liked him. He gave me a faithful account of the wealth and power of Mdniy6ma, who, he said, was able to bring into the field 1500 horsemen, and from 8000 to 10,000 archers, while his revenues amounted to 30,000,000 of shells, equivalent, according to the standard of this place, to 10,000 Spanish dollars, besides a large tribute in corn, equal to the tenth part, or ‘ash-dr, which, in all the provinces of B6rn6 northwest of the komddugu, in consequence of the governors of these territories having preserved their independence against the Fdlbe or Fell6ta, belongs to them, and not to the sovereign lord, who resides in K-dkawa. Each full-grown male inhabitant of the province has to pay annually 1000 shells for himself, and, if he possess cattle, for every pack-ox 1000 shells more, and for every slave 2000.

I had heard a great deal about the debts of this governor; but I learned, on farther inquiry, that they only pressed heavily upon him this year, when the revenues of his province were greatly reduced by the inroad of the Tawdrekk, of which I have spoken before. As a specimen of his style of life, I may mention that he had recently bought a horse of Tarkfye breed for 700,000 shells, a very high price in this country, equal to about £50 sterling.

Friday, December 17th. Having got ready my presents for the governor, I went to pay him a visit; and, while waiting in the inner court-yard, I had sufficient leisure to admire the solid and well-ornamented style of building which his palace exhibited, and which almost cast into the shade the frail architectural monuments of the capital. I was then conducted into a stately but rather sombre audience-hall, where the governor was sitting on a divan of clay, clad in a blue berndis, and surrounded by a great number of people whom curiosity had brought thither. Having exchanged

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

with him the usual compliments, I told him that, as Mr. Richardson had paid him a visit on his first arrival in the country, and on his way from the north to Kidkawa, it had also been my desire, before leaving B’rn6 for the western tribes, to pay my respects to him as the most noble, powerful, and intelligent governor of the country, it being our earnest wish to be on friendly terms with all the princes of the earth, more especially with those so remarkably distinguished as was his family. He receivell my address with great kindness, and appeared much flattered by it.

The number of people present on this occasion was so great that I did not enter into closer conversation with the governor, the darkness of the place not allowing me to distinguish his features. I had, however, a better opportunity of observing his almost European cast of countenance when I paid him another visit in order to satisfy his curiosity by firing my six-barreled revolver before his eyes. On this occasion he did me the honor of putting on the white hel6ii bernis which had constituted the chief attraction of my present, and which he esteemed very highly, as most noble people do in this country, while the common chief values more highly a dress of showy colors. The white half-silk bernis looked very well, especially as he wore underneath it a red cloth kaftan.
The real name of the governor is Koso, MiniyOma being, as I have stated on a former occasion,* nothing but a general title, meaning the governor of Muniy6, which, in the old division of the vast empire of B6rnu, formed part of the Yerf. In the present reduced state of the kingdom of B6rnu, he was the most powerful and respectable of the governors, and by his personal dignity had more the appearance of a prince than almost any other chief whom I saw in Negroland. Besides making himself respected by his intelligence and just conduct, he has succeeded in spreading a sort of mystery round his daily life, which enhanced his authority. The people assured me that nobody ever saw him eating; but, as far as I had an opportunity of observing, even his family harbored that jealousy and want of confidence which undermines the well-being of so many princely households based on polygamy.

K'so at that time was a man of about sixty years of age, and, unfortunately, died shortly afterward, in the year 1854. He had displayed a great deal of energy on several occasions. It was he *

MU'NIYO'MA.-KO'SO.

who had transferred the seat of government of this province from Bine to Guire, having conquered (or probably only reconquered) this territory from the Diggera, the Tawirek tribe formerly scattered over a great part of Husa. But, notwithstanding his own energetic character, he had manifested his faithfulness to his sovereign lord in K-6kawa at the time of the inroad of the Wid6y, when Serld Ibrim, the governor of Znfiadr, not only declared himself independent, but even demanded homage from the neighboring vassals of the B6rnu empire, and, when such Was denied him, marched against Miiniy6ma, but was beaten near the town of Wshek. Such faithful adherence to the new dynasty of the KAnemiyn in Kdkawa is the more remarkable in this man, as the ruling family of Mdniy6ma seems to have been of ancient standing, and it was an ancestor of K6so, of the name of S6rriy6, who once conquered the strong town of Diura, the most ancient of the H iusa states.

But, notwithstanding the more noble disposition which certainly distinguished this man from most of his colleagues, here also the misery connected with the horrors of slave-hunting and the slavetrade was very palpable; for, in order to be enabled to pay his debts, he was just then about to undertake a foray against one of the towns of the Diggera, the inhabitants of which had behaved in a friendly manner toward the Tawdrek during their recent inroad, and he begged me very urgently to stay until his return from the foray. But as I did not want any thing from him, and as the road before me was a long one, I preferred pursuing my journey, taking care, however, to obtain information from him, and from the principal men in his company, respecting those localities of the province which most deserved my attention..

K6so departed, with his troop in several small detachments, about noon on the 18th, the signal for starting not being made with a drum, as is usual in Bornu, but with an iron instrument which dates from the old pagan times, and not unlike that of the Mdsgu. It was also very characteristic that during his absence the lieutenant
governorship was exercised by the mgiri, or the mother of the governor, who was said to have ruled on former occasions in a very energetic manner, punishing all the inhabitants capable of bearing arms who had remained behind. Before setting out, however, on his foray, the governor sent me a camel as a present, which, although it was not a first-rate one, and was knocked up before I reached Kitsena, nevertheless proved of some use for a few days. I presume that it had been his intention to have given me a better animal, and that his design had only been frustrated by some selfish people. He had expressed a wish to purchase from me a pair of Arab pistols; but, although I possessed three beautifully-ornamented pairs, I wanted them myself as presents for other chiefs on my farther march, and therefore could not gratify his wish. During my stay here he treated me very hospitably, sending me, besides numerous dishes of prepared food, two fat sheep as a present.

Gdre, the present residence of Mdniy6ma, lies on the southern slope of a rocky eminence, and is separated by irregular ground into several detached portions, containing altogether a population of about 8000 inhabitants. In former years it was more spacious, and its circumference had only been lessened a short time before my arrival, in order to insure a greater security. But it is only surrounded with a single, and in some places a double fence or stockade, the southwestern corner, which is most exposed to an attack, being protected in a curious way by a labyrinth of fences, including a number of cotton-grounds and kitchen-gardens.*

But although in this manner the town is only very insufficiently protected against a serious attack, the inhabitants have the advantage of the rocky cone rising over their heads, where they might certainly retire in such a case.

Sunday, December 19th. I left Gdre, continuing my march toward Zinder, not along the most direct road, but with the intention of

* I here give a list of the towns and more important villages belonging to the province of Mdniy6: Gdre, the present capital, conquered from the Diggera by K6so, the present governor; Btine, the old capital; New Bdne; Sulldri, the chief marketplace; Wtishek; Giranana; Sangiya; Mdza; Gertgendi; Mdznafi; Mdstatd; Kel&no; Kizgmmana; Deltak6ri; B6bit, W. of Old Bine; Birni-n-Gnmachak or Ch6chega, the oldest possession of the Milniy6mas; G.bu, inhabited besides by Manga, also by Kanlri and Fulbe; Bratiwa; K61ori; two places called Gediy6; Kdbara: Fasd; Chigamo; Mreri; Ngdmari; Berddri; W6do; Dudgmerf; Yebil; Derlfka; Kalalfwa; Chando; Wurme; MASoda; Fusdim ghqna; Bermiri; three places called Kadalebbugua; two places Mgja; Changa, with a market every Wednesday; Hog6marf; Ginuwa; Umdrarf; Maiganarf; Falgm; three places Kololuwa; Dongri; Giso; Onjol; Wonji; Aladgri; Grdmari; U’duwa; Koigdim Bftuwa; Kveri; Wirrim; Shddiga; Ngamda; Boggostiwa; ShA; Brida; Garekki; Mgdar6; Gergdriwd; Sassuddri; Gsab; Maya; Lgssori; Shdt; Adra.; Gandkta; Maye; Kelle; Aidambd; Ferim; IHugadebbuwa; two places Felldari; Ydmerf; Dtigeri; Bdgu; Ngoliwa; Tdmruwa; Gur6gudd; U’rowa; Gdruwa; Farram; Hosomawdro; Shishuwa; Kangdruwa; Bdbot; M’allem Midori; Da-drdluwa;
PECULIAR SITE OF WU'SHEK.
visiting those localities which were likely to present the most interesting features.
I therefore kept first in a westerly direction, passing through a mountainous
district, and farther on through more open country, with the purpose of visiting
Wdshek, a place which had been mentioned to me as peculiarly interesting. The
situation of the place has something (as the plate a few pages farther on, as well as
the woodcut, will show) very peculiar about it
-a mixture of fertility and aridity, of cultivation and desolation, of industry and
neglect, being situated at some distance from the foot of a mountain range, and
separated from it by a barren tract, while on the side itself the moisture percolates
in several small dells and hollows; and thus, besides a good crop of wheat, several
small groves of date-trees are produced. The largest of these groves, skirting the
east side of the town, contains about 800 trees, while a little farther east another
dell winds along, containing about 200 palms, and, joining the former to the north
of the village, widens to a more open ground richly overgrown with tamarind-
trees, which are entwined with creepers and clad with herbage. This grove, which
encompasses the whole of the north side of the place, exhibits a very pleasant
aspect. Several ponds are formed here, and abundance of water is found in holes
from a foot to two feet in depth.
Going round this depression, I entered the town from the northeast quarter, and
here found a large open space laid out in fields of wheat, kitchen gardens, with
onions, and cotton-grounds, all in different stages of cultivation: most of the beds
where wheat was grown were just being laid out, the clods of dry earth being
broken and the ground irrigated, while in other places the green stalks of the crop
were already shooting forth. The onions were very closely packed together. Every
where the fertilizing element was close at hand, and palm-trees were shooting up
in several detached clusters; but large mounds of rubbish prevented my taking a
comprehensive view over the whole, and the more so as the village is separated
into four detached portions lying at a considerable distance from each other, and
forming altogether a circumference of about three miles, with a population of
from 8000 to 9000 inhabitants. But the whole is merely surrounded by a light
fence. The principal cluster, or hamlet, surrounds a small eminence, on the top of
which stands the house of the head man or mayor, built of clay, and having quite a
commanding position, while at the northeastern foot of the hill a very picturesque
date

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
2 f
5%5
W'SHEE.
1. Principal hamlet surrounding the dwelling of the biliama, which is situated on
an eminence.
2. Several smaller clusters of huts. 3. 4. Shallow vales with palm-trees.
5. Small depressions or cavities in the sandy soil, also with palm-trees.
6. Another group of palm-trees on the border of a small brook formed by a source of living water.

grove spreads out in a hollow. The ground being uneven, the dwellings, like those in G~re, are mostly situated in hollows, and the court-yards present a new and characteristic feature; for, althou gh the cottage 's themselves are built of reed, and stalks of Negro corn, the corn-stacks, far from presenting that light and perishable appearance which they exhibit all over Mlusa, approach closely that solid style of building which we have observed in the Mlisgu country, being built of clay, and rising to the height of ten fest.

W-lishek is the principal place for the cultivation of wheat in the whole western part of Bo'rn; -and if there had been a market that day, it would have been most profitable for me to have provided myself here with this article, wheat being very essential for me, as I had only free servants at my disposal, who would by no means undertake the pounding and preparing of the native corn, while a preparation of -wheat, such as mohamsa, can be always kept ready; but the market of Wdishek, is only held every Wednesday. In the whole of this country, one hundred shells, or k--ingona, which are estimated equal to one gibagi, form the standard currency in the market; and it is remarkable that this sum is St

III
I, i')
'I
II
I
LIII ib iViiiiili i1~I~I
i IIiliI
~I ~L.
I,
'I I~I~I
II; d
~ I ~ i;
"I I~'iL~

GE'DIY0'-GA'BATA.

not designated by the Kandiri word "mfye" or "y6ro," nor with the common Husa word "darf," but by the name "zango," which is used only in the western parts of Husa and in S6koto.

I had pitched my tent near the southeastern hamlet, which is the smallest of the four, close to the spot where I had entered the place, not being aware of its extent, and from here I made, in the afternoon, a sketch of the mountain range toward the south, and the dry shelving level bordered by the strip of green verdure with the palm-trees in the foreground, which is represented in the plate opposite. In the evening I was hospitably regaled by each of the two bfllama who govern the town, and I had the satisfaction of making a "tailor to his majesty Miniiyma," who
was residing here, very happy by the present of a few large darning-needles for sewing the h'bbedi or wadded dress for the soldiers.

Monday, December 20th. On leaving Wishek, we directed our course by the spur of the mountain chain to the south-southwest, crossing several hollows, one of which presented a very luxuriant cotton-ground carefully fenced in by the euphorbiacea, here called migarg, which I have described on a former occasion. The country in general consisted of a broken sandy level clothed with tall reeds. Leaving, then, a small village of the name of G6diy6 in a recession of the mountains, we entered an undulating plain, the prairie of N6go, open toward the west, but bounded on the east by an amphitheatre of low hills, and densely clothed with herbage and broom, to which succeeded underwood of small mimosas, and farther on, when we approached the hills on the other side of the plain, large clusters of "abfga," or Ca pparis sodata. Only here and there traces of cultivation were to be seen. The sun was very powerful; and as we marched during the hottest hours of the day, I felt very unwell, and was obliged to sit down for a while.

After having traversed the plain, we again had the mountain chain on our left; and in a recession or amphitheatre which is formed by the eminences, we obtained a sight of Gibita, the old residence of the M'niy6ma, but at present exhibiting nothing but a heap of unsightly ruins, encompassed toward the road side by a wall built of different kinds of stone, but at present entirely in decay; while in the very angle of the recession at the foot of the mountains a stone dwelling is seen, where it was the custom, in olden times.

* The Kantiri, in order to express "one hundred," have relinquished the expression of their native idiom, and generally make use of the Arab term "miye."

TRAVEL IN AFRICA.

for every ruler of the country, upon his accession to the throne, to remain in retirement for seven days. It had been my intention to visit this spot; but the present governor had urgently requested me to abstain from such a profane undertaking, the place being, as he said, haunted by spirits; and my sudden indisposition prevented me from accomplishing my design. The natives say that there are caves leading from the stone dwelling into the rock.

Our left being bordered by the mountain slope, which is beautifully varied, and having on our right a fine grove of magnificent trees and cultivated fields, we reached, at three o'clock in the afternoon, the well situated in the recession of the mountains, but had great difficulty in choosing a spot tolerably free from ants. Here I felt so weak that I did not care either about the ruins of Gibita or any thing else but the most profound repose.

Tuesday, December 21st. The night was very cold and disagreeable, a heavy northeasterly gale not only bringing cold, but likewise covering us with clouds of the feathery prickle Pennisetum distichum, and we started in a condition any thing but cheerful. The mountain chain on our left now receded, and the country exhibited a rich abundance of timber and herbage, the forest being agreeably broken by a large extent of stubble-fields where millet and beans were grown; and distinguished among the cultivated grounds by the appearance of a certain degree of industry were the fields of Ch6gchegg or Gammachak, the oldest estate of the
family of Midniy6ma, which we had on our left.* In the intervening tracts of forest the um-el-barka or l6go (Mimosa Nilotica) was very common, but it was at present leafless. Granite protrudes now and then; and farther on the whole country became clothed with retem or broom.

Close to the village of Baratiwa we crossed a narrow but beautiful and regular vale, adorned with the finest tamarind-trees I ever saw, which were not only developing their domelike umbrageous crowns in full splendor, but which were the more beautiful as the fruit was just beginning to ripen. Close to the well a group of slender dfim palms were starting forth, with their light fanlike foliage, in singular contrast to the domelike crowns of dark green foliage which adorned the tamarind-trees. This beautiful tree farther on also remained the greatest ornament to the landscape; but, besides this, the k6mor or baire also, and other species, were

* I am a little uncertain, at present, whether Lis is the old residence, or the Gimmazak near Wtishek.

KELE'NO.-NATRON LAKE.

observed, and the fan palm was to be seen here and there. Cattle and camels enlivened the country, which presented the appearance of a vast field, and was dotted with numerous corn-stacks.

I had entertained the hope of being able this day to reach the natron lake of Kel6no; but I convinced myself that the distance was too great, and, although I reached the first hamlet, which bears the name of Keleno, I was obliged to encamp without being able to reach the lake. There had been in former times a large place of the same name hereabout; but the inhabitants had dispersed, and settled in small detached hamlets. Close to our encampment there was a pond of small size, but of considerable depth, which seemed never to dry up. It was densely overgrown with tall papyrus and mel6s. The core of the root of this rush was used by my young Shuiwa companion to allay his hunger, but did not seem to me to be very palatable; and, fortunately, it was not necessary to have recourse to such food, as we were treated hospitably by the inhabitants of the hamlet. The barte, or, as they are here called, k6mor, have generally a very stunted and extremely poor appearance in this district, and nothing at all like that magnificent specimen which I had seen on my first approach to Sudin, in the valley of B6ghel.

Wednesday, December 22d. The night was very cold, in fact, one of the coldest which I experienced on my whole journey, the thermometer being only 80 above freezing point; but nevertheless, there being no wind, the cold was less sensibly felt, and my servants were of opinion that it had been much colder the day before, when the thermometer indicated 220 more.

As the natron lake did not lie in my direct route, I sent the greater part of my people, together with the camels, straight on to Badamilni, while I took only my two body-guards, the Gat6ni and the Shiwa, with me. The country presented the same appearance as on the previous day; but there was less cultivation, and the dim palm gradually became predominant. In one place there were two isolated del6b palms. Several specimens of the Kajilia were also observed. The level was broken by numerous hollows, the bottom being mostly covered with rank grass, and now and then even containing water. In front of us, three detached eminences
stretched out into the plain from north to south, the natron lake being situated at
the western foot of the central eminence, not far from a village called Magijiri.
When we had passed this village, which was full of natron, stored up partly in

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

large piles, partly sewn into "tikrufa," or matting coverings, we obtained a view of
the natron lake, lying before us in the hollow at the foot of the rocky eminence,
with its snow-white surface girt all round by a green border of luxuriant
vegetation. The sky was far from clear, as is very often the case at this season;
and a high wind raised clouds of dust upon the surface of the lake.
The border of vegetation was formed by well-kept cottongrounds, which were just
in flower, and by kitchen gardens, where deriba or Corchorus olitorius was
grown, the cultivated ground being broken by ddms bush and rank grass. Crossing
this verdant and fertile strip, we reached the real natron lake, when we hesitated
some time whether or not we should venture upon its surface:, for the crust of
natron was scarcely an inch thick, the whole of the ground underneath consisting
of black boggy soil, from which the substance separates continually afresh.

However, I learned that, while the efflorescence at present consisted of only small
bits or crumbled masses, during the time of the biggela, that is to say, at the end of
the rainy season, larger pieces are obtained here, though not to be compared with
those found in Lake Tsfid
-the kind of natron which is procured here being called "boktor," while the other
quality is called "kilbu tsarffu." A large provision of natron, consisting of from
twenty to twenty-five piles about ten yards in diameter, and four in height,
protected by a layer of reeds, was stored up at the northern end of the lake. The
whole circumference of the basin, which is called "6fbge" by the inhabitants, was
one mile and a half.

I here changed my course in order to join my people, who had gone -on straight to
Badamuni. The country at first was agreeably diversified and undulating, the
irregular vales being adorned with ddms palms and fig-trees; and cultivation was
seen to a great extent, belonging to villages of the territory of Gidshi,* which we
left on one side. Presently the country became more open, and suddenly I saw
before me a small blue lake, bounded toward the east by an eminence of
considerable altitude, and toward the north by a rising ground, on the slope of
which a place of considerable extent was stretching out.

Coming from the monotonous country of B6rnu, the interest of this locality was
greatly enhanced; and the nearer I approached,

* This territory comprises the following villages: Farilkaia, G6rebf, Matariwa,
Tsamaiku, Kachebar6, Yika, and Bgda. The greater part of the inhabitants already
belong to the Hdusa race, or, as the Kandri say, "A'funi."

LAKES OF BADAMUNI.

the more peculiar did its features appear to me; for I now discovered that the
lake, or rather the two lakes, were girt all round by the freshest border of such a
variety of vegetation as is rarely seen in this region of Kegroland.
We had some difficulty in joining our camels and people, who had pursued the direct road from Kelno; for, having appointed as the spot where we were to meet the northeastern corner of the town of Gadabuini, or Badam ni, toward the lake, we found that it would be extremely difficult for them to get there, and we therefore had to ride backward and forward before we fixed upon a place for our encampment, at the western end of this small luxuriant oasis. On this occasion I obtained only a faint idea of the richness and peculiarity of this locality; but on the following morning I made a more complete survey of the whole place, as well as my isolated situation and the means at my disposal would allow, the result of which is represented in the following woodcut.

The whole of the place forms a kind of shallow vale, stretching out in a westeasterly direction, and surrounded on the west, north, and south sides by hills rising from 100 to 200 feet, but bordered toward the east by Mount Shedifka, which rises to about 500 or 600 feet above the general level of the country. In this vale water is found gushing out from the ground in rich, copious springs, and feeds two lakes after irrigating a considerable extent of cultivated ground, where, besides sorghum and millet, cotton, pepper, indigo, and onions are grown. These lakes are united by a narrow channel thickly overgrown with the tallest reeds, but, notwithstanding their junction, are quite of a different nature, the westernmost containing fresh water, while that of the eastern lake is quite brackish, and full of natron. It seems to be a peculiar feature in this region that all the chains of hills and mountains stretch from northeast to southwest, this being also the direction of the lakes.

The chief part of the village itself lies on the northwest side of the plantation, on the sloping ground of the downs, while a smaller hamlet borders the gardens on the southwest side. The plantations are very carefully fenced, principally with the bush called migari, which I have mentioned on former occasions; and besides k6ka or monkey-bread-trees, and k6rna, or nebek, a few date palms contributed greatly to enliven the scenery. The monkeybread-trees, however, were all of small size, and of remarkably slender growth, such as I had not before observed, while the public place or "ffge" of the smaller village was adorned by a karigetree of so rich a growth that it even surpassed, if not in height, at least in the exuberance of its foliage, the finest trees of this species which I had seen in the Midsgu country.

I began my survey of this interesting locality on the south side,

FRESH-WATER AND NATRON LAKE.
following first the narrow path which separates the southern village from the plantation, and visiting again the principal source, the rich volume of which, gushing along between the hedges, had already excited my surprise and delight the previous day.

This lower village can not be very healthy, both on account of its exuberant vegetation, and the quantity of water in which the neighborhood abounds; but its situation is extremely pleasant to the eye. Keeping, then, close along the southern border of the plantation, I reached the eastern edge of the western lake, which is thickly overgrown with papyrus, and mel6s, while, in the narrow space left between the plantation and the lake, the baiire and the giwasA are the common trees.

The presence of the latter at this spot seems very remarkable, as this tree, in general, is looked for in vain in this whole region; and I scarcely remember to have seen it again before reaching the village, a few miles to the northeast of Wurn6, which has thence received its name.

The papyrus covers the whole shore at the point of junction of the two lakes, while in the water itself, where it first becomes brackish, another kind of weed was seen, called "kumba," the core of which is likewise eaten by the greater part of the poorer inhabitants, and is more esteemed than the melhs. It was highly interesting to me to observe that my young Shidwa companion, who was brought up on the shores of the Ts~d, immediately recognized, from the species of reeds, the nature of the water on the border of which they grew, as this mixed character of brackish and sweet water is, exactly in the same manner, peculiar to the outlying smaller basins of that great Central African lagoon.*

I found the junction of the two lakes from sixty-five to seventy yards broad, and at present fordable, the water being four feet and a half in depth. The difference in the appearance of the natron lake from that exhibited by the fresh-water basin was remarkable in the extreme, the water of the one being of a dark blue color, and presenting quite a smooth surface, while that of the other resembled the dark green color of the sea, and, agitated by the strong gale, broke splashing and foaming on the shore in mighty billows, so that my two companions, the Shdwa lad and the Husa boy, whom I had taken with me on this excursion, were quite in ecstasy, having never before witnessed such a spectacle. It would have been a fine spot for a water-party. The

* See what I have said on this subject, vol. ii., p. 64.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

surrounding landscape, with Mount Shedfka in the east, was extremely inviting, although the weather was not very clear, and had been exceedingly foggy in the morning. But there 'was nei'- ther boat nor canoe, although the lake is of considerable depth, and is said always to preserve about the same level; for, according to the superstition of the inhabitants, its waters are inhabited by demons, and no one would dare to expose himself to their pranks, either by swimming or in a boat. I The brackish quality of the water arises entirely from the nature of the soil. In the centre it seems to be decidedly of such a quality; but I found that near the border, which is greatly indented, the nature of the water in the
different creeks was very varying. In one it was fresh, while in a neighboring one it was not at all drinkable; but, nevertheless, even here there were sometimes wells of the sweetest water quite close to the border. Swarms of water-fowl, of the species called "girmaka" by the Hiusa people, and "gubri" by the Kanuri, together with the black rejfia and the small sanderling, enlivened the water's edge, where it presented a sandy beach.

A little farther on, the melds and kumba were succeeded by the tall bulrush called "bds," while beyond the northeasterly border of the lake an isolated date palm adorned the scenery, which in other respects entirely resembled the shores of the sea, a rich profusion of sea-weed being carried to the bank by the billows. Then succeeded a cotton plantation, which evidently was indebted for its existence to a small brook formed by another source of fresh water which joins the lake from this side. From the end of this plantation, where the natron lake attains its greatest breadth of about a mile and a half, I kept along the bank in a southwesterly direction, till I again reached the narrow junction between the two lakes. Here the shore became very difficult to traverse, on account of an outlying branch of the plantation closely bordering the lake, and I had again to ascend the downs from whence I had enjoyed the view of this beautiful panorama on the previous day. I thus re-entered the principal village from the northeast side; and while keeping along the upper road, which intersects the market-place, I saw with delight that the town is bounded on the north side also by a narrow but very rich vale, meandering along and clad with a profusion of vegetation; and I here observed another spring, which broke forth with almost as powerful a stream as that near the southern quarter, and was en-

SURVEY OF THE LAKE.-MI'RRIYA.

livened by a number of women busily employed in fetching their supply of water. The market-place is formed of about thirty sheds or stalls; and there is a good deal of weaving to be observed in the place, its whole appearance exhibiting signs of industry. I could not, however, obtain a sheep, or even as much as a fowl, so that our evening's repast was rather poor; and a very cold easterly wind blowing direct into the door of my tent, which I had opened toward Mount Shedkia in order to enjoy the pleasant prospect of the lakes and the plantation, rendered it still more cheerless. The whole of the inhabitants belong to the Hiusa race, and the governor himself is of that nation. He is in a certain degree dependent on the governor of Zinder, and not directly on the sheikh; and he was treated in the most degrading manner by my trooper, although the latter was a mere attendant of A'dama, the governor of Dongri.

Friday, December 24th. I made an interesting day's march to Miirriya, another locality of the province Demigherim, greatly favored by nature. The first part of our road was rather hilly, or even mountainous, a promontory of considerable elevation jutting out into the more open country from S. E., and forming in the whole district a well-marked boundary. The village Hindari, which lies at the foot
of a higher mountain bearing the same name, and which we reached after a march of about two miles, was most charmingly situated, spreading out in several straggling groups on the slopes of the hills, and exhibiting a far greater appearance of prosperity than Badamuni. It was highly interesting to take a peep on horseback at the busy scenes which the courtyards exhibited. Poultry was here in great abundance.

While descending from the village, we crossed a beautiful ravine enlivened by a spring, and adorned by a few detached groups of date and deleb palms spreading their feathery foliage by the side of the tidm palms. Leaving then a cotton plantation, stretching out where the ravine widened, we ascended the higher ground, our route lying now through cultivated ground, at other times through forest; and, after a march of about fourteen miles, we crossed a kind of shallow vale, richly adorned with vegetation, and bordered toward the north by sandy downs, over which lie.

* The territory under his command comprises, besides Badamuni, four villages. All situated toward the north, their names being as follows: Jishwa, Koik6m, Zerm6, and JAgaw.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

The direct route to Zinder. A little lower down this valley we passed a small village called Potor6, distinguished by the extent of its cotton plantations. Along the lower grounds a few datetrees form a beautiful fringe to this little oasis; here, also, springs seemed to be plentiful, and large ponds of water were formed. Four miles beyond this place we reached the wall of the town of Mrriya, which was beautifully adorned with large tamarindtrees. This town had been a large place, and the capital of the whole western province of Bornu. But when the town of Zinder was founded, about twenty-five years previously, by Slimfin, the father of the present governor Ibrim, Mrriya began to decline, and the chief of this territory fell into a certain degree of dependence upon the governor of Zinder. At the north side of the town there is an extensive district cultivated with cotton and wheat, and irrigated likewise by springs which ooze forth from the sandy downs; besides a few date-trees, a group of slender, feathery-leaved g6nda overshadowed the plantation, and gave it an uncommonly attractive character.

Having proceeded in advance of my camels, which had followed for some time another path, I had to wait till long after sunset before they came up, and, while resting in the open air, received a visit from the governor of the town, who, in true Hiusa fashion, arrived well dressed and mounted, with a numerous train of men on horseback and on foot, singing men, and musicians.

Saturday, December 25th. This was to be the day of my arrival in Zinder, an important station for me, as I had here to wait for new supplies, without which I could scarcely hope to penetrate any great distance Westward.

The country was more open than it had been the preceding day, and the larger or smaller eminences were entirely isolated, with the exception of those near Zinder, which formed more regular chains. The ground consisted mostly of coarse sand and gravel, the rocks being entirely of sandstone, and intersected by numerous small water-courses, at present dry. This being the nature of the ground, the
district was not very populous; but we passed some villages which seemed to be tolerably well off, as they had cattle and poultry.
Pursuing our northwesterly direction, we reached the town of Zinder after a march of about nine miles and a half and, wind ing round the south side of the town, which is surrounded by a low rampart of earth and a small ditch, entered it from the west.

CHARACTER OF Z'INDER.
Passing then by the house of the sherff el Fdsi, the agent of the vizier of B6rnu, we reached the quarters which had been assigned to us, and which consisted of two clay rooms. Here I was enabled to deposit all my property in security, no place in the whole of Sudin being so ill famed, on account of the numerous conflagrations to which it is subjected, as Zinder.
The situation of Zinder is peculiar and interesting. A large mass of rock starts forth from the area of the town on the west side, while others are scattered in ridges round about the town, so that a rich supply of water collects at a short depth below the surface, fertilizing a good number of tobacco-fields, and giving to the vegetation around a richer character. This is enhanced especially by several groups of date palms, while a number of hamlets, or zang6, belonging to the Tawirek chiefs who command the salttrade, and especially one which belongs to Lds-ii, and another to A'nur, add greatly to the interest of the place. The larger plantation, which the sherif el Fsi, the agent of the vizier of B6rnu, had recently begun to the south of the town, although very promising, and full of vegetables difficult to procure in this country, was too young to contribute any thing to the general character of the place. It was entirely wanting in larger trees, and had only a single palm-tree and a lime. I am afraid, after the revolution of December, 1853, which caused the death of that noble Arab, who was one of the more distinguished specimens of his nation, it has returned to the desolate state from which he called it forth.
The accompanying ground-plan of the town and its environs will, I hope, convey some idea of its peculiar character; but it can give not the faintest notion of the bustle and traffic which concentrate in this place, however limited they may be when compared with those of European cities. Besides some indigo-dyeing, there is scarcely any industry in Znder; yet its commercial importance has of late become so great that it may with some propriety be called " the Gate of Sudin." But, of course, its importance is only based on the power of the kingdom of B6rnu, which it serves to connect more directly with the north, along the western route by way of Gh6t and Ghadimes, which has the great advantage over the eastern or Fezzin route that even smaller caravans can proceed along it with some degree of security, that other route having become extremely unsafe. It was then the most busy time for the inhabitants, the salt-caravan of the K6l-owl having arrived some time previously, and all the hamlets situated around the town

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
"-J .......
74
1. Residence of governor, inclosed by matting-work.
2. House of sherif el F.,
4. My own quarters.
5. Quarters built for the accommodation of strangers.
6. "Sonia," or plantation, belonging to the sherif el F&Ls
   T. Hamlet zang6," belonging to A'nur, the chief of the Kl-owi.
7. "Zang6," belonging to L~isfi, the chief of the K6l-azan6res.
8. "Zang6" belonging to Lisfi, the chief of the Tawhlrek.
9. "Zang6" belonging to some other chiefs among the Tawhlrek.

Being full of these desert traders, who during their leisure hours endeavored to
make themselves as merry as possible with music and dancing. This gave me an
opportunity of seeing again my friend, the old chief of Tintdlust, who, however,
in consequence of the measures adopted toward him by Mr. Richardson, behaved
rather coolly toward me, although I did not fail to make him a small present.
Being most anxious to complete my scientific labors and researches in regard to
Bornu, and to send home as much of my journal as possible, in order not to
expose it to any risk, I staid most of the time in my quarters, which I had
comfortably fitted up with a good supply of "sfggedf" or coarse reed mats, taking
only now and then, in the afternoon, a ride on horseback either round the town or
into the large well-wooded valley which stretches along from N.W. to S.E., at
some distance from the town, to

PECUNIARY SUPPLIES.

the N.E. Once I took a longer ride, to a village about eight miles S.S.E., situated
on an eminence with a vale at its foot, fringed with ddm palms and rich in
saltpetre.

On the 20th of January, 1853, I received from the hands of the Arab Mohammed
el 'Akeru't, whom I have had occasion to mention previously,* a valuable
consignment, consisting of one thousand dollars in speci,t which were packed
very cleverly in two boxes of sugar, so that scarcely any body became aware that I
had received money, and the messenger seemed well deserving of a present equal
-to his stipulated salary; but I received no letters on this occasion. I had also
expected to be able to replace here such of my instruments as had been spoiled or
broken by new ones; but I was entirely disappointed in this respect, and hence, in
my farther journey, my observations regarding elevation and temperature are
rather defective.

I then finished my purchases, amounting altogether to the value of 775,000 kurdf,
of all sorts of articles which I expected would be useful on my farther
proceedings, such as red common bernises, white turbans, looking-glasses, cloves,
razors, chaplets, and a number of other things, for which I had at the time the best
opportunity of purchasing, as all Arab and European merchandise, after the arrival
of the k=ffala, was rather cheap. Thus I prepared for my setting out for the west;
for although I would gladly have waited a few days longer, in order to receive the
other parcel, consisting of a box with English ironware and four hundred dollars,
which was on the road for me by way of Kdkawa, and which, as I have stated
before, had been intrusted, in Fezzin, to a Tebd merchant, it was too essential for
the success of my enterprise that I should arrive in Kitsena before the G6beriwa
set out on a warlike expedition against that province, for which they were then
preparing on a grand scale. It was thus that the parcel above-mentioned, which, in conformity with my arrangements, was sent after me to Zinder by the vizier, and which arrived only a few days after I had left that place, remained there in the hands of the sherifl el Fisi, and, on his being assassinated in the revolution of 1854, and his house plundered, fell into the hands of the slaves of the usurper 'Aba e' Rahmin.

* See vol. i., p. 166.

Unfortunately, they were not all Spanish or Mexican dollars; but there were among the number forty pieces of five francs, and more than one hundred Turkish meşidiye.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

CHAPTER LV.

DEPARTURE FROM ZINDEE.--THE BORDER REGION BETWEEN THE BO'RUNU AND THE FULFU'LDE EMPIRES.--SECOND STAY IN KA'TSENA.

Sunday, January 30th, 1853. I left the capital of the westernmost province of the Būrnū empire in the best spirits, having at length succeeded, during my prolonged stay there, in getting rid of the disease in my feet, which had annoyed me ever since my return from Bagirmi to Kūkawa. I had, moreover, strengthened my little caravan by two very excellent camels, which I had bought here; and I was now provided with a sufficient supply of money, stores, and presents, the total value of which exceeded two thousand dollars, and which seemed to guarantee success to my undertaking, at least in a pecuniary point of view, and gave me confidence once more to try my fortune with the Filbe, my first dealings with whom had not been very promising. However, the road before me was any thing but safe, as I had again to traverse with my valuable property that border district intermediate between the independent Hiuśiwa and the Filbe, which is the scene of uninterrupted warfare and violence, and, unfortunately, there was no caravan at the time; but, nevertheless, the most intelligent men in the place were of opinion that this route, by way of Gazawa, was safer than that by Diura, the unscrupulous governor of the latter province, under cover of his authority, which could not be withstood with a high hand, being apparently more to be feared than the highway robbers in the border wilderness, who, by watchfulness and good arms, might be kept at a respectful distance. But altogether this was a rather unfortunate circumstance for me, as I cherished the ardent desire of visiting the town of Diura, which, as I have explained on a former occasion, seems to have been the oldest settlement of the Husa tribe, who appear to have been, from their origin, nearly related to the Berber family, the Dfgera, a section of that nation, being formerly entirely predominant in the territory of Diura. At that time, however, I entertained the hope that, on my return from the west, I might be enabled to visit the latter place, but circumstances prevented me from carrying out my design.

TY'RMENT.--IKAZKEZAN.

The whole country which we traversed on our way westward, besides being richly studded with fixed dwelling-places, was full of parties of A'sbeniwa salt-traders, partly moving on, partly encamped, and having their merchandise carefully...
protected by fences of corn-stalks. But, although these people greatly contributed to the animated character of the landscape, yet their presence by no means added to the security of the country, and altogether my order of march became now a very different one from what it had been. Throughout my march from Klíkawa to Zfnder, with a few exceptions, it had been my custom to proceed far in advance of the camels, with my horsemen, so that I used to arrive at the camping-ground before the greatest heat of the day had set in; but, on account of the greater insecurity of the country, it now became necessary for me to pursue my march slowly, in company with my luggage train.

The ground along our track, as we proceeded from Zfnder, was undulating, with ledges or small ridges and isolated masses of granite boulders starting forth here and there; but the country gradually improved, especially after we had passed a pond at the distance of about seven miles from the town, filling out a concavity or hollow, and fringed with wide-spreading trees and a fine plantation of cotton and tobacco, which were shaded by a few dcdm palms. Thus we reached the village of T-rmeni, lying at the border of a shallow vale, and surrounded with a strong stockade. Here we fell in with a numerous body of Ikizkezan, mustering, besides a great many on foot, twelve or thirteen men well mounted on horseback, and thinking themselves strong enough, in their independent spirit, to pursue a contraband road along the border district between Díura and K~tsena, in order to avoid paying any customs to the potentates of either. But the restless governor of Díura keeps a sharp look-out, and sometimes overtakes these daring smugglers.

Near the village of Dimbedi also, which we reached after a march of two miles from T -rmenf, through a more billy country, several divisions of the salt-caravan were encamped, and we chose oifr camping-ground near a troop of native traders, or fatiki. While we were pitching the tent, a Tírki or Amôshagh, mounted on horseback, came slowly up to us, apparently astonished at the peculiar character of the tent, which he seemed to recognize as an old acquaintance; but he was still more surprised when he recognized myself, for he was no other than Agld Batidre, the son of Ibrahîm, from Selfifiyet, the chief instigator of the foray made against us at the time of entering A'fr or A'sben, by the border tribes of that country.

In the depression of the plain toward the south from our encampment, where all the moisture of the district collected, cotton was cultivated to a great extent, while adjoining the village, which lay close to a ridge of granite, a small field of tobacco was to be seen. A petty market, which was held here, enabled us to provide ourselves with grain, poultry, and red pepper, as we had forgotten to lay in a store of the latter article, which is indispensable to travelers in hot countries.

Monday, January 31st. The district through which we passed was densely inhabited, but it was rather scantily timbered, the ground being clad only with short underwood; detached hills were seen now and then; but after a march of about seven miles, the character of the country changed, kldgo appearing more frbquently, while the soil consisted of deep sand. Toward the south the vegetation was richer, several Tawirek hamlets appearing in the distance. Thus we reached a
large well, about thirteen fathoms deep and richly provided with water, where a
large number of Bzawe, or Tawrek half-castes, of both sexes, were assembled;
and I was agreeably surprised at the greater proof of ingenuity which I here
observed, a young bull being employed in drawing up the water in a large leather
bag containing a supply sufficient for two horses, this being the only time during
my travels in Negroland that I observed such a method of drawing up the water,
which in general, even from the deepest wells, is procured by the labor of man
alone. The young bull was led by a very pretty Am6shagh girl, to whom I made a
present of a tin box with a looking-glass in it as a reward for her trouble, when she
did not fail to thank me by a courtesy, and the expression of an amiable
"agaishgka," "my best thanks." In the whole of this country a custom still
prevails, dating from the period of the strength of the B6rmu empire, to the effect
that the horses of the travelers must be watered at any well in precedence to the
wants of the natives themselves.

The whole spectacle which this well exhibited was one of life and activity; and
the interest of the scenery was farther increased by a dense grove of fine
tamarind-trees which spread out on the south side of the path. I learned, on
inquiry, that this district belongs to the territory of Tumt-dmna, the governor of
which is a'

MAJJIRGI'.
vassal of Zinder. Close to Tumtmma, on the west, lies the considerable town of
Gorgom.

Leaving the principal road on our right, and following a more southerly one, we
encamped near the village of GdImda, which consisted of two hamlets inhabited
exclusively by Tawrek slaves. But the territory belongs likewise to the province
of Tumtdmma. A troop of fatiki, or native traders, were encamped near us.

Wednesday, February 1st. The surface of the country through which our road lay was
broken by depressions of larger or smaller extent, where the dm palm flourished
in great numbers—a tree which is very common in the territory of Taswa, which we
entered a short time before we reached the village of K6,so. We had here
descended altogether, most probably, a couple of hundred feet, although the
descent was not regular, and was broken

-by an occasional ascent. The road was well frequented by people coming from
the west with cotton, which they sell to advantage in Zinder.

We made a long stretch, on account of the scarcity of water, passing the large
village of Shabire, which attracted our attention from the distance by the beating
of drums, but could not supply us with a sufficient quantity of water, its well
measuring twenty-five fathoms in depth, and, nevertheless, being almost dry; and
thus we proceeded till we reached Majirg , after a march of almost twenty-five
miles. The village is named from a troughlike* depression, on the sde of which it
is situated, and which, toward the south, contains a considerable grove of dm
palms. We encamped close to the well,—which is fourteen fathoms deep, at some
distance from the village, which has a tolerably comfortable appearance, although
it had been ransacked two years before by the governor of Kitsena; but, in these
regions, dwelling-places are as easily restored as they are destroyed. The
inhabitants are notorious for their thievish propensities, and we had to take precautions accordingly. The whole of this country is rich in beans; and we bought plenty of dried bean-tresses, which are made up in small bundles, and called "hariwa" by the Arabs, affording most excellent food for the camels.

Wednesday, February 2d. Several native travelers had attached themselves to my troop. Among them was an abominable slavedealer who was continually beating his poor victims. I was extremely glad to get rid of this man here, he, as well as the other

* "Jirgi" means boat, as well as a large trough for watering the cattle.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

people, being bound for Tasgwa, which I was to leave at some distance on my right. While my people were loading the camels, I roved about, making a very pleasant promenade along the vale, which was richly adorned with didm palms. Having set out at length, keeping a little too much toward the west, and crossing the great high road which comes from Tasiwa, we passed several villages on our road, while didm palms and tamarind-trees enlivened the country where the ground was not cultivated, but especially the many small and irregular hollows which we traversed. Having lost one of our camels, which died on the road, we encamped near a village (the name of which, by accident, I did not learn) situated in a large vale rich in didm palms, and encompassed on the east side by a regular ridge of sandhills of considerable height. Rice was cultivated in the beds beside the onions, while wheat, which is generally raised in this way, was not grown at all. As I have frequently observed, there is no rice cultivated in the whole of B6rnu, this village constituting, I think, the easternmost limit of the cultivation of this most important article of food, which is the chief staff of life in the whole of K~bbi and along the Niger. The wells in this valley were only three feet deep, and richly provided with water; and the whole vale was altogether remarkable.

Thursday, February 3d. The dense grove of didm palms through which our road led afforded a most picturesque spectacle in the clear light of the morning sky, and reminded me of the extensive groves of palm-trees which I had seen in more northern climes, while large piles of the fruit of the fan palm, stored up by the natives, excited the facetious remarks of those among my people who were natives of Fezzin; and they sneered at the poverty and misery of these negroes, who, being deprived by nature of that delicious and far-famed fruit of the nobler Phoenix, were reduced to the poor and tasteless produce of this vile tree. We then left the shallow bottom of the vale, with its wells seven fathoms in depth, at the side of a village a short distance to the east. The country then became more open; and after a march of four miles, we reached the shallow fiddama of Gaziwa, and, leaving the town at a short distance on our right, encamped a little to the south, not far from a fine old tamarind-tree.

I was enjoying the shade of this splendid tree, when my friend the serkln-turiwa, whom, on my first entrance into the Hjusa country, I introduced to the reader as a specimen of an African dandy, came up, on a splendid horse, to pay his compliments to
THE REBEL SADI'KU.
me. The petty chief of Gaz6wa and his people had been much afraid, after they had received the news of my approach, that I might take another road, in order to avoid making them a present, which has the same value as the toll in a European country. He told me that they had already sent off several horsemen in order to see what direction I had pursued, and he expressed his satisfaction that I had come to him of my own free will; but, on the other hand, he did not fail to remind me that on my former passage through the country I had not given them anything on account of the powerful protection of Elalji, which I enjoyed at that time. This was very true; and, in consequence, I had here to make presents to four different persons, although I only remained half a day: first, this little officious friend of mine; then the governor of the town himself, together with his liege lord, the chief of Maridi; and, finally, Sadiku, the former Pilo governor of Kitsena, who at present resided in this town.
Having satisfied the serf-n-turiwa, I wrapped a bermns and a shawl or zubeta in a handkerchief, and went to pay my respects to the governor, whose name, as I have stated on a former occasion, is Raffa, and whom I found to be a pleasant old fellow. He was well satisfied with his present, though he expressed his apprehension that his liege lord, the prince of Maridi, who would not fail to hear of my having passed through the country, would demand something for himself; and he advised me, therefore, to send to that chief a few medicines.
I then rode to Sadiku, the son of the famous MWallem 'Om.ro, or Ghomiro, who had been eight years governor of K6tsena, after the death of his father, till, having excited the fear or wrath of his liege lord, in consequence of calumnies representing him as endeavoring to make himself independent, he was deposed by 'Alfyu, the second successor of Bello, and obliged to seek safety among the enemies of his nation. Sadiku was a stately person, of tall figure, a serious expression of countenance, and a high, powerful chest, such as I have rarely seen in Negroland, and still less among the tribe of the Fdilbe. However, he is not a pure Pillo, being the offspring of a B6rnu female slave. He had something melancholy about him; and this was very natural, as he could not well be sincerely beloved by those among whom he was obliged to live, and in whose company he carried on a relentless war against his kinsmen. Sadiku's house, which was in the utmost decay, was a convincing proof either that he was in reality miserably off, or that he felt obliged to pretend poverty and misery. He understood Arabic tolerably well, although he only spoke very little. He expressed much regret on hearing of the death of Mr. Overweg, whom he had known during his residence in Maridi; but having heard how strictly Europeans adhere to their promise, he expressed his astonishment that he had never received an Arabic New Testament, which Mr. Overweg had promised him; but I was glad to be able to inform him that it was not the fault of my late lamented companion, who, I knew, had forwarded a copy to him, by way of Zfnder, immediately after his arrival in
Kidkawa. Fortunately, I had a copy or two of the New Testament with me, and therefore made him very happy by adding this book to the other little presents which I gave him. When I left the company of this man, I was obliged to take a drink of furu with Serki-n-turiiwa—however, not as a proof of sincere hospitality, but as a means of begging some farther things from me; and I was glad at length to get rid of this troublesome young fellow.

Friday, February 4th. We had been so fortunate as to be joined here at Gaziwa by two small parties belonging to the salt-caravan of the K61-owf, when, having taken in a sufficient supply of water, and reloaded all our fire-arms, we commenced our march, about half past two o'clock in the morning, through the unsafe wilderness which intervenes between the independent HAusa states and that of the Fdilbe. The forest was illumined by a bright moonlight; and we pursued our march without interruption for nearly twelve hours, when we encamped about five miles beyond the melancholy site of Dinkama, very nearly on the same spot where I had halted two years before. We were all greatly fatigued; and a soi-disant sherif from Morocco, but originally, as it seemed, belonging to the Tjakint, who had attached himself to my caravan in Zinder in order to reach Timbuktu in my company, felt very sickly. He had suffered already a great deal in Zinder, and ought not to have exposed his small store of strength to such a severe trial. Not being able to have regard to his state of health, as there was no water here, we pursued our journey soon after midnight, and reached the well-known walls of Kdsena after a march of about six hours.

It was with a peculiar feeling that I pitched my tent a few hundred yards from the gate (k6fa-n-samrif) of this town, by the governor of which I had been so greatly annoyed on my first en-

BEL-GHET.-ANTS.

tering this country. It was not long before several A'sbeniwa people belonging to A'nnur, followed by the servants of the governor, came to salute me; and after a little while I was joined by my old tormentor, the Tawiti merchant Bel-Ghet. But our meeting this time was very different from what it had been when I first saw him; for as soon as he recognized me, and heard from me that I was come to fulfill my promise of paying a visit to the Sultan of S6koto, he could not restrain his delight and excitement, and threw himself upon my neck, repeating my name several times. In fact, his whole behavior changed from this moment; and although he at times begged a few things from me, and did not procure me very generous treatment from the governor, yet, on the whole, he behaved friendly and decently. He asked me repeatedly why I had not gone to Kano; but I told him that I had nothing to do with Kano; that, in conformity with my promise, I had come to Kitsena, and that here I should make all my purchases, in order to undertake the journey to S6koto from this place under the protection of its governor, Mohammed Bello. Now I must confess that I had another motive for not going to Kano besides this; for the Vizier of B:nnu had made it a condition that I should not go to Kano, as my journey to the Fdilbe would else be displeasing to himself and the sheikh, by interfering with their policy, and I had found it necessary to consent to his wishes, although I foresaw that it would cause me a heavy loss, as I might
have bought all the articles of which I was in want at a far cheaper rate in the
great central market of Negroland than I was able to do in Kdsena,
I staid outside the town until the following morning, while my quarters in the
town were preparing. There was an animated intercourse along my place of
encampment, between the old capital and the new place Wag6je, which the
governor had founded two years before; and I received the compliments of several
active Filbe, whose expressive countenances bore sufficient evidence of the fact
that their habits were not yet spoiled by the influence of the softer manners of the
subjected tribe, although such an amalgamation has already begun to take place in
many parts of Hdsua.
The house which was assigned to me inside the town was spacious, but rather old,
and so full of ants that I was obliged to take the greatest care to protect not only
my luggage, but my person from these voracious insects. They not only destroyed
every thing that was suspended on pegs from the walls, but while sitting

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

one day for an hour or so on a clay bank in my room, I found, when I got up, a
large hole in my tobe, these clever and industrious miners having made their way
through the clay walls to the spot where I was 'sitting, successfully constructed
their covered walks, and voraciously attacked my shirt, all in an hour's time.
My present to the governor consisted of a very fine blue bernis, a kaftan of fine
red cloth, a small pocket pistol, two muslin turbans, a red cap, two loaves of
sugar, and some smaller articles. The eccentric man received me with undisguised
pleasure as an old acquaintance; but, being aware that I had a tolerable supply of
handsome articles with me, he wanted to induce me to sell to him all the fine
things I possessed; but I cut the matter short by telling him, once for all, that I was
not a merchant, and did not engage in any commerce. On the whole, he was well
pleased with his presents; but he wanted me to give him another small pistol, and,
in the course of my stay here, I was obliged to comply with his request. He had a
cover made for the pair, and used to carry them constantly about his person,
frightening every body by firing off the caps into their faces.
It was, no doubt, a very favorable circumstance for me that the ghaladfma of
S6koto was at this time staying here, for under the protection of the unscrupulous
governor of Ktsena I should scarcely have reached the residence of the emir el
Muimenfn in safety. The ghaladima, who was the inspector of Kitsena as well as
of Zinfara, had collected the tribute of both provinces, and was soon to start, with
his treasure and the articles he had purchased there, on his home journey, so that
there did not seem to be time enough fdr sending some of my people to Kan6 to
make there the necessary purchases; but circumstances which I shall soon
mention delayed us so much that there would have been ample opportunity for
doing so, and thus saving a considerable Pum of money. The ghaladfma was a
simple, straightforward man, not very intelligent, certainly, nor generous, but
good-natured and sociable. Born of a female slave, he had very little about him of
the general characteristics of the Ffilbe, being tall and broad-shouldered, with a
large head, broad features, and tolerably dark complexion.
I made some considerable purchases in this place, amounting altogether to 1,308,000 shells, employing the greatest part of my cash in providing myself with the cotton and silk manufactures of Kan6 and Ndpe, in order to pave my way, by means of these

APPROACH OF THE RAINY SEASON.

favorite articles, through the countries on the middle course of the Niger, where nothing is esteemed more highly than these native manufactures.* But, as I afterward found out, I sustained a considerable loss in buying the Ndpe tobes here, at least 20 per cent. dearer than I should have been able to do in Gando; but this I could not possibly know beforehand, nor was it my previous intention to make any stay in that place, where large parcels of these articles are never brought into the market. I also added to my store a few more articles of Arab manufacture, there having arrived, on the 5th of March, a very numerous caravan of Ghad-msi and other people from the north, with not less than from 400 to 500 camels, but without bringing me even a single line, either from my friends in Europe or even from those in Africa. Having likewise arranged with 'All el A'geren, the M6jebref who accompanied me from Kikawa, buying from him what little merchandise he had, and taking him into my service for nine dollars a month, I prepared every thing for my journey; and I was extremely anxious to be gone, as the rainy season was fast approaching. On the 26th of February evident signs were observed of the approach of the wet season, the whole southern quarter of the heavens being thickly overcast with clouds, while the air also was extremely damp, just as after a shower. Mounting on horseback in order to observe better these forerunners of the "dimana," I clearly distinguished that it was raining in the direction of Ziriya and Ndpe, and even in our immediate neighborhood a few drops fell. In the course of the evening the freshness and coolness of the air was most delicious, just as is the case after a fall of rain, and summer lightning was flashing through the southern sky.

* I bought here altogether 75 tifrkedfs or woman-cloths, which form the usual standard article in Timbdktu, and from which narrow shirts for the males are made; 35 black tobes of Kan6 manufacture; 20 ditto of Ndpe manufacture; 20 silk of different descriptions; 232 black shawls for covering the face, as the best presents for the Tawirek. I also bought here, besides, four very good cloth berndses from some Taw6t traders lately arrived from their country with horses, and some other little merchandise, and half a dozen of "hamaf1," or sword-hangings, of red silk of Fds manufacture. I also provided myself here with water-skins and kulabu, or large skins for covering the luggage for the whole of my journey. No place in the whole of Negroland is so famous for excellent leather and the art of tanning as Kitsena; and if I had taken a larger supply of these articles with me it would have been very profitable; but of course these leather articles require a great deal of room. I also bought a good quantity of the tobacco of Kitsena, which is held in great estimation even in Timbdiku, whither the excellent tobacco from Wddf Ndn is brought in considerable quantity.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
The ghaladfma was also very anxious to be gone; but the army of the G6beriwa being ready to start on an expedition, on a grand scale, against the territory of the Filbe, we could not leave the place before we knew exactly what direction the hostile army would take. They having at length set out on their foray on the 7th of March, we began to watch their movements very anxiously, each of these two powers—the independent pagans as well as the conquering Fdlbe—having in their pay numbers of spies in the towns of their enemies. Only two days before the G6beriwa left their home they killed Bii-Bakr, the chief spy whom ’Allyu, sultan of S6koto, entertained in their town.

In the company of the ghaladfma there was a younger brother of his, of the name of Al-hittu, who had lost the better portion of the character of a free man by a mixture of slave-blood, and behaved at times like the most intolerable beggar; but he proved of great service to me in my endeavor to become acquainted with all the characteristic features of the country and its inhabitants.

Besides this man, my principal acquaintance during my stay in Kitsena this time was a Tawiti of the name of 'Abd e' Rahmdn, a very amiable and social man, and, as a fiki, possessing a certain degree of learning. He had been a great friend of the Sultan Bello, and expatiated with the greatest enthusiasm on the qualities and achievements of this distinguished ruler of Negroland. He also gave me the first hints of some of the most important subjects relating to the geography and history of western Negroland, and called my attention particularly to a man whom he represented as the most learned of the present generation of the inhabitants of S6koto, and from whom, he assured me, I should not fail to obtain what information I wanted. This man was 'Abd el Kider dan Taffa (meaning the son of Miistapha), on whose stores of knowledge I drew largely. My intercourse with 'Abd e' Rahmin was occasionally interrupted by an amicable tilt at our respective creeds. On one occasion, when my learned friend was endeavoring to convince me of the propriety of polygamy, he adduced as an illustration that in matters of the table we did not confine ourselves to a single dish, but took a little fowl, a little fish, and a little roast beef; and how absurd, he argued, was it to restrict ourselves, in the intercourse with the other sex, to only one wife. It was during my second stay in Kitsena that I collected most of the information which I have communicated on a former occasion with regard to the history of Hiusa.

UNFORESEEN DIFFICULTY.

Besides this kind of occupation, my dealings with the governor, and an occasional ride which I took through and outside the town, I had a great deal to do in order to satisfy the claims of the inhabitants upon my very small stock of medicinal knowledge, especially at the commencement of my residence, when I was severely pestered with applications, having generally from 100 to 200 patients in my court-yard every morning. The people even brought me sometimes animals to cure; and I was not a little amused when they once brought me a horse totally blind, which they thought I was able to restore to its former power of vision. Living in Kitsena is not so cheap as in most other places of "Negroland; at least we thought so at the time, but we afterward found S6koto, and many places between that and Timb-dktu, much dearer; but the character of dearth in Kitsena
is increased by the scarcity of shells in the market, which form the standard currency, and, especially after I had circulated a couple of hundred dollars, I was often obliged to change a dollar for 2300 shells instead of 2500.

I had here a disagreeable business to arrange; for suddenly, on the 18th of March, there arrived our old creditor Mohammed e' Sf-ksf, whose claims upon us I thought I had settled long ago by giving him a bill upon Fezzii, besides the sum of two hundred dollars which I had paid him on the spot;* but, to my great astonishment, he produced a letter in which Mr. Gagliuffi, her majesty's agent in Mtarzuk, informed him that I was to pay him in Sudin.

Such is the trouble to which a European traveler is exposed in these countries by the injudicious arrangements of those very people whose chief object ought to be to assist him, while, at the same time, all his friends in Europe think that he is well provided, and that he can proceed on his difficult errand without obstacle. On the 19th of March we received information that the army of G6beriwa had encamped on the site of the former town of R6ma, or Rdma, and I was given to understand that I must hold myself in readiness to march at an hour's notice. Meanwhile the governor of Kitesena, who had received exaggerated accounts of the riches which I was carrying with me, was endeavoring, by every means at his disposal, to separate me from the ghaladima, in order to have me in his own power; and his measures were attended with a good deal of success, at least in the case of my Arab companion 'All el A'geren, who, although a man of some energy, allowed himself too often to be frightened by the misrepresentations of the people. On his attempting to keep me back, I told him that, if he chose, he might stay behind, but that I had made up my mind to proceed at once, in company with the ghaladima, whatever might happen. I had the more reason to beware of the governor, as, just at the period of this my second stay here, when he knew I was going to his liege lord, I had had another opportunity of becoming fully aware of the flagrant injustice exercised by him and his ministers. For the sherf; who, as I have said, had attached himself to my party in Zinder, having died here of dysentery soon after our arrival, he seized upon what little property he had left, notwithstanding that person had placed himself, in some respects, under my protection; and although he pretended he would send it to his relatives, there is no doubt that he or his people kept it back. The safety of the property of any European who should die in these regions ought to be taken into account in any treaty to be concluded with a native chief; but no such contingency was provided for in draughts of the treaties which we took with us.

CHAPTER LVI.

JOURNEY FROM KAITSENA TO SO' KOTO.

Monday, Aliarch 21st. The whole town was in motion when we left; for the governor himself was to accompany us for some days' journey, as the whole country was exposed to the most imminent danger, and farther on he was to send a numerous escort along with us. It was a fine morning, and, though the rainy
season had not yet set in in this province, many of the trees were clad already in a new dress, as if in anticipation of the fertilizing power of the more favored season. The h-ijilij had begun, about the commencement of March, to put out new foliage and shoots of young fruit; and the dor6wa or Parkia exhibited its blossoms of the most beautiful purple, hanging down to a great length from the branches. The dorowa, which is entirely wanting in the whole of Bornu, constitutes here the chief representative of the vegetable kingdom. It is from the beans of this tree that the natives prepare the vegetable 'cakes

THE GO'BERA'WA.
called "dod6wa," with which they season their food.* Next to this tree another one, which I had not seen before, called here "rIIdnhu," and at present full of small yellow blossoms, was most common.
The first day we made only a short march of about three miles, to a village called Kabakowla, where the ghaladfn had taken up his quarters. I had scarcely dismounted, under a tree at the side of the village, when my protector called upon me, and in a very friendly manner invited me, urgently, to take up my quarters inside the village, stating that the neighborhood was not quite safe, as the G6ber6wa had carried away three women from this very village the preceding day. I, however, preferred my tent and the open air, and felt very little inclination to confide my valuable property, on which depended entirely the success of my enterprise, to the huts, which are apt to catch fire at any moment; for, while I could not combat against nature, I had confidence enough in my arms and in my watchfulness not to be afraid of thieves and robbers.”

In the afternoon the ghaladima came out of the hamlet, and took his seat under a neighboring tree, when I returned his visit of the morning, and endeavored to open with him and his companions a free and unrestrained intercourse; for I was only too happy to get out of the hands of the lawless governor of Kitsena, who, I felt convinced, would not have been deterred by any scruples from possessing himself of my riches; indeed, he had gone so far as to tell me that if I possessed any thing of value, such as pistols handsomely mounted, I should give them to him rather than to the Sultan of S6koto, for that he himself was the emir el Muimenfn; nay, he even told me that his liege lord was alarmed at the sight of a pistol.

Tuesday, March 22d. In order to avoid the enemy, we were obliged, instead of following a westerly direction, to keep at first directly southward. The country through which our road lay was very beautiful. The dor6wa, which the preceding day had formed the principal ornament of the landscape, in the first part of this day's march gave place entirely to other trees, such as tall rfmi or bentangtree, the kika or monkey-bread-tree, and the delhb palm or gigiffa (Borassus fiabelliformis?); but beyond the village of

* See the description which Clapperton gives of the manner in which these cakes are prepared. (Denham and Clapperton's Travels, ii. p. 125.) t The wells here were eight fathoms.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Doka, the dor6wa, which is the principal tree of the provinces of Kitsena and Ziriya, again came prominently forward, while the kad6ra also, or butter-tree, and the all6luba, afforded a greater variety to the vegetation. The all-luba (which, on my second stay at Kan6, I saw in full blossom) bears a small fruit, which the natives eat, but which I never tried myself. Even the 4dm palm, with its fan-shaped yellow-colored foliage, gave occasionally greater relief to the fresher vegetation around. The country was populous and well cultivated, and extensive tobacco-grounds and large fields of yams or gwaza were seen, both objects being almost a new sight to me; for tobacco, which I had been so much surprised to see cultivated to such an extent in the country of the pagan Mfisgu, is scarcely grown at all in B6rnu, with the exception, of Zfnder, and I had first observed it largely cultivated near the town of Kdtsena, while yams, as I have already had repeatedly occasion to mention, are not raised at all in Central Negroland. Numerous herds of cattle were seen dotting the landscape, and contributed largely to the interest of the scenery. But the district of Mij e especially, which we traversed after a march of about seven miles, impressed me with the highest opinion of the fertility and beauty of this country. Here, also, we met a troop of Itfsan with their camels.

Having then proceeded for about two miles through a more open and well-cultivated country, with extensive cotton-grounds, large plantations of indigo, and wide fields planted with sweet potatoes, or ddnkali, we reached the village called K-ilkadi, where the governor of Kdtsena had taken up his quarters; but, leaving this outlaw at a respectful distance, we followed in the track of the ghaladima, who had been obliged to seek for quarters in a small Tawirek hamlet at the distance of a mile and a half toward the southeast—a remarkable resting-place for a party proceeding to the westward. The heat was very great; and the dor6wa-trees, with their scanty acacia-like foliage, which, besides a few gondatrees (Carica Papaya) and a solitary ngibbore, were the only members of the vegetable kingdom here seen, afforded but insufficient shade, the dryness of the country being the more felt, as the supply of water was rather limited.

I was hospitably treated in the evening, not only by the ghaladima, who sent me a sheep, but even by the inhabitants of the hamlet, who came to visit me in large numbers. I learned that they were Imghid, natives of Tawir Nwaijddd, the village which

KU(LKADA'.-KU'RAYE'.

I passed on my road from Tint6lust to A'gades,* and that they had seen me in A'sben, and knew all about my affairs. They were settled here as tenants.

Wednesday, farch 23d. I had just mounted my horse, and my camels had gone in advance, when a messenger arrived, who had been sent after me from Kfitsena, bringing a letter from Mr. Gagliuffi, her majesty's agent in Mdrzuk, a mere duplicate of a letter already received, with reference to the sending of the box (which, however, did not reach me), but not a single line from Europe. We had to retrace our road all the way to K-ilkadi, and from thence, after a march of about six miles through a dense forest, reached the walled town of Kdray6, and, not being aware that the country on the other side was more open and offered a far better camping-ground, pitched our tent on that side whence we had come, not far
from the market-place, consisting of several rows of stalls or sheds. A market was held in the afternoon, and we bought grain and onions, but looked in vain for the favorite fruit of the tamarind-tree, to which we were greatly indebted for the preservation of our health.
The town was of considerable size, and contained from 6000 to 7000 inhabitants, but no clay buildings. The wall was in excellent repair, and well provided with loop-holes for the bowmen, and it was even strengthened by a second wall, of lesser height, on the outside. The town has three gates. The wells were three fathoms in depth.
Thursday, March 24Lh. The country on the other side of the town of Kdray6 seemed to surpass in beauty the district which we had left behind us; and the bentang-tree, the sacred tree of the former pagan inhabitants, rose here to its full majestic growth, while, besides the dor6wa and the butter-tree, the ngibbore (or sycamore) and the diinnia appeared in abundance. The cultivation was here limited to sorghum or Indian millet. After a while the ground became rather undulating, and we had to cross several small water-courses, at present dry, while boulders of granite protruded here and there. The path was enlivened by the several troops of horsemen which constituted our expeditionary corps. There was first the governor of Kitsena himself with a body of about two hundred horse; then there was an auxiliary squadron of about fifty horse, sent by Ddmbo, the governor of Kaziure; and lastly Kdura, the serk-n-yiki, or commander-in-chief of Kitsena.

* See vol. i., p. 313.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

with a body of about thirty-five well-mounted troopers. This officer, at the present time, is the most warlike man in the province of Kitsena, and had greatly contributed to the overthrow and disgrace of Sadfu, the former governor, in the hope that the government of the province might fall to his share; but he had been sadly disappointed in his expectations. As for the ghaladna, he had about twenty mounted companions, the most warlike among whom was a younger brother of his, of the name of 'Omar, or Ghomiro, who was descended from a P-611o mother, and, on account of his noble birth, had better claims to the office of ghaladfma than his brother. Most of these troopers were very fantastically dressed, in the Husa fashion, and in a similar manner to those I have described on a former occasion. Some of the horses were fine, strong animals, although in height they are surpassed by the Bôru horses.

We watered our cattle in a kdrremi or dry water-course, which contained a number of wells from one fathom to a fathom and a half in depth, and was beautifully skirted with delhib palms, while a granite mound on its eastern shore rose to an altitude of from eighty to a hundred feet. I ascended it, but did not obtain a distant view. Near this water-course the cultivation was a little interrupted; but farther on the country became again well cultivated, broken here and there by some underwood, while the monkey-bread-tree, the dfim palm, great numbers of a species of acacia called "Arred," and the "merk" dotted the fields. The latter tree, which I have mentioned on a former occasion, bears a fruit which,
when mixed with the common native grain, is said to preserve horses from worms.

Thus we reached the town of Ku'refli, or K-ilfi, and were not a little puzzled by the very considerable outworks, consisting of moats, which the inhabitants had thrown up in front of their town, besides the three-fold wall, and the double moat which surrounded the latter, as shown in the opposite wood-cut.

The town was said to have been founded only three years before, being peopled from the remains of other places which were destroyed by the enemy. It may contain from 8000 to 9000 inhabitants, but it had recently suffered from a conflagration. The wall was full of loop-holes, and it had a gate on each side except the eastern one.

Having made our way with great difficulty through the moats, instead of taking up our quarters inside the wall, to the great astonishment of the people we pitched our tent outside, at some distance from the western gate. Such was the confidence which we placed in our fire-arms. A rocky eminence, such as are met with also inside the town, started up at some little distance from our camping-ground; and a majestic dor6wa, the largest tree of this species which I saw on my journey, shaded the place to a considerable extent, but attracted a number of people, who disturbed my privacy. The ghaladfma had taken a northerly road, to the town of Tsaurf, which he had recently founded, and did not arrive till the afternoon.

AN AGREEABLE INCIDENT.

astonishment of the people we pitched our tent outside, at some distance from the western gate. Such was the confidence which we placed in our fire-arms. A rocky eminence, such as are met with also inside the town, started up at some little distance from our camping-ground; and a majestic dor6wa, the largest tree of this species which I saw on my journey, shaded the place to a considerable extent, but attracted a number of people, who disturbed my privacy. The ghaladfma had taken a northerly road, to the town of Tsaurf, which he had recently founded, and did not arrive till the afternoon.

0--

1. Outer entrance, leading into a large square surrounded with a double moat, and containing three huts for the guards.
2. Second entrance, leading from this outwork through the outer moat which surrounds the town. 8: Gate leading into the projecting angle of the wall, from which a second gate leads into the town. 4. Granite mounds Inside the town. 5. Outer moats of the wall. 6. Situation of my tent. 'T. Granite mount outside the town. 8. Open pasture-grounds.

_Friday, March 25th. On mounting my horse in the morning to pursue my march, a Pdlo came up to me and handed me a letter, which he begged me to take to a relative of his in Timb-dktu. This showed his full confidence in my success, and it did not fail to inspire me with the same feeling. The inhabitants of the town marched out 'their bands of musicians, who played a farewell to us; and the 'several troops of horsemen, in their picturesque attire, thronged along the path winding between the granite mounds which broke the level on all sides. Groups of delgb and ddm palms towered, with their fan-shaped foliage, over the whole scenery.

We had now entered the more unsafe border country between the Mohammedans and pagans while changing our direction from south to west, and the cultivation was less extensive, although even here a little cotton was to be seen. After a march of about eight miles we traversed the site of a deserted town called Takabdiwa, inclosed between rocky cliffs onu all sides, and at present changed into a large cotton-ground, the inhabitants having sought
refuge in the more rocky district toward the south. But, although the destructive influence which war had exercised upon this province was plainly manifested by the site of another town which we passed soon afterward, yet the country was not quite deserted, and even small herds of cattle were observed farther on. Meanwhile the dtn palm became entirely predominant, and rocky cliffs and eminences continued to break the surface; but beyond a rocky ridge, which, dotted with an abundance of monkey-bread-trees, crossed our path, the country became more level and open, enlivened by herds, and exhibiting an uninterrupted tract of cultivation.

Thus we reached the walls of the considerable town of Z6kkka, and here again we had to make our way with difficulty through the moats which started off from the walls as a sort of outwork, when we pitched our tent on the west side, in the shade of two large dor&wa-trees. Even here I did not choose to take up my quarters inside the town, which was full of people. Besides those detachments which had come along with us, there arrived here also an auxiliary troop of 110 horse fromm Ziriya, together with the governor of U'mmadad, with twenty horsemen. The Kaniwa, or people of K66, who were proceeding to S6koto, had continued their march straight to U'mmadad, in order to take up their quarters in that place. Besides numbers of sick people from the town, who came to solicit my medical assistance, I received also a visit in the evening from one of the five governors of the place, who bears the title of serkl-n-F&11ani. He came to ask whether I had not for sale another pair of pocket pistols, such as I had given to the governor of Kitsena; for my eccentric friend played with the small arms I had made him a present of all the day long, to the great alarm of every body, so that the rumor of my possessing such articles had spread over the whole of this part of Sudin, and even Ka-dra had pestered me greatly on this account.

In the town of Z6kkka resides also the former governor of the wealthy town or district of Rilma, mentioned repeatedly by Captain Clapperton, but destroyed by the G6ber&wa after the period of his travels; that officer still bears the title of serkl-n-Rima. There was a pond of dirty water near our encampment, but good drinkable water was only to be obtained from a water-course at a considerable distance, which, although dry at present, afforded wells at very little depth in its gravelly bottom.

TREACHERY.—NIGHT MARCH.

Saturday, March 26th. We remained here the whole forenoon, as we had now the most difficult part of our journey before us; but, instead of having leisure to prepare myself for an unusual amount of exertion, all my spare time was taken up by a disagree. able business, the governor of Kitsena having succeeded in seducing from my service, in the most disgraceful manner, the Ferjini Arab, whom I had hired for the whole journey to Timbdktu and back, and whom I could ill afford to lose. This lad, who had accompanied Ibrah*im Bash6's expedition to Syria, and an expedition to Kordoffin, and who had afterward resided with the We16d Slimin for some time in Kdnem, might have been of great use to me in
case of emergency. But, as it was, I could only be grateful to Providence for ridding me of this faithless rogue at so cheap a rate; and the insidious governor at least had no reason to boast of his conduct, for the Arab, as soon as he found himself well mounted and dressed in a bernuis by his new master, took to his heels, and, following the track with which he had become acquainted in my company, succeeded in reaching Zinder, and from thence returned to his native country.

We here separated from most of our companions, the governor of Ktsena, as well as the people from Kan6 and Zdriya, who were carrying tribute to the Sultan of S6koto, remaining behind, and only an escort or "r6kkia" of fifty horsemen continuing in our company. The hostile army of the G6beriwa being in this neighborhood, the danger of the road farther on was very considerable; and the Kandwa and Zoziwa, or Zegezeg6, of whom the latter carried 2,000,000 shells, 500 tobes, and 30 horses, as tribute, were too much afraid of their property to accompany us. There had also arrived a troop of about 100 fatiki with asses laden entirely with the famous dod6wa cakes, but they also remained behind.

The governor himself, however, escorted us, for a mile or two, to a large kor~mma called Mejidi, which no doubt forms one of the branches of the korinma of Buinka, and contains several wells, where we watered our horses and filled our water-skins for a night's march. Fine cotton-grounds and fields of onions fringed the border of the valley.

As soon as we left this winding water-course we entered a dense forest, only occasionally broken by open spots covered with reed grass, and we pursued our march without interruption the whole night, with the exception of a short halt just in the dusk of the evening. I had taken the lead from the beginning; and the gha-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ladfma, who was fully sensible of the great advantage of my firearms, sent messenger after messenger to me till he brought me to a stand, and thus managed to get all his slaves and camels in advance, so that I could only proceed very slowly. After a march of little more than twelve miles from the korimma, we entered a fertile and picturesque sort of vale, inclosed toward the north and south by rocky cliffs, and intersected by a narrow strip of succulent herbage, where water is apparently to be found at a little depth. This is the site of the town of Monfya, which had likewise been destroyed by the G6beriwa three years previously. Their army had even encamped here the previous day; and when our companions found the. traces of their footsteps, which indicated that they had taken an easterly direction, all the people were seized with fright, and the intention which had been entertained of resting here for a few hours of the night was given up, and with an advanced guard of twenty horse, and a guard of from fifty to sixty, we kept cautiously and anxiously on.

Abot midnight we again entered a dense forest, consisting chiefly of underwood. We marched the whole night, and emerged in themorning into open cultivated country. We then passed several small hamlets, and, crossing first a small and farther on a larger water-course, reached, a little before nine o'clock, the considerable place Bdnka, surrounded by a clay wall about twelve feet in height,
and by a half natural, half artificial stockade of dense forest. In this town, the governor of which is directly dependent upon the ghaladima of Sokoto, my protector had taken quarters; but, true to my old principle, I here also preferred encamping outside, and, turning round the town on the south side, along a very winding and narrow passage, through dense, prickly underwood, I pitched my tent on the west side, in the midst of an open suburb consisting of several straggling groups of huts.

The inhabitants of the village proved to be industrious and sociable, and, soon after we had encamped, brought me several articles for sale, such as good strong ropes, of which we were greatly in want. In general, a traveler cannot procure good ropes in these countries, and, for an expedition on a larger scale, he does well to provide himself with this article. The ropes made of ngille or the du'm bush last only a few days; and those made of hides, which are very useful in the dry season for tying up the legs of the camels, and even for fastening the luggage, are not fit for the rainy season. We also bought here a good supply of tam-

BU'NKA.-ZY'RMI.

arinds, plenty of fowls (for from thirty to forty kurdf each), and a little milk. Part of the inhabitants of this village at least consisted of A'sbeniwa settlers; and they informed us that the army of the Guberiwa had come close to their town, but that they had driven them back.

The town itself, though not large, is tolerably well inhabited, containing a population of about 5000. It is skirted on the east side by a considerable water-course, at present dry, but containing excellent water close under the gravelly surface, and forming a place of resort for numbers of the gray species of monkey. The approach of the rainy season was indicated by a slight fall of rain.

ifonday, arch 28th. The ghaladima, whom the imminence of the danger had induced to fix his departure for the next day, instead of allowing a day for repose, had already gone on in advance a considerable way, when we followed him, and soon after left on our right a large, cheerful-looking hamlet, shaded by splendid trees, and enlivened by numbers of poultry. Extensive cultivated grounds testified to the industry of the inhabitants, who likewise belonged to a tribe of the A'sbeniwa, or rather to a mixed race of people. Having then crossed dense underwood, where the Afimosa Nilotica, here called "elkî," was standing in full blossom, while the ground consisted of sand, we reached, after a march of about a mile, the southeastern corner of the wall of the considerable town of Zyrmi. The water-course of Bilnka had been close on our left, providing the inhabitants with a never-failing supply of excellent water, which is found close under the surface of the fine gravel which composes its bed.

Zfrmi is an important town even at present, but, being under the dominion of the Fdlbe, is only capable of preserving its existence by a constant struggle with Gôber and Marii. However, the governor of this town is not now master of the whole of Zinfara, as he was in the time of Captain Clapperton, who visited it on his journey to Sokoto,* the Fîlbe or Fîllani having found it more conducive to their policy to place each governor of a walled town in this province under the direct allegiance of Sokoto, in order to prevent the loss of the whole country by
the rebellion of a single man. Some ninety or one hundred years ago, before the
destruction of the capital, this province was almost the most flourishing country
of Negroland; but it is at present divided into a
* Clapperton, Second Expedition, p. 150.
VOL. III.-G

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

number of petty states, each of which follows a different policy; hence it is
difficult to know which towns are still dependent upon the dominion of Sokoto,
and which adhere to their enemies, the G6beriwa.* The town is still tolerably well
inhabited, the western more densely than the eastern quarter.
The direct road leads along the wall, and close beyond passes by the site of the
former town Dida; but, in order to water my horse, I descended into the korimma,
which was here encompassed by banks about twenty-five feet high, the gradually-
shelving slopes of which were laid out in kitchen gardens, where onions were
cultivated. Passing then a tract thickly overgrown with monkey-bread-trees, we
traversed a straggling village, the whole appearance of which left a feeling of
peace and comfort rather than of the constant state of warfare which prevails in
this country. But every thing in human life depends on habitude; and these poor
people, not knowing any better, bear the state of insecurity to which they are
exposed without uneasiness.

Numerous neat cottages were just being built; and the western end of the village
especially, being adorned by several groups of the g6nda-tree or Erica Papaya,
had a very pleasant appearance. Dyeing-pits are not wanting in any of the larger
towns of Zinfa; and a numerous herd of cattle met our view close beyond the

When we again reached the direct road, the neighborhood of our friends was
distinctly indicated by a very strong and not quite aromatic smell, which
proceeded from the luggage of those of the caravan of native traders (or fatiki)
who had attached themselves to our troop in ZOkka, leaving their more cautious
brethren behind. The merchandise of these small traders consisted, for the most
part, of those vegetable cakes called dod6wa, which I have mentioned repeatedly,
and which constitute an important article of trade, as the dor6wa or Parkia, from
the fruit of which those cakes are made, thrives in great abundance in the province
of Zegzeg, while it is comparatively rare in the provinces of K6bbi and G6ber.
Three thousand of these cakes constitute an ass-load, and each of them in general
is sold in S6koto for five kurdf, having been bought on the spot for one urf; so
that the profit, being not less than 500 per cent., makes this commerce attractive
for poor people, notwithstanding the dangerous state to which this
* For farther details on this subject, see Appendix I.; and for an outline of the
history of Zinfa, see the Chronological Tables

DU'CHI.-CHARMING PROSPECT.

road is at present reduced. The return freight which these petty merchants bring
back from S6koto generally consists of the salt of F6gha.
Our farther road conducted us through a more rugged district, intersected by numerous small water-courses with very rocky beds, and mostly covered with dense forest, only now and then broken by a small tract of cultivated ground producing even a little cotton. Thus we reached the town of Dichi, the name of which, meaning "the rocks," served well to indicate the peculiar nature of the place, which has a very wild and romantic appearance—a labyrinth of rocky eminences intersected by a small ravine, as shown in the woodcut: the dwellings, which are scattered about in several groups, can scarcely be seen, owing to the prevalence of rocks. Several groups of dini palms contribute greatly to the picturesque character of the place.

Having got inside the wall, which consisted of loose stones, we had some difficulty in finding a fit spot for encamping, and at length, having traversed the whole place, pitched our tent not far from the western gate, but still inside the wall, in the shade of a fine tshmia or tamarind-tree, and close to a small group of huts. The principal hamlet lies nearer the east side. The little watercourse contained only a very small supply of water under the gravelly surface of the bed; but on my return from the west in the autumn of the following year, a foaming brook was rushing along it. The interesting character of the scenery induced me, in the course of the night, to leave my tent and to sit down for a while on a rock, which commanded the whole interior of the town. There I had a charming prospect over the scene by clear moonlight, while people were busily employed the whole night collecting the small supply of water from the channel for their next day's wants.

Tuesday, March 29th. In order to pass the narrow gate, if gate it may be called, I was obliged to have the two posts which encompassed it on each side removed. The whole country round about is rocky, with only a slight covering of fertile soil, so that nothing but Indian millet is cultivated, which thrives very well in rocky ground. But the country was adorned with a tolerable variety of trees, such as monkey-bread-trees, most of which had young leaves, the dor6wa, the kadeaa, and the merk6. While crossing a small rocky ridge, we were joined by a troop of people bearing large loads of cotton upon their heads, which they were carrying to the considerable market of Badariwa. This cotton was distinguished by its snow-white color, and seemed to be of very good quality. Beyond the rocky ridge the country became more open, rich in trees and cultivated fields; and having passed a village, we turned round the southwestern corner of the walled town of Sab6n Bfni, making our way with great difficulty, and not without some damage to the fences as well as to our luggage, through the narrow lanes of an open suburb. The western side of the town was bordered by a korimma containing a considerable sheet of stagnant water of very bad quality, and fringed all round by a border of kitchen gardens, where onions were cultivated. The governor of Sab6n Bfni, like that of Zyrmi, is directly dependent on the Emir of Sokoto. The name or title of his dominion is Bizay.
From hence, along a path filled with market produce, we reached the walled town of Badar-wa, which, like most of the towns of Zinfara, is surrounded on all sides with a dense border of timber, affording to the archers, who form the strength of the natives, great advantage in a defense, and making any attack, in the present condition of the strategetical art in this country, very difficult. In the midst of this dense body of trees there was a very considerable market, attended by nearly 10,000 people, and well supplied with cotton,* which seemed to be the staple commodity, while Indian millet (sorghum) also was in abundance. A great number of cattle were slaughtered in the market, and the meat retailed in small quantities. There was also a good supply of fresh butter (which is rarely seen in Negroland), formed in large lumps, cleanly prepared, and swimming in water: they were sold for 500 kurdi each. Neither was there any scarcity of onions, a vegetable which is extensively cultivated in the province of Zinfara, the smaller ones being sold for one uri, the larger ones for two kurdi each. These onions are mostly cultivated round a large tebki, about half a mile to the west of the town, which, even at the present season, was still of considerable size. Instead of entering the narrow streets of the town, I pitched my tent in the

* It was extensively cultivated in this province at the beginning of the sixteenth century. (Leo Africanus, lib. vii., c. 13.)

TRIBUTE.
open fields, at a considerable distance from the wall; for I was the more in want of fresh air, as I was suffering greatly from headache. The consequence was that I could not even indulge in the simple luxuries of the market, but had recourse to my common medicine of tamarind water. There was some little danger here, not so much from a foreign foe as from our proximity to a considerable hamlet of Tawirek, of the tribe of the Itisan, who have settlements in all these towns of Zinfara. While endeavoring to recruit myself by rest and simple diet, I received a visit from an intelligent and well-behaved young fiki, M'allem Didi, who belonged to the suite of the ghaladima, and whose company was always agreeable to me. He informed me that the Zinfariwa and the G6beriwa had regarded each other with violent hatred from ancient times, Bab6ri, the founder of Kaliwa, or Alkalhwa, the former capital of G6ber, having based the strength and well-being of his own country on the destruction of the old capital of Zdnfara ninety-seven years previously. Hence the people of Zinfara embarked heart and soul in the religious and political rising of the Sheikh 'Othm-n against his liege lord, the ruler of G6ber. I learned also that the same amount of tribute, which I have before mentioned as carried on this occasion by the messengers of Ziriya to the emir el M imenfn, was paid almost every second month, while from Kitsena it was very difficult to obtain a regular tribute, the governor of that town generally not paying more than 400,000 kurdi and forty articles, such as berndses, kaftans, etc., annually. It was only an exceptional case, arising from the exertions of the ghaladima, as I was told that he had sent this year 800,000 shells, besides a horse of Tirkki breed, of the nominal value of 700,000 kurdi.

Wednesday, March 30th. Allowing my camels to pursue the direct road, I myself took a rather roundabout way, in order to get a sight of the tebki from which the
town is supplied; and I was really astonished at the considerable expanse of clear water which it exhibited at this time of the year (shortly before the setting in of the rainy season), when water in the whole of Negroland becomes very scanty. The ground consisted of fine vegetable soil, while the cultivation along the path was scarcely interrupted; and in passing a hamlet, we saw the inhabitants making the first preparations for the labors of the field. Cotton was also cultivated to a considerable extent. About a mile and a half farther on, at the village of Sungiiirur6, which is surrounded with a strong keffi, I

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
observed the first rduu, a sort of light hut consisting of nothing but a thatched roof raised upon four poles from eight to ten feet in height, and affording a safe retreat to the inhabitants, during their night’s rest, against the swarms of mosquitoes which infest the whole region along the swampy creeks of the Niger, the people entering these elevated bed-rooms from below, and shutting the entrance behind them, as represented in the accompanying woodcut.

Leaving, then, the walled town of Katdru close on our left, we entered a dense forest richly interwoven with creeping plants, and intersected by a large kormma with a very uneven bottom, affording sufficient proof of the vehemence of the torrent which at times rushes along it. At present it contained nothing but pools of stagnant water in several places, where we observed a large herd of camels, belonging to a party of Ifsan, just being watered, while tobacco was cultivated on the border of the kormma. A little farther on the torrent had swept away and undermined the banks in such a manner that they presented the appearance of artificial walls. We met several natives on the road, who, although Fülbe or Füllani (that is to say, belonging to the conquering tribe), and themselves apparently Mohammedans, wore nothing but a leather apron round their loins. Thus we reached, a little past noon, the town Sansinne ’Aisa, which was originally a mere fortified encampment or "sansanne." But its advanced, and, in some respects, isolated position as an outlying post against the Gôberiwa and Mariyadiwa rendered it essential that it should be strong enough by its own resources to offer a long resistance; and it has, in consequence, become a walled town of considerable importance, so that travelers generally take this roundabout way, with a strong northerly deviation. Here also the wall is surrounded with a dense forest, affording a sort of natural fortification.

Having entered the town and convinced myself of its confined and cheerless character, I resolved even here to camp outside, though at considerable risk; and I went to the well, which was about half a mile distant to the south, and, being five fathoms in depth, contained a rich supply of excellent water. Here a small caravan of people from A’dar, laden with corn and about to return to their native home, were encamped; and I pitched my tent on an open spot, close to some light cottages of Ifsan settlers, who immediately brought me a little fresh cheese as a specimen of their industry, and were well satisfied with a present which I made them in return of a few razors and looking-glasses. These Tawirek are scattered
over the whole of western Sidn, not only frequenting those localities occasionally as traders, but even sometimes settled with their wives and children. Their women also did not fail to pay us a visit in the afternoon, for they are extremely curious and fond of strangers.

When I had made myself comfortable, I received a visit from the ghaladfma of the town; he brought me the compliments of the governor, who was a man of rather noble birth, being nobody else but 'Ali Kiramf, the eldest and presumed successor of 'Alfyu, the emir el Miimenin. He bears the pompous title of serkf-n-G6ber, "lord of G6ber," although almost the whole of that country is in the hands of the enemy. Having taken his leave, the messenger soon returned, accompanied by Alhittu, the younger brother of the ghaladfma of S6koto, who was anxious to show his importance, bringing me a fat sheep as a present, which I acknowledged by the gift of a fine heldi bernis, besides a red cap and turban; and the governor expressed his satisfaction at my present by sending me also corn for my horses, and half a dozen fowls. In the evening we had a short but violent tornado, which usually indicates the approach of the rainy season; but no rain fell, and we passed the night very comfortably in our open encampment, without any accident.

Thursday, 1rch 31st. We had a very difficult day's march before us—the passage of the wilderness of Glindiuni—which can only be traversed by a forced march, and which, even upon a man of Captain Clapperton's energies, had left the impression of the most wearisome journey he had ever performed in his life. But, before returning into our westerly direction, we had first to follow a northwesterly path leading to a large pond or tebki, in order to provide ourselves with water for the journey. It was still a goodsized sheet of water, though torn up and agitated by numbers of men and animals 'that had preceded our party from the town, and we were therefore very fortunate in having provided ourselves with some excellent clear water from the well close to our place of encampment. The pond was in the midst of the forest,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
which toward its outskirts presented a cheerful aspect, enlivened by a great number of sycamore-trees, and even a few del6b palms, but which here assumed the more monotonous and cheerless character which seems to be common to all the extensive forests of Negroland.

The beginning of our march, after we had watered our animals and filled our water-skins, was rather inauspicious, our companions missing their way, and with bugles calling me and my people, who were pursuing the right track, far to the south,'till, after endeavoring in vain to make our way through an impeivious thicket, and after a considerable loss of time, any thing but agreeable at the beginning of a desperate march of nearly thirty hours, we at length, with the assistance of a Piillo shepherd, regained the right track. We then pursued our march, traveling, without any halt, the whole day and the whole night through the dense forest, leaving the pond called tebki n-Gndndumi at some distance on our left, and not meeting with any signs of cultivation till a quarter before eleven the next morning, when, wearied in the extreme, and scarcely able to keep up, we were met by some horsemen, who had been sent out from the camp at Giwassii to
meet us, provided with water-skins in order to bring up the stragglers who had lagged behind from fatigue and thirst. And there were many who needed their assistance—one woman had even succumbed to exhaustion in the course of the night; for such a forced march is the more fatiguing and exhausting, as the dangers from a lurking enemy make the greatest possible silence and quiet indispensable, instead of the spirits being kept up with cheerful songs, as is usually the case. But having once reached the cultivated grounds, after a march of two miles and a half more we arrived at the first giwasli-trees, which surround the village, which is named after them, "Giwasid." In the fields or "krkarO' adjoining this village, 'Alfyu the emir el Mimenin, had taken up his campingground, and was preparing himself for setting out upon an expedition against the G6ber people.

It was well that we had arrived, having been incessantly marching for the last twenty-six hours, without taking into account the first part of the journey from the town to the pond, for I had never seen my horse in such a state of total exhaustion, while my people also fell down immediately they arrived. As for myself, kept up by the excitement of my situation, I did not feel much fatigued, but, on the contrary, felt strong enough to search, without delay, through the whole of my luggage, in order to select the choicest presentis for the great prince of Sokoto, who was to set out the following morning, and upon whose reception depended a good deal of the success of my undertaking. The afternoon wore on without my being called into the presence of the sultan, and I scarcely expected that I should see him that day; but suddenly, after the evening prayer, Alhittu made his appearance with some messengers of the chief; not in order to hasten my present, but first to give me a proof of their own hospitality, and bringing me a very respectable present, consisting of an ox, four fat sheep, and two large straw sacks or tikrufa containing about four hundred pounds weight of rice, with an intimation, at the same time, that 'Alyu wished to see me, but that I was not now to take my present with me. I therefore prepared myself immediately; and on going to the sultan's we passed by the ghaladima, who had been lodged in a court-yard of the village, and who accompanied us. We found 'Alfyu in the northern part of the village, sitting under a tree in front of his quarters, on a raised platform of clay. He received me with the utmost kindness and good-humor, shaking hands with me, and begging me to take a seat just in front of him. Having paid my compliments to him on behalf of the Queen of England, I told him that it had been my intention to have paid him a visit two years previously, but that the losses which we had met with in the first part of our journey had prevented me from carrying out my design. I had scarcely finished my speech, when he himself assured me that at the right time he had received the letter which I had addressed to him through the Sultan of A'gades (informing him of the reason why we could not then go directly to pay him our compliments), and that from that moment up to the present time he had followed our proceedings, and especially my own, with the greatest interest, having even heard at the time a report of my journey to A'damiwa.
I then informed him that in coming to pay him my compliments I had principally two objects in view, one of which was that he might give me a letter of franchise, guaranteeing to all British merchants entire security for themselves and their property in visiting his dominions for trading purposes; and the second, that he might allow me to proceed to Timb-iktu, and facilitate my journey to that place (which was greatly obstructed at the present moment by the rebellion of the province of Kebbi) by his own paramount authority. Without reserve he acceded to both my re-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

quests in the most cheerful and assuring manner, saying that it would be his greatest pleasure to assist me in my enterprise to the utmost of his power, as it had only humane objects in view, and could not but tend to draw nations together that were widely separated from each other. At the same time he expressed, in a very feeling way, his regret with regard to 'Abd Allah (Captain Clapperton), whose name I had incidentally mentioned, intimating that the then state of war, or "g=g-ba," between Bello and the Sheikh el Kinemf, the ruler of Bdrnu, had disturbed their amicable relations with that eminent officer, whom in such a conjuncture they had not felt justified in allowing to proceed on his errand to their enemy. In order to give him an example how, in the case of foreign visitors or messengers, such circumstances ought not to be taken into account, I took this opportunity to show him that the ruler of Bdrnu, although in open hostility with the most powerful of his ('Aliyu's) governors, nevertheless had allowed me, at the present conjuncture, to proceed on my journey to them without the slightest obstacle. He then concluded our conversation by observing that it had been his express wish to see me the very day of my arrival, in order to assure me that I was heartily welcome, and to set my mind at rest as to the fate of Clapperton, which he was well aware could not fail to inspire Europeans with some diffidence in the proceedings of the rulers of S6koto.

With a mind greatly relieved I returned to my tent from this audience. The dusk of the evening, darkened by thick thunderclouds, with the thunder rolling uninterruptedly, and lighted up only by the numerous fires which were burning round about in the fields where the troops had encamped under the trees, gave to the place a peculiar and solemn interest, making me fully aware of the momentous nature of my situation. The thunder continued rolling all night long, plainly announcing the approach of the rainy season, though there was no rain at the time. Meanwhile I was pondering over the present which I was to give to this mighty potentate, who had treated me with so much kindness and regard on the first interview, and on whose friendship and protection depended, in a great measure, the result of my proceedings; and thinking that what I had selected might not prove sufficient to answer fully his expectation, in the morning, when I arose, I still added a few things more, so that my present consisted of the following articles: a pair of pistols, richly ornamented with silver, in velvet holsters; a rich bernds (Arab cloak with hood) of red

PRESENTS, HOW RECEIVED.
satin, lined with yellow satin; a bernis of yellow cloth; a bernds of brown cloth; a white helhli bernis of the finest quality; a red cloth kaftan embroidered with gold; a pair of red cloth trowsers; a Stambilli carpet; three loaves of sugar; three turbans and a red cap; two pairs of razors; half a dozen large looking-glasses; cloves, and benzoin.*

Having tied up these presents in five smart handkerchiefs, and taking another bernis of red cloth with me for the ghaladima, I proceeded first to the latter, who received his present with acknowledgments, and surveyed those destined for his master with extreme delight and satisfaction. We then went together to 'Alfyu, and found him in a room built of reeds, sitting on a divan made of the light wood of the tukkur'wa, and it was then for the first time that I obtained a distinct view of this chief, for on my interview the preceding night it had been so dark that I was not enabled to distinguish his features accurately. I found him a stout, middle-sized man, with a round fat face, exhibiting evidently rather the features of his mother, a Hiusa slave, than those of his father Mohammed Bello, a free and noble Pilllo, but full of cheerfulness and good-humor. His dress also was extremely simple, and at the same time likewise bore evidence of the pure Ptillo character having been abandoned; for while it consisted of scarcely any thing else but a tobe of grayish color, his face was uncovered, while his father Bello, even in his private dwelling, at least before a stranger, never failed to cover his mouth. He received me this time with the same remarkable kindness which he had exhibited the preceding evening, and repeated his full consent to both my requests, which I then stated more explicitly, requesting at the same time that the letter of franchise might be written at once, before his setting out on his expedition. This he agreed to, but he positively refused to allow me to proceed on my journey before his return from the expedition, which he said would not be long; and, acquainted as I was with the etiquette of these African courts, I could scarcely expect any thing else from the beginning. He then surveyed the presents, and express* I may as well add, that the richly-mounted pistols which chiefly aided me in obtaining the friendship of this powerful chief, as well as another pair which I afterward gave to Khalflu, the ruler of Gando, and also several other things, were paid for with my own money, which was forwarded to Tripoli by my family at the suggestion of the Chevalier Bunsen, as well as two harmonica, one of which I gave to 'Aliyu, and the other to the Sheikh el Bakly.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ed his satisfaction repeatedly; but when he beheld the pistols, which I had purposely kept till the last, he gave vent to his feelings in the most undisguised manner, and, pressing *my hands repeatedly, he said, "nag6de, nag6de, barka, 'Abd el Kerin, barka"

-" I thank you, God bless you, 'Abd el Kerfm, God bless you." He had evidently never before seen any thing like these richlymounted pistols, which had been selected in Tripoli by the connoisseur eyes of Mr. Warrington, and surveyed the present on all sides. It was to these very pistols that I was in a great measure indebted for the friendly disposition of that prince, while the unscrupulous governor of Kitsena, who had heard some report about them, advised me by all
means to sell them to himself, as his liege lord would not only not value them at all, but would even be afraid of them. Soon after I had returned to my tent the ghaladfma arrived, bringing me from his master 100,000 kurdf to defray the expenses of my household during his absence; and I had afterward the more reason to feel grateful for this kind attention, although the sum did not exceed forty Spanish dollars, as I became aware, during my stay in Wurno, how difficult it would have been for me to have changed my dollars into kurdi. I then satisfied my friend Alhittu, the younger brother of the ghaladfma, whose behavior certainly was far from disinterested, but who, nevertheless, had not proved quite useless to me. Although we were here in the camp outside, and the people busy with their approaching departure, yet I received visits from several people, and, among others, that of a Weled Rdshid of the name of Mohammed, who, on my return from Timbdktu, followed me to Kdkawa in the company of his countryman, the learned A'hmed Wadiwi. This man, having left his tribe on the southeastern borders of Bagfrmi, had settled in this place many years before, and, having accompanied several expeditions or forays, gave me an entertaining description of the courage of the F4llanin-S6koto, although he had some little disposition to slander, and even related to me stories about the frailties of the female portion of the inhabitants of the capital, which I shall not repeat.

Sunday, April 3d. Being anxious that the letter of franchise should be written before the sultan set out, I sent in the morning my broker, 'All el A'geren, with a pound of Tower-proof gunpowder, to the prince, in order to remind him of his promise; and he returned after a while, bringing me a letter signed with the sultan's seal, which, on the whole, was composed in very handsome terms, stating that the prince had granted the request of commercial security for English merchants and travelers, which I, as a messenger of the Queen of England, had made to him. But the letter not specifying any conditions, I was obliged to ask for another paper, written in more distinct terms; and although 'Allyu's time was, of course, very limited, as he was just about to set out with his army, even my last request was complied with, and I declared myself satisfied. I was well aware how extremely difficult it is to make these people understand the forms of the articles in which European governments are wont to conclude commercial treaties. In regions like this, however, it seems almost as if too much time ought not to be lost on account of such a matter of form before it is well established whether merchants will really open a traffic with these quarters; for as soon as, upon the general condition of security, an intercourse is really established, the rulers of those countries themselves become aware that some more definite arrangement is necessary, while, before they have any experience of intercourse with Europeans, the form of the articles in which treaties are generally conceived fills them with the utmost suspicion and fear, and may be productive of the worst consequences to any one who may have to conclude such a treaty. The sultan was kind enough, before he left in the afternoon, to send me word that I might come and take leave of him; and I wished him, with all my heart, success.
in his expedition, as the success of my own undertaking, namely, my journey toward the west, partly depended upon his vanquishing his enemies. Giving vent to his approval of my wishes by repeating that important and highly significant word, not more peculiar to the Christian than to the Mohammedan creed, "Amnn, amin," he took leave of me in order to start on his expedition, accompanied only by a small detachment of cavalry, most of the troops having already gone on in advance. I had also forwarded a present to Hdmmedu, the son of 'Atiku, an elder brother and predecessor of Bello; but he sent it back to me, begging me to keep it until after his return from the expedition. The ghaladima also, who was to accompany the sultan, called before his departure, in order that I might wind round his head a turban of gaudy colors, such as I then possessed, as an omen of success.

After all the people were gone, I myself could not think of passing another night in this desolate place, which is not only exposed to the attacks of men, but even to those of wild beasts. Even the preceding night the hyenas had attacked several people, and had almost succeeded in carrying off a boy, besides severely lacerating one man, who was obliged to return home without being able to accompany the army. An hour, therefore, after the sultan had left his encampment, we ourselves were on our road to Wurn6, the common residence of 'Alfyu, where I had been desired to take up my quarters in the house of the ghaladima; but I never made a more disagreeable journey, short as it was, the provisions which the sultan had given me encumbering us greatly, so that at length we were obliged to give away the heifer as a present to the inhabitants of the village of Giwasii. It thus happened that we did not reach our quarters till late in the evening; and we had a great deal of trouble in taking possession of them in the dark, having been detained a long time at the gateway, which itself was wide and spacious, but which was obstructed by a wooden door, while there was no open square at all inside the gate, nor even a straight road leading up from thence into the town, the road immediately dividing and winding close along the wall.

CHAPTER LVII.

RESIDENCE IN WURNO.

I SHALL preface the particulars of my residence in Wurn6 with a short account of the growth of the power of the Fdlbe or F6llani in this quarter, and of the present condition of the empire of S6koto.

There is no doubt that, if any African tribe deserves the full attention of the learned European, it is that of the Fdlbe (sing. Pllo), or Fsla, as they are called by the Mandingoes; Fllani (sing. Bafflanche) by the husa people, Fellita by the Kanidrli, an'd Fullin by the Arabs. In their appearance, their history, and the peculiar character of their language, they present numerous anomalies to the inhabitants of the adjacent countries. No doubt they are the most intelligent of all the African tribes, although in bodily development they can not be said to exhibit the most perfect specimens, and probably are surpassed in this respect by the
Jolof. But it is their superior intelligence which gives their chief expression to the Fulbe, and prevents their features from present-

ORIGIN OF THE FULBE.

ing that regularity which we find in other tribes, while the spare diet of a large portion of that tribe does not impart to their limbs all the development of which they are capable, most of them being distinguished by the smallness of their limbs and the slender growth of their bodies. But as to their outward appearance, which presents various contrasts in complexion as well as in bodily development, we must first take into account that the Fuli6be, as a conquering tribe, sweeping over a wide expanse of provinces, have absorbed and incorporated with themselves different and quite distinct national elements, which have given to their community a rather varying and undecided character. Moreover, besides such tribes as have been entirely absorbed, and whose origin has even been referred to the supposed ancestors of the whole nation, there are others which, although their pedigree is not brought into so close a connection with that of the F6i6be, nevertheless are so intermingled with them that they have quite forgotten their native idiom, and might be confounded with the former by any traveler who is not distinctly aware of the fact. Prominent among these latter are the Sissilbe, as they call themselves, or Sylebiwa, as they are called in H.usa, whom I shall have occasion to mention on my visit to Sokoto, and who are nothing but a portion of the numerous tribe of the Wdkor6 or Wingariwa, to whom belong also the Sdisu and the so-called Mandingoes; and while that portion of them who are settled in H6usa have entirely forgotten their native idiom, and have adopted, besides the Fulffilde language, even the Hlusa dialect, their brethren in the more western province of Zaberma use their own idiom at the present time almost exclusively.

On the other hand, foremost among those tribes who have been entirely absorbed by the community of the Fuli6be are the Tor6de or Torunkdwa, who, although they are considered as the most noble portion of the population in most of the kingdoms founded by the Fu'lebe, yet evidently owe their origin to a mixture of the Jolof element with the ruling tribe,* and in such a manner that, in point of numbers, the former enjoyed full superiority in the amalgamation; but it is quite evident that, even if we do not take into account the Torode, the Jolof have entered into the formation

* It is, however, remarkable that, according to Sultan Bello's account, in a passage not translated by Silame, the original idiom of the Torode was the Wdkoro or Wakor6, which, if it be true, would render the Tor6de the near kinsfolk of the Sissilbe.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of the remarkable tribe of the Fiiilbe or Fila in a very strong proportion, although the languages of these two tribes at present are so distinct, especially as far as regards grammatical structure; and it is highly interesting that A'hamed Bibi (who, by occasional hints, allows us to form a much better idea of the progress of that
tribe, in its spreading over tracts so immense, than we were able to obtain before we became acquainted with his history of Sidin) intimates distinctly that he regards the Jolof as belonging to the great stock of the Fulln or Filbe,* although at the present time the terms "Jolof" and "Pdllo" seem to be used in opposition, the one meaning a person of black, and the other an individual of red complexion. It is this element of the Tor6de in particular which causes such a great variety in the type of the Fiilbe community, the Tor6de being in general of tall stature and strong frame, kirge features, and of very black complexion, while the other sections of that tribe are always distinguished by a tinge of red or copper color. But besides the Tor6de, who, as I have said, in most cases as well in Fdta as in S6koto, at present form the ruling aristocracy, there are many other nationalities which have been absorbed in this great conquering nation, and which, on the contrary, are rather degraded. The most interesting among these latter, at least in the more eastern tracts occupied by the Fhlibe, are certainly the Jawimbe, as they are called by the Fijibe, but rather, as they call themselves, Zoghorin, or, as they are named by the H16usa people, Zorom-wa. This tribe, which we find at present quite absorbed by the F6lani, and, at least in the provinces of Hlusa and K6bbi, reduced to the occupation of mere brokers, we still find, during the period of the A'skia, that is to say, in the sixteenth century of our era, quite distinct from the community of the Fdilbe or F61. lani, as a tribe by themselves, settled to the S.E. of the Great River, where it enters the province of Misina; and it was this tribe which, having been continually persecuted by the Songhay during the height of their sway, at a later period, when that empire had been laid prostrate by the musketeers of Morocco, contributed the

* He says of the Jolof that their character is distinguished greatly from that of the other Fulldn or Fdlbe: See Journal of the Leipsic Oriental Soc., ix., p. 536. t A'hmed Bb in J. L. (s. S., p. 550, 555, and elsewhere.

DIFFERENT NATIONALITIES.

most to its ruin, and conquered great part of it, particularly the most fertile provinces, such as Bdra and Kirmina. Nearly the same character distinguishes the tribe of the Laibc on the Senegal, who, in general, at the present time have been reduced to the rank of carpenters, but, nevertheless, at a former period evidently constituted a distinct tribe.* It is these degraded tribes-viz., besides those above-mentioned, the Mibube or Mibe, considered in general as weavers; the Gergasibe, or shoemakers; the Waflube, or tailors; the Wambaibe, or singing men; the Wadlube, or beggars-who impart to the community of the Flilbe the character of a distinction into castes, especially as all of them, in the imaginary pedigree of the Pdllo stock, have been carried back to one common progenitor called S6; but we find the same degraded families among the Jolof.t The absorbing of these western tribes, especially the Jolof and Wikor6 by the Fufiilde nation, furnishes at the same time an unquestionable and unmistakable proof that the march of conquest of the latter proceeded from west to east, and not
in an opposite direction, as has been the generally adopted view of those who
have touched upon the subject. No doubt it is impossible for us,
* M. Eichwaldt, from the account given of them by various French travelers,
makes, as to this tribe, the following interesting statement, regarding them as
gipsies: "En effet, les ethnographes considérent habituellement les Laobds comme
une branche des Foulahs: mais cc fait n'est nullement démontré, et nous avons
nousmêmes connu des voyageurs qui affirmaient que les Laobgs possédaient une
langue nationale différente du Foulah." (Journal de la Société Ethnologique,
1841, vol. i., p. 62.)

The Fulbe in general divide all the tribes belonging to their stock into four
groups or families, but they by no means agree as to the particulars of the
division. I will here give one which is commonly assumed:

1. The Jel, comprising the following sections: the Torobe; Ildrbe; Fftobe;
   Je'btobe; Stidube; U'ube; Taribe; Jellube; Bd'abe; Simbirank6be, also called
   Nd6jiga, from their dwelling-place; Feroibe; Ntikkobe; Sillube; Sosobc; T6ngabe;
   Waijo'be. Of these the U'ube are again subdivided into five sections: the U.
   Buoe. U. Feroibe (distinct from the Feroibe before mentioned), U. Ddde, U.
   Sifkam, U. Waj6be. The Jellube, again, are subdivided into three sections: the J.
   Yor6nga, J. Haire, and J. Mdsina.

2. The B'a6, comprising the sections of the Gnara or Gghara, the Sindega, and the
   Dandji.

3. The S6, comprising the Jawimbe, the Mdbube or Mibe, Gergasdbe, Waflube,
   Ladbe, Wambaibe, and Waulube.

4. The Beri, comprising the Siwdilbe, Jaldji, Kombangk6be, and Kfngirankube.
But besides these there are a great many other divisions of this wide-spread tribe,
called from localities, some of which I shall mention as opportunity occurs. See.
especially Appendix II.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

* with our faint knowledge of the migration of tribes in general, and of African
tribes in particular, to explain how this tribe came to settle in the region along the
lower course of the Senegal, as their type is distinguished in so very remarkable a
manner from the character of the other tribes settled in that neighborhood, and
evidently bears more resemblance to some nations whose dwellingplaces are in
the far east, such as the Malays, with whom M. Eichwaldt, in his ingenious but
hypothetical essay on the Fd'lA,* has endeavored to connect them by way of
Meroi. I myself am of

opinion that their origin is to be sought for in the direction of the east; but this
refers to an age which, for us, is enveloped in impenetrable darkness, while what I
have said about the progress of their conquest from west to east relates to
historical times, comprising the period from the fourteenth century downward.t In
this respect the mission of two religious chiefs of this tribe from Melle (where
they resided at the time) to Biri, the King of B6ru, who ruled about the end of the
thirteenth and the beginning of the fourteenth century,t is of the highest
interest, as it shows us at once that this tribe, even at that early period, was
distinguished by its religious learning, and gives a proof of the progress of the tribe from west to east. Some other facts which have come to our knowledge with regard to the progress of this tribe eastward will be mentioned in the chronological tables; here I will only call the reader's attention to the circumstance that we find among the most intimate friends and most stanch supporters of Mohammed el Hij A'skia a man of the name of 'All Fulinu, while in general it was the policy of the Songhay dynasty, which was begun by that great ruler of Negroland, to keep in check this tribe,

* Eichwaldt in Journal de la Société Ethnologique, 1841, vol. i., p. 2, et seq. Among all the arguments brought forward by this gentleman in order to show a relation of the Fulbe with the Malays, there is none of any consequence; and all his specimens of words brought forward with this object are either taken from bad sources or prove nothing, the only striking similarities in the language of these two nations being the words for fish and spear. I speak here of a special and direct relationship of the Fulbe with the Malays, without taking into consideration the vestiges of the general relationship of the whole human race, which have lately been pursued and demonstrated with such industry by Mr. Logan.

† There may be some remote affinity between the Fulbe and the South African tribes, but this refers to an age probably not later than the rule of the Pharaohs; and the idea that the Fulbe proceeded from South Africa is certainly entirely erroneous. The identity of a few numerals in the Fulfulde and Kaffir languages is curious, but may be explained on historical grounds.

FU'LBE IN THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

the conquering tendency of which could not but become apparent to intelligent rulers, notwithstanding the humble character of "berror6ji," under which they used to immigrate and settle in foreign countries; and this is the acknowledged reason why the Gabro, a tribe whom we shall meet in the course of our proceedings on the river below Gigho, have entirely forgotten their Fulfulde idiom, not having been allowed, for a certain period, to use it. Whether it be true, as the FMailani-n-Htusa assert, that Kanta, the founder of the homonymous dynasty of K~bbi, in the very beginning of the sixteenth century, was originally a slave of a party of Fulbe settled in the country, a fact which, if confirmed, would prove the early settlement of the tribe in this country, I am unable to decide, although it is certainly true that in the course of the sixteenth century the Fulbe became strong enough, in the regions on the east side of the Isa or Kwdra to exercise a great influence in the struggles which ensued between the successors of the first Kanta, while it was a chief of their tribe, the ruler of Danka, or Deng, who, according to A'lmed Bdbi,* first began his predatory incursions into the Songhay territory, laying waste the fertile and once extremely populous region along the Ris el mni. It is thus explained how, even in the beginning of the seventeenth century, Fulbe tribes were settled in several places of Bagrmi.

But just on account of the vastness of the region over which they were scattered were these people, while pursuing only their own local interest, powerless even in these loosely-connected and
almost crumbling kingdoms where they had found a new home, with the exception of Bighena, where they appear to have formed a nucleus of greater strength, but destitute of any religious impulse. A new epoch for this wide-spread tribe did not open till the beginning of this century, when, in the year 1802, Bdwa, the ruler of G6ber, summoned to his presence the Sheikh ‘Othmin, together with the other chiefs of the tribe, and severely reprimanded them on account of the pretensions which they were beginning to put forward. It was then that ‘Othmn, who, being settled in the village Dighel, performed the office of imim to his countrymen, and had begun to give them a new religious impulse, which raised them above their petty interests, filled with indignation at the manner in which he, the great Moslim, was treated by those pagans, was roused to the attempt of making himself and his tribe independent of the will of the native ruler of the country, and, *Ahmed Bibi J. L. 0. S., vol. vi., p. 550. t See vol. ii., p. 550.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

having assembled his countrymen, who now conferred upon him the dignity and authority of a sheikh, raised the standard of revolt; but his proceedings, at least as far as regarded G6ber and the capital Alkaiwa, were far from proving successful at the beginning, he being vanquished in almost every encounter; but the fanatical zeal of his followers, whom he continually inspired with fresh energy by his religious songs,* was so great that gradually he overcame all these obstacles, and at length succeeded in laying the foundation of a vast empire, being greatly assisted in his career by his brother 'Abd Allihi, who, although his senior, had been the first to pay him homage, and by his son Mohammed Bello. He took up his residence first at Gando, where he was besieged for a long time, and afterward at Siffwa, till, as described by Captain Clapperton in the excellent and concise account of this struggle which he has given in the report of his second journey, 'Othmin ended his life in a sort of fanatical ecstas

He was followed by Mohammed Bello, who endeavored to introduce more order into the empire thus consolidated, and who, on the whole, must rank high among the African princes, being distinguished not less by his great love of learning and science than by his warlike spirit, although his military achievements were far from being always successful. But he has had the misfortune, after enjoying a great name in Europe for a short time for the kind and generous spirit in which he received Captain Clapperton on his first journey, to incur the severest condemnation on account of the manner in which he treated that same enterprising traveler on his second journey. No doubt he was a distinguished ruler, but he must not be judged according to European ideas. He had to struggle hard, not less against the native tribes anxious to assert their independence, than against his great rival; Mohammed el Kinemf, the King of B6rnu, who, just at the time of Clapperton's second stay, pressed him very closely, and, having successfully overrun the eastern provinces of the Fulfdilde or Fellita empire, threatened Kan6. Hence this political position, together with the instigations of the Arabs, who feared for their commerce with Negroland if the road from the south should be opened, will account in some measure for his treatment of the English traveler,
who perhaps urged his going to the Sheikh of B6rnu with too much energy. However, there is no doubt that Bello's successor

* I shall communicate his principal song in Appendix III.

t Clapperton's Second Journey, p. 203, et seq.

PRESENT STATE OF THE EMPIRE.

and brother, eAt'ku, who' ruled from the year 1832 till 1837, would have weakened the interest of the European public in the example which Bello gave of an energetic and generous ruler in those distant and out-of-the-way regions if his career had become known to them; for he seems to have fully belied the expectation of "a mean prince,"7* which he raised when still living in his retirement as a jealous king's brother without power and influence. But his reign was too short for consolidating sufficiently the loosely-connected empire, although, as long as he lived, full security is said to have reigned. The spirit of independence broke out more strongly under his successor 'Al'yu, a son of Bello by a female slave, who, save a well-meaning and cheerful disposition, does not appear to have inherited many of the noble qualities of his father, and, least of all, his warlike spirit; and hence the lamentable condition in which I found this extensive kingdom, while there is scarcely any hope that affairs will assume a more consolidated character before another more energetic ruler succeeds to 'Aliyu. Nevertheless, the kingdom or empire, even at the present time, still comprises the same provinces which it did at its most flourishing period, with the exception of Khadega, the governor of which has made himself independent; but the military strength of these provinces, especially as regards cavalry, as well as the amount of revenue, is greatly impaired, although the latter, collected from all the provinces together, certainly exceeds one hundred millions of shells, or about £10,000 sterling, besides an equal value in slaves and native cloth, or articles of foreign produce. The whole strength of the empire, if the distracted state of each province allowed its quota to be withdrawn from thence, would certainly still form an imposing force, viz., the cavalry of the seat of government, together with the subjected parts of Kgbbi and Zinfara, about 5000; the cavalry of Kan6, from 5000 to 7000; that of Bauchi, from 1500 to 2000; that of Zdgzeg, 3000; A'damiwa, 2000; Kitsena and Mdsaw, each about 1000; Katigum, 1200; Marmar and Sh6fira, each 500; Bobgru, 600; Ddura,

* This is the term which Clapperton uses with regard to him.

t There are inspectors of the provinces residing in S6koto who are responsible for the tribute being duly delivered. 'Abdd, the son of Gedfdo, has all the following provinces under his inspection: Kan6, Zdgzeg, A'damdw, Hamdruwa, Sdmbo Degfmsa, Katigum, Simbo-Ld, governed by Yerima A'hmedu. The ghaladima A'hmedu has only Kfttsena under his inspection; the migaji inspects Zdfnara; Moddggel, Badchi; Ydron Sambo, Kazdure, the province of Ddmbo; Dennil J6di, Ddura.

I TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

400; Kaziure, about 200. But we have seen to what a state Zdnfara is at present reduced, while the curious manner in which Kgbbi is portioned out between the
rulers of Sokoto and Gando* can not fail to cause a great deal of jealousy and controversy between the two courts, at the very centre of power; and as for A'damiwa, there are still so many hostile elements in the interior of that half-subdued province, that it is impossible to withdraw from thence a particle of its home force; nay, even the province of Kano is so harassed and distracted by the continual inroads of the governor of Khaddja, that the ruler of that province is scarcely able to send a few hundred horsemen to join the army of his liege lord. We have seen how that same rebel governor of Khadja repeatedly defeated a numerous host, taken from almost all the provinces of the empire, which had been sent against him, and we shall see what were the inglorious manoeuvrings of 'Alfyu himself when he led out, in person, his army against the enemy during my stay in Wurn6, of which I shall now proceed to give a short diary.

Monday, April 4th. Having entered my quarters in the dark, I had no idea of their character, and it was not till the following day that I became aware of it. They consisted, as shown in the accompanying wood-cut, of a spacious court-yard containing nothing but a clay building, which comprised two apartments besides a small granary, built of clay, but which was covered all round

0

1. Entrance hut or parlor, furnished with two seats of clay and two couches of the same material
* See Appendix IV.

MY QUARTERS IN WURNO'.

'with straw at the setting in of the rainy season, in order to protect it from violent rains. The clay hall had been built by A'bdii, the elder brother and the predecessor of the present ghaladma, who greatly surpassed the latter in warlike energy, and who fell in Zinfara during that unfortunate expedition against the G6ber6wa, the preparations for which Mr. Overweg witnessed during his stay in Mar6di, in the beginning of the summer of 1851. The principal apartment of this clay hall, supported by two massive columns, with an average temperature of 940, was an excellent abode during the hottest part of the day, when it felt very cool and pleasant; but it was rather oppressive in the morning and evening, when the air outside was so much cooler. But in the court-yard there was not the slightest shade, all the trees in this quarter of the town, as well as the huts consisting of reed, having been swept away by a great conflagration the preceding year, a young k6rna-tree, which had been planted at a later period, only just beginning to put forth its foliage. The whole court-yard, also, was in a most filthy state, characteristic of the manners of the natives in their present degraded moral and political situation. The first thing, therefore, that I had to do, in order to make myself tolerably comfortable, was to cleanse out this Augean stable, to build a hut for my servants, and a shady retreat for myself. I was well aware that the latter, which it was not easy to make water-tight, would become useless with the first
considerable fall of rain; but I entertained the hope that before that time I should be able to set out on my journey.

It was market-day, there being a market held here every Monday and Friday, although the great market of S6koto, which is much more important, even in the present reduced condition of that place, still serves to supply the wants of the inhabitants of all the neighboring towns and villages at large. Sending, therefore, into the market, in order to supply my most urgent wants, I found that corn, as well as meat, was even dearer here than in Kitsena, 100 shells scarcely sufficing for the daily maintenance of one horse, and 800 shells buying no more corn than 500 would have done in Kitsena, while an ox for slaughtering cost 7000 shells; and I bought two milking-goats, in order to enjoy the luxury of a little milk for my tea, for 2700 shells. The only article which was at all cheap was onions. The market is held on a natural platform spreading out in front of the northwestern gate, and surrounded and fortified by a ditch, as, in the present weak state of the FiRbe, the market-people are liable to be suddenly attacked by the enemy.

Leaving a small farm, belonging to my friend 'Abd el Kider, the Sultan of A'gades, on our left, we then turned round to the north, into the road which leads to Salime, and crossed once more the "gulbi-n-roma," which takes its course toward S6koto, exhibiting a very uneven bottom, and forming several pools of stagnant water. Here a broad plain spread out, at present almost bare of vegetation, where my poor camels searched in vain for pasture, putting me to a daily expense of 800 shells in order to recruit their strength by means of "hariwa," or bean-straw, which furnishes the most nourishing food for the camel in these regions, though in general it is regarded as unwholesome for the horse. Having thus fed my camels for some time, I sent them to a greater distance, in the direction of S6koto, between Dank6mu and Gfda-n-minomf, where better fodder was to be procured.
After the luxuriant vegetation of other parts of Negroland, I was astonished at the naked appearance of the country around the capital, only a few k-ka or monkey-bread-trees being seen; but the country presented a very different aspect on my return journey the next year, at the end of the rainy season. G6ber is distinguished for its general dryness, and for this very reason is esteemed exceedingly well adapted for cattle-breeding. The fron-

PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION.

tiers of the three different provinces or territories (viz., Kebbi, G6ber, and A'dar) join in this corner; and this is the reason that, while Sokoto is regarded as lying within the borders of the province of Kebbi, Wurn6 is considered as belonging to the conquered territory of the province of G6ber; while just beyond the gulbin-rfma, in a northerly direction, the province of A'dar or Tadlar commences. But, to return to my first promenade round Wurn6, having surveyed the broad dry valley of the gulbi, we turned round the precipitous cliffs over which winding paths lead up to the town, and, having skirted for a while a small branch or kordmma, which farther on turns away, we kept along the eastern side of the town, and re-entered the place from the southeastern corner, through the gate by which we had made our first entrance. Annexed the reader will find a wood-cut which will serve to show its situation much better than any description could do. Meanwhile the town became more and more deserted, and on


TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

the 7th of April, Alhittu and 'Omir, or Ghomiro, the two brothers of the ghaladima, with numbers of other people, went to join the expedition; but these fighting men, with a few exceptions, care only about their bodily comfort, and for a few "gorfye" or K6la n
uts would be willing to sell the whole of their military accoutrements. It was a great matter with these warriors that, while the old gorfye were nearly finished, the new ones, which were just then brought into the market, were sold for the high price of 120 shells each. In scarcely any place of Negroland did I observe so little true military spirit as in Wurn6; and almost all the leading men seem to be imbued with the melancholy conviction that their rule in these quarters is drawing to an end.

Friday, 1April 81h. It was again market-day, and I made sundry purchases, including a small ox, for almsgiving, as I had made it a rule, in every large town where I staid any considerable time, to distribute alms among the poor. I was astonished at the great quantity of cotton which was brought into the market, and which showed what these fine vales are capable of producing, if the inhabitants, instead of being plunged in apathy and exposed to the daily incursions of a relentless enemy, were protected by a strong government. This very day we received the news that the rebellious Kdbdwa, or natives of Kebbi,* had made a
foray against Serifna, a town situated on the most frequented road between Sokoto and Gando, the two capitals and central seats of the power of the Fulbe in these quarters. The neighboring Fellani had come to the rescue of the town, and had prevented the enemy from taking it, but six horses had been carried away. Only a few days later, the news arrived of another attack having been made by the rebels upon the town of Gando, the residence of Dyang-riwa, one day's distance to the south from Bfrni-n-Kebbi, although this time they were less fortunate, and were said to have been driven back with the loss of twenty-two horses. Meanwhile the sultan himself, with his sluggish host of cavalry, instead of attacking the Gb6eriwa, who already, before we left Kitsuena, had taken the field with a numerous army, was said to be stationed in Katdru. He had been joined by the governor of Z-riya in person, while Kan6 had sent only the ghaladima with the whole of their cavalry.

* The national name Kgbgtwa is taken from the ancient form of the name, Klibi, which was formerly in use (exactly like the form Mdli, Maldwa), but has given place to the form Kebbi, which is thus distinctly written, even in Arabic, by authors of the seventeenth century.

GLOOMY PROSPECTS.
From Katdru, 'Alfyu with his army, after some useless delay, betook himself to Kduri-n-Nam6da, whence we received news on the 11th, the Gb6eriwa having meanwhile taken up a strong position in front of him, without being able to induce him to offer them battle. The dread of these effeminate conquerors for the warlike chief of the Gb6eriwa, the son of Yakba, is almost incredible. He has ruled since 1836, and the preceding year had roused the whole of the indigenous population of the various provinces to a struggle for their national and religious independence against the ruling tribe. This dread of him has been carried so far that they have quite obliterated his real name, calling him only Mayiki, or "the warrior." While 'Alyn was stationed at Kduri-n-Namoda, and part of his army was in Dankirba, the A'zena made an attack upon Rdya, a town situated at a day's distance from the former place. But the whole condition of the country, to the west as well as to the east, was most deplorable; and three native merchants, of the Zoromdwa or Zoghorin, when speaking about my projected journey toward the Niger, and beyond that river westward, told me, in the most positive manner, "b6 bo hafla," "there is no road ;" that is to say, "the country is closed to you, and you can not proceed in that direction." And taking into consideration the low ebb of courage and enterprise among the natives-the weakness and unwarlike spirit of 'Alfyu-the complete nullity of Khalflu-the vigor of the young and warlike Midem6, the rebel chief of Kebbi, who, starting from his residence Arg ngo, distant only a couple of hours’ march from that of Khalflu, was carrying the flame of destruction in every direction- the revolted province of Zabgrma, with an equally young and-energetic ruler, Ddiid, the son of Hiammah J:mmathe province of D6ndina in open revolt and cutting off all access to the river-all these circumstances rendered the prospect of my accomplishing this journey very doubtful. Moreover, besides the weakness of the two rulers of the Fulbe dominions, there is evidently a feeling of jealousy between the courts of S6koto
and Gando; and here we find the spectacle of two weak powers weakening each other still more, instead of uniting most cordially in an energetic opposition against the common foe. For instance, the young chief of Kebbi, who at present caused them so much trouble, had been previously a prisoner in Wurn6; but when Khalilu wanted to take his life, 'Alfyu procured his liberty, and gave him a splendid charger to boot.

I TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
But a European will achieve what the natives of the country themselves deem impossible; and my friends the Zoromiwa merchants, who wanted to induce me to relinquish my project, had perhaps their own private interests in view. They probably entertained the hope that, in case of my being prevented from penetrating westward, I should be obliged to sell my stock here, which I now kept back as a provision for the road before me. By way of consoling them, I gave them a parcel of beads of the kind called dankasdwa, which I found useless for the countries through which I had to pass, in exchange for some shells I was in want of for the daily expenses of my household.

Meanwhile I collected a good deal of information concerning the topography of the neighboring provinces, and the remarkable manner in which the province of Kebbi has been portioned out between the two empires of Gando and Sokoto. I also compiled an outline of the history of this country, which began greatly to attract my attention. Meanwhile, in order to preserve my health, I took a ride almost every day out of the town, and was, in particular, much interested in an excursion which I made in the afternoon of the 16th, in a northerly direction, on the road to Salnme, which is at the same time the great high road to A'dar and A'gades. A cheerful aspect was especially exhibited by the village of Fichi, stretching out to a considerable length from east to west, and skirted by a small water-course, which inundates and fertilizes the neighboring grounds during the rainy season, so that the people are able to raise, besides two species of yamq, namely, 'gwiza and r6go, a good deal of tobacco and cotton. Beyond, a wide open plain spreads out, covered with the plant "kakma," which looks very much like agh-dl (Hedysarum Alhag). But the whole of this ground so near the capital is now very unsafe under the weak rule of 'Allyu, and exposed to continual inroads of the energetic G6beriwa; and a few days later the village of Salime itself was ransacked by the enemy, and a good many slaves carried off. The more desperate the condition of the country was, the more remarkable appeared to me the outward show of dominion which was maintained; in proof of this, I may state that the very day we received the news of a new outbreak of the general mutiny of the native tribes, the tribute from the provinces of Kan6 and Ziriya entered the town.

Wednesday, April 20th. A highly interesting and delightful interruption to my protracted and involuntary stay in Wurno was

CAPTAIN CLAPPERTON'S ROUTE.
caused by an excursion which I made to Sokoto. The first part of this road I had already become acquainted with on a former ride, which had extended as far as Dankemu; but at that period, being more intent upon inhaling the fresh air than upon laying down the country, I had not paid much attention to the extensive cultivation of rice which is going on in this valley, while on this occasion the features of the country, and, in particular, this branch of cultivation, formed a special object of attraction to me. For it was the first time during my travels in Negroland that I had seen rice cultivated on a large scale; and as we were winding along the foot of the rocky hills to the southeast, crossing the various small channels which descend from them and afterward join the greater rivulet which we saw at some distance on our right, the country became dotted with small villages, or "rugga," as they are called by the Fulbe, some of them of historical renown, such as Diggel, the village where Othman the Reformer had his usual residence before he rose to that great political importance which he attained in after times. But such is the degraded state of these conquerors at the present time, that even this village, which, if they had the slightest ambition or feeling of national honor, ought to be a memorable and venerable place to them for all ages, has been ransacked by the G6beriwa, and lies almost deserted.

It is at Ddghel that the valley attains its greatest breadth; but as we advanced, in a southwesterly direction, it was narrower, till, at the village called Gfda-n-nnomp, it became greatly contracted, shortly after which, the river turning away to a greater distance, the path ascended the rocks. It is the same path along which Clapperton, on his second journey, went so repeatedly from Sokoto to Magiriya, but which, from the scanty information obtained from his papers in this respect, has been laid down so very erroneously. In general, I can not praise too highly the zeal and accuracy (allowance being made for his positions of longitude) with which this eminent and successful traveler, who crossed the whole breadth of the African continent between the Mediterranean and the Bight of Benin, has laid down his various journeys. On the other hand, the companion of his former travels, Major Denham, has shown great inaccuracy, both with respect to distances as well as to the direction of his various routes.

The ground was enlivened by the cultivation of "r6go," which, when attaining a certain growth, contributes greatly to the beauty of the scenery; but kfika or baobab trees were almost the only larger vegetable production which adorned the country during the first part of our ride, sometimes shooting out from between the very blocks of sandstone with which the hills were strewn. Farther on, another tree, called "kidasi," and a few small tamarind trees also appeared, and the tops of the ant-hills, which at times form regular rows, were often adorned with the fine fresh-leaved bush "sførkef." The ground, which consists of black argillaceous soil, "lika" or "ffrki," as it is called in B6rn, not yet fertilized by the rainy season, was cracked and torn asunder, while the white "kili bibbal6" (Buphaga Africana), which enliven every district of Negroland where cattle are common, were stalking about in the fields, looking out for food. But cattle at the present time were sought for in vain. Here they would have found no
pasture, and, in consequence, were driven to a great distance, as is the general custom with the Fidibe or Föllani of these quarters, even those settled in the province of K~tsena having at times their herds of cattle pasturing in the far-distant grassy and healthy grounds of Zabörrma.

While the cultivation of rice prevails in the northeasternmost part of the valley, more cotton and sorghum were observed toward the village of Gfธรรมดา~nomf, although the state of the fields did not argue a great deal of industry on the part of the inhabitants, being rather obstructed by weeds and thorny bushes. But far more native corn is grown on the other side of Wurn6, so that it even forms a mercantile speculation, on a small scale, to carry corn from Wurn6 to S6koto; nay, even sheep are transported in this way for a very small profit, being bought in Wurn5 for 1200, or, when on credit, for 1400 shells, and sold in S6koto for 1500.

Having ascended the rising ground close beyond a source of limpid water producing a narrow spot of fresh verdure, the rocky surface was soon succeeded by a fertile plain of sand covering the rock to the depth of a foot, while the fields of the various farmers were separated from each other by slabs of sandstone. The labors of the fields, however, had not yet begun; and trees also here were scanty, a small mimosa indicating the half way or "marirraba" between the two towns, while another village was distinguished by a single del6b palm. Having reached the highest point of the path, from whence we obtained the first sight of S6koto, we descended into a deeper hollow or irregular valley, adorned by fine green fields of "r6go," and bordered by living hedges.

BAIU'R.NA. 127

of the N ux 2Jurgans, the nut being still green, but having just attained its full size.

This was the valley of Bamiirna, which is distinguished on account of its fertility and abundance of water, but for this same reason is rather unhealthy, and, during and shortly after the rainy season, becomes quite impassable for travelers. Close to the source, which rushes forth from the western cliffs, a small market is held, where travelers generally make a short halt; but this spot being very narrow, and affording but little comfort for a midday halt, we went on a little farther, and halted for an hour or two at the end of the vale, under two fine diirremi-trees a little to the right of the path. Here, where the principal vale is joined by a side branch, and where the greatest amount of moisture is collected, the vegetation is especially rich, and a beautiful limdn-tree full of fruit adorned the place, besides young offshoots of the plantain. But more interesting still was a small plantation of sugar situated at the foot of the hill, although the stalks were at present only about sixteen or eighteen inches high; and I was not a little surprised when I learned that this piece of ground belonged to a man who not only cultivated, but even prepared sugar; but I did not then make his acquaintance, as he was absent at the time. Meanwhile, enjoying our cool shade, we partook of a very moderate but wholesome African luncheon, consisting of a few onions boiled in water, seasoned with some tamarind fruit and a little butter, which forms a very
refreshing treat during the hot hours of a tropical climate; for the onions hereabout are of excellent quality and extremely cheap, fifteen being sold for ten kurdf. Soon after starting in the afternoon we fell in with a long marriage procession, consisting of a bride and her mother, both mounted on horseback, accompanied by a considerable number of female servants and attendants, carrying the simple household furniture on their heads. At the same time that this interesting procession caused a cheerful intermezzo, a greater variety of vegetation was perceptible at a village on our right. Besides körna, there were a few diim and del6b palms, and the fields were adorned with a great number of tamarind-trees, but of small growth. Proceeding thus over the rocky ground, we reached the small rivulet of S6koto, the "gulbi-n-Rtba" or "Bdigga," or, as it is called in its upper course, where I fell in with it on my return journey, gulbi-n-Bakfira. Even at the present season it bad a small current of water, but only about ten yards wide and ten inches deep, and just sufficient for us to water our horses. The water is regarded as unwholesome for man; and at this season of the year, shallow wells or holes are dug in the gravel at some distance from the stream, in order to supply the poor people. The wealthier classes are believed to be supplied from other quarters, although such a presumption is very often false, the water from this stream being merely sold to them under a more pompous title. Ascending then the slope of the eminence on which the town is built, and which rises to about one hundred feet, and leaving a spacious "mirind" or dyeing-place on the slope of the hill on our left, we entered the walls of Sokoto by the k6fa-n-rimi; and although the interior did not at present exhibit that crowded appearance which made such a pleasing impression upon Clapperton, the part nearest the wall being rather thinly inhabited, and the people being evidently reduced to a state of great poverty and misery, it made a cheerful impression on me, on account of the number of dtm palms and körna-trees by which it is adorned. Orders having been sent beforehand, I was quartered without delay in the house of the ghaladfim-a, a clay dwelling in tolerable repair, but full of white ants, so that I was glad to find there a "gad5" or couch of reeds, where I was able to rest myself and put away my small effects, without being continually exposed to the insidious attacks of these voracious insects. Having thus made myself comfortable, my first visit the following morning was to M6dibo 'All, who had already testified his friendship for me by sending me a fat sheep to Wurn6. Differing entirely from the present generation of beggars, whose ignoble habits make a long stay in Wurn6 or Sokoto intolerable, he is a cheerful old man of noble demeanor, and with pure Flilbe features, with which his middle height and rather spare growth exactly corresponded. He was simply but neatly dressed in a white shirt and a shawl of the same color. M6dibo 'All is the oldest member of the family of the Reformer still alive, being the son of 'Ali, an elder brother of 'Othmin the Jehdi, and about seventy-five years of age. He was seated in the antechamber of his house, before the door of which his little herd of milch cows were assembled; and he received me with unaffected kindness. I immediately saluted him as an old friend and
acquaintance, and we had a very pleasant and cheerful conversation, after which I delivered to him my present, consisting of a belili bernuis, a piece of white muslin, a

DESOLATE APPEARANCE OF THE TOWN.

high red cap ot "m tri," a small flask of "6ttAr" of roses, two razors, a pound of cloves, a loaf of sugar, and a looking-glass; and he was particularly delighted with some of these articles, which, on account of the insecurity of the road at the present time, are imported more rarely even from Kan6. In former times a great many Arabs used to visit this place, partly for the purposes of trade, partly in order to obtain a present from the sultan; but the danger of the communication in the present reduced state of the empire is so great that 'not a single Arab merchant visits the town. This circumstance can not fail to render the conquering tribe more favorably disposed toward opening an intercourse with the English, or Europeans in general, by way of the Niger. At present almost the whole traffic in foreign merchandise is in the hands of the people of Ghit and A'gades, especially in those of Mohammed B6ro, my friend the fugger of A'gades, who, being a native of A'dar, and having a numerous host of full-grown sons, exercises a great influence upon commercial and even political affairs in these quarters. Having thus commenced an acquaintance with the most respectable man in the town, I made a longer promenade through its interior, when I found the chief quarter, which had been the residence of Bello, greatly dilapidated, and the royal mansion itself in a state of the utmost decay. No doubt a considerable proportion of the inhabitants of the town, especially the males, had joined the expedition of 'Allyu to Zinfara; but as the greater part of the population coïsists of Zoramiwa or Zoghorin, or, as they are called farther westward, Jaw~mbe, a peculiar tribe which I have mentioned before, and about which I shall say more in another place, mixed here with the Im6shagh of A'dar, who do not join the army, the war could not exercise so great an influence upon the desolate appearance of the place. The Zoromiwa, in fact, are the artisans of the town, and the small tradesmen and brokers, and exercise a sort of monopoly in the art of working in leather, in which they are very expert, having probably learned it from the Engedesfye.

In endeavoring to survey the town, I first paid a visit to the market, which is situated at its northeastern corner, on the brink of the rugged slope which descends into the valley. It was empty at the present time, only a few slight sheds being made ready for the following day, when the great market was to be held; and the prospect over the broad flat valley to the north and northwest, in

TRAVELLS IN AFRICA.

the direction of D'Tinday, was uninterrupted, presenting at this season a scorched-up savanna, while the deep rill of the river was scarcely to be distinguished. A number of blind women, leaning on their staves or led by young children, were seen carrying pitchers of water up the cliff, affording a sad proof of the unhealthiness of the situation of the town, where blindness is very frequent. Turning then westward from the market, I reached the house of the late king
Atfku, where at present his son Hmedu resides, who formerly had his residence at Bakidra, till that place was taken by the G6beriwa. The house is in good repair, and the quarter adjacent is tolerably well inhabited—at least, better than any other part of the town; for Himedu is the chief of the Sissflbe or Syllebiwa,* who form the principal stock of the population of the neighboring hamlets or rugga of S6koto. The different nationality of these Syllebiwa, causing a diversity of interests and pursuits, is stated to be one of the reasons why Allyu, who has been made sultan chiefly through the influence of the Tdrobe, does not like to reside at S6koto as well as at Wurn6, although his residence at the latter place is greatly needed in the present rI. cl,-ed state of his power, in consequence of the continual danger from the G6beriwa, who, if the sultan should stay in S6koto, would endanger the safety of all the people living in the open villages and hamlets between the former and the present residence; and it was on this account that Bello built the town of Magiriya (the site of which, a little to the northeast of the latter, I have indicated on a former occasion), which, however, was soon abandoned for Wurn6.

The chief, Himedu, was at present absent; but I have mentioned already that I sent him a present immediately on my arrival in Giwasu, on account of his influential position, although I thought it politic afterward to keep out of his way as much as possible, in order not to excite any jealousy, Himedu being one of the nearest, if not the very nearest, to the succession, but opposed by the greater part of the present courtiers. Passing, then, along the well-frequented road which leads out of the k6fa-'Atfku in order to obtain a first glimpse of the country which I was to traverse on my road to Gando.

I shall say more in another place about this interesting tribe, who, originally belonging to the Negro stock of the Wlkord, have been swallowed up in the remarkable migration and conquest of the Fillbe eastward; here I will only mention the various sections into which they are divided, at least as far as these eastern quarters are concerned. These are the Lobirbe, L6mbe, Scningbe, Yir6be, Wdrbe, Jakk6be, Waldrbe, Jagilbe, and Jatbe.

CLAPPERTON'S DEATH.

It was an open level tract, at present without many signs of vegetation; but that part nearest the town was agreeably enlivened by a thriving suburb extending as far as the k6fa-n-Tar-mmia, and buried in a thicket of shady trees and hedges, thus presenting altogether a more animated spectacle than the interior of the town itself. Keeping along the machicolated wall, here only about twelve feet high and surrounded by a ditch, and following the path between it and the suburb, we entered the town, and turned our steps to the house of the gedido, where Captain Clapperton closed his meritorious career as an African explorer.

The house is still in tolerable repair, 'Abd&i, the son of the gedido, who, although not very energetic, and still less warlike, is a man of cheerful disposition and good principles, having too great a veneration for his father, who did so much toward embellishing and adorning this town, to allow his residence to go to ruin. The old gedido had long outlived his master Bello, and if I had proceeded to S6koto directly from A'gades, I should still have found him alive, for he only died during
my presence in Kan6 in February, 1851. I will here only mention that it was believed for a moment in England that Clapperton died from the effects of poison; but the amount of fatigue, privations, and sickness to which this most eminent of African travelers was exposed on his circuitous journey, by way of Nfipe and Kan6, from the coast as far as this place, explains fully how he was unable to withstand the effects of the shock which mental disappointment exercised upon him; nay, it is wonderful how he bore up so long, if his own hints with regard to the state of his health are taken into account.

In the evening, my old friend M6dibo 'Alf, and the mother of A'bui, the elder and more warlike brother of the present ghaladfm'a, who was slain by the G6beriwa two years before my visit to this place, treated me hospitably, and I sent a present to S'aidu, a younger son of Bello, who resides in S6koto, and is considered as a sort of mayor.

Friday, April 22d. It was the great market-day, which was of some importance to me, as I had to buy a good many things, so that I was obliged to send there a sum of 70,000 shells; but the market did not become well-frequented or well-stocked till between two and three o'clock in the afternoon, when I myself proceeded thither. I had taken a ride in the morning through the southeastern quarter of the town, proceeding through the k6fa-'Atfku, thence along the wall, toward the west, and re-entered the town by the k6fa-'Alf J~du, where the whole quarter is very desolate, even the wall being in a state of decay, and the fine mosque, built by the gedido during Clapperton's stay here, fallen entirely to ruins. But, even in the present reduced condition of the place, the market still presented a very interesting sight, the numerous groups of people, buyers as well as sellers, and the animals of various descriptions, being picturesquely scattered over the rocky slope, as I have endeavored to represent in the plate opposite. The market was tolerably well attended, and well supplied, there being about thirty horses, three hundred head of cattle for slaughtering, fifty tak~rker, or oxen of burden, and a great quantity of leather articles (this being the most celebrated branch of manufacture in S6koto), especially leather bags, cushions, and similar articles, the leather dressed and prepared here being very soft and beautiful. There were more than a hundred bridles for sale, the workmanship of which is very famous throughout all this part of Negroland; but especially a large quantity of iron was exposed for sale, the iron of S6koto being of excellent quality and much sought for, while that of Kan6 is of bad quality. A good many slaves were exhibited, and fetched a higher price than might be supposed, a lad of very indifferent appearance being sold for 33,000 shells; I myself bought a pony for 30,000. It being just about the period when the salt-caravan visits these parts, dates also, which usually form a small addition to the principal merchandise of those traders of the desert, were to be had; and I filled a leather bag for some 2000 shells, in order to give a little more variety to my food on the long road which lay before me.

April 23d. I took another interesting ride through the k6fa-n-Duinday not following the direct road to that village, which lies close to the junction of the g-
ulbi-n-Rfma with the gulbi-n-Riba, but not far from the decayed northern wall, and thus crossed a considerable channel, a branch of the river, full of water, being even at the present time about fifteen yards wide, and a foot and a half in depth, and then, keeping away from the village, reached the other branch, which was narrower, but more richly bordered by bushes, and, following it up in an easterly direction, reached the point of junction, or "megan-gimnu."
The whole valley here formed one uninterrupted rice-field; and how different was the aspect of the country from what it exhibited on my home journey, at the end of the rainy season of the

THE VALLEY OF SOSKOTO.
following year I A number of small boats were lying here, at the side of the narrow channel, but all of them separated into two halves, which had to be sewn together when their services were required for the rainy season. From this point I crossed over to the road leading to the village of Kor6, where, two days later, a party of K6lgeres made a foray; and, returning along this road toward the town, at a distance of about five hundred yards from the wall, we crossed another small arm of the river, which, during the rainy season, forms an extensive swamp. Leaving then the k6fa-n-Kor on our right, we turned round the northeastern corner of the wall, and ascended toward the k6fa-n-Mark6, which has received this name from a tree of the mark kind, although at present none are to be seen here.
Annexed is a sketch of a ground-plan of the town.

Annexed is a sketch of a ground-plan of the town.

S

II

1. Market-place. 2. House of Gedfdo, at present 'Abd(.
S. House of Bello, now of 'Aliyu, very much in decay.
4. House of 'Atiku, at present HUmedu, and close to it the mosque built by Gedfdo, now in ruins.
5. K6fa-n-Kor . . 6fa-n-Dfnday. 1. K6fa-n-Kad.
Altogether my visit to S6koto formed a most interesting intermezzo to my involuntary stay in the capital, although it could not fail to give me a farther insight into the frail character of the dominion of the Fiilbe over these regions; and during my stay here I certainly had no cause to complain of inhospitable treatment, as my friend Modibo 'Ali sent me every day a large basin of furi, the favorite drink of ghussub water, two dishes of hasty pudding, and two bowls of milk. Having given, by this excursion to the former capital, fresh energy to my spirits, I returned to my quar-

135
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ters in Wurn6 on the 24th, accomplishing the distance in little more than four hours; and it was time that I returned, for in the evening of that same day the joyful news arrived that the sultan had reached Gindi. However, he did not enter Wurn6 till the 23d, having forwarded a message to me the preceding evening from Yan-serkf, in the territory of RMba, requesting me to meet him the following morning outside the town. In consequence of this, I mounted on horseback with the first dawn of day, but found the sultan already close to the gate, descending the rocky path which leads from the above-mentioned place. He then made a halt with his whole suite, and saluted me in the kindest manner, calling me by my name, 'Abd el Kerim. The sultan was followed by the ghaladima; and I here first made the acquaintance of the learned 'Abd el Kdder dan Taffa (Mustapha), whom I was most anxious to see, in order to obtain from him some historical information. As soon as the people had dispersed quietly, returning to their various quarters, I sent him a present, when he paid me a visit in the evening, and furnished me immediately with some positive data with regard to the history of the dynasty of the Asiki or A'skia, the rulers of Soughay, which he had perfectly in his head, and which were of the greatest importance in giving me an insight into the historical relation of the western countries of these regions with that of Central Negroland.

April 29th. In the forenoon I went to 'Aliyu, in order to pay my compliments to him upon his safe return from this expedition, which, although not very glorious, had yet proved not quite unprofitable, he having reduced to subjection the poor little hamlets of the rocky district of Kotforkosh6, the inhabitants of which had previously placed themselves under the protection of the enemy; but even this insignificant victory he had only achieved through the bravery of the horsemen from Kitsena, while his own men had, as usual, exhibited the greatest cowardice. As long as the Falbe do not defeat the host of the G6beriwa, who take the field every year and offer them battle; the state of this empire will become daily worse and worse, while at present each of the two parties, the indigenous inhabitants as well as the conquerors, do nothing but accelerate the ruin of the country, without dealing a decided blow.

Although I had made the chief a very respectable present on my first arrival, I thought it well to give greater impulse to his friendly disposition toward me by adding something also this time,

MUSICAL PRESENTS.
presenting him with a cloth waistcoat and several smaller articles, besides a musical box, with the performance of which he was extremely pleased; but, unfortunately, when, anxious to impart his delight to his greatest friend and principal minister, 'Abdd, the son of Gedido, he had called the latter to witness this wonder, the mysterious box, affected by the change of climate and the jolting of the long journey, was silent for a moment, and would not play. I may observe here that I think it better for travelers not to make such presents as musical boxes, which so easily get out of order. The sultan fully granted my request for a speedy departure, promising also to assist me in my dangerous undertaking with a small
"r6kkia" or escort; and it was very essential to me to hasten my proceedings, as the following day brought the first evident proof of the approach of the rainy season.

Having made a present to the ghaladfma also, I thought it better, in order to make up for the deficiency of the musical box, to satisfy the musical taste of the sultan by making him a present of one of the harmonica which the Chevalier Bunsen, in consideration of the great effect which the Rev. Mr. Knoblecher had produced with the aid of such an instrument upon the inhabitants of the shores of the Nile, had procured for me; but I succeeded afterward in repairing, in some measure, the musical box, which caused the good-natured chief inexpressible delight, so that he lost no time in writing for me a commendatory letter to his nephew Khalflu, the chief of Gando. But I was extremely anxious to get away from this place, as I was sorely pestered by begging-parties, the inhabitants of Wurn6 and S6koto being the most troublesome beggars in the world, and besides them there being also many strangers in the town, especially the K6lgeres, who had brought the salt.

I was sitting one day in the entrance-hall of my house, in the company of some of these sons of the desert, when G6me, the brother of the Sultan 'Abd el Kider, from A'gades, who had lately been dethroned in order to make way for a new chief, Ahmed O' Rufiy, called upon me, and, with a very important and mysterious air, requested me to give him a private audience. After I had dismissed my other visitors, he began by reminding me of the kind manner in which his brother had received me, and finished by urgently begging me to use my influence in order to restore 'Abd el Kdder to his former dignity. I had great difficulty in convincing him that I had very little influence with the emir el 137

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

M1imenfn, and that I was afraid my intercession would have little or no effect, although, as well by way of private acknowledgment for the kindness of my host in that place, where I began to acquire more confidence in the success of my proceedings, as from a persuasion of the influence which a great service rendered by me to this man would have upon my future prospects, I should have desired nothing better than to be the means of reinstating him in his former position. Among the people who sought my acquaintance there was also Khalflu dan Hassan, one of the presumptive heirs to the royal power-Hassan being a younger brother of Bello-a young man of gentlemanly manners, but not of a very generous disposition, as he plainly evinced on my home journey the following year, when he wanted to oblige me to send him, after my safe return home, a pair of pistols in exchange for a black shirt scarcely worth 5000 shells, or two dollars.

All this time I had employed my leisure hours in reading a manuscript work which had given me the first insight into the history of the western portion of these F6llani dominions. It had been composed by 'Abd Allihi, the brother of 'Othmdn the Reformer, to whom the western portion of the conquered region was awarded as his share. But, although this work, the title of which is "Tez6n el airekit," contained, besides a great deal of theological matter, some important historical data, it did not satisfy my curiosity, and I had been endeavoring in vain
to obtain the work of Bello, entitled "Inffk el misiir1 fi fat-hi el Tekriiri," which had been earnestly recommended to me by my friend the fiki 'Abd el Kider in Kitsena; but I did not succeed in getting it into my hands till a few days before I left this place, when I found that the greater part of its contents, which had any geographical or historical importance, were identical with those documents brought back by Captain Clapperton on his first journey, and which have been partly translated by Mr. Salame in the appendix to the account of those travels. Meanwhile the country became more unsafe; and on the 5th of May the cattle of the village of Saldine were driven off by the people of Chgberi, to the great loss of my friend 'Abd el Kider dan Taffa, who had considerable property there; but strongly reminded of the effects of the rainy season by a heavy shower which fell on the 6th, driving me out of my cool shed, I urged my departure, and in the afternoon of the 8th took leave of 'Alyu with a

DEPARTURE FROM WURNO.

cheerful spirit, it being evident to me not only that he entertained not the slightest mistrust of my future proceedings, but on the contrary, even took considerable interest in me, as he found that it was my earnest desire to become well acquainted with the country and the people, and that I was anxious to establish friendly relations with the most distinguished and learned among them. But he gave me repeatedly to understand that he wished me not to go to Hamdallhti, to present my compliments to their countrymen and co-religionists there and their chief or his successor, 7e having just received a few days previously the news of the death of Sh6kho A'hmedu, while he had not the slightest objection to my going to Timb-6ktu, and paying a visit to the Sheikh El Bakay, who had spent some time in S6koto, and was on friendly terms with the family of F6diye.

CHAPTER LVIII.

STATE OF INSECURITY ALONG THE MOST FREQUENTED HIGH ROAD.-GANDO.

Sunday, May 8th. At length I was able to pursue my journey, which now, as soon as I had passed Sokoto, was to lead me into almost unknown regions, never trodden by European foot.

I was escorted out of the town, in grand style, by the ghaladfma with six horsemen, and then pursued my former track to S6koto, the character of which was but little changed, on account of the vegetation having only just begun to be vivified and restored by the first showers of the rainy season. The little stream which skirts the foot of the hill on which the town of S6koto is situated, and where we had watered our horses on our former excursion, now began gradually to increase, although as yet it exhibited but few signs of that considerable volume which I found here on my home journey the next year.

I was lodged in my old quarters, in the house of the ghaladfma, and was treated by my old friends Modibo 'Alf and S'afd with great hospitality. Although most anxious, on account of the season, to continue my journey with the shortest possible delay, I remained here the four following days, in order to procure what
was still wanted in my outfit for the long journey before me, but principally from
regard to the interests of my companion,

139

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
'Alf el A'geren, who had here to arrange some business; hence we did not set out
to the 14th of May.
There had been so heavy a shower the preceding afternoon, that a large stream
broke through the roof of my dwelling, and placed my whole room several inches
under water. I passed, therefore, a most uncomfortable night, and when I got up in
the morning I had a very bad headache. Every thing, also, was extremely wet, so
that it took us a long time to get ready our camels, and it was eight o'clock when
we left the k6fa-n - Taramnia, which, though the widest of the gates of the town,
did not allow my two largest boxes to pass without damage.
A grandson of M6dibo 'All, together with Shkho, the chief of the Zoromiwa,
escorted me outside the town. The first was certainly sincere; but as for the
second, I could not expect that he was in earnest in wishing me success in my
undertaking; for the Zoromiwa, who are the chief traders of the country, viewed
my enterprise with a great deal of mistrust, as they were told that I wanted to open
an intercourse along the river.
Thus we entered the large open plain, which is only bounded, at the distance of
about three miles to the north, by a low chain of hills, and scarcely dotted with a
single tree. But the monotonous country at present was not quite wanting in signs
of life, the plentiful fall of rain having inspired the inhabitants of the several
villages which were scattered about with sufficient confidence to trust their seed
to the ground. Having then passed a larger village, called Kaffariwa, we crossed a
considerable depression or hollow, stretching from S.W. to N.E., with plenty of
water, and with extensive grounds of yams, a branch of cultivation which, in these
swampy valleys of Kebbi, is carried on to some extent; and this depression was
soon succeeded by others of a like nature. Numerous herds of cattle were here
grazing on the intervening pasture-grounds, which were adorned with sycamores
and monkey-bread trees; and this continued till we reached Bodinga, and took up
our quarters in a small cluster of huts lying on the outside, close to the wall. This
time I did not enter the town, but I did so on my return journey, when I satisfied
myself of the considerable size of the town, and the state of decay and desolation
into which it has at present relapsed.
Sunday, May 15th. While we were loading our camels, the governor of the town,
who is a son of M6dibo 'All, of the name of Mohimmedu, came out to pay me his
compliments. He was of

140

BODINGA.-SHAGA'LI. 141
a cheerful disposition, and had treated us hospitably the preceding evening. He
even accompanied me to a considerable distance, till we left, on our right, the
town of Siffiwa or Shiffwa, an important place in the history of the PTdlo
reformer 'Othmin dan F6diye, but at present almost desolate and reduced to great
misery, presenting a fair specimen of the state of the province of Gando, which we here entered.

The country here, as well as near Bodinga, is almost exclusively adorned with monkey-bread-trees, and the soil seemed to be very parched; but a little farther on we descended into a depression which, having been already fertilized by the rain, was just being sown. Farther on, the ground continuing undulating, we watered our horses at a rich source of living water which rushed out from the rocks at the side of a small hamlet. We then passed a large and comfortable-looking place called Dendi (perhaps after a portion of that tribe, which settled here), and adorned with a profusion of trees, among which the dorowa or Parkia, the gôrêba or diim palm, and the gôôfa or delgb palm were most conspicuous. Toward the southeast side it was bordered by a depression full of yams and fresh herbage, and fringed by numbers of monkeybread-trees. Even a little market-place was to be seen; and the place seemed so attractive to my people that they would fain have spent here the rest of the day, and they were not at all pleased when I insisted on continuing our march. A little after noon we passed a pretty village with a small dyeing-place. Besides cornfields, where the crops were already two inches out of the ground, indigo was cultivated to a great extent. We then entered upon rocky ground, and, five miles farther on, reached the place Shaggli, separated into two groups along the northern slope of an eminence, and surrounded on three sides by a deep and wide ravine, which made the access to it very difficult. Here we were rather inhospitably received, the former mayor having been deposed, and a new one not yet installed in his place.

Monday, May 16th. Early in the morning we pursued our journey, through a rather hilly country broken by several small water-courses, full of cultivated ground and fine timber, principally monkey-bread-trees, which now exhibited a more cheerful appearance, as they were clad in fresh foliage. We passed several villages, where we again observed some signs of industry in the shape of dyeing, and, about six miles and a half from Shagli, left the considerable place Seilina (the same town which a few days before had been attacked by the enemy) on our left, situated on a small hilly chain. Here we entered a tract of country at present desolate, and thickly covered with underwood, and greatly infested by the independent inhabitants of Kebbi; but it was only of small extent, and, about four miles beyond Serfna, we entered, by a steep rocky descent, the fine valley of Sila, which is intersected by a considerable sheet of water.

We took up our quarters in the walled town of Sila, the dwellings of which were almost lost in the most splendid vegetation, among which one of the finest tamarind-trees I have ever seen was greatly distinguished, attracting to its dense foliage countless flights of birds, which were gathering from all sides to pass the night here in cheerful communion. The wider-spreadening foliage of the tamarind and monkey-bread trees was very picturesquely diversified by a large number of gônda-trees, or Carica Papaya, while in front of the principal gate a most splendid rimi or bentang-tree was starting forth as a proud landmark, pointing out to the
traveler the site of the gate. The camels, who suffered greatly from thirst, immediately on our arrival were sent off to the brook of living water, which is formed at the foot of the rocky cliff a little to the north of the place where we had descended from the higher ground.

Tuesday, May 17th. We reached Gando, the residence of another powerful Piillo prince (as powerful as that of S6koto), after a march of six hours, through a country richly provided by nature, and partly, at least, well inhabited. Hill and dale alternated, the depressions and cavities offering suitable grounds for the cultivation of yams. The vegetable kingdom also displayed its larger members in great variety. In the village Babanfdi, which we passed about two miles from Sila, we observed the three species of palms which are common to Negroland in the same locality, viz., the d-6m, the date, and the delbb palm, while, near a swampy sheet of water before we came to Masima, I caught sight of the first banana or iyaba-tree that I had seen since I had left A'damAwa, with the exception of those young offshoots which I had observed in Bamurna. Near this latter place, which was situated at the border of a deep valley, a large swamp spread out covered with rank reed-grass; and beyond the town of Masima we had to cross another large and irregular valley or ffddama, where, even at this season of the year, a large sheet of water was formed, which, according to the statement of the natives, was full of alligators.

The towns also exhibited a considerable degree of industry in their dyeing-places; and a short distance from our halting-place

142

CHARACTER OF GANDO.

we even passed large hollows about two fathoms in depth, and one in particular where iron had been dug out. Small marketing stalls in some places lined the road, and the town of Masima, with its straggling suburbs, presented an animated spectacle; but cattle were greatly wanting, nothing but sheep being seen, as all the horned cattle had been carried away by the predatory bands of Argingo.

As we approached the town of Gando, I could not help wondering how the people had been led to choose this locality as the seat of a large empire, commanded as it was by hilly chains all around, in the manner shown in the accompanying wood-cut, while the rising L ground would have offered a far more suitable locality. But the situation of the A lip town is on a par with the character of its do-. minion-without commanding strength, o.“k” and quite incapable of keeping together even that large agglomeration of provinces which have gathered around it. However, for a provincial town, the interior is very pleasant and animated, being adorned with a variety of trees, among which the banana is prominent.

Having sent a messenger in advance, I soon obtained quarters in the house of El Khassa, the chief eunuch of the court; but they were extremely narrow and unpleasant, although I had a very good clay house for myself.

Thus I had entered the residence of another very important Piillo chief, whose dominion extended several hundred miles over the country which I had to traverse, and whose friendship it was of the utmost importance for me to secure,
as his provinces inclose both banks of the Niger, while the dominion of the Sultan of Sokoto does not reach the principal branch at all. It was the more unfavorable that the present ruler of this very extensive kingdom should be a man without energy, and most inaccessible to a European and a Christian. His name is Khalflu, and he is the son of 'Abd Allihi,* the brother of the great Reformer 'Othmin, to whom

* 'Abd Alldhi died 20th of Moharrem, 1245; and Mohammed died 4th of Ramadhdn, 1250. The children of 'Abd Alldhi were the following: Mohammed Wdni, Khallu, 'Abd el K6diri Innehiwa, Halfru or Hadhiru and 'Aliy (masuyfki).* 'Abd el Kidiri Ay, Hassan, 'Abd e' Rahmdni, A'bii Bakr Maigufia, Is-hgko, Mainman Sambo (maiyiki).*  

* Maiyiki (pl. masuyfki) means commander-in-chief.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

that remarkable man, at his death, gave the western part of his vast domains, while he installed the celebrated Sultan Bello over the eastern portion. Khalflu succeeded to his brother Mohammed W6ini about seventeen years ago, and has since lived in a state of the greatest seclusion, well fitted for a monk, but by no means suited to the ruler of a vast empire, employing one of his brothers in order to keep up a certain show of imperial dignity where it was absolutely necessary. Thus, during the first few years of his reign, he had employed 'Abd el Kidiri, and was now employing Haliru, or, as the name is written, Hadhfru. Even by Mohammedans he is scarcely ever to be seen except on Fridays. It appeared, from my first arrival, extremely doubtful whether he would allow me to see his holy face; and after a vain struggle, merely in order that, by an untimely obstinacy in matters of form, I might not frustrate all my schemes of discovery, I agreed at length to deliver my present to the messengers of the sultan, in his palace, without seeing him. This present consisted of almost the same number of articles as I had given to the emir of Sokoto, with the exception of the silver-mounted pistols. I gave him three bernises, one of yellow, one of red cloth, and the third of the kind called helili; a hijk or jeudgel of the finest quality, a Stambdli carpet, two entire pieces of muslin, a red cap, four loaves of sugar, three phials of rose oil, a pair of razors, five looking-glasses, a pound of cloves, and another of benzoin.

It was very unfortunate that a foreigner and an adventurer, who had no other interest than his own selfishness, became the go-between with me and the sultan, and found ample opportunities, owing to the monkish character of the latter, for advancing his own interests, in the thousand embarrassments which he caused me. This was El Bakiy, a person who made me hate his very name, though it afterward became so dear to me on account of my protector in Timbidktu being called by the same. However, he also was an Arab from the west, and from the tribe of the Kunta, but not connected in any way with the family of the sheikh. After having tried his fortune in several other places along the Niger, especially in Zigha and Y6lu, he had at length settled down here, constituting himself a sort of consul of the Arabs, and, in the miserable state into which affairs were plunged in this court, soon exercising a great influence over the principal and the secondary
rulers; for, besides Khalflu, his several brothers enjoyed a large share of authority, to all of whom I had, in con-
144

DIFFICULT TRANSACTIONS.

sequence, to make suitable presents besides. The most remarkable among them were the above-mentioned Haliru and Bh-Bakr Maiguifa, the latter an aspiring and restless man, who occasionally distinguished himself by acts of great violence, and to whom, in consequence, I had to make a more respectable present, in order to insure myself against any predatory proceedings on his part.

My present to the sultan himself seemed at first to have given great satisfaction; but after a few days, matters assumed a different aspect, and I was told that the pistols which I had given to 'Aliyu were of more value than the whole of the presents which Khalflu had received from me, while the empire of the latter extended over a larger tract of country than that of the former; and I was clearly given to understand that it was not in my power either to proceed or even to retrace my steps, unless I gave much larger presents. After a protracted and serious dispute with El Bakiy and my broker 'All el A'geren, I came at length to the determination of sacrificing the second handsome pair of silvermounted pistols which I possessed, and then at length I had some prospect of being allowed to proceed on my journey, although the state of the country before me was really such as to make progress appear very difficult, and it was certainly very doubtful whether I should be able to reach the river. After much trouble and a great number of presents, however, which I had to give to the crafty Arab, I managed even to obtain a letter of franchise from Khalilu written with his own hand, but in so general a style that it had not much the character externally of an official document, although its contents were altogether very satisfactory, guaranteeing full security to any Englishmen visiting his territories, and commanding the officers of the various provinces to respect their property and to facilitate their proceedings.

Besides the presents to be given to all these people, I had also to make a fresh sacrifice to my Arab 'All el A'geren; for, notwithstanding the arrangement which I had previously made with him, when he saw the difficulties I was in, and being aware that the easy part of my journey was now over, he threatened to leave me if I did not accept the conditions which he prescribed to me. I had also the misfortune to lose, during my stay here, my best camel, which I had bought from the governor of Kitsena for 60,000 shells; so that I was obliged to purchase another animal from Bii Bakr Maigufla at the price he demanded, camels here being very scarce.

VOL. 11.-K

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Notwithstanding all this disagreeable business, which occasionally cost me much bitter reflection, greatly enhanced by the advance of the season, the month of May being at an end, and that of June having set in with violent rains, I passed the time during my residence in this place not quite uselessly, especially as I was so
fortunate as to obtain here, from a learned man of the name of Bokhiri, a son of the late Mohammed W-ni, a copy of that most valuable historical work of Ahmed Bibi, to which my friend 'Abd el Kider, in Sokoto, had first called my attention, but without being able to satisfy my curiosity; and I spent three or four days most pleasantly in extracting the more important historical data of this work, which opened to me quite a new insight into the history of the regions on the middle course of the Niger, whither I was bending my steps, exciting in me a far more lively interest than I had previously felt in a kingdom the great power of which, in former times, I here found set forth in very clear and distinct outlines, and I only lamented that I had not time enough to copy the whole.

As for the town of Gando itself, there was not much to be seen; and the situation of the place, hemmed in as it is in a narrow valley, did not admit of long excursions; moreover, the insecurity of the neighborhood was so great that it was not possible, at least in a northerly direction, to proceed many yards from the wall. Several times during my stay the alarm was given that the enemy was approaching; and the whole political state of the place was plunged into the most terrible disorder, the enemy being established in several strong places at scarcely half a day's journey distance, Argingo being the residence of D-idd, the rebellious chief of the independent Kbiwa. A numerous foray ("yki," or, as the Fulbe sa'y, "konno") left early in the morning of the 29th of May, but returned the same evening amid the noisy manifestations of the inhabitants. They had, however, only given an additional proof of their cowardly disposition, inasmuch as they had not even dared to attack the enemy, who had just succeeded in ransacking the town of Yira, and were carrying all the unfortunate inhabitants into slavery.

The interior of the place was not quite without its charms, the whole of the town being intersected, from north to south, by the broad and shallow bed of a torrent, which exhibited fine pasturegrounds of fresh succulent herbage, while it was skirted on both sides by a dense border of exuberant vegetation, which altogether

**PRODUCTIONS.-TRADE.**

is much richer in this place than either Sokoto or Wurn6, being surpassed only by the fine vegetable ornament of Kan6. The rains are extremely plentiful in Gando, causing here quite an exceptional state in the productive power of the soil; and to this circumstance we have partly to ascribe the fact that very fine bananas are grown here in considerable quantity; and the fruit being just ripe at the time, formed a very pleasant variation to my usual food. The onion of Gando is remarkable for its size and quality, compared with that of all the neighboring districts; and it is well for the traveler, in whatever direction he may intend to go, to lay in a supply of this wholesome article. But the place is extremely dull, and the market very insignificant-a fact easily to be explained by the desperate state of the provinces around, although the situation of the capital, as a central place for commerce, is rather favorable. But the town of JRga has not yet lost, in this respect, the whole of its former importance, and is still the great entrepot for that coarse kind of colored silk which is imported from the north, and which, notwithstanding its very inferior character, is nevertheless so greatly sought after by the natives for adorning their leather-work. It is, perhaps, in consequence of
the little trade which is carried on that the people of Gando have applied themselves with more industry to supplying their own want of cotton cloth, and no one can deny that their cotton strips are of first-rate quality; their dyeing, on the contrary, is very coarse, and they seem quite unable to give to the dyed cloth that lustre which so eminently distinguishes the manufactures of Nuipe and Kan6; but, nevertheless, this cloth of Gando is in great demand as far as Libtiko. The kingdom or empire of Gando, according to its title, com’prises a number of wealthy provinces, all lying along that great West-African river which opens such an easy access into this continent or on its branches, although nobody who stays in the capital for any length of time would suppose that it holds such a pre-eminent rank. I shall give some farther details respecting these provinces in the Appendix ; here I will only enumerate. them by name. They are, the western half of Kebbi, Mailri or A’rewa., Zabgrma, Dndina (comprising Kgnga-koy and Z6gha), a great part of Gurma (comprising the provinces of Galaijo, Torode, Y6gha, and Libtiko), with a small portion of Borgu or Barba, a large portion of Yoruba, with the capital Al5ri or f16rin,
* See Appendix VI.

147

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

and, on the east side of the river, the provinces of Yadira and Niipe or Nyffi. But at that time most of these provinces were plunged into an abyss of anarchy, which could not fail to impart to the capital a more sombre aspect than it may possess in general.

CHAPTER LIX.

THE PROVINCE OF KEBBI AND ITS RIVER.-THE SALT VALLEY OF FO’GHA.-REACH THE NIGER.

Saturday, June 4th. At length I was allowed to proceed on my journey, which now soon promised to become of overwhelming interest, as I was approaching that great African river which has been the object of so much discussion and individual ambition for so long a period. There had been a very heavy thunder-storm during the night, accompanied by a great abundance of rain, which lasted till late in the morning, and delayed my setting out for a considerable time. It was almost eleven o'clock when we at length left the western gate of the town, or the k6fa-n-Jga, and entered the open fields, where the crop was already shooting forth. Keeping along the rocky ground bordering the valley on the north side, we soon had a specimen of the swamps which during the rainy season are formed in these deep valleys of Kebbi, while we beheld here also extensive rice-grounds, the first which I saw under actual cultivation. But the guide, who was to accompany me to the very western extremity of the territory of Khalflu, having not yet arrived, we made only a short march of about six miles, and took up our quarters in a comfortable hut lying outside the walls of K–mbasa, which, by a separate wall, is divided into two distinct quarters. This town lies on the north side of a large swamp, which fills the bottom of the fgddama, and affords excellent grounds for the cultivation of rice. The governor treated me hospitably, sending me every thing that was wanted for a good African
dinner, from a sheep down to a bit of salt and a few cakes of dod6wa, and I made him a suitable present in return. During the night we suffered greatly from musquitoes, giving us a fair idea of what we were to expect on our journey through these swampy valleys.

Sunday, June 5th. Another storm again delayed our departure this morning; and being now in the middle of the rainy season,

LEAVING GANDO.-KAMBA'SA.

I had a fair sample of what I should have to endure on my long journey to Timbuktu. In consequence of the rain, it was again eleven o'clock before we could start. The principal road leads along the northern bank of the f~ddama, by way of Z6ro, the residence of Ch6fo, a son of Khalilu; but it was deemed too unsafe in .the present unsettled state of the country, that very town of Z6ro, although situated on the north side of the fiddama, at present being only accessible from the south; and it was decided, therefore, to cross the swamp close to Kdmbasa, in order that it might afford us protection, in our farther progress through this unsafe region, against any sudden attack from the rebels in the northern part of the province. Thus proceeding along the south side of the sheet of water here, about 200 yards broad, and thickly overgrown with tall reeds of different species, including a large proportion of papyrus, we reached, after a little less than two miles, another walled town, likewise called Kimbasa, a civil war having broken out among the inhabitants of the former town, and a portion of them having separated from the original tribe, and settled in this place. We then continued along the southern side of the valley, till, after a march of about four miles, we bad to cross a small branch which joins the chief trunk of the valley from the south, and opened a view of Mount B6bye, over the saddle of which the road leads from Thmbawel to Jgga, the great market-place of this quarter of the country, while the fiddama, here spreading out in a large sheet of water, receded behind a walled town called Badda-badda. A track frequented by the elephant, of which for a long time I had seen no traces, led through the rich pasture-ground to the edge of the water. Almost the whole cultivation along this fertile but swampy valley consisted of rice. It was about 1200 yards broad, and even at the present season, before the rains had set in, was full of water. A couple of months later it inundates its low borders, and almost precludes any passage, so that, on my home-journey from the west, I was obliged to pursue another path. The crops of negro corn were here already three inches high, numbers of people being busily employed in the labors of the fields, while an isolated del6b palm gave a peculiar character to the landscape. The prevailing representatives of the vegetable kingdom were the dor6wa and the usefil kaderia-tree. The pasture-grounds were full of cattle; and every thing testified to the rich nature of the district, which is still very populous. After passing another walled town, perched on the high border of the

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

swampy valley, three miles and a half beyond Badda-badda, we reached Gaidmach6, at present reduced to a tsmall hamlet, or rather "rdnmde," inhabited
exclusively by slaves, and adorned by a few specimens of the butter-tree and
dor6wa. It was once a large walled town; but in the sanguinary war between
the native Kibiwa and the conquering tribe of the Filibe, it was destroyed by the
former.
Having crossed here a considerable stream of running water, which testified to the
quantity of rain which had fallen in this district, we passed, on our left, the large
walled town of Talba, where the beating of drums gave proof of warlike
preparation. The fields around were adorned with numbers of del66 palms.
At a short distance from Talba lies Diube. The whole of this district had attained a
high degree of power and prosperity under the dominion of the Kanta, and had
only recently begun, in consequence of the war of independence, to lose many of
its former centres of human industry.
An obvious illustration of this desolation was afforded by the little town of Yira,
which we reached after another three miles. We had left the fiddama at some
distance on our right, and kept along rocky ground occasionally broken by
patches of fine sandy soil. But we were urgently warned, by people whom we met
on our road, of the danger of an approaching ghazzia.
This place, which a short time ago was the seat of human wellbeing, had been
destroyed by the enemy on the 29th of the preceding month, and all the
inhabitants carried into slavery, notwithstanding the presence of the expedition
which, as I have mentioned above, marched out from Gando to the succor of their
countrymen. The aspect of the place was doleful and melancholy in the extreme,
corresponding well with the dangerous situation in which we found ourselves; and
while traversing the half-ruined village, which from a bustling little place had
become the abode of death, I almost involuntarily snatched my gun, and held it
steadily in my hand. But life and death in these regions are closely allied; and we
had scarcely left the ruined village behind us, when, in a widening of the fiddama,
which again opened on our right; we were greeted by a most luxuriant rice
field,
where the crops were already almost three feet high, and girt by the finest border
of a rich variety of shady trees, such as the dor6wa, kad6, and k-igim, overtopped
by a number of tall del66 palms, the golden fruit of which, half ripe, was starting
forth from under the feathery foliage. But our

UNSAFE STATE OF THE COUNTRY.
attention was soon diverted from the enjoyment of this scenery to a point of
greater interest to ourselves. We here observed a solitary individual, in spite of the
unsafe state of the country, sitting quietly at the foot of one of the palm-trees, and
seemingly enjoying its fruit. Now, coupling the present state of the country with
the news we had just received, we could not help greatly suspecting this man to be
a spy, posted here by the enemy in order to give them information of the passers-
by; and I had the greatest difficulty in preventing my Mgjebirf Arab, who, when
there was no danger for himself, always mustered a great amount of courage,
from shooting this suspicious-looking character.
Proceeding then through a very rich country, we reached, after a march of about
two miles, the town of Gdlumb6, situated close to the southern border of the
valley, and exhibiting extensive fields cultivated with yams and cotton. The
banana constituted the chief ornament of the narrow border inclosed between the fiddama on one side and the wall of the town on the other, and the gönda, or Edica Papaya, raising its feathery foliage on its slender, virginlike stem, towered proudly over the wall, as shown in the accompanying engraving. The town was walled, of considerable size, and densely inhabited; but, nevertheless, the people were in such dread of the enemy that they kept up a continual beating of drums; and although, on account of the smallness of the gate, we encamped outside, in a court-yard situated between the wall and the border

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of the fiddama, we thought it prudent to fire a few shots, in order to apprise the people around that we were well prepared to receive them, to the great relief of the inhabitants of the town, who, delighted at the unexpected addition to their strength, treated us in a very hospitable manner. The only disturbance to our night's rest was caused by the musquitoes, which harassed us greatly and drove most of my people into the rndu, that kind of raised hut which I have described on a former occasion, and which forms the most essential part of even the poorest dwelling in the province of Kebbi.

Monday, June 6th. After a thunder-storm accompanied by a few drops of rain, the night was succeeded by a beautiful morning; and I felt great pleasure in surveying the interesting landscape, only regretting that the insecure state of the country did not allow the natives to enjoy it in tranquillity, the war having driven thousands of people from their homes, and as many more into captivity. The fields on this side of the town, as well as on the other, where we had approached it the day before, were fenced with great care, while horses and asses were grazing on the rich pasture-grounds. After a little more than a mile and a half, we passed, on our left, a farming village called I'gen6, after its master, a cheerful Plillo of advanced age, who was just inspecting the labor of his slaves in the fields. The crops hereabouts were already more than a foot above the ground; and a little farther on they reached a height of two feet. Besides sorghum, yams were cultivated to a great extent; but nevertheless, on account of the insecurity of the country, dearth and famine every where prevailed.

A little farther on we passed, on our left, a considerable sheet of water, with plenty of dorowa, large kad6, and sycamores. The del6b palms had ceased just beyond I'gen6. A broad, flattopped mountain, called Harmiri, at the eastern foot of which lies the town of Zéro, broke the uniform surface of the country. Proceeding through this rich but distracted and unsafe district, I was greatly delighted when, near the walled town of Kardi, I fell in with a solitary and courageous pilgrim, a Jolof from the shores of the Atlantic, carrying his little luggage on his head, and seemingly well prepared to defend it with his double-barreled gun which he carried on his shoulder, and a short sword hanging at his side, while his shirt was tossed gallantly up, and tied over the shoulder, behind the neck. In my joy at the sight of this enterprising native traveler, I could not forbear making him a small present, in order to assist him in his arduous undertaking.
SITUATION OF BI'RNI-N-KEBBI.
The walls of the town of Kardi, which is chiefly inhabited by the slaves of Khalflu, and which is of great importance for the supply of corn in this province, were strengthened by a thick fence of thorny bushes, which, in these regions, afford an immense advantage in the defense of any town by furnishing a secure place of retreat to the archers.
The green bottom of the wide fiddama had receded to a greater distance on our right; but we joined it again seven miles from Gilumb6, and had here to cross it beyond a couple of hamlets which, lying close together and called, the one Hiusiwa, and the other Kibiwa, gave us a slight indication as to the history of this country, where the HMusa element, as the more civilized, gradually gained the upper hand, and drove the native element, as well as the. Songhay, which advanced from the west, into the background. Perhaps, if we knew more of the history of this country, the annals of these two villages might open to us a view of an interesting national struggle. The ffiddama was here at present dry; and besides yams a great deal of tobacco was cultivated. We then traversed a wooded tract adorned with a violet liliacea and with the bush tsida or bid6r, the delicious cherry-like fruit of which I have mentioned repeatedly, and, slightly ascending, reached, a little before eleven o'clock, the beautiful site of the former more extensive wall of the large town of Birni-n-Kebedi. It was founded in this commanding position by the dynasty of the Kanta, at the time when the rival Songhay empire was dashed to pieces and became the prey of foreigners and of a number of small tribes, who had once been kept in a state of insignificance and subjection.
Under such circumstances Kebbi, besides being the seat of a powerful kingdom, became also the centre of a considerable trade even in gold, till it was destroyed by the Fillbe under 'Abd Allihi, in the year of the Hejra 1221, when a great deal of gold and silver is said to have been found among the ruins. The royal palace, however (the ruins of which I visited), does not seem to have been very extensive; but this in part may be attributed to the fact that a great portion of the residence consisted of straw huts for the female department and the followers.* The walls of the present town are almost a mile distant from those of the old one, lying close to the steep slope which, with a descent of about
* KaIgo, at the northern foot of the mountain, lies southwest from here, and the town of Gurma, at present destroyed, northeast beyond the valley.

154 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
250 feet, goes down here into the large green valley or fiddama which intersects the whole of Kebbi from E.N.E. to W.S.W., and is at this part almost three miles in breadth, affording the richest ground for cultivation, but at present plunged in a state of the utmost insecurity. Even then it was full of cattle, at least its southerly part; but they had to be carefully watched by the natives from above the slope, for the whole of the country on the other side, the hilly chains and cones of which are clearly seen, is in the hands of the A'zena, that is to say, those native inhabitants of Kebbi who, since the death of the more energetic 'Atiku, are successfully struggling for their religious and political independence. On the very brink of the
slope a market was held, where we bought some necessaries before entering the town; and I willingly lingered a few moments, as the whole presented a very novel sight, increased by a picturesque spur or promontory which juts out into the valley a few miles to the west, and is a remarkable feature in the landscape. We then entered the town, which is rather thickly inhabited, but is far from presenting that cheerful aspect which is peculiar to most of the towns in those regions, as it is almost bare of trees. I myself was quartered in an excellent hut, belonging to a newly-married couple, and possessing all the comforts of which these simple dwellings are capable—the floor and walls of the hut being neatly polished, and the background or "nanne" being newly sprinkled with snow-white sand; but the whole of the courtyard was extremely narrow, and scarcely afforded space for my horses and camels.

There are two great men in the town, 'Othmin Lowel and 'Othman Ziki; but the former is the real governor of the place, bearing the pompous but rather precarious title of serk-n-Kebbi—for even he, at the present time, possesses such limited authority that it was rather out of my respect for historical connections than for his real power* that I made him a considerable present. He is a man of simple manners, without pretensions, and almost blind. His residence was distinguished by its neatness. The other great man, 'Othmin Zki, who was many years ago governor of NTipe, and knew Clappertoft, although I did not pay him a visit, showed his friendship for me by very hospitable treatment. He has since returned to NTipe, and is rebuilding Rabba. We had a long conversation in the afternoon with the more respectable inhabitants,

* For a statement of the few facts which have come to my knowledge, with regard to the history of this kingdom, see Appendix.

DU'KO.-KO'LA.

on the subject of our journey, and most of the people thought that I should not succeed in reaching the Niger, the country being in such a turbulent state; but they advised me to address myself to the governor of Zogfrma, who was the only man, they said, able to assist me in my endeavors to traverse that part of the country with some degree of security.

Tuesday, June 7th. In the morning we left the town in the company of a son of 'Othmn, a person of manly bearing and a rather European expression of countenance; and traversing the fields, which were quite dry and as yet without any preparation for cultivation, we directed our march straight for a pass in the mountain spur which I have mentioned above, and which is called Du'ko; but we found it too narrow for our heavily-laden camels to pass through, the path being cut into the sandstone like a gutter, so that I was obliged to send my train round the southern slope of the promontory. We thus descended almost to the level of the fiddama; but having traversed a richly-wooded vale with a variety of trees, such as dynnia, m-dachi, and fresh kadé, we had another mountain spur on our left, while on our right the exuberant savanna of the valley became visible. The place was enlivened by cattle, and occasionally by a sheet of water at times fringed with a rich border of vegetation, among which also isolated specimens of the delgb palm, besides dorówa, were not wanting.
Thus we reached the foot of a rocky eminence, on the top of which the walled town of K61a is situated in a very strong position, commanding the whole passage of the valleys. It is the seat of a governor who bears the title of serki-n-Zarom6, and who is said to have as many as seventy musketeers under his command; so that, as he was an officer of much importance in this turbulent country, it did not seem advisable to pass him unnoticed, and we therefore determined to take up our quarters here, although it was still early in the morning. He has a large house or palace, but it is somewhat in decay. Having made him a small present, I was hospitably treated both by himself and his sister, who sent me an excellent goose, which afforded a very pleasant change in my diet. He accompanied me the following morning to the boundary of his little territory.

Our road lay through fine corn-fields, shaded by beautiful dor6wa-trees, along the border of this fertile valley, which was formerly surrounded on both sides by an uninterrupted line of large walled towns. But most of them are now deserted and destroyed,

15J TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

such as the towns of K-ika (which lies about three hours northwest) and Ambiirsa; and both factions are continually harassing each other by predatory expeditions. In fact the state of the country is such, that the whole of the tribute which the province of Nipe has to pay to Gando is obliged to take the roundabout way through Zdgha and Bunza, the latter of which is situated about eight miles south from Zogfrma, on the river Gfnd1i, which is said to be navigable as far as this place, and sometimes even as far as Jga. A considerable number of horses were grazing on the fine pasture-grounds at the border of the valley, under the protection of a couple of hamlets well defended by a stockade; but the herbage was full of small venomous snakes, which repeatedly crossed our path in such numbers as I never saw before. When we reached the border of the territory of Jugguru, my companion returned to his residence.

Leaving the walled town of Jiggurdi (surrounded by a good many monkey-bread-trees) on the hills to our left, we reached, after a march of about five miles along the border of the valley, and only once crossing a romantic rocky defile, the considerable town of Diggi; and here I had the satisfaction of being officially received by three sons of the Governor of Zogfrma, who quite unexpectedly came galloping up to the front and saluted me, wishing me all possible success on my dangerous undertaking, and bidding me welcome to the province of their father. The eldest of the three was a very handsome young man, and splendidly mounted upon a tall grV horse. Pursuing then our march in their company, we immediately entered the wide ffiddama which separated us from Zogfrma; and it took us more than three hours to cross this shallow swampy valley, the whole of which at the end of the rainy season is filled with water, but which at present was only intersected by two broken sheets of stagnant water, while I endeavored in vain to make out, at this spot, an uninterrupted channel of the gulbi: and yet, in the month of September, the whole valley is flooded by a river of considerable breadth. The town, which was surrounded by a clay wall in good repair, impressed me as being more considerable than I had supposed it to be. We were led immediately to
our quarters, and were here treated with very good tfiggera, or prepared millet and sour milk; after which a large calabash full of rice, and, a short time after, a heifer, were brought me as a present. Later in the afternoon I went to pay my respects to the governor, Himed Bdrtu, and found

ZOGIRMA AND ITS GOVERNOR.

him a very decent-looking man of from fifty to sixty years of age, with almost European features, but with rather a melancholy expression of countenance. His residence had a very stately appearance, and surprised me not a little by its style of architecture, which approached to the Gothic, although the fine and well-ornamented clay walls were only loosely held together by a framework of boards and branches. Presenting to him a red bernds of middling quality, a piece of muslin, a pair of razors, and some other trifles, I delivered to him the letter with which Khalfia had furnished me, and explained to him how the ruler of Gando had given me hopes of his being able to conduct me safe to F6gha; for the two horsemen whom I had with me, one from Gando and the other from Sokoto, were only of service as long as there was any thing to eat and while there was no great danger. He received my address in the most cheerful manner, and informed me that there were two roads, one of them leading straight on through the midst of the forest from Zogfrma to the town of Kalliul. This he said was the safest, though it was probably too difficult for my heavily-laden camels. The other, he added, was more convenient but very unsafe. He promised, however, that he would find trustworthy men to escort me. Zogirma may contain from 7000 to 8000 inhabitants; but at that time it was suffering greatly from famine, on account of the war which had been raging for the last two years between the FMlbe conquerors of the country and the native inhabitants the Dendi, who, favored by the weakness of the government of their oppressors, had risen to assert their independence; and I could scarcely feel dissatisfied with my host when, after the first signs of hospitality which he had shown me, he left us to provide for our own wants, although we had some difficulty in procuring a sufficient supply of corn. I was very sorry that, owing to the unfavorable circumstances of the whole country, I was prevented from visiting the town of Bunza (which is situated south from Zogfrma), on account of its interesting and important situation as regards the intercourse with Nfipe on the lower part of the gulbi, where it is still navigable, and the number of delgb palms which are said to adorn it. There was also residing in this place a man whom I should like to have visited, inasmuch as he is reported to possess a great knowledge of the history of the Kanta, and of the relations of the province of Kebbi to the neighboring countries. His name is M'allem Maham'ddu.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Thursday, June 9th. We were to start the following day, in order to allow our camels some rest before entering the unsafe wilderness; but in the course of the morning the news suddenly arrived that a party of Tawirek, with about forty camels besides bullocks and asses, had arrived at the neighboring town of Tilli on their way to F6gha, thus affording us the opportunity of traversing the wilderness
with some degree of security. It was therefore decided that we should start in the afternoon by way of Tilli, which certainly lay greatly out of our road, in order to join this party, while my young friend A'bi Bakr, the eldest son of the governor, rode immediately to the neighboring town to induce those people to wait for us. It was thus deemed sufficient to give me for companions only two horsemen; but fortunately they were of such a character that I preferred them to at least a dozen other people, both of them being experienced old warriors and most respectable men, one of them having been till lately the governor of the town of D6be, which was now deserted, and the site of which we had to pass on our road. I was heartily glad to get rid of my two former effeminate companions, Lowel, the servant of the Governor of Gando, and Beshfr, an attendant of the ghaladfma in S6koto, as they had been of scarcely any use to me on my way hither, except, perhaps, in procuring me a better reception from the governors of the towns and villages; and I gladly complied with the demands of my new companions, by giving to each of them a new black "lithdan" or "rwani baki" for themselves, a flask of rose oil for their wives, and one thousand shells for the expenses of their households during their absence.

Returning then in a northeasterly direction along the western border of the broad fiddama, we reached, after a march of about four miles, when the sun had already gone down, the town of Tiuli, which, coming from Diggi, we had had just opposite us on the other side of the valley. Here the danger from the enemy was already considered so great that the gates of the town on this side had been walled up, only a very narrow passage having been left, which could only be used by way of a drawbridge or kaddrku. Having here learned that our new companions were already gone on in advance, and had encamped at the very border of the forest, we changed our direction from northeast to northwest, and, after a march of about a mile, encamped close to them. A large herd of cattle had its resting-place in the neighborhood.

Friday, June 10th. When we started, at an early hour in the morning, we soon left the cultivated grounds and entered a dense forest, which at the present season had a very pleasant appearance, all the trees being in blossom and spreading a delightful fragrance around. We were also agreeably surprised when, after proceeding about five miles, we passed two extensive ponds, which supplied us with delicious water. But on our return journey, in August, 1854, the water of these same ponds had acquired such a pernicious character, that it almost poisoned the whole of my troop. A little beyond these ponds we had a considerable rocky declivity, of about one hundred feet, from the top of which we surveyed the extensive forest before us. To our disappointment, we encamped at a very early hour, a little after noon; but a short distance farther on, the danger would have become so imminent that it would have been unwise to pass the night there. Having therefore pitched my tent in the midst of the forest, I indulged with great delight in the pleasure of an open encampment, such as I had not enjoyed since leaving Giwasi, the dirty huts in which I had lately taken up my quarters.
having literally turned my stomach. But I had to enjoy this wild encampment rather longer than was pleasant; for we had to remain in it the whole of the following day, in consequence of my friends the A'sbeniwa losing, in the course of the night, one of their camels, which they did not choose to abandon. This involuntary feat of mine procured me a name in the whole neighborhood, so that when I safely returned the following year from my journey to Timb-ktu, the people of the neighborhood designated me only as the man who had spent a day in the unsafe wilderness.

But it almost seemed as if we were to stay here a third day; for when we were getting ready our luggage early in the morning of the 12th, a very violent thunder-storm broke out, with torrents of rain, which made our open encampment rather uncomfortable, and did not allow us to start until a late hour. After a march of about four miles through a very dense forest with low ridges on our right, we reached the site of Bfrni-n-Dbe, a beautiful open spot adorned with a rich abundance of dor6wa besides a tolerable number of del6b palms, while beyond the rich mass of vegetation a hilly chain approached from the northeast. Footprints of elephants were here observed in every direction. The rich character of the country scarcely allows the traveler to suspect that a few miles to the north lies the province of Miuri or A'rewi, which all my authorities represent as a country approaching closely to the nature of the desert.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Having then entered again thick forest, which occasionally became so dense that it scarcely allowed us to pass, and caused repeated delays, we reached, after a march of about nine miles, a large depression or shallow vale coming from the northeast from the province of Miuri, and therefore called Dallul or Rffi-n-Mguri (the Vale of Miuri), richly clad with a profusion of the most succulent herbage and with numerous del6b palms, besides a few specimens of the dfim palm; and having halted here for a few minutes near a well and the site of a former Pillo settlement of the name of Bina, we crossed the path which leads from Miuri to Y6lu, the capital of the province of Dgndina. This is the most dangerous part of the whole route, on account of the two provinces, that of Miuri and D6ndina, having rebelled, and there being constant intercourse between the enemy in these two quarters along this track, so that our companions were not a little alarmed when fresh footprints of horses were here discovered. However we could move on but slowly on account of the dense thicket, and the anxiety of the people to collect the fruit of the dele'b palm, corn being extremely scanty and scarcely to be got in this region at the time. Here the camel which I had received from Khalflu in a present, and which I had given up to my M6jebrf companion, went raving mad, making the most ludicrous leaps, and kicking in every direction, till it fell to the grotind.

At length we emerged from the dense vegetation of the fertile but neglected vale, and ascended higher ground, which separates the dallul M6iuri from the dallul F6gha,* and, after a while, obtained a sight of the hilly chain bordering the east side of the latter valley, which runs from N. 200 E. to S. 200 W., being at the
broadest part about 1000 yards across. These valleys certainly form a very remarkable feature in this quarter, and, by their shallow character and the total want of a current in the water here collected, evidently prove the little inclination which the country has toward the Niger, as well as the limited extent of ground which they drain; and it seems extremely doubtful whether, even after the plentiful rains which occasionally fall in the mountainous country of A'sben, the water-courses of that region have even the slightest connection with these shallow vales which join the Niger.

It was half past four in the afternoon when, greatly fatigued by our long and slow march, we gradually descended the shelving ground into the valley of F6gha, the beautifully sloping banks of which are adorned with a profusion of ddm palms, but are entirely wanting in del6b palms. Crossing then the green vale, which was clothed with rank grass, and only presented here and there a broken sheet of water, we reached the first salt-manufacturing hamlet, which is situated on a mound of rubbish of almost regularly quadrangular shape, and of about thirty feet elevation, not unlike the ancient towns of Assyria, while at its foot a shallow, dirty pond of brackish water of almost black color spread out, the whole scenery forming a very remarkable ensemble, of which an attempt has been made to give a fair representation in the plate opposite.

A few cattle were grazing here and there, but they looked very sickly and emaciated, and skeletons of others were lying about in all directions, proving the ravages that disease had made among them; for, besides the fact that general epidemic diseases visit the cattle in these regions as well as in the countries to the south of the equator at certain periods, the conquering tribe settled in this quarter having had to sustain a long siege against the enemy, most of their cattle, being cooped up in the town, had perished for want of pasture. Notwithstanding all these disasters, the inhabitants of Kallful stood their ground; for the Fiilbe hereabouts are a very warlike race, and are excellent archers. Several of them, attracted by the news of the arrival of a caravan with corn, of which they stood so much in need, rushed past us on horseback as we were looking out for a place where we might take up, our quarters with some degree of safety. Leaving two other salt-manufacturing hamlets on our left side equally jutting out into the bottom of the vale, we descended at length from a higher slope crowned by a cluster of well-built but at present deserted huts; and, being informed that the town of Kallful, or Kiura, was still some distance off, and far out of our road, we turned into one of these salt-hamlets, which was the fourth on this side. Here we were quartered in a very excellent hut, but suffered greatly from musquitoes during the following night.

We remained in this poor hamlet the following day, and, being aware of the great distress which prevailed in the whole of this tract of country, I had no more urgent
businessthan to dispatch two of my men early in the morning to our companions
the A'sbenawa, who had encamped on the other side of the valley, in order to
endeavor to buy from them as much corn as they were

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
able to spare; but my servants soon returned with the news that the distressed
inhabitants had taken from the fatiki or native traders all their corn by force. I was
therefore rather badly off, but nevertheless was prevented from pursuing my route
at once, as the camels wanted some repose. The site of our hamlet was highly
interesting to me, and I soon set out for a stroll around this artificial mound of
rubbish. It was of considerable size, measuring about 200 yards in length and the
same in breadth, with an elevation of 50 feet toward the bottom of the valley, and
about 20 toward the edge of the bank, the whole of this mound bearing evident
proof of its artificial character, consisting as it did of nothing but the soil of the
valley itself, from which the saline particles had been extracted. The salt is here
prepared in the following manner. The earth is taken from the bottom of the vale,
and put into large funnels made of straw and reeds, when water is poured upon the
earth, and strained through the funnels, after which it is caught in vessels placed
underneath, and then boiled, and the sediment formed into the shape of a small
loaf
That it is the earth which contains the saline particles, and not the rank grass
which grows here, I am quite sure, although in other places there is no doubt that
salt is extracted from the grass growing in such localities; but this can only be
done by burning, the salt being extracted from the ashes; and no such process is
pursued here. The salt is of a grayish-yellow color, and quite fit for cooking
purposes; it is of a much better quality than the bitter salt of Bfima, although, no
doubt, far inferior to the beautiful crystal salt of Tabd6nni, of which I here saw
the first specimen with some Soughay pilgrims, who had left H6mbori four
months previously on their way to Mekka. However, such a mode of proceeding
is only practicable in the dry, or toward the beginning of the rainy season; for at
the end of the latter the valley is quite full of water, which then is fresh, and is
said to contain plenty of fish, the saltish properties of the soil being too scanty and
inconsiderable to impregnate so large a body of water. Even at present a
considerable quantity of the aqueous element had already collected, filling, in
some places, the whole width of the valley between the two banks, to the depth of
a foot or two, so that the people could not make use of the soil from the valley
itself; but they had stored up a sufficient provision to enable them to carry on their
labors for a month or two longer.
The Fulbe call these places sfile-ch6lli. It is only the salt which

YE'L U.-KALL'UL.
induces the inhabitants to remain in this locality, for they have been harassed
extremely by their energetic enemy the D6ndi. The town of Kailful had had to
sustain, during a very short period, no fewer than five attacks from the latter,
whose chief seat, Y6lu, closely borders upon their territory; and, in addition to the
sad circumstance of all their cattle having died, these people had also lost the whole of their slaves, who, under such circumstances, had run away in a body. The neighborhood, even at the present moment, was so unsafe, that the people of the town would not allow me to stay in the open hamlet where I was, and wanted me to come to them behind their wall; but fearing longer delay I declined, and fixed my departure for the following day.

Y61u,* the principal place of D6ndina, the country of the Dindi (a branch of the Songhay, about whom I shall say more on another occasion), is situated only about seven or eight miles lower down this same valley, which joins the Great River at the town of D61e, and which is especially inhabited by Songhay people. Their well-known and renowned chief, G6jida, had recently died, and had been succeeded by a younger brother of his of the name of G6du, who kept up the struggle against the conquering tribe with considerable energy, and probably, if he had been better provided with cavalry, would have long ago established the independence of his countrymen, by driving away the Filbe from the valley of F6gha, and thus opening a free intercourse with the countries to the north. But the inhabitants of Kalliul, as I assured myself especially on my return journey, when I entered the town, are hardy warriors, and keep well together, although that little community is ruled by four petty chiefs-Seifina, M~mma Yfdi, and two brothers called Mimma G-inga and A'medu Gidnga. Even on the present occasion of my journey westward, these petty chiefs paid me a visit, and I made each of them a small present; but none of them was able to supply me with even the smallest

* For the other places of Dgndina, see Appendix V. Here I will only enumerate a few villages belonging to the districts which we passed on our road from Zogirma, and lying just in the border district of the Songhay and Hdsua territories. Close to Jdnju lie the following places, or rather hamlets, at present greatly reduced: Kardkard, A bd el Azi, Jabdre, Be`bd, Dimana, Ganginge. The following places are said to lie along the dallul F6gha, but I am not able to indicate their situation more distinctly: Rilma, Bdngu, Band Harukgri, Nsami, Kduru, Gerginga, and Lddu. There is no such town as "Birni-n-F6gha," F6gha being only the name of the valley; but not far from Kaljul there is another town called Biura. Most of the villages mentioned are inhabited by pagans.

165

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

provision- of corn, although they all evinced their benevolent disposition, and Se-fna (who, by wearing a miserable sort of bernis of the poorest description, seemed to vindicate his superiority over his brother chiefs) made me a present of 100 K6la nuts, which luxury he could more easily spare than a few grains of corn. Mimma Yfdi, on the other hand, an elderly gentleman, was distinguished by his amiable conduct, and understood even a little Husa. Generally speaking, none of the Filbe here speak a single word of that language, the valley of F6gha forming the boundary between the Husa and the Songhay languages. I likewise received a visit from two sons of the k6dhi or alkil1i, one of whom, of the name of 'Abd el Wahibi, was a remarkably handsome man, of very gentlemanlike bearing, more
like a European in his countenance than a native of Negroland, and of a melancholy turn of mind, which awakened my interest in him.

Tuesday, June 14th. My two warlike companions from Zogfrma, who, by their experience and energetic conduct, had inspired me with almost unbounded confidence, and whom I should have liked to have attached to me for a much longer period, had returned home the moment I reached the border of the valley, finding their only safety in speed and secrecy, and cutting straight across the thickest part of the forest; and, in consequence, I had used all my endeavors to obtain here another escort, but all in vain. However, Mimma Yidi having promised that a guide should overtake me on the road, I started tolerably early the next morning, in order to pursue my journey through this unsafe wilderness, being anxious not to cause more delay, and thus to increase the danger of my situation in consequence of the news of my proceedings having spread through the neighborhood; but instead of making right across the country, I was first obliged to retrace my steps northward, to the very place where I had crossed the valley two days previously, for, Kallful being anything but a place of trade and commerce, all the little intercourse which is still going on in this region is carried on along the direct road, without touching at this place.

A few hundred yards higher up from this spot a rich source of excellent fresh water gushes out from the rocky ground, and forms a large sheet in the bottom of the valley, affording a remarkable contrast to the black, muddy water which covers the remainder of the surface. Having taken in here a supply of water, we then passed several other salt-hamlets or sfle-ch6lli, and

DENSE FOREST.
emerging from the valley ascended the higher ground, which presented open pastures with only a little underwood scattered in bushes here and there, principally the g6nda bush and the poison. ous plant damankddda, which I have already mentioned repeatedly as forming an ornament of the landscape, at the same time that it endangers the life of the camel.

It was a beautiful morning, and the view over the valley from this undulating ground was highly interesting. We had just entered denser forest, when my friend Yidi overtook me, accompanied by two horsemen, and handing me, to my great surprise, besides a good provision of salt, 2000 kurdf, or shells, which I only reluctantly accepted for the sake of my servants. He also brought me a guide, who was to accompany me as far as Girbo. We therefore pursued our march cheerfully, but experienced repeated delays in the thick covert of the forest. The trees were rather dry, and not very luxuriant, no rain having fallen in this part of the country for some time. A little farther on we passed a small pond, where we fell in with a party of Tawirek half-castes from Zaberma or Ch6ggazar, who were carrying--the salt of F6gha to their home on a small number of oxen and asses. We encamped at a quarter past three o'clock in the afternoon near another small pond, on an open spot, where I again enjoyed an open encampment, which is the greatest charm of a traveling life.
Wednesday, June 15th. Soon after starting, we had to descend a rocky passage, and we were glad to find the road, from time to time, enlivened by small parties of travelers. First we fell in with a man of the name of Mohammed el Amifn, from HimedAlldhi, the capital of the western empire of the Filbe, who had come by way of Jidnju, and who, having cherished the good intention of performing the pilgrimage to Mekka, had been frightened by the difficulties of the road; and farther on we met another party of travelers, among whom was a Limtuni, that is to say, a Moor, a man of mixed Arab and Berber blood, of the ancient tribe of the Limt-dna, who, having once formed the chief portion of the powerful confederation of the Mernbetifn (Almoravides), are at present scattered and settled, in small fragments, on the very shores of the Atlantic. He was a stout and active little fellow, with an open countenance, and, being on his way to Mekka, rushed immediately toward me to salute me, asking me whether I was a Turk or a Christian. I presented him with a dollar, requesting him to give a short note (which I wrote on the spot) to my friend Hij Beshlir, in K'dkawa, wherein I informed him of my whereabouts. Having then passed several ponds, among which the tebki Sugfnndo was the most important, and made another rocky descent, from the top of which we overlooked the large valley or dallul of B6so, and having turned round a small rocky ridge, we reached the village of Girbo about two o'clock in the afternoon. Girbo is a small place, half deserted, and greatly harassed by the enemy, the D6ndi of Tanda having made a foray against this place only two days previously, and carried away almost all the cattle belonging to the inhabitants. But it is of importance, as being the last Husa place in this direction, the regions to the west belonging exclusively to the Songhay and Filbe. A clay wall, which was to afford some protection to the town, had just been begun but left half finished. Numbers of corn-stacks inspired us with the hope that we might be able here to supply ourselves with corn; but not a grain was to be obtained. There was therefore no staying in this place, although our heavily laden camels were rather fatigued after the forced march through the wilderness.

Thursday, June 16th. At a tolerably early hour we were again on the march through the fields, where the fresh crops were just shooting up; but a little farther on they had attained already to a greater height, and were just being cleared of weeds. Cattle also were not entirely wanting, and gave sufficient proof that, under a strong government, there were elements enough for the welfare of the people. The ground here is broken by several cavities or hollows, where ponds are formed, which of course vary in size according to the season. Some of them, although of considerable circumference, contained salt water of a blackish color. Thus, having passed a fresh swampy depression, where ddim and del6b palms also were not unfrequent, we reached, after a march of about seven miles, a farming village called Lanadgji, where the peculiar structure of the corn-stacks attracted my attention; but although built of clay they are not pretty, and neither similar to the nobler style of those which we have found in the Mdisgu country, nor to those which we are to meet with farther on, in the country of Misina. The
whole cultivation consists here of negro millet, to the exclusion of rice and sorghum. Last year's crop had here also been very scanty; and we endeavored in vain to procure a supply. We had then to cross the bottom of the valley or rfi, which at present exhibited only separate sheets of SONGHAY FARMING HAMLETS.

water, while on my return journey the following year, later in the season, it was almost entirely inundated. But at a short distance beyond the hamlet, even at present, we crossed with some difficulty an extensive swamp covered with rank grass.

We took up our quarters, after a march of about nine miles, in an open village situated on a rising ground, and overhanging a large sheet of water which is overgrown with reeds; it is called Songho-sire, meaning probably "the town of the Songhay," but nevertheless a very remarkable name, as "s6xe" is not a Songhay, but a Mdndingo word. Besides Songhay and Ffilbe, it was inhabited by serfs belonging to the people of Tmkala; and, being a farming village, it was full of corn-stacks. All the huts in these Songhay villages consist merely of reeds; and while they are less solid than the dwellings of Kebbi, which throughout are built with clay walls, they are better ventilated and have a less offensive smell. There was here a jovial old Plo farmer, with a cheerful countenance and pleasing manners, of the name of Mimmaga, who behaved very hospitably toward me, and, besides milk and corn, even made me a present of a sheep.

Friday, June 17th. There had been a thunder-storm in the night; but it was not accompanied with much rain, and the sky, not having been lightened by a discharge, was thickly overcast when we set out. An extensive tract of country consisting of sandy soil was here under cultivation, while the trees at first were very scanty; but gradually the country became more wooded, while considerable herds of cattle gave life to the landscape. After we had passed another pond of water, we halted for a few minutes to refresh ourselves near a herd of cattle, which was the property of a clan of Filbe, called Dinan-koye, the original inhabitants belonging to that part of the Songhay nation which are called Germibe; and proceeding through a more woody country with an undulating surface, we took up our quarters at a very early hour in another farming village, called Tig6re: for my camels were in want of rest, and I was too weak myself to resist the wishes of my servants. This village is exclusively inhabited by independent farmers, although belonging to the native Songhay stock. The architecture of the place was entirely different from that of Songho-sire (which is more of a slave village), consisting of very large court-yards, which evidently appeared intended for a rich supply of cattle, although at the present moment no cattle were to be seen in the neighborhood; and the huts them-
political situation, are of a rather sullen character. Moreover, the inhabitants of this hamlet, just at that moment, were in a state of great excitement, as they had received the news that Daidu, the young rebellious chieftain of Zaberma, or Zerma, was about to attack A’bu’l Hassan, the Governor of Timkala, with a strong force; and this ray of hope, of once more making themselves independent of those foreign intruders who had conquered their country, could not fail at once to rouse the national spirit of these people, who had formerly offered a long resistance to the Fdlbe, and to render them indisposed to honor a stranger who was paying his court to those foreign rulers, and at present was under the protection of the chief of Gando. This report was the reason of my giving up my intended visit to the town of Tdmkala, which lay a short distance out of our direct road to Say, toward the north, where we expected to find a supply of corn. Saturday, June 18th. On leaving Tigöre, we passed by the well, which presented a busy scene, numbers of women being engaged in drawing water. Although situated in a depression, it was twelve fathoms in depth. Farther on we passed another well, which had even been surrounded by a strong fence, to prevent strangers from using it; and in the village of Tihöre, which we reached after a march of about eight miles, the well, although situated at the foot of the hill, measured as much as twenty-five fathoms in depth. Owing to the weak condition of my camels, I was induced by my people to take up my quarters in this village; but I was heartily tired of these short marches, for the hut where I was lodged was in very bad condition, being extremely small and dirty, with no trees to afford a little shade during the hot hours of the day. Provisions were also here very scanty; and it was with great difficulty that I obtained a small supply of corn for our horses. But I was so fortunate as to procure a little sour milk, there being a tolerably large herd of cattle belonging to Fdlbe cattle-breeders, who inhabit a sort of suburb at the northwestern end of the village. The whole neighborhood was suffering from drought, as there had been no rain for the last eight days; nor did a thunder-storm, which in the afternoon gathered from the east, bring us a single drop.

REACH THE NIGER.
Sunday, June 19th. The district, also, through which lay the first part of this day's march, was extremely parched and suffering from want of rain, and in consequence of this drought, notwithstanding the advanced season, the ground hereabout had not yet been brought under cultivation; but after a march of a little more than three miles, through a country partly laid out in fields, partly covered with underwood, we entered a district which had been more favored with rain, and where the labors of the field had begun. The people here make use of a hoe with a long handle, of a different shape from what I observed in other quarters. Forest and cultivated ground then again succeeded each other alternately: and having passed a farming-village of some extent called Tanna, we took up our quarters about four miles beyond, in a village called Töndiffi, but were obliged to use force to obtain a hut for our use, as the head man of the village was too lazy, or too obstinate, to leave his cool shed in the heat of the day: probably here also
the news of the proceedings of their countrymen in Zaberma kept the minds of the people in a state of excitement. The hamlet, which is rather a miserable one, has received its name from lying at the commencement of a rocky district, which extends from here to the river, a hill or mound being called "t6ndi" in the Songhay language. We were now close to the Niger; and I was justified in indulging in the hope that I might the next day behold with my own eyes that great river of Western Africa, which has caused such intense curiosity in Europe, and the upper part of the large eastern branch of which I myself discovered.

Monday, June 20th. Elated with such feelings, I set out the next morning, at an early hour; and after a march of a little less than two hours, through a rocky wilderness covered with dense bushes, I obtained the first, sight of the river, and in less than an hour more, during which I was in constant sight of this noble spectacle, I reached the place of embarkation; opposite the town of Say.

In a noble unbroken stream, though here, where it has become contracted, only about 700 yards broad, hemmed in on this side by a rocky bank of from twenty to thirty feet in elevation, the great river of Western Africa (whose name, under whatever form it may appear, whether Dhibilibi, Mayo, Eghfru-u, Isa, Kwdra, or Bki-n-riiwa, means nothing but "the river," and which therefore may well continue to be called the Niger) was gliding along, in a N.N.E. and S.S.W. direction, with a moderate current of about three miles an hour. On the flatter shore opposite, a large town was spreading out, the low rampart and huts of which were picturesquely overtopped by numbers of slender dm palms.

This is the river-town, or "ford," the name Say meaning, in this eastern dialect, "the river." The FMlbe call it Ghitil, which name may originally have been applied to the ford at the island of Oitilli. The banks at present were not high; but the river, as it rises, approaches the very border of the rocky slope.

I had sent a messenger in advance, the preceding day, in order to have some large boats ready for me to cross the river. But no boat having arrived, I had plenty of leisure for contemplating the river scenery, which is represented in the plate opposite. There were a good number of passengers, Fdlbe and Songhay, with asses and pack-oxen, and there were some smaller boats in readiness suitable to their wants; but at length the boats, or rather canoes, which were to carry me and my effects across, made their appearance. They were of good size, about forty feet in length, and from four to five feet in width in the middle, consisting of two trunks of trees hollowed out, and sewn together in the centre. These boats are chiefly employed for conveying the corn from the town of Sfnder, which lies higher up the river, to the town of Say; and they had been expressly sent for by the "king of the waters," or the inspector of the harbor, the "serki-n-jirgif," or "Imido-161a," as he is called by the Fdlbe, or "hfyokoy," according to his title in the Songhay language. The largest of them was able to carry three of my camels; and the water was kept out much better than I had ever yet found to be the case with the native craft of the inhabitants of Negroland.
My camels, horses, people, and luggage having crossed over without an accident, I myself followed, about one o'clock in the afternoon, filled with delight when floating on the waters of this celebrated stream, the exploration of which had cost the sacrifice of so many noble lives. A little nearer the western bank, a short distance below the spot where the river is generally crossed, an isolated rock starts forth from the river, rising at this season from twelve to fifteen feet above the surface; and beyond there is a smaller one, which, as the river rises a little higher, becomes covered by the water. The sight of the river was the more momentous to me, as I was soon again to take leave of it; for my former notion, that I should be able to reach Timbiaku only by way of Libtiko, had been confirmed in Gando, and I only entertained a slight hope that perhaps on a future occasion I might visit that part of the river between Timbuktu and Say. From the very beginning I entertained strong doubts whether I should be able to reach the western coast; and it seemed to me more interesting to survey the course of the Niger between the point where it has become tolerably well known by the labors of Mungo Park and R6n6 Caill6 and the lower portion explored by the Landers, than to cross the whole extent of Central Africa.

Having presented myself at the governor's house, I soon obtained quarters; but they were not at all according to my fancy, being small and narrow. The town, in its very low position, is not refreshed by a single current of air, and altogether has a very oppressive atmosphere. The huts in these Songhay places are made rather for women than for men, the greater part of such hut being occupied by the female apartment or the alkilla, and the bedstead or serir, made of the branches of trees, being inclosed in a separate chamber of mats, and thus leaving only a very small entrance, and obstructing the whole interior of the dwelling. I have already had occasion, in describing the town of A'gades, to point out the care which the Songhay people bestow upon their matrimonial couches; and I was obliged first of all to take down one of these small matting bed-rooms in order to obtain some little ventilation in my hut. At length I had made myself somewhat comfortable, when the governor sent two calabashes of rice in the husk, and two others of millet, but no refreshment for the moment, though I stood very much in need of it, having been exposed to the sun during the hottest part of the day. To the master of the harbor, who had so opportunely supplied me with the large boats, I made a present of 1000 shells. Very little rain had fallen as yet in this neighborhood; and a thunder-storm which broke out in the afternoon did not reach us. Indeed the air in this low valley, which is probably at a level of about 350 feet, was so oppressive, that I felt at times almost suffocated, and unable to breathe. The following morning I took a ride round the place and its neighborhood. The shape of the town is tolerably quadrangular, being encompassed on three sides by a low rampart of earth, the side toward the river being unprotected. It is of

COMFORTLESS HUTS.

Slight hope that perhaps on a future occasion I might visit that part of the river between Timbuktu and Say. From the very beginning I entertained strong doubts whether I should be able to reach the western coast; and it seemed to me more interesting to survey the course of the Niger between the point where it has become tolerably well known by the labors of Mungo Park and R6n6 Caill6 and the lower portion explored by the Landers, than to cross the whole extent of Central Africa.

Having presented myself at the governor's house, I soon obtained quarters; but they were not at all according to my fancy, being small and narrow. The town, in its very low position, is not refreshed by a single current of air, and altogether has a very oppressive atmosphere. The huts in these Songhay places are made rather for women than for men, the greater part of such hut being occupied by the female apartment or the alkilla, and the bedstead or serir, made of the branches of trees, being inclosed in a separate chamber of mats, and thus leaving only a very small entrance, and obstructing the whole interior of the dwelling. I have already had occasion, in describing the town of A'gades, to point out the care which the Songhay people bestow upon their matrimonial couches; and I was obliged first of all to take down one of these small matting bed-rooms in order to obtain some little ventilation in my hut. At length I had made myself somewhat comfortable, when the governor sent two calabashes of rice in the husk, and two others of millet, but no refreshment for the moment, though I stood very much in need of it, having been exposed to the sun during the hottest part of the day. To the master of the harbor, who had so opportunely supplied me with the large boats, I made a present of 1000 shells. Very little rain had fallen as yet in this neighborhood; and a thunder-storm which broke out in the afternoon did not reach us. Indeed the air in this low valley, which is probably at a level of about 350 feet, was so oppressive, that I felt at times almost suffocated, and unable to breathe. The following morning I took a ride round the place and its neighborhood. The shape of the town is tolerably quadrangular, being encompassed on three sides by a low rampart of earth, the side toward the river being unprotected. It is of
considerable size, each side measuring about 1400 yards; but the town is only thinly inhabited, the dwellings (all of which, except the house of the governor, consist of matting and reeds) lying scattered about

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
like so many separate hamlets. It is intersected from north to south by a wide shallow depression or vale encompassed by diim palms, which are almost the only trees either inside or outside the town; and at the end of the rainy season it becomes filled with water, causing great inconvenience to the business of the town and the intercourse between the various quarters, and greatly contributing to its unhealthiness. There can be no doubt that, in seasons when the river reaches an unusual height, the whole town is under water, the inhabitants being obliged to seek safety beyond the borders of the valley.
There is a market held every day in the eastern part, not far from the bank of the river. Poor as it is, it is of some importance in the present state of the country; and hence the town has a great name as a market-place among the inhabitants of Western Sddin, a great many of whom here supply their want of native manufactures, especially of the common clothing for males and females, as the art of weaving and dyeing is greatly neglected in this quarter, cotton being cultivated only to a very small extent. But the place was most miserably supplied with provisions, there being no store of grain whatever. Every thing necessary was brought day by day from the town called Sfnder—the same place which I have mentioned as being situated about eighty miles higher up the river. I was greatly surprised at not finding here even a vestige of the cultivation of rice, although a large tract of ground on this low island, which, toward the rainy season, becomes partly inundated, is particularly suited to that branch of cultivation. Not even onions are grown in the place; but, fortunately, I had been informed of the circumstance beforehand, and had provided myself with a large supply of this useful article in Gando, where the onions are excellent.
Being detained in this place longer than I wished, and feeling a little better, on the Thursday following I took a ride along the river to some distance below, where it takes a westerly bend, and I was astonished at the dry and barren aspect which this island bore; even here neither rice-crops nor vegetables, as might be expected along the banks of so noble a river, being seen. The island, which during the highest level the river attains becomes almost inundated, bore the aspect of a scorched treeless prairie; and disappointed in my expectation of finding a cool shade, I returned into the town, being cheerfully saluted by all the people whom I met, the name of a m6dibo or learned man, which pre-

STATE OF MARKET.-TRAFFIC.
ceded me, gaining me the favor of the inhabitants. While passing along the streets, I was delighted to observe a certain degree of industry displayed in small handicrafts and in the character of the interior of the households. Every thing was very dear, but particularly butter, which was scarcely to be procured at all. All the currency of the market consists of shells; but I found the most profitable merchandise to be the black cloth for female apparel from Gando,
which realized a profit of eighty per cent., while the Kané manufactures did not
find a ready sale. The black N'pe tobe, of common manufacture, bought in Gando
for 3300 shells, here fetched 5000, while the black zenne, manufactured in Gando
itself, and bought there for 1050, sold here for 2000. Of course all depends, in this
respect, upon the momentary state of the intercourse of this quarter with Hiusa;
and, at the present time, almost all communication with that manufacturing
province being interrupted, it is easy to explain how an article produced in Gando
could realize such a percentage in a town at so short a distance from that place—a
state of things which can not form the general rule. At any rate, for the English, or
Europeans in general, Say is the most important place in all this tract of the river,
if they ever succeed in crossing the rapids which obstruct the river above Rabba
and especially between Bdisa and Yaiiri, and reaching this fine open sheet of
water, the great high road of Western Central Africa. The traffic of the natives
along the river is not inconsiderable, although even this branch of industry has
naturally suffered greatly from the rebellious state of the adjacent provinces, more
especially those of Zagrema and D6ndina; so that, at present, boats did not go
farther down the river than Kriotishi, an important place situated about fifteen
miles lower down, on the western bank, while in the opposite direction, up the
river, there was constant intercourse as far as Kindiji, with which place I made
myself sufficiently acquainted on my return journey.
About noon the second day of my stay here I paid a visit to the governor of the
town. His name is A'b-d Bakr, the son of the far-famed millem Mohammed
J6bbo. I found him a tolerably cheerful person, although he is wanting in that
manliness of character which makes a lasting impression, and he bore evident
signs of having been born of a female slave, while his manners appeared to me to
possess something approaching to a Jewish character. He, however, was delighted
to see me, as I was not only the first
VOL. III.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Christian who had ever visited this place, which Mungo Park, on his ever-
memorable journey, seems to have passed by entirely unnoticed, but especially as
I had come at a time when the whole intercourse of the country had been
interrupted, and Arabs as well as natives were all afraid of visiting it. Having
heard of the great superiority of Europeans over the Arabs, both in point of
intelligence and industry, he entertained an earnest wish, if it could be
accomplished without detriment to the welfare of his province, that a vessel or
steamer belonging to them might come and fill his poor market with luxuries; and
it was with the utmost surprise that he learned that I did not trade. But, on the
other hand, this led the governor to think that, in exposing myself to such great
dangers, I could not but have a very mysterious object in view; and he soon
became alarmed, and asked repeatedly why I did not proceed on my journey.
I had already been informed in Gando that A'b-6 Bakr, two years previously, had
navigated the river with a small flotilla of boats, upward as far as Gigho or G6g6,
the ancient capital of Songhay, and collected tribute from the Filbe or F6llani
settled near that place, but that he had been prevented by the threatening attitude
of the Tawirek from penetrating any farther. In consequence of this expedition on the river, made in open boats which were continually filling with water, the governor was suffering very severely from rheumatism, and was scarcely able to move.

Having so many petty chiefs before me, and seeing that this officer did not possess much power, I did not choose to give him a large present; but on my return the following year, when I still had something left, I made him a more considerable present of a bernus.

Having entered a new country, where a language was spoken (the Songhay) with which neither I nor any of my servants was acquainted, and not being able to give much time to its study, as I had to apply myself to the Fulfulde, the language of the conquering tribe, I was extremely anxious to take into my service a native of the country, or to liberate a Songhay slave; but I did not succeed at this time, and, in consequence, felt not so much at home in my intercourse with the inhabitants of the country through which I had next to pass as I had done formerly. For Gurma, although originally inhabited by quite a distinct race, has been conquered and peopled by the Songhay to a great extent.

LEAVE THE NIGER.

CHAPTER LX.

THE HILLY COUNTRY OF GURMA.

Friday, June 24th. I now left the Great River behind me, which formed the limit between the tolerably known regions of Central Negroland and the totally unexplored countries on the southwestern side of its course; and with intense interest my thoughts were concentrated on the new region before me. However, this very day we had a sufficient specimen of what awaited us on our march during the rainy season; for we had scarcely left the low island behind us, on which the town of Say, this hotbed of fever, is situated (with its dry prairie ground almost destitute of verdure, and covered only with a few scattered specimens of the Asclepiadaceae), and had ascended the steep rocky bank which borders the west side of the narrow, shallow, and irregular western branch of the river, which, being encompassed by granite boulders, was at present dry, when a dark array of thunder-clouds came, as it were, marching upon us from the southeast, and we had scarcely time to prepare for the serious assault when a terrible thunder-storm broke out, beginning with a most fearful sandwind, which enveloped the whole district in the darkness of night, and made progress for a moment quite impossible. After a while it was followed by a violent rain, which relieved the sand-storm, but lasted for nearly three hours, filling our path with water to the depth of several inches, and soaking us through to the skin, so that our march could not fail to be very uncomfortable.

It was on this account that we took up our quarters about half an hour before noon in a farming hamlet called Sanchorgu, where the people were busily employed in sowing; the plentiful rain of to-day, which was the first of the season, having rendered the fields fit for cultivation. After some search, we obtained two huts of round shape, which were situated near a sheep-pen in front of the dwelling of the
proprietor. This was a cheerful and wealthy old man, who both lodged us comfortably and treated us hospitably. While my people were drying their clothes and luggage, I roved about a little, and observed, at a short distance west from the hamlet, a small rocky water-course, with pools of stagnant water, where the women were washing their clothes, while the slaves were busy in the labors of the field.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Saturday, June 25th. Having rewarded our hospitable host, we started at an early hour to pursue our march, in order to reach in time the residence of Galaijo, a distinguished chief, of whom I had heard a great many flattering reports. It was a fine morning after yesterday's storm, and the country through which our march lay was hilly, and at times presented very pleasant vales or glens, but in general it was destitute of trees, and was only insufficiently inhabited and cultivated. The view which presented itself to us of the country before us, when, after a march of about three miles and a half; we reached the highest point, was that of an extensive wilderness, the few cultivated spots being entirely hidden in the midst of the forest. Red sandstone was apparently the chief component of this hilly country, with occasionally a black tint, received from exposure to the air, and rich in oxide of iron-in fact, of the same geological feature as the border country between Kebbi and Go'ber. Short herbage was springing up here and there, affording but scanty food to the cattle that were grazing hereabouts. A steep rocky declivity brought us from the higher level, which was covered with small stones, into a deep valley. But we had soon to ascend again, traversing a district which belonged to the village of Ndobiira, and bore some signs of cultivation; and a dell, which we passed a little farther on, was extremely picturesque. But the country hereabouts does not in general seem to be very fertile, and, besides, the exceptional drought of the present year had destroyed a large proportion of the crops; and it was this very unproductiveness that had induced the chief to leave his former place of residence, Shirgu, which lay a little more to the east, and to found a new dwelling-place farther west. This place, which is called Champagore, we reached at noon, but preferred taking up our quarters on a hill opposite the town, to the north, which was bounded on that side by a well-wooded dell, and overlooked the whole neighborhood. The town itself is inclosed by a small hilly chain toward the south, at the foot of which are the wells, seven fathoms in depth. It was to have been surrounded by a clay wall; but, only provisionally, the four gates had been finished with clay, while the rest of the town Wai..still inclosed by a stockade. The interior of the place looks very peculiar, and quite different from the style usual in Kebbi, which is chiefly owing to the remarkable character of the magazines of corn, which consist of towers or quadrangular buildings, raised a few feet above the ground, in order to protect them from the ants. They are from ten to fifteen feet in height, and about six fPet in diameter, the walls gradually
sloping inward toward the top, as shown in the accompanying wood-cut. They have no opening at the bottom, but only a window-like aperture near the top, through which the corn is taken in and out, and, on the whole, they are not unlike the dove-cots of Egypt. In every court-yard there were one or more of these magazines; and they far surpassed, in their whole appearance, the dwellings themselves, which, with a few exceptions, consisted of low huts, the whole of the court-yards being only surrounded by a frail fence, made of the stalks of the native corn, while in many yards, one half of the circumference

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of the huts themselves, of which there were rarely more than two, formed part of the fence.

I went in the afternoon to pay my compliments to the chief. The portal of his residence has quite a stately appearance, as shown in the preceding wood-cut, bearing evident testimony to an attempt at architectural decoration; but the spacious courtyard inside, which was inclosed by a low clay wall, full of rubbish and poor mean-looking huts, did not correspond with the stately character of the entrance. However, the dwelling itself, although simple, is not so mean, and, besides two spacious clay halls, includes some very airy and cool corridors built entirely of wood. Having been first received by Galaijo in one of the clay halls, I was conducted afterward to a more private audience in one of these corridors; and here, while delivering my present,* I had a fair opportunity of surveying the exterior of this interesting man.

Mohammed Galaijo, at the time of my visit, was a man of about seventy years of age, of an extremely pleasant and almost European expression of countenance, and of middle stature. He was dressed very simply, in a light-blue tobe, with a white shawl wound round his face. Galaijo, son of Hambodjo, son of Pite, son of Himed Yella, succeeded his father-probably the very chief who treated Mungo Park so hospitably during his stay in Misina-in the year of the Hejra 1231. He was then the most powerful chief of Misina, or Melle, which, since the overthrow of the Songhay empire by Mlay Hmed el D6hebi, the Emperor of Morocco, had been left to itself, and was consequently split into several petty kingdoms, the three other powerful chiefs of that country being the A'rd0 M6sina, the A'rd0 Fittogel, and G61 Hamma Mina. But just at the time when Galaijo became ruler, the great religious movement of the FYlbe of G6ber began, under the Reformer 'Othmin, and, instigated by their example, and fired with religious zeal, a chief went forth from them in order to spread Islam among that section of the FYlbe which was established along the upper course of the Niger. This man was Mohammed or Himed Lebbo, who, arriving in the country of Misina in the beginning of the year 1233 of the Hejra, at the head of a small band, formed first an alliance with Galaijo, who himself had embraced Islam; and thus, closely allied, they spread their conquests over the neighboring country. But, after having

* The present consisted of a red cap, half a piece of muslin, and some smaller articles.
MOHAMMED GALAIJO.

succeeded in establishing a strong power, Mohammed Lebbo demanded homage and allegiance from his ally Galaijo, under the pretext of his having brought the ensign, or tidta, of Islam from Siffiwa, the place mentioned on a former occasion, where the Reformer 'Othmin dan F6diye resided at the time, together with his brother 'Abd Al6hi. Upon this, Galaijo, feeling little inclined to cede the dominion of the country over which his claims had been established from ancient times, entered into a violent struggle with the new-comer; but after an unsuccessful resistance, carried on for three years, he was obliged to give up his former residence, Koniri, and, with the rest of his partisans, to seek a new home farther eastward. Here he was received with open arms by the ruler of Gando, who was not at all pleased with the independent bearing of Lebbo and his son Ahmeau, by whom he was succeeded-those people, being borne away by a pure reformatory view of their religion, and elated by their victory, going so far as to dispatch a message to their kinsmen in Sokoto and Gando, to the effect that, if they would not reduce the number of their wives to two, and renounce their wide effeminate dress, they would pay them a hostile visit; and it is on this account that, even at the present time, there is no amicable relation whatever subsisting between the courts of Sokoto and Gando on the one hand, and that of Hamda-Allahi on the other.

The chief of Gando therefore granted Galaijo an extensive although not very fertile district in his territories, where he has now been settled for almost thirty years. Thus we find, in this region, a small court of its own, and a whole community bearing no resemblance whatever to the customs of the people around them, but having faithfully preserved the manners and institutions of their native country, M~sina; for, while all the neighboring Fiilbe are rather a slender race of men, with expressive and sharply-cut features, who make it a rule to dress in white colors, we find here quite the reverse: a set of sturdy men, with round, open countenances, and long black curly hair, all uniformly clad in light blue tobes, and almost all of them armed with muskets. I was utterly surprised at the noble bearing of several of the courtiers, but especially that of the vizier and the commander-in-chief or limido konno, both of whom reminded me of Europeans.

The old chief, even at the present time, keeps up a continual intercourse with Timb-6ktu, where his eldest son was at the time studying, and which place he did not leave until some time after my arrival. Indeed, the town of Koniri is still said to belong to Galaijo.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Taking into consideration the peculiar character of this little colony, and the benevolent disposition and venerable character of the chief in particular, I thought it worth my while to enter into more intimate relations with him, and, in consequence, the following day presented him with a helili bernis, which he admired very much, and was as grateful for as his reduced fortune allowed him to be; for, besides giving me a present of a heifer and a great number of fowls, he
provided me also with corn, of which there was a great dearth in the place. The market was very small and insignificant, consisting merely of seven stalls or shops, where scarcely a single sheep or ox was to be seen. The bitter species of ground-nuts, or gingala, and salt, formed almost the sole articles for sale. Butter and sour milk were plentiful.

The whole of this country belongs to Gurma—a name which, however, does not seem to owe its origin to the native inhabitants, but probably was given to it by the Songhay, who, while still settled on the north side of the river, applied this term to the region on the opposite or southern side, identical with the name Aribinda. The country, at least the northern portions of it, had gradually been conquered and colonized by the Songhay, who, as we shall see on my home journey, have preserved in this quarter a portion of their national strength and independence, while in the recent rising of the Fdlbe the chief places along the high road had been occupied by the latter; but after the first impulse of the religious movement had passed by, the settlements of this conquering race had greatly decayed, so that the communication along this important high road from the west, at the period of my journey, was almost entirely interrupted, nay, the native independent chief of B6jjo had totally destroyed the considerable settlement of Marte6go which commanded the road; for, from the very beginning, the conquerors had only succeeded in establishing themselves along the high road, leaving the independence of the chiefs in the interior almost undisturbed. The most powerful of these native chiefs of Gurma are those of Belinga, B6tu, Bosfigu, B6jjo, Machakwi1i, Nindu, and Mayinga.* Of these the chief of Belinga seems to be at present the most powerful, while next to him ranks that of B6jjo; but in former times B6tu seems to have been the chief place in the country, which is the reason why it is still called by the Mlusa people "fdda-n-
Gurma," "the palace or royal residence of Gurma." The name Gurma, however, as I have said, seems not to be the indigenous name either of the country or of the people, while the language of the natives bears a certain affinity to that of the neighboring tribes, the M6si or More, and Tombo.

However, the original inhabitants of Gurma are not the only enemies of the Fdlbe, but, besides the former, there are also the Songhay, who have emigrated into the country since the time of their predominance along the Niger; and some of these communities are the most inveterate enemies of the present conquerors, especially the inhabitants of L~rba, or Liraba, a place which we had to pass on our farther march. Besides the latter place, the most important settlements of the Songhay in this district are said to be the following: Tra (the residence of Hamma-Kisa), Darghol, Garm-iwa, Fimbita, close to the river; and not far from it, to the west, Gard (probably identical with the neighboring town of Smuder of that name), Kasini, K6koro, and F6ni.* We shall come into contact with some of these

SONGHAY TOWNS.-A SURPRISE.

* For a list of the other places in Gurma, and some itineraries establishing their position, as well as the more important places in M6si, see Appendix V.
Songhay settlements on our return journey along the Niger, and I shall then say
more about them.

It was on account of the Lirba that I was induced to remain a day longer at
Champag6re than had been originally my intention, the chief begging me most
urgently to wait till some other people who were going to Yigha might join me;
and while staying here, we were so fortunate as to have a tolerable shower of rain,
which greatly refreshed this parched country and again raised the hopes of the
inhabitants. The whole depression between the hill on which we were encamped
and the town became filled with water; and I was greatly delighted at the arrival
of the proprietor of the farm where we had established ourselves, an energetic
weatherbeaten Pllo, who came to inspect the labors of the fields, and who was not
a little surprised at finding us quietly established in his homely dwelling.

Tuesday, June 28th. Our road lay through a hilly country, well wooded and
intersected by a number of small water-courses; and in some favored localities a
good crop of corn was seen standing in the fields. Cattle also seemed not to be
wanting, which accounted for the circumstance of the residence of Galaijo being
so well provided with milk. We also met a great number of women on their way
to the market of Champag6re with their supplies of

* As smaller places of the Soughay in this district, the following were mentioned
to me: Fonek6wa, Dfbilo, Ldde, Dtimba, and Basi.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
sour milk. But, besides the small dry water-courses just mentioned, we had also to
cross a very rapid torrent, which is called G6rebi, and is said to come from the
direction of Kulfidla, a very important market-place in the interior of M6si, and
which caused us considerable delay. Before we entered Champaliwel, also, where
we took up our quarters half an hour before noon, we had to cross a considerable
sheet of water, three feet and a half in depth, and about thirty yards broad, about
the relation of which to the neighboring water-courses I am not quite certain.
Champaliwel is the residence of the governor of the T6robe; but it was at that
time in the utmost state of decay, and almost deserted, the slight remains of the
ramparts being almost hidden in a dense forest; for since the decease of Mo'azu (a
celebrated chieftain mentioned also in other accounts), who died about twenty
years ago, the power of the Filbe in this place has greatly declined. The present
governor, a younger brother of that energetic chieftain, himself tolerably
advanced in years, proved to be a very illiberal and unamiable man, and he would
not even assign me quarters on my arrival, so that I had the greatest trouble in
taking possession of a miserable little hut on my own account, while good shelter
was very essential, as a great quantity of rain fell in the afternoon. However, all
was changed when, toward evening, a cousin of the present governor, of the name
of 'Othmin, arrived, and I then received a present of two sheep. I also had the
great and unexpected pleasure of meeting here an Arab, of the name of
Mohammed el Wikhshi, a near relative of my friend Bii-Bakr el Wikhshi, the
Ghadimsi merchant whom I have mentioned repeatedly in the preceding part of
my narrative. This man was then on his return from Gonja, the northern tributary
province of Asanti, the GUiro caravan having been induced, by the state of the
country, to abandon its direct road from Yendi to Komba on the Niger, in favor of
a northerly and very circuitous road by way of Yigha.* But I was disappointed in
the hope of
* The principal stations of this interesting route, at a very slow rate, are the
following, starting from Yendi:
1 day. Kaia, still on the great high road to Komba.
5 days. Natonggo, a village inhabited by Dagomba.
5 " Woawoloa, a large place inhabited partly by pagans, partly by
Mohammedans, and dependent on Yendi.
10 " Bdiri, a large place belonging to Masi.
3 " Another Masi place, the residence of a powerful officer of the chief of
Waghodogh6, to whom these native travelers give the title of Yerima.

GU'RO CARAVAN.-SCARCITY OF CORN.
corresponding with Europe by means of this man. The letter which I gave to him,
and which I had already written in Say, never reached its destination, for El
Wikhshi succumbed to disease in crossing the province of Nipe in the height of
the rainy season, before reaching Kan6.
Wednesday, June 29th. On leaving this desolate residence of the chief of the
Trobe, reduced to an entangled thicket, we passed the encampment, or zango, of
the Gdro caravan, which, as is generally the case, consisted of small round huts,
erected for the occasion with branches and rank grass. The caravan consisted of
about one hundred individuals, with a couple of hundred of asses, which form the
usual beasts of burden of these native travelers. Scarcely a mile beyond the town
we had again to cross a river which, bordered by the richest vegetation, and by
abundance of rank grass, runs at this spot from S.E. to N.W., with a depth of
about three feet, and at times, when a great deal of rain has fallen, forming a far
more considerable volume of water.
The country which we then entered was hilly, tolerably well cultivated, and
thickly inhabited. It was adorned here and there with the baobab-tree, and a fine
leafy tree called here "hardina." But we made only a short march, being induced,
on account of the danger of the road before us, to take up our quarters in a
farming village, situated in a very rich tract of country, behind a flat-topped cone,
at the distance of a little more than four miles from Champaliwel.
Notwithstanding the fertility of the district, no corn was to be obtained here at
present, the last year's harvest having failed entirely, so that the people were
obliged to supply their own wants at Bosebingo. This scarcity is increased
generally in districts where only one species of corn is grown, all the produce here
being reduced to millet; while, where various grains are raised, which ripen at
different seasons, even in these countries, dearth can not prevail to such an extent
and for so long a time. All the inhabitants, including even the head man, belonged
to the native Gurma race. All the cattle-breeding is in the hands of the Fdlbe, who
regard "the cow as the most useful animal in creation," "negge ngomb'u'ri d6ya f6
nifa ;" and, there being no such people in the neighborhood, no milk was to be
obtained. The
1 day. SMtugu, a market-place, residence of a governor.
1 ° Beltissa, a large place of M6si, to be mentioned also in other itineraries.
7 days. Libtdgu, a small Gurma village.
1 day. Yigha.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
dwelling where I was lodged, with its numerous compartments and court-yards,
presented quite a labyrinth of itself. Three servants of Galaijo, all armed with
muskets, had attached themselves to my troop, and I supplied each of them here
with ball cartridges, in case of any attack on the road.
Thursday, June 30th. We had a long day's march before us, through the unsafe
wilderness which separates the reduced dominion of the chief of the T6robe from
the territory of Yigha. It was a fine morning, and tolerably clear. Corn-fields now
and then interrupted the dense growth of talha-trees and prickly underwood, while
occasionally a baobab or a tamarind-tree gave

- a half in diameter at the base. The proceeding is very simple and
unsophisticated. On the ironstone is placed a large %0 quantity of wood-ashes
till the metal be-

- gins to melt, and is then, by means of
three channels at the bottom of the furnace, received in the basin.
Close behind these smelting-furnaces, which happened to be the first I had seen in
Negroland, though there are plenty of them in some districts, we passed the site of
a former encampment, or zango, of native traders, or fatiki, in a spot clothed with
the finest Poa, and adorned with large, wide-spreading trees. Ascending then a
little, we passed the village of Bangap6lle on our left, situated at the eastern foot
of an eminence, and then kept along the northern base of the latter, while on our
right a dense forest spread out, broken by a rocky ridge. The whole wilderness
through which our way led was in general very dry, and did not possess any fresh
pasture-grounds, although about two miles beyond Bangap6lle we passed a
considerable pond of water, with numerous traces of the elephant; but gradually
the country became more rocky, granite prevailing. We encamped, at length, on
the site of a former hamlet, called Kfe, situated on a rising rocky ground, close to
a depression, with water, and clothed with a fine pasture interspersed with
flowers, in whose sweet blossom numerous butterflies were indulging. Here again
the footprints of the elephant

ELEPHANT TRACES.-BOSEBA’NGO.
were extremely numerous; but by far more interesting, and of much higher
importance to me, were the traces of the rhinoceros, an animal which at present
seems to be wanting entirely in the regions between the Niger on the west and the
Shirf toward the, east. Our rest at this place was greatly disturbed; for after all
alarm in the evening, which, fortunately for us, proved to be false. we were kept
awake the whole night by a terrible thunder-storm, which broke out with great
violence, and rendered our situation, in the midst of a low, swampy ground, very
uncomfortable indeed.
Friday, July 1st. In consequence of the storm we started rather late. Close behind our encampment we had to cross a very swampy ground, which we might have passed more easily the day before. We were therefore greatly cheered when the boggy ground was succeeded by sandy soil, which became intersected by several small water-courses, affording a channel to the watery element; but, after a march of about six miles, it was again succeeded by a considerable pond, which we had to avoid by a long circuitous road. Here, also, the ground was marked by numerous footprints of the elephant, while monkey-bread or baobab trees were in great abundance.

In the afternoon the whole aspect of the country changed, the surface becoming rugged, and broken by small rocky ridges; and here the danger increased on account of the vicinity of the town of Lirba, the inhabitants of which, as I have mentioned before, are the inveterate enemies of the Fdilbe. Only a few days before they had robbed and murdered some people of the governor of the T6robe. But, well-armed as we were, all the people round about being aware that an attack upon us would not be an easy affair, we proceeded without any accident; and having twice made a considerable descent, we reached, a little after three o’clock, the village of Bosebingo, which is surrounded by a strong stockade. It is inhabited by the Karibe, who, although kinsmen of the inhabitants of Lirba, fear and respect in some degree the authority of the Filbe; however, we soon convinced ourselves that the character of their allegiance is very precarious. The mayor of the village, being a man of advanced age, dressed in a ragged shirt, lodged me in his own quarters, which seemed to contain a very remarkable household, the most interesting objects being his two wives, very stout females, richly ornamented with copper rings on their arms and legs, and with strings of beads round their necks, but having, besides, another ornament, at which I was more surprised, viz., a thin plate of tin in the under lip, like that worn by the Marghf; but I was astonished at not finding the nose-ring, which, from what I had heard, I had concluded that all the Songhay were in the habit of wearing. Altogether, these fashionably dressed women, with their dirty old partner, would have formed a highly interesting subject for illustrating the customs of these people.

Having rested a while, for I felt greatly exhausted after my sickly state in Say, I roved a little about the place (which lies at the foot of a well-wooded eminence), and collected several specimens of minerals, which, in the course of my journey, were thrown away by my people. Gneiss and mica slate were predominant, and beautiful varieties of granite occasionally appeared.

Having observed from this point that the River Sfrba runs only at a short distance from the place, we endeavored in the evening to arrange with the inhabitants to assist us in crossing this sheet of water, where there are no boats. While speaking with the natives about this river, I was surprised to hear from them that they consider the water unwholesome, and more particularly so for horses, while even the herbage which grows close to the border is regarded as extremely deleterious to the cattle; but the people themselves supply their own wants entirely from the river. They do not carry the water in single pitchers on their heads, which is the
general custom in Negroland, but use a simple pair of yokes, from which a couple of nets are suspended, in each of which a pitcher is carried, in much the same way as in Germany.

The chief treated my party very hospitably. While in the neighborhood of Bangap6lle there seemed to be great scarcity of corn, here it appeared to be in abundance. We spent our evening comfortably, although it was necessary to take great care of the horses, as a number of horse-stealers were hovering about the place.

Saturday, July 2d. A few hundred yards beyond the village we came to the River Sirba, which here forms a bend from N.W. to N.E., between banks about twenty feet high, and caused us not a little anxiety, as it was nearly seventy yards wide, and not less than twelve feet in depth in the middle. We had, moreover, to cross it merely on bundles of reeds, which we had to tie together ourselves. At length, after much controversy, we succeeded in arranging with the natives, for 2000 shells, to assist us in crossing. While the large bundles which were to constitute our frail ferry

CROSS THE SIRBA.-COUNTRY BEYOND.

were being tied together, the head man of the village and a great number of the natives were sitting on the high banks of the river, which form a sort of amphitheatre, in order to enjoy the spectacle. There was something very peculiar about the inhabitants of this place. The men were formed into interesting groups, with features full of expression, but approaching somewhat to effeminacy, their hair being plaited in long tresses, which hung down over their cheeks, and in some cases reached their shoulders. Their dress consisted of short blue shirts, and long wide trousers of the same color. Almost all of them had small pipes in their mouths, which they smoked incessantly. The women were of rather short stature, and of not very symmetrical forms, with naked legs and breasts. Their necks and ears were richly ornamented with strings of beads; but they also were destitute of the nose-ring, which I had supposed common to this tribe.

The men were expert swimmers, and carried the small articles across the river in large calabashes; but we ourselves and the heavier luggage had to cross on the rafts of reeds, and in about two hours we succeeded in getting safely over the water with our whole troop. A little after twelve o'clock we left the opposite bank, being joined by two horsemen of the Sy'lleb−wa, who, at no great distance from this spot, have a large settlement called Diltuwel; but we had great difficulty in making our way through the swampy plain, intersected by several small water-courses, which descended in deep ravines from a small rocky chain toward the north. After a march of about eight miles we pitched our tents a little beyond the site of a former encampment of the native traders, where the ground was tolerably free from trees; and I enjoyed our resting-place extremely, for, having been exposed to the sun during the heat of the day, I felt greatly fatigued.

Sunday, July 3d. We continued our march through the forest, which here had a very fresh appearance, and soon passed a cone on our right, on the offshoots of which, as would appear from the quantities of stones scattered about, a hamlet appears to have been situated in former times. Besides gneiss, large pieces of a
fine species of marble were lying about in every direction. Rank grass, now and
then adorned with blue Crucifere, filled up the intervals between the dense
growth of trees (but there were none of large size, and less of the bush called
"tsida" than I had seen the previous day), besides a few isolated monkey-bread-
trees. I observed also that the people were here digging up the same root

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
which I had noticed on my journey to A'damiwa. The footprints of the elephant
and the buffalo were very numerous; and a little farther on we fell in with a large
herd of the latter species, indulging in the luxuriant herbage of the pasture-
grounds, which here grows without any use to man.
Having then gone round a considerable pond of water in the midst of the forest,
we entered upon more undulating ground, adorned with larger trees, where,
besides the monkey-bread-tree, the dor6wa was predominant; and a little beyond
an eminence, at the foot of which the village of Bund6re had been situated iii
former times, we reached the modern village of that name, which is surrounded
with a stockade. A dyeing-place, containing from eight to ten pits, besides a large
basin for making up the mixture, presented some signs of industry and
civilization; at a short distance from our quarters, also, a blacksmith was living.
This village belongs to the territory of Y'gha, and the huts presented a peculiar
style of architecture, being built almost entirely of stalks and matting. The latter,
which constitutes the walls, is plastered with clay, and reaches an altitude of nine
feet. The roof is not formed of slender boughs and branches, but of large poles.
Not being able to obtain any corn that evening, I was obliged to stay here the
following day. No millet is cultivated in this place, all the corn consisting of
sorghum. The people would not take any thing but shells, and refused cotton
strips. Sixty of the former bought a full measure of a common drinking-bowl, or
"gerra," of corn; and for 1500 shells we procured a lean sheep.
Tuesday, July 5th. The country which we traversed on leaving Bund6re was well
adorned with trees, especially the tamarind, and bore evident signs of extensive
cultivation, even indigo and cotton being observed by the side of a pond; but the
forest soon became so dense that our progress was very difficult, and the 6imiida,
a Liliacea which I have mentioned before, was so plentiful in some places, that it
formed, as it were, a rich carpet, exhibiting quite an unwonted and cheerful
aspect, for in general this quarter of Africa is rather poor in flowers. We had just
passed a very dense jungle of tall reed-grass interspersed with blue and yellow
flowers, when a thunder-storm, which had hovered over us all the morning, broke
out, and soon changed the whole forest into one mighty sheet of water, when we
had to cross three powerful torrents, all running toward the southeast, and
probably discharging themselves into the Sirba.

DENGANONGUNGO.
Completely drenched, and almost swamped by the water, we reached the village
of Dengi, but had the greatest difficulty in entering it, on account of the dense
forest with which it was surrounded. At length we succeeded in penetrating this
mass of thorny, bushes, and, having obtained quarters, were able to dry our clothes; but the damp was excessive, and the second-best of my servants, the young Shuiwa lad 'Abd Allihi, was this very day attacked by the Guinea-worm, which laid him up during the whole of the remainder of my journey, and at times rendered him the most disagreeable person in the world.

The hut which was assigned to myself was well built, but it was so completely obstructed by numbers of corn-jars of clay that scarcely any room was left for my own use. Our diet, however, was not so bad, and besides sour milk, which constitutes one of the most wholesome articles of food for a European traveler in these regions during the rainy season, we obtained also a couple of fowls.

Wednesday, July 6th. Our road, on leaving Denga, led through underwood, which was gradually succeeded by dense forest, the view being bounded toward the right by heights. Among the trees of the forest there was soon conspicuous that large beautiful tree, a species of acacia, which the inhabitants of Sha'wi and Mkari call korgam, and from which they build most of their boats, while a kind of vegetable butter is made from its core. It grew here to an altitude of certainly not less than eighty feet, with a wide-spreading crown, but not very dense foliage. It is here called "mur," at least by the Arabs; its native Songhay name I did not learn till some time subsequently.

Among the underwood, the most distinguished was the bush here called "kirche," with its small, white, edible fruit, which is extremely pleasant when taken in small quantities, but, from its very sweet taste, soon becomes unpalatable; there was, besides, the "mekh6t," as it is called by the Arabs, the fruit of which is much liked by the natives, but it was not yet ripe. The wilderness was interrupted by a village of considerable size, called Gongingo, surrounded by a living fence of bushes, and exhibiting a good deal of cultivation, principally Zea Mais, while a single dm palm attracted our attention. Here the sun broke through the clouds, spreading life over, and enhancing the cheerful aspect of, the landscape.

Forest again succeeded, intersected by a small rivulet which had inundated the district to some extent; and about two miles beyond Gongingo we had to 'cross swampy meadow-grounds, where my Husa Piillo, a native of Zab6rma, whom I had taken into my service in Champag6re, called my attention to a plant named here "yingara-bubfki," which is said to keep flies from open wounds, especially from those of the camel; it probably contains a sort of slight poison. Having crossed a short tract of rugged ground, where granite, gneiss, and sandstone protruded through the surface, we entered a more populous district, with several villages right and left, but presenting great difficulties to the passage of the camels, as it consisted of red clay soaked with water, which formed several large ponds, and, being recently traversed by a numerous herd of cattle, was extremely muddy.

Thus leaving two villages on one side, we reached, a little before noon, the clay wall of the town of Sebba, which, though the residence of the lord of Yigha, has nothing in its appearance to indicate the capital of even a small province. The
governor was sitting in front of his house, close to the mosque, in the midst of a large congregation of people, and was reading and interpreting to them some passages from the Koran. Having sent two of my servants in advance, I soon obtained quarters, and was lodged in an excellent hut, which I shall here describe. The hut measured about 40 feet in diameter, the walls being

1. Jodórde, a clay seat of semicircular shape, raised about a foot, on each side of the door.
2. Laggere, two round shallow holes in the floor, measuring about eight inches in diameter, to pace the dishes during dinner, in order to prevent them from being upset. 8b. Kos-ndl, a half-oval-shaped place, surrounded by a slight clay rampart, about two and a half feet high, for containing luggage, etc.
3. Hurgal, a sort of clay bank, about six feet in length, and about a foot in height, and rather narrow. 5. T1hree "benbel,” or large-sized clay jars, for containing corn.
4. Six smaller called "mabbirgel benbel.” Hobinirde, the cooking-place, consisting of four stones, or rather clay mounds, protected against any gust of wind by a slight wall toward the side of the door, while its privacy is already sufficiently guaranteed by the clay jars. 6. Two movable seats, or jodórde, one oval, the other of an oblong shape, both made of wood.
104. DESCRIPTION OF HUTS. The clay being excellently polished, and the hut of recent construction, left a very pleasant impression; but, as is so often the case in human life, all this finery covered nothing but misery, and I discovered the next day, to my utter amazement, that this beautiful hut was one entire nest of ants, which had in one day made great havoc with the whole of my luggage. In the afternoon I went to pay my respects to the governor, who is not without power, so that I thought it better to sacrifice to him a bernfis of inferior quality, besides some smaller articles. He was a fine-grown man, with large features, which at once indicated his origin from the black stock of the Fdlbe or the T6robe.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Sitting at the door of his palace, he received me kindly, and promised me that I should have no difficulty in my farther progress. Considering the scarcity of provisions he treated me hospitably on the whole, sending me the next day a young heifer, besides a great many dishes of prepared food.

The name of the principality is Yigha,* dating from the time which preceded the conquest of the Filbe; but the governor's private name is Sjo ben Tbrahima. Notwithstanding the power of the ruler, the place is in a miserable condition, and resembles rather a wilderness than a town: but it is extremely picturesque, having a thick covert of beautiful trees nourished by a large sheet of water. The place contains scarcely 200 huts, and nothing like a market is to be found. The difficulty of our obtaining supplies was the greater, as, contrary to our expectation and the information we had received, nothing but shells had currency in the place; and it was with a great deal of trouble that, by means of the cotton strips with which we had provided ourselves, we obtained a small supply of butter and corn, four dr'a being reckoned here the same as in Gando, while in the town of Say there was thirty per cent. profit upon the cotton strips. The most abundant article I found here was milk, which was the best I had ever yet tasted in Negroland, and it gave me a fair, but rather exaggerated idea of what I might expect to find among the Filbe farther west. We also bought a small quantity of corn from the women, in exchange for some looking-glasses and cloves. All the corn here consists of sorghum; and seventy shells, at the time, would just buy sufficient corn for a horse for one day, which is a very high price indeed for Negroland.

Notwithstanding the poor character of the place, I was obliged to stay here two whole days, exclusive of the day of my arrival, in order to give the camels some rest, as they were suffering greatly from the effects of the rainy season, and on account of the holiday of the "fotr," which fell on the 8th. If I had known the character of the province of Libtko better, I should have deemed it prudent to make even a longer stay here: and I would advise any future traveler to do so, taking care, however, to have a sufficient supply of shells with him, which will enable him to make himself quite comfortable in Yigha.

Music having announced the arrival of the important and joyful day soon after midnight, almost the whole of the men went out in the morning in order to say their prayers at about a mile's distance from the town. All the Filbe were dressed in snowy white shirts, as a symbol of the purity of their creed; but some of them wore dark-blue trousers. There were about forty horses with the party, which probably was all that the townspeople could muster.

Having had to sustain here a slight religious attack from the kidhi, who wanted to represent me as a sorcerer, I thought it prudent to make a small present to each of

* The places belonging to the province of Yggha are the following: Denga, Gongdngo, Gesgngu, Sinsirga, N6tu, D6ri (surnamed Dembini, in order to distinguish it from D6ri or D6re in Libtko), Sebba, Namanttdgu, Kankanfdgu, H6ga, Hum6re, Kdbo.

196

DEPARTURE FROM SEBBA.
supply of shells with him, which will enable him to make himself quite comfortable in Yigha.

Music having announced the arrival of the important and joyful day soon after midnight, almost the whole of the men went out in the morning in order to say their prayers at about a mile's distance from the town. All the Filbe were dressed in snowwhite shirts, as a symbol of the purity of their creed; but some of them wore dark-blue trousers. There were about forty horses with the party, which probably was all that the townspeople could muster.

Having had to sustain here a slight religious attack from the kidhi, who wanted to represent me as a sorcerer, I thought it prudent to make a small present to each of
the holiday people, as a kind of s6ddega, or alms. The holiday also disturbed me in compiling a small vocabulary of the Gurma language, called by the Fiiibe Gurman-k6be, which I had begun, but was obliged to leave unfinished.

CHAPTER LXI.
PROVINCE OF LIBTA'KO.-SOUTHEASTERN LIMIT OF THE RANGE OF THE COMMERCE OF TIMBU'KTU.

Saturday, July 9th. We left Sebba, the capital of the wilderness -bfrni-n-d-ji, as I called it,-passing through a district where forest and cultivated ground alternated. The slaves were busy in the fields rooting up the weeds from among the crops; but, after a march of about four miles, we had to cross a very considerable water, which is here called Yli, and about whose course I am not able to give distinct information. It is said to come from Mosi, and to join the river Sfrba not far from Bosebingo; but the latter statement is incredible. The water being not less than four feet and a half in depth, with a breadth of at least four hundred yards, most of our luggage became wetted. . The country then assumed a more rocky appearance -mica slate, granite, and gneiss alternating, the granite sometimes appearing in large boulders. The vegetation also assumed here a more varied aspect, besides tamarind-trees, midachi and kad6 predominating; and altogether the forest exhibited a fresh and pleasant character, especially as the sun had at length broken through the clouds which had obscured its rays during the first part of the day. Aier a march altogether of about eleven miles, we reached the village of Namant76gu, which still belongs to the province of Yigha, the mayor of which we had met a short time before on' the road as he was going to look after his cattle.

The village is of some importance, and consists of several groups which cover an extensive tract of ground, lying straggling about in the fields; but the huts themselves are very narrow, and the one which was assigned to myself was so small that there was scarcely room to breathe. Nothing is more unhealthy for a European than these abodes of stench and filth; but during the rainy season he is often obliged to seek shelter in these dirty dwellings, especially if he has valuable property in his possession.

Namantdigu, which seems to have been of considerable importance in the history of the Songhay empire,* was -a rather eventful place for my whole subsequent proceedings, as I here met an Arab from the west, in whose company I was safely to enter the town of Timbiktu. He called himself Sheikho, though this was not originally his proper -name; and, in order not to cause any mistake, I will in future call him (from his father and the name of his birth-place) Weled A'mmer Waldti. He was certainly a very remarkable fellow; and I shall have frequent occasion in the farther course of my journey to advert to his doings. Being originally a native of Walita, he had emigrated to Timbiktu, whence he had roved about a great deal among the Tawirek as well as among the FMlbe, and was at present ’on his way from Belinga, the residence of one of the principal chiefs of Gurma. He had a good quantity of the broad gibagi, or cotton strips, of M6si with him, which form the staple currency in the whole tract of country from Libtiko to Timbiktu, ten
dr'a being reckoned equal to one hundred shells. Besides Arabic, he spoke Fulfdle, Songhay, M6si, and Bimbara fluently, and Temishight, or the language of the Tawirek, almost as well, and altogether was one of the cleverest men whom I met on my journey, in spite of the trouble he caused me and the tricks he played me. He was a handsome man, of middle size and of rather slender growth, and with very fine expressive features. His dress consisted of a long black gown, with a black shawl wound round his head; and his whole appearance, as he was moving along at a solemn thoughtful pace, frequently reminded me of the servants of the Inquisition.

* See the Chronological Tables at the end of this volume.

198

NAMANTU'GU.-TUMP'ENGA.

However, his real character at the time of our first meeting was of course unknown to me, and I was delighted at having found such a man, as he held out to me the fairest prospects of reaching Timbdktu. But although I convinced myself that this man would be of great service to me, yet I did not make a bargain with him immediately, but we agreed that I should arrange with him in D6re, when he would be able to settle his own business.

The village of Namantgu is almost exclusively inhabited by Fdilbe, all of whom were clad in the purest white, even the little children wearing round their heads a large turban of white cotton strips; but this was perhaps in consequence of their festival having been held the previous day. A great deal of rain had fallen hereabouts; and cotton appeared to be cultivated to a considerable extent.

Sunday, July 10th. Our road on leaving Namantgu led through a deep clayey soil covered with rank vegetation, which was only now and then interrupted by a little cultivation. A wealthy family of Fdilbe, father, mother, son, and daughter, all mounted on horseback, and accompanied by servants and by a numerous herd of cattle, were pursuing the same path; and their company was rather agreeable to us, as after a march of about five miles, we had to cross a large sheet of water in the midst of the forest, through which they showed us the way. It is delightful for a traveler to meet with these nomadic settlers, after the disgust he has felt at the degraded character of their countrymen in Wurno. We had here entered a region full of water, the soil presenting very little inclination to afford it the means of flowing off. Farther on also, where we passed the site of a former dwelling-place, we had to cross several channels of running water, and encamped at length, after a march of about seventeen miles, in the midst of the forest close beyond another water-course; for we were not aware that about two miles farther on there was a far more favorable place for encamping, viz., the site of the former town of Tump6nga.

The site of this place we passed early the next morning. Before the time of the rising of the Jihdi, the town had been inhabited by Fdilbe and pagans indiscriminately, when, owing to the religious ferment caused by that reformer, a bloody feud broke out between the Mohammedan and pagan inhabitants. The latter were vanquished and fled to Niba, the powerful Gurma domain at some
distance toward the south, while the former founded the town of D6re. Two
dyeing-places bore testimony to the fact that

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
a certain degree of industry had formerly prevailed in this place, which, like so
many other human abodes in Christian and Mohammedan countries has been
reduced to desolation in consequence of religious disputes.
Beyond this place granite protruded in large boulders, while monkey-bread-trees
were in great abundance; but gradually the country became more open, the trees
being scanty and the soil hard and barren. This did not, however, last long, and
farther on we had to cross a considerable sheet of water surrounded by fine
pasture-grounds; then followed another very barren and open tract, till, after a
march of almost twenty miles, we reached the village of Koria, situated beyond a
broad sandy water-course, at present dry. The scarcity of herbage was here so
great that I was obliged to send two of my people back to a considerable distance
in order to procure a little grass for the horses. The head man of the village
received us very inhospitably, refusing us quarters in such a peremptory manner,
that it was only by force I could procure an open yard where to pitch my tent.
However, he soon changed his behavior entirely. It so happened that a thunder-
storm, with the blackest clouds, which in the opinion of every one portended a
heavy fall of rain, twice passed over our heads without bringing these famished
people a single drop; whereupon all of them assured the inhospitable mayor that it
was a divine punishment for his niggardly and unrighteous conduct toward me.
Frightened, therefore, by such signs, he carried his hospitality so far as even to
make me a present of a young heifer. But the first advances toward a friendly
intercourse were made by an old woman, the mistress of the piece of ground
where we had encamped, she bringing me, as a token of good-will, a dish of
well-cooked paste, which probably constituted her whole supper.
Considering the parched character of the whole neighborhood, I was surprised to
find a few dim palms at the border of the channel, while the whole neighborhood
was almost destitute of trees.

Tuesday, July 12th. A short march of a little less, than six miles, in company with
the son of the old governor, brought us from here to Dere. The country through
which we passed bore at the time the character of extreme drought and
barrenness; and numerous flocks of gazelles (quite an unusual aspect to me in the
populous districts of Kegroland through which I had passed) were roving about
over this immense plain, which was scarcely broken by a single tree, with the
exception of a few stunted monkey-bread-

DO'RE, CAPITAL OF LIBTA'KO.
trees. In the distance, toward the south, two small eminences bounded the horizon.
The remnant of a large herd of cattle, in a most emaciated condition, was scattered
in the barren fields, licking the soil, which is here full of natron. The seed had
already been sown, but the crops had scarcely started forth from the ground, and
were languishing for want of rain. Huts were occasionally seen for the first mile
or two, but being exposed to the full force of the sun, without affording the least shade, they presented rather a dismal aspect. But this immense plain, which at the present season was only very slightly broken, about half way, by a shallow strip of green bordered by projecting granite boulders, supplies abundant food for a fine breed of horses, for which Libiko is remarkable.

D6re is the chief place of the province of Libtiko; but its appearance caused us the utmost disappointment, presenting as it did unmistakable signs of misery and decay, the wall by which it had been formerly surrounded being nothing but a disgusting heap of rubbish, while the whole place exhibited the utmost neglect. But through the kind interference of a messenger of Galaijo, who was most opportunely here at the time, I was lodged in an excellent and spacious hut, measuring probably not less than thirty-five feet in diameter, and presenting a remarkable contrast to the little dirty nook which formed my quarters in Namantdg. The place is said to abound in thieves, which is not astonishing, as it is not only the rendezvous for all the natives from the different tribes which dwell in the immediate neighborhood, but even several Béru people have settled here since the inroad of Widiy.

D6re is principally a great place of resort for the Arabs of A'zawid, the district to the north of Timbiktu, who bring to this market the salt of Ta6ddnni in great quantities, and occasionally even reside here for a long time; but they generally come direct from A'zawid without touching at Timbiiktu, proceeding by way of Gigho (the ancient capital of the Songhay empire, and once the great gold-market of the western part of Negroland), or still more direct, by Tēsaye, the point where the river greatly contracts before it changes from an easterly to a southeasterly course. Some of them are very wealthy people, one individual having as many as forty camels with him. Among other important information, I received from them the news that Himed Weled Habib, the sheikh of A'rawin, who, from the account of Caiili,* is generally

* Caiili, "Travels to Timbuctoo," vol. ii. p. 82. (English version.)

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

regarded in Europe as the chief murderer of Major Laing, had died a short time before, after a reign of nearly forty years; and I regarded this piece of news as a very auspicious omen for the success of my undertaking. These Arabs left on the 17th, a circumstance not quite indifferent to me, as I was led to expect that they might carry the news of my arrival not only into the heart of the desert, but also to Timbiktu, and thus augment the difficulties of my journey. There were, however, also a good many individuals who wanted to pass themselves off for Arabs without having any claim to such a descent. Besides the Arabs, the Wingariwa, or Eastern Mandingoes, especially. from Minitna and Wissulo, the inhabitants of Mosi, and the people of G'ao6, G6gho, or G6g6, frequent this market-place in considerable numbers; and it is principally the Wingariwa who impart to this town its importance, supplying it with a small quantity of white K61a nuts, for which the consumption here seems not to be very great, besides wod'a (shells), or "ch6de," as the Fiiibe call them, which are evidently imported from the coast of Sierra Leone, or, more probably, from the
river Nuiez,* but they were entirely wanting at the time. The people of M6si bring chiefly their fine donkeys, which are greatly sought after; and a numerous body of people of the sheik A‘hudu, of Hamda-Allahi, had left a few days before with a number of asses which they had bought here. Besides asses, the people of Mdsi supply this market with gibagi, or "tri," as the Arabs near Timbaktu call them, cotton being extremely cheap in their country, so that in the great market-places of that country, especially in Kulf6la, an indigo-colored shirt is not worth more than from 700 to 800 shells.

The inhabitants of the ancient capital of the Songhay empire, afid the people thereabouts, on the banks of the Niger, bring chiefly butter and corn to market; and it was highly interesting to me to be here brought into direct communication with that place, which, although once the most celebrated and renowned in all Negroland, yet has become so completely obliterated, that its geographical position has given rise to the most contrary opinions among the learned geographers of our age.

* I may as-well state in this place, that both in D6re and in Timbufktu bargains are made according to the full hundred, or the miye sala-mfye, while in all the markets of Bdmbara a fictitious hundred, the miye 'ajemiye, being in reality eighty, forms the standard.

MARKET OF DO‘RE.
Shells formed the currency of the market, and these it was very difficult to obtain. In order to supply my wants I was obliged to sell my tirkedis for 2500 to 3000 shells each, while in the town of Say they had realized 4000, and, as I afterward found, fetched the same price in Timbaktu. Sometimes I was not able to dispose either of my tdkedfs or my tobes, even at the lowest price; while others, that I had at length succeeded in selling, were returned to me as defective. I was at considerable expense for my large household, my three horses alone (‘Ali providing for the other two) costing me every day 400 shells for the corn with which I was forced to feed them exclusively.

Almost all the corn which is brought into the market consists of negro millet, or Pennisetum typhioideum, while Indian millet, or sorghum, is found only in very small quantities; and I was repeatedly prevented from buying, because I was not possessed of what the people wanted. Thus when, on the i3th, a caravan of Twke serfs with oxen arrived bringipg corn from G6g6, they refused to accept any thing I could offer them, viz., shirts, zenne, and gibagi; and the day before I started there was no corn at all to be got, as no Trki had arrived. Not the smallest particle of rice was to be obtained; and I could not but deem myself fortunate in being able to procure a small supply of vegetable paste of dodowa, which made my food of millet a little more endurable. This formed my usual supper. In the morning I usually breakfasted on tiggera, or cold paste, with sour milk; the latter being excellent and very cheap, and almost the only article which was to be found in abundance.

But, besides the great difficulty I had in supplying my wants during my residence in the place, I had still more trouble in obtaining the currency of the country through which I had to pass on my journey to Timbdktu; this is the "fargwel," or
"feruwil," as it is called by the Arabs, a long narrow strip of cotton cloth sewn together from a number of pieces, and supposed to measure thirty-two dr'a, though in reality the measure does not exceed thirty. The price of each feruwil is generally 300 shells; but during my stay it rose to 400. The market is held on the border of the village, on the bleak open ground which extends to the south; but there were very rarely more than 500 people, and in general scarcely as many as 200 assembled. But it is not to be denied that, taking into account the manner of living in these regions, a good deal of busi-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ness is transacted in this place; and, on account of the many strangers who visit it, ready-cooked pudding, tfiggera, and sour milk are offered for sale throughout the whole day. Besides salt, cotton strips, dyed cloth, K61a nuts, corn, and asses, some copper manufactured chiefly into large drinking-vessels is also brought into the market by the people of M6si. However, I do not think they manufacture the copper vessels themselves, but bring them from Asanti. Copper is worn by the inhabitants by way of ornament, to a large extent; and I was greatly amused on observing that some of the young girls wore in the long plaits of their hair a very remarkable ornament made of that metal, representing a warrior on horseback with a drawn sword in his hand and a pipe in his mouth; for, with the Songhay people, smoking, although forbidden by the present ruler of the western part of the former territory of their empire, the fanatical prince of Hamda-Allihi, is, next to dancing, the chief enjoyment of their existence. Whether these small horsemen worn in the hair of the young damsels form an ornament without meaning, or are intended as auspicious omens as to their future husbands, I can not say; and I must apologize to the reader for not being able in this part of my journey, which was more beset by dangers, to enter fully into the private life of the people.

Altogether, D6re, or, as it is generally called by the name of the whole province, Libt-ko, appeared to me an extremely dry and uncomfortable place. However, this seemed to be rather exceptional, owing to the extraordinary drought prevailing that year; and it was not until the evening of the 17th of this month (July), that we had a moderate fall of rain, when nature as well as man appeared a little refreshed. The name which the Tawirek, as well as the Arabs of A'zawid, give to this place, namely W6ndu, or Wfnde, seems to imply quite another character, as the word means pond or lake; but, in reality, a very extensive sheet of water is annually formed close to the western side of the town, although during my stay the extensive depression was dry; and I even have ground to suppose that this sheet of water is very often, through a very considerable backwater, directly connected with the Niger.

The political state of the country, however, was at the present moment worse than its material condition. The disorder and anarchy were such as to make it appear as if there were no government at all. There were so many different factions that one par-

204 *
POLITICAL SITUATION.

alyzed the other, and there is no doubt that the present misery was the immediate consequence of such a state of anarchy. There was a titular governor of the place called Ibrahima; but his mild disposition and his advanced age had left him scarcely any power at all, and I had to make my peace with all parties as well as I could. The most energetic and influential among the aspirants to power seemed to be a relative of the governor, of the name of Hlmed 'Afsa. Then there was an elder but weaker brother of his, of the name of B6lko, and farther, a man of the name of El Jeldi, who troubled me greatly, begging me to write him a charm, by the secret influence of which I might procure him the government of the place.

Libtiko is situated between many different tribes, with the seats of the Tawirek close to the north, from whence these restless people are continually pushing on; and this situation necessarily imbues the inhabitants with a warlike spirit. In former times, especially, they were renowned for their valor, and distinguished, moreover, by the breed of their horses; but at the present moment, owing to the severe drought which had prevailed for so long a time, all the horses had been sent to a great distance, where they were likely to find better pastures. At present, there being so many factions and no strong government whatever, and the supremacy exercised by their liege lord in Gando being a perfect nullity, no certain line of policy can be pursued, and they are one day on good terms with the Tawirek, while the next day some serious fighting takes place; and thus it happened that on the 16th a party of these people, who supplied the market with the article which all the people were in want of, were plundered of the whole of their property. Even with the inhabitants of the province of Yigha, so nearly related to themselves by origin and interest, there were serious dissensions; and during my stay in the place the latter drove away all the cattle belonging to the village of K6ria. The province comprises a considerable number of villages,* and, if well governed, would be of great importance, es* The names of the small towns and villages forming this province are as follows: D6re, K6ria, Katinga, W4ndu, Dgni, Dngnadd, SM1go, Jmga, Mdmmashd, Bifadd, Pdkul, Bgnde, Babirke, Tor6di, Puld, Gimbef, Beringel, three villages of the name of Debgre, Bimira, Fadambyrga, Gebu, K61a, Bombifia, Kfcher4, Kdnde, Ldrbu, Bur4, Benbenjdgno, Kollangel-pgttdg, N61ba, Beresingo, Fdlgu, Bfili, Chompnggu (probably identical with Kampingu), U'regiudi, Gurmire, U'relangdwu, Tgka, Kilinke, YMktu, U'rltaso, U'ro-Bellhbe, Bangatike, Tobijfgha, Dankindi, Begontigi, Kdri.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

pecially as forming the western province of the empire of Gando where it borders upon that of Misina, or Hamda-Allihi.

I was peculiarly situated with regard to my new companion El Waliti, who was the sole reason of my making so long a stay in this place, while my exhausted camels, instead of having, as it was asserted, a fair opportunity of recruiting their strength for the remainder of the journey, were growing weaker every day from want of good feeding. The clever Arab, who represented himself as a very important person in Timbfipta and as an intimate friend of the Sheikh El Bakiy,
under whose especial protection I intended to place myself, at times had the power of raising my spirits by the interesting information which he was able to give me. Now and then, for instance, he described the great mercantile importance of Sansindi, or dwelt upon the great authority enjoyed by the chief, whose fame had inspired me with so much confidence in my undertaking this journey to the west, and through whose influence the former mercantile importance of Timbuktu had not only been entirely restored, but a new interest had accrued to it as being the seat of a religious chief of high authority, who exercised an influence not very unlike that of the Pope of Rome over a very large tract of country, and extending even over the pagan tribes around, into the very heart of M6si, that country which, as we shall see more distinctly farther on, from a remote age has been the champion of paganism against Islam. But, on other occasions, the conduct of my companion was so little straightforward as to fill me with serious fears. Nevertheless, I here entered into an agreement with him, giving him a fine black tobe and a black shawl, and stipulating to reward him on my safe arrival in Timbuktu with a present of twenty dollars and a white helili bernis, besides buying him here a horse for the price of another tobe, three tirkedi, and a black shawl. On the whole, at that time, I was too much imposed upon by his fascinating manners to become fully aware of his intriguing character; and perhaps it was well that it was so, or I might not have trusted myself into his hands. However, by degrees, I became heartily tired of the long delay which he, together with 'All el A'geren, forced upon me. I had long prepared every thing for my outset, and on the 20th I finished a letter, which I addressed to her majesty's consul at Tripoli, and inclosed it under cover to my friend 'Abd el Kider dan Taffa, in Sokoto, and decided on intrusting it to the care of Dahome, the man who had accompanied me from Gando, and who

LEAVE DO'RE.

was to return home from this place, beyond which he enjoyed no authority; but, unfortunately, he took so little care of the parcel on his journey, when he had to cross a great many swollen rivers, that the outer envelope was destroyed entirely, so that the learned Piillo, not knowing what to make of a letter in a writing which he did not understand, left it with the bearer, with whom I found it on my return to Gando, in the middle of the following year. He had worn it as a sort of charm in his cap, while I expected that it had long reached Europe and informed my friends of my latest proceedings.

CHAPTER LXII.

UNSETTLED PROVINCES OBSTRUCTED BY NATURE AND INFESTED BY MAN.-ARIBINDA.-HOIMBORI

Thursday, July 21st. At length I set out on the last and most dangerous stage of my journey to Timbuktu, thinking at the time that I should be able to reach that celebrated place in about twenty days; but I underrated the distance, such a very different position having been assigned to that mysterious place by geographers; and I had no idea of the difficulties which attended this journey, at least for a
Christian, and the delays which would be caused me by the character of the new companion whom I had attached to me. On leaving the turbulent town of D6re, a great many armed people accompanied me, much against my inclination, and their conduct was so suspicious that we were obliged to make a halt and send them about their business, for the inhabitants of this place, not long before, had robbed and killed in a similar manner a wealthy sherif, whom they pretended to escort on his way from Sansindi. Just in crossing the shallow concavity where every year a very extensive sheet of water is formed, which often assumes the dimensions of an immense lake, and even now was covered with fine fresh turf, we met a large caravan of M6si traders from Biissumo, their asses heavily laden with immense bundles of tvri, or cotton strips, and with K6la nuts. Farther on, where a little cultivation of cotton appeared, the monkey-bread or baobab tree became predominant. Altogether, the whole province seemed to be in a miserable state; and the village Dinand,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

which we passed after a march of about seven miles, bore evident traces of having suffered from the effects of war. The monotony of the country was pleasingly broken by a small rivulet, which we crossed a few yards beyond the village, and which was bordered by some very fine trees of the, "mur" kind, which I have mentioned on a former occasion as affording excellent timber for boatbuilding. The baobab-trees, also, were here greatly distinguished, both by their size and their fine foliage.

We took up our quarters this day in W-ulu, a village situated beyond a large sheet of water, or, as it is here called, "w6ndu," overgrown by the finest trees. The place is inhabited by Tawrek slaves; who are trilingues, speaking Temishight as well as Songhay and Fulfdde; but their huts were very miserable indeed, and of musquitoes there was no end, and we had likewise great difficulty in finding a supply of corn. The hut in which I took up my quarters had been recently built, and, on the whole, was not so bad, but so choke-full of simple furniture, such as large jars, pots, dishes, saddles, provision-bags, and numerous other articles, that I could scarcely find room for myself, while the proprietor, when he returned from the fields and found a stranger quartered in the midst of all his treasures, felt so anxious that he did not stir from the door. However, the west side of the village being bordered by a large sheet of water, or tebki, richly adorned with trees and herbage, I did not remain long in my close quarters, but hastened toward this green open spot, which was delicious in the extreme, but gave birth to a legion of musquitoes...

We felt the inconvenience of this little hamlet the more as we were obliged to stay here the following day, for we received a credible report that El Khatir, the most powerful of the neighboring Tawirek chiefs, intanted making a foray against this place, and the inhabitants were in a state of the utmost alarm. But a thunder-storm which broke out the next morning, accompanied with a considerable quantity of rain, relieved us, most providentially, of all danger from this quarter, swelling the many watercourses which intersect this region to such a degree that they became
impassable to the enemy. On the west side of the hamlet where we were encamped there is a considerable suburb of Fiilbe cattle-breeders, and in the evening a great many of them paid me a visit.

Saturday, July 23d. We had here entered a district which was very different from that which we had hitherto traversed in the province of Libtiko; and the nature of which caused us great delay and very serious difficulties, on account of the many rivers and swamps which we had to cross. During the first part of our day's march we had the W6ndu of Wfilu for a long time on our right, but having crossed without much difficulty one considerable branch of it we came to another water with a strong current, which caused us a long delay, as it was at the time about 400 yards across, and not less than four and a half feet deep in the channel. The water at this spot has a southerly course; but it is difficult to say what greater river it joins.* For several miles the upper course of this same water, as it seemed, was seen at a short distance on our right. Large wide-spread "mur," tamarind, and monkey-bread trees everywhere appeared, and we could see the footsteps of a great number of elephants.

The country on our left was undulating, and consisted of sandy soil clothed almost exclusively with the kîggo, with its ash-colored leaves and its long red pods; but as soon as the river receded the character of the landscape also changed, the surface becoming rather level, and exhibiting more small brushwood, while numerous water-pools spread out, overgrown with krîb, or the edible Poa, and with molukhfa. The district was full of buffaloes; but it was also much infested by a dangerous species of fly, which greatly tormented our animals, and which is very rarely met with in the eastern part of Negroland. We encamped, after a march of about sixteen miles, in the midst of the forest, near the site of the former encampment of a Tawirek horde, where krîb was springing up in the most luxuriant abundance, affording the richest pasture to the horses and a cheerful sight to ourselves; but we had here to sustain a very heavy rain, which lasted for several hours. Fortunately, it was not accompanied by much wind, so that my frail tent offered sufficient resistance; but the encampment was far from comfortable. The rain had at length ceased; but we had scarcely resigned ourselves to sleep, when a troop of pilgrims passing by at this unusual hour of the night roused us at once. Fortunately, the ground which we had to traverse farther on was of a rocky nature, else it would have been almost impossible to proceed after the last night's rain; but after a march of about fourteen miles we came to a very considerable sheet of water, which we crossed with extreme difficulty, and encamped close beyond in a state of entire exhaustion. The channel of the torrent itself, which had spread its inundation to a great distance, was so considerable, being at the deepest spot five
feet and a half, that it almost swamped me on my horse, besides wetting all my luggage. The place where we had encamped was a narrow open spot in the forest; but the ground was full of ants, and we were also greatly troubled by innumerable swarms of small flies which penetrated into all our clothes. Fortunately we had no rain, so that I was able to stay outside, as the heat in the tent was scarcely endurable. This day, also, we observed numerous footprints of elephants.

Monday, July 25th. We rose with the hope that we might arrive at an early hour in Aribinda, or rather the chief place of that district, although we were aware that we should have to cross another considerable sheet of water; but we were sadly disappointed, for, after a march of about three miles through a more rugged district with black and red granite and a great quantity of gneiss, we reached the wide inundations of a river called Bdgoma by my companions, which we endeavored in vain to cross. Seeing that we should not succeed here, we struck off into the forest in a southwesterly direction, in order to ford it higher up, when suddenly we fell in with two men who were pasturing a couple of asses; but, although we made signs to them that we were their friends, they would not hear us, and beating their shields cried out lustily to their companions, who all on a sudden rushed out in every direction from behind the bushes, and in a moment surrounded us. There were from 150 to 200 people, all tall slender men, half naked, with nothing but a poor ragged cloth round their loins, and another rag still poorer round their heads, and each armed with a couple of spears and a ragged shield, which they brandished over their heads with warlike gesticulations. The affair seemed rather serious, and here it was fortunate that I had such a clever companion as the Waliti with me; for, while I was pointing my gun, he begged me to ride quietly in advance straight upon those people, and at the same time cried out to them that I was a sherif, and a friend of the Sheikh El Bak6y, to whom I was carrying a number of books from the east. All of a sudden they dropped their spears and thronged around me, requesting me to give them my blessing; and the circumstances under which I was placed obliged me to comply with this slight request, although it was by no means a pleasant matter to lay my hands on all these dirty heads.

CROSSING A SWAMP.
On the whole it was very fortunate that we met with these people; for without their aid and information we should scarcely have been able to cross the water which intersected our track, at least without a most serious loss to our luggage. People in Europe have no idea what it is to travel during the rainy season in these regions; else they would not wonder that poor Dr. Vogel, in going at that time of the year from Yikoba to Ziriya, lost most of his instruments and all his collections in crossing the rivers.

They were poor people from G’6, or G6g6, and the neighborhood, a mixture, as I thought at the time, of Songhay and Tawerk, but speaking only the language of the former; but I found afterward that they belonged to the tribe of the Gab6ro, of whom I shall speak in the following volume. They had visited the market of Aribinda, and were at present on their way to D6re and Libtiko, carrying as
merchandise on a couple of asses and bull oxen nothing but cotton strips, or "tdri," rice, and a few mats, of which latter article they brought me three as a present. Having received my blessing, and the tumult having quieted down, they conducted us to a place where they declared the water to be fordable. But the boggy ground inspired us with but little confidence; and it really caused us an immense deal of trouble. My people were obliged to carry all the luggage, even the heaviest, across the swamp, which was half a mile in breadth, the camels being scarcely able to make their way, even unloaded; and I myself had the misfortune to fall under my horse in the midst of the swamp, almost as badly as had happened to me on a former occasion on my journey to Kinem. I was firmly convinced that my horse would not be able to carry me over, and that it would be the safest way to cross the bog on foot; but I allowed myself to be swayed by the Waliti, who thought that my dignity, in presence of those native travelers, absolutely required me to remain on horseback. It was on this occasion that all my journals got wet through in a most miserable way, and we had the greatest difficulty in extricating my horse from the bog, in which it was lying for some minutes as if dead.

It was almost three o'clock in the afternoon when we again set out from the opposite side of the swamp; but we had first to return along the water in a northeasterly direction, in order to regain the direct track. We then proceeded at an expeditious rate, in order to arrive at Aribinda before nightfall. A short distance before we reached our destination, the whole character of the country changed, granite mounds rising on our right and left to considerable altitude, and leaving only a narrow passage through which to proceed, the beautifully sweeping slope of the eminence on our right being pleasantly adorned with bushes and enlivened by goats.

Having left another village at the foot of the granite range, we took up our quarters in the lam6rde or residence of the chief of Aribinda, which is likewise situated at the foot of the granitic ridge, part of the huts being built on the slope, and part in the plain, the latter forming a group by itself, which, with its projecting and receding walls, formed a sort of defense, as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. Here we obtained quarters without delay, two of my people having gone in advance; but they were narrow, dirty, and uncomfortable, and appeared to us the more miserable as a great deal of rain fell during our stay here. The inhabitants belong chiefly to the Songhay race, but there are also a great many Tawirek, or rather Tawirek half-castes, who live here peaceably, though in general the Tawirek and the inhabitants of these districts are engaged in almost uninterrupted warfare with each other, the former always pushing more and more in advance and threatening to overrun the whole of this region of Negroland. The people supply themselves with water from the holes in the rocks, where it collects, their supply for the dry season being deposited in a cistern of large size. *The soil in the valley, which here widens into a considerable plain, is very fertile., and does

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

country changed, granite mounds rising on our right and left to considerable altitude, and leaving only a narrow passage through which to proceed, the beautifully sweeping slope of the eminence on our right being pleasantly adorned with bushes and enlivened by goats.

Having left another village at the foot of the granite range, we took up our quarters in the lam6rde or residence of the chief of Aribinda, which is likewise situated at the foot of the granitic ridge, part of the huts being built on the slope, and part in the

plain, the latter forming a group by itself, which, with its projecting and receding walls, formed a sort of defense, as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. Here we obtained quarters without delay, two of my people having gone in advance; but they were narrow, dirty, and uncomfortable, and appeared to us the more miserable as a great deal of rain fell during our stay here. The inhabitants belong chiefly to the Songhay race, but there are also a great many Tawirek, or rather Tawirek half-castes, who live here peaceably, though in general the Tawirek and the inhabitants of these districts are engaged in almost uninterrupted warfare with each other, the former always pushing more and more in advance and threatening to overrun the whole of this region of Negroland. The people supply themselves with water from the holes in the rocks, where it collects, their supply for the dry season being deposited in a cistern of large size. *The soil in the valley, which here widens into a considerable plain, is very fertile., and does
not require much rain; and the corn was here a little cheaper than in Libtko, one hundred shells, or rather the equiv-
212

ARIBINDA.
alent of that sum, for shells had no currency in the place, being sufficient for the daily allowance of one horse. I also observed with pleasure a very fine herd of cattle. Aribinda:* seems formerly to have been an important place, or rather province, and the most considerable at one time of all the districts on the south side of the river, so that the Songhay of G6g6 designated it Hiribinda, "the place beyond the water," which name, in a wider sense, is given to the whole country on the south of the I'sa, or socalled Niger, as an equivalent to Gurma.

I had been very anxious to conceal the more valuable articles of my property from the prying eyes of my clever but greedy Arab companion; but the following day, as I was obliged to dry some of my luggage, which had been completely soaked, he got a peep at some fine bernuises which I had with me, and, in order to satisfy his covetousness, I thought it prudent to make him here a handsome present.

Altogether my luggage suffered severely from the many water-courses which we had to cross at this stage of my journey, as well as from the excessive dampness of the weather. I also made some presents to the governor, but was rather astonished when, on setting out, he begged from me the very tobe which I was then wearing.

Wednesday, July 27th. The country which we had to traverse was diversified by small granitic ranges and detached cones, but it also afforded many localities for swampy grounds, very difficult to be crossed. In some places beans were cultivated besides millet. We encamped at length, after a march of about fifteen miles, in the midst of the forest, on the site of a former village, which was richly overgrown, with the most succulent herbage, very grateful both to horse and camel.

Thursday, July 28th. We had had some summer lightning in the evening, followed- by slight rain during the night; but about half past six o'clock in the morning a very heavy thunder-storm broke out, accompanied by violent rain, which lasted till noon, and rendered us extremely uncomfortable. My friend El Waliti, being of a weak and nervous temperament, was, as usual on such occasions, laid up with fever. In consequence of the state of the weather it was not till past three o'clock in the afternoon that we at length set out on our watery march, and afterstretch of about ten miles, having passed a very extensive and deep water, reached

* There are only three more villages at present belonging to the district of Aribfnda, their names being as follows: H6re, U’ri, and Wingard.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
the Songhay village of Ffiyo, and with extreme difficulty obtain ed most indifferent and damp quarters in the dark. The whole village is built of clay, with elevated tower-like entrances not unlike the granaries in Champag6re. It consists of several detached groups, which are separated by corn-fields, where the crops
were standing moderately high. The inhabitants belong exclusively to the Songhay race, with the exception of a few Fdlbe, who, however, have themselves almost changed their national character; and, although the village is externally subjected to the Pillo governor of Gilg6ji, or Jilg6di, nevertheless the people have a very independent demeanor, and hold in detestation the conquering tribe of the Fdlbe; even their carriage bears evident testimony to a certain feeling of liberty; and there is no end of smoking. The women wear a profusion of ornaments, while all of them are, besides, distinguished by a copper ring round the wrist.

Having arrived so late the preceding evening that the horses had even remained without food, I was obliged to stay here the next day in order to purchase a supply of corn, which I effected with the farr£Wel I had obtained in Libt~ko, consisting of eight pieces called "k6ria," or "farda," sewn together. All the grain hereabouts consists of Negro millet, or, as the Songhay call it, "h6ni." The governor of the place, who had treated me inhospitably the first evening, on being remonstrated with for his miserly conduct, gave me very generous treatment.

Saturday, July 30th. On leaving the place, I was exceedingly struck with its castle-like appearance, as well as with the fine crops of corn which surrounded it on all sides, while a rich growth of trees embellished the district to the south. It was a fine morning, and, a heavy dew having fallen, the drops of wet slipping down from the corn glistened in the rays of the morning sun, while, the monkey-bread-trees being just in full blossom, the white bell-like flowers, hanging down from the colossal branches, gave a refreshable relief to the scenery. It was through such a country that our path kept along, on a rising ground, when, after a march of about fourteen miles, and leaving a couple of hamlets built of matting, like the dwellings of the inhabitants of G6g6, on one side, we reached the Songhay town of Tfnge, built likewise in the shape of a "kasIr," and situated on the summit of a small hill.

The houses in this village have not an elevated tower-like shape like those of Filiyo, nor do they contain an upper story. They have flat roofs. The walls consist of sun-dried clay, which is form-

TfNGE.

ed in regular lumps, like stones, and is placed in uniform layers, with loose clay between. Such being the mode of construction, the whole of the houses have rather a miserable appearance from without, and more particularly so at the time of our arrival, in the hot hour of noon, when the destructive effect of the rainy season became more apparent in the midday sun. But the interior of the dwellings is not so bad, and some of them are very large and spacious, as the accompanying ground-plan of the quarters where I was lodged will serve to show. These consisted of a very spacious ante-chamber, or segifa, forty feet long by ten feet wide, and as many in height, I myself taking up the part to the right of the entrance, and my people that on the left, a sort of light wall being formed with matting. From this
ante-chamber we could pass into an irregular court-yard, which gave access to a
number of apartments where several families were living.
The inhabitants of this place are Songhay who have vindicated their liberty, up to
the present time, successfully against the restless and steadily advancing Fidlbé,
although in independence they are far behind their noble brethren in Dirgol and
those other places lower down the Niger. The indigenous name of their family is
Belegde, or, as they are called by the Fujlbe, Kurmink6be, and they are said to
have come from Zishia, near Tra. The nobler among them do not disfigure their
features at all by tattooing, or "k6rto," while some of them make an incision under
the left eye, from the nose toward the cheek-bone, and the common people three
separate incisions-three cuts on the temple, three in the middle of the cheek, and
three at the lower part of the face. All of them wear clothing, the greater part of
them being dressed in indigo-dyed shirts. Their weapons consist almost entirely of
spears. Swords are very rare; nor are the bow and arrow, which constitute the
principal weapons of the people of Dirgol, usual among them. The exertions of
the natives of these places in defending their independence are greatly favored by
the discord and dissensions which prevail among the Filbè, Mahamuidu, one of
the Fdilbe chiefs of Dalla, having, in consequence of his disputes with the Sheikh
A'hemdu, taken refuge with the pagan natives of M6si, from whence he makes
continual predatory expeditions against the territory of his countrymen the Fdilbe.
The inhabitants of Tinge, therefore, males as well as females, enjoy their lib-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

erty and independence in smoking the whole day long, and dancing every evening
when it is not raining, an amusement which already, in the eleventh century, the
Andalusian geographer El Bekri did not fail to remark as characteristic of these
people,* while their less happy brethren in Timb-dktu and Jimbilla have been
deprived of these, their favorite and innocent amusements, by the austere laws of
their fanatical oppressors.
The natives are industrious, both in cultivating the ground and in weaving; and
these habits seemed to be favored by Providence, so that, while all the
neighboring districts were suffering from dearth and famine, in this village corn
was plentiful, especially negro millet, or "h6ni." Indian millet, "siba" or "hime,"
was rather scarce. But the corn was still in seed, and not pounded, so that we were
obliged to stay here again a day in order to have a supply prepared for us. We
bought our corn in the beginning for the farriwel which we had brought from
Libtkko, but after a little while the inhabitants refused to accept of this cotton,
which is not so good as their own manufacture. The cotton which I had brought
from Gando was much better than theirs, but it did not please them on account of
the narrowness of the strips. My English darning-needles were, however, very
acceptable, as being exceedingly well adapted for the coarse texture of their
woolen shawls and blankets. Fifty of them fetched here a price equal to the value
of a Spanish dollar; but the small common needles were regarded by them with
the utmost contempt.
I employed my time, as far as the rainy weather would allow me, in taking a walk
through the country; and I was not a little surprised when I found that the ground
hereabouts, particularly toward the west, was very rocky, the corn being sown in the intervening patches of arable soil. On a rising spot a few hundred yards from the village, there was a group of matting huts, which constituted a small weaving manufactory. At the foot of the hill on which the village was situated there was a deep pond covered with Pistia Stratiotes, like the ponds in the interior of Kan6; and it was from here that I was particularly struck by the fort-like appearance of the village, with its receding and projecting angles, and its half-circular bastion-like walls in other places, as represented in the accompanying wood-cut; while in the distance the mountain groups formed an interesting background. However, * El Bekri, "Description de l'Afrique," Arabe texte, published by Macguckin de Slane, p. 183.

HEAVY RAINS.

we had here such a heavy fall of rain that I was obliged to sacrifice another day, as the roads were rendered totally impassable. The rain which fell in the afternoon of the last day of July was of such violence that a fourth part of the houses in the town suffered more or less; and in one dwelling, which was totally destroyed, eleven goats were killed, while the inmates themselves had only just time to escape. It was discovered that just life enough remained in these poor animals in order to enable their owners to perform the essential ceremony of cutting their throats, for they also have a touch of Islam.

In the beginning of this my journey to the west I had been very anxious to move on as fast as possible, in order to avoid the worst part of the rainy season; but, seeing that all was in vain, I had become in a certain degree indifferent to the loss of time; but when the first of August broke upon me in this village I became deeply concerned, and wrote in my journal: "May the Almighty bless this month, and lighten the difficulties which stand in my way, that before its close I may safely reach the place of my destination!"

It was most interesting to observe from the top of the hill the uninterrupted sheet of water which, after the immense quantity of rain that had fallen, was spreading out over the low grounds in the plain; and the people themselves whose dwellings had suffered so much, and which were just about to undergo the necessary repairs, were standing gazing with delight upon the deluge which promised to them a very rich crop. My clever Arab from the west lay almost dead with fever; but the head man of the town, whose name was A'bu-Bakr, a man of very stately appearance, was of rather a communicative disposition, so that with his assistance I was able to make considerable progress in my knowledge of the Songhay language; and, if I had been able to go on in this way, I might soon have mastered the language; but unfortunately my situation became too unsettled in the sequel to allow of a quiet course of study; to say nothing of the fact that the extremely poor character of the language itself completely damped my enthusiasm.
I here first discovered the error of Cailli6 in giving to the people of Timb-dktu the name of "Kissir," or, as he writes, "Kissour," which is evidently nothing but a mistake, "ki-s6ri," or rather "kisonghi," "ki-songhay," meaning the language of the Songhay. I here also became aware of the fact that this idiom is originally monosyllabic, while I observed likewise that the language spoken in A'gades, of which I had made a vocabulary, though evidently a dialect of the same idiom, had been affected to a great extent by the influence of the Tem6shight, or Berber.

Tuesday, August 2d. We at length set out to pursue our journey, which now became full of danger, as we had to traverse the province of Dalla, which is ruled by a governor in direct subjection to the fanatical chief of Mdsina residing in Hamda-Allihi, who would never allow a Christian to visit his territory. I was therefore obliged to assume the character of an Arab. Just at that time a change in the government of this district had taken place, *a young inexperienced lad having succeeded to the former ruler. Fortunately, there had been no rain the afternoon of the preceding day, so that the country had dried up a little from the inundation of the last of July, and the weather was fine and genial. Thus cheerfully proceeding on our road, we met several people on their way to the town with fowls and milk; for during our stay in Tfnge the communication with the neighboring places had been entirely interrupted by the heavy rains. A'bu-Bakr escorted me to some distance, when he left me with a hearty wish for the success of my undertaking, and begged me urgently to be on my guard. In taking here quite a northerly direction we now entered a province where the population of the F-dlbe entirely prevails, and this day we had passed several encampments of Fulbe cattle-breeders on our route, consisting of oblong oval-shaped huts,

DE'SHI.
constructed of matting. Cattle seemed to abound; but the cultivation of the ground was rather scanty, and the character of the country uniform, and without any interesting features, the trees consisting almost exclusively of talha and homgd. We had also to cross a river, at present about 200 yards wide and two feet deep, which the preceding day had evidently been impassable and had carried away several head of cattle, a fact we learned from a Pillo neatherd whom we passed on our road, as he was cheerfully stalking before his cattle, and leading them along merely by the sound of his voice.

Thus, after a march of about thirteen miles, having crossed a swamp and left a larger sheet of water on our left, we reached a miserable hamlet called Dshi, belonging still to the district of Ksene (which comprises Ffliyo), and consisting of several groups of half-decayed clay dwellings inhabited by poor Songhay people, who appeared to be greatly oppressed.

It was with some difficulty that we here obtained quarters; and we had the misfortune of falling into a dispute with the landlord, on account of the many dogs which beset his house, and would not cede their place to us. This was a certain proof that the natives were not far advanced in Isldm, as the Mohammedans in general are averse to the company of this unclean animal, and the Filbe very rarely make use of dogs even for watching their numerous herds of
cattle. Most of these dogs were of black color, and almost all the fowls were of black and white color. I here also observed that the native women carried the water in a pair of buckets slung across the shoulder, as I had remarked already in other Songhay places; but here also they did not wear nose-rings.

The country around was well cultivated, and produced especially sorghum; but the harvest of the preceding year had not been a favorable one, as was the case almost all over the country, so that dearth was prevailing.

We here met with a party of native traders from Hombori, with oxen laden with salt, who gave us some useful information with regard to the road before us. It had been a point of great dispute with us whether or not we should visit that town, one of the most ancient settlements in Negroland, probably already mentioned as an independent place by El Bekri,* and forming the seat of a governor in the palmy days of the Songhay empire, the Hombori-koy, and where even now a considerable market is held; but after mature consideration we had thought it better to leave it on one side, as on account of the considerable intercourse of people in that place, and the many Arabs who frequent it, the danger of my true character being there discovered was the greater.

Notwithstanding our determination not to touch at Hombori, on setting out the following day, after an almost sleepless night, owing to the number of mosquitoes, we preserved an entirely northerly direction. There was a good deal of cultivation round the village, consisting of Indian and negro millet, the crops being almost ripe. But I here met again that great annoyance to the husbandman, the black worm "h6lowes," my old acquaintance in Bagirmi, which I had not seen in the whole intervening country, and which causes an immense deal of damage to the crops. The ground was rocky in many places; but this did not prevent the growth of the monkey-bread-tree, which is often seen shooting forth from between the very rocks. Farther on I also observed a little cultivation of beans, while the black worm was succeeded by large heaps of the small red worm which I had first observed on the banks of the river Sfrba, and which seems to be a terrible nuisance to many of these districts. Gradually the road became more swampy, while we obtained a distant view of the detached mountains of Rombori.

About three o'clock in the afternoon, five of our party, riding a little in advance of the camels, approached the town of Kibo, when, being observed by some of the inhabitants, our appearance created a great alarm in the place, the people thinking that a hostile troop was approaching; but as soon as they beheld our laden camels their fears ceased, and they gave us quarters. Kibo is the first place of the district called T6ndi, or el Hajri (meaning the mountainous or stony district), while Ffliyo and D6shi belong to the district called Ksine; but in a political respect Kdbo belongs now to the province of Dalla, which at present is governed by the son of M6di B6le; it is two days and a half distant from the town of Hombori,* and is a place of some importance. The
place was situated west of Ghana, while in reality it was east, yet on the other hand, it is very remarkable that the distance of nine days between Ambdra and Kdokia, or Ktigha, agrees exactly with that between Hembori and the latter place.

* A person starting from Kbo sleeps the first night in the forest, halting about 'aser; the second day, before noon, he reaches Tendert4 probably so called from

KU'BO.-THE DISTRICT TO'NDI.

houses are usually well built, and consist of clay, the greater part of them including a tolerably large court-yard. Our house also was spacious; but on account of my heavy luggage I was obliged to take up my quarters in the open segifa, or ante-chamber, which was greatly exposed to musquitoes. In front of my quarters there was a handsome square of tolerably regular shape, and toward the north a considerable tank spread out, along which led the path into the fields: for, the whole place being situated in a depression of the ground, all the moisture of the neighbourhood collects here.

The village is surrounded by a light stockade of two rows of bushes, and round about the place there are several ponds of water. Turtles are very common here, and the soil swarms with ants. The place was tolerably well provided with corn, and I bought here twenty mudd for one hundred dr'a of Gando cotton strips, equal in reality to nine hundred shells, but the mudd of Kiibo is smaller than that of Tinge, being about two thirds of its size, and in the form of a round dish, while that of Tinge is like a pitcher. The daily allowance of corn for a horse cost about one hundred shells.

A very heavy thunder-storm, accompanied with violent rain, broke out in the evening; and the clayey soil of the country which we had to traverse obliged me to stay here the following day. The delay caused me great disappointment, as the spreading of the news of my journey could not fail to increase its difficulties, and the more so as we heard here the unpleasant tidings that the Governor of Dalla himself was near, and that most probably we should fall in with him.

Meanwhile I was applied to by our host and a cousin of his to decide a dispute between them as to the chieftainship of their village; but of course I referred them to their own liege lord, and they started off to join him near the village of Ddina; but their absence did not expose us to inhospitality, as we were very lavishly treated with numerous dishes of Indian corn, which, however, were rendered less palatable by the use of the dodowabosso, or, the adulterated dodowa; we also received a good supply of milk. I even bought a few fowls, though they were rather dear, selling for one hundred shells each—a price here reckoned equal to two darning-needles.

being situated on or at the foot of a mountain; and the third day, about nine o'clock in the morning, he arrives at Hembori.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Friday, August 5th. There had been another heavy rain in the afternoon of the preceding day, but, fortunately, it had not been of sufficient duration to render the
roads impassable. There was a great deal of indecision with my companion El Waliti as to the route which we should pursue; and while it almost seemed from our northerly direction as if up to this moment he had intended to take me to H6mbori, notwithstanding his former protestations against such a proceeding, he now pretended it was necessary that we should go to Dina, and we accordingly changed our course to the west, or rather W.S.W., steering about like a vessel with contrary winds. There can be no doubt that all this time the crafty Arab himself was hesitating as to the course which he should take, and this was evidently the reason of his great delay, as he probably thought that he might have a chance of getting rid of me, and taking possession of my property; but we did not become aware of this treacherous conduct till we arrived at the place of our destination, when we learned how providentially we had escaped all his wiles.

At the western end of the village of Kilbo there is a suburb of F6lbe cattle-breeders, consisting of about sixty large huts of reed. As soon as we had left this place behind us, we were quite horrorstruck at observing all the paths full of those small red worms which I have mentioned before, marching in unbroken lines toward the village; even my servants were quite surprised at such a spectacle, having never before seen any thing like it, and they gave vent to their feelings of astonishment, and, at the same time, of commiseration for the natives, in reiterated exclamations of "Wolla, wolla!" I am not acquainted with the reason of this curious phenomenon, but it seems peculiar to this region. Yet the ground was not quite barren, and was even sprinkled with violets here and there, the surface being undulating, not unlike the sandy downs of Kinem, the parallel of which country, namely about 150 of northern latitude, we had here reached. Proceeding thus we reached, after a march of about four miles, a higher point, from whence we had a view over a wide expanse of underwood, broken only now and then by a baobab-tree, while toward the north some of the detached cones of the H6mbori range gave to the landscape a very singular feature, the isolated eminences of the range (if range it can be called) starting up from the plain in the most peculiar forms, as the accompanying wood-cut will show.

222

NATIVE DWELLINGS. 223
We passed the site of a former place, but at present there were only nomadic encampments of Fdlbe cattle-breeders, with herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, and only little cultivation was to be seen. The dwellings in a hamlet which we passed a little farther on were of a very irregular description, corresponding to the corn-stacks which we had left on one side a little before, as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. All the children here, even those of the F~lbe, were quite naked. My companion, El Waliti, wanted to obtain quarters in this place; but fortunately the huts proved too bad, and we moved on, another hamlet, which we passed a little farther on, being of a still worse description. On passing several parties of Fuilbe travelers on our road, I was surprised at the change in the form of compliments, the mode of saluting having been the last few days "bardijo," but to-day we met some parties who saluted us with the well-known compliment "f6fo," a word which, although probably of western origin,
has been even admitted into the Hiusa language, with the meaning of general well-wishing. Thus we proceeded cheerfully onward, having crossed a very difficult boggy ground, where I almost lost one of my camels, till, a little after two o'clock in the afternoon, we reached the poor village of Dina, consisting of three detached groups of huts, one of which, with its high tower-like granaries with a pointed roof of thatch, presented a very remarkable spectacle. As for myself, I obtained quarters in an isolated hut of rather indifferent description.

The first news which I learned here, and which was far from being agreeable, was that the governor of Dalla with his camp was at a short distance, and in the very road which we had to pursue the following day; and as, in consequence, it would have been highly imprudent to endeavor to pass him unnoticed, I determined to send two of my men to him with a present, while I pursued my journey with the rest of my people. But as this governor was a vassal of the chief of Hamda-Allihi, who, if he had heard that I was" a Christian, would probably have thrown great difficulties in my way, and perhaps not allowed me to proceed at all, I was not without great anxiety, and passed a sleepless night; and the crowd of people who had come out from the camp on the news of a distinguished stranger having arrived, and who completely surrounded me on my setting out, was far from agreeable. At length we started, traversing a district of red sandy soil, and overgrown with scanty herbage, while a considerable extent of ground was under cultivation, without, however, promising a rich harvest, the crops being rather thin and of poor quality; and we had only proceeded a short distance when we observed such enor-mous quantities of the red worm as we had never seen before, not even near K-6bo, forming large heaps, from which long and unbroken lines were seen moving eastward.

After a march of two miles, we reached the half-decayed and deserted village called Nyanga Segga, where the governor of Dalla was encamped. But, as if he had expected my coming, he and all his people had mounted. I had sent El Waldti and 'All to present my compliments to him; but when I was pursuing the right track, all the horsemen came up to me requesting me to give them my blessing; and they so urgently entreated me at the same time to pay my respects personally to their chief, that I could not resist their request. But it almost seemed as if El Waldti had in some way or other compromised himself by his ambiguous conduct; and when I approached the emir, who was very simply dressed, the former quite forgot the part which he had to play, and casting a wild look at me, requested me to withdraw in such a manner as greatly to increase the danger of my situation. Deeming it better not to enter into a dispute with this man under such circumstances, I retreated as soon as I had complimented the chief, pursuing my track, but I was followed by several horsemen who were rather troublesome than otherwise. The governor of Dalla is said to be more powerful than even that
of Gilgôji, with whom he is in an almost continual state of feud, as is the case with nearly all these petty chiefs, although they are all the vassals of one and the same liege lord. This man, however, was to become of remarkable interest to me; for I was soon to meet him again under very altered circumstances, when, from being an object of fear to myself he was obliged to sue for my protection, as will be seen in the sequel.

The country hereabout presented a sandy level mostly clad with acacias, and especially with a kind called 4rria. About eight miles beyond Nyanga Segga the ground became swampy; and after a march of about two miles more we reached the fields of Mundôro, or rather their site, for in the present desolate state of the country they were not under cultivation at the time. Here the soil consisted of deep white sand adorned with large baobab-trees, while parallel on our right at the distance of about 500 yards a range of sand-hills stretched along, overtopped in the distance by an imposing cone belonging to the Hômbori mountains. Thus reaching at last cultivated ground, where the crops, however, were still very scanty and in a neglected state, we entered a little after two o'clock the deserted village of Mundôro, which till recently had been a considerable town, consisting of a small kasr-like place, of dwellings built of clay and with very pointed thatched roofs, similar to those represented above, and an open suburb of spacious cottages, consisting of thatch-work of a very peculiar shape as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. With the exception of about a dozen people the place was quite deserted, the former chief, Mahamidu, having fallen into disgrace with the governor of Dalla, and sought refuge with the inhabitants of Mdsi, from whence he carried on a continual series of expeditions against his kinsmen. Fortunately, we were accompanied by a trooper of the governor of Dalla, who took great care in supplying us with necessaries. All the huts were very spacious, but the thatching was not of very accurate workmanship, and the humidity which entered my hut in the course of the night, when we experienced a violent thunder-storm with very heavy rain, was considerable; but keeping up a large fire during the whole of the night I felt tolerably comfortable, although the greater part of my hut was under water.

Sunday, August 7th. Taking now a N.N.W. course, we again approached nearer the mountains of Hômbori, which for several days we had already observed in the distance on our right; but after leaving Kfibô, owing to our curious zigzag traveling, we had again turned off from them entirely; and when we left the village of Mundôro it seemed even as if we were almost to retrace our steps, for we followed a direction a little E. from N. while ascending through cultivated ground, till after a march of three miles we reached the highest point of this tract, which presented to us a highly interesting view of the mountains, or rather the detached eminences of the Hômbori range (which is represented on page 229), isolated cones starting forth from the plain in the most grotesque and fanciful forms.
Here we began to descend through an undulating sandy tract where the acacia predominated, only interrupted now and then by a single baobab-tree. Having passed a pond of stagnant water

I'SAYE', OR rSE'.
we gradually began to turn a little westward from N., the country improving till we reached the fields of I'say6, or I's, a place of some importance, consisting, as the villages in this neighborhood generally do, of a nucleus of clay houses remarkable only on account of its peculiar tower-like granaries, and a suburb of cottages of thatch-work, but of the most varied shape, several of which are represented in the wood-cut on the following page; and here we took up our quarters. As for myself, I obtained a large, excellent hut, with however this great defect - that the lower part of the thatching was so thin and fail that a heavy shower would have swamped the whole, but for a small channel which was carried all round the inner part of the wall.

II
I felt greatly exhausted in consequence of the constant humidity to which I was exposed, and was neither able to enjoy the hospitable treatment which was shown me, nor even to get rest at night, although I changed my couch repeatedly in order to obtain some repose. But as we remained here the following day, I had sufficient leisure to become fully acquainted with the distinguishing features of this place; and I made a sketch (which has been represented in the plate opposite) of the village, together with an extensive pond from which the natives at this season of the year get their supply of water, and the picturesque castellated mountains of H6mbori in the background.
The place is populous, and inhabited by Songhay and Fdlbe conjointly, the latter of whom belong to the tribe called JMlobe, and are in possession of large herds of cat-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
tie and numerous flocks, while the native Songhay seem to be poor and rather badly off. As strict Mohammedans they have the custom of wearing silver rings on their little finger, which they fancy obtains favor for them when saying their prayers. A good deal of industry was apparent; but corn was very dear, although cheap. er than it was said to be farther on where no corn was to be obtained except in Niiggera; and I was glad to buy a small quantity of grain, the mudd for four dr'a of very broad cotton strips, while sixteen dr-a of Gando cotton strips were esteemed equal to ten dr'a of their own. Cowries, or "ch6de," had no currency here, except for buying sour milk, of which there was a good supply. On account of the numerous pools which surround the place, it was infested by niusquitoes, which deprived me of what was most valuable to me - a good night's rest.
Tuesday, August 9th. There were two roads before us through the unsettled country to the north, where at present there are no towns, but only temporary encampments of the Tawirek or Im6shagh, who are now in possession of the country adjacent to the banks of the great river to a considerable extent—one road leading in a more northerly direction to Lgro, and the other in a northwesterly one to B6ne; and although the guide whom we had taken with us from Mund6ro assured us that we should not find in B6ne either quarters or hospitality, my friend El Waliti for some reason or other preferred the latter route, and we had to make rather a long day's journey in the weakened state to which we ourselves and our animals were reduced. But the march was highly interesting, on account of the peculiar nature and the picturesque shape of the several detached cones of the H6mbori mountains, through the midst of which our way led. It would have been impossible, from the information which I had gathered from the natives, to form a correct idea of the character of the chain, which I had thought far more elevated and continuous: the high-

HO'MBORI MOUNTAINS.
est elevation which some of the cones reach does not appear to be more than 800 feet above the plain.

In the beginning the appearance of the country was more uniform, while the mountains, covered by the rising ground on our right, looked like mere hills, our track itself lying through a more level country, sometimes covered with underwood, and at others presenting a bleak open ground, or "ngga," but the interest of this scenery increased considerably when we reached the western foot of a broader mound which had already attracted our attention the day before. On a sloping ground, consisting of rubbish and boulders, there rose a wall of steep cliffs like an artificial fortification, forming, as it seemed, a spacious terrace on the top, where there are said to be three hamlets, inhabited by a spirited race of natives, who, in this rocky retreat, vindicate their independence against the overbearing intrusions of the F-ilbe. We even observed on the slope under the steep cliffs, where there are several caverns, some people pasturing their sheep, while fields of negro corn and karis, or Corchorus olitorius, testified to the fact that the natives sometimes descend even into the very plain to satisfy their most necessary wants. After passing this mound, and following a more northwesterly direction, we approached another mound, rising from the plain like an isolated cone, and, with its steep, nar-

TRAVELS IN AFRiCA.
row, and rugged crest, looking exactly like the ruin of a castle of the Middle Ages. Leaving this mound, together with the path leading to the Songhay town of Lgro on our right, we approached the southern foot of another castellated mound, which stretched out to a greater length, but offered in its rugged and precipitous cliffs exactly the spectacle of crenellated walls and towers. Where the foot of the mound juts out into the path on the top of the offshoots, the inhabitants of the mountain had erected a small chapel, or rather a place for pagan worship, which presented a very peculiar appearance. Here we entered a sort of broad defile,
formed between this castellated mound and another cone toward the west, which, although of considerable elevation, was not so rugged, and exhibited a less picturesque appearance.

Greatly fatigued by our long march, especially as a cool breeze in the morning was followed by an oppressive heat in the noonday hours, we reached, at about five o'clock in the afternoon, the Foulbe village of B6ne, situated at the foot of the eastern mound; but, although I had sent two of my people in advance, we were unable to obtain quarters, and after some unavailing dispute we were obliged to encamp outside in the open grassy vale between the two mountains; for the inhabitants of this village, who are exclusively Foulbe, do not like strangers to enter their dwellings.

VISIT A TAWA'REK ENCAMPMENT. 235

The however treated us in the evening with a good supply of milk, while they also informed us that a large encampment of that section of the Tawirek which is called Iregeniten was at a few miles' distance. El Waliti supposed, or rather pretended to suppose, that they were the clan of a powerful chief of the name of Somki, and assured me that it would be necessary to make this chief a handsome present, in order that under his protection we might proceed safely from camp to camp till we reached the banks of the Niger; for, although we might have traveled by a more southerly road turning from this point westward to Niiggera, it seemed more prudent to endeavor to get out of the range of the dominion of the Foulbe, in order not to be at the mercy of the chief of Hamda-Allihi, who certainly could not but be hostile to my intention of reaching Timbidktu. And it seems not to be out of place to mention here that this very Niiggera, a hamlet of some note, as being the residence of learning and holiness, was the point from which the founder of the dynasty of Hamda-Allihi started.

CHAPTER LXIII.
IMO/SHAGH OR TAWA'REK ENCAMPMENTS SOUTH OF THE NIGER.
-LAKES AND BACKWATERS OF THE GREAT RIVER.

Wednesday, August 10th. In conformity with our project, I myself, with El Waliti and two of my people on horseback, leaving my luggage behind with the rest of my servants, started in the morning for the camp of the Tawirek, having provided a very handsome present, consisting of a large Nipe tobe, a red cap, a t-irkedi, and three fine "h-f" or "lithim," altogether worth about 20,000 shells. However, we had only proceeded about a mile when we met a few Tawirek serfs, who informed us that it was not Somki, but another chief who had moved his encampment to this place; and, from what I observed, I concluded that El Waliti had been well aware of this before, but wanted only to extort from me a large present. Once in the hands of this crafty Arab, I had to use great discretion in order to prevent him from betraying me altogether, and I was obliged to bear silently any little trick which he might play me in order to enrich himself, as long as I proceeded onward and approached the object of my arduous
undertaking. We therefore moved on, and, soon leaving the mountains behind us, after a march of about eight miles through a plain covered with dense underwood, reached the encampment of the Tawgrek.

This was a very important stage of my journey. Having with the greatest difficulty and danger crossed the wide open country of the other more easterly tribes of the Tawirek on the setting out of our expedition, and heartily glad to have got rid of them, I here once more entered their territory, and delivered myself up into their hands without enjoying the protection of a single powerful chief, and guided solely by the advice of that crafty man whose only purpose was to get from me as much as possible. The encampment consisted of leather tents of larger or smaller size, but it evidently belonged to a chief without great power, as seemed to be apparent from the total absence of camels and horses. However, I immediately conceived a favorable impression of the muscular strength and dexterity of these people; for when we approached the tent of the chief, who was sitting inside upon his couch of reeds, he with a single jerk jumped out and suddenly stood upright before us. Of course the tent was open in front, but, nevertheless, it appeared to me a great gymnastic feat, especially taking into account the lowness of the entrance, as in jumping out he had to stoop at the same time. Without delay a smaller tent was placed at our disposal, and we made ourselves comfortable.

The tents, "6he" (pl. dhgnnan), consist of a large round piece of leather formed of a great number of smaller sheep-skins cut in quadrangular pieces and sewed together, while the borders of the whole are left purposely very irregular, in order to pass the stalks which describe the outward circle of the tent through the projecting corners. These skins are spanned over three pairs of poles, the middle pair of considerable elevation, the remaining two not so high, and one of them, on the right of the entrance, being forked, as represented in the following wood-cut, although, as far as I have become aware, the middle poles are not always the same, in some tents both joining at the top, in others seeming to stand apart. The whole character of these tents will be still better understood from the plate representing the Tawgrek encampment at Amalôlle in a subsequent part of this volume.

In such a tent there are generally two couches, or divans, called "teshggit," made of a fine species of reed, and raised about a foot

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

TAWA'REK COMFORTS.

from the ground; for these people generally choose the most swampy places for their encampments, and after a thunder-storm are sometimes to be found in the midst of a lake. They are also not wanting in comforts; and on every couch there is a leather pillow, "adafhr," which certainly seems very essential, as it would be most uncomfortable to rest the elbow on the uneven and hard surface of these reed couches. Almost all the furniture of these simple people, besides a few wooden bowls for eating and drinking, consists of leather bags of excellent workmanship and sometimes very tastefully ornamented, as will be shown farther on in the volume. In these they stow away their clothes as well as their provisions, and
during the night they surround the whole tent with very neat mattings of a fine
species of reed, so that a tent of this description forms quite a comfortable
dwelling.
Although our host was evidently not one of the first-rate chiefs, he, as well as his
kinsfolk and friends who came to visit us, had a very noble and prepossessing
appearance, being rather broadshouldered, stout, and well knit, with a pleasing
expression of countenance and a fair skin, though there were a few among them
who, with their coarse features and their dark skin, bore testimony to the
deterioration of the Berber blood. We had scarcely made ourselves comfortable,
when we were treated with large quantities of fresh and sour milk, while a fat
sheep was slaugh-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
tered and prepared for our supper, but without any additional food, these people
living almost entirely on meat and milk.
Of course I had to make a handsome present to my new friends, consisting of a
fine black tobe, a t-irkedf, and a black harim; but I doubt very much whether my
friend El Waliti gave them these articles as a present from me, or whether he sold
them as his own. However, be this as it may, I wanted not only their protection,
but their assistance, too, as my camels were so weakened by the continual
humidity to which they were exposed, that they were not fit to carry my luggage
any farther. But, besides, as we had to pass the seats of these lawless tribes, we
had to grope our way as well as possible from one encampment to the other, so
that we wanted guides; and it was therefore arranged that, hiring a couple of pack-
oxen at this place, we should join this tribe the following morning, when they
would take us on our way to the chief, Somki. The mountainous district, in the
direction of Ndiggera, had the following appearance at its termination.
On returning from this encampment to Bdne, being misled by by a man who
professed to know the district, which for the most part consists of swampy gound,
we fell into a dangerous bog, and made our way with great difficulty. We were
also visited by a very heavy thunder-storm in the evening, which swamped the
whole country, killed one of my camels, and rendered our night's rest very
uncomfortable. In consequence of this violent rain our road the next day, on our
way to the Tawgrek, was very bad, and we had great difficulty in avoiding the
swamps; but I was rewarded by the picturesque aspect of the scenery, a rich
cascade rushing down over the steep cliffs of the mountain from a height of about
two hundred feet, and forming at the bottom a powerful torrent, which swept
along through a fine border of vegetation in the direction of Bëne. The poor
independent inhabitants of that mountain had left their stone cottages and caves
on the slope of

ENCAMP NEAR THE TAWA'REK.
the steep cliffs, and were busy, after the fertilizing rain, with the labors of the field
in their limited grounds, clearing them of the weeds. The crops promised well,
and had a healthy appearance. When we disturbed these poor people in their
labors, they retired behind the safeguard of their Cyclopean rocks, and stared at us with great curiosity, the unusual appearance of our whole train causing them a great deal of dismay; and it was in vain that we endeavored by our gestures to persuade them to continue their labors, as they did not understand us, while we were greatly pleased to observe that, although pagans, they were decently clad with neat aprons of cotton round their loins.

Having at length joined our friends of yesterday, we pitched our linen tents, which greatly attracted their attention, at some distance from their leather dwellings, and were soon beset by numbers of the fair sex, some of whom were distinguished by their plumpness, especially by that peculiar feature called "teb61loden," which I mentioned on a former occasion; but I was forced to frighten these fair visitors away, as, in consequence of the last day's thunder-storm, I felt very unwell, and was obliged to have recourse to an emetic. As for the men, their dress consisted throughout of a short shirt with short open sleeves, made of a coarse kind of broad cotton strips, only a few young lads, sons of the chief, wearing also here in the encampment blue-dyed shirts, with a patch of red clot, to adorn the large breast-pocket. Their head-dress was likewise very poor, consisting not of a whole shawl, harim or tesfigemist, but of single cotton strips of various colors, blue, red, white, and of the mixed kind called "shaharfye," sewed together, only a few of them being able to add a strip of red cloth: for, altogether, these Tawgrek are very fond of a variety of colors, a feature already observed by that most excellent geographer El Bekri,* and never leave the manufactured shirts of Nipe and Husa as they receive them, with the exception of a few of the greatest chiefs, who pride themselves in possessing a whole shirt of that kind. Owing to the swampy character, of the neighborhood, which produced countless hosts of musquitoes, and to the number of hyenas, which frightened the cattle repeatedly, I passed a restless and sleepless night.

Friday, August 12th. I was now in the hands of the Tawirek, and my crafty Arab companion was enabled to take full advantage of my dangerous situation. For, on the one hand, it had become necessary to represent me to these simple people as a great sherif; and thus to excite their hospitable feelings, while at the same time he instigated me to reward their treatment in a generous manner, but nevertheless sold my presents to them as his own property. It required a great deal of patience and forbearance on my part to bear up against the numerous delays in this part of our journey, and to endure the many tricks played upon me by the treachery of my companion, in order to prevent at least his proceeding to open violence. In this encampment he bartered the horse which I had bought for him at Libtko, for seven fat and powerful bulls, which, in Timbuktu, probably might fetch from 8000 to 10,000 shells each. This business being at length settled, and the whole encampment breaking up, we proceeded onward. The men were mostly mounted on horses of a

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.


239
small unsightly breed, but well adapted to bear fatigue, while the women were sitting astride on their household furniture, which was packed on oxen and asses. Proceeding thus slowly onward, our friends encamped about a mile from their former resting-place, or "Amazigh," close beyond an extensive meadow-water which caused the young herbage to spring up all around, and full of holes, thus creating frequent delay.

Continuing, then, our journey alone and ascending higher ground, where a little cultivation was being carried on by the slaves of the nomadic tribe which at present have taken possession of these grounds, and passing another encampment, we reached, after a march of about eight miles, the camp where we were to make another halt. It was situated in an open tract of ground called Imeggel6, adorned only by a few stunted talha-trees, while at some distance to the south a flat vale spread out, clothed with a greater profusion of vegetation, and affording rich pasture to numerous flocks of sheep and goats. The whole tract forms a sort of irregular valley, bordered toward the north by a hilly chain of slight elevation, and toward the west by a cluster of flattopped cones.

The camp was governed by three different chiefs, called Sftina, Jwi, and Fer6fer6, the latter being a man of a very powerful frame. Several small presents were necessary to satisfy them all. Besides, as the two pack-oxen which I had hired the day before were to return from this place, I had to buy here two animals myself; and I had great difficulty, in the course of the following

PACK-OXEN.

day, in concluding a bargain: but I at length succeeded in buying one bull, with a tobe worth here 6000 shells, and a tirkedf of inferior quality worth 2000; and a second one, with three hf worth 4000, together with a tirkedf worth 3500. This was not, however, their real value, but the price fixed by El Waliti, who had himself a profit of at least fifty per cent. He also was the sole cause of my being detained here so long, as he wanted to sell the mare which he had brought with him from Bulhnga; for horses constitute the chief article of trade with these people, and small Fdlbe traders, or rather Jawdnbe or Zoghordn, visit them continually, bringing horses from Soffira and the country of Biirgu, where the best animal fetches not more than about 30,000 shells, and bartering them with these people for cattle, and the first evening of our arrival a numerous troop of these native traders arrived. It was here that I observed, for the first time, some of the Tawirek clad entirely in shirts made of leather, which they are skillful in preparing.

Sunday, August 14th. The bargaining being at length concluded, we got ourselves in readiness to pursue our journey, when a violent thunder-storm, gathering from the north, kept us back till nearly noon. We at length set out; but the recently-bought animals were so intractable that we only moved on at a very slow pace. We had first to retrace our steps a little to the eastward, in order to cross the hilly chain which separated us from the sandy downs along the Niger; and had then to descend a very steep sandy slope, which brought us into an irregular valley, with the mountains of Dalla forming a conspicuous object toward the west. Having
then turned round a mountain spur, which stretched out into the plain on our right, we reached the encampment of B616, a powerful chief of the degraded tribe of the llaw-n-ddak. His exterior had nothing of that noble appearance which so eminently distinguishes the higher class of these wild tribes, as he was of VOL. III.-Q

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

unwieldy corpulency, and of a rather short figure, resembling the famous South-African chief, Nang6ro, visited by Messrs. Galton and Andersson. He received us, however, very hospitably, and proved to be rather an intelligent man; but, fortunately, he had not sufficient cleverness to discover that I was a Christian, although, from the very first moment when he beheld my luggage, he arrived, at the firm conclusion that I was not what my companions represented me to be, namely, a sheriff from the far east; but he had made up his mind, on account of the little knowledge which I possessed of his language, and which I had not quite kept back before him, that I was a merchant, either from Ghadgmes or Morocco, and it was quite amusing to me to hear him argue this point, while he affirmed with the greatest obstinacy, and with an oath, that I was a Shill"h--a Berber from the north, and wanted to represent myself as a sheriff, in order to pass through his tribe with less trouble and expense. He, as well as his people, became, by degrees, rather troublesome; but they treated us well, sending us two prepared sheep, and large dishes of rice boiled in an abundance of butter, but without salt. The chief himself is said to consume every day a sheep, and the supply of milk from seven cows, in this respect reminding us of the Emperor Vitellius.

Monday, August 15th. I presented to the chief a first-rate tirkedi, two black shawls, and a red cap; but as my fine horse excited his cupidity, we had some difficulty in getting away, and matters appeared for some time rather serious. But having at length proceeded on our journey, after little more than a mile, we ascended from the rich grassy plain upon an undulating tract of deep sandy soil, richly clothed with mimosa and herbage, and broken now and then by a depression or cavity covered with the richest species of grass, called "banga." Numerous flocks of sheep were pasturing here, and a servant of B616, who accompanied us, felt no compunction in seizing the fattest specimen and slaughtering it. After a march of about eight miles, the poisonous euphorbia became very common; but we looked in vain for water, as we had taken no supply with us, and it was not till after a long march over the sandy downs that we reached a pool of stagnant and dirty water. A little more than two miles beyond, we came to another encampment of Tawirek. Here, fortunately, I found better rest than at B616's, only a few people being present at the time. The chief, too, being of rather a subordinate character, raised his pretensions less high.

TAWIREK WOMEN AND BOYS.

On account of their degraded character, and their low condition in the scale of Tawirek society, these people were not even allowed to wear swords, which is the emblem of the free and noble Am6shagh, but, besides their spears, they are only armed with a long "t6lak," or knife, worn at the left arm. All the Tawirek
hereabouts wear short narrow shirts, and short and tightly-fitting trowsers; and almost all of them wear round the lower and upper part of their face a shawl composed of strips of different colors and materials, as I have stated above; only the chief himself uses a black tobe and a shawl of the same color. These various tribes pasture their cattle quite differently from each other. Most of the Tawgrek, like the Filbe in general, drive them out early in the morning, and fetch them home when the heat of the day commences, in order to milk them, after which the cattle are again driven out till evening; but the people of this as well as of the last day's encampment pasture their cattle during the night, and fetch them home early in the morning for milking. We had a fine cool breeze in the evening, which refreshed me extremely while lying in front of my tent; but in the night a heavy thunder-storm broke out, followed by a moderate quantity of rain.

August 16th. It was almost noon when we started, for as long as my friend El Waliti had something to sell there was no chance of traveling; and, in order to diminish my dissatisfaction, it was pretended that one of my pack-oxen was lost. Here my companion bartered his young camel for sixty sheep, and the bargain being at length concluded we were allowed to proceed on our journey. But before setting out I had to give my blessing to the whole population of the encampment, male as well as female. Among the latter I discovered a few pretty young women, particularly one, who, together with her baby, formed a most pleasing spectacle, her beauty being enhanced by her extreme shyness in approaching me; but their dress was very poor indeed, consisting of coarse cotton stuff, which was wrapped round the body and brought down over the head. All the boys under twelve years of age have the left side of their head entirely shaven, while from the crop on the right side a long curl hangs down.

At length we were again on the road; but our march, through a rather level tract of country, was only of short duration, and after a little more than six miles, having crossed a basin where a large sheet of water had collected, we again took up our quarters in another encampment the chief of which was stated to possess authority, so that I had once more to give presents to the value of nearly 10,000 shells, besides a tirkedf and "hif" to be given to the man belonging to B616, who had served us as a guide. I had likewise to send a present to a TUrki chief at some distance, in order to take every precaution recommended to me by my companion to insure my safety, although I felt certain that he himself applied the greater portion to his own use. It was thus that my supplies rapidly disappeared, and I had a fair prospect, if this state of things should continue for any length of time, of arriving in Timbiiktu greatly lightened. We were however hospitably treated by our hosts, and were even regaled with the uncommon luxury of a large dish of "megita," a sort of macaroni, prepared from wheat with a rich seasoning of butter, and famous since the time of El Bekrf. As a proof that we were approaching Timbidktu, I may mention that the people of this encampment were extremely anxious to get a sip of tea, which they called the water of Simsim, from the celebrated well of that name in Mekka. Another of my camels being knocked
up, I here exchanged it for four bLils, one of which was fit for carrying burdens, being equal in value to two or three of the others; but I had afterward a keen dispute on account of this bargain, the camel having subsequently died.

August 17th. On setting out from this encampment, we kept at first a little more westward, thus leaving the district of Bansôna, which formerly seems to have been of some importance, to the north, in order to avoid the encampment of I'so, a brother of Somki, who had sent a messenger the preceding day in order to invite us to pay him a visit. The district through which we passed is called Minta, and is rich in iron-stone, while ruins of former smelting-places are seen in different localities; but it was extremely barren, extensive tracts of bleak native soil, called "nôga" or "hamraye," fatiguing the eye under a hot African sun. Farther on the soil became swampy, and bore frequent footprints of the elephant: but after a march of little more than three miles, while we again returned into a northerly direction, we entered an undulating sandy tract clothed with bushes, and two miles and a half beyond again encamped on the site of a Tawirek imazigh. Here, after having made some presents, we were well treated, two sheep being slaughtered for us; but we passed a most uncomfortable night, on account of the vast number of musquitoes which infested the place.

BA'MEARA.
Thursday, August 18th. We at length made a tolerable day's march in order to reach the small town of Bmbara, which forms the southernmost of the fixed settlements of the Songhay along the creeks and backwaters of the river in this part of the country. The district through which we passed in the beginning of our march formed a tolerable level, thickly overgrown with bushes and the feathery bristle, which gradually attained such a height as to reach the rider on horseback. At times also the poisonous euphorbia predominated, and after a march of about nine miles our old friend the hijilj, or Balanites cegyptiaca, which I did not remember to have seen since leaving Fogha, began to appear. But far more cheerful than the sight of the tree was the view of a large sheet of water, which appeared on our right about three miles farther on, and which excited in me the first idea of the size and richness of the upper course of the Niger; it is here called Do'; but in its farther course northward, where the eye could not reach the border, it bears the particular name of Silôddu, and, at least at certain seasons of the year, is in direct connection with the river.

Having then passed a small tract of cultivated ground and emerged from the undulating country, we obtained a sight of the town of Bimbara, situated a little in front of a chain of hills, as represented in the accompanying wood-cut. In an hour more we reached the place, and at the instigation of our Arab companion fired a salute with our pistols, whereupon the principal individuals made their appearance, and we obtained quarters without further delay. The town or village consists partly of low clay buildings, partly of huts, but the inhabitants appear to dwell almost exclusively in the latter, using the clay dwellings, which generally consist of low, oblong, and flat-roofed buildings, as storerooms or magazines for depositing their
treasures; that is to say, their long rolls of cotton strips," leppi," or "t6ri." The dwelling also which was assigned to me consisted of a rather low dirty hut, 245

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
which was any thing but well ventilated, and proved almost insupportable during the hot hours of the day. But the clay soil in the court-yard was too hard for pitching my tent, and besides, it was not advisable to expose myself in this manner to the gaze of inquisitive and curious observers. The inhabitants of this place, almost all of whom are Filbe, and on account of their large features evidently belong to the section of the Tor6de or T6robe, are ill-famed as "d hilemin," or evil-doers. However, they are a warlike set, and had succeeded a few months before in driving back the Awelfmmiden, who had made a foray on a large scale against the place. But Bimbara is important in an economical respect, for the inhabitants, besides possessing numerous cattle, cultivate a large extent of ground; even many of the people of Timbktu have fields here, the transport of the grain being easy and cheap by means of the immense inland navigation which is formed by the many back-waters and branches of the Niger. But the neighborhood of the place is very barren, and at that time especially, when no rain had fallen for some time, looked extremely dry, so that the camels had to be driven to a great distance to find pasturage. Some Tawirek half-castes are also settled in the place, and they kept up dancing every evening till a very late hour. Bimbara is called Hudiri by the Tawirek or Im6shagh, and Sukurira by the people of the kingdom of Bimbara, the Bimam6n, or, as they are called by the inhabitants of Timb-iktu, Beniber. Why the name Bmbara has attached to this place in particular I can not say, but probably the reason was that the people of Banbara, who some seventy years ago conquered all this country to the south of the river, retained dominion of this town for a longer time than of any other place in the neighborhood. There is no doubt that the Fdlbe, or Fullin, as well as the Songhay and Arabs, call the place only by the latter name. I had to stay in Bimbara several days, not at all for my own comfort, as I continually ran the risk of being recognized and identified, having been known as a Christian at the short distance of a few days' journey from here. Nothing but the scanty intercourse which is kept up in this region made such a sudden change of character possible, for as yet I had nobody to protect me. But my friend El Waliti, whose relation with the inhabitants of this place was of a peculiar character, derived the sole benefit from our stay. He had married here, four years previously, a rich

PERSONAL RELATIONS.
wife, and had absconded with all her property: besides having seriously offended the powerful T.rki chief Somki. Having thus made himself so obnoxious to them, he would not have been able to enter the place again, if he had not found an opportunity of enriching himself at my expense and enjoying the protection of my company. However, it was only by degrees that I became acquainted with all
these circumstances, while I had to bear silently all the intrigues of this man, my only object being to reach safely in his company the town of Timbdiikt; but it was evident enough that he was continually wavering, whether it was not more profitable for him to deliver me into the hands of the Fdlbe, as he knew well that in the town of Dir-e'-Salim, which was only thirty miles distant, there was a powerful governor, under the ruler of Misina, and himself a son of Mohammed Lebbo, who, at the first intelligence of my real character, would have cut short all my proceedings, and, in the most favorable case, would have sent me direct to his liege lord and nephew in Hamda-Allihi.

I had to make here some considerable presents to a number of people. There was first our host Jobbo, who had given us quarters, and who treated us very hospitably; then, the son of the chief or emfr, who was absent in Hamda-Allihi; next, three kinsmen of the latter, who were represented to me as dhiemfn; and lastly, three Arabs from Timbuktu, who were staying here at the time, and whose friendly disposition I had to secure for some reason or other. One of the latter was a very amiable young man, of the name of Mohammed el Amfn, son of the learned Ildhi Mu'stapha, and it was he, in particular, who gave me some information with regard to my friend El Waliti, who, on his part, endeavored to obtain the favor of this young man, by persuading me to make him a good present, and to commission him to take charge of my horse through the dangerous and watery tract of country from Saraygmo to Kibara. As for the second of these Arabs, he belonged to the small tribe of the Ansir, or, as they are generally called, Lansir, that most respected Arab tribe which, on account of its intimate connection with Mohammed, enjoyed every where and at all times great influence, but which is at present reduced to a very small fraction. He was a follower of Hammidi, the rival of the Sheikh El Bakiy in Timb-ikt, and seemed to be of such a hostile disposition toward my friend, that the latter represented him to me as shamefully exiled from that town, and as totally disgraced. Besides these presents to the inhabit-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ants of the place, I had also to reward the various people who had accompanied us from the Tawirek encampments in order to show us the road, or rather to drive the sheep and cattle belonging to El Walti. But, in return for all these presents, I was at least treated hospitably, and, for these countries, even sumptuously; and I was glad to find that the rice here, which constituted the chief article of food, was of excellent quality. While we were staying in this place I received a visit from two Tawixek chiefs, who, owing to our slow progress, had heard of me, and came in order to obtain from me my blessing, but more particularly some presents. The chief of them was a very respectable-looking man, of the name of Mohammed, or Hemghem6, with large open features, such as are never seen among the K6lowl, and of a tall stately figure. They behaved very friendly toward me, and one of them even embraced me very cordially; but the scale of their religious erudition was not very considerable, and I was greatly amused when El Waliti, in order to get back from them his tobacco-pouch, which they had secretly abstracted from him, suddenly seized one of my books, which happened to be "Lander's Journey,"
and, on threatening them with it as if it were the Kurin, the pouch was restored without delay.

I had been questioned repeatedly on my journey respecting the M6hedi, who was expected soon to appear; but these people here were uncommonly anxious to know something concerning him, and could scarcely be prevented from identifying me with this expected prophet, who was to come from the East. They were scarcely gone when a messenger arrived from the great chief Somki, whose name had already filled my imagination for so long a time; and, at El Wal6ti's most urgent request, who* did not fail to enhance the importance of this man as much as he was able, I prepared a considerable present, worth altogether 33,000 shells, which my friend was to take to him on the following day.

Now, it would not have been at all necessary to have come into any contact with this chief, as the direct road to Timbuktu led straight from here, without touching at Saray-imo, near which place Somki had formed his encampment; but my friend represented the direct road from here to Timbuktu as leading along the encampments of several powerful chiefs, whom it would be more prudent to avoid; and perhaps he was right, not so much from the reason stated as on account of the water-communication

CHARACTER OF BA'MBARA.

between Saxayimo and Timbuktu offering a great advantage. In conformity with these circumstances, on the third day of our stay here, El Waliti at length set out for the encampment of Somki, in order to obtain his protection to enable me to pass safely through his territory; and I sent along with him my faithful servant, Mohammed el Gatroni, whom I had just cured of a severe attack of dysentery, although I could not expect that he would be able to control the proceedings of the crafty Arab, as he did nt understand the language of the Tawirek. They did not return until the third day, and gave me in the mean time full leisure to study a little more accurately the relations of this place.

CHAPTER LXIV.

THE NET-WORK OF CREEKS, BACKWATERS, AND LAKES BELONGING TO THE NIGER.-SARAYA/MO.-NAVIGATION TO KA'BARA. On my first arrival at the town of Bimbara, I had not been at all aware that it formed a most important point of my journey, it being for me, as proceeding from the southeast, what that celebrated creek three days west from Timbktu was to the traveler from the north during the Middle Ages, and which on this account has received the name of "Ris el mi." The town of Bimbara is situated on a branch or rather a dead backwater of the river, forming a very shallow bottom of considerable breadth, but a very irregular border, and containing at that time but little water, so that the communication with the river was interrupted; but about twenty days later in the season, for about four or five months every year, during the highest state of the inundation, the boats proceed from here directly, either to Dire by way of Gilaye and Kiflima, or to Timb-6ktu by way of D6lego and Sarayimo, thus opening a considerable export of corn toward that dependent market-place, which again has to supply the whole of the nomadic tribes of A'zawid, and the neighboring districts.
This shallow water is bordered on the west side by the hilly chain which I have mentioned before, and beyond there is another branch, which joins it toward the south. Such being the state of the water at present, there was no great activity, and two canoes only were lying here under repair, each of them being provided with two low chambers, or cabins, vaulted in with reeds and bushes.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

as I shall describe farther on. Of course, when this basin is full of water, and navigated by numbers of canoes, the place must present quite another appearance, while at the time of my visit its shallow swampy state could not but increase the dullness of the whole neighborhood, which had not yet been fertilized by the rainy season. I was assured by the inhabitants that only one plentiful shower had as yet fallen. This was the reason that, instigated by the absurd rumor which had preceded me that my favor with the Almighty was so great that it had some influence upon the fall of rain, all the inhabitants, although Mohammedans, assembled on the second day of El Waliti's absence, and, headed by the emir, came to me in procession, and solicited my interference in their behalf for a good shower of rain. I succeeded this time in eluding their solicitations for a direct prayer, satisfying them by expressing my fervent hope that the Almighty would have mercy upon them. But I was so favored, that there was really a moderate shower in the evening, which did a great deal of good to the ground, although the air did not become much cooler, for it was excessively hot all this time, and sometimes almost insupportable in my narrow dirty hut. I remember in particular one miserable night which I spent here, when, not being able to obtain a wink of sleep, I wandered about all night, and felt totally exhausted in the morning. Notwithstanding the swarms of mosquitoes, I afterward preferred sleeping outside my hut, in order to inhale the slight refreshing breeze which used to spring up during the night. Unfortunately I had, to the best of my belief, long before broken my last thermometer, and was therefore unable, or rather believed myself unable, to measure the heat with accuracy, but it could certainly not be inferior to the greatest rate we had experienced in K-ikawa. The whole country round about the village is very bleak, consisting chiefly of black argillaceous soil, such as is common in the neighborhood of large sheets of water, and scarcely a single tree offers its foliage as a shelter from the rays of the sun.

I had also sufficient leisure to pay full attention to the trading relations of the inhabitants, which, at this time of the year, are rather poor; for although a daily market is held, it is on a very small scale, and, besides sour milk and salt, very little is to be found. Even Indian corn is not brought regularly into the market, although so much agriculture is going on in the neighborhood, and I had to buy my supply from strangers who by chance were passing through the place, while for one of my oxen I got only as much as forty s'aa, or measures of corn: of rice, on the contrary, which is extensively

249

250
cultivated in the neighborhood, the natives, even at this season, appeared to possess a sufficient supply. The standard currency consists of "tiri," that is to say, cotton strips two hands wide, of which, unfortunately, I did not possess the smallest quantity; it is only in purchasing sweet or sour milk that the inhabitants accept shells. Every thing that is sold in the market is measured and inspected by an officer, who does not bear the same title by which he is known in the eastern countries of the Fdlbe, viz., "lmido-ldmu," but is here called "emfro-f6ba."

A good deal of entertainment was afforded me by the daily turning out and bringing in of the several divisions of the five herds of cattle which the place possessed. Three herds returned early in the morning from their pasture-grounds, where they had been left during the night, in order to be milked; and the two remaining ones were then turned out, in order to return during the heat of the day. But notwithstanding the considerable number of cattle which the place possessed, the drought was so great that there was only a small supply of milk at the time. At length, on the evening of the third day after their setting out, my two companions, whom I had sent to Somki, returned, and El Waliti would fain have made me believe that that chief had at first most obstinately refused to receive the presents, and had peremptorily demanded that I should make him, in addition, a present of one of the horses; but the fact was, that he had persisted in representing that those presents did not come from me, but had employed them in order to make his own peace with that powerful chief, and to conclude some bargain with him. After all this, he had the insolence to propose that I also should go to that chief, in order to surrender to him some more of my property as his own; but I could not prevent it, and my only object was necessarily to get over my difficult situation as well as possible.

Thursday, August 25th. Having, after the return of my friend from his important embassy, still been obliged to stay another day in this miserable place, and having had the misfortune to lose my best ox of burden, which El Waliti had sold to the Tawirek who came along with us, pretending that it had been stolen, I at length set out on my journey to Saray-imo. But just as we were about to start, a circumstance happened which might have proved fatal to my farther proceedings; for, at the moment of departure, there

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

arrived an Arab, a native of Tisft, who, besides having visited St. Louis, had made the pilgrimage to Mekka, and knew something about Europeans as well as about the Arabs of the East; and as I asked a great many questions about the ancient and celebrated town of Biru, and the modern Walita, he began to make some stricter inquiries concerning my native home, and the places from whence I had gathered my information; for not having found any one on his journey toward the East who knew anything about the seats of these Western Arabs, while the general name of Shingiti is given to all of them, he was not a little astonished to find that I knew so much about his countrymen. However, my whole appearance inspired him with such confidence, that he continued to take great interest in me. He had already, the previous evening, sent me a fat sheep as a present, and he now accompanied me for a while, mounted on a beautiful white mare; but, as his company prevented
my laying down the route with accuracy, I persuaded him not to give himself any farther trouble.

Having crossed a small water-course, we soon reached a larger one, which formed a running stream, carrying the surplus of the shallow creek of Btmbara toward a larger sheet, which, at the distance of a mile, we saw expand on our right. The surface of the country was undulating, with granite cropping out here and there, and with a good supply of stunted mimosa, besides the poisonous euphorbia; but, about two miles beyond the open water, we descended into a more level tract, covered with nothing but dry and short herbage, and abundance of the obnoxious feathery bristle; but this is very favorable ground for the cattle, for they are not less fond of this bristle than their masters themselves are of the seed, called "zak," which from the most ancient times* has constituted one of their chief articles of food. We passed, also, the sites of several former Tawdrek encampments.

Having then entered a district where more dim-bush appeared, we ascended a sandy ridge, from whence we beheld in front of us an extensive sheet of water, stretching out to a distance of several miles, its surface agitated by a strong breeze, and with tall reeds forming its border. It is called Nyngay by the Fiilbe, and Isse-6nga by the Tawirek, and is in connection with the branches of Bimbara and Kafima, winding along from here by way of

* See El Bekr's "Description of Africa," ed. de Slane, p. 181.

LAKES NYE'NGAY AND GERRU.

Gilaye to the latter place, and from thence by way of D61ego to Sarayimo, and thus opening an uninterrupted navigable canal, at least during the highest state of the inundation; but it is said to be dreaded by the boatmen of the frail native craft, who never dare to cross it in a storm. It seemed, in a southwesterly direction, from six to eight miles across, but toward the northwest it became contracted in such a manner that at the narrowest place only two canoes can sail abreast; after which it turned away, and could not be farther surveyed from this point.

Having followed the border of this fine and imposing sheet of water, where numbers of people were catching fish, for about a mile and a half, we ascended the sandy downs on our right, and soon reached the encampment of Mohammed, the chief of the K61-e'-s-k, who a few days previously had paid me a visit in Bimbara. Here I had to give away several more of my effects, but we were treated most hospitably, and even sumptuously, and besides two enormous bowls full of rice and meat, swimming in an immense quantity of butter, a whole ox was slaughtered for us. The site of the encampment was very beautiful, and I walked for a long time about the downs, which were adorned with a rich profusion of trees of the acacia kind, and offered an interesting prospect over the lake; but the ensuing night was most miserably spent on account of the numerous swarms of musquitoes which infested the encampment.

August 26th. We were very early in motion, but a heavy thunder-storm, which gathered from the southeast, delayed our departure, although, taking into account the slow rate at which I was here obliged to travel, it was a matter of total indifference whether we started early or late, as I was quite in the hands of my friend the Walti, who stopped wherever he had any business to transact, and did
not set out again until he had concluded his bargain. The, rain-clouds then taking
a more northerly direction, we at length set out, pursuing our track over the hilly
country, and while we lost sight of the Lake of Ny6ngay on our left, soon
discovered on our right another but smaller sheet of water called G’rru. The
Ny-ngay is said to be full of water all the year round; but the G6rru becomes dry
in summer, when the inhabitants of Sarayimo repair hither in order to cultivate
their ricefields, the rice ripening with the rising waters, and being cut shortly
before the river attains the highest state of inundation.
Having left these interesting sheets of water behind us, we

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
traversed a district more richly adorned with acacias, and crossed a valley where
the siwik, or Capparis sodata (a bush which I scarcely remembered to have seen
since my return from Kinem), was growing in great exuberance, besides numbers
of gerredh, or the useful Acacia nilotica, but we searched in vain for water. The
country also which we traversed from here onward was chiefly clothed with the
Capparis and the Mimosa ndlotica, besides a good deal of dNm-bush; but, farther
on, we emerged from this undulating tract into an open swampy ground, at
present tolerably dry and covered with rich herbage, while we left on our right the
site of the formerly important town Sima-koira,* which once lorded it over a
considerable territory till it was destroyed by the Tawirek, when the remnant of its
population escaped toward Bamba and Gh.go.
In these open swampy meadow-grounds, girt by a dense belt of gerredh, where no
Arab would think of pitching his tent, was the encampment of the chief Somki,
with his family and his followers (the tents of the kind I have described being just
pitched), and his numerous herds of cattle grazing right and left, besides about
twenty camels. We found the chief reclining on his "teshdgit" or divan of reeds,
and as soon as he beheld us he rose and saluted El Waliti and me. He was a man
of middle stature and of tolerably stout proportions, his white beard, which looked
forth from under the lithim, giving him a highly respectable appearance. He,
however, did not show us any signs of hospitality, which vexed me the more, as,
besides the considerable presents which I had sent to him a few days before, I had
now again to make him another one, consisting of two t-irkedfs and a h f; but I
soon found that he was not aware of the former presents having been sent by me.
Being an intelligent man, who had had dealings with a great many people, he had
some slight suspicion that I was not what my companions represented me to be.
While I was sitting in my tent reading attentively a passage referring to these
regions in the excellent little book of Mr. Cooley on the Negroland of the Arabs,
which has rendered me very great assistance in directing my inquiries in these
countries, he made his appearance very ab* This is the name which the Songhay
give to the place, "1koira" meaning "town" in the Songhay-kinin: while the
Wangariwa and the Bimbara call it Sima-kanda, "kanda" meaning "country" or
"district" in the Wikord; and the Fdlbe, on account of the "1 swamp" which is
formed here, Winde Same.
MOHAMMED BONYA'RI.
ruptly, and seemed rather surprised at finding me reading characters which he
well knew were not Arabic; but, nevertheless, he suppressed his suspicions.
Perhaps in consequence of the intrigues of El Walhti, he laid claims to the horse
which I myself rode. The eagerness of the women hereabout to obtain tobacco
was very remarkable, and they pestered my servants during a great part of the
night.
Saturday, August 27th. We set out on our last day's journey by land, in order to
reach the place where we were to embark on the river. Having emerged from the
low swampy ground, we entered again sandy downs, principally clothed with
hiskanft, damankidda, and bu-r6kkeba or Panicum colonum, and, having left on
one side a smaller channel, we reached the branch of Fatta, which extends almost
as far as Sarayimo, running parallel to several other creeks, called after the
villages Kisba, Haib6ngo, and Benesgnga, which intersect the district named
B6ddu.
The water at first formed a narrow irregular channel of about 200 yards wide,
very much resembling an artificial canal, as is the case with a great many of these
backwaters, but gradually it began to widen, affording excellent soil for the
cultivation of rice. Between this channel and the river there are several other
branches, which appear to join the creek which I navigated from Saraygimo.
Altogether, in this level part of the Niger, the river appears to spread out in a
labyrinth of channels and water-courses. As for the rice which was grown here
exclusively, it appeared to have been just sown with the assistance of the dew,
which suffices for its growth till the river rises and spreads its inundation.
Here we passed a small village inhabited by a Tirki, or, rather K61-e'suki, of the
name of Mohammed Bonyimi, who has settled here with his property, and who,
while we passed by, came out of his hut, and, astonished at my unusual
appearance, and delighted at seeing a stranger from such a distance, entreated me
in the kindest manner to stay with him a short time, so that I had in consequence
a great difficulty in pursuing my march. He was a very decent and venerable-
looking old man, of short, stout figure, and with benevolent features, but his dress
was of the simplest kind, consisting of a white tobe and a black shawl. A good
many horses were pasturing hereabout, but not, as it would seem, to the advantage
of the rice-grounds, as they fed mostly on the young shoots. Having then left this
water-course at some distance on our right, we reached three miles farther on the
town of Saray-
suburb, on a sloping ground, descending toward a small ravine which separates the suburb from the kasr, and contained at the time a small quantity of dirty water. This situation had the disadvantage that, from the opposite slope, every thing that was done in my court-yard could be observed, and there were a great many curious people, especially among the rising generation, who obtru ded not a little on my privacy.

I had scarcely made myself comfortable, when I received a great number of visits; and it was not long before Mohammed Bonydmi arrived, mounted on a white mare. As El Walti had persuaded me to take only one horse to Timbiiktu, I sent two of my animals with this man to remain with him until my leaving that place, while I also intrusted to his care my five camels, to be taken to a brother of his. While I was conversing with these people, my friend the H1j Blida arrived also, with whom I continued to pass for a Syrian sherif, although he thought it strange that I would not say my prayers with him in the court-yard.

Sitnday, August 28th. Having enjoyed a good night's rest, tolerably free from musquitoes, as I had shut my hut at an early hour, I took a walk down to the river, the morning being, as usual, cool and fresh, and a slight breeze having sprung up. The bank on which the town stands was, at present, from twenty-five to thirty feet above the level of the river; but this elevation is of course greatly diminished by the rising of the inundation, the river reaching generally to the very border of the village. That branch which is not in direct connection with the water of Fatta, along which our last day's march had lain, had no current, and was about 200 yards in breadth. The communication by water along these shallow backwaters of the immense Niger just open-ing (for in the dry season the connection is interrupted), only one

VARIOUS PERFORMANCES.

sea-worthy boat was lying here at the time, neither conspicuous for its size, nor for its comfortable arrangement, and with two cabins of matting, one in the prow, and one in the stern, while another boat, measuring forty feet by eight, was just repairing. All the craft are built of planks, sowed or tied together in a very bungling manner.

I learned, on this occasion, that it is only at this season of the year that people go from here to Timbuktu, which lies almost exactly north from this place, by an eastern winding; while later in the season they follow a westerly branch. A labyrinth of creeks, backwaters, and channels, is in this manner spread over the whole of this country, of which people had no previous idea.

I had scarcely returned to my quarters when the governor, or emir, of the place came to pay me a visit. This man, whose name was `Othmn, was a cheerful kind of person. He stands in direct subjection to the chief of Hamda-Allihi, without being dependent upon any other governor; and his province comprises some other places in the neighborhood, such as Fatta, Hores6na, and Kabeka. Having made strict inquiries with regard to the present state of affairs in Stambdl, and having asked the news respecting the countries of the East in general, he left me, but returned again in the course of the afternoon, accompanied by the chief persons in the town, in order to solicit my aid in procuring rain. After a long conversation
about the rainy season, the quantity of rain which falls in different countries, and
the tropical regions especially,* I felt myself obliged to say before them the "fat-
hi," or opening prayer of the Kurdn; and, to their great amusement and delight,
concluded the Arabic prayer with a form in their own language-" Alla hokki
ndfam"-which, although meaning originally "God may give water," has become
quite a complimentary phrase, so that the original meaning has been almost lost,
few people only being conscious of it. It so happened that the ensuing night a
heavy thunder-storm gathered from the east, bringing a considerable quantity of
rain, which even found its way into my badly-thatched hut. This apparent efficacy
of my prayer induced the inhabitants to return the following day, to solicit from
me a repetition of my performance; but I succeeded in evading their request by
exhorting them to patience. But, on the other hand, I was obliged, in addition to a
strong dose of emetic, to give

* On this occasion I learned from the Hij of Tisft, who was present, that in his
desert town there are in general three falls of rain every year.

VOL. III.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
the governor my blessing, as he was going to the capital, and was rather afraid of
his liege lord the young prince A’hmdu, while at the same time his overbearing
neighbors, the Tawirek, inspired him with a great deal of fear. " In the sequel, he
was very well received In the capital, and therefore could not complain of the
inefficacy of my inspiration; but, nevertheless, not having had the slightest
suspicion that I was not what I represented myself to be, he was much shocked
when he afterward learned that I was a Christian, to the great amusement of the
Sheikh el Bakiy, who wrote to him repeatedly to the effect that he ought to be
well pleased that so wicked a person as a Christian had procured him, not only
rain, but even a good reception from his superior.
The town is tolerably flourishing, and the F6be inhabitants, at least, possess a
great number of horses. We counted, one evening, ninety returning from the
pasture-grounds, while a good many more remained outside at a greater distance.
The Fiiibe here belong to the following tribes: Urominge, Rilimbe, Oromanibe,
Koiribe, Feroibe, Balimbe, Orohibe, and U’rube. The whole population of the
place may amount to about 5000; but there did not appear to be many
manufacturers; even the native cloth, so well woven by the Songhay, is not
manufactured here.
The situation of the town at this navigable branch, however, produces some
activity, although no regular market appears to be held; and the second day of my
stay here, a large boat arrived from Timbuktu, with eighteen ris (a piece weighing
about sixty pounds) of salt, a large parcel of tobacco, and a great number of
passengers. Shells have currency here, and I bought rice for fourteen hundred
shells and a t-irkedi, at the rate of forty shells for each saa, or measure. Rice
constitutes the chief article of food, although on the west side of the town some
negro corn is cultivated. Milk is plentiful.
The town of DJr-e'-sam, or Dri, the residence of 'Abd-e'-rahmin, the son of Mohammed Lebbo, lying on the bank of the river itself, is at a distance of thirteen hours on horseback from here, equal to about thirty miles, by way of Tafba. Having succeeded in hiring the boat which had come from Timb-ikutu for the exclusive use of my own party, for 10,000 shells, I prepared my luggage, which, although now greatly reduced from the respectable bulk which it presented when setting out from Kitsena, was still sufficient to inspire me with the hope that I might succeed in securing the friendship of the more influential chiefs of these regions, and in the evening of the last day of August I went on board of my small craft, and passed there a very comfortable night. The river, during the time of my residence in the place, had risen considerably, and soon promised to open the communication by the western branch.

Thursday, September 1st. After a good deal of delay, we at length began our voyage about a quarter before eight in the morning; and I felt my spirits greatly cheered when I found myself floating on this river, or backwater, which was to carry me all the way to the harbor of Timbiktu. The river near the town forms a fine open sheet, widening to about 300 yards; but farther on, as we were winding along in a northeasterly direction, it was greatly obstructed with rank grass, or rather byrgu, which very often covered the water entirely, so that the boat seemed to glide along a grassy plain. It was quite out of the question to use oars. We were therefore reduced to the necessity of proceeding with poles, generally moving at the rate of two miles and a third an hour, but very often less. Besides the byrgu, which constitutes the chief fodder for horse and cattle in all the districts along the Niger, and which even furnishes man with the sweet beverage called "mdnshu" and a sort of honey called "kartu," white water-lilies, or Nymphcea Lotus, were in great quantities; and between the latter, the water-plant "serranfsa," which, being about ten inches long, floats on the water without having its roots fixed in the ground. But, after a voyage of about three miles, we emerged from the reedy water of Sarayimo into a more open branch, said to be that of Bimbara, which here joined it. According to some of my informants, this water is identical with the Ge'rru, which I have mentioned on a former occasion. Here the eastern bank became quite free from reed-grass, while a herd of gazelles was to be seen near the shore; the western bank, meanwhile, being adorned with numerous rin-palms, giwo, and tamarind-trees, or, as they are called here, busisu; while farther on, the ascending ground was covered with "tunfdzia" (Asciepias gigantea), "retem" (or broom), and "damankidda." But after a while, when rank grass again began to prevail, this arm also became greatly obstructed, being separated by the grass into several branches. The water being only from five to seven feet deep, we proceeded rather slowly onward, winding along in a northerly direction, at times diverging more to the west, at others more to the east; till about an hour after noon we reached the small town of Fatta,
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
situated on the eastern shore, and surrounded by extensive ricegrounds, where the people were busy with the labors of the field.
The river here changes its direction to the west, being probably joined by another branch, which, however, I did not see, and we began steering in that direction, soothing our disappointment at not moving directly toward the object of our voyage with the animated songs of our boatmen, who accompanied the movement of their oars with a barbarous, but not unmelodious account of the deeds of the great A'skia. A great many herds of cattle were to be seen on the left or southern side of the river, and gave life to the scenery. Our living also was not so bad, a couple of fine fishes, which we had succeeded in buying from some fishermen, having been prepared over the fire, and affording us an excellent dinner.
The farther we proceeded onward the more the channel widened, becoming free from reeds, although occasionally adorned by a floating layer of water-lilies. However, beyond the village of Gurijigge, or Guridigge, the current became so strong that, in order to avoid it, we chose rather to enter the reeds, which broke the force of the water. It is natural that, as this is not a river of itself fed by its own sources, but merely a backwater caused by the overflow of the great river, the current in general must come from the latter, and proceed inland.
Having kept for some time along the reed-grass of the southern shore in a winding direction, we again emerged into open water, where the poles of our boatmen, which measured about eighteen feet in length, found no bottom; and we kept steadily on, although occasionally quite alarmed by our southwesterly direction, which threatened to carry us rather to Hamda-Allhi than to Timbuktu; till at length, a few miles on this side of the town of Goilo, we changed our direction to W.N.W., and passing some floating reed islands, seemed to be in a fair direction to reach the chief object of our journey. But a storm that had been gathering induced us with the approach of night to moor the boat in a wide grassy creek of the eastern shore, in order to shelter ourselves from the strong wind, which easily upsets this light craft. Four fishing-boats were lying not far from us, and with their lights gave us a feeling of society; but the numerous swarms of musquitoes molested us not a little, and the barking of an animal in the water greatly excited my curiosity. On inquiry, I learned that it proceeded from the young alligators, or rather zangway.
These boats have no means of approaching the shallow shore.

VERY WINDING COURSE.
Hence it is necessary for the passengers, two or three times a day, to wade through deep water backward and forward. This, coupled with the great quantity of water continually filling the bottom of these boats, is the reason why all the people who travel along the Niger are subject to rheumatism. The governor of Siy, as I have already mentioned, in consequence of his voyage up the river to G6gho, had become quite lame.
Friday, September 2d. It was a quarter to seven o'clock in the morning when we left the sea of reeds in which we had moored our vessel, which, in the absence of an anchor, is done by fixing a pole on each side of the prow, and one at the stern.
of the boat. We began our day's voyage by slowly gliding along the river, by the
strength of a local current, which ran at the rate of about two miles an hour; but
soon our boatmen began to make use of their oars, and we advanced with more
rapidity. The open channel was here quite close to the eastern shore, the uniform
level of which was broken by a hilly eminence covered with fine fields of nifflet,
when we saw upon our left a smaller arm of the, considerable channel running
from the southwest. This, on inquiry, I found was in connection with that very
water-course which, at a later season, forms the general high road of those people
who go from Saray~mo to Timbitu. Even at this season of the year this branch is
preferred by those who come from the north. Having passed this branch we halted
awhile at the western shore, where, at a short distance inland, there is a small
village called Koito, surrounded by fine trees.
After a short delay we set out again on our zigzag voyage, while one of our
boatmen, his harpoon in hand, proceeded on a fishing expedition. From a wide
open water we soon got into a narrow channel, while the grassy expanse spread
out on each side to a great extent; and, making our way with great difficulty, we
emerged into a wide open branch, much more considerable than the one along
which our course had lain, it being the principal trunk of the westerly water-
course of Sarayimo. As soon as we had entered it, some large specimens of the
alligator tribe afforded proofs of a more extensive sheet of water, while the
current, which at first was running against us, was so considerable that we
advanced rather slowly. The whole breadth of the river or channel, forming one
large unbroken sheet of water, was certainly not less than from 600 to 700 yards,
while the depth in the midst of the channel, at least as far I had an opportunity of
judging from the

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
poles of our boatmen, measured fourteen feet and a half, and at times even as
much as eighteen, and probably more. The banks were enlivened by men and
horses, and we passed an encampment of herdsmen with their cattle. The western
shore especially was adorned with a profusion of du'm-palms, besides fine
tamarindtrees, sarkakya, and others of unknown species. Thus repeatedly delayed
by shifting sands obstructing the channel of the river, we moved on in a tolerably
direct northerly course till we reached the village of Menesengay, situated on
sandy downs about twenty feet high, beyond a deep gulf of the westerly shore.
The low grassy ground on the eastern side formed the place of resort for numbers
of pelicans, and the lower ground emerging at present only three feet out of the
water, was enlivened by numbers of water-birds, which were looking out greedily
for their prey.
Here we again changed our course, following a great many windings, but
proceeding generally in an easterly direction. But now the water-course began to
exhibit more and more the character of a noble river, bordered by strongly marked
banks, clad with fine timber, chiefly tamarind and kafa trees, and occasionally
enlivened by cattle. Our voyage was very delightful, gliding, as we were,
smoothly along the surface of the water, and keeping mostly in the middle of the
noble stream, our boatmen only changing their course once to touch at the
northern shore, in order to procure for a few shells the luxury of some kola-nuts, of which even these poor people were by no means insensible. At length, having passed between the villages of Haibóngu on the northern, and Dira-kaina on the southern shore, we again exchanged our southeasterly direction for a more northerly one, proceeding along a very broad water-course; but, after a while, the open water was broken by a broad grassy island, which left only a small channel on the west side, while that on the east was of tolerable width. Meanwhile the evening was approaching, and we met with several delays, once in order to buy some fish, and another time on account of our boatmen having lost their harpoon, with which they occasionally endeavored to catch some large species of fish which were swimming alongside our boat. They were very dexterous in diving, although it required some time for them to ascertain the spot where the slender instrument had been fixed in the bottom. This harpoon was exactly similar to the double spear used by some divisions of the Batta, one of the tribes of Adamiwa, such as the Bigele, and even by some of the inhabitants of Bűrnu.

**TOWN OF BANATY.**

We had now entered a splendid reach of the river, which, almost free from reeds, extended in an easterly direction, and we glided pleasantly along the smooth water at a short distance from the northern bank, which was thickly clad with trees; till at length, darkness setting in, we struck right across the whole breadth of the river, which now, in the quiet of the evening, spread out its smooth unrippled surface like a beautiful mirror, and which at this place was certainly not less than 1000 yards broad, straight for the evening fires of the village Baniy, which was situated on the opposite bank, and we moored our vessel at the northeasterly bend of the gulf round which the town is situated. Most of our party slept on shore, while others made themselves as comfortable as possible in the boat, and on the top of the matting which formed the cabins.

Here we awoke the next morning with a beautiful clear sky, and quietly enjoyed for a few hours the fine river scenery, bordered by a rich belt of vegetation, while our boatmen endeavored to replace one of their poles, which they had broken, by a new one, and after some time succeeded in getting one which measured twenty-one feet. The town or village itself is inhabited by Songhay and F6ibe, the latter being in possession of numerous flocks and herds. The cattle being just collected on the sandy beach near the river, were milked soon after sunrise, and furnished me with a draught of that delicious beverage, which must always constitute one of the greatest luxuries to a European traveler in these countries.

The chief part of the village extended along the bay to the south, at the point where we had moored our boat; but there was a suburb of detached huts, chiefly inhabited by Tawirek, and this part of the shore was beautifully adorned with large trees. When we at length continued our voyage, we observed also a great many dim-palms, which served to farther embellish the country, while kad6fla, or t6so, seemed to form the staple produce of the inhabitants, and thickly lined the shores. The scenery was the more interesting, as, besides boys who were playing in the water, a numerous herd of cattle were just swimming across the river, which to animals not accustomed to such a task, would have been rather a
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

calves. However, in these regions along the Niger, with its numerous channels, backwaters, and swamps, man as well as beast must be accustomed to swimming. I took great pains to discover whether there was any current here, but I did not succeed in ascertaining the fact; and altogether, in this net-work of creeks and backwaters, the current seems to be very uncertain, going in on one side and out on the other, notwithstanding that we were now approaching the trunk of the river, following in general a northerly direction with a slight westerly deviation. The gradually sloping bank was here covered with the dense rich bush called b6gina by the Songhay.

But at present these shores, once animated with the bustle of many larger and smaller villages of the native Songhay, were buried in silence and solitude, a turbulent period of almost 200 years having succeeded to the epoch when the great Songhay king, Mohammed el Hija'skia, held the whole of these regions under his powerful sway. No less than four dwelling-places* along this tract of the river had been destroyed on one and the same day by the father of Galiijo, the prince whom we had met on our journey a short distance from Sgy. A solitary antelope, with her young, was the only living being in the present state of desolation that we observed during several hours' navigation, but the banks were occasionally lined with fine trees. Besides the tamarind-tree, a tree called b6gi appeared in great quantities; it bears a yellow fruit about the size of a pear, having four or five large kernels, and which, on account of its pleasant acid taste, afforded us a very refreshing treat.

Having met with a short delay, in consequence of a thunderstorm which brought us but little rain, we observed the island of K6ra, which lies at the mouth of this channel, and the main river ahead of us, the water increasing in breadth, while one arm branches off round the southwestern part of the island, presenting here the appearance of an inland sea. But we had scarcely caught a glimpse of the great river itself, when a second and heavier thunder-storm, which had long been gathering, threatened to break forth, and obliged us to seek shelter in the grassy eastern shore of the main. We had scarcely fastened the boat, when the rain came down in torrents, and lasted, with great violence, for nearly two hours, so that my berth was entirely swamped, and I remained in a most uncomfortable state during the whole night.

* These places are Bango, Ujinne, Gakoira, and another one.

ISLAND OF K'ORA.

Sunday, September 4th. The weather having cleared up, we set out at an early hour, following a northeasterly direction through an open water not obstructed by reeds, but soon halted again for prayer near the green bushy shore; while from the
opposite side of the island of K6ra, the lowing of cattle, cackling of fowls, and the
voices of men were distinctly to be heard, the island being still tolerably well
inhabited, and the people being said to possess even a good number of horses. It
was of considerable interest to me here to fall into the course pursued by that very
meritorious French traveler, R6n6 Cailli6, on his toilsome and dangerous journey
through the whole western part of the Continent of Africa, from Sierra Leone to
Morocco; and it is an agreeable duty for me to confirm the general accuracy of his
account. Following close upon the track of the enterprising and intelligent, but
unfortunate Major Laing, who had been assassinated two years previously on his
desperate journey from Timbuktu, Cailli6 naturally excited against himself the
jealousy of the English, to whom it could not but seem extraordinary that a poor
unprotected adventurer like himself should succeed in an enterprise where one of
the most courageous and noble-minded officers of their army had succumbed.
Gliding slowly along the channel, which here was about 600 yards in width, and
gradually exchanging the eastern shore for the middle of the stream, we observed
after a few miles' advance the first river-horses, or banga, that we had as yet seen
in the Niger, carrying their heads out of the water like two immense boxes, and
rather frightening our boatmen, who did not seem to relish a tte-a-tte with these
animals, till I sent a ball after them.
Passing then the site of the former town of Gakoira, near which the people were
busy with the labors of the rice-fields, and having again landed on the opposite
shore, which was covered with numerous kalgo-trees, in order that the lazy
boatmen might get their breakfast with comfort and ease, we had to follow a large
bend of the river where the town of Danga is situated on the right, beyond a
swampy low ground. This is probably the same town so repeatedly mentioned in
the interesting records of Bibi A'hmed, especially as the residence of the Pillo
chief, Sambo Limido, who at the period of the ruin of the Songhay empire was the
chief instrument in achieving that destruction. We then crossed from here to the
other side, and passed the town of Sanyire on a projecting headland, which at
times appears to be changed into an

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

island, and containing, besides a good number of reed huts, even a few clay
dwellings, Here our people indulged in the hope of procuring some tobacco, but
were sadly disappointed, the natives being too much afraid of their fanatical
master, the Sh6kho A'huemedu ben A'huemedu.

Having left this village behind us, we entered a fine northerly reach belonging to
the branch which was finally to carry us into the great river itself, and left the
town of Sanygre beyond the shallow sand-bank, conspicuous on account of a
group of majestic tamarind-trees. Here the inhabitants wanted to barter some sour
milk for negro corn, which to them, with their ordinary diet of rice, seemed to be
a luxury. Having lost some time, we at length had the broad sheet of the Niger
before us; and here, at the point of junction, there started forth from the easterly
shore a group of solitary trees, which appeared to form the usual nocturnal place
of resort for all the water-fowl in the neighborhood, the trunk as well as tWee
branches of the trees being overlaid with a white crust, formed by the droppings of these visitors, which with animated cries were collecting together toward the close of the evening. Having here left the shore, which at present formed a low and bare headland, but which in the course of a month would be entirely under water, we at once entered the middle of that magnificent river, the I'sa, or Mdyo Ball6o, running here from W. 350 S. to E. 350 N., which has excited the lively curiosity of Europeans for so many years. It was at this spot about a mile across, and by its magnitude and solemn magnificence in the new moon which was rising in front of us, and with the summer lightning at times breaking through the evening sky, inspired my servants with real awe and almost fright; while we were squatting on the shelving roof of our frail boat, and looked with searching eyes along the immense expanse of the river in a northeasterly direction, where the object of our journey was said to lie.

Whether from the excitement of the day, or from the previous night's wetting, when at length we lay to at the ancient Songhay town of Koiretigo, which had once been a place of importance, but had been almost destroyed by the Fulbe in conjunction with the Tirki chief Somki, I was seized with a severe attack of fever, but in order to take care of my luggage, I was unwilling to go on shore, where I might have lain down on a fine sandy beach, choosing rather to remain on board our frail boat.

KORO'ME.
CHAPTER LXV.
ARRIVAL AT KA'BARA.-ENTRANCE INTO TIMBU'KTU.
September 7th, 1853. Thus the day broke which, after so many months' exertion, was to carry me to the harbor of Timbuktu. We started at a tolerably early hour, crossing the broad sheet of the river, first in a northeasterly, then in an almost northerly direction, till finding ourselves opposite the small hamlet Tsakal, mentioned by Cailli6,* we began to keep along the windings of the northern bank, which, from its low character, presented a very varying appearance, while a creek, separating from the trunk, entered the low ground. The river, a month or two later in the season, inundates the whole country to a great distance, but the magnificent stream, with the exception of a few fishing-boats, now seemed almost tenantless, the only objects which in the present reduced state of the country animated the scenery, being a number of large boats lying at anchor in front of us near the shore of the village Kor6me. But the whole character of the river was of the highest interest to me, as it disclosed some new features for which I had not been prepared; for, while the water on which Kor6me was situated formed only by far the smaller branch, the chief river, about three quarters of a mile in breadth, took its direction to the southeast, separated from the former by a group of islands called Day, at the headland of which lies the islet of Tirashim.t
It was with an anxious feeling that I bade farewell to that noble river as it turned away from us, not being sure whether it would fall to my lot to explore its farther course, although it was my firm intention at the time to accomplish this task if possible. Thus we entered the branch of Koreme, keeping along the grass which here grows in the river to a great extent, till we reached the village, consisting of nothing but temporary huts of reed, which, in the course of a few weeks, with the rising of the waters, were to be removed farther inland. Notwithstanding its frail character, this poor little village was interesting on account of its wharfs, where a number of boats were repairing. The master of *Caillie's Journey to Timbuktu*, vol. ii., p. 30.

t 1' Tdrashim" means a house or dwelling.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

our own craft residing here (for all the boatmen on this river are serfs, or nearly in that condition), we were obliged to halt almost an hour and a half; but in order not to excite the curiosity of the people, I thought it prudent to remain in my boat. But even there I was incommode with a great number of visitors, who were very anxious to know exactly what sort of person I was. It was here that we heard the unsatisfactory news that El Bak-\(^y\), whose name as a just and intelligent chief alone had given me confidence to undertake this journey, was absent at the time in Gdindam, whither he had gone in order to settle a dispute which had arisen between the Tawirek and the Berabfsh; and as' from the very beginning, when I was planning my journey to Timbuktu, I had based the whole confidence of my success upon the noble and trustworthy character which was attributed to the Sheikh El Bakiy by my informants, this piece of information produced a serious effect upon me.

At length we set out again on our interesting voyage, following first a southeasterly, then a northeasterly direction along this branch, which, for the first three miles and a half; retained some importance, being here about 200 yards wide, when the channel divided a second time, the more considerable branch turning off toward Y6lluwa and Zegilia, and other smaller hamlets situated on the islands of Day, while the water-course which we followed dwindled away to a mere narrow meadow-water, bearing the appearance of an artificial ditch or canal, which, as I now heard, is entirely dry during the dry season, so that it becomes impossible to embark directly at Kibara for places situated higher up or lower down the river. But at that time I had formed the erroneous idea that this canal never became navigable for more than four months in the year, and thence concluded that it would have been impossible for Cailli6 to have reached Kibara in his boat in the month of April. The navigation of this water became so difficult, that all my people were obliged to leave the boat, which with great difficulty was dragged on by the boatmen, who themselves entered the water and lifted and pushed it along with their hands. But before we reached Kibara, which is situated on the slope of a sandy eminence, the narrow and shallow channel widened to a tolerably large basin of circular shape; and here, in front of the town, seven good-sized boats were lying, giving to the whole place some little life. Later in the season, when the channel becomes navigable for larger boats, the intercourse
ARRIVAL AT KABARA.
becomes much more animated. During the palmy days of the Songhay empire, an uninterrupted intercourse took place between Gigho and Timbdktu on the one side, and between Timbuktu and Jenni on the other, and a numerous fleet was always lying here under the orders of an admiral of great power and influence. The basin has such a regular shape that it looks as if it were artificial; but, nevertheless, it may be the work of nature, as Kibara from the most ancient times has been the harbor of Timbiiktu, and at times seems even to have been of greater importance than the latter place itself.
A branch of the river turns off to the east, without however reaching the main trunk, so that in general, except when the whole country is inundated, boats from Kibara which are going down the river must first return in a southwesterly direction toward Kor6me, in order to reach the main branch. Even at the present time, however, when this whole region is plunged into an abyss of anarchy and misrule, the scene was not entirely wanting in life; for women were filling their pitchers or washing clothes on large stones jutting out from the water, while a number of idle people had collected on the beach to see who the stranger was that had just arrived.
At length we lay to, and sending two of my people on shore in order to obtain quarters, I followed them as soon as possible, when I was informed that they had procured a comfortable dwelling for me. The house where I was lodged was a large and grand building (if we take into account the general relations of this country), standing on the very top of the mound on the slope of which the town is situated. It was of an oblong shape, consisting of very massive clay walls, which were even adorned, in a slight degree, with a rude kind of relief; and it included, besides two anterooms, an inner court-yard, with a good many smaller chambers, and an upper story. The interior, with its small stores of every kind, and its assortment of sheep, ducks, fowls, and pigeons, in different departments, resembled Noah's ark, and afforded a cheerful sight of homely comfort which had been preserved here from more ancient and better times, notwithstanding the exactions of Fuiibe and Im6shagh.
Having taken possession of the two ante-rooms for my people and luggage, I endeavored to make myself as comfortable as possible; while the busy landlady, a tall and stout personage, in the absence of her husband, a wealthy Songhay merchant, endeavored

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
to make herself agreeable, and offered me the various delicacies of her store for
sale; but these were extremely scanty, the chief attraction to us, besides a small
bowl of milk seasoned with honey, being some onions, of which I myself was not
less in want than my people for seasoning our simple food; but fresh ones were
not even to be got here, the article sold being a peculiar preparation which is
imported from Sansindi, the onions, which are of very small size, being cut into
slices and put in water, then pounded in a wooden mortar, dried again, and, by
means of some butter, made up into a sort of round ball, which is sold in small
pats of an inch and a half in diameter for five shells each: these are called
"liwashi" in Fufiide, or "gabii" in the Songhay language. Besides this article, so
necessary for seasoning the food, I bought a little bulinga, or vegetable butter, in
order to light up the dark room where I had taken up my quarters; but the night
which I passed here was a very uncomfortable one, on account of the number of
musquitoes which infest the whole place. Thus broke the 6th of September a
very important day for me, as it was to determine the kind of reception I was to
meet with in this quarter. But notwithstanding the uncertainty of my prospects, I
felt cheerful and full of confidence; and, as I was now again firmly established on
dry soil, I went early in the morning to see my horse, which had successfully
crossed all the different branches lying between Kibara and Sarayimbo; but I was
sorry to find him in a very weak and emaciated condition.
While traversing the village I was surprised at the many clay buildings which are
to be seen here, amounting to between 150 and 200; however, these are not so
much the dwellings of the inhabitants of Kibara themselves, but serve rather as
magazines for storing up the merchandise belonging to the people of, and the
foreign merchants residing in, Timbdktu and Sansindi. There are two small
market-places, one containing about twelve stalls or sheds, where all sorts of
articles are sold, the other being used exclusively for meat. Although it was still
early in the day, women were already busy boiling rice, which is sold in small
portions, or made up into thin cakes boiled with bulinga, and sold for five shells
each. Almost all the inhabitants, who may muster about 2000, are Songhay; but
the authorities belong to the tribe of the Filbe, whose principal wealth consists of
cattle, the only exception being the office of the inspector of the harbor
-a very ancient office, repeatedly mentioned by A'hemd Bibj--

UNWELCOME VISITORS.
which at present is in the hands of MuilUy K~sim, a sheriff whose family is said
to have emigrated originally from the Gharb or Morocco, but who has become so
Sudinized that he has forgotten all his former knowledge of Arabic. On account of
the cattle being driven to a great distance, I found that milk was very scarce and
dear. The inhabitants cultivate a little rice, but have some cotton, besides b~mia,
or Corchorus olitorius, and melons of various descriptions.
Having returned to my quarters from my walk through the town, I had to
distribute several presents to some people whom El Waliti chose to represent as
his brothers and friends. Having then given to himself a new, glittering, black tobe
of Nilpe manufacture, a new "hif," and the white bernis which I wore myself, I at
length prevailed upon him to set out for the town, in order to obtain protection for me; for as yet I was an outlaw in the country, and any ruffian who suspected my character might have slain me, without scarcely any body caring any thing about it; and circumstances seemed to assume a very unfavorable aspect: for there was a great movement among the Tawirek in the neighborhood, when it almost seemed as if some news of my real character had transpired. Not long after my two messengers were gone, a Tirki chief, of the name of Kngha, with tall and stately figure, and of noble expressive features, as far as his shawl around the face allowed them to be seen, but, like the whole tribe of the K6l-heckikan to which he belongs, bearing a very bad character as a freebooter, made his appearance, armed with spear and sword, and obtruded himself upon me while I was partaking of my simple dish of rice; notwithstanding which, he took his seat at a short distance opposite to me. Not wishing to invite him to a share in my poor frugal repast by the usual "bismillah," I told him, first in Arabic and then in Fulffilde, that I was* dining, and had no leisure to speak with him at present. Whereupon he took his leave, but returned after a short while, and, in a rather peremptory manner, solicited a present from me, being, as he said, a great chief of the country; but as I was not aware of the extent of his power, and being also afraid that others might imitate his example, I told him that I could not give him anything before I had made due inquiries respecting his real importance from my companion who had just gone to the town. But he was not at all satisfied with my argument; representing himself as a great "dhlem," or evil-doer, and that as such he might do me much harm; till at length, after a very spirited altercation, I got rid of him.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
He was scarcely gone, when the whole house was filled with armed men, horse and foot, from Timb-kutu, most of them clad in light blue tobes, tightly girt round the waist with a shawl, and dressed in short breeches reaching only to the knee, as if they were going to fight, their head being covered with a straw hat of the peculiar shape of a little hut with regular thatch-work, such as is fashionable among the inhabitants of Misina and of the provinces farther west. They were armed with spears, besides which some of them wore also a sword: only a few of them had muskets. Entering the house rather abruptly, and squatting down in the ante-chambers and court-yard, just where they could find a place, they stared at me not a little, and began asking of each other who this strange-looking fellow might be, while I was reclining on my two smaller boxes, having my larger ones and my other luggage behind me. I was rather at a loss to account for their intrusion, until I learned, upon inquiry from my landlady, that they were come in order to protect their cattle from the Tawrek, who at the time were passing through the place, and who had driven away some of their property. The very person whom they dreaded was the chief Kn6ha, who had just left me, though they could not make out his whereabouts. Having refreshed themselves during the hot hours of the day, these people started off; but the alarm about the cattle continued the whole of the afternoon, and not less than 200 armed men came into my apartments in the course of an hour.
My messengers not returning at the appointed time from their errand to the town, I had at length retired to rest in the evening, when shortly before midnight they arrived, together with Sidi A'lawite, the Sheikh El Bakiy's brother, and several of his followers, who took up their quarters on the terrace of my house in order to be out of the reach of the mosquitoes; and after they had been regaled with a good supper, which had been provided beforehand by some of the townspeople, I went to pay my respects to them. It was an important interview; for, although this was not the person for whom my visit was specially intended, and whose favorable or unfavorable disposition would influence the whole success of my arduous undertaking, yet for the present I was entirely in his hands, and all depended upon the manner in which he received me. Now my two messengers had only disclosed to himself personally that I was a Christian, while at the same time

INTERVIEW WITH SI'DI A'LAWA'TE.

they had laid great stress upon the circumstance that, although a Christian, I was under the special protection of the Sultan of Stambfil; and Sidi A'lawite inquired therefore of me, with great earnestness and anxiety, as to the peculiar manner in which I enjoyed the protection of that great Mohammedan sovereign. Now, it was most unfortunate for me that I had no direct letter from that quarter. Even the firmin, with which we had been provided by the Bashi of Tripoli, had been delivered to the governor for whom it was destined, so that at the time I had nothing with me to show but a firmin, which I had used on my journey in Egypt, and which of course had no especial relation to the case in question. The want of such a general letter of protection from the Sultan of Constantinople, which I had solicited with so much anxiety to be sent after me, was in the sequel the chief cause of my difficult and dangerous position in Timbuktu; for, furnished with such a letter, it would have been easy to have imposed silence upon my adversaries and enemies there, and especially upon the merchants from Morocco, who were instigated by the most selfish jealousy to raise all sorts of intrigues against me.

Having heard my address with attention, although I was not able to establish every point so clearly as I could have wished, the sheikh's brother promised me protection, and desired me to be without any apprehension with regard to my safety; and thus terminated my first interview with this man, who, on the whole, inspired me with a certain degree of confidence, although I was glad to think that he was not the man upon whom I had to rely for my safety. Having then had a farther chat with his telamid, or pupils, with whom I passed for a Mohammedan, I took leave of the party, and retired to rest in the close apartments of the lower story of the house.

Wednesday, September 7th. After a rather restless night, the day broke when I was at length to enter Timb-dktu; but we had a good deal of trouble in performing this last short stage of our journey, deprived as we were of beasts of burden; for the two camels which the people had brought from the town, in order to carry my boxes, proved much too weak, and it was only after a long delay that we were
able to procure eleven donkeys for the transport of all my luggage. Meanwhile, the rumor of a traveler of importance having arrived, had spread far and wide, and several inhabitants of the place sent a breakfast both for myself and my protector. Just at the moment when we were at length mount-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ing our horses, it seemed as if the Tirki chief Kngha was to cause me some more trouble, for in the morning he had sent me a vessel of butter, in order thus to acquire a fair claim upon my generosity; and, coming now for his reward, he was greatly disappointed when he heard the present had fallen into the hands of other people.

It was ten o'clock when our cavalcade at length put itself in motion, ascending the sand-hills which rise close behind the village of Kbara, and which, to my great regret, had prevented my obtaining a view of the town from the top of our terrace. The contrast of this desolate scenery with the character of the fertile banks of the river which I had just left behind was remarkable. The whole tract bore decidedly the character of a desert, although the path was thickly lined on both sides with thorny bushes and stunted trees, which were being cleared away in some places, in order to render the path less obstructed and more safe, as the Tawirek never fail to infest it, and at present were particularly dreaded on account of their having killed a few days previously three petty Tawiti traders on their way to A'rawin. It is from the unsafe character of this short road between the harbor and the town, that the spot, about half way between Kibara and Timbiiktu, bears the remarkable name of "Ur-immindes," "he does not hear," meaning the place where the cry of the unfortunate victim is not heard from either side.

Having traversed two sunken spots designated by especial names, where, in certain years, when the river rises to an unusual height, as happened in the course of the same winter, the water of the inundation enters, and occasionally forms even a navigable channel; and leaving on one side the talha-tree of the Weli Silah, covered with innumerable rags of the superstitious natives, who expect to be generously rewarded by their saint with a new shirt, we approached the town; but its dark masses of clay not being illuminated by bright sunshine, for the sky was thickly overcast, and the atmosphere filled with sand, were scarcely to be distinguished from the sand rubbish heaped all round; and there was no opportunity for looking attentively about, as a body of people were coming toward us, in order to pay their compliments to the stranger, and bid him welcome. This was a very important moment, as, if they had felt the slightest suspicion with regard to my character, they might easily have prevented my entering the town at all, and thus even endangered my life.

CP

ENTRANCE INTO TIMBUKTU.

I therefore took the hint of A'lawite, who recommended me to make a start in advance, in order to anticipate the salute of these people who had come to meet
us; and, putting my horse to a gallop, and gun in hand, I galloped up to meet them, when I was received with many salims. But a circumstance occurred which might have proved fatal, not only to my enterprise, but even to my own personal safety, as there was a man among the group who addressed me in Turkish, which I had almost entirely forgotten; so that I could with difficulty make a suitable answer to his compliment; but, avoiding farther indiscreet questions, I pushed on, in order to get under safe cover.

Having then traversed the rubbish which has accumulated round the ruined clay wall of the town, and left on one side a row of dirty reed huts which encompass the whole of the place, we entered the narrow streets and lanes, or, as the people of Timbuctu say, the tijeriten, which scarcely allowed two horses to proceed abreast. But I was not a little surprised at the populous and wealthy character which this quarter of the town, the Söne, Gidngu, exhibited, many of the houses rising to the height of two stories, and in their façade evincing even an attempt at architectural adornment. Thus, taking a more westerly turn, and followed by a numerous troop of people, we passed the house of the Sheikh El Bakiy, where I was desired to fire a pistol; but as I had all my arms loaded with ball, I prudently declined to do so, and left it to one of my people to do honor to the house of our host. We thus reached the house on the other side of the street, which was destined for my residence, and I was glad when I found myself safely in my new quarters.

But before describing my residence in this town, I shall make a few general remarks with regard to the history of Songhay and Timb-iktu.

CHAPTER LXVI.
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY AND TIMBU'KTU.
PREVIOUSLY to my journey into the region of the Niger, scarcely any data were known with regard to the history of this wide and important tract, except a few isolated facts, elicited with great in-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
telligence and research by Mr. Cooley* from El Bekrf, the history of Ebn Khaldin, the obscure and confused report of Leo about the great Ischia, and the barren statement of the conquest of Tim'buiktu and G-gho, or G6go, by MUI'y A'hmed el Dh6hebi, as mentioned by some historians of Morocco and Spain. But I myself was so successful as to have an opportunity of perusing a complete history of the kingdom of Songhay, from the very dawn of historical records down to the year 1640 of our era; although, unfortunately, circumstances prevented my bringing back a complete copy of this manuscript, which forms a respectable quarto volume, and I was only able, during the few days that I had this manuscript in my hands during my stay in Gand6, to make short extracts of those passages from its contents which I thought of the highest interest in an historical and geographical point of view.

These annals, according to the universal statement of the learned people of Negroland, were written by a distinguished person of the name of A'hmed Bib6, although in the work itself that individual is only spoken of in the third person;
and it would seem that additions had been made to the book by another hand; but on this point I can not speak with certainty, as I had not sufficient time to read over the latter portion of the work with the necessary attention and care. As for A'hmmed B-bi, we know from other interesting documents which have lately come to light, that he was a man of great learning, considering the country in which he was born, having composed a good many books' or essays, and instructed a considerable number of pupils. Moreover, we learn that he was a man of the highest respectability, so that even after he had been carried away prisoner by the victorious army of MulMy A'hmmed el Dh6hebi, his very enemies treated him with the greatest respect, and the inhabitants of Morocco, in general, regarded him with the highest veneration.

This character of the author would alone be sufficient to guarantee the trustworthiness of his history, as far as he was able to go back into the past with any degree of accuracy, from the oral

* Cooley, "Negroland of the Arabs."

† Revue Africaine, vol. i., p. 287, "Conquête du Soudan par les Marocains," par le Baron Macguckin de Slane. Journal Asiatique, 1855, "Literature du Soudan," par M. le Professor Cherbonneau. $ This character is most strikingly indicated in those very remarks which M. le Baron de Slane has published in the notice (see preceding note) which was intended to depreciate the merit of A'hmmed B'dftb as a historian.

282

A'HMED BA'BA' THE HISTORIAN.

traditions of the people or from written documents of an older period: for that the beginning of his annals, like that of every other nation, should be enveloped in a certain degree of mystery and uncertainty is very natural, and our author himself is prudent enough to Pass over the earlier part in the most rapid and cursory manner, only mentioning the mere name of each king, except that he states the prominent facts with regard to the founder of each dynasty. Nay, even what he says of the founder of the dynasty of the Z, allowance being made for the absurd interpretation of names, which is usual with Arabs and Orientals in general, and also the particulars which he gives with regard to Kilun, or Kilnu, founder of the dynasty of the Sonni,* are very characteristic, and certainly true in the main. For there is no doubt that the founder of the first dynasty immigrated from a foreign country—a circumstance which is confirmed by other accounts—and nothing is more probable than that he abolished the most striking features of pagan superstition, namely, the worship of a peculiar kind of fish, which was probably the famous ayii, or Alanatus, of which I have spoken on a former occasion,t and of whose habitat in the waters of the Niger I shall say more farther on; while 'All Killun succeeded in usurping the royal power by liberating his country from the sovereignty of the kings of Melle, who had conquered Songhay about the middle of the fourteenth century. Nor can there be any doubt of the truth of the statement that ZKasf, the fifteenth king of the dynasty of the Zk, about the year 400 of the Hejra, or in the beginning of the eleventh century of our era, embraced Islam, and was the first Mohammedan king of Songhay. No man who studies impartially
those very extracts which I have been able to make from the manuscript, in great haste and under the most unfavorable circumstances, and which were translated and published in the journal of the Leipsic Oriental Society: by Mr. Rails, can deny that they contain a vast amount of valuable information. But the knowledge which Europeans possessed of those countries, before my discoveries, was so limited as to render the greater part of the contents of my extracts, which are intimately related to localities formerly entirely unknown, or in connection with historical facts not better ascertained, difficult of comprehension. But with the light

* According to Leo, this dynasty emigrated from Libya.


283

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

now shed by my journey and my researches over these regions and their inhabitants, I have no hesitation in asserting that the work of A'hmed Bib% will be one of the most important additions which the present age has made to the history of mankind, in a branch which was formerly almost unknown.

A'hmed Bibi, however, limits himself to the records of the political relations of Songhay, and does not enter into any ethnological questions, leaving us entirely in the dark as to the original seats of the tribe; for while in general, on the banks of the Niger, the towns of Tindfrma and Dire are supposed to be the orginal seats of the Songhay, A'hmed Bibi apparently restricts the limits of the ancient Songhay to the eastern quarter around Kitikiya, stating distinctly* that the town of Timbuktu was not under the authority of any foreign king before it became subjected to the dominion of Kunkur-Mdisa, the celebrated King of Melle. Yet from this statement we can not conclude with absolute certainty that the banks of the great river to the southwest of that town were not comprised in the kingdom of Songhay before that period; for Timbuktu, lying on the north side of the river, and being founded by the Tawirek or Im6shagh, was an independent place by itself, and in the beginning not closely connected with the history of the surrounding region. It might easily have happened, therefore, that the Songhay language was not at all spoken in Timbuktu at a former period, without any conclusion being drawn from this circumstance respecting the country to the south and southwest of the river. But although, according to A'hmed BibA}s account, the foundation of the place was entirely due to the Im6shagh, it is probable that, from the very beginning, a portion of the inhabitants of the town belonged to the Songhay nation; and I rather suppose, therefore, that the original form of the name was the Songhay form Tdimbutu, from whence the Im6shagh made Tumb tku, which was afterward changed by the Arabs into Tumbuktu.1


t "The palace which was erected in Timbdktu was called 'm'aduk,' or Im'adugu.' This is evidently a Mandingo word, meaning the 'house of the king;' but it was certainly called so in the language of the conquerors, and not in that of the natives, and A'hmed Bib understands the former when he says that the building
was called by this name in their language. "-Journ. of Leipsic Oriental Soc., ix., p. 525.

The u sound in the first syllable of the name is the only original one, not only in the Songhay, but also in the Arabic form; but it has gradually been changed into an i and almost all the Arabs at the present time pronounce and write Tinbuktu. The town was probably so called, because it was built originally.

SONNI 'ALL.

But the series of chronological facts which we learn from A'hmed Bibi, or from other sources, I shall give in a tabular form in the Appendix. Here I will only draw the reader's attention to a few of the most striking facts, and make some general remarks on the character of that history.

It is very remarkable, that while Islam in the two larger westerly kingdoms which flourished previously to that of Songhay I mean Ghana, or Ghinata, and Melle-had evidently emanated from the north, and especially from Sijilmansa, Songhay appears to have been civilized from the other side, namely, from Egypt, the intimate relation with which is proved by many interesting circumstances, although, in a political respect, it could only adopt the same forms of government which had been developed already in Ghana and Melle; nay, we shall find even some of the same titles. With respect to Ghina, we learn from A'hem Bibi the very interesting fact* that twenty kings were supposed to have ruled over that kingdom at the time when Mohammed spread the new creed which was to agitate and to remodel half of the globe.

The kingdom of Songhay, even after 'All Killun had made it independent of Melle, could not fail to remain rather weak and insignificant, as even Timbaktu, and probably a great portion of the country to the east of that town, was not comprised in its limits: nay, it even appears that the kingdom was still, at times, dependent in a certain degree upon Melle, the great kingdom on the upper course of the Niger; and it was not until almost 150 years after the time of 'All Killun that the powerful king Sonni 'All, the Sonni H6li of Leo Africanus, conquered Timbuktu, wresting it, with immense slaughter, A.H. 894, A.D. 1488, from the hands of the Tawirek, who had themselves conquered it from Melle. This king, although he is represented by all the learned men of Negroland as a very cruel and sanguinary prince, was no doubt a great conqueror; for although it was he who, in taking possession of this town, inflicted upon the inhabitants a most severe punishment, surpassing even the horrors which had accompanied the taking of the town by the King of M6si, nevertheless it was he also who gave the first impulse to the great importance which Timb-iktu henceforth obtained, by conquering the central

in a hollow or cavity in the sand-hills. Tifmbutu means hole or womb in the Songhay language: if it were a Temdshight word, it would be written Tinbuktu. The name is generally interpreted by Europeans, well of Buktu, but tin has nothing to do with well. See vol. i., p. 272, note. * See A'hem Bibi, 1. e. p. 526.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
seat of the old empire of Ghfnata, and thus inducing the rich merchants from the north, who had formerly been trading with Bfru or Walita, and who had even occasionally resided there, to transfer their trade to Timbaktu and Gigho. It is the same king, no doubt, that attracted the attention of the Portuguese, who, in the reigns of Jogo and Emmanuel, sent several embassies into the interior, not only to Melle,* which at that time had already greatly declined in power and importance, but also to Timbuktu, where Sonni 'All seems to have principally resided; and it was perhaps partly on account of the relations which he entertained with the Christian king (to whom he even opened a trading station as far inland as Wadin or H6den), besides his cruelty against the chiefs of religion, that the Mohammedans were less satisfied with his government; for there is no doubt that he was not a strict Mohammedan.

It was Haj Mohammed A'skia who founded the new homonymous dynasty of the A'skia, by rising against his liege lord, the son of Sonni 'All, and, after a desperate struggle, usurping the royal power; and, notwithstanding the glorious career of that great conqueror, we may fancy we can see in the unfortunate circumstances of the latter part of the reign of that king, a sort of Divine punishment for the example which he had given of revolt.

We have seen that the dynasty of the Zi, of which that of the Sonni seems to have been a mere continuation, immigrated from abroad; and it is a circumstance of the highest interest to see king Mohammed A'skia-perhaps the greatest sovereign that ever ruled over Negroland-who was a native of this very country, born in the island of N6ni, a little below Sinder, in the Niger, setting us an example of the highest degree of development of which negroes are capable. For, while Sonni 'Alf, like his forefathers, still belonged to that family of foreign settlers who either came from Yemen, according to the current tradition, or, as is more credible, immigrated from Libya, as Leo states, the dynasty of the A'skia was entirely of native descent; and it is the more remarkable, if we consider that this king was held in the highest esteem and veneration by the most learned and rigid Mohammedans, while Sonni 'All had rendered himself so odious, that people did not know how to give full vent to their indignation in heaping the most opprobrious epithets upon him.

It is of no small interest to a person who endeavors to take a comprehensive view of the various races of mankind, to observe how, during the time when the Portuguese, carried away by the most heroic enterprise and the most praiseworthy energy, having gradually discovered and partly taken possession of the whole western coast of Africa, and having at length doubled its southernmost promontory, under the guidance of Almeida and Albuquerque, founded their Indian empire, that at this same time a negro king in the interior of the continent not only extended his conquests far and wide, from the centre of HiHusa almost to the borders of the Atlantic, and from the pagan country of Mosi, in 12' northern
latitude, as far as Tawit to the south of Morocco, but also governed the subjected tribes with justice and equity, causing wellbeing and comfort to spring up everywhere within the borders of his extensive dominions,* and introducing such of the institutions of Mohammedan civilization as he considered might be useful to his subjects. It is only to be lamented that, as is generally the case in historical records, while we are tolerably well informed as to the warlike proceedings of this king, it is merely from circumstances which occasionally transpire and are slightly touched upon, that we can draw conclusions as to the interior condition of his empire; and, on this point, I will make a few observations, before I proceed to the causes which rendered the foundation of this empire so unstable.

In a former part of my researches I have entered into the history and polity of the empire of Bornu, and it is interesting to compare with the latter that of the Songhay empire, which attained the zenith of its power just at the time when B'rnu like* It is not to be wondered at that Leo, who visited Negroland just at the time when this prince was aspiring to power, and who must have written the greater part of what he relates of him and his conquests from information which he had received after he had left the country, should treat this usurper, whose identity with his Ischia can not be doubtful, with very little indulgence; and it even seems as if he purposely intended to give a bad interpretation to every thing which the king undertook, a fact which is clearly evident from what he relates with regard to his proceedings in H(usa. That the taxes imposed by him upon his subjects may have been heavy, I concede may be true, as without a considerable revenue he was not able to keep up a strong military force; but at least they evidently must have been much less than they were in the time of Sonni 'Ali, when almost the whole population was engaged in war. We find a very heavy duty upon salt, from each load £5.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

wise, having recovered, in consequence of the energy and warlike spirit of the king 'Ali Ghajidgni, from the wounds inflicted upon it by the loss of Kinem, the desperate struggle with the tribe of the Soy, and a series of civil wars, attained its most glorious period during the reign of the two Edris, in the course of the sixteenth century of our era.

In instituting such a comparison between these two extensive kingdoms of Negroland we soon discover that the Songhay empire, although likewise stated to be founded by a Libyan dynasty, was far more despotic than its eastern rival; and it is in vain that we here look either for a divan of twelve great officers, forming a powerful and highly influential aristocracy, or that eclectic form of choosing a successor, both of which we find in B6ru: nay, not even the office of a vizier meets our eye, as we peruse the tolerably rich annals of Ahmed Bibi. We find, no doubt, powerful officers also in the Songhay empire, as must naturally be the case in a large kingdom; but these appear to have been merely governors of provinces, whom the king installed or deposed at his pleasure, and who exercised no influence upon the internal affairs of the kingdom, except when it was plunged into civil war.
These governors bore generally the title of "farina" or "fer6ng," a title which is evidently of Mandingo origin, and was traditionally derived from the institutions of the kingdom of Melle, while the native Songhay title of "koy" appears to be used only in order to denote officers of certain provinces which originally were more intimately related to Songhay; and in this respect it is a remarkable fact that the Governor of Timbuktu or Tuimbutu is constantly called Tu'imbutu-koy, and is only once called Timbutumangha. Besides this province, those which we find mentioned in the report of A'hmmed Bdbi are the following, going from east to west :-Dendi, or, as it is now generally called, D~ndina, the country between Kebsi and S,y,t which I have described in the account of my own journey, and which seems to have contained a Songhay population from tolerably ancient times, at least before the beginning of the sixteenth century; but we find none of the

LIST OF PROVINCES.

three divisions of this important province specified, not even Kenga or Zigha. This is to be regretted, as they appear to have been of ancient origin, and as their history, especially that of Z6gha, which seems to have derived its name from the more celebrated town' of the same name on the upper course of the river, would be highly interesting.

The country from hence toward the capital we never find comprised by A'hmmed Bdbi under a general name, nor do we meet with the names of Z6b6rma or Z&rma, which I therefore conclude to be of more recent origin, although that country, at present so named, was evidently comprised in the kingdom of Songhay. West of Gigho, on the banks of the river, we next find the province of Banku or Bengu," which evidently comprised that part of the river which is studded with islands, as we find the inspector of the harbor of Kihara taking refuge in the district of Banku, with the whole of his fleet, after the capture of the town by the people of Morocco. Passing then by the province of Bantal, the limits of which I have not been able to make out, we come to the province of Bel or Bal, which evidently comprised the country on the north side of the river round about Timbuktu, and perhaps some distance westward; but without including that town itself, which had a governor of its own, nor even the harbor of K6bara, which at that time was of sufficient importance to be placed under 'the inspection of a special officer or "farma," who, however, seems to have been subjected in a certain degree to the inspection of the Bal-m'a, or the Governor of Bal, who was able to call him to account.t The governor' of the province of Bal, who bore the peculiar title of "Bal-m'a," a word likewise of Mandingo origin, m'a corresponding to the Songhay word "koy," seems to have been of great importance in a military respect, while in a moral point of view the governor of the town of Timbuktu enjoyed perhaps greater authority, and the office of the Timbutu-koy seems always to have been filled by a learned man or fdkih,
proving that this town was regarded at that time as the seat of learning; and that
the fikih who governed the town of Timbuktu possessed great power is evident
from the fact that A'hmed Bibi mentions it as as a proof of great neglect on the
part of Al Hidi, the Governor

* That Banku lay between Timbuktu and Ghgo is evident from the fact that the
governor of that province fled to Gggho, when Mohammed Sadik, the Governor
of Bel or Bal, marched upon the capital of the empire.

† See the account in the Journal of the Leipsic Oriental Society, p. 545.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of Tindirma, that he did not go in person to the kidhi to pay him his compliments.
Proceeding then westward from Bal and Timbuktu, we come to the very important
province of Kirmina, with the capital Tindirma, which very often served as a
residence for the king himself, and became the chosen seat of A'skfa D~dud. The
importance of this province of Kirmina seems to have been based, not merely
upon its military strength and populousness, but upon the circumstance of its
having to supply Songhay Proper, together with its two large towns of Gggho and
Kikia, with grain; and it is evidently on this account that the governor of that
province is on one occasion called the store-keeper and provider of the king.*

"Southwest from the province of Kirmina there were two provinces, Dirmat and
Bara, the exact boundaries of which it is difficult to determine, except that we
know that Bara must have lain rather along the southeasterly branch of the river,
while Dirmat, having probably derived this name from the town of Dfre, is most
likely to be sought for on the northwesterly branch, although Cailil6 places
Dfriman, as he calls it, south of the river. The province or district of Sh6'at may
probably be identical with the district round the important town of S'a, situated a
short distance to the northeast of the lake Debu, and of which farther notice will
be taken in the itineraries. Proceeding farther in. the same direction, we have the
province of Misina, a name which, under the form of M6sfna, is mentioned as
early as the latter part of the eleventh century by El Bekr,§ but the limits of which
it is very difficult to define, although it is clear that its central part comprises the
islands formed by the different branches of the river, the Miyo bahl~o and the
Miyo ghan~o or dhann6o, and probably comprised in former times the ancient
and most important town of Zigha, the chief seat of Tekr, which Htiy Mohammed
A'skfa had conquered in the beginning of his reign. It is peculiar, however, and
probably serves to show the preponderance of the element of the Fiilbe in M6sina,
where they seem to have es* Journal of the Leipsic Oriental Society, p. 541:

"Then he made Kishya Ferdng of Kdlmina, and gave him the office of mezz'a tbdv
It is not improbable that Dirmat was originally the name or title of the Governor
of Dire, as Baim'a was that of the Governor of Bal, and that it was in after-times
conferred upon the province of which he was the ruler.-Caillid, vol. ii., p. 29.
Slane, p. 150: . p. .4
PROVINCES CONTINUED.

established themselves from very ancient times, that the governor of this province bore the title of M’ina-mangha, instead of Msina-farma. To the northwest of Misina, we have the province of Bighena, which comprised the central portion of the ancient kingdom of Ghina or Ghinata, and the important town of Bifux or Waljita, which, before Timbliktu rose to greater importance, that is to say, before the time of Sonni ‘All, was the great centre of commerce in this part of legroland. The province of Bighena was also of considerable importance on account of its situation, bordering, as it did, closely upon the central parts of the empire of Melle, which, at this time, formed almost the only portion that remained of that vast empire, and which was nearly overwhelmed by the Songhay in the course of the sixteenth century. Even the Im6shagh or Taw-.rek became tributaries.

South of the river two other provinces are mentioned by A’hmed Bib4 namely, the province of H6mbori, which from the nature of the country was also called Tondi, or El Hajri, and Burgu,* or rather Barba, though the latter country was apparently never entirely subjected.

The governors of these provinces were certainly possessed of considerable power, and belonging, as they did in general, to the royal family, exercised a very prejudicial influence upon the destinies of the empire, as at the same time the central government became weak and debilitated. The Governor of Kiirmina, especially, conscious of the important influence and the rich character of his province, was very prone to mutiny and revolt. For as it was certainly a great advance in the scale of civilization that it was not customary among the Songhay to murder the younger brothers of the newly-elected king, or to render them incapable of aspiring to the royal dignity by depriving them of their sight (as is still the custom in Widiy), or in some other manner disabling them; so, on the other hand, it was no doubt very prejudicial to the stability of the empire that so many royal princes were constantly installed as governors of powerful provinces, some

* In the passage (Journal of the Leipsic Oriental Society), p. 546, in the seventh line, a second 4 is added by mistake. The name can not be read as Burgu-koy, as all the parties composing the army of the pretender Mohammed e’ Sadik, are said to have belonged to the people of the west, while Burgu is situated at the S.E. frontier of Songhay; nay, it is quite clear, from page 547, that the Barakoy is meant, and not the Burgu-koy.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of them situated at a great distance from the capital. Such a government could only prosper under the rule of a powerful king, such as Mohammed el Hij A’skfa was during his most vigorous period.

On the other hand, we find that the government of Songhay was far more despotic than that of Bornu, where, as I have had occasion to relate,* the election of a new king from among the royal princes was placed in the hands of three electors, themselves chosen from the most trustworthy men of the country; while the kings of Songhay appear originally to have designated their own successor among the
royal princes, there being even an established dignity of something like an heir-apparent or crown-prince, with the title of "ferdng-mangha:" but this principle, as is naturally the case in barbaric states without any written constitution, was only observed as long as the king exercised paramount authority, while we see in other cases the army or even a powerful governor choosing a successor, as that of Dendi, who deposed Mohammed Binkorf and installed in his place A'skfa Ismail. As I stated before, we do not even find in Songhay a regular vizier; but we find a sort of treasurer in the person of the "khatfb," that is to say theimidm who preaches before the congregation every Friday. Thus we find the great Hij Mohammed A'skfa taking the whole of the money which he thought necessary for his royal pilgrimage, viz., 300,000 mithkils, out of the royal treasury, which was in the hands of the Khatib 'Omir; but we even find, in another passage, the same khatfb authorized to liberate a princely prisoner; and from a third passage it is quite evident that the khatfb in Gigho exercised the same authority as the kidhi in Timb-6ktu, although we find a k6dhi besides him in the capital.

There appears to have been an established state prison in Songhay, namely, in a place called Kant-i, the exact situation of which, however, I have not yet been able to ascertain. This

* Vol. ii., p. 27.

The exact meaning of the title "ferdng-mangha," and the authority with which it was invested, are not quite clear; for although there is little doubt that "ferdng-mangha" signifies "great prince," it is remarkable that on various occasions we find two "ferdng-mangha" instead of one; and it is stated of Mohammed Ban A'skia, that he expressly designated two (J. 0. S., p. 545). Moreover, we find that neither of these two was taken into account in appointing a successor (Ib., p. 546). But another passage (Ib., p. 552) is not less clear, stating plainly that, the ferdng-mangha having fallen in the battle, the A'skfa named another prince as his successor, implying clearly the identity of the title "ferdng-mangha" with that of heir-apparent. : Journ. Lcips. Orient. Soc. p. 533. § Ib., p. 555.

POLITICAL CONDITION OF SONGHAY.

prison could not fail to become of great importance as the dissensions and feuds in the royal family increased; and there appears to be no doubt that at times it was quite full of royal prisoners, and in this respect, as well as on account of the various assassinations which occurred there, fully corresponded with the character of the Tower in the Middle Ages. There is no doubt that polygamy, with its consequent intrigues in the harfn, was the chief cause of the speedy decline of the Songhay empire from the high position it had attained under the rule of Sonni 'All and Hij Mohammed A'skfa. The large number of ambitious children that A'skfa Ddtid, the most peaceful of the Songhay rulers, left behind him, seems especially to have contributed in a great measure to this speedy decline; but the example had been set by that ruler himself, who, having no other claims to the royal dignity than his talent and energy, revolted against his liege lord, whom he conquered and supplanted, but had himself to endure the misfortune of being persecuted, and finally dethroned in his old age, by his own son Musa.
On the subject of the manners and customs and the state of society in Soughay during its period of power we find but little in the short extracts which I was able to make from the history of A'hmed Bibd; still a few hints as to some remarkable usages are to be gleaned from them. Islam, as we have seen, had been adopted by the royal family at the beginning of the eleventh century of our era; but we learn from the eminent Andalusian geographer El Bekri, who finished his work on Africa in the year 1067, that while the king was a Moslim by law, receiving at his accession to the throne, as emblems of his authority, a sword, ring, and a copy of the Kurin, which were said to have been sent by an Emir M-6menfn (from Egypt), the greater part of the inhabitants, even of the capital, at that time, were still addicted to paganism; and we may fairly conclude, from the description of Leo Africanus and from what we observe in Negroland at the present day, that even during the time of the A'skfas the greater part of the natives of the country were idolaters, at least in heart and superstitious usages. However, it would seem as if they had received in more ancient times several institutions from the Egyptians, with whom, I have no doubt, they maintained an intercourse, by means of the energetic inhabitants of Afijilat from a relatively ancient period; and among these institutions I feel justified in reckoning the great care which the Songhay bestowed upon their dead. We see that even those among their kings who died in the very remotest part of the empire were transported with the greatest trouble to the capital, in order to be buried there with due ceremony. For instance, Sonni 'Alf had died in Gurma; but his sons, who accompanied him on the expedition, took out his entrails, and filled his inside with honey, in order that it might be preserved from putrefaction.* The remains of A'skfa D-d were transported all the way from Tindirma to Gigho in a boat. Even in the case of the slaughter of distinguished enemies, we find strict orders given to perform toward them the ceremonies usual with the dead.

The attention thus bestowed upon the dead seems not to have been in consequence of the introduction of Islam, but appears rather to have been traditionally handed down from the remotest antiquity. Nevertheless, it is clear that the adoption of Islam exercised considerable influence upon the civilization of these people, and we even find a Medreseh mentioned in Gighet an establishment the institution of which we have probably to assign to El Hdj Mohammed, who, while on his pilgrimage to Mekka, solicited the advice of the most learned men in Egypt, and especially that of the Sheikh Jel e' dfn e' Soyidti, as to the best method of propagating the Mohammedan religion in his own country. The influence of learning and study, even in the royal family, is apparent enough from the example of the pretender Mohammed Binkori, who, when on his march to Gigho, ready to fight the King el Hij A'skfa, was induced by the Kidhi of Timbdktu, whom he by chance visited, to give up his ambitious designs for a quiet course of study, to the great astonishment and disappointment of his army,
who expected to be led by him, in a bloody contest, to power and wealth. A'hmed Bibi himself, the author of the history of Songhay, who gives a long list of learned natives of Negroland, may serve as a fair specimen of the learning in Timbaktu at that time. He had a library of 1600 books.

A great deal of commerce was carried on in Songhay during the dominion of the A'skfas, especially in the towns of Gigho and Kfikiya; the latter being, as it appears, the especial market for gold as early as the latter half of the eleventh century. Salt, too, was the staple commodity, while shells already at that time * Journal of the Leipsic Oriental Society, p. 532.


29d:

**COMMERCE.-ARMY.**

constituted the general currency of the market; not, however, the same kind of shells that are used at present, but a different sort, which were introduced from Persia; and there is no doubt that, even at that time, almost all the luxuries of the Arabs found their way into this part of Negroland. That Timbaktu, also, since the decline of Bfru or Walita, in the latter part of the fifteenth century, formed an important place for foreign commerce, is evident from the fact that the merchants of Ghadimes, even at the taking of the town by the Bashi Jedar, inhabited the same quarter as at the present day.

We also see, from Leo's account,* that the King of Songhay was obliged to spend a great proportion of his revenue in the purchase of horses from Barbary, by means of which he improved the native breed, as we have seen was the case in Bernu, cavalry constituting the principal military strength of countries in the state of civilization which prevails in Negroland. We also find coats of mail mentioned, as well as brass helmets; but no allusion is made to even a single musketeer, nor is the use of any firearms intimated by A'hmed Bibi, although he distinctly describes several engagements and even single combats. It was this circumstance which secured to the small army sent by the Emperor of Morocco, a superiority which could not be contested by any numbers which the last A'skfa, ruling over a kingdom of vast extent, but undermined by intrigues and civil war, was able to oppose to it; and we must not conclude from this circumstance that an army of 4000 men was a great thing at that time in point of numbers, for the kings of Negroland, at least those of Songhay and Bornu, at that period, were able to raise greater armies than any of the present kings of those regions could bring together, and we hear of an army of 140,000 men.

The circumstance of the kings of Songhay not having procured at that time-the end of the sixteenth century of our era—even the smallest number of fire-arms, is remarkable, if we compare with it the fact which I have dwelt upon in its proper place,t that Edrfs A'lawoma, the King of Bornu, who ruled in the latter part of the sixteenth century, possessed a considerable number of muskets. The cannon which was found among the Songhay when they were conquered by the Moroccains had, I have no doubt, formed part of the present which the Portuguese had forwarded to A'skfa Musa, as we shall farther see in detail in the chrono* Leo Africanus, 1. vii., c. 3.  t Vol. ii., p. 593.
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

logical tables; but the fact of the enemy having found this piece of ordnance among the spoil of the capital; and not in the thick of the battle, sufficiently proves that the Songhay did not know how to use it. As for the matchlocks, which even at the present day are preserved in Gigho, and of which, by some accident, I did not obtain a sight, they belonged originally to the very conquerors from Morocco, who afterward, as Rumi, formed a stationary garrison, and even a certain aristocratical body, in all the chief towns of the kingdom. Side by side with a certain degree of civilization, no doubt, many barbarous customs were retained, such as the use of the lash, which in other parts of Negroland we find rarely employed, except in the case of slaves, but which in Songhay we see made use of constantly, even in the case of persons of the highest rank; and instances occur, as in that of the instigator of the revolt of El Hidi under the King el Hlj, of persons being flogged to death.*

It is certainly a memorable fact, of which people in Europe had scarcely any idea, that a ruler of Morocco, at the time when Spain had attained its highest degree of power under Philip II. and was filled with precious metals, should open an access to an extensive and rich country, from whence to procure himself an unlimited supply of gold, to the surprise of all the potentates of Europe. It is, moreover, a very remarkable circumstance that the soldiery, by means of which Milhy Himed subdued that fardistant kingdom and who were left as a garrison in the conquered towns, intermarrying with the females of the country, in the same way as the Portuguese did in India, managed to rule those extensive regions by themselves, even long after they had ceased to acknowledge the supremacy of the Emperor of Morocco, whose soldiers these Rumi originally had been, Rumi or Ermi being the plural form of Rimi, "shooter," or "sharp-shooter;" and although they appear never to have formed a compact body ruled by a single individual, but rather a number of small aristocratic communities, the Rumi in Timbitktu having scarcely any connection with those in Bighena, nay, probably not even with those in Bamba and Gigho, yet superior discipline enabled them to keep their place. The nationality of these Rumi puzzled me a long time, while I was collecting information on these regions in the countries farther eastward; and they have lately attracted


THE RUMA'.

the attention of the French traveler Raffenel,* during his journey to Kadrtta, when he learned so much about a people, whom he calls "Arama," that he supposed them to be a distinct tribe, although the vocabulary which he collected of their idiom shows it to be nothing but a slight variety of the Songhay language. However, it is clear that under such circumstances the dominion exercised by this set of half-castes could not but be of a very precarious character; and after a protracted struggle with the smaller tribes around they have been entirely crushed by the Tawdrek, and in most of the towns of Songhay form at present an integral
part of the degraded native population, although they have preserved their name of Rumi, or, as the name is generally pronounced, Rummd, and still claim a sort of moral ascendancy.

It will be seen from the preceding sketch, and become still more apparent from the chronological tables at the end of the volume, that Timbuktu has rather unjustly figured in Europe as the centre and the capital of a great Negro empire, while it never acted more than a secondary part, at least in earlier times; and this character evidently appears from the narrative of Ebn Batita's journey, in the middle of the fourteenth century. But on account of Timbuktu becoming the seat of Mohammedan learning and Mohammedan worship, and owing to the noble character of its buildings, well deserving to rank as a city or "medina," a title which the capital itself perhaps never deserved, it always enjoyed great respect, even during the flourishing period of the latter; and after G~gho or Geg6 had relapsed into insignificance, in consequence of the conquest by the Rumi at the end of the sixteenth century, Timbuktu, on account of its greater proximity to Morocco, became the more important place, where gradually the little commerce which still remained in that distracted region of the Niger was concentrated. But, nevertheless, during the age of anarchy which succeeded to the conquest of the country by the Rumi, and owing to the oppression from the Tawirek tribes on the one side and the Bimbara and Filiibe on the other, the state of affairs could not be very settled; and the town, shaken as it was to its very base by that fearful struggle of the inhabitants with the Kidhi Midstapha, with massacre, rape, and conflagration following in its train, could not but decline greatly from its former splendor; yet under the alternately predominating influence of paganism, represented most strongly by the warlike tribe of the Bimbara, and of Mohammedanism represented by the Arab tribes,* it struggled on, till in consequence of its being conquered by the Fidiibe of Misina, in the year 1826, a few months before the unfortunate Major Laing succeeded in reaching the town, it was threatened with the loss of all its commerce. For these people, owing to the impulse given to Mohammedanism in this part of Negroland by their countryman 'Othmin dan Fodiye, had become far more fanatical champions of the faith than the Arabs and Moors; and treating the inhabitants of the newly-conquered city, as well as the foreigners who used to visit it, with extreme rigor, according to the prejudices which they had imbibed, they could not fail to ruin almost the whole commercial activity of the place. Their oppression was not confined to the pagan traders, the Wangarwa, who carry on almost the whole commerce with the countries south of the Niger, but extended even to the Mohammedan merchants from the north, especially the traders from Tawit and Ghadimes, against whom the Morocco merchants, instigated by a feeling of petty rivalry, succeeded in directing their rancor. It was in consequence of this oppression, especially after a farther increase of the Fidibe party in the year 1831, that the Ghadimsfy people induced the Sheikh el Mukhtir, tlt elder brother of El Bakiy, and successor of Sidi

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Mohammed, to remove his residence from the hille or hillet e' Sheikh el Mukhtir, in A'zawid, half a day's journey from the well Bel Mehin, to Timbuktu. Thus we find in this distracted place a third power stepping in between the Fdlbe on the one side and the Tawirek on the other, and using the power of the latter, as far as their want of centralization allowed, against the overbearing character of the former. In consequence of this continued collision the Tawirek drove the Fdlbe completely out of the town about the year 1844, when a battle was fought on the banks of the river, in which a great number of the latter were either slain or drowned. But the victory of the Tawirek was of no avail, and only plunged the distracted town in greater misery; for, owing to its peculiar situation

* This condition of the town explains the great divergence of reports as to the creed prevalent in Timbuktu; but it is unintelligible that a person could actually visit the town without becoming aware that it contained several mosques, and very large ones, too, for such a place. For particulars, see the Appendix.

LATEST EVENTS.

The border of a desert tract, Timbuktu can not rely upon its own resources, but must always be dependent upon those who rule the more fertile tracts higher up the river; and the ruler of Misina had only to forbid the exportation of corn from his dominions to reduce the inhabitants of Timbuktu to the utmost distress. A compromise was therefore agreed to in the year 1846, through the mediation of the Sheikh el Bakiy, between the different parties, to the effect that Timbuktu should be dependent on the Fdlbe without being garrisoned by a military force, the tribute being collected by two kidhis, one PThllo and the other Songhay, who should themselves decide all cases of minor importance, the more important ones being referred to the capital. But, nevertheless, the government of the town, or rather the police, as far as it goes, is in the hands of one or two Songhay mayors, with the title of emir, but who have scarcely any effective power, placed as they are between the Fdlbe on the one side and the Tawirek on the other, and holding their ground against the former through the two kidhis, and against the latter by means of the Sheikh el BakUy. Such is the distracted state of this town, which can not be remedied before a strong and intelligent power is again established on this upper course of the Niger, so eminently favorable for commerce. After these general remarks on the character of the history of Songhay, I proceed to give a diary of my stay in Timbuktu.

CHAPTER LXVII.

FIRST MONTH OF RESIDENCE IN TIMBUKTU.

IT had been arranged that, during the absence of the Sheikh el Bakiy, whose special guest I professed to be, my house should be locked up and no one allowed to pay me a visit. However, while my luggage was being got in, numbers of people gained access to the house, and came to pay me their compliments, and while they scrutinized my luggage, part of which had rather a foreign appearance, some of them entertained a doubt as to my nationality. But of course it could
never have been my intention to have impressed these people with the belief of
my being a Mohammedan; for having been known as a Christian all along my
road as far as Libtdko, with which province the Arabs of A'zawid keep up a

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

continual intercourse, although there the people would scarcely believe that I was
a European, the news of my real character could not fail soon to transpire; and it
was rather a fortunate circumstance that, notwithstanding our extremely slow
progress and our roundabout direction, the news had not anticipated us. I had been
obliged to adopt the character of a Mohammedan in order to traverse with some
degree of safety the country of the Tawgrek, and to enter the town of Timbtktu,
which was in the hands of the fanatical Fdlbe of Hamda-Alldhi, while I had not
yet obtained the protection of the chief whose name and character alone had
inspired me with sufficient confidence to enter upon this enterprise.

Thus I had now reached the object of my arduous undertaking; but it was apparent
from the very first that I should not enjoy the triumph of having overcome the
difficulties of the journey in quiet and repose. The continuous excitement of the
protracted struggle, and the uncertainty whether I should succeed in my
undertaking, had sustained my weakened frame till I actually reached this city;
but as soon as I was there, and almost at the very moment when I entered my
house, I was seized with a severe attack of fever. Yet never were presence of
mind and bodily energy more required; for the first night which I passed in Timb-
ktu was disturbed by feelings of alarm and serious anxiety.

On the morning of the 8th of September, the first news I heard was that Hammidi,
the rival and enemy of El Bakiy, had informed the Fdlbe or Fulln that a Christian
had entered the town, and that, in consequence, they had come to the
determination of killing him. However, these rumors did not cause me any great
alarm, as I entertained the false hope that I might rely on the person who, for the
time, had undertaken to protect me; but my feeling

of security was soon
destroyed, this very man turning out my greatest tormentor. I had destined for him
a very handsome gift, consisting of a fine cloth bernis, a cloth kaftin, and two
tobes, one of silk and the other of indigo-dyed cotton, besides some smaller
articles; but he was by no means satisfied with these, and peremptorily raised the
present to the following formidable proportions:

Shells.

Two blue bernises of the best quality, worth .......... .100,000
One kaftin ...... .......................... 40,000
Two waistcoats; one red and one blue .......... .15,000
Two silk tobes ...... ...................... 35,000
Two Ntfpe tobes ...... ..................... 30,000

PRESENTS TO SIDI' A'LAWATE.

A pair of small pistols, with 7 pounds of fine powder ....
Ten Spanish dollars .... ..................
Two English razors, and many other articles ............
While levying this heavy contribution upon me, in order to take from the affair its vexatious character, my host stated that as their house and their whole establishment were at my disposal, so my property ought to be at theirs. But even this amount of property did not satisfy him, nor were his pretensions limited to this; for the following day he exacted an almost equal amount of considerable presents from me, such as two cloth kafns, two sill hamif or sword belts, three other silk tobes, one of the species called jellibi, one of that called harir, and the third of the kind called filfil, one NMpe tobe, three t-irkedis, a small six-barreled pistol, and many other things. He promised me, however, on his part, that he would not only make presents of several of these articles to the Tawirek chiefs, but that he would also send a handsome gift to the governor of Hamda-Allihi; but this latter condition at least, although the most important, considering that the town was formally subjected to the supremacy of the ruler of Misina, was never fulfilled; and although I was prepared to sacrifice all I had for the purposes of my journey, yet it was by no means agreeable to give up such a large proportion of my very limited property to a younger brother of the chief under whose protection I was to place myself.

Thus my first day in Timbuktu passed away, preparing me for a great deal of trouble and anxiety which I should have to go through; even those who professed to be my friends treating me with so little consideration.

However, the second day of my residence here was more promising. I received visits from several respectable people, and I began to enter with spirit upon my new situation, and to endeavor by forbearance to accommodate myself to the circumstances under which I was placed. The state of my health also seemed to improve, and I felt a great deal better than on the preceding day.

I was not allowed to stir about, but was confined within the walls of my house. In order to obviate the effect of this want of exercise as much as possible, to enjoy fresh air, and at the same time to become familiar with the principal features of the town, through which I was not allowed to move about at pleasure, I ascended as often as possible the terrace of my house. This afforded an excellent view over the northern quarters of the town. On the north was the massive mosque of Sinkore, which had just been restored to all its former grandeur through the influence of the Sheikh el Bakiy, and gave the whole place an imposing character. Neither the mosque Sfdi Yihia, nor the "great mosque," or Jfinger6-6br, was seen from this point; but toward the east the view extended over a wide expanse of the desert, and toward the south the elevated mansions of the Ghadimsfye merchants were visible. The style of the buildings was various. I could see clay houses of different characters, some low and unseemly, others rising with a second story in front to greater elevation, and making even an attempt at architectural ornament, the whole being interrupted by a few round huts of matting. The sight of this spectacle afforded me sufficient matter of interest, although, the streets being very narrow, only little was to be seen of the intercourse carried on in them, with the exception of the small market in the northern quarter, which was exposed to view on account of its situation on the
slopes of the sand-hills, which, in course of time, have accumulated round the
mosque.
But while the terrace of my house served to make me well acquainted with the
color of the town, it had also the disadvantage of exposing me fully to the
gaze of the passers-by, so that I could only slowly, and with many interruptions,
succeed in making a sketch of the scene thus offered to my view, and which is
represented in the frontispiece. At the same time I became aware of the great
inaccuracy which characterizes the view of the town as given by M. Caillié; still,
on the whole, the character of the single dwellings was well represented by that
traveler, the only error being that in his representation the whole town seems to
consist of scattered and quite isolated houses, while in reality the streets are
entirely shut in, as the dwellings form continuous and uninterrupted rows. But it
must be taken into account that Timbuctu, at the time of Caillié's visit, was not so
well off as it is at present, having been overrun by the Fuli the preceding year,
and he had no opportunity of making a drawing on the spot.
Although I was greatly delighted at the pleasant place of retreat for refreshing my
spirits and invigorating my body by a little exercise which the terrace afforded
me, I was disgusted by the custom which prevails in the houses like that in which
I was lodged, of using the terrace as a sort of closet; and I had great
difficulty in preventing my guide, Ammer el Waliti, who still staid with me and
made the terrace his usual residence, from indulging in this filthy practice.
Being anxious to impart to my friends in Europe the news of my safe arrival in
this far-famed town, I was busily employed in writing letters, which gave fresh
impulse to my energy. My tormentor Sidi A'lawite himself seemed anxious to
rouse my spirits, which he could not but be conscious of having contributed a
great deal to depress, by sending me word that he himself would undertake to
accompany me on my home journey, as he intended making the pilgrimage to
Mekka; but, having once had full opportunity of judging of the character of this
man, I placed but little confidence in his words.
Meanwhile, I began to provide what was most necessary for my comfort, and
bought for myself and my people a piece of good bleached calico, "shigge," I* or
"sehen hndi," as it is called here, for 13,500 shells, and three pieces of
unbleached calico for 8000 each. At the same time I sent several articles into the
market, in order to obtain a supply of the currency of the place, 3000 shells being
reckoned equal to one Spanish dollar.
Thus I had begun to make myself a little more comfortable, when suddenly, on
the morning of the 10th, while I was suffering from another attack of fever, I was
excited by the report being circulated that the party opposed to my residence in the
town was arming in order to attack me in my house. Now I
must confess that, notwithstanding the profession of sincere friendship made to
me by Sidi A'lawite, I am inclined to believe that he himself was not free from
treachery, and, perhaps, was in some respect implicated in this manceuvre, as he
evidently supposed that, on the first rumor of such an attack being intended, I
should abandon my house, or at least my property, when he might hope to get possession underhand of at least a good portion of the latter before the arrival of his brother, whom he knew to be a straight* It is a highly interesting fact that we find this native name, which is given to calico in the region of the Niger, already mentioned by that most eminent and clear-sighted of Arab geographers, A'bu 'Obaid Allah el Bekrf, in the middle of the eleventh century, or fully 800 years ago. For, in describing the manufacture of cotton in the town of Silla, which has become so familiar to Europeans in consequence of Mungo Park's adventures, he expressly mentions that this calico was called "shigge" by the natives, (El Bekrf, ed. de Slane, 1857, p. 173.) Great interest is imparted by such incidents to the life of a region which, to the common observer, seems dead and uninteresting.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

forward man, and who would not connive at such intrigues. With this view, I have no doubt, he sent a female servant to my house, advising me to deposit all my goods* in safety with the Tileb el Wifi, as the danger which threatened me was very great; but this errand had no other effect than to rouse my spirits. I armed immediately, and ordered my servants to do the same, and my supposed protector was not a little astonished when he himself came shortly afterward with the Waldti (who, no doubt, was at the bottom of the whole affair) and found me ready to defend myself and my property, and to repulse any attack that might be made upon my residence, from whatever quarter it might proceed. He asked me whether I meant to fight the whole population of the town, uttering the words "gfiwet e' R-6m," "strength of the Christians;" and protested that I was quite safe under his protection, and had nothing to fear, and certainly, for the moment, my energetic conduct had dispersed, the clouds that might have been impending over my head. But notwithstanding his repeated protestations of sincere friendship, and although he confirmed with his own mouth what I had already heard from other people, that he himself was to accompany me on my return journey as far as Bôrnu, he did not discontinue for a moment his importunity in begging for more presents day by day.

One day he called on me in company with his principal pupils, and earnestly recommended me to change my religion, and from an unbeliever to become a true believer. Feeling myself strong enough in arguments to defend my own religious principles, I challenged him to demonstrate to me the superiority of his creed, telling him that in that case I should not fail to adopt it, but not till then. Upon this he and his pupils began with alacrity a spirited discussion, in the firm hope that they would soon be able to overcome my arguments; but after a little while they found them rather too strong, and were obliged to give in without making

* On this occasion, which was a rather serious one, a most ridiculous misunderstanding was caused by the peculiarity of the Arabic dialect used in Timbuktu, which puzzled me and my companions very often, and sometimes made conversation between me and my friends very difficult and intricate. When the servant said that we should remove all our I haiwgn" from our house, supposing that she meant animals, we told her that we had only one animal in our
house, viz., my horse; and it was some time before we learned that in Timbuktu, which is inhabited mostly by such Arabs as have been at a former period dwellers in the desert, and whose property consisted almost exclusively of camels and cattle, the word I Ihaiwdu" comprises all kinds of movable property.

804

LETTER TO EL BAKAY.

any farther progress at the time in their endeavors to persuade me to turn Mohammedan. This incident improved my situation in an extraordinary degree, by basing my safety on the sincere esteem which several of the most intelligent of the inhabitants contracted for me.

While thus gaining a more favorable position, even in the eyes of this unprincipled man, I had the pleasure of receiving a letter from his elder, more intelligent, and straightforward brother, the Sheikh el Bak-y himself, late in the evening of the 13th, full of the most assuring promises that I should be quite safe under his protection, and that he would soon arrive to relieve me from my unsatisfactory position. And although I felt very unwell all this time, and especially the very day that I received this message, I did not lose a moment in sending the sheikh a suitable answer, wherein I clearly set forth all the motives which had induced me to visit this city, in conformity with the direct wish of the British government, whose earnest desire it was to open friendly intercourse with all the chiefs and princes of the earth; mentioning among other Mohammedan chiefs with whom such a relation existed, the Sultan 'Abd el Mejid, Milh 'Abd e' Rahmin, and the Imam of Maskat; and whose attention the region of the Great River (Niger), together with Timbuktu, had long attracted. At the same time I assured him that his own fame as a just and highly intelligent man, which I had received from my friends far to the east, in the heart of Kegroland, had inspired me with full confidence that I should be safe under his protection. In consequence of the views which I set forth in this letter I was so fortunate as to gain the lasting esteem of this excellent man, who was so much pleased with the contents of it that on its arrival in Guindam, where he was at the time, he read it to all the principal men, Taw6rek, Songhay, and even Fullin, in whose company he was staying.

Meanwhile, in order to obtain the friendship and to secure the interest of other and more selfish people, I gave away a great many presents; but, from what I learned afterward, I had reason to suspect that they did not all reach the persons for whom they were intended. Most of them remained in the possession of the greedy Weled A'mmer Waliti, through whose hands they had unfortunately to pass. The day that I received the important message from the sheikh has been impressed on my memory with so much greater force, as

VOL. III.-U

305

TRAVELS IN'Africa.

it was the grand festival of the Mohammedans, or the 'Aid el Kebfr. Here also in this city, so far remote from the centre of Mohammedan worship, the whole population, on this important day, said their prayers outside the town; but there
being no paramount chief to give unity to the whole of the festive arrangements
the ceremonies exhibited no striking features, and the whole went off very tamely,
only small parties of from six to ten persons forming groups for joining in prayer,
while the whole procession comprised scarcely more than thirty horses.
After my fever had abated for a day or two it returned with greater violence on the
17th, and I felt at times extremely unwell and very weak, and in my feverish state
was less inclined to bear with tranquillity and equanimity all the exactions and
contributions levied upon me by Sidi A’lawite. We had a thunder-storm almost
every day, followed now and then by a tolerable quantity of rain; the greatest fall
of rain, according to the information which I was able to gather, annually
occurring during the month of September, a phenomenon in entire harmony with
the northerly latitude of the place. This humidity, together with the character of
the open hall in which I used to pass the night as well as the day, increased my
indisposition not a little; but the regard for my security did not allow me to seek
shelter in the store-room wherein I had placed my luggage, and which, being at
the back of the hall, was well protected against cold, and, as it seemed at least,
even against wet. For, not to speak of the oppressive atmosphere and almost total
darkness which prevailed in that close place, in taking up my residence there I
should have exposed myself to the danger of a sudden attack, while from the hall
where I was staying I was enabled to observe every thing which was going on in
my house; and through the screen which protected the opening, close by the side
of my couch, I could observe every body that entered my yard long before they
saw me. For this reason I preferred this place even to the room on the terrace,
although the latter had the advantage of better air. I may observe that these upper
rooms in general form the private residence of most of the people in the town who
have the luxury of such an upper story.
Monday, September 26th. About three o'clock in the morning, while I was lying
restlessly on my couch, endeavoring in vain to snatch a moment's sleep, the
Skeikh Sfdi A'hmed el Bakiy arrived. The music, which was immediately struck
up in front of
306

MY OWN QUARTERS.
T7
6
1. First segifa, or, as it is called in Songhay, "sifa," or ante-room. 2. Second
segifa, with a staircase, or "tintim," (3) leading to the terrace, "garb6ne," and the
front room on the terrace, where three of my people well armed were constantly
keeping watch.
4. Inner court-yard.
5. Hall, with two open entrances, wherein I had my residence by night and day, on
the reed-bed on the right.
6. Store-room, capable of being locked up.
7. Covered passage, or corridor.
8. Second court-yard, originally intended for the female department, but where I kept my horse, the surrounding rooms as well as the back wall of the house being in a state of decay.

his house by the women, was ill adapted to procure me rest; while the arrival of my protector, on whose disposition and power the success of my whole undertaking and my own personal safety fully depended, excited my imagination in the highest degree,

and thus contributed greatly to increase my feverish state.

The following day I was so ill as to be quite unable to pay my respects to my protector, who sent me a message begging me to quiet myself, as I might rest assured that nothing but my succumbing to illness could prevent me from safely returning to my native home. Meanwhile, as a proof of his hospitable disposition, he sent me a handsome present, consisting of two oxen, two sheep, two large vessels of butter, one camel load, or "sun'ye," of rice, and another of negro corn, cautioning me, at the same time, against eating any food which did not come from his own house. In order to cheer my spirits he at once begged me to choose between the three roads by which I wanted to return home—either through the country of the F'ilbe, or in a boat on the river, or, by land, through the district of the Tawirek.

As from the first I had been fully aware that neither the disposition of the natives, and especially that of the present rulers of the country, the F'ilbe, nor the state of my means, would allow me to proceed westward, and as I felt persuaded that laying down the course of the Niger from Timbliktu to Sy would far outweigh in importance a journey through the upper country toward the Senegal, I was firm in desiring from the beginning to be allowed to visit Gog. For, not deeming it prudent, in order to avoid creating unnecessary suspicion, to lay too great stress upon navigating the river, I preferred putting forward the name of the capital of the Songhay empire, as in visiting that place I was sure that I should see at least the greater part of the river, while at the same time I should come into contact with

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

the Tawgrek, who are the ruling tribe throughout its whole course.

But the generous offer of my friend was rather premature; and if at that time I had known that I was still to linger in this quarter for eight months longer, in my then feeble condition, I should scarcely have been able to support such an idea; but fortunately Providence does not reveal to man what awaits him, and he toils on without rest in the dark.

Tuesday, September 27th. This was the anniversary of the death of Mr. Overweg, my last and only European companion, whom I had now outlived a whole year; and whom, considering the feeble state of my health at this time, while my mind was oppressed with the greatest anxiety, I was too likely soon to follow to the grave. Nevertheless, feeling a little better when rising from my simple couch in
the morning, and confiding in the protection tendered me by a man whose straightforward character was the theme of general admiration, and which plainly appeared in the few lines which I had received from him, I fondly cherished the hope that this day next year it might be my good fortune to have fairly embarked upon my home journey from Negroland, and perhaps not to be far from home itself. I therefore, with cheerful spirit, made myself ready for my first audience, and leaving my other presents behind, and taking only a small sixbarreled pistol with me, which I was to present to the sheikh, I proceeded to his house, which was almost opposite my own, there intervening between them only a narrow lane and a small square, where the sheikh had established his "msid," or daily place of prayer. A'had el Bakiy, son of Sfdi Mohammed, and grandson of Sfdi Mukhtir, of the tribe of the Kunta, was at that time a man of about fifty years of age, rather above the middle height, full proportioned, with a cheerful, intelligent, and almost European countenance, of a rather blackish complexion, with whiskers of tolerable length, intermingled with some gray hair, and with dark eyelashes. His dress consisted at the time of nothing but a black tobe, a fringed shawl thrown loosely over the head, and trowsers, both of the same color.

I found my host in the small upper room on the terrace, in company with his young nephew, Mohammed ben Khott-r; and two confidential pupils, and, at the very first glance which I obtained of him, I was agreeably surprised at finding a man whose

* For the whole genealogy of the sheikh, see Appendix VII.

FIRST INTERVIEW WITH THE SHEIKH.

countenance itself bore testimony to a straightforward and manly character; both which qualities I had found so sadly wanting in his younger brother, Sfdi A'lawite. Cheered by the expression of good-nature in his countenance as he rose from his seat to receive me, and, relieved from all anxiety, I paid him my compliments with entire confidence, and entered into a conversation, which was devoid of any affected and empty ceremonious phrases, but from the first moment was an unrestrained exchange of thoughts between two persons who, with great national diversity of manners and ideas, meet for the first time.

The pistol, however, with which I presented him, soon directed our conversation to the subject of the superiority of Europeans in manufacturing skill, and in the whole scale of human existence; and one of the first questions which my host put to me was, whether it was true, as the Rifis (Major Laing) had informed his father, Sidi Mohammed, during his stay in A'zawid, that the capital of the British empire contained twenty times 100,000 people.

I then learned to my great satisfaction what I afterward found confirmed by the facts stated in Major Laing's correspondence,* that this most enterprising but unfortunate traveler, having been plundered and almost killed by the Tawrekt in the valley Ahgnnet, on his way from Tawit, was conducted by his guides to, and made a long stay at the camp or station of the sheikh's father, Sidi Mohammed, in the hillet Sidi el Mukhtir; the place generally called by Major Laing Beled Sidi Mohammed, but sometimes Beled Sidi Mooktar, the major being evidently puzzled as to these names, and apt to confound the then head of the family, Sidi
Mohammed, with the ancestor Sidi Mukhtir, after whom that holy place has been called. It is situated half a day's journey from the frequented well Bel Mehin, on the great northerly road, but is at present deserted.


There can not be the least doubt that, in addition to the love of plunder, it was also a certain feeling of revenge for the mischief inflicted upon their countrymen by the heroic Mungo Park which prompted this ferocious act of the Tawgrek; and it is very curious to observe the presentiment that Major Laing had, on setting out from Tawdt, of what awaited him, as most distinctly embodied in some of his letters, dated Tawit, January, 1826, especially in a letter addressed to James Bandinel, Esq., which General Edward Sabine, the great friend of the distinguished traveler, kindly allowed me to inspect.

$ Instead of communicating the itinerary from Timbdktu to the hillet in my collection of itineraries through the western half of the desert, at the end of the fol-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

We thus came to speak of Major Laing, here known under the name of E' R6is (the Major), the only Christian that my host and most of the people hereabouts had ever seen; the French traveler, R6n6 Cailli6, 'who traversed this tract in 1828, having, in his poor disguise, entirely escaped their observation, not to speak of the sailors Adams and Scott, who are said to have visited this place, although their narrative does not reveal a single trait which can be, identified with its features. Major Laing, during the whole time of our intercourse, formed one of the chief topics of conversation, and my noble friend never failed to express his admiration, not only of the major's bodily strength, but of his noble and chivalrous character.*

I made immediate inquiries with regard to Major Laing's papers, but unfortunately, not being provided with a copy of the blue book containing all the papers relating to that case, I had not the means of establishing all the points disputed. I only learned that at the time none of those papers were in existence, although the sheikh himself told me that the major, while staying in Azaw~d, had drawn up a map of the whole northerly part of the desert from Tawit as far south as the hillet or the place of residence of his father.

Meanwhile, while we were conversing about the fate of my precursor in the exploration of these regions, my host assured me repeatedly of my own perfect safety in the place, and promised that he would send the most faithful of his followers, Mohammed el

I day, Tengg el hay, or Tendg el hij, a well where all the roads meet. A great many celebrated localities along this part of the road.

1 day, Tin-tah6n, about the heat of the day; a locality so called from an eminence, "tah6n."

1 day, WorozfI, a well with a rich supply of water, about the same time.
1 day, E'n-eldhi, a whole day. From hence to the small town Bti-Jebdha, passing by the well e'Twfl, 2 days.
2 days, Erdik; 3 days from A'rawdn; 11 from Bil-Jeb'ha. Close to Erdk is MWrizf'k.
1. day, Bel-Mehn, a rich and famous well; a long day, keeping along a valley inclosed between the sand-hills, "E'gif" toward the W., and the black mountains of A'dertr toward the E.
1 day, Hillet e' Sheikh.
* It is highly interesting and satisfactory to observe how Major Laing himself, in the letters published in the Edinburgh Review, speaks of the kind reception given to him, when severely wounded, by the sheikh and maraboot (Meribat) Mooktar, or rather Sidi Mohammed. See, especially, p. 105.

PRESENTS.-ILLNESS.

311 'Afsh, with me to the Tawdrek, from whence I might continue my journey in the company of my former companion. Such, I think, was really his intention at the time, but circumstances, which I am soon to detail, were to change all these premature plans.

Having returned to my quarters I sent my host his present, which consisted of three bernises, viz., one heldli, or white silk and cotton mixed, and two of the finest cloth, one of green and the other of red color; two cloth kaffins, one black and the other yellow; a carpet from Constantinople; four tobes, viz., one very rich, of the kind called "harir," and bought for 30,000 shells, or twelve dollars, one of the kind called filfil, and two best black tobes; twenty Spanish dollars in silver; three black shawls, and several smaller articles, the whole amounting to the value of about £30. He then sent a message to me, expressing his thanks for the liberality of the government in whose service I was visiting him, and stating that he did not want any thing more from me; but he begged that after my safe return home, I would not forget him, but would request her majesty's government to send him some good fire-arms and some Arabic books; and I considered myself authorized in assuring him that I had no doubt the English government would not fail to acknowledge his services, if he acted in a straightforward manner throughout.

Pleasant and cheering as was this whole interview, nevertheless, in consequence of the considerable excitement which it caused me in my weak state, I felt my head greatly affected; and I was seized with a shivering fit about noon the following day, just as I was going to pay another visit to my friend. On the last day of September I entered into a rather warm dispute with A'lawite, whom I met at his brother's house, and whose ungenerous conduct I could not forget. My protector not possessing sufficient energy, and, in his position, not feeling independent enough to rebuke his brother for the trouble which he had caused me, begged me repeatedly to bear patiently his importunities, though he was aware of my reasons for disliking him. On another occasion he made me fire off the six-barreled pistol in front of his house, before a numerous assemblage of people.
This caused extraordinary excitement and astonishment among the people, and exercised a great influence upon my future safety, as it made them believe that I had arms all over my person, and could fire as many times as I liked.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Thus the month of September concluded satisfactorily and most auspiciously, as it seemed. For I had not only succeeded in reaching in safety this city, but I was also well received on the whole; and the only question seemed to be how I was to return home by the earliest opportunity and the safest route. But all my prospects changed with the first of the ensuing month, when the difficulties of my situation increased, and all hopes of a speedy departure appeared to be at an end. For in the afternoon of the first of October, a considerable troop of armed men, mustering about twenty muskets, arrived from Hamda-Allhi, the residence of the Shekho A'khmedu ben A'hamdu, to whose nominal sway the town of Timb5ktu and the whole province has been subjected since the conquest of the town in the beginning of the year 1826. These people brought with them an order from the capital to drive me out of the town; and Hammddi, the nephew and rival of the Sheikh el Bakiy, feeling himself strengthened by the arrival of such a force, availed himself of so excellent an opportunity of enhancing his influence, and, in consequence, issued a proclamation to the inhabitants of the town, commanding them, in stringent terms, to attend to the orders of the emir, and, in the event of my offering resistance, not even to spare my life.
There can scarcely be any doubt that my protector, as far as a man of a rather weak character was capable of any firm resolution, had intended to send me off by the very first opportunity that should offer; but the order issued by the emir of HamdaAllhi (to whose authority he was vehemently opposed), that I should be forthwith driven out of the town or slain, roused his spirit of opposition. He felt, too, that the difficulties of my leaving this place in safety were thus greatly augmented. All thoughts of my immediate departure were therefore set aside; partly, no doubt, from regard to my security, but much more from an anxious desire to show the Fulln, or FMLbe, that he was able to keep me here, notwithstanding their hostile disposition and their endeavors to the contrary. There were, besides, the intrigues of the Waliti, my guide on the journey from Yigha, who, finding that the sheikh did not approve of his dishonest conduct toward me, endeavored to get me out of his hands, in order that he might deal with me as he liked. My broker, too, 'All el A'geren, seeing the difficulties of my situation, gave me entirely up, making his own safety the only object of his thoughts.
The sheikh, when he had fully understood what I had told him

INTRIGUES SUCCESSFULLY OVERCOME.
with regard to the power and the political principles of the sovereign of Great Britain, had determined to write a letter with his own hand, expressing his satisfaction that I had come to pay him my compliments, and in order to endeavor to counteract the discouraging effects produced by the account of Major Laing's death, and if possible to obtain for himself a few presents. This letter, it was
understood in the beginning, I myself should take with me; but in the evening of the third of October, I suddenly, to my great amazement, received the intelligence that I was to send my man, 'All el A'geren, to Ghadimes or Tripoli with this letter, accompanying it with a note from my own hand, while I myself remained behind, as a kind of hostage, in Timbdktu, until the articles which the Sheikh el Bakiy had written for were received. But I was not to be treated in this way by intrigues of my own people; and the following morning I sent a simple protest to the sheikh, stating that as for himself he might do just as he liked, and if he chose to keep me as a prisoner or hostage he might do so as long as he thought fit, but that he must not expect to receive so much as a needle from the government that had sent me until I myself should have returned in safety. My host, too, had just before intimated to me that it would be best to deliver my horse and my gun into his hands; but I sent him an answer that neither the one nor the other should leave my house until my head had left my shoulders. It was rather remarkable that a person of so mean a character as the Waliti should for a moment gain the upper hand of a man of such an excellent disposition as the sheikh; but it was quite natural that this clever rogue should continually incite Sidi A'lawite to make new demands upon my small store of valuable articles.

Meanwhile, while I was thus kept in a constant state of excitement, I was not free from anxiety in other respects. A thunderstorm, accompanied by the most plentiful rain which I had experienced during my stay in this place, had in the afternoon of the 3d October inundated my house, and, breaking through the wall of my store-room, had damaged the whole of my luggage, my books, and medicines, as well as my presents and articles of exchange. But my situation was soon to improve, as the sheikh became aware of the faithless and despicable character of my former companion and guide; and while he ordered the latter to fetch my camels from A'ribfnda, which it was now but too apparent he had sold on his own account instead of having them taken care of for me, he informed me of what had come to his knowledge of the Waliti's previous character and disgraceful habits.

The Emir of Hamda-Allhi's sending a force to Timbiiktu in order to dispose of me, with the assistance of the inhabitants of that town, without paying the slightest regard to the opinion of my protector, had caused a considerable reaction in the whole relation of the sheikh to the townspeople, and he had made up his mind to pitch his camp outside the city, in order to convince the inhabitants, and the Fullin in particular, that he did not depend upon them, but had mightier friends and a more powerful spell upon which he could safely rely. He had even, while still absent in Guindam, opened communication with A'wib, the chief of the Tadem-kket, to this effect.

But all these proceedings required more energy and a more warlike character than, I am sorry to say, my friend and protector actually possessed; and our adversaries were so busy, that, in the night of the 9th, owing to the arrival of a party of Tawirek, who were well known not to be friendly disposed toward him, he was so intimidated that at two o'clock in the morning he himself came to my
house, rousing us from our sleep and requesting us most urgently to keep watch, as he was afraid that something was going on against me. We therefore kept a constant look-out the whole night on our terrace, and seeing that the rear of our house was in a partial state of decay, facilitating an attack in that quarter, we set to work early in the morning repairing the wall and barricking it with thorny bushes. The artisans of the town were so afraid of the party hostile to me, who were the nominal rulers, that no one would undertake the task of repairing my house. However, the more intelligent natives of the place did all in their power to prevent my learned friend from leaving the town, as they felt sure that such a proceeding would be the commencement of troubles. The consequence was that we did not get off on the 10th, although the sheikh had sent his wife and part of his effects away the preceding night, and it was not till a little before noon the following day that we actually left the town.

814

ENCAMPMENT IN THE DESERT.
CHAPTER LXVIII.
FIRST RESIDENCE IN THE DESERT.-POLITICAL COMBINATIONS.GREAT MOSQUE.-GROUND-PLAN OF THE TOWN.
October 11th. This was an important moment for myself, as, with the exception of an occasional visit to the sheikh, who lived only a few yards across the street, and an almost daily promenade on my terrace, I had not moved about since my arrival. With a deep consciousness of the critical position in which I was placed, I followed my protector, who, mounted on his favorite white mare, led the way through the streets of the town, along which the assembled natives were thronging in order to get a glance at me. Leaving the high mounds of rubbish which constitute the ground-work of the northern part of the town on our left, and pursuing a north-northeasterly direction over a sandy tract covered with stunted bushes, and making only a short halt near a well five miles from the town, for the purpose of watering our horses, after a march of two miles more we reached the camp, which could easily be recognized at a great distance by two large white cotton tents, whose size and situation made them conspicuous above some smaller leathern dwellings. It was just about sunset; and the open country with its rich mimosas, and with the camp on the rising ground, the white sandy soil of which was illuminated by the last rays of the setting sun, presented an interesting spectacle. The younger inhabitants of the camp, including Bibi Ahmed and 'Abidin, two favorite boys of the sheikh, one five, the other four years of age, came out to meet us; and I soon afterward found myself lodged in an indigenous tent of camel's hair, which was pitched at the foot of the hill, belonging to Mohammed el Khalifl, a relative of the sheikh, who had come from his native home in Tris, on the shores of the Atlantic, in order to share his uncle's blessing. In this encampment we passed several days in the most quiet and retired manner, when my friend revealed to me his course of action. It was his intention, he said, to bring the old chief Galaio, from the place of his exile in Champagre, back to this part of Negroland, which he had formerly ruled, and to reinstate him, 315
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

by the aid of the Tawirek, in the government of Misina with the residence Hamda-Alihi, of which he was to deprive the family of Lebbo. But even if it was true, as he said, that the Fdlbe themselves, as well as those settled between Fermigha and Grindam, as those inhabiting the provinces of Dalla, Dwenza, and Gilg6ji, were opposed to the government of Lebbo, such a project appeared to me to require a greater share of perseverance and determination than, from all that I had seen, I could believe my noble friend possessed. However, he entertained no doubt at that time that Alklittabu, the great chief of the Tawirek himself, would come to his aid without delay and conduct me, under his powerful protection, safely along the banks of the Niger.

However exaggerated the projects of my protector were, considering his mild disposition, and although by exasperating the Fiilbe more and more, he no doubt increased the difficulties of my situation, the moving of his encampment outside the town afforded me a great deal of relief, both in consequence of the change of air which it procured me, and of the varied scenery. I could also get here a little exercise, although the more open the country was, the greater care I had to take of my safety. In the morning, particularly, the camp presented a very animated sight. The two large white tents of cotton cloth, with their topcovering, or "sarimme," of checkered design, and their woolen curtains of various colors, were half opened to allow the morning air to pervade them. The other smaller ones were grouped picturesquely around on the slope, which was enlivened by camels, cattle, and goats that were just being driven out. All nature was awake and full of bustle, and the trees were swarming with white pigeons. In the evening, again, there were the cattle returning from their pasturage, the slaves bringing water on the backs of the asses, and the people grouped together in the simple place of devotion, laid out with thorny bushes, in order to say their prayers, guided by the melodious voice of their teacher, who never failed to join them. At this time a chapter of the Kurin was chanted by the best instructed of the pupils, and continued often till a late hour at night, the sound of these beautiful verses, in their melodious fall, reverberating from the downs around; at other times animated conversation ensued, and numerous groups gathered on the open ground by the side of the fire. We returned into the town on the 13th. The first day had passed off rather quietly, save that a party of twelve Imoshagh,

ATTEMPT AT PROSELYTISM.

of the tribe of the Igw6daren, partly mounted on camels, partly on horses, trespassed on the hospitality of the sheikh. I had an opportunity of inspecting their swords, and was not a little surprised at finding that they were all manufactured in the German town of Solingen, as indeed were almost all the swords of these Tawirek or Im6shagh.

The interests of the different members of the family now began to clash. The sheikh himself was firm in his opposition against the Filbe, and requested me in future, when I visited him, to come to his house fully armed, in order to show our adversaries that I was ready to repulse any violence; and it was in vain that I
protested that, as I came with peaceable intentions, nothing could be farther from my wish than to cause any disturbance in the town. Meanwhile, his brother, Sidi A'lawite, suborned one of the sheikh's pupils to make another attempt to convert me to Islamism. This man, who was one of the most learned followers of the sheikh, having resided for nearly thirty years in the family, first with the Sheikh Sfâdi Mohammed, then with his eldest son, El Mukhtir, who succeeded him in the dignity of a sheikh during Major Laing's residence in A'zawdd, and finally with the Sheikh el Bakgy himself, originally belonged to the Arab tribe of the Welid Rishid, whose settlements in Widiy I have mentioned on a former occasion. Partly on this account, partly on account of his great religious knowledge, and his volubility of speech, he possessed great influence with all the people, although his prudence and forbearance were not conspicuous. But, finding that his usual arguments in favor of his creed did not avail with me, he soon desisted. This was the last time these people attempted to make me a proselyte to their religion, with the exception of some occasional serious advice from my friends under the temporary pressure of political difficulties.

The emfr of the place, of the name of Kaiiri, who was a goodnatured man, and whose colleague, Belle, was absent at the time, having advised my protector to take me again out of the town for a few days, till the Kidhi A'hmed Weled F'aamme, who was going to Hamda-Allihi, and who was especially hostilely disposed toward me, should have left, we again set out, on the morning of the 17th October; but, having staid in the encampment that night and the following morning, we returned to the town the same afternoon, but left again on the morning of the 20th, when the kafla of the Tawitfye was ready to set out on their journey to the north, and staid with them during the heat of the day. They were encamped in about twenty-four small leathern tents round the well where we had a few days previously watered our horses, and mustered more than fifty muskets, each of them being armed, moreover, with a spear and sword; but notwithstanding their numbers, and the circumstance that a rather respectable man, of the name of Hij A'hmed, the wealthiest person of Ins£ia or 'AfnSila, was among them, and was to accompany them as far as MWamiin, I felt no inclination to go with this caravan, and thus to deprive myself of the opportunity of surveying the river, nor did my protector himself seem to find in this northerly road any sufficient guarantee for my safe return home. I therefore only made use of this opportunity in order to send to Europe, by way of Ghadimes, a short report of my arrival in TimbAktu, and a general outline of the political circumstances connected with my stay in the city.

The caravan having started the following morning, we staid two days longer in the camp, and then once more returned into the town, without any farther difficulty, in the company of Sfâdi A'lawite, who had come out to join us with a body of armed followers, and who behaved now, on the whole, much more amiably toward me. He even gave me some interesting particulars with respect to S6go,* which place he had visited some time before, levying upon Dembo, then king of
Bdmbara, a heavy contribution of gold. This king, who was sprung from a Pillo mother, Aad succeeded his father Farina, the son of the king mentioned by Mungo Park under the name of Mansong, two years previously.

The Fdibe, however, did not give up their point, and, as they did not find themselves strong enough to proceed to open violence, The chief information related to the circumstance that all the four quarters of that town, together with two other quarters which in a wider sense are included in the place, are situated on the south side of the river, as has been stated already in Recueil des Voyages, tom. ii., p. 53. Mungo Park, who states (First Journey, p. 195) the contrary, was evidently mistaken; and from the circumstances under which he passed by Sdgo, as a despised and suspected person, his mistake is easily intelligible. The two quarters which in a wider sense still belong to Sdgo are called Bengukor6 and Bammabdgu, in the former of which a well-frequented market is held. There is, besides, a village close by called Bebdra.

My information as to the succession of the kings of Bdmbara does not agree with that received by M. Faidherbe, the present Governor of Senegal, published in the "Revue Coloniale," 1857, p. 279. I shall refer to this subject in another place.

MOVEMENTS OF THE FULBE.

ence, made an indirect attack upon me by putting in irons on the 27th some Arabs or Moors, on the pretext of having neglected their prayers, thereby protesting strongly enough against a person of an entirely different creed staying in the town. The Emir Kaliri himself, who, on the whole, seemed to be a man of good sense, was in a most awkward position; and when the kidhi informed him that, if he was not able to execute the order which he had received from his liege lord, he should solicit the assistance of the people of Timb6ktu, he refused to have recourse to violence till he had received stricter orders to that effect and more effectual aid; for, in the event of his having driven me out, and any thing having befallen me, the whole blame would be thrown upon him, as had been the case with Sfdi Bi-Bakr the governor, who, obeying the orders of Mohammed Lebbo, had obliged the R–is (Major Laing) to leave the town, and thus, in some measure, was the cause of his death, that distinguished traveler having thrown himself in despair into the arms of Himed Weled 'Abda, the chief of the Berabish, who murdered him in the desert.

But, on the other hand, the emir endeavored to dissuade my protector, who was about to send a messenger to Alkuittabu,* the great chief of the Awelimmiden, to summon him to his assistance, from carrying out his intention, fearing lest the result of this proceeding might be a serious conflict between the Tawirek and the Filbe. However, from all that I saw, I became aware that the chance of my departure was more remote than ever, and that, at least this year; there was very little prospect of my leaving this place; for the messenger whom the sheikh was to send to the Tirkis chief, and of whose departure there had been much talk for so long a time, had not yet left, and the chief's residence was several hundred miles off. I therefore again protested to my friend that it was my earnest desire to set out on my home journey as soon as possible, and that I felt not a little annoyed at the continual procrastination.
Several circumstances concurred at this time to make me feel the delay the more deeply, so that notwithstanding my sincere esteem for my protector, I thought it better, when he again left the town in the evening of the 27th, to remain where I was; for after my

*I will here remark, although I have to speak repeatedly of this chief, that the name seems to be an abbreviation, meaning probably ",, L ; L , that is, "pillar of the faith."

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

return from our last excursion, in consequence of the severe cold during the night, I had been visited by a serious attack of rheumatism, which had rendered me quite lame for a day or two.

With regard to the means of my departure, the Waliti, whom I had sent out at a great expense to bring my horses and camels from the other side of the river, had brought back my horses in the most emaciated condition. As for the camels, he had intended to appropriate them to his own use; but I defeated his scheme by making a present of them to the sheikh. This brought all the Waliti's other intrigues to light, especially the circumstance of his having presented a small pistol (which I had given to himself) to Hammidi, the sheikh's rival, intimating that it came from me, and titus endangering my whole position, by making the sheikh believe that I was giving presents to his rivals and his enemies. But my protector acted nobly on this occasion; for he not only warned me against the intrigues of the Walhti, and would not lend an ear to his numerous calumnies against me, but he even preferred me, the Christian, to my Mohammedan companion, the MWjebr, 'Ali el A'geren, who was sometimes led, through fear, to take the part of the Waliti; and the M6jebri, who thought himself almost a sherff, and was murmuring his prayers the whole evening long, felt not a little hurt and excited when he found that the sheikh placed infinitely more reliance upon me than upon himself.

In order to convince the sheikh how sensible I was of the confidence which he placed in me, I made a present of a blue cloth kaftan to Mohammed Boy, the son of the chief Galaijo, who had

*studied with him for a year or two, and was now about to return home by way of Hamda-Allihi. But, unluckily, I had not many such presents to offer, and a nobleman of the name of Muliy 'Abd e' Salim, who had sent me a hospitable present of wheat and rice, was greatly offended at not receiving from me a bernis in return.

Meanwhile, the Ftilbe or Fullin sent orders to Dir e' Salim, the capital of the district of Zinkara, that their countrymen inhabiting that province should enter Timb-iktu as soon as the sheikh should leave it. The latter, in order to show these people the influence he possessed, decided upon taking me with him on an excursion to Kibara, which is the harbor on the river, where the Ftilbe were generally acknowledged to possess greater power than in Timbiktu, on account of the distance of the latter from the water. I followed Lim gladly, that I might have an opportu-
EXCURSION TO K'ABARA.

ity of observing the different aspect of the country two months after the date when I had first traversed it. In fact, the landscape had now a very different appearance, being entirely changed in consequence of the abundant rains which had fallen in September and October. The whole sandy level, which before looked so dull and dreary, was now covered with herbage; while that part of the road nearer the town had been a little cleared of wood, apparently in order to prevent the Tawirek from lurking near the road and surprising travelers. Farther on, when we approached the village of Kibara, all the fields were overgrown with watermelons, which form a considerable branch of the industry of the inhabitants.

We dismounted, at length, close to Kibara, in the shade of a talha-tree, clearing the ground and making ourselves as comfortable as possible. A ‘great number of people collected round us, not only from the village of Kibara, but also from the town; even the governor, or emir, Kadri, came out to see what we were doing here.

By way of making some sort of popular display, and showing his enemies the extent of his authority, my protector here distributed the presents which he had destined for Boy and his companions, who, before returning to their home in the province of Galaio, were first going to pay their compliments to the Sheikho A'hmendu in Hamda-Allhi. He also sent the very bernis which I had intended for 'Abd e’ Salim to 'Abd Allhi, the uncle of the young Sheikho A'hmendu of Hamda-Allhi. While the emir walked up and down, at some distance from the spot where we had taken up our position, in order to have a look at me, we were treated hospitably by the inspector of the harbor (a cheerful old man of the name of 'Abd el Kisim, and of supposed sherif origin),

* I will give, in this place, some particulars as to the court of Hamda-Allhi; the name is written by the natives. Mohammed Lebbo ruled from A.H. 1241 to 1262; his son Sheikho (pronounced also Seko) A’hmendu, till 1269. This is the chief whom M. Faidherbe (Revue Col. 1857, p. 279) calls Bal6go, a Mandingo name, which means nothing but “war-chief.” Sheikho A'hmendu, in spite of the opposition of a strong party, was succeeded by his young son A'hmendu. All the members of the royal family live together in one and the same court-yard, which has something of a round shape, the yard of the chief himself forming the centre, and those of the four surviving sons of Mohammed Lebbo, viz., 'Abd Allghi, 'Abd e' Salim, Himidu, and 'Abd e' Rahmin, lying opposite each other around the wall. Of these uncles of the sheikho, 'Abd Allhi is the richest, and is said to possess a great amount of gold, 1700 slaves, 1900 head of cattle, 40 horses, aned 20 boats on the river.

VoL. IIIT.--X

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

with several dishes of excellent kuskus, one of which fell to my share: and I was delighted to see that, notwithstanding the decline of every thing in this distracted region, the old office of an inspector of the harbor still retained a certain degree of importance. But I lamented that I was not allowed to survey at my leisure the general features of the locality, which had entirely changed since my first visit to
this place. The river had inundated the whole of the lowlands, so that the water, which had before only formed a narrow ditch-like channel, now presented a wide open sheet, affording easy access to the native craft of all sizes.

Having then mounted in the afternoon, after a pleasant ride we reached the town; but instead of directly entering the dilapidated walls we turned off a little to the west, toward a small plantation of date-trees (marked 9 in the plan of the town), of the existence of which I had had no previous idea; for, small and insignificant as it was, it claimed considerable interest in this arid tract, there being at present only four or five middle-sized trees, rather poor specimens of the hijilfj or balanites, inside the town, although we know that before the time of the conquest of Songhay by the Moroccains the city was not so poor in vegetation; but the inspector of the harbor having fled on that occasion with the whole fleet, the Bashi Mahm-id cut down all the trees in and around the town for the purpose of ship-building.

The little oasis consisted of three nearly full-grown date-trees, but of small size, only one of them bearing fruit, while around there were about ten very young bushes, which, if not well taken care of, scarcely seemed to promise ever to become of any value. The plantation, poor as it was, owed its existence to the neighborhood of a deep well of immense size, being about thirty yards in diameter and five fathoms deep, wherein the water collects.

Having loitered here a few moments, and visited a small and poor plantation in the neighborhood belonging to the Tawiti, Mohammed el 'Afsh, we turned off toward the Jfinger6-bdr, or "great mosque," which by its stately appearance made a deep impression upon my mind, as I had not yet had an opportunity of inspecting it closely. It was here especially that I convinced myself, not only of the trustworthy character of Caillié's report in general, of which I had already had an opportunity of judging, but also of the accuracy with which, under the very unfavorable circumstances in which he was placed, he has described the various objects which fell under his observation. I was only permitted to

GROUND-PLAN OF TIMBU'KTU.

survey the outside of the mosque; as to the interior, I was obliged to rely upon the information which I received from the more intelligent of the natives.

The mosque is a large building, but a considerable portion of it is occupied by an open court-yard, wherein the larger tower is inclosed, while the principal part of the building includes nine naves of different dimensions and structure; the westernmost portion, which consists of three naves, belonging evidently to the old mosque, which, together with the palace, was built 'by Mansa Musa, the King of Melle, as is even attested by an inscription over the principal gate, although it has become somewhat illegible. The chief error which Caillié has committed in describing this mosque relates to the smaller tower, the position of which he has mistaken, and the number of gateways on the eastern side, there being seven instead of five. CaillH also states the greatest length of the building to be 104 paces, while my intelligent friend Mohammed ben 'Afsh assured me that, after measuring it with the greatest accuracy, he found it to be 262 French feet in length, by 194 in width.*
If this building, which stands just at the western extremity, and forms the southwestern corner of the town, were situated in the centre, it would be infinitely more imposing; but it is evident that in former times the mosque was surrounded by buildings on the western side. The city formerly was twice as large.
While we were surveying this noble pile, numbers of people collected round us—this being the quarter inhabited principally by the Fdlbe or Fullin; and when we turned our steps homeward, they followed us along the streets through the market, which was now empty, but without making the least hostile manifestation. On the contrary, many of them gave me their hands.
Soon after my arrival in the place I had sent home a small plan of the town. This I now found to be inaccurate in some respects; and I here therefore subjoin a more correct plan of the town, although on a rather small scale, the circumstances under which I resided there not having allowed me to survey the greater part of it accurately enough for a more minute delineation.
The city of Timbuktu, according to Dr. Peterman's laying down of it from my materials, lies in 17° 37' N. and 3° 5' W. of * I recommend the reader who takes any interest in the subject to read the whole passage of Caillid relating to this mosque, English ed., vol. ii., p. 71. The Tawiti took the measurement with my line.

323

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

PLA OF TIMBU'KTU.

QTONMB OP FAKIH MAHMUD UELU

1. House of the Sheikh A'hmed el Bakliy, with another house belonging to the same close by, and having in front of it a small square, where he has established a "msld," or place of prayer for his pupils, several of whom pass the night here.
2. House belonging likewise to the sheikh where I myself was lodged, the ground-plan of which I have given above.
3. Great mosque, "Gingore (Jnger6, or ZdngerL') b-r, J-rua el kebira," begun by Mansa Mtisa, King of Melle, A. D. 1827, and forming, for many centuries, the centre of the Mohammedan quarter. 4. Mosque S/nkor, in the quarter Silnkor6, which is generally regarded as the oldest quarter of the town. The mosque has five naves, and is 120 feet long by 80 feet wide.
5. Mosque Sidi Ydllia, much smaller than the two other large mosques.
6. Great market-place, or Y,(but.
7. Butchers' market, where in former times the palace, or "M'a-dusk," or M'a-dugu, is said to have been situated.
8. Gate leading to Klobara.
9. Well, surrounded by a small plantation of date-trees. Another well, with a small garden belonging to Mohammed el 'Aish. 11. Spot in a shallow valley up to which point small boats ascended from the Niger, in the winter 1853-4.

Greenwich. Situated only a few feet above the average level of the river, and at a distance of about six miles from the principal branch, it at present forms a sort of triangle, the base of which points toward the river, while the projecting angle is directed toward the north, having for its centre the mosque of Siinkor6. But, during the zenith of its power, the town extended a thousand yards farther north, and included the tomb of the F6ki Mahmiid, which, according to some of my informants, was then situated in the midst of the town.

The circumference of the city at the present time I reckon at a little more than two miles and a half; but it may approach closely to three miles, taking into account some of the projecting angles. Although of only small size, Timbuktu may well be called a citymedina--in comparison with the frail dwelling-places all over Negroland. At present it is not walled. Its former wall, which seems never to have been of great magnitude, and was rather more of the nature of a rampart, was destroyed by the Fdilbe on their first entering the place in the beginning of the year 1826. The town is laid out partly in rectangular, partly in winding streets, or, as they are called here, "tijeriten," which are not paved, but for the greater part consist of hard sand and gravel, and some of them have a sort of gutter in the middle. Besides the large and the small market there are few open areas, except a small square in front of the mosque of Yihia, called Tdimbutu-b6ttema.

Small as it is the city is tolerably well inhabited, and almost all the houses are in good repair. There are about 980 clay houses, and a couple of hundred conical huts of matting, the latter, with a few exceptions, constituting the outskirts of the town on the north and northeast sides, where a great deal of rubbish, which has been accumulating in the course of several centuries, is formed into conspicuous mounds. The clay houses are all of them built on the same principle as my own residence, which I have described, with the exception that the houses of the poorer people have only one court-yard, and have no upper room on the terrace. The only remarkable public buildings in the town are the three large mosques: the Jinger6-b6r, built by Mansa Musa; the mosque of Sinkorg, built at an early period at the expense of a wealthy woman; and the mosque Sidi Yihia, built at the expense of a kidhi of the town. There were three other mosques: that of Sidi Hij Mohammed, Msfd Belil, and that of Sfdi el Bimi. These mosques, and perhaps some little msfd, or place of prayer, Caili6 must have included when he speaks* of seven mosques. Besides these mosques there are at present no distinguished public buildings in the town; and of the royal palace, or M'a-dugu, wherein the kings of Songhay used to reside occasionally, as well as the Kasbah, which was built in later times, in the southeastern quarter, or the "Sane-gungu,"t which

DESCRIPTION OF TIMBU'KTU.

The town is laid out partly in rectangular, partly in winding streets, or, as they are called here, "tijeriten," which are not paved, but for the greater part consist of hard sand and gravel, and some of them have a sort of gutter in the middle. Besides the large and the small market there are few open areas, except a small square in front of the mosque of Yihia, called Tdimbutu-b6ttema. Small as it is the city is tolerably well inhabited, and almost all the houses are in good repair. There are about 980 clay houses, and a couple of hundred conical huts of matting, the latter, with a few exceptions, constituting the outskirts of the town on the north and northeast sides, where a great deal of rubbish, which has been accumulating in the course of several centuries, is formed into conspicuous mounds. The clay houses are all of them built on the same principle as my own residence, which I have described, with the exception that the houses of the poorer people have only one court-yard, and have no upper room on the terrace. The only remarkable public buildings in the town are the three large mosques: the Jinger6-b6r, built by Mansa Musa; the mosque of Sinkorg, built at an early period at the expense of a wealthy woman; and the mosque Sidi Yihia, built at the expense of a kidhi of the town. There were three other mosques: that of Sidi Hij Mohammed, Msfd Belil, and that of Sfdi el Bimi. These mosques, and perhaps some little msfd, or place of prayer, Caili6 must have included when he speaks* of seven mosques. Besides these mosques there are at present no distinguished public buildings in the town; and of the royal palace, or M'a-dugu, wherein the kings of Songhay used to reside occasionally, as well as the Kasbah, which was built in later times, in the southeastern quarter, or the "Sane-gungu,"t which
already at that time was inhabited by the merchants from Ghadimest not a trace is to be
* Caillié, Travels to Timbuctoo, vol. ii., p. 56.

Caillié, Travels to Timbuctoo, vol. ii., p. 56.

t Sane-gungu means, properly, the island, or the quarter of the whites, "kirsh el bedhin."


TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

TRADES IN AFRICA.

seen. Besides this quarter, which is the wealthiest, and contains the best houses, there are six other quarters, viz., Yiibu, the quarter comprising the great market-place (yidbu) and the mosque of Sfdi Yihia, to the west of Sane-gungu; and west of the former, forming the southwestern angle of the town, and called, from the great mosque, Jfinger-bfr or Zinger6-bgr. This latter quarter, from the most ancient times, seems to have been inhabited especially by Mohammedans, and not unlikely may have formed a distinct quarter, separated from the rest of the town by a wall of its own. Toward the north, the quarter Sane-gungu is bordered by the one called Sara-kiina, meaning literally the "little town," and containing the residence of the sheikh, and the house where I myself was lodged. Attached to Sara-kiina, toward the north, is Ydbu-kiina, the quarter containing the "little market," which is especially used as a butchers' market. Bordering both on Jfinger6-bfr and Yfibu-kiina is the quarter Bagfndi, occupying the lowest situation in the town, and stated by the inhabitants to have been flooded entirely in the great inundation which took place in 1640. From this depression in the ground, the quarter of Sinkor6, which forms the northernmost angle of the city, rises to a considerable elevation in such a manner that the mosque of Sinkor6, which seems to occupy its ancient site and level, is at present situated in a deep hollow-an appearance which seems to prove that this elevation of the ground is caused by the accumulation of rubbish, in consequence of the repeated ruin which seems to have befallen this quarter pre-eminently, as being the chief stronghold of the native Songhay. The slope which this quarter forms toward the northeastern end in some spots exceeds eighty feet.

The whole number of the settled inhabitants of the town amounts to about 13,000, while the floating population during the months of the greatest traffic and intercourse, especially from November to January, may amount on an average to 5000, and under favorable circumstances to as many as 10,000. Of the different elements composing this population, and of their distinguishing features, I shall say a few words in another place. I now revert to the diary of my own proceedings.

In the evening of the next day I again went with the sheikh out of the town to the tents, where we were to stay two days, but where we in fact spent six; my friend finding himself very happy in the company of his wife, to whom he was sincerely attached.

INTERESTING CONVERSATIONS.
Not only my companions but even I myself began to find it rather tedious in the
dull encampment, as I had scarcely any books with me to pass away my time, and
my situation not allowing me to enter too closely into the discussions of my
companions, as in that case they would have redoubled their endeavors to convert
me to their creed, and would scarcely have allowed me to depart at all.
Almost the whole of the time which I spent here the sheikh left me quite to
myself, sometimes not quitting his tent for a whole day; but at other times we had
some pleasant and instructive conversation. Among other subjects a rather
animated discussion arose one day. An Arab, of the name of 'Abd e' Rahmin, a
near relation of my host, and of a rather presumptuous character, who had come
on a visit from A'zawid, was extremely anxious to know the motives which
induced me to visit this country, and scarcely doubted that it could be any thing
else than the desire of conquest. In order to show them of what little value the
possession of the country would be to the Europeans, I jestingly told them that our
government, being informed that the natives of these tracts fed on sand and clay,
had sent me out to discover how this was done, in order to provide in a similar
way for the poor in our own country. The Arab was naturally greatly surprised at
my statement. But the sheikh himself laughed very heartily, and inquired, with an
expression of doubt, whether there were poor people among the Christians.
Another evening, when the sheikh was cheerfully sitting with us roufid the fire,
we had an interesting conversation concerning the worship of idols. In order to
overcome the prejudice of his pupils with regard to the greater nobility and
superiority of the Arab race, and to show them that their forefathers had not been
much better than many of the idolatrous nations at the present day, he gave them
an account of the superstitions of the ancient Arabs, and in the course of his
conversation exhibited unmistakable proofs of an enlightened and elevated mind,
of which the letter which I shall communicate in another, place will give farther
proof
Occasionally we received here also, some interesting visits from Arabs or other
people; the most conspicuous person among them being a man of the name of
Fffi, the inspector of the harbor of Yowaru, a man of cheerful temperament and a
great friend of the sheikh's. He had a perfect knowledge of the course of the river
between Timbidktu and Jafaribe, the groups of islands forming

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
the boundary between the Mohammedan kingdom of Msina and the Pagan
kingdom of Bimbara, and very important for the trade along the river, as the boats
coming from Timbxiiku must here discharge their merchandise, which has to be
conveyed hence to Sansndi on the backs of asses; but unfortunately my informant
spoke nothing but Songhay. The state of retirement in which I was obliged to live
deprived me of the opportunity of cultivating the language of the natives; which
was moreover extremely repulsive to me on account of its deficiency in forms and
words, so that I found it next to impossible to express in it any general idea
without having recourse to some other foreign language. The Songhay of this
region, having been deprived of all their former independent character more than
two centuries and a half ago, and having become degraded and subject to
foreigners, have lost also the national spirit of their idiom, which, instead of
developing itself, has become gradually poorer and more limited; but I have no
doubt that the dialect spoken by those still independent people in Dargol and
Kulman is far richer, and any body who wishes to study the Songhay language
must study it there. The Arab visitors* to the town at this period were especially
numerous, this being the most favorable season for the salt trade. A few months
later scarcely a single Arab from abroad frequents the town.
The private life of the people in these encampments runs on very tranquilly when
there is no predatory incursion, which however is often enough the case. Most of
these mixed Arabs have only one wife at a time, and they seem to lead a quiet
domestic life, very like that of the sheikh himself. I scarcely imagine that there is
in Europe a person more sincerely attached to his wife and children than my host
was. In fact, it might be said that he was a little too dependent on the will of his
wife. The difference which I found between the position of the wife among these
Moorish tribes and that which she enjoys among the Tawirek is extraordinary,
although even the Tawirek have generally but one wife; but while the latter is
allowed to move about at her pleasure quite unveiled, the wife even of the poorest
Arab or Moor is never seen unveiled, being generally clad in a black under and
upper gown, and the wives of the richer and nobler people never

* I must here testify to the accuracy with which Mr. Raffenel, in the plates
illustrating his two journeys in Negroland, has represented the character of these
Western Arabs or Moors.

TEDIOUSNESS OF POSITION.
leave their tents. The camp life of course would give to coquettish women a fair
opportunity of intrigue; but in general I think their morals are pretty chaste, and
the chastisement which awaits any transgression is severe, a married wife
convicted of adultery being sure to be stoned. An incident happened during my
present stay at the tents which gave proof of love affairs not being quite unusual
here--a Tirki, or rather A'mghi, having been murdered from motives of jealousy
and brought into our camp. But I must confess that I can scarcely speak of the
mode of life in an Arab or Moorish encampment; for the camp of the sheikh, as a
chief of religion, is of course quite an exception; and moreover the neighborhood
of the FDilbe or Fulin, who, in their austere religious creed, view all amusements
with a suspicious eye, has entirely changed the character of these Moorish camps
around the town, and it may be in consequence qf this influenci that there was no
dancing or singing here.
Notwithstanding trifling incidents like these, which tended occasionally to
alleviate the tediousness of our stay, I was deeply afflicted by the immense delay
and loss of time, and did not allow an opportunity to pass by of urging my
protector to hasten our departure; and he promised me that, as I was not looking
for property, he should not keep me long. But, nevertheless, his slow and
deliberate character could not be overcome, and it was not until the arrival of
another messenger from Hamda-Allihi, with a fresh order to the sheikh to deliver
me into his hands, that he was induced to return into the town.
My situation in this turbulent place now approached a serious crisis; but, through the care which my friends took of me, I was not allowed to become fully aware of the danger I was in. The sheikh himself was greatly excited, but came to no decision with regard to the measures to be taken; and at times he did not see any safety for me except by my taking refuge with the Tawirek, and placing myself entirely under their protection. But as for myself I remained quiet, although my spirits were far from being buoyant; especially as, during this time, I suffered severely from rheumatism; and I had become so tired of this stay outside in the tents, where I was not able to write, that, when the sheikh went out again in the evening of the 16th, I begged him to let me remain where I was. Being anxious about my safety, he returned the following evening. However, on the 22d, I was obliged to accompany him on another visit to the tents, which had now been pitched in a different place, on a bleak sandy eminence, about five miles east from the town, but this time he kept his promise of not staying more than twenty-four hours. It was at this encampment that I saw again the last four of my camels, which at length, after innumerable delays, and with immense expense, had been brought from beyond the river, but they were in a miserable condition, and furnished another excuse to my friends for putting off my departure, the animals being scarcely fit to undertake a journey.

CHAPTER LXIX.

POLITICAL STATE OF THE COUNTRY.-DANGEROUS CRISIS.

In the mean time, while I was thus warding off a decisive blow from my enemies, the political horizon of these extensive regions became rather more turbulent than usual; and war and feud raged in every quarter. Toward the north the communication with Morocco was quite interrupted, the tribe of the Tjakint, who almost exclusively keep up that communication, being engaged in civil war, which had arisen in this way. A "Jakni,7* called 'Abd Allah Weled Muldd, and belonging to that section of their tribe which is called Dr'awa, had slain a chief of the E'rgabit, who had come to sue for peace, and had been killed in his turn by the chief of his own tribe, a respectable and straightforward man of the name of Mohammed el Mukhtir Meribet. Thus, two factions having arisen, one consisting of the U'jarit and the A'hel e' Sherk, and the other being formed by the Dr'a'wa and their allies, a sanguinary war was carried on. But, notwithstanding the unfavorable state of this quarter, which is so important for the well-being of the town, on account of its intercourse with the north, the sheikh, who was always anxious to establish peaceable intercourse, repeatedly told me that although he regarded the road along the river under the protection of the Tawirek as the safest for myself, he should endeavor to open the northern road for future travelers from Mer6kesh, or Morocco, by way of Tafil6let, and that he should make an arrangement to this effect with the A"arlib and Tjakint, though there is no 'doubt that it was the A"arib who killed Mr. Davidson, a few days after he had set out from W~df Nin in the company

* This is the singular form of the name Tjakint.
DANGEROUS SITUATION.

of the Tijakint. There was just at the time a man of authority, of the name of Himed Weled e’ Sid, belonging to this tribe present in the town. On one occasion he came to pay me a visit, girt with his long bowie-knife. I had, however, not much confidence in these northern Moors; and seeing him advance through my court-yard in company with another man, I started up from my couch and met him half way; and although he behaved with some discretion, and even wanted to clear his countrymen from the imputation of having murdered the above-mentioned traveler, I thought it more prudent to beg him to keep at a respectful distance.

Just at this time a large foray was undertaken by a troop of 400 Awelimmiden against the Hogir, but it returned almost empty-handed, and with the loss of one of their principal men. Toward the south, the enterprising chief El Khadfr, whom I have mentioned on a former occasion, was pushing strenuously forward against his inveterate enemies the Fdilbe, or Fulln, although the report which we heard at this time, of his having taken the town of H6mbori, was not subsequently confirmed. But, on the whole, the fact of this Berber tribe pushing always on into the heart of Negroland, is very remarkable; and there is no doubt that if a great check had not been given them by the Fd1be they would have overpowered ere this the greater part of the region north of 130 N. latitude. Great merit, no doubt, is due to the Filbe for thus rescuing these regions from the grasp of the Berber tribes of the desert, although as a set-off it must be admitted that they do not understand how to organize a firm and benevolent government, which would give full security to the intercourse of people of different nationalities, instead of destroying the little commerce still existing in these unfortunate regions, by forcing upon the natives their own religious prejudices.

The danger of my situation increased when, on the 17th November, some more messengers from the prince of Hamda-Alhihi arrived in order to raise the zek’a,* and at the same time we received authentic information that the Filbe had made an attempt to instigate Awib, the chief of the Tadem6kket, upon whom I chiefly relied for my security, to betray me into their hands. News also arrived that the Weld Slimin, that section of the Berabfsh to which belongs especially the chief Himed Weled 'Ab6da, who killed Major Laing, had bound themselves by an

* Of the amount of the zek'a, I shall speak in another chapter.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

oath to put me to death. But my situation became still more critical toward the close of the month, when, having once more left the town for the tents, we received information that a fresh party had arrived from the capital with the strictest orders to take me dead or alive. Being therefore afraid that my people, whom I had left in the town, frightened by the danger, might be induced to send my luggage out of the house where I was lodged, I sent in the course of the night the servant whom I had with me at the time, with strict orders not to move any thing; but, before he reached the town, my other people had sent away my two large boxes to T1eb el Wifi, the store-keeper of the sheikh. But fortunately I did
not sustain any loss from this proceeding, nothing being missed from these boxes, notwithstanding they had been left quite open.

Thursday, December 1st. Having passed a rather anxious night, with my pistols in my girdle, and ready for any emergency, I was glad when, in the morning, I saw my boy return accompanied by Mohammed el 'Aish. But I learned that the people of the town were in a state of great excitement, and that there was no doubt but an attack would be made upon my house the next morning. Thus much I made out myself; but having no idea of the imminence of the danger, in the course of the day I sent away my only servant with my two horses, for the purpose of being watered. But my Tawiti friend seemed to be better informed, and taking his post on the rising ground of the sandy downs, on the slope of which we were encamped, kept an anxious look-out toward the town. About dhohor, or two o'clock in the afternoon, he gave notice of the approach of horsemen in the distance, and while I went into my tent to look after my effects, Mohammed el Khaliff rushed in suddenly, crying out to me to arm myself. Upon this I seized all the arms I had, consisting of a double-barreled gun, three pistols, and a sword; and I had scarcely come out when I met the sheikh himself with the small six-barreled pistol which I had given him in his hand. Handing one of my large pistols to Mohammed ben Mukht-r, a young man of considerable energy, and one of -the chief followers of the sheikh, I knelt down and pointed my gun at the foremost of the horsemen who, to the number of thirteen, were approaching. Having been brought to a stand by our threatening to fire if they came nearer, their officer stepped forward crying out that he had' a letter to deliver to the sheikh; but the latter forbade him to

APPROACH OF A HOST.

come near, saying that he would only receive the letter in the town, and not in the desert. The horsemen, finding that I was ready to shoot down the first two or three who should approach me, consulted with each other and then slowly fell back, relieving us from our anxious situation. But, though reassured of my own safety, I had my fears as to my servant and my two horses, and was greatly delighted when I saw them safely return from the water. However, our position soon became more secure in consequence of the arrival of Sidi A'lawite, accompanied by a troop of armed men, among whom there were some musketeers. It now remained to be decided what course we should pursue, and there was great indecision, A'lawde wanting to remain himself with me at the tents, while the sheikh returned to the town. But besides my dislike to stay any longer at the encampment, I had too little confidence in the younger brother of the sheikh to trust my life in his hands, and I was therefore extremely delighted to find that El Bakiy himself, and Mohammed el 'Afsb, thought it best for me to return into the town. At the moment when we mounted our horses, a troop of K6lhekfkan, although not always desirable companions, mounted on mhehra, became visible in the distance, so that in their company we reentered Timbiktu, not only with full security, but with great Olat, and without a single person daring to oppose our entrance; though Hammidi, the sheikh's rival, was just about to collect his followers in order to come himself and
fight us at the tents. Frustrated in this plan, he came to my protector in his "msfd," or place of prayer in front of his house, and had a serious conversation with him, while the followers of the latter armed themselves in order to anticipate any treachery or evil design, of which they were greatly afraid. But the interview passed off quietly, and, keeping strict watch on the terrace of our house, we passed the ensuing night without farther disturbance.

This happened on the 1st of December; and the following morning, in conformity with the sheikh's protest, that he would receive the Emir of Hamda-Allahi's letter only in Timbdtktu, the messenger arrived; but the latter being a man of ignoble birth, called Mohammed ben S'af'd, the character of the messenger irritated my host almost more even than the tenor of the letter, which ordered him to give me and my property up into the hands of his (the emir's) people. After having given vent to his anger, he sent for me, and handed me the letter, together with

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

another which had been addressed to the Emir Kau'ri, and the whole community of the town, whites as well as blacks (el bedhin U' e' sudin), threatening them with condign punishment if they should not capture me, or watch me in such a manner that I could not escape.

The serious character which affairs had assumed, and the entire revolution which my own personal business caused in the daily life of the community, were naturally very distressing to me, and nothing could be more against my wish than to irritate the fanatical and not powerless ruler of Hamda-Allihi. It had been my most anxious desire from the beginning to obtain the good-will of this chief by sending him a present, but my friends here had frustrated my design; and even if in the beginning it had been possible—a supposition which is more than doubtful, considering the whole character of the Filbe of Hamda-Alldhi, it was now too late, as S~ko A'hmdu had become my inveterate enemy, and I could only cling with the greater tenacity to the only trustworthy protector whom I had here, the Sheikh el Bakly. In acknowledgment, therefore, of his straightforward conduct, I sent him, as soon as I had again taken quiet possession of my quarters, some presents to distribute among the Tawirek, besides giving the head man of the latter a small extra gift, and some powder and Hiusa cloth to distribute among our friends. However, my situation remained very precarious. As if a serious combat was about to ensue all the inhabitants tried their fire-arms, and there was a great deal of firing in the whole town, while the Morocco merchants, with 'Abd e' Saldm at their head, endeavored to lessen the sheik's regard for me, by informing him that not even in their country (Morocco) were the Christians treated with so much regard, not only their luggage, but even their dress being there searched on entering the country. But the sheikh was not to be talked over in this manner, and adhered to me without wavering for a moment. He then sat down and wrote a spirited and circumstantial letter to S~ko A'hmdu, wherein he reproached him with attempting to take out of his hands by force a man better versed in subjects of religion than he, the emir himself, who had come from a far distant country to pay him his respects, and who was his guest.
The following day, while I was in the company of the sheikh, the Emir Ka-iri and the Kidhi San-shfrfu, together with several other principal personages, called upon him, when I paid my compliments to them all, and found that the latter especially was a

very respectable man. My friend had provided for any emergency, having sent to the Tadem6kket, requesting them urgently to come to his assistance; and, in the evening of the 6th of December, A'wib, the chief of the Tin-ger-6gedesh, arrived with fifty horse, and was lodged by El Bakiy in the neighborhood of our quarters.

The next morning the sheikh sent for me to pay my compliments to this chief. I found him a very stately person of a proud commanding bearing, clad in a jelliba tobe striped red and white, and ornamented with green silk, his head adorned with a high red cap, an article of dress which is very rarely seen here, either among the Tawirek or even the Arabs. Having saluted him, I explained to him the reason of my coming, and for what purpose I sought imina; and when he raised an objection on account of my creed, because I did not acknowledge Mohammed as a prophet, I succeeded in warding off his attack by telling him that they themselves did not acknowledge Mohammed as the only prophet, but likewise acknowledged Musa, 'Afsa, and many others; and that, in reality, they seemed to acknowledge in a certain degree the superiority of 'Aisa, by supposing that he was to return at the end of the world; and that thus, while we had a different prophet, but adored and worshiped one and the same God, and, leaving out of the question a few divergencies in point of diet and morals, followed the same religious principles as they themselves did, it seemed to me that we were nearer to each other than he thought, and might well be friends, offering to each other those advantages which each of us commanded.

We then came to speak about their history. I told him that I had visited their old dwelling-places in Air, Tiggeda, and Tidmekka; but he was totally unaware of the fanciful derivation which the Arab authors have given to the latter name, viz., "likeness of Mekka,"* which probably never belonged to one town in particular, but has always been the name of a tribe. He felt, however, very much flattered by this piece of information, and seemed extremely delighted when I told him how old the Islim was in his tribe. My little knowledge of these historical and religious matters was of invaluable service to me, and particularly in this instance, for obtaining the esteem of the natives, and for overcoming their prejudices; for, while this chief himself scarcely understood a single word of Arabic, so that I could only speak with him in very broken Temishight or Tirikiye, his brother, El Khattif, was well versed in that language, and spoke it fluently.

Having left the people to converse among themselves, I returned to the sheikh in the afternoon, taking with me a present for A'wdb, consisting of a checkered tobe
(such as I have described on a former occasion,* and which are great favorites with these people), two tidkedef, and two black tesfjamist or shawls, besides another shawl and a handkerchief for his messenger or m'allem, who is the confidential factotum of every Trki chief. He was as thankful as these barbarians can be, but wished to see something marvelous, as characteristic of the industry of our country; but I begged him to have patience, till, on some future occasion, some other person belonging to our nation should come to pay him a visit. While I was staying there a Pilio chief arrived from Guindam with two companions, and reproached the sheikh in my presence for having shown so much regard for an unbeliever, whose effects at least ought to have been delivered up to the chief of HamdaAllahi; but I imposed silence upon him by showing him how little he himself knew of religious matters in calling me an unbeliever; and telling him that if he had really any knowledge of, and faith in, his creed, his first duty was to try to convert those of his own countrymen who were still idolaters. At the same time I told the Tirki chief A'wib that it seemed to me as if they were afraid of the Fulbe, or else they would certainly not allow them to molest travelers who visited this place with friendly intentions, while they could not even protect the natives. In reply he alleged that they were by no means afraid of them, having vanquished them on a former occasion, but that they only awaited the arrival of their kinsfolk to show them that they were the real masters of Timbuktu. To add to the conflict of these opposing interests, a great number of strangers were at this time collected in the town, most of whom were of a far more fanatical disposition than the inhabitants themselves, who, on the whole, are very good-natured. The Berabish alone, who had come into the town with about one thousand camels carrying their salt, mustered one hundred and twenty horse, prepared, no doubt, to fight the Fulbe, if the latter

* See vol. i., p. 513.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

336

LETTER AND NEWS FROM EUROPE.

should attempt to levy the "ashuir," or the tithe, but still more hostilely disposed toward the Christian stranger who had intruded upon this remote corner, one of the most respected seats of the Mohammedan faith, and against whom they had a personal reason of hostility, as they were commanded by 'Ali, the son of Himed Weled 'Ab6da, the acknowledged murderer of Major Laing; and, of course, the news of my residence in the town, and of the hostile disposition of the Fulbe, who had now been two months attempting in vain to drive me out of it, had spread far and wide.

This great influx of strangers into the town raised the price of all sorts of provisions, particularly that of negro corn and rice, in a remarkable degree, the latter rising from 6000 to 7500 shells the "sunfye," while the former, which a few days before had been sold for 3750, equal at that time to one and a half" rds" of salt, rose to the exorbitant price of 6000 shells.

In the evening of the 7th a slave suddenly arrived with the news that a letter had reached my address from the north. He was followed a short time afterward by
Mohammed el 'Aish, who brought me the parcel in question, which, however, had been opened. The letter was from Mr. Charles Dickson, her majesty's vice-consul in Ghadimes, dated June 18th, and inclosing, besides some recommendations to native merchants, a number of "Galignani," which informed me of the first movements of the Russians on the Danube. The Ghadimsfye people, who were the bearers of the letter, had already spread the news of a dreadful battle having been fought between the Turks and the Russians, in which 30,000 of the latter had been slain and 40,000 made prisoners.

The following day A'wib, who himself had arrived with fifty horsemen, was joined by his cousin Fandaghme with fifty more. This was very fortunate; for, about dhohor, the Flbe held a conference or "kgndegiy" in the G6ngerb6r or Jim'a el Kebfra, where Himed Weled F'aamme, the malignant and hostile kddhi, made a violent speech before the assembly, exhorting the people to go immediately and carry out the order of their liege lord the Sheikho A'hmedu, even if they were to fight conjointly against El Bakiy, A'wib, and the Emfr Kaii, whom he represented as disobedient and almost rebellious to his liege lord. A friend of the latter, who knew the cowardly disposition of the speaker, then rose in the assembly, and exhorted the kidhi to lead the van, and proceed to the attack, when every one would follow him. But the kidhi not choosing to expose his own son to danger, nothing was done, and the assembly separated, every one going quietly to his home.

Meanwhile the two Tawdrek chiefs, with their principal men, ere assembled in the house of the sheikh, where I went to meet them, but found them not quite satisfied with the part which they were acting. They entered into a warm dispute with me upon the subject of religion, but soon found themselves so perplexed that they left it to the sheikh to answer all my objections. A Protestant Christian may easily defend his creed against these children of the desert, as long as they have not recourse to arms.

Next morning we left the narrow lanes of Timbfikutu and entered upon the open sandy desert, accompanied by the two Tawrek chiefs, each of whom had fifteen companions. The tents being now farther removed from the town, near the border of the inundations of the river, the camping-ground was pleasant and well adorned with trees; and having taken my own tent with me, where I could stretch myself out without being infested by the vermin which swarm in the native carpets, I enjoyed the open encampment extremely. Leather- tents had been pitched for the Tawirek, who in a short time made themselves quite at home, and were in high spirits. They became very much interested in a map of Africa which I showed to them, with the adjoining shores of Arabia, and they paid a compliment to their prophet by kissing the site of Mekka.

Being thus on good terms with my barbaric veiled friends, the Molathemiiin, I enjoyed extremely, the following morning, the half-desert scenery, enlivened as it was by horses, camels, cattle, and interesting groups of men; but about noon a serious alarm arose, a great many horses being seen in the distance, and the
number being exaggerated by some people to as many as two hundred. In consequence, we saddled our horses with great speed, and I mounted with my servants, while the Tawirek also kept their animals in readiness; but the advancing host appeared rather of a peaceable character, consisting of about twenty-five of the most respectable inhabitants of the town, with Muliy 'Abd e' Salim and Fasidi, the latter a very noble old man, at their head. They came, however, on a very important errand, based on the direct order as promulgated by the Emir of Hamda-Allihi, and addressed to the whole community, being in hopes that, through their personal authority, they might obtain from my host, in a friendly manner, what he had denied to the display of

RETURN TO THE TOWN.

force. They had two requests, both aimed against myself: first, that El Bakiy should give them a copy of the letter which I was said to have brought with me from Stambill; and the second, which was more explicit, that I should not return into the town. Now my firmin from Stamb-l was my greatest trouble, for, having anxiously requested her British majesty's government to send such a document after me, I always expected to receive it by some means or other; but I was not less disappointed in this respect, than in my expectation of receiving a letter of recommendation from Morocco; nevertheless, as I had some other letters from Mohammedans, the sheikh promised to comply with the first demand of these people, while he refused to pay any attention to the second. After some unsuccessful negotiation, the messengers retraced their steps rather disheartened.

In order to attach more sincerely to my interest the Tawirek chiefs, who were my only supporters, I gave to Fandaghmme a present equal to the one I had given to A'wib. Next morning there arrived a troop of fugitives who were anxious to put themselves under the protection of the sheikh. They belonged to the tribe of the Surk, who, from being the indigenous tribe on that part of the Niger which extends on both sides of the lake Debu, had been degraded, in the course of time, to the condition of serfs, and were threatened by the fanatical Sheikho A'hmedu with being sold into slavery. Of course it is the Sheikh el Bakiy's policy to extend his protection to whatever quarter is threatened by the Fuilbe; but, in this case, sympathy with the miserable fate of these poor people led him to interfere.

It was near sunset when we mounted in order to return into the town; and on the way I kept up a conversation with A'w~b, till the time of the mughreb prayer arrived, when the whole of my friends went to pray on the desert ground, while I myself, remaining on horseback, went a little on one side of the track: My companions afterward contended that it was from motives of pride and arrogance that I did not humble myself in the dust before the Almighty. I should certainly have liked to kneel down and thank Providence for the remarkable manner in which my life had hitherto been preserved; but I did not deem it politic to give way to their mode of thinking and worship in any respect; for I should have soon been taken for a Mohammedan, and, once in such a false position, there would have been no getting out of it.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
We then entered the town amid the shouts of the people, who, by the appearance of the moon, had just discovered, as is very often the case in these regions, that they had been a day out in their reckoning, and that the following day was the festival of the Mudd, or the birth-day of Mohammed; and I was allowed to take quiet possession of my quarters.

The same evening I had an interesting conversation with the chief A'wib, who paid me a long visit, in company with his m'allem, and gave me the first account of the proceedings of that Christian traveler Mungo Park (to use his own words), who, about fifty years ago, came down the river in a large boat; describing the manner in which he had been first attacked by the Tawirek below Kibara, where he had lost some time in endeavoring to open a communication with the natives, while the Tinger gedesh forwarded the news of his arrival, without delay, to the Igwidaren, who, having collected their canoes, attacked him, first near Bamba, and then again at the narrow passage of T6saye,* though all in vain; till at length, the boat of that intrepid traveler having stuck fast at Ens-mongo (probably identical with Ansongo), the Tawirek of that neighborhood made another fierce and more successful attack, causing him an immense deal of trouble, and killing, as A'wib asserted, two of his Christian companions. He also gave me a full account of the iron hook with which the boat was provided against hippopotami and hostile canoes; and his statement altogether proved what an immense excitement the mysterious appearance of this European traveler, in his solitary boat, had caused among all the surrounding tribes.

The chief being very anxious to obtain some silver, I thought it best, in order to convince all the people that I had no dollars left (although I had saved about twenty for my journey to H1usa), to give him my silver knife and fork, besides some large silver rings which I had by me; and he was very glad to have obtained a sufficient quantity of this much-esteemed metal for adorning his beloved wife. These Tawgrek chiefs who had thus become well disposed toward me, through the interference of the sheikh, wrote an excellent letter of franchise for any Englishman visiting this coun* The Tawrek must have attacked Park either far above or below this narrow passage, where, as I afterward found, the current is very strong; and, as I shall relate farther on, he seems to have passed quietly by Tin-sherffen.

340

LETTER OF FRANCHISE.

Try, thus holding out the first glimmer of hope of a peaceable intercourse. But my own experience leaves no room for doubt that these chiefs are not strong enough of themselves to defend a Christian against the attacks of the F-ilbe in the upper course of, the river above Timbuktu, besides the fact that A'wdb is too nearly connected with the latter to be entirely trusted. It was on this account that my host esteemed his cousin Fandaghimme much higher, and placed greater reliance on him, although the actual chieftainship rested with A'wib. All this business, however, together with the writing of the letter to the chief of Hamda-Allhhi, which was rejected in several forms, and caused a great many representations from the chief men of the town, proved extremely tedious to me. My health, too,
at that time was in a very indifferent condition, and I suffered repeatedly from attacks of fever. In a sanitary point of view Timbuktu can in no wise be reckoned among the more favored places of these regions. Both Sansindi and Sego are considered more healthy. But, notwithstanding my sickly state, I had sufficient strength left to finish several letters, which, together, with a map of the western part of the desert, I intended sending home by the first opportunity.

As the waters increased more and more, and began to cover all the lowlands, I should have liked very much to rove about along those many backwaters which are formed by the river, in order to witness the interesting period of the rice harvest, which was going on just at this time. It was collected in small canoes, only the spikes of the upper part of the stalks emerging from the water. But new rice was not brought into the town till the beginning of January, and then only in small quantities, the s'aa being sold for 100 shells.

December 19th. This was an important day—important to the Mohammedans as the 'Aid e' subtdwa, and celebrated by them with prayers and sgddegga or alms; and not unimportant for myself, for my relation to the townspeople had meanwhile assumed a more serious character. Sheikh (Sgko) Ahmedu had threatened that, if the inhabitants of Timbuktu did not assist in driving me out of the town, he would cut off the supply of corn. This induced the Emir Kauri to undertake a journey to the capital, in order to prevent the malicious intrigues of the Kidhi Weledd Faamme, who was about to embark for that place, from making matters worse.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

I have stated before, that, together with the caravan of the Berabish (the plural of Berbiishi) which had arrived on the 12th with a considerable armed host, 'All, the son of the old Sheikh Ahmed, or Himed, Weledd 'Abdda, had come to Timbuktu; and, seeing that I was a great friend of the Sheikh el Bak6y, he had not come to pay his compliments to the latter, but had pitched his camp outside the town, and his people manifested their hostility toward me on several occasions. But, by a most providential dispensation, on the seventeenth the chief fell suddenly sick, and in the morning of the nineteenth he died. His death made an extraordinary impression upon the people, as it was a well-known fact that it was his father who had killed the former Christian who had visited this place; and the more so, as it was generally believed that I was Major Laing's son.

It was the more important, as the report had been generally spread that, as I have observed before, the Welid Slimn, the principal and most noble section of the Berabish, had sworn to kill me; and the people could not but think that there was some supernatural connection between the death of this man, at this place and at this period, and the murderous deed perpetrated by his father; and, on the whole, I can not but think that this event exercised a salutary influence upon my final safety. The followers of the chief of the Berabish were so frightened by this tragical event, that they came in great procession to the Sheikh el Bak6y, to beg his pardon for their neglect, and to obtain his blessing; nay, the old man himself, a short time afterward, sent word, that he would in no way interfere with my departure, but wished nothing better than that I might reach home in safety. The
excitement of the people on account of my stay here thus settled down a little, and
the party of the Fdlbe seemed quietly to await the result produced by the answer
which the sheikh had forwarded to Hamda-Allhi.
On the 21st December we again went in the afternoon to the tents. For the first
time since my arrival in this town I rode my own stately charger, which, having
remained so many months in the stable, feeding upon the nutritive grass of the
b'rgu, had so completely recruited his strength that in my desperately weak state I
was scarcely able to manage him. The desert presented a highly interesting
spectacle. A considerable stream, formed by the river, poured its waters with great
force into the valleys and depressions of this sandy region, and gave an
appearance of truth

CHANTING IN THE DESERT.
to the fabulous statement* of thirty-six rivers flowing through this tract. -After a
few hours' repose, I was able to keep up a long conversation with the sheikh in the
evening, about Paradise and the divine character of the Kurin. This time our stay
at the tents afforded more opportunity than usual for interesting conversation, and
bore altogether a more religious character, my protector being anxious to
convince his friends and followers of the depth of the faith of the Christians; and I
really lamented that circumstances did not allow me to enter so freely into the
details of the creed of these people, and to make myself acquainted with all its
characteristics, as I should have liked.
Part of the day the sheikh read and recited to his pupils chapters from the hadfth
of Bokhiri, while his young son repeated his lesson aloud from the Kurin, and in
the evening several surdt, or chapters, of the holy book were beautifully chanted
by the pupils till a late hour of the night. There was nothing more charming to me
than to hear these beautiful verses chanted by sonorous voices in this open desert
country, round the evening fire, with nothing to disturb the sound, which softly
reverberated from the slope of the sandy downs opposite. A Christian must have
been a witness to such scenes in order to treat with justice the Mohammedans and
their creed. Let us not forget that but for the worship of images and the quarrels
about the most absurdly superstitious notions which distracted the Christian
Church during the seventh century, there would have been no possibility of the
establishment of a new creed based on the principles of Monotheism, and opposed
in open hostility to Christianity. Let us also take into an account that the most
disgusting feature attaching to the morals of Mohammedans has been introduced
by the Mongolish tribes from Central Asia, and excited the most unqualified
horror in the founder of the religion.
Peace and security seemed to prevail in this little encampment. In general the
whole of this region to the north of the river is entirely free from beasts of prey,
with the exception of jackals; but at present, together with the rising water, which
had entirely changed the character of these districts, a lion had entered this desert
tract, and one day killed three goats, and the following one two asses, one of
which was remarkable for its great strength.
Remaining here a couple of days, on the evening of the 25th
* See one of these native reports in Duncan's account of his exploration in Dahome. Journal Geog. Soc., vol. xvi., p. 157.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

we had again a long conversation, which was very characteristic of the different state of mind of the Christian in comparison with that of the Mohammedan. While speaking of European institutions, I informed my host of the manner in which we were accustomed to insure property, by sea as well as on land, including even harvests, nay, even the lives of the people. He appeared greatly astonished, and was scarcely able to believe it; and while he could not deny that it was a good "debbira," or device for this world, he could not but think, as a pious Moslim, that such proceedings might endanger the safety of the soul in the next. However, he was delighted to see that Christians took such care for the welfare of the family which they might leave behind; and it was an easy task to prove to him that, as to making profits in any way whatever, his co-religionists, who think any kind of usury unlawful, were in no way better than the Christians; for, although the former do not openly take usury, they manage affairs so cleverly that they demand a much higher percentage than any honest Christian would accept. I had a fair opportunity of citing, as an instance, one of those merchants resident in Timbuktu, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. Dickson, and who had consented to advance me a small loan, under such conditions that he was to receive almost triple the sum which he was to lend.

December 25th. This day was also an important epoch for the inhabitants of the place, the water having entered the wells, which are situated round the southern and southwestern part of the town; and this period, which is said to occur only about every third year, obtains the same importance here as the "l6let e' nuktah" possesses with the inhabitants of Cairo;* viz., the day or night on which the dike which separates the canal from the river is cut. The whole road from K-bara was now so inundated that it was no longer passable for asses, and small boats very nearly approached the town.

When my host made his appearance on the morning of the 26th, he was not as usual clad in a black tobe, but in a red kaftan, with a white cloth berns over it. He began speaking most cheerfully about my approaching departure, and had the camels brought before me, which now looked infinitely better than when they were last conveyed from the other bank of the river; but as I had become fully aware of his dilatory character, I did not place much reliance upon the hope which he held out to me of soon


STATE OF TRADE.

entering upon my home journey. We had heard of the messenger whom he had sent to the Awelimmiden, in order to induce the chief of that tribe to come to Timbuktu and to take me under his protection, having reached the settlements of that tribe; but I was aware that the opposite party would do all in their power to prevent the chief from approaching the town, as they were fully conscious that the
sheikh wanted to employ him and his host of warlike people, in order to subdue the Fullin and the faction opposed to his own authority.

December 27th. Feeling my head much better, and having recruited my strength with a diet of meat and milk, I began to enjoy the rehila life, and, it being a beautiful morning, I took a good walk to an eminence situated at some distance north of my tent, from whence I had a distant view of the landscape. The country presented an intermediate character between the desert and a sort of less favored pasture-ground, stretching out in an undulating surface, with a sandy soil tolerably well clad with middle-sized acacias and with thorny bushes, where the goat finds sufficient material for browsing. The streams of running water which, with their silvery threads, enlivened these bare desert tracts, now extended a considerable distance farther inland than had been the case a few days before; and the whole presented a marvelous and delightful spectacle, which, no doubt, must fill travelers from the north who reach Timbuktu at such a season with astonishment. Hence, on their return home, they spread the report of those numerous streams which are said to join the river at that remarkable place, while, on the contrary, these streams issue from the river, and after running inland for a short time, return to join the main trunk, though of course with decreased volume, owing to absorption and evaporation.

All the people of the town who did not belong to any trade or profession, together with the inhabitants of the neighboring districts, were still busily employed with the rice harvest; and this was a serious affair for my horses, a much smaller quantity of by'rgu, that is to say, of that excellent nutritious grass of the Niger, which I have had repeatedly occasion to mention, being brought into the town. Meanwhile the price of the merchandise from the north went on increasing. A piece of khim, or malti (unbleached calico), now sold for 5700 shells (at least on the 26th of January), but in the beginning of February it rose to 7200; this fluctuation in the prices constitutes the profit of the merchants, who buy their supplies on the arrival of a caravan and store it up. The commercial activity of the town had received some farther increase, owing to the arrival of another caravan from Tawit, with black Hiusa manufactures, tobacco, and dates, so that I was able to lay in a good store of the latter luxury, which is not always to be got here, but which, in the cold season, is not at all to be despised. Besides receiving a handsome present of dates from my noble Tawiti friend Mohammed el 'Aish, I bought two measures (neffek) and a half of the kind called tin-iser for 4000 shells; for the "tin-ak6r," the most celebrated species of dates from Tawit, were not to be procured at this time.* As for tobacco, I did not care a straw about it, and in this respect I might have been on the very best terms with my fanatical friends, the F-1be of Hamda-Allihi, who offer such a determined opposition to smoking upon religious principles. In a commercial respect, however, tobacco forms a more important article in the trade of Timb-6ktu than dates, although refined smokers here prefer the tobacco of Widf-Ndn to that of

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Tawit. But even these had an opportunity of gratifying their inclination at this season, for only two days after the arrival of the Tawiti caravan, a small troop of Tjak~nt traders, with eighty camels, entered the town. The feud which raged between the different sections of this tribe, which, as I stated before, chiefly keeps up the commercial relations of Timbdktu with the north, on the one hand, and the war raging between the whole of this tribe and the E'rgebit on the other, interrupted at this time almost entirely the peaceable intercourse between Timbduktu and the southern region of Morocco. The arrival of these people enabled me to purchase half a weight of sugar, equal to six pounds and a quarter, with a corresponding quantity of tea (viz., half a pound), for three dollars; for, as I have said before, there had been no sugar previously in the market. Even when there is plenty, neither tea nor sugar can be bought separately. These articles must be bought together. It is remarkable that a similar custom is still prevalent in many parts of Europe, and even in this country. The arrival of these Tjakdnt procured me also the luxury of a * The other kinds of dates of Tawit are: A'bart~n, Tigze, Tazarzay, Tinwarfggelf, Tedemimet, Bil-Makhiff, Tin-kUsseri, Tin-dokin, Tin-nijdel, Tilfmsu, Timbozdri, Adfkkeli, GAfagds, Diggelet-ndr. The district of AllMf is the most famous for its dates. 346

BEGINNING OF THE NEW YEAR.

347
couple of pomegranates, which had been brought by them from the Gharb, and which gave me an opportunity of expostulating with the sheikh on the disgraceful circumstance, that such fruits as these are now only procurable from the north, while this country itself might produce them quite as well, and had in reality done so in former times. Even limes are not at present grown hereabouts, and it was only from Jenni that I had obtained some days previously a few specimens of this delicious kind of fruit, which grows in such plenty in Kan6, and which might be raised in almost any part of this region. Thus closed the year 1853, leaving me in a most unsettled position in this desert place.

CHAPTER LXX.

BEGINNING OF THE NEW YEAR.-ANOMOLOUS RISING OF THE NIGER.-COMMERCIAL RELATIONS OF TIMBU'KTU.

I HAD long cherished the hope that the beginning of 1854 would have found me far advanced on my homeward journey; but greatly disappointed in this expectation, I began the year with a fervent prayer for a safe return home in the course of it.

El M~dani, my friend from Swera, or Mogadore, whom I used to call my political thermometer, or rather my politico-meter, on account of his exhibiting toward me friendly feelings only at times when he saw every thing quiet, sent me his compliments in the morning of the first of January; nay, even the two leaders of the hostile factions-Hammidi, the rival of my protector, and TWleb Mohammed, the wealthiest merchant in the town, and the leader of the intriguing merchants from Morocco-gave me to understand that they wanted to enter into friendly
relations with me. My health as yet was very precarious; but I felt so much recovered in mind and body that, preparatory to my longed-for departure, I began arranging the remainder of my baggage, which, with the exception of my small library, had been very much reduced. To my great astonishment and delight, while searching through my lumber, I found another thermometer in good repair. From the remainder of my broken instruments I picked up a good deal of quicksilver, which I gave to the sheikh, who himself, as well as his other unsophisticated friends, derived a great deal of amusement from observing the qualities of this metal.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Meanwhile, my protector endeavored to make me fully acquainted with the political relation in which he stood to his brothers, Sfidi Mohammed and Z6n el 'Abidfn, whom he expected soon to arrive, and of whose different views in politics he gave me some slight hints; and I lamented greatly that the power of this noble family, instead of being strengthened by the number of its conspicuous scions, was only rent and split by the divergency of their views.

The course of my material existence went on very uniformly, with only slight variations. My daily food, when I was in the town, consisted of some milk and bread in the morning, a little kuskus, which the sheikh used to send, about two in the afternoon, and a dish of negro millet, containing a little meat, or seasoned with the sauce of the kob6wa, or Cucurbia Melopepo, after sunset. The meat of Timbdktu, at least during the cold season, agreed with me infinitely better than that of any other part of Negroland; but this was not the case with the felopepo, although it is an excellent and palatable vegetable. In the beginning of my stay I had consumed a great many young pigeons, which form a favorite dainty in this city. They are sold at the almost incredibly cheap rate of ten shells each, or at the rate of three hundred for a dollar; but the poor little things were used for culinary purposes so soon after breaking the shell as to be almost tasteless. A very rare dainty was formed by an ostrich egg, which was one day brought to me. This article is more easily to be obtained in the desert than in the towns, and such strong food, moreover, is not well adapted to the stomach of a resident. The sheikh used also to send me a dish late at night, sometimes long after midnight; but, on account of the late hour, I never touched it, and left it to my servants.

It had been arranged that we should make another excursion to Kibara, but our visit was put off from day to day, although I was extremely anxious to witness the features of the country, in the present high level of the river, at the place where I had first landed on my arrival. Thus I was reduced, for entertainment, to intercourse with the sheikh, his kinsfolk, and followers; and as religious topics were always brought forward more prominently by my enemies, but especially in the learned letters which the emir of Hamda-Allghi sent in reply to the sheikh,* my conversa® I possess two of these essays, the contents of which at the present moment are

EMBARRASSING CIRCUMSTANCES.
tion with the former now began to turn more and more upon religious subjects, such as the return of the Messiah, and on the meaning of the name "Paraclete" given in the New Testament to the Holy Spirit, who was to descend upon the apostles, but which by the Mohammedans in more recent times is applied to Mohammed, whose coming, they say, is predicted in this instance by the Holy Book of the Christians.

One day when I visited the sheikh the two brothers were engaged in an animated discussion respecting the relation of 'Alsa (Jesus Christ) to Mohammed, and a warm dispute arose on the sophistical question whether it would be allowed, after the return of 'Afsa upon earth, to eat camel's flesh. The sheikh himself was anxious to prove how difficult it would be for themselves to change any part of their creed after the return of 'Afsa, owing to the difference which existed between the precepts of the two prophets, and thus intended to excuse the Christians for not embracing the creed of Mohammed after having once adopted that of 'A'sa. The two learned men, in the heat of their dispute, had overlooked the fact that the camel was a prohibited animal to the Jews but not to the Christians, and hence that the return of 'Afsa would not interfere with their favorite repast. It was by cheerfully entering into these discussions that I obtained for myself the esteem even of those who were most anxious to extort from me as much as possible of my remaining property.

The arrival of another small caravan of the Tawiti was very near causing me a serious embarrassment. Some of the merchants from Morocco, excited by commercial jealousy, had spread the report that the calico brought by that caravan was Christian property, belonging to the English agent in Ghadimes; and I had some difficulty in making the people understand that, even if that article had originally belonged to the agent, it was now the property of the Tawiti merchants. The presence of those people, also, caused the road to the north, by way of Tawit, to be again brought under discussion as the route most suitable for my home-journey. My departure was now discussed almost daily; the arrival of our lively and talkative, but indiscreet messenger, A'had el Widiwi, who had at length returned from his errand to the Awelfmeden, holding out the hope that my departure was in reality not far distant; but the fact that none of the Tawgrek had come with him, not quite devoid of interest, as they show in what light these Mohammedans regard the Christians.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

notwithstanding his assertion that they were soon to follow, convinced me that my prospect of departure was put off for an indefinite period. Toward the end of January the waters of the river reached their highest level, exhibiting that marvelous anomaly, in comparison with the period of the rising of other African rivers north of the equator, which is calculated to awaken astonishment in any man acquainted with the subject. For when he knows that the rising of these rivers is due to the fall of the tropical rains, he will naturally expect that the Niger, like its eastern branch, the Tsidda or Bduw6, or the Nile, should reach its highest level in August or September. The fact can only be partly explained with the means at our disposal and in the present state of our knowledge
of this part of Africa, although it is illustrated by similar cases, if we compare it with the anomalous rising of some South-African rivers; especially the grand discovery of Dr. Livingstone, the Liamb~zi, which, forming in its upper course an immense shallow sheet of water, collects here the greatest amount of water at a time (July and August) when its lower course, the Zamb6zi, separated from it and withdrawn from the immediate effects of the waters collected above by the marvelous narrowing of the river-bed from the Falls of Victoria* downward, is in its lowest state, and, through the influence of the water by which it is joined in its lower course, reaches here its highest level at quite a different season, February and March. We have before us exactly the same phenomenon in the case of the Niger, the great West-African river, which, according to the most accurate information which I was able to gather on the spot, every year continues to rise till the end of December or the beginning of January, and does not begin to decrease before February; while its eastern branch, the Bnuw6, as well as the lower course of the Niger, where it is called Kwira, exactly as is the case with the Nile, reaches its highest level by the end of August and begins to decrease steadily in the course of October.

To explain the difference and anomaly of these phenomena we must attend to the different character of these rivers. For while

* I assume here the identity of these two rivers, which, however, has not yet been fully demonstrated. Compare also the anomalous rising of the Chobd (Journ. Royal Geol. Soc., vol. xxii., p. 169); although an isolated phenomenon, caused by an unusual and unequal fall of rain in the basin of the various branches of a great riversystem, must not be confounded with a constant and regular course.

ANOMALOUS RISING OF THE NIGER.

the B-nuw6 after having once assumed a westerly direction follows it up with but very little deviation, the great western branch describes three quarters of an immense circle, and having but very little fall in the greater part of its extraordinary winding course, the waters which flow toward it from the more distant quarters require a long time to reach its middle course, so that the rain which falls in the course of September and October in the country of the Wangariwa, or the southeastern Mandingoes, will certainly continue to swell the river at Timbaktu till the end of November or even December; for that rain falls in those quarters behind the coast of Sierra Leone and Cape Palmas till the end of September, and perhaps even in October, we may conclude with some degree of certainty from the fact that such is the case on the coast; and this is confirmed as regards Kakkndi and T&mbo by Cailli's observationst In the mountainous southern provinces of Abyssinia, too, whose latitude corresponds exactly with that of the regions from whence the feeders of the Niger take their rise, the most constant fall of rain has been observed in September. Now while the whole region between Jenne and Timbiktu is of a very flat and level character, so that the river, running along at a very slow rate and with a very meandering course, not only fills a very broad stream spreading out over the neighboring lowlands, but forms
also a great many backwaters and basins or lakes, of which the D6bu is only one although perhaps the largest in size, the river lower down beyond Bamba, and especially in the district called Tin-scherffen, which we shall visit on our return-journey.


† See Tomaro from Caillig's Observations in Berghaus's Annal. 1829, p. 769; but especially Caillid's own account of his stay in Timed, vol. i., p. 328 (Eng, ed.): "The rains, to be sure, were not so incessant, but we regularly had rain every day until October, when it became less frequent." We know also from Caillid that the Milo, the southeastern branch of the Niger, or Dhiulibi, reaches its highest level in September. Park's observations, even, show that the rains in the districts traversed by him extend till November; while we learn from him (Park's First Journey, 3d ed. 4to, p. 12) that the Gambia, whose feeders partly issue from the same districts which feed the western branches of the Niger, reaches its highest level in the beginning of October; and when we learn, from the same eminent traveler, that by the beginning of November the Gambia had sunk already to its former level, we must take into account the very short course of that river in comparison with the Niger, which has a course of two thousand miles. The sinking of the Niger at Sansindi by about four inches, on the 8th of October (Park, vol. ii., p. 274), was only a temporary fluctuation.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

is shut in and reduced to the width of a few hundred yards, so that the water, having expanded over such an immense tract and not exercising, therefore, the same pressure which such a volume of water would do under other circumstances if it were kept together in a narrower channel, preserves its level, or even still increases in extent and depth, while the surplus produced by the fall of rain in the country higher up has already diminished.

This is my mode of accounting for a phenomenon which seems to contradict in so great a measure the whole of the phenomena which have come under our observation with regard to the effects of rain and the rising of the rivers north and south of the equator, and imparts to the upper course of the Niger the same character as the Gabtudn and other rivers of the equatorial line which reach their highest level in the course of February.

Of course this state of the upper river; although it does not reach always the same level, can not fail to exercise an influence also upon the lower part, where it is called Kwira, and where it has been visited repeatedly by Englishmen. But although, on account of their being unaware of this character of the river, they have not paid much attention to its features at the beginning of the hot season, and have even rarely visited it at that period, nevertheless Mr. Laird, who spent several months in the Kwira, has not failed to observe a phenomenon which exactly corresponds to the state of the river which I have just described. For he records* the surprising fact, which formerly must have been quite unintelligible, but which now receives its full illustration, namely, that the river at Idd6 began to
rise on the 22d of March. This, in my opinion, he erroneously attributes to the rains up the country, as there are no rains whatever during the whole of March, and only a few drops in April; but it is evidently the effect of the waters in the upper and wide part of the river at length beginning to decrease about the middle of February, if we take the current at from 2½ to 3 miles, as the windings of the river extend to not much less than 2000 miles between Kibara and Iddci. The elvation of Timbt5ktu above the level of the sea I assume to be about 900 feet. It was on the 4th of January that the first boat from Kibara * See Laird and Oldfield, vol. ii., p. 275. "It was a source of satisfaction to find that, owing to the rains up the country, the river began to rise about Saturday, March 22d, since which time it had increased about two inches. A few drops of rain that fell this morning was all that we had at Iddah."

HIGH STATE OF THE WATERS. approached close to the walls of the town of Timbilktu; and, as the immediate result of such a greater facility of intercourse, the supply of corn became more plentifil, and, in consequence, much cheaper: the s'aa of millet being sold for 40 shells, and the suniye, that is to say, more than two hundred pounds' weight, for 3000, or one Spanish dollar, certainly a very low rate; while I myself, as a foreigner and a stranger, had to pay 3750. The high state of the waters was naturally of the greatest interest to me; and, in order to satisfy my curiosity, the sheikh took me out on the 9th. Emerging from the town at about the middle of the western wall, where formerly the bib el gibleh* was situated, we went first to the nearest creek of the river, but found here no boats; and then crossing an extremely barren and stony level reached another branch of the creek, where eight or ten smaller boats, without a covering or cabin, were lying; the innermost corner of this creek not being more than four or five hundred yards distant from the Great Mosque, or Jñnger-6-b6r. All the people asserted that the river, at Kdbara, had now reached its highest level, and even affirmed that it had begun to fall here on the 7th; but, nevertheless, it became evident that the waters were still rising during the whole of the month, almost endangering the safety of the town. On this occasion I learned that a great inundation in 1640 had flooded a considerable part of the town, and converted into a lake the central and lowest quarter, which is called Bagfndi, a name derived, as is asserted, from the tank thus formed having been enlivened by hippopotami.t Interesting as was that day's excursion it cost me dear; for being obliged, not only to be armed myself, but also to have an armed servant with me, I greatly excited the hostile feelings of the merchants from Morocco, and especially of that proud nobleman, 'Abd e' Salm, who went about among the great men of the town, saying that in Morocco we, the Europeans, or rather the English, were not allowed to wear arms. But to show the absurdity of this assertion, I stated that while traveling in Morocco we received armed horsemen for an escort, while here, where there was no settled form of government, we had to protect ourselves. He * Shabfni, in stating that the bib el gibleh was the east gate, certainly labors under a mistake, "gibleh" with these Western Arabs signifying the west. With regard to the creek, where we saw the boats, see the ground-plan, ante, p. 324, n. 10. t The
hippopotamus being called "banga" in the Songhay language, the name, if really derived from that cause, ought to be spelled "Bangindi"; but the 9 may be a nasal sound.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

then spread the rumor that an armed English vessel had ascended the river as far as G6g6; and this curious report was backed with such strong assertions that my own servant, 'All el A'geren, felt convinced of its truth, and thought it strange when I attempted to prove its absurdity.

But notwithstanding this hostile feeling, 'Abd e' Salim deemed it prudent to send, next day, his friend, Mildy el M6hedi, in order to excuse himself for the expressions which he had used a few days before with regard to me. It was this man, MdlUy el M6hedi, with whom I should have liked to be able to converse on friendly terms, as he was a person of intelligence, and even possessed some little knowledge of astronomy. Indeed, I was not a little astonished when, conversing with him one day about the situation of Timbdktu, he came out with the statement that the town was situated about 18' N. lat., without my having thrown out the slightest hint in this respect.

All this time the whole of the surrounding country was in a most disturbed state, owing to several expeditions or forays which were going on, especially by the restless tribe of the Welid 'Allsh. They had lately taken 600 camels from the Welid Mebirek, and had now turned their predatory incursions into another direction.

On the 12th of January we again went to the tents, which had now been pitched in another spot, called Irg6maren, at a distance of about six miles a little S. from E.; but this time our stay in the encampment was very unlucky for me in several respects. On the 13th I felt tolerably well, and had a cheerful conversation with my protector about my approaching departure, when he sent me several presents, such as a large cover for the top of the tent,* called "sargmmu" by the Songhay, "e' bni errgga" by the Moors hereabout, and several leather pillows; but, on the 14th, a little after noon, I was seized with such a sudden and severe attack of fever as I had never experienced before, accompanied by violent shivering fits, which made my kind host fear that I had been poisoned. I had drunk, a short time before, some sour milk brought me by a Berbdshi; that is to say, a man who, although intimately attached to the family of the sheikh, originally belonged to the tribe of the Berabisb, whose chief murdered Major Laing. Although I myself had no suspicion that the milk which I had drunk had in any way contributed to my sudden attack of illness, yet as

* I have handed over this specimen of Timbiktu manufacture, together with other specimens of leather-work, to the Foreign Office.

MYSTERIOUS ATTACK OF SICKNESS.

that man had some private animosity against me, and did not seem content with a present which I had made him in return for his small gift, I became so irritated, that I ordered him away in a very unceremonious manner, which caused a most
unpleasant scene; for, at this conjuncture, all the people, including my own servants and even my very best friends among the sheikh's people, without paying any regard to my feeble state, gave vent to their feelings against mb as a Christian.

But the sheikh himself did not for a moment change his kind disposition, sending me tea repeatedly, and calling frequently to see how I was getting on. Fortunately, a tranquil night's repose restored me again to health, and the following morning my friends came to me, one after the other, in order to beg my pardon for their neglect. While we were conversing on the preparations for my journey, a messenger brought the news of the arrival of a very intimate friend of the sheikh-Mohammed ben 'Abd-Allahi el Ftdwi-who had come, with a numerous suite, in order to stay some time with the sheikh, and, if possible, to be cured by me of some serious disease: and the prospect of soon leaving this quarter was greatly darkened by this circumstance.

January 15th. This was one of those rainy days which is said not to be unusual toward the end of January and the beginning of February in this quarter along the river, though, in the other parts of Negroland that I had visited, I had never beheld any thing of the kind. But the quantity of rain that fell even here was very little, for the sky, which had been cloudy in the morning, cleared up about noon; and although in the afternoon it became again overcast, with thunder in the distance followed by lightning toward evening, yet there fell only a few drops of rain in the course of the night.

On the 16th, having made a good breakfast on a goat roasted whole before the fire, we returned again into the town, where I was desired to cure a man of a disease over which I had no power. The character and position of the person would have rendered it a circumstance of the highest importance to me if I had been able to do so. The chronic disease under which Mohammed ben 'AbdAllahi-for this is the person of whom I speak-was laboring, cast a melancholy gloom over him. I admired his manners, and the fine expression of his features; but I was disappointed to find that, although well versed in his religious books, he did not possess any historical knowledge as to the former state of these coun-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

tries, which formed an object of the highest interest to me. The arrival of this person made my protector forget all the thoughts of my immediate departure. Besides this circumstance, nothing of interest happened for some days, all the people exhorting me to patience; and, my departure being again put off, fresh attempts were made to convert me, even by my friends, who from sheer friendship could not bear to see me adhere to a creed which they thought erroneous. But I withstood all their attacks, and at times even ventured to ridicule freely some of their superstitious notions. I was far from laughing at the chief principles of their doctrine; but, as they always recurred in their arguments to their belief in sorcery and demons, I declared one day that, as for us, we had made all the demons our "khoddemin." This is an expression with which these people are wont to denote the degraded and servile tribes; and I represented the Europeans as having obtained a victory over the spirits, by ascending in balloons into the higher
regions, and from thence firing at them with rifles. The idea that the Christians must have subjected to their will the demoniacal powers occurs very easily to the mind of the Mohammedan, who does not understand how the former are able to manufacture all the nice things which issue from their hands.

Meanwhile I was glad to break off my relations with my former friend the Waliti, who had recently returned from a journey to A'ribfnnda, and who came to ask me officially whether he was to accompany me on my home-journey or not; but although I told him plainly, that after all that had happened he could no longer be my companion, I treated him with more generosity than he deserved. At the same time, I thought it also prudent to cultivate the good-will of my servant, 'All el A'geren, although he had almost entirely separated himself from me, and left me to my fate, since he had become fully aware of the dangerous nature of my position. I demanded from him no sort of service, though his salary of nine dollars a month went on all the time. However, being rather short of cash, and not being able to procure a loan from the people to whom I had been recommended, I was glad to obtain from a friendly Ghadimsi merchant, of the name of Mohammed ben 'Ali ben Tileb, about 50,000 shells, equal to 13* mithkil, reckoned at 3800 shells each, and I afterward was obliged to add another small sum, making the whole 25 mithkils.

LEATHER-WORK.-NO WEAVERING.

In this place I think it well to give a short sketch of the commercial relations of Timbiktu, though it can not make the slightest pretension to completeness, as I did not enter into such free intercourse with the natives as would have enabled me to combine a sufficient number of facts into a graphic view of the commercial life of the city. The people with whom I had most intercourse could offer little or no information on the subject. My situation in Kan6 had been very different. The great feature which distinguishes the market of Timbktu from that of Kan6 is the fact that Timbfiktu is not at all a manufacturing town, while the emporium of Mlusa fillly deserves to be classed as such. Almost the whole life of the city is based upon foreign commerce, which, owing to the great northerly bend of the Niger, finds here the most favored spot for intercourse, while at the same time that splendid river enables the inhabitants to supply all their wants from without; for native corn is not raised here in sufficient quantities to feed even a very small proportion of the population, and almost all the victuals are imported by water-carriage from Sansindi and the neighborhood.

The only manufactures carried on in the city, as far as fell under my observation, are confined to the art of the blacksmith, and to a little leatherwork. Some of these articles, such as provision or luggage bags, cushions, small leather pouches for tobacco, and gun-cloths, especially the leather bags, are very neat, as shown in the annexed and following wood-cuts; but even these are mostly manufactured by Tawirek, and especially females, so that the industry of the city is hardly of any account. It was formerly supposed that Timbdiktu was distinguished on account of its weaving.* and that the export of dyed shirts from hence was considerable; but I have already had an opportunity of show* It may have been so, nevertheless,
in the time of Leo, who mentions the many "botteghe di tessitori di tele di bambagio." B. vii., c. 5.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

ing that this was entirely a mistake, almost the whole clothing of the natives themselves, especially that of the wealthier classes, being imported either from Kané or from Sansindi, besides the calico imported from England. The export of the produce of Kané, especially by way of Arawin, extends to the very border of the Atlantic, where it comes into contact with the considerable import of Malabar-cloth by way of St. Louis, or Ndgr, on the Senegal, while the dyed shirts from Sansindi, which, as far as I had an opportunity of observing, seem to be made of foreign or English calico, and not of native cotton, do not appear to be exported to a greater distance. These shirts are generally distinguished by their rich ornament of colored silk, and look very pretty; and I am, sorry that I was obliged to give away as a present a specimen which I intended to bring home with me. The people of Timbuktu are very experienced in the art of adorning their clothing with a fine stitching of silk, but this is done on a very small scale, and even these shirts are only used at home. There is, however, a very considerable degree of industry exercised by the natives of some of the neighboring districts, especially Fermigha, who produce very excellent woolen blankets, and carpets of various colors, which form a most extensive article of consumption with the natives.

The foreign commerce has especially three great high roads: that along the river from the southwest (for lower down the river there is at present scarcely any commerce at all), which comprises the trade proceeding from various points; and two roads from the north, that from Morocco on the one hand, and that from Ghana* I will here only observe that Lord Fitzclarence, owing to the inquiries which, on his passage along the Red Sea, he made of a clever pilgrim, obtained a hint of this interesting fact.-Journey from India overland, p. 423.

FOREIGN COMMERCE.-GOLD.

I dimes on the other. In all this commerce gold forms the chief staple, although the whole amount of the precious metal exported from this city appears to be exceedingly small, if compared with a European standard. It probably does not exceed an average of £20,000 sterling per year.* The gold is brought either from Bambiik or from Buire, but from the former place in a larger quantity. The gold from the country of the Wingariwa does not reach this market, but, as it seems, at present is directly exported to that part of the southern coast

* M. Graberg de Hemsoo estimates the export of morocco manufactures to Negroland at one million dollars, and the import to Morocco from Nigritia at from three to four millions.-Specchio di Morocco, etc., p. 146.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

which on this account is called the Gold Coast. The species of gold from Bambiik is of a more yellow color; that from Buire is rather whitish; and that from
Wingara has a greenish hue. Most of this gold, I think, is brought into the town in rings. I do not remember to have seen or heard of gold dust, or "tibber," being brought to market in small leathern bags, such as Shabfni and other people describe, containing about one ounce, equal to twentyfive dollars in value. But, nevertheless, a considerable amount of this article must come into market, as most of the gold dust which comes to Ghad~mes and Tripoli passes through Timbifktu, while another portion goes directly from Sansindi to Arawn.* It was evidently in consequence of the influence of the Arabs that the scale of the mithkil was introduced in the trade in gold; but it is a very general term, which may signify very different quantities, and thus, we find various kinds of mithkils used in Negroland, especially those of A'gades, Timbifktu, and Mango, the Mandingo place between Yendi and the Niger, the former of which is the smallest, and equal, as I have stated in the proper place, to 1000 shells of Hiusa standard, although in the present decayed state of the town of A'gades, where all the gold trade has ceased, it possesses rather an imaginary value. The mithkil of Timbifktu contains the weight of 24 grains of the khardb-tree, or 96 of wheat, and is worth from 3000 to 4000 shells. The mithkil of Mango is equal to 11 of that of Timb-dktu. Besides rings, very handsome ornaments are worked of gold; but, as far as I could learn, most of this workmanship comes from Walita, which is still celebrated on this account.§ The next article that forms one of the chief staples in Timbuiktu, and in some respects even more so than gold, is salt, which, together with gold, formed articles of exchange all along the Niger.

* M. Testa, in his "Notice statistique et commerciale sur la Rdgence de Tripoli, 1856," states the imports of gold dust into Tripoli to be of the value of 240,000 francs.

§ Whether it be true, as some maintain (among others M. Prax, "Commerce de l'Algdeire, 1849," p. 13), that the name mithkil is a corruption of "medical," a term used to denote the small weight used for medical purposes, I am not able to decide. I always thought that it was derived from t M. Prax, p. 12 of the little pamphlet just mentioned in the preceding note, is totally wrong in supposing the mithkil of Timbifktu equal to half a duro, or Spanish dollar, or two fr. sixty cents. The very lowest price is just double. § There are some interesting articles of gold represented by Lord Fitzclarence in the work above mentioned.

360

SALT.

from the most ancient times.* It is brought from Ta6denni, a place whose situation has been tolerably well established by M. Cailli6's journey, and the mines of which have been worked, as we know from A'hmed BAb, since the year 1596, when the former mines of Teghiza, situated some seventy miles farther to the north, were given up. These salt-mines of Teghiza appear to have been worked from very remote times, or at least before the eleventh century; and there can be little doubt that the mines of Titent61, described by the excellent geographer El Bekri as situated twenty days' journey from Sijilm6sa, and two from the beginning of the desert, are identical with Tegh~za. Even at that time
both Sijilmâsa and Ghinata were provided from here, while at least the eastern and original portion of Songhay was supplied at that early period from the mines of Taîtek, six days from Tademûnka.t

In Tademûn the salt, which covers a very extensive tract of ground in the district "El-Jâf," is formed in five layers, or "1je," the uppermost of which is called el-wira; the second, el-benti; the third, el-hammam ye; the fourth, el-kdhela, or the black one; and the lowest, which is embedded in the water, el-kimera, or elbôdhâ. The upper of these layers are of little value, and the most in request is the fourth layer, or el-khâela, the color of which is a most beautiful intermixture of black and white, like a species of marble. The ground is let out by the "kêld," who resides here, and whose name at the present time is Zen, in small portions, where the diggings are made, and he levies a tribute called the khomiis from each hofra, or hole, the rest being sold by the workmen.

The largest pieces of salt which are dug out here measure 3 feet 5 inches in length, 13 inches in height, and 2J inches in thickness, but they are of very unequal size, varying from 50 to 65 lb. in weight; this, however, is only half of one layer, each layer being

* See El Bekri, ed. de Slane, p. 174:

In another passage (p. 183) he describes the commerce of G6g6 in the words:

"The commerce of G6g6 consists of salt, and salt is their standard currency." t See Caillî's Travels to Timbuctoo, ii., p. 119; and about Teghdza, or, as he writes, Trasas, or Trarzas, p. 128.

$ El Bekrî, p. 171. In the time of Ibn Haukûl (A.H. 960) this salt was brought from Aïfîlî to Addaghôst.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

sawn into two slabs. The price of these slabs of course varies greatly at different times, but, as far as I became aware, in general does not reach such an exorbitant price as has been mentioned by Leo Africanus, Mr. Jackson, General Daumas, and others. When lowest, the price of each middle-sized slab does not exceed 3000 shells; and the highest price which was paid during my residence in the town was 6000, the price always rising toward spring, when the salt caravans become scarce on account of the number of bloodflies which infest the town and the neighborhood of the river. Of course, when this great highroad is shut up for a long period in consequence of feuds between the various tribes, the price may for a time rise much higher, but such cases must be quite exceptional.

The trade in salt on a large scale, as far as regards Timbîktu, is entirely carried on by means of the tWrekî, or the cloth for female apparel, manufactured in Kan6; the merchants of Ghadimes bartering in the market of A'rawî six trkedi, or "mdlhafa," for nine slabs, or "hajra," of salt, on condition that the Arabs bring the salt ready to market; or twelve, including the carriage to Taiddînî. If they themselves then carry the salt to Timbîktu, they sell there eight slabs of salt for six mîthk£1 of gold; but if they carry it to Sansindi, each slab of salt fetches two mîthkî.

But the expense of this journey up the river is very great, on account of the boats being obliged to unship their merchandise at the islands of Jzdar-îbe, whence it is
taken to Sansindi on the backs of asses, and on account of the 'ashdr, which is levied by the Filbe, the expense is equal to about thirty-three per cent.; so that, out of every six slabs of salt transported to Sansindi, two are required for covering the expense of transport. Thus, each tdkedf bought in Kan6 for about 1800 shells fetches two mithki1 of gold when sold in Sansindi, while in Timbuktu it fetches from one to one and one sixth. This certainly, when we take into account the price of gold in Ghadimes and Tripoli, is a considerable profit; but the road which this merchandise takes from Kan6 to Gh6it, thence to Taw6t, and from that place to Timbiktu, is very circuitous and expensive, and requires the agency and cooperation of several persons, no single merchant undertaking the whole of the traffic.

I have already remarked, in the proper place, that Libt–ka, or rather D6re, forms the market-place for the salt for supplying the provinces to the southeast of Timbiktu. It is transported thither by a direct road by way of T6saye or G6g6, without touching at

GU'RO NUTS.

Timbaktu; while, with regard to the region to the southwest, Sansindi is the great entrep6t for this commerce. The trade in this article, which, in countries where it is wanting entirely, becomes so precious, and the more so the greater its bulk, is, as I said before, of very ancient date in this western part of Negroland. But the salt was brought at that period, not from Ta6d6nni, but from the neighboring salt-mines of Tegh.za; and, in the former period, found its entrep6t in Crhinata and Walita.

The gu'ro, or k6la nut, which constitutes one of the greatest luxuries of Negroland, is also a most important article of trade. Possessing this, the natives do not feel the want of coffee, which they might so easily cultivate to any extent, the coffee-plant seeming to be indigenous in many parts of Negroland. The gdro which is brought to the market of Timbiktu is imported from the provinces of Tangr6ra, the town which was touched at by M. Caillie on his journey from Sierra Leone to Morocco, and of Teut6 and Kni, to the south of Tim6; while the g'ro which is brought to the market of Kan6 is imported from the northern province of Asanti; and the trees which furnish these different kinds of k6la nuts do not belong to the same species, being distinguished as Sterculia acuminata, or the red k6la nut, and Sterculia macrocarpa, or the white k6la nut; although the variety appears merely to apply to the seed, the fruit of the latter kind being generally of larger size, while both flower and leaf are quite identical.

But there is a good deal of variety in the character of the giro nut of each of these two species; and in Kan6 four different kinds are distinguished, according to the size of the fruit; namely, the guriye, the largest fruit, which often measures an inch and a half, and sometimes even nearly two inches in diameter, and is sold at a very high price; secondly, the marsakitu; in the third place, the sira-n-wiga; and fourth, the m6nu. But this is not all. There is a farther distinction of three kinds, according to the season when the fruit is gathered: first, the j£-n-karigu, the first giro, which is collected about the end of February, but spoils easily, like the takdiif among the dates; secondly, the gammagiri, collected at a later season,
when the greater part of the fruit is ripe, and remaining from three to four months on the tree, being regarded by the Arabs as corresponding to those kind of dates called t-sfirt; and lastly, there is the nita, the rest of the guiro, and of small size, which does not spoil.

As for the guiro sold in Timb-dktu, I had no opportunity of

TRAVELs IN AFRICA.

observing so many different Varieties, but only became aware of three distinctions being made, viz., the tin6ro, or Tfi-no-uiro, "4ro" being the corresponding Songhay name for gdro, and Tino, or Tina, the name of a district; then the kind called siga; and thirdly, that called fira-fira.

As regards Selga, the district to which the Husa traders go for their supply of this article, three points are considered essential to the business of the k6la trade; first, that the people of M6si bring their asses; secondly, that the Toniwa, or natives of Asanti, bring the nut in sufficient quantities; and thirdly, that the state of the road is such as not to prevent the HMusa people from arriving. If one of these conditions is wanting, the trade is not flourishing. The price of the asses rises with the cheapness of the gdiro. The average price of an ass in the market of Selga is 15,000 shells; while in Husa the general price does not exceed 5000. But the fatiki, or native traders, take only as many asses with them from Mlusa as are necessary for transporting their luggage, as the toll, or fitto, levied upon each ass by the petty chiefs on the road is very considerable. From 5000 to 6000 guiro, or k6la nuts, constitute an ass-load.

Selga, the market-place for this important article, being, it appears, a most miserable town, where even water is very scarce and can only be purchased at an exorbitant price, the merchants always manage to make their stay here as short as possible, awaiting the proper season in Yendi, a town said to be as large as Timb-6ktu, or in Kulf6la, the great market-place of M'si; and they are especially obliged to wait in case they arrive at the beginning of the rainy season, there being no k6la nuts before the latter part of the kharff. The price of this nut in Timbuktu varies from 10 to 100 shells each, and it always constitutes a luxury; so that, even on great festivals, alms consisting of this article are distributed by the rich people of the town.

So much for three of the most important articles of trade in Timb iktu-gold, salt, and the k6la nut; the salt trade comprising also the dealings in the native cloth manufactured in Kan6, which forms the general medium of exchange for this article, and about which I have already spoken in detailing the commerce of the great entrepot of Husa. I will only add here, that, as Kan6 is not a very old place, this want must have been supplied before from some other quarter. It is probable that, as long as Songhay was flourishing, such an import was not needed at all; and we find

PROVISIONS.

from several remarks made by El Bekrf, and other ancient geographers, that the art of weaving was very flourishing on the Upper Niger, but especially in the town of Silla, from very ancient times.* It is highly interesting to learn from
these accounts that even in the eleventh century the cotton cloth was called in this region by the same name which it still bears at the present day, namely, "shigge." The price of the articles brought to this market from the region of the Upper Niger, especially from Sansndi, varies greatly, depending as it does upon the supply of the moment. Provisions, during my stay, were, generally speaking, very cheap, while Caillié complains of the high prices which prevailed in his time. But it must also be taken into account that the French traveler proceeded from those very countries on the Upper Niger from which Timbuktu is supplied, and where, in consequence, provisions are infinitely cheaper, while I came from countries which, owing to the state of insecurity and warfare into which they have been plunged for a long series of years, were suffering from dearth and famine.

The chief produce brought to the market of Timbuktu consists of rice and negro corn; but I am quite unable to state the quantities imported. Besides these articles, one of the chief products is vegetable butter, or mai-kad6ia, which, besides being employed for lighting the dwellings, is used most extensively in cookery as a substitute for animal butter, at least by the poorer class of the inhabitants. Smaller articles, such as pepper, ginger, which is consumed in very great quantities, and sundry other articles, are imported. A small quantity of cotton is also brought into the market, not from Sansndi, I think, but rather from Jimbila and some of the neighboring provinces; no cotton being cultivated in the neighborhood of the town: but the natives do not seem to practice much weaving at home, even for their own private use.

At the time of my visit, the caravan trade with Morocco, which is by far the most important, was almost interrupted by the feuds raging among the tribes along that road, especially between the E'rgelit and Tjakint on the one side and the various sections.* El Bekri, p. 173:
t Caillié, Journey to Timbuctoo, ii., p. 33.

365

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of the T jak-nt on the other. This is the reason why in that year there were no large caravans at all, which in general arrive about the beginning of November, and leave in December or January.

These caravans from the north are designated, by the Arabs in this region, by the curious name 'akabir (in the plural, 'akwabfr); the origin of which I have not been able to make out, but it is evidently to be ranked among that class of hybrid words used by the people hereabouts, which belong neither to the Arabic nor to the Berber language. The same term is even used in Morocco to denote a very large caravan, or an aggregate of many small caravans; but in Timbuktu the term kafla is quite unusual for small parties, the name in use being "refega."

In former times these caravans, at least those from Morocco by way of T6fil6let, and from the widf Dar'a by way of the territory of the 'Arf, seem to have been numerous, although they never amounted to the number mentioned in Mr. Jackson's account of Morocco,* and in various other works.
The small caravans of Tujakint which arrived during my stay in the town, the largest of which did not number more than seventy or eighty camels, are rather an exception to the rule, and can therefore furnish no data with regard to the average, although I am quite sure that they very rarely exceed 1000 camels. The consequence of this state of things was, that, especially during the first part of my residence, the merchandise from the north fetched a very high price, and sugar was scarcely to be had at all.

With regard to European manufactures, the road from Morocco is still the most important for some articles, such as red cloth, coarse coverings, sashes, looking-glasses, cutlery, tobacco; while calico especially, bleached as well as unbleached, is also imported by way of Ghadimes, and in such quantities of late that it has greatly excited the jealousy of the Morocco merchants. The inhabitants of Ghadimes are certainly the chief agents in spreading this manufacture over the whole northwestern part of Africa, and, in consequence, several of the wealthier Ghadimsi merchants employ agents here. The most respectable among the foreign merchants in Timbktu is Tleb Mohammed, who exercises, at the * P. 96. Here Jackson states the average size of such a caravan at 10,000 camels; and even the more cautious M. Griberg de Hems6 repeats these statements in his "Specchio di Morocco," p. 144, seq. "Ciononostante (le caravane) conducono talvolta secu da 16.fino a 20 mila cammelli."

ARTICLES OF EUROPEAN COMMERCE.

same time, a very considerable political influence; and the wealthiest merchants from Morocco besides him, during the time of my stay, were El Mhedi, the astronomer, M-61’a ‘Abd e’ Salm, the nobleman, and my friend the Swgri; while among the Ghadimsi merchants, Mohammed ben Tdleb, Snidsi ben Ky-ri, Mohammed Lebbe-Lebbe, Haj ‘All ben Shiwa, and Mohammed Weled el Kidhi, were those most worth mentioning.

But to apply even to these first-rate merchants a European standard of wealth would be quite erroneous, the actual property of none of them exceeding probably 10,000 dollars, and even that being rather an exceptional case. Scarcely any of them transact business on a large scale, the greater part of them being merely agents for other merchants residing in Ghadimes, Swdra (Mogador), Merikesh (Morocco), and Fis.

The greater part of the European merchandise comes by way of Swgra, where several European merchants reside, and from this quarter proceeds especially the common red cloth, which, together with calico, forms one of the chief articles of European trade brought into the market. All the calico which I saw bore the name of one and the same Manchester firm, printed upon it in Arabic letters. But I am quite unable, either with respect to this article or any other, to give an account of the quantity brought into market. All the cutlery in Timbdktu is of English workmanship. Tea forms a standard article of consumption with the Arabs settled in and around the town; for the natives it is rather too expensive a luxury.

A feature which greatly distinguishes the market of Timb-iktu from that of Kan6, is the almost entire absence of that miserable kind of silk, or rather refuse, "twini" and "kundra," which forms the staple article in the market of Kan6. Other articles
also of the delicate Niiremberg manufacture are entirely wanting in this market; such as the small round looking-glasses, called "lemm'a," which some time ago had almost a general currency in Kan6. The market of Timb-6ktu, therefore, though not so rich in quantity, surpasses the rival market of Kan6 in the quality of the merchandise. Bernises, or Arab cloaks, furnished with a hood, also seem to be disposed of here to a considerable extent, although they must form too costly a dress for most of the officers at the courts of the 'petty chiefs, in the reduced state of all the kingdoms hereabouts; and, at all events, they are much more rarely seen here than in the eastern part of Negroland. These bern-dses, of course,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

are prepared by the Arabs and Moors in the north, but the cloth is of European manufacture. The calico imported constitutes a very important article. It is carried from here up the country as far as Sansindi, although in the latter place it comes into competition with the same article which is brought from the western and southwestern coasts.

Among the Arab merchandise tobacco forms a considerable article of consumption, especially that produced in Widi N-6n, and called, par excellence, "el warga," "the leaf," as it is not only smoked by the Arabs and natives in the country, as far as they are not exposed to the censure of the ruling race of the Filbe, but is even exported to Sansndi. I have already observed that tobacco constitutes a contraband article in all the towns where the Edlbe of Hamda-Alhhi exercise dominion, and in Timb-iktu es' pecially, where one can only indulge in this luxury in a clandestine manner.

Tobacco, together with dates, forms also the chief article of import from Tawat, the species from that place being called '.'el wargat," the leaves indicating its inferior character to the first-rate article from Wddf Thin. Dates and tobacco form articles of trade among the people of Tawit, the poor tradesmen of that country possessing very little of themselves besides. But the quantity of these articles imported has also been greatly overrated by those who have spoken of the commercial relations of these regions from a distance. At least I am sure that the whole of the time I was staying in the town only about twenty camel-loads of these two articles together were imported.

With regard to exports, they consisted, at the time of my stay in the place, of very little besides gold and a moderate quantity of gum and wax, while ivory and slaves, as far as I was able to ascertain, seemed not to be exported to any considerable amount. However, a tolerable proportion of the entire export from these regions proceeds by way of A'rawin, without touching at Timbiktu. At any rate, those gentlemen who estimate the annual export of slaves from Negroland to Morocco at about 4000* are certainly mistaken, although in this, as well as in other respects, the exceptional and anarchical state of the whole country at the

* GrAberg de Hemsb, Specchio di Morocco, p. 146. Besides slaves, he enumerates as articles of export from Timbiiktu to Morocco, ivory, rhinoceros horns, incense, gold dust, cotton strips (? verghe), jewels, ostrich feathers of the first quality, gum copal, cotton, pepper, cardamom, assafonida, and indigo.

368
KANU'RI TRAVELERS.

Time of my residence, and my own most critical situation, did not allow me to arrive at any positive results. Thus much is certain, that an immense field is here, opened to European energy, to revive the trade which, under a stable government, formerly animated this quarter of the globe, and which might again flourish to great extent. For the situation of Timbuktu is of the highest commercial importance, lying as it does at the point where the great river of Western Africa, in a serpent-like winding, approaches most closely to that outlying and most extensive oasis of "the far West"-Maghreb el AkSa, of the Mohammedan world—I mean Tawit, which forms the natural medium between the commercial life of this fertile and populous region and the north; and whether it be Timbaiktu, Waldta, or Ghnata, there will always be in this neighborhood a great commercial entrepôt, as long as mankind retain their tendency to international intercourse and exchange of produce.

CHAPTER LXXI.
DIARY CONTINUED.

Being enabled to collect a good deal of information, as far as my situation allowed, I did not choose to accompany the sheikh when he again went to the tents on the 24th of January. He promised that he would only stay a day or two, but he did not return until the 29th. On this occasion I took the liberty of reminding him that he was not over-scrupulous in keeping his word; but, in his amiable way, he evasively replied, "that if a person had only one fault, or "aib,' it was of no consequence." Among my informants at this time, two Kanuiri travelers, who had visited all the countries of the Wingariwa, or Eastern Mandingoes, and one of whom had penetrated even as far as the Gold Coast, were most distinguished. Besides a good deal of information, especially with regard to the topography of the country of M6si, they gave me an account of the petty struggle between the Swedish and the Toniwa or Asanti; and they also informed me that the M6si people had plundered the villages of Ddina, Kdibo, and Isiy, all of them belonging to the province of Dalla, which we had passed on our road hither, and where, they said, no inhabitants were now left. The Sheikho A'hmedu, after having collected an

VOL. III.-A A

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

expedition against the Ireg-ngten, had changed his plans, in order to march against the mountain stronghold of Konna; but, as we afterward heard, he was repulsed by the natives, the Siro, who, relying upon their strong position, defended themselves with great valor.

Meanwhile, the salt, the staple produce of Timbuktu, gradually became dearer, the large "ris" fetching now 3800 shells; for, as I have stated, the price constantly increases, caravans not being enabled to visit the place during the following months, till the end of April, on account of the large blood-flies infesting the river. A small caravan containing from forty to fifty camels, which arrived on the 28th, was one of the latest that came into the town.
Thus ended the month of January, with utter disappointment at the failure of my expected departure, and with nothing but empty promises. After a sleepless night, I awoke on the 1st of February full of anxiety. I felt really afraid lest my host, notwithstanding his friendly disposition toward me, might keep me here the whole summer. At length I eased my mind in a slight degree by writing a letter to the sheikh, wherein I made him a witness against himself, in having so repeatedly given me his word that I should certainly leave this city and proceed on my homejourney. But matters, indeed, now looked more serious, another Puillo officer of well-known energy, viz., A'tkar, the Governor of Glindam and Dire, having arrived with a considerable troop of armed men from Hamda-A'allahi, and another man of still more importance, A'hmed el Ferreji, was soon expected. The Fdilbe seemed fully resolved to vindicate their power and authority over the town; and, in order to show that they were masters of the place, they exacted this year a tribute of 2000 shells on each slave with great severity.

Uncertain as were my prospects, I contrived to pass my time usefully by applying myself to the study of the idiom of the Western Tawirek, with Mohammed ben Khottir, the sheikh's nephew, and a Tirki of the name of Miisa, for my teachers. Thus endeavoring to master my impatience, I listened with composure to the several rumors which were repeatedly spread with regard to the arrival of the various brothers of the sheikh, an event which, according to his statement, formed now the only reason for delaying my departure. But, in a long private conversation which I had with him on the 4th, when I urged him more than usual, he began to appeal to my humane feelings, and, discarding all political motives, confessed that the chief reason which detained him was the pregnancy of his wife, and earnestly begged me to await the result of this event.

All this time, on account of the unusual height which the inundation had reached this year, a great deal of sickness prevailed in the town; and among the various people who fell a sacrifice to the disease was the son of Tleb Mohammed, the richest and most influential Arab merchant in the place, whose life I should have liked very much to save; but, seeing that the cure was very uncertain, I thought it more prudent (as I always did in such cases) not to give him any medicine at all. Having staid several days in the town, we again went out to the tents in the afternoon of the 8th, in the company of Rummin and Mushtiba, two Tawirek chiefs who had come to pay the sheikh a visit. On emerging from the A'beraz, I had with the latter a horse-race to some distance. As the Fullin seemed to have some projects against the Tawirek, and had strengthened their military power in the town of Guindam, these Berber tribes were very much irritated against the former; they had even made an attack on a boat, and killed one of the Fullin and wounded another, while those of their tribe who were settled nearest to Gilndam thought it more prudent to change their dwelling-place, and to migrate farther eastward.

According to the profession of the two chiefs who accompanied us, they did not wish to be at peace with that warlike tribe which is daily spreading in every
direction; but, notwithstanding their personal valor, the Tawirek are so wanting in unity that they can never follow any line of policy with very great results, while those who have a little property of their own are easily gained over by the other party. Thus, instead of sticking closely to the sheikh, and enabling him to make a firm stand against the Fullin, they seriously affected his interest at this time, by plundering, disarming, and slaying four Tawiti, who belonged to a small caravan that arrived on the 11th, and who, like all their countrymen, enjoyed the special protection of the sheikh.

My friend seemed at this moment to doubt the arrival of his brothers, not less than that of Alkuittabu, the great chief of the Awelimmiden, and endeavored to console me for the long delay of my departure by saying that it was the custom with them to keep their guests at least a year in their company. He informed me, at the same time, that he wanted to make me a present of a horse, and that I might then, if I liked, give one of my own horses to Alkidttabu. He was this day more communicative than usual, and sat a long time with me and his pupils, delivering to us a lecture on the equal rank of the prophets, who, he said, had each of them one distinguishing quality, but that none of them ought to be preferred to the other. He dwelt particularly on the distinguished qualities of Moses, or Milsa, who was a great favorite with him, although he was far from being friendly disposed toward the Jews, the spirit of Mohammed Ben 'Abd el Kernm el Maghfli, who bated that nation from the bottom of his heart, and preached the Jih~d against it, having communicated itself to the Mohammedan inhabitants of this part of Negroland.

At another time my friend entered, without any prejudice, into the subject of wine and pork, and he had not much to say against the argument with which I used to defend myself from attacks in this respect, viz., that while we believed religion to concern the soul and the dealings of men toward each other, we thought all that regarded food was left by the Creator to man himself; but, of course, he would have been greatly shocked if he had beheld the scenes exhibited every evening by gin-palaces in the midst of the very acme of European civilization.

At other times again, taking out of his small library the Arabic version of Hippocrates, which he valued extremely, he was very anxious for information as to the identity of the plants mentioned by the Arab authors. This volume of Hippocrates had been a present from Captain Clapperton to Sultan Bello of S6koto, from whom my friend had received it, among other articles, as an acknowledgment of his learning. I may assert, with full confidence, that those few books taken by the gallant Scotch captain into Central Africa have had a greater effect in reconciling the men of authority in Africa to the character of Europeans than the most costly present ever made to them; and I hope, therefore, that gifts like these may not be looked upon grudgingly by people who would otherwise object to do anything which might seem to favor Mohammedanism.

We staid at the tents till the 14th; the time, on this occasion, hanging less heavily upon my hands than formerly, in consequence of the more cheerful and communicative disposition of my host, and because I was able to gather some
little information. The weather, too, was more genial. We had a really warm day on the 13th, and I employed the fine morning in taking a long

ARRIVAL OF SFDI MOHAMMED.

walk over the several small sandy ridges which intersect this district. There were just at the time very few people about here who might cause me any danger, and I only fell in with the goatherds, who were feeding their flocks by cutting down those branches of the thorny trees which contained young offshoots and leaves. But the sheikh, having received some private information, suspected that our enemies might make another attempt against my safety, and, having requested me to send my servant, 'Abd-Allihi, into the town, in the course of the day, to inform my people that we were about to return, he mounted with me, after the moon had risen, and we again entered our old quarters.

February 16th. This morning, one of my men, the Zaberma halfcaste, Sambo, whom I had taken into my service at the residence of Galaijo, came to request to be dismissed my service. In the afternoon I went to pay my respects to the sheikh, and was rather astonished to hear him announce my departure more seriously and more firmly than usual; but the reason was that he had authentic news that his elder brother, Sfdi Mohammed, whose arrival he had been expecting so long, and whom he wanted to leave in his stead when obliged to escort me the first part of my journey, was close at hand. The big drum having really announced his arrival at the tents, we mounted on horseback, half an hour before midnight, and arrived at the encampment a little before two o'clock in the morning. Here every thing, notwithstanding the lateness of the hour, bore a festive character, and a large tent had been pitched for the noble visitor at the foot of the hilly slope, the top of which was occupied by the sheikh's own tents.

The eldest member of this princely family was a man a little above the middle height, and strongly built, with a fine commanding expression of countenance, and manners more stern and warlike than those of El Bakgy, but not wanting in affability and natural cheerfulness. In the position in which I was placed, as a stranger, not only of a foreign country and nationality, but of an opposite creed, and as the cause of so many difficulties to these people in their political affairs, I could not expect that this man would receive me, at our first interview, with remarkable kindness and cordiality. It was therefore not to be wondered at that, in the beginning, he asked me a great many questions which it was not agreeable for me to answer in the presence of strangers.

Next day Hammidi, the son of El Mukhtir, the near relative of El Bakgy, and the latter's chief adversary, and therefore my

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

enemy, arrived with several followers at the encampment. El Bakgy constrained himself; for his elder brother's sake, to remain in the same tent with Hammidi; but Sfdi Alaw-te, the younger and more reckless brother, was not to be persuaded to enter the tent as long as his hated cousin was there. He spent the day in my tent till his enemy was gone. Sfdi Mohammed did not seem to be at all unfavorably
disposed toward Hammidi, and wanted even to enter the town in his company; but he was obliged to yield to the combined efforts of his two younger brothers, who refused the company of their cousin.

This was the first opportunity I had of seeing Hammidi, with whom I had wished from the beginning to be on friendly terms, but was forced by the policy of my host to avoid all intercourse with him, and thus to make him my adversary, as he was that of the sheikh. I had received a favorable account of his learning from different quarters; but his personal appearance was certainly not very prepossessing. He was of a stout figure, with broad coarse features, strongly marked with the small-pox, and of a very dark complexion, his descent from a female slave being his chief disadvantage.

Sfdi Mohammed was very anxious to get into the town, but El Bakiy, with his usual slowness, and perhaps this time longer detained by the interesting situation of his wife, made his appearance at a very late hour in the afternoon, and endeavored to defer our departure till the next day; but his elder brother was too energetic to be thus put off, and having given sufficient vent to his dissatisfaction on account of the too great influence which Mrs. Bik (that was the name of El Bakiy's wife) exercised over his brother, and asking me with an ingenious turn whether I knew who was more influential than Sheikho A'hmedu ben A'hmedu and lorded it over his brother, he mounted his horse, and sent his young nephew to tell his father that he was ready and was expecting him. Thus forced against his own inclination, the sheikh at length disengaged himself from his family, and we went into the town in the company of a few horsemen who had come out to pay their respects to Sfdi Mohammed, firing a few shots as we entered the place.

Of course, in a town where no strong government is established, and where every great man exercised all the influence and power of which he was capable, due homage and tribute were to be rendered to this potentate of the desert, who came to honor it with a visit. A musical performance took place in front of the house of the sheikh, where he took up his quarters; and each foreign merchant prepared a gift, according to his wealth, by which to obtain the protection of this man, or rather to forestall his intrigues. These gifts were by no means small; and I felt a great deal of compassion for my friend 'Alf ben Tleb, whose present, although by no means trifling, was sent back by Sfdi Mohammed as neither adequate to the dignity of the receiver nor to that of the giver. I myself also found it necessary to make to this dignitary a respectable present. I gave him the finest bernds, or Arab mantle, besides a black tobe, and sundry smaller articles.

In other respects, the town, at this time, became rather quieter, and trade was more dull. The small caravan of the T其他国家, some members of which had only spent a few days in the town, left on the 20th; and the only articles which they took with them were salt and a little calico. Even directly from the north, along the most frequented route, the trade became insignificant; and a party of merchants, who arrived from Tawit on the following day, was exceedingly small. Among them
were two respectable Ghadmsfye merchants, but, having resided three or four months in Tawit, they brought neither recent news nor letters for me. However, they came just in time, as on the 22d a countryman of theirs, of some importance, died, and I learned on this occasion something about the property of merchants in this place. The deceased was a tolerably wealthy man; among the property which he left there being found about 2000 mithkil in gold, a considerable sum of money for this place, although it did not belong to himself, but to the Tiniyan, or the well-known Ghadimsi family of the Tini, whose agent he was. The house where he lived was worth 200 mithkl.

Hanging, while in the town, much time at my disposal, and only little intercourse with the people, I had made ready another parcel, containing the information which I had been able to collect, for sending to Europe; and it was well that I had done so, as early on the 26th a small troop of poor Tawiti traders left for their native home. But, unfortunately, this parcel did not find her Britannic Majesty's agent, to whom it was addressed at Ghadimes, as he had left his post for the Crimea; and thus my family was thrown into the deepest grief in consequence of the rumor of my death; all my effects were buried; and when I arrived at Q?75

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

length in Hiusa, where I had reckoned to find every thing that I wanted, I found even the supplies which I had, left drawn away from me as from a dead man. Almost the whole of January and the beginning of February had been in general cold, with a thick and foggy atmosphere, well representing that season which the Tawirek call with the emphatic and expressive name "the black nights," 6haden esittafinn; and all this time the river was continually rising or preserving the highest level which it had reached. But on the 17th the river, after having puzzled us several times as to its actual state, had really begun to decrease, and almost immediately afterward the weather became clearer and finer, thus testifying to the assertion of the Tawrek-who have exchanged their abodes in the desert for this border district along the river, as well as the Arabs, who give to this season the name of the forty nights-that the river never begins really to decrease before the end of this period. The greatest danger from the inundation is just at this time, when the waters recede, as the rising ground on which the hamlets along the shore are situated has been undermined and frequently gives way; and we received intelligence on the 22d that the hamlet of Btagungu, which is situated between Kibara and Guindam, had been destroyed in this manner.

Although I had enjoyed a greater degree of security for some time, my situation, after a short respite, soon assumed again a serious character, and hostile elements were gathering from different quarters; for, while a very important mission was just approaching from Hamda-Allili, on the 25th we received the news that 'Abidin, that member of the family of Mukhtir who followed a policy entirely opposite to that of El Bak6y, was reported to be near, and he was conducted into the town by Hammidi with considerable display.

In the morning of the following day, just as the atmosphere changed from bright to gloomy, a powerful Pffilo officer, and a prince of the blood, Hlimedu, a son of
Mohammed Lebbo, entered the town with a numerous troop on horseback and on foot, among whom were ten musketeers. They marched past my house on purpose, although the direct road from Kibara did not lead that way, in order to frighten me, while I, with the intention of showing them that they had entirely failed in their object, opened the door of my house, displaying in the hall all my firearms, and my people close at hand ready to use them.

INDICATIONS OF A POLITICAL STORM.
But my little band became more and more reduced, for when the chief of my followers, the M6jebri, 'All el A’geren, saw a fresh storm gathering against me, he disclaimed any farther obligation toward me, notwithstanding the salary which he continued to receive. But, as I had given him up long before, this farther manifestation of his faithlessness did not make a great impression upon me. On the other hand, I had attached to myself, by the present which I had bestowed upon him, the eldest brother of the family upon whose good-will, under the present circumstances, a great deal depended.

Thus approached the 27th of February, when the real character of the mission from Hamda-Allihi, of which Hdmedu had only been the forerunner, was disclosed. Having been in a lazy and rather melancholy mood the whole day, I was reclining on my simple couch in the evening, when I was surprised by the sheikh's nephew entering abruptly, and, although betraying by his sad and serious countenance that something very grave oppressed his mind, yet squatting silently down without being able or feeling inclined to say a word. Scarcely had he left me, when my Tawiti friend, Mohammed el 'Aish, who continued to show me a great deal of kindness and sympathy, called me into the sheikh's presence. I was ushered in with great precaution through the hall and up the narrow winding staircase, and found the three brothers in the terrace-room engaged in serious consultation.

After I had taken my seat they informed me that the Fullin were making a lost attempt against my safety, and that, together with Kau'ri, the former emir, a distinguished nobleman of the name of Mohammed el F'reji, had arrived in Kibara accompanied by a troop of about one hundred men, and that the latter messenger had addressed to my host two letters of very different character and tenor, one being full of manifestations of friendship, and the other couched in most threatening terms, to the effect that something serious would happen if he did not send me off before he (F'reji) entered the town. But no active course of proceedings was resolved upon, although Mohammed, who was the most energetic of the three, proposed that we should mount on horseback and pass the night on the road to Kibara, partly in order to prevent the inhabitants of the town from joining the FullUn in that place, in conformity with the order, which they had received, partly in order to intercept any thing that might come from the hostile camp. While proposing this energetic measure,
the chief of A'zawad was playing with" his four-barreled musket, which, even under these momentous circumstances, excited my curiosity almost more than any thing else, as I had never seen any thing like it in Europe. It was of excellent workmanship, but I could not say of what peculiar character, as it did not bear any distinct mark of nationality. Of course I suspected, when I first beheld it, that it had belonged to the late unfortunate Major Laing, but I was distinctly assured by all the people, though I would scarcely believe it, that this was not the case, and that it had been purchased from American traders at Portendik. At present it was rather short, the uppermost part having been taken off in consequence of an accident; but it was, nevertheless, a very useful weapon and not at all heavy. It was made for flints, there being only two cocks, but a cannon to each barrel.

Having discussed various proposals with regard to my safety, with characteristic slowness, and coupling serious observations with various amusing stories, Sfdi Mohammed sat down and wrote a formal protest in my favor, and sent it to the Emir Kardri. However, I doubt whether, on a serious inquiry, this paper would have been regarded by Christians as very flattering to their position in the world; the principal argument brought forward by my noble friend and protector for not dealing with me in so cruel a manner, that I was not "ikifir" than the "ri s," meaning that I was not a greater "kifir," or unbeliever, than Major Laing; for, besides not being very complimentary, it left it open to our adversaries to reply that they did not intend to treat me worse than the Major had been treated, who, as is well known, having been forced to leave the town, was barbarously murdered in the desert.

A messenger from the emir having arrived, the sheikh himself made a long speech, telling him under what circumstances I had reached this place, and that now I had once placed myself under his protection, there was nothing but honorable peace, both for himself and his guest, or war. Upon this the messenger observed, in an ironical manner, that, El Fgurej (who had been sent to compromise with the sheikh) being a learned man like himself, every thing would end well; meaning that they would know, if not able to succeed by force, how to vanquish him with arguments taken from their creed. Another protest having been sent to Tleb Mohammed, who, as I stated before, although nothing but a merchant, exercised a great political influence in this anarchical place, A SLEEPLESS NIGHT.

I went home to refresh myself with a cup of tea, and then made preparations for the eventual defense of my house, and for hiding the more valuable of my effects: after which I returned to the residence of El Bakiy, about midnight, and found the holy man himself, armed with a double-barreled gun, about to enter the great segifa, or parlor, which he had allotted to his faithful and discreet store-keeper, TW1eb el Wfi. Here we sat down; and soon about forty men gathered round us, armed partly with spears and partly with muskets, when, after a great deal of useless talk as to what was to be done, it was agreed upon to send one messenger to the Taw6rek chiefs, Rummin and Mushtiba, whose acquaintance I had made on a former occasion, and who at present were encamped in Mush-rek, a locality rich in pasture-grounds and well protected by three branches of the river, to the
southwest of the town—and another messenger to our friends the Kel-illi, in order to summon these people to our assistance. Meanwhile the sheikh, seated on the raised platform of clay, which occupied the left corner of the parlor, entertained the sleepy assembly with stories of the prophets, especially Musa and Mohammed, and the victories achieved by the latter, in the beginning of his career, over his numerous adversaries. The quiet of the listless assembly was only disturbed for a time by a shriek issuing from the northern part of the town, and everybody snatched his gun and ran out; but it was soon found that the alarm was caused by our own messengers, who, on leaving the place, had disturbed the repose of the inhabitants of the suburb, or "A'beraz," the latter supposing them to belong to a foray of the predatory and enterprising Weldd 'Alsh, who were then infesting A'zawid. Having thus sat up the whole night, full of curious reflections on these tragi-comic scenes, I returned to my quarters about five o'clock in the morning, and endeavored to raise my exhausted spirits by means of some coffee. However, our precautions, insufficient as they might seem to a European, had had their full effect, and the Pfillo messenger did not dare to enter the town before noon, and even then, although joined by about sixty horsemen from the townspeople, was afraid to traverse our warlike quarter. Meanwhile Sfdi Mohammed and A'lawite had left the town with a troop of armed men, under the pretext of observing the movements of the enemy, but, perhaps, in order to show them that

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
they themselves did not coincide with all the views of the sheikh. Going then to the residence, I found nearly two hundred people assembled there, most of them armed, and including among their number even the Pfillo, Mohammed ben 'Abd-Allhhi, who did not conceal the greater friendship he felt for the sheikh than for his own countrymen, the Fdlbe of Hamda-Alldhi. While I was there, Mohammed S'afd, the officer who had been sent to capture me on a previous occasion, was dispatched as a messenger by Farreji, the new officer; and, under the present circumstances, disguising all hostile intentions, he was desirous to know what was the reason of this show of arms; such not being in accordance with the sheikh's former character, and it being rather his duty to bestow hospitable treatment upon his old friend, El Fgrreji. Although this was rather a curious distortion of facts, I was still more astonished at the answer of the sheikh, who replied that he had only followed the example of his two brothers. But the business was not settled in this manner. Late in the evening there was another serious consultation in the terrace-room of the sheikh, and Sidi A'law-te was dispatched to Ferreji to elicit from him an indication of his real intentions. Sfdi Mohammed, meanwhile, in order to pass away the time, opened a cheerful and jocose conversation, by questioning me respecting the social position and the various relations of the other sex in my own country—a subject which always possesses a great deal of attraction, even among the most serious of the Mohammedans.
Having then been obliged to withdraw, as A'lawite had pretended that he could only communicate his message from the officer sent from Hamda-Allhhi to El Bakiy himself, I returned home; but, long after midnight, I received a visit from the latter, who came to inform me that F6rreji had brought nothing but favorable letters from Hamda-Allhhi, having written, as he said, the threatening letter from Kibara merely at the instigation of the Sahel'ye, or merchants from Morocco; and that he himself, on his part, had assured Fgrreji that, if Sheikho A'hmcdu left me alone, I should be forwarded on my home-journey after a short delay; but adding that the Ftlbe ought to assist him from the public revenue, in order to hasten my departure.

The same day I witnessed an interesting episode in the private life of these people. The sheikh's mother-in-law having died, he went to pray for her soul at the "r6dha," or sepulchre, of Sfdi Mukhtr, a sacred locality a few hundred yards on the east side.

ARRIVAL OF THE KEL-ULLI.

of the town, which in my career in this place was to become of greater importance to me. Such is the reverence which these Arabs have for the female portion of their tribe. There are, moreover, several women famed for the holiness of their life, and even authoresses of well-digested religious tracts, among the tribe of the Kunta.

Political circumstances were not quite so favorable as my host wanted to represent them to me; as, like many other people, he was not very particular, when endeavoring to obtain a good object, about saying things that were not quite true; and the following day, when F6rreji paid a visit to the sheikh, he designated me as a war-chief and a "mehirebi," or freebooter, who ought not to be allowed to remain any longer in the town. Altogether it was fortunate that El Bak6y had provided for the worst by sending for the Kel-iffli, who arrived in the course of the afternoon, about sixty strong, with great military demonstrations and beating of shields. It was on this occasion that I first made the acquaintance of this warlike tribe, who, notwithstanding their degraded position as Imghid, have made themselves conspicuous by totally annihilating the formerly powerful tribe of the I'geldd and I'medidderen, who in former times ruled over Timbuktu and were hostile to the Kunta. The Kel-ulli are distinguished among all the tribes of the neighborhood by three qualities which, to the European, would scarcely seem possible to be united in the same person, but which are not unfrequently found combined in the Arab tribes, viz., " rjela," or valor; "s/.rga," or thievishness; and "dhiyffa," or generous hospitality.

CHAPTER LXXII.

GREAT CRISIS.-OBLIGED TO LEAVE THE TOW.-MILITARY DEMONSTRATION.

THERE was now a fair opportunity offered me of leaving the town in an honorable way, under the protection of the friendly Kel-illii, who for this very purpose had brought with them from the encampment my four camels; but the sheikh missed this favorable occasion by relying too much upon the promised
arrival of the great Tawirek chief Alkdttabu. As for our friends the Tadem6kket, to whom Ahmed Widiwi, the learned follower of

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
the sheikh, had been sent as a messenger, they did not come along with him, but sent word that they would follow him as soon as their presence was required, their chief A’wAb having gone to raise tribute from the degraded tribe of the Id6leb6. Uncertain as my situation was under these circumstances, I felt cheered by the not very improbable chance of my departure; for at length the last cause which had delayed me so long seemed to be removed by El Bak~y's wife giving birth to a child on the 4th of March. All political as well as domestic circumstances therefore seemed to conspire in rendering it possible for him to accompany me for the distance of some days; and he had really assured me the night before, when I was engaged in a consultation with him till near morning, that I should leave on the following Tuesday; but, having had too much insight into his dilatory character, I told him very plainly that I did not believe a word of it, as he had disappointed me so often. And I had reason to be satisfied with my skepticism, as the phantom of the "tibu," or the great army of the TawArek, with whose assistance he hoped to triumph over his enemies, did not allow him to adhere to any fixed plan. Now the "tibu" was really approaching; and it was merely some unforeseen circumstance, probably owing in part to the machinations of the party publicly or secretly opposed to the authority of the sheikh, which prevented the great chief of all those westerly Tawirek from reaching Timbliktu, and crowning all the hopes and wishes of my protector.

It was in the afternoon of the 5th that we received undoubted news of the approach of the tibu, the shepherds seeking to secure their flocks by flight, and all those who had reason to fear the wrath or anger of their mighty liege lord endeavoring to reach the islands and creeks of the river as a place of safety. A messenger who arrived from Bamba stated that the tabu had really reached the town of E’gedesh, a few miles beyond Bamba; nay, even the state of the atmosphere seemed to confirm the news of the approach of a numerous host, as it was entirely enveloped in thick clouds of dust. But the sheikh was a little too rash in sending on the 6th a message to El F6reji, giving him official information of the arrival of Alkdttabu. That officer answered, in a manly way, that he must not think of frightening him, and that he himself, if necessary, was fully able to summon an army from Fermigha and from Dir e' Salim, the capital of the Province of Jimbilla on the other side of the river; that he had come to drive

THE "TA'BU."-1VWHO IS A MOSLIM?
me out of the town, and that he would at any cost achieve his purpose; and although the sheikh's rival, Hammdi, seemed to be frightened and came to sue for peace, yet Sidi Mohammed was wearied with his brother's continual procrastination, and from that day forward did all in his power to make me leave the town under any condition, and banish me to the tents. There is no doubt that, in the event of the "tAbu" not arriving, the sheikh's situation became more dangerous in consequence of the arrival of his brother
'Abidin, who entered the town amid a demonstration of firing and music on the afternoon of the 7th. All the three brothers went out on horseback to meet him; but this man, who was bent upon following a policy entirely opposed to that of El Bakiy, took up his quarters with Hammidi, the adversary of the latter. Even the eldest brother was so little satisfied with the sheikh's present policy, that, when I called upon him about midnight of that same day, a very serious conversation arose between the two brothers, Sidi Mohammed asking El Bakiy whether they were to fight the Fullin on account of a single individual, and one too of a foreign religion; and reproaching him at the same time with the fact that his preparations did not advance, while on his part he did not think any preparations were necessary at all, as he was sure that not even the tribe of the Igwidaren, who are settled near Bamba, would do me any harm. But the sheikh endeavored to gain time by telling his brother that he would send the following day for the horses from Kdbara, and that he would write a letter to some chiefs on the road through whose territory I had to pass. Having been a quiet spectator of this dispute, I returned to my quarters, and in order to provide against any accident I packed up the remainder of my luggage and made everything ready for starting. Meanwhile, Sfdi Mohammed and A'lawite, in order to further their plans, had the same afternoon an appointment with 'Abidfn and Hammidi, where they probably determined as to the course to be pursued with regard to me: and El BakAy, who went the same evening to pay a visit to to 'Abidin, seemed to have given a kind of half promise that I should leave in the afternoon of the 10th. But having obtained a short respite, in the course of the following day, he delayed my departure from day to day, expecting all the time the arrival of Alkittabu. Meanwhile, Sidi Mohammed had made a serious attack upon my religion, and called me always a kifir. But I told him that I was a real Moslim, the pure Ishim, the true worship of the one God, dating from the time of Adam, and not from the time of Mohammed; and that thus, while adhering to the principle of the unity and the most spiritual and sublime nature of the Divine Being, I was a Moslim, professing the real Islam, although not adopting the worldly statutes of Mohammed, who, in every thing that contained a general truth, only followed the principles established long before his time. I likewise added, that even they themselves regarded Plato and Aristotle as Moslemfn, and that thus I myself was to be regarded as a Moslim, in a much stricter sense than these two pagan philosophers. I concluded by stating that the greater part of those who called themselves Moslemin did not deserve that name at all, but ought rather to be called Mohammeddn, such as we named them, because they had raised their prophet above the Deity itself. Being rather irritated and exasperated by the frequent attacks of Sidi Mohammed and A'lawde, I delivered my speech with great fervor and animation; and when I had concluded, Sidi Mohammed, who could not deny that the Kurdn itself states that Islam dates from the creation of mankind, was not able to say a word in his
defense. As for El Bak6y, he was greatly delighted at this clear exposition of my religious principles, but his younger brother, who certainly possessed a considerable degree of knowledge in religious matters, stated, in opposition to my argument, that the Caliphs El Harin and M'amuin, who had the books of Plato and Aristotle translated into Arabic, were Met'azfla, that is to say, heretics, and not true Moslemfn; but this assertion of course I did not admit, although much might be said in favor of my opponent. At all events, I had obtained some reprieve from the attacks of my friends; and having thus the support of them all, in the afternoon of the following day, the 10th of March, we went quietly to the tents in order to celebrate the "Sebdiwa" (corresponding to the baptism of the Christians) of the new-born child. On this occasion I noticed that the water in the outlying creeks which we passed had only fallen about three feet since the 17th of February, which is less than two inches per day; but it is probable that the water of the principal branch decreases more rapidly than that of these winding backwaters. The camp was full of animation, the Gwanfn el Kohol, a section of the Brabfsh, having taken refuge in the enctrunpment of the sheikh from fear of the K61-hekfkan, with whom they were...

884

THE GWAN'TN.

on hostile terms. It was highly interesting for me to be thus brought into close contact with these people, who owe allegiance to the chief that had murdered Major Laing; and, well aware that I could not fail to entertain a strong prejudice against them, they all thronged round me on my arrival, and hastened to assure me of their friendly disposition. They were armed with double-barreled guns, a weapon which, owing to the trade with the French, is now common through the whole of this part of the desert, the long single-barreled gun, the only favorite weapon with the Arabs to the north, being here regarded with contempt as befitting only the slave. ' In general, the people were of middle stature, although some of them were fine tall men and of a warlike and energetic appearance, having their shirts, mostly of a light blue color, tied up over their shoulder and girt round the waist with a belt, the powder-horn hanging over the shoulder, quite in the same style as is the custom of their brethren nearer the shores of the Atlantic. Their head was uncovered, with the exception of their own rich black hair, or guffa, which, I am sorry to add, was full of vermin.

The same evening, although it was late, my host, who was certainly not wanting in hospitality, slaughtered five oxen, and in consequence we partook of supper about an hour after midnight. But that was not at all unusual here; and nothing during my stay in Timbiktu was more annoying to me, and more injurious to my health than this unnatural mode of living, which surpasses in absurdity the late hours of London and Paris.

Early the next morning two more head of cattle were slaughtered, and enormous quantities of rice and meat were cooked for the great numbers of guests, who had flocked here together from the town and from all parts of the neighboring district. Amid such feasting the name of Mohammed was given to the new-born infant. The way in which the guests dealt with the enormous dishes, some of which were
from four to five feet in diameter, and could only be carried by six persons, bore
testimony to the voracity of their appetites; one of these immense dishes was
upset, and the whole of the contents spilt in the sand.
But the people were not long left to enjoy their festivity, for just while they were
 glutting themselves a troop of K61-hekikan, the tribe who waged the bloody feud
with the Gwanfn, passed by, throwing the whole encampment into the utmost
confusion. When at length it had again settled down, the festivities proceeded, and

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Mohammed el 'Afsh, with some of his countrymen from Tawit, rode a race up
'the slope of the downs toward the tents, firing their guns at the same time; but
altogether the exhibition was rather shabby, and some of the men were very poor
riders, having probably never been on horseback before, as they were natives of
the desert where the camel prevails. The inhabitants of Timbikitu, who possess
'horses, are continually pestered with the request to lend them to strangers; and,
with regard to these animals, a sort of communism prevails in the town; but they
are of a very poor description, only the sheikh himself possessing some good
horses, brought from the Gibleh, or western quarter of the desert.
The K61-hekikan formed also a subject of anxiety to us in the evening, and, after a
long and tedious consultation, it was decided to send some people to watch the
movements of those freebooters. Having been met with, they declared they should
feel satisfied if the sheikh would consent to deliver up to them the person who had
first slain one of their companions, for this had been the beginning of the feud
with the Gwanin, although the murderer belonged to the Tuirmus, and not to that
other tribe which had taken up the quarrel. In consequence of these feudal
relations I had an interesting conversation with the sheikh, and Fandagh-6mme,
one of the chiefs of the Tademdkket who had likewise come to join this festival,
about the "fed'a," or the price of blood, many of the Tawirek tribes refusing to
accept any fed'a, but peremptorily requiring bloodshed. I have already mentioned
these freebooters, the K61-hekikan, on a former occasion; and it is remarkable
that this very tribe, which at present is most distinguished by its lawless and
sanguinary habits, and which, in consequence of the almost uninterrupted state of
warfare in which they are engaged, was at the time reduced to about forty full-
grown men, exhibits the finest specimens of manly vigor and stately appearance
which are to be found in this whole region.
Notwithstanding the importance which the day possessed for my protector, the
stay in the camp, deprived as I was of books or any other source of amusement,
and of even the smallest European comfort, became more and more tedious to me.
My material privations also were not few, especially as I had not even taken
time as cheerfully as possible, and took some interest in the appearance of a man who had likewise come out to enjoy the
POLITICAL CRISIS.

hospitality of the sheikh. This was the Sherif Miliy Isay, who, on account of his white skin, was almost suspected by the natives to be of European origin. In the course of the day the sheikh showed me some rich gold trinkets belonging to his wife, manufactured in Walita; and this was almost the only time that I had an opportunity of inspecting these gold ornaments. They formed a sort of diadem: and I understood my host to say that he wanted to have a similar one made for Queen Victoria, which, however poor in itself, I assured him would be valued by the English as a specimen of their native industry.

The stay in this place became the more disagreeable, as a high wind raised thick clouds of dust, and the leathern tent, in which Fandaghimmme was staying, was blown down, and I was therefore rather glad when, in the evening of the 13th, we returned into the town. Here, again, the news of the arrival of the "t bu" was a second time reported, and every body again thrown into a state of excitement; the Ergigeda, a tribe of Arabs or Moors, moving to and fro, while all the poor degraded tribes in the neighborhood, together with their herds of cattle and their flocks of sheep, fled again for refuge to the encampment of the sheikh, such as the Kel e' Sherf a, the K61-antsir, the I'den6n, and the K4l-4lli. My protector himself was again to return to the tents on the morning of the 15th, when a serious business arose, the Fulln insisting with great pertinacity that I should leave the town this day, or else they would certainly kill me; for they would rather, they said, that the "t-bu" should annihilate them all, than that I should remain a day longer in the town.

Next morning the Fullin and the merchants from the north assembled in the house of Mohammed el Ferreji, and discussed with great energy what means they should adopt to drive me out, binding themselves by an oath that I should not see the sun set over the town. The officer Himedu, the son of Mohammed Lebbo, even went so far as to rise in the assembly and swear that he himself would certainly slay me if I should stay any longer. The alarm which this affair caused in the town was very great, although matters of this kind in Negroland are never so serious as in Europe. A'lawite, therefore, being informed of what was going on, entered the assembly and made a formal protest that I should see both sunset and sunrise in the town, but he pledged his word that I should leave it before the sun reached that height called dihhar (about nine o'clock in the morning) by the Arabs,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

and if I remained after that time they might do what they pleased with me.

March 17th. I had lain down rather late, and was still asleep, when Sidi Mohammed, before sunrise, sent word to me to mount in order to follow him out of the town; and he behaved very unpoltely when objections were raised to the effect that it would be better to wait for El Bakiy. Soon after he came up himself on horseback before my door, sending one of his brother's principal and confidential pupils, whom I could scarcely expect to do any thing contrary to the wishes of his master, to bid me mount without farther delay, and to follow him to the "r6dha," or the sepulchre of Sidi Mukhtir, where El Bakiy would join us. Seeing that I had nothing to say, while as a stranger I could neither expect nor
desire these people to fight on my account, I mounted, fully armed, and with two servants on horseback followed Sidi Mohammed on his white mare. All the people in the streets through which we passed cautiously opened their doors to have a peep at me. The ruling tribe also were not inactive: and they had mounted several horsemen, who followed close upon our heels, and would probably have made a demonstration if we had halted at the "r6dha." But my conductor, instead of staying there, as I had been made to believe, led on straight to the tents. Numbers of Tawirek families, carrying their little property on half-starved asses, met us on the road, flying westward, and confirming the fact that the approach of the Tibu was not merely an idle rumor. The encampment also, which had been chosen at another spot, presented a very animated scene, a large hamlet, consisting of matting dwellings, or senfha, inhabited by the K6i-illi and the Igelid, protégés of the sheikh, being closely attached to it. The consequence was, that although the whole locality, formed by a sandy ridge with a slight depression full of trees, presented a more cheerful aspect than the former encampment, by degrees it became rather narrow and confined. Having received the compliments of my new friends, I endeavored to make myself as comfortable as possible; but not much repose was granted me, for, about three o'clock in the afternoon, Mohammed ben Khottir, the sheikh's nephew, arrived with a verbal and peremptory message from the former to his elder brother, Sidi Mohammed, to the effect that the Fulldn were about to storm my house in the town, in order to seize my luggage which I had left there; and desiring him instantly, and without the slightest delay, to bring me back, as all these proceedings were the consequence of his (Sidi Mohammed's) indiscretion.

Roused by this angry message, the noble son of the desert repented what he had done to the detriment of his brother's interest, and calling together by strokes of the tobl, or great drum, which hung ready on the top of the sandy slope, all the people capable of carrying arms, he mounted his mare, with his four-barreled gun before him, while I, with my two servants, followed behind. Thus it appeared as if I was destined once more to enter Timbktu, and this time under very warlike circumstances. We went at the beginning at such a rate, that it seemed as if we were about to storm the place directly; but on reaching the first creek of the iver we made a short halt, while my Mohammedan friends said their prayers, and at last came to a stand on an eminence, whence we sent a messenger in advance. Sidi A'lawite came out of the town to meet us. Meanwhile darkness set in, and we again halted on another eminence in sight of the town, and sent a second messenger to the sheikh. We were joined after a while by the people from Tawit, who informed us that El Bakiy had left the town with a numerous host of followers, but that they themselves did not know whither he was gone. Messengers were therefore dispatched to endeavor to find him. In the mean while the Tawirek whom we had with us beat their shields in their usual furious manner, and raised the war-cry; the night was very dark, -and I at length fired a shot, which informed our friends of our whereabouts. We found the
sheikh close to the town south of the "rōdha," with a large host of people, Tawgrek as well as Arabs, Songhay, and even Full-n. The Fdtōwi, Ismā'īl, who, from his knowledge of colonial life in St. Louis or Ndör, afforded me a constant source of entertainment as well as vexation, welcomed us with a song, and all the people gathered around us in motley confusion. The spectacle formed by this multifarious host, thronging among the sand-hills in the pale moonlight, was highly interesting, and would have been more so to me if I could have been a tranquil observer of the scene; but, as I was the chief cause of this disturbance, several of my friends, especially the Imam, LHAj el Mukhtar, whom I had known in Boruii, made their way to me, and begged me to beware of treachery. The sheikh himself dispatched his most trustworthy servant to inform me that I had better keep in the midst of the Tawirek, whom he himself thought much more trustworthy than the Arabs. The

389

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
K1-illī forthwith formed a square round me, but at the same time made a joke of it, trying an experiment as to the warlike disposition of my horse, by pushing against me with one side of the square, while beating their shields, till, being thrown back upon the other side, I spurred my horse and drove them to their former position. Excited by this animated scene, my noble charger, to the great amusement of this turbulent host, began to neigh from sheer delight.
Meanwhile the brothers had dismounted, together with their trusty councilors, and were wasting the time in useless consultation, while some Fullin horsemen were roving about and kept me on my guard; but one of them was dismounted against his inclination. His horse received a wound either from the stump of a tree or from a spear, and thus he remained the sole victim of this glorious and memorable night's campaign.

At length, having moved to and fro for some time, we approached the outskirts of the A'beraz, and there took up our position. But the Fullin and Songhay, who had likewise assembled at the beating of the alarm drum, being arranged in front of us, notwithstanding their cowardly disposition, it did not seem likely that we should be allowed to get inside the town without bloodshed, and I protested repeatedly to the sheikh that nothing was more repugnant to my feelings than that blood should be shed on my account, and perhaps his own life be endangered.
Meanwhile numerous messengers were sent backward and forward, till my protector and host, whose feelings had been deeply wounded, declared that he would allow me to remain outside the town, if the Fullin would withdraw their force so as to put every thing in his own hands, and would promise to leave my house untouched. And he strictly kept his word; for, while he himself entered the place with A'lawite, he allowed me to return to the tents in the company of his elder brother. We did not arrive at the encampment before three o'clock in the morning, for we lost our road in the pale moonlight, and became entangled among the numerous creeks of B6se-bingo, while we suffered at the same time greatly from hunger, and the coolness of the night. Such was the sole result of this night's campaign.
The following day we received the news from an Urighen, who arrived from the east, of the Tibu having returned eastward, in consequence of a serious quarrel having broken out between the tribes of the Tarabanisa and the Tin-ger-6gedesh, who composed part of the army; and in consequence of the obstinacy of A'khbi, the chief of the Igwiden, who had refused to acknowledge the authority of his liege lord, and to come forth from his place of retreat, the island of Kitkoyzi, in order to do homage to Alknittabu. The ruling tribe of the Awelimmeden gave vent to their anger by plundering the poor inhabitants of Bamba, or Kasbah, a place situated about half way between here and G666. That dreaded host having retraced its steps, And thus disappointed the hopes of my protector, all the poor people who had put themselves under the protection of the sheikb. felt reassured, and again brought out their little property, which they had secreted in the various tents of the encampment. The I'gelid lagged a little longer behind, and in the evening assembled in considerable numbers before my tent in order to have a talk with me. On the whole they behaved very decently. Seeing that I was now restricted to a stay in the encampment, I had sent my servant, the Gatr6ni, into the town in order to bring out my luggage. He returned in the evening without having accomplished his errand, but in the company of the sheikh himself; who informed me that he did not wish the luggage to be brought out of the town before he was ready to accompany me himself on my journey, as he was afraid that his two brothers still wanted to get something more, out of me than they had done. But as he had sworn in the first paroxysm of anger that he would at all hazards bring me back into the town, I told him, in order to console him, that I would once more re-enter the place in the dark, quite by myself, stay a short time in my house, and then return to the camp, in order that his oath might be fulfilled. But he would not allow me to expose myself to any danger on his account, as the rules of his creed made it easy for him to get rid of the obligation thus contracted against his conscience, by subjecting himself to the penance of a three days' fast. He informed me now that the Fullin officer, Fgpreji, had accompanied him on leaving the town as far as the "r6dha," giving him every assurance of his friendship, and that thus every thing would end well; and he hoped to obtain for me favorable conditions from the Fullin for any future European or Englishman visiting this place. Together with the sheikh, Sfdi A'lawite also had come out, and he behaved in a rather friendly manner to me, offering his services toward hastening my departure, which I gladly accepted, without, however, putting any confidence in him; for I was well aware that he liked my property better than myself.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA. Seeing that I was obliged to resign myself in patience, and had still to wait here some time, I sent one servant and two of my horses into the town. Since the waters had retired, the flies had become such a terrible plague that they threatened...
the life of man and beast, and it was chiefly this nuisance that rendered my stay here so uncomfortable. It was likewise almost the ruin of the horse, which I was obliged to keep with me in case of any emergency. It is on account of this pest that none of the people of the desert, whose chief property consists in camels, are enabled to visit the town at this period of the year.

Not only flies, but other species of insects also, became now exceedingly abundant in this desert tract, after it had been inundated and fertilized by the waters of the river; and a countless number of caterpillars especially became very troublesome, creeping about the ground, and getting upon the carpets and mats and every other article. While thus the inconvenience of the open camp was manifold, my amusements were rather limited, and even my food was poorer than it had been before. The famous "rejire" had been supplanted, from want of cheese, by the less tasteful "dakno," seasoned, in the absence of honey, with the fruit of the baobab or monkey-bread tree. In the morning, however, it afforded me some amusement to observe the daughters of the I'gelid driving out to the pasture-grounds their parents' asses, and to witness the various incidents in the daily life of these people. But they were soon to leave, as well as the K6l-illi, both tribes returning to their quarters farther eastward.

All my friends, with whom I had had only so short an acquaintance, thus taking leave of me, I was extremely glad when a brother of Mohammed ben 'Abd-Allihi came out of the town and paid me a visit. It was from this man, whose name was NAM, that I obtained a great deal of important information with respect to the quarter north of the river, between Hamda-All-hi and Bighena. I also met here another person, who gave me a curious piece of information with regard to the Rs el Mi, the great northwesterly creek of the river, which I have already mentioned repeatedly, and of which I shall say more in the Appendix,* although I was not enabled to understand its whole purport. In reference to that basin, he said, that when the waters had decreased very considerably, a bubbling was observed at the bottom.

* Appendix X., which contains all that I know about the western half of the desert between TimbIktu and the Atlantic.

POLITICAL MEETING AT THE RODHA.

of the basin; but whether this referred to sources of living water, or to some other phenomenon I could not make out distinctly, although I imagine the former to be the case.

farch 21st. This was a very important day in various respects. First, it was highly remarkable for its atmospheric character, as beginning the "nisin," that is to say, the short rainy season of spring. This peculiar season I had not observed in the other more southerly parts of Negroland which I had visited, but it is also observed in other tropical regions, especially in Bengal, although that country is certainly placed under different conditions, and reaches farther northward. We had two regular falls of rain this day, although of no great abundance, this phenomenon being repeated for about seven days, though not in succession. Meanwhile the flies became quite insupportable, and almost drove me to despair.
But the day was also important in another respect, as the sons of Sfdi Mohammed, El Bakiy, and his brothers, attempted to bring about a friendly understanding among themselves; and I was not a little surprised in the morning of this day, on being informed by Sfdi Mohammed, who acted as my guard here, that I was to accompany him back to the "r6dhah," the venerated cemetery a few hundred yards east of the town, where Sidi Mukhtr lies buried; for it thus seemed as if there was still some prospect of my again coming into collision with the townspeople.

Galloping on the road with Didd, the brother of 'Abd-Allghi, who accompanied us, and beating him easily on my fine "Blast of the Desert," as I styled my horse, which was still in tolerable condition, I followed my companion, and we took our post at the southern side of the tomb of the ancestor of the holy family. Although I had passed it repeatedly on former occasions, I never until now inspected it closely. I found it a spacious clay apartment, surrounded by several smaller tombs of people who were desirous of placing themselves under the protection of the spirit of this holy man, even in the other world. Gradually we were joined by the relations and friends of the sheikh, A'lawite appearing first and saluting me in his usual smiling manner; then the sickly Mohammed ben 'Abd-Allihi, who was regarded almost as a member of the family; next followed Hammidi, who greeted me and received my compliments in return; then the Sheikh el Bakiy; and, lastly, 'Abidfn, whom I had not seen before. He looked rather older than the sheikh, with expressive sharply cut and manly features, besides a rather fair complexion, fairer than my host. He was clad in a berns of violet color, and it appeared remarkable to me that, although I had placed myself exclusively under the protection of his brother, to whom he as well as Hammndi was vehemently opposed, yet he behaved very friendly toward me.

All the parties having assembled we were regaled with a luncheon, at which I was the first to be helped. The people then having said their prayers of "aser," while I retired behind the sepulchre, in order not to give any offense, we went to a greater distance from the town, in an easterly direction, in order to get out of the way of the people who had come from the town on this occasion, when the various members of the family of Mukhtir sat down upon the ground in a circle, and began a serious private consultation, in order to settle their political affairs; but, although it lasted for more than an hour, it did not seem to lead to the desired end, and broke up abruptly. The sheikh had endeavored to persuade me to pass this night in the A'beraz, or the suburb of the town; but this I had refused to do, being afraid of causing another disturbance, and, as he promised that he would come out of the town with my luggage on the Friday following, I returned with Sidi Mohammed to the tents.

Honorably as I was treated on these different occasions in consequence of the great exertions of my protector, yet the Fullin had obtained, throughout the whole affair, a slight advantage in political superiority, and they followed it up without hesitation and delay by levying a tax of 2000 shells upon each full-grown person, under the pretext that they did not say their Friday prayers in the great mosque as
they were ordered to do. This is one of the means by which the conquering tribe was endeavoring to subdue the national spirit of the native population, by making them celebrate the great weekly prayer in the mosque which had originally been built by the Mandingo conqueror Mansa Mfisa, and which they themselves had made the centre of their establishment in the town. Even in previous times it had always been the centre of the Mohammedan quarter. They were supported in this endeavor by the precepts of IshIm, according to which a Moslim, even if he says his ordinary prayers at home, is obliged, when staying in the town and not prevented by disease, to say his Friday prayers in the Jm'a. When the Fullin conquered the place they purposely increased

FURTHER DIFFICULTIES.

the ruin of the old native mosque of Sdn-kor6, which is situated in the northern quarter, and afterward prevented its being repaired, till, by the exertions of the Sheikh el Bakiy, especially on his visit to Hamda-Allihi some years previously, the inhabitants of the town had been allowed to repair that mosque at their own expense. This had been accomplished at the cost of 600 blocks or rus of salt, equal to about £200.

Besides levying this tax upon the inhabitants in general, they also devised means to subject to a particular punishment the Arab part of the population who had especially countenanced the sheikh in his opposition against their order to drive me out, by making a domiciliary search through their huts, and taking away some sixty or eighty bales or sunniye of tobacco, an article which, as I have stated on a former occasion, forms a religious and political contraband under the severe and austere rule of the Filbe in this quarter.

March 24th. This was the day on which the sheikh had promised to bring out my luggage, but, to my great disappointment, he came empty-handed; and again he had much to say about the expected arrival of Alkcittabu, the chief Somki, it was stated, having been called from A'ribinda to meet his liege lord at Ghgargo (pronounced R6rgo) with fifteen boats. But, as the sequel showed, this was a mere stratagem of that crafty chief, who intended to make an unexpected foray upon his foes the K61-hekfkan, in which enterprise he was perfectly successful, killing about a dozen of that already greatly reduced tribe. While the sheikh boasted of the innumerable host which his friend the Tirki chief carried with him, I was greatly amused at learning from an Urighen, who had come to pay us a visit, that Alkiittabu had only 300 fighting men with him at the time. I also observed with a certain degree of satisfaction that my kindly host became aware of what I was subjected to day by day; for, while on a visit to my tent, one of the flies that tormented me stung him so severely as to draw blood; and I then showed him my poor horse, which was suffering dreadfully, although at times we lighted a small fire in order to afford him some relief.

During my stay here, I had become better acquainted with Sidi Mohammed, and I had convinced myself that he was a straightforward man, although certainly not very friendly disposed toward Christians in general. Next morning, therefore, when he and the sheikh were consulting together, I complained bitterly of
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
their breaking their word so repeatedly and putting off my departure so continually. They then endeavored to soothe my disappointment, and, as they were going into the town, wanted me to go along with them, but I declined. In consequence of this remonstrance they sent me from the town the sheikh's nephew, who had been ill for several days, to bear me company and to take care of me, and this was a great treat in my solitary situation, as I had nobody to speak to. However, new difficulties appeared to arise with regard to my departure* and, during the next few-days, I received several curious messages, the real purport of which I was quite at a loss to understand. But El Bakiy at length promised that I should only have to wait two days longer, when he would go with me himself; but it was not till the very last day in March that he returned from the town to the camp, and, although he at length brought my luggage with him, my real departure was even then still far remote. "During this time I had especially to contend against the intrigues of my head man 'H el A'geren, who seemed to find the stay in Timb-iktu at my expense (where he himself was quite safe and well off, and could do what he liked) quite pleasant and comfortable. He was therefore in no hurry to leave, but rather tried every means in his power to counteract my endeavors for a speedy departure. An extraordinary degree of patience was therefore necessary on my part, and I was obliged to seek relief from the tediousness of my stay here in every little circumstance that broke the uniform tenor of my monotonous life.

A great source of entertainment to me were the young sons of my protector, Bib'A'hmed and Z-n el 'Abidfn, who were continually wrangling about all sorts of articles, whether they belonged to the one or the other; my tent and my horse forming the chief objects of their childish dispute. And I was greatly amused, at times, at the younger boy placing himself at the entrance of my tent, and protesting that it was Z-n el 'Abiden's tent, and preventing his elder brother from approaching it. The plate opposite gives a fair idea of the whole life of this desert camp, with its liberty, its cheerfulness, and its tediousness.

Our camp also afforded me at times some other amusement; for although the Tawirek had returned to their usual seats, the Gwanin were still kept back here by their fear of the K61-hekikan, and they occasionally got up a national play, which caused a little diversion. But I did not like these people nearly so well

LIFE IN THE CAMP.
as the wild I'moshashgh; for, having become degraded by being subjected to the caprices of stronger tribes, they have almost entirely lost that independent spirit which is so prepossessing in the son of the desert, even though he be the greatest ruffian.
One afternoon they collected round my tent and began boasting of what they had done for me. They told me that the Fullin had written to their sheikh, Weled 'Abgda, accusing the Gwanfn that, in the night when El Bakgy was bringing me back to Timbiiktu, they had been fighting against them, and, among other mischief, had killed a horse belonging to them; and that their chief had answered that his people had done well in defending me, and that nobody should hurt me after I had once succeeded in placing myself under the sheikh's protection. And this, be it remembered, was the self-same chief who had murdered Major Laing; and one or the other of these very Gwanfn, with whom I had dealings every day, were perhaps implicated in that very murder. I was thus led to inquire of these people whether there were no papers remaining of that unfortunate traveler, and was told that they were all scattered or made away with; but I learned, to my great surprise, that there were letters for myself in A'zawid, which had arrived from the east; and although these people were not able, or did not feel inclined, to give me full information about this matter, which was of so much interest to myself, the fact proved afterward to be quite true; but it was a long time before I got possession of those letters.

Nature now looked more cheerful; and, after the little rain that had fallen, spring seemed to have set in a second time, and the trees were putting forth young leaves. The river having now laid bare a considerable tract of grassy ground, the cattle again found their wonted pasture of rich nourishing "b:rgu" on its banks, and were thus able to furnish their masters with a richer supply of milk. This was a great point toward hastening my departure, as the t6lamid (or pupils of the sheikh) had reason to expect that they would not be starved on the road. The fact that the tribes Which we had to pass on our road eastward were entirely without milk, which forms their chief support, had exercised some influence upon them. Meanwhile the turbulent state of the country grew worse and worse, since the Awelfnmiden had shown such signs of weakness; and the Tin-ger-6gedesh were said to have fallen upon the tribe of the Tak6takayen settled in A'ribinda, and to have killed six of their number. The chief, Somki, also made at the same time a sanguinary attack upon the K61-hekfkan; and the statt of feud and hostility among the Igwidaren had reached an extraordinary height, for besides the common animosity which this tribe had displayed against their former liege lord, Alkdttabu, two different factions were opposed to each other in the most bloody feud, one of them being led by A'khbi and W6ghdugu, and the other by TUni, to whom were attached the greater part of the Tarabansa and the K61-hekikan.

This chief, Tni, rendere4r himself particularly odious to the sheikh's party by keeping back a considerable amount of property belonging to the Gwanfn, among which were a dozen slaves, more than fifty asses, and three hundred and sixty sheep. A very noisy assembly was held, in the evening of the 1st of April, inside my "zerifa," or fence of thorny bushes with which I had fortified my little encampment, in front of my tent. All the Gwanfn assembled round my fire, and proposed various measures for arranging their affairs and for subduing the
obstinate old TUni. One speaker was particularly distinguished by the cleverness of his address and his droll expressions, although I thought the latter rather too funny for a serious consultation. However, this man was not a Berbdshi, but an I'do 'All, and therefore could not present a fair specimen of the capabilities of this tribe.

This same chief, Tni, was also the cause of some anxiety to myself, as it was he who, as I have stated on a former occasion, when a young man, was wounded in the leg by Mungo Park; and I was therefore rather afraid that he might take an opportunity of revenging himself upon me. There is no doubt that, in the murderous assault upon Major Laing in W.di Ah6net, the Tawfrek were partly instigated by a feeling of revenge for the heavy loss inflicted upon them by Mungo Park in his voyage down the Niger. At this very moment the dreaded chief, with part of his people, was here in the neighborhood, and caused great anxiety to Mmni, a younger brother of W6ghdugu, one of the chiefs of the Tarabanisa, who had come on a visit to the sheikh. Our frightened friend, in consequence, was rambling about the whole day on the fine black horse which my host had made me a present of, in order to spy out the movements of his enemy. He even wanted me to exchange my horse for two camels, in order that he might make his escape.

This man, who was an amiable and intelligent sort of person, gave me a fair specimen of what trouble I should have in making my way through those numerous tribes of Tawgrek along the river; for, when he begged a present from me, I thought a common blue shirt, or "rishdba," of which kind I had prepared about a dozen, quite sufficient for him, as I had had no dealings whatever with him, and was under no obligation to him; but he returned it to me with the greatest contempt, as unworthy of his dignity.

My supplies at this time were greatly reduced, and in order to obtain a small amount of shells I was obliged to sell a broken musket belonging to me. Under all these circumstances I was extremely glad when, in the evening of the 3d of April, the provision bags of the sheikh, of which I was assured the half was destined for my own use, were brought out of the town. But, nevertheless, the final arrangements for my departure were by no means settled, and the following day every thing seemed again more uncertain than ever, the kdhi, Weled Fa'imme, having arrived with another body of sixty armed men, and with fresh orders to levy contributions of money upon the inhabitants, in order to make them feel the superiority of the ruler of Hamda-Allihi. At the same time the people from Tawit set all sorts of intrigues afoot, in order to prevent the sheikh from leaving the town, being afraid that in his absence they should be exposed to continual vexation on the part of the ruling tribe; for although the Sheikho A'hamdu, in sending presents to Timbuktu, had not neglected El Bakiy, yet he had shown his preference for Hammidi, the rival of the latter, in so decided a manner, that my friend could not expect that in leaving the town his interests would be
respected;* and I had to employ the whole of my influence with the sheikh in order to prevent him from changing his plan. But, gradually, every thing that my host was to take with him on such a journey, consisting of books and provisions, was brought from the town, so that it really looked as if El Bakiy was to go himself. His horses had been brought from Kibara on the 9th, and several people, who were to accompany us on our journey eastward, having joined us the following day, the sheikh himself arrived on the 11th, and our encampment became full of bustle. My own little camping-ground also was now enlivened with all my people, who had come to join me; and my small store of

* The present sent by the Sheikho A'hmedu consisted of 800 measures of corn to El Bakdy, and as much to Hammidi, besides ten slaves to the latter. VOL. III.-C c

TRAVEL IN AFRICA.

books, which had been brought from the town, enabled me to give more variety to my entertainment.

A rather disagreeable incident now occurred. The Zoghorin officer, the companion of Fgrreji, had came out on some errand, while I was staying with the three brothers in the large tent, which had been erected for Sfdi Mohammed. I wanted to leave, but Bakiy begged me to stay. I therefore remained a short time, but became so disgusted with the insulting language of the Zoghordn, that I soon left abruptly, although his remarks had more direct reference to the French, or rather the French and halfcaste traders on the Senegal, than to the English or any other European nation. He spoke of the Christians in the most contemptuous manner, describing them as sitting like women in the bottom of their steam-boats, and doing nothing but eating raw eggs: concluding with the paradoxical statement, which is not very flattering to Europeans, that the idolatrous Bimbara were far better people, and much farther advanced in civilization than the Christians. It is singular how the idea that the Europeans are fond of raw eggs (a most disgusting article to a Mohammedan), as already proved by the experience of Mungo Park, has spread over the whole of Negroland, and it can only be partially explained by the great predilection which the French have for boiled eggs.

Altogether my situation required an extraordinary amount of forbearance, for A'lawte also troubled me again with his begging propensities. But when he came himself to take leave of me, I told him the time for presents was now past; whereupon he said, that he was aware that if I wanted to give I gave, meaning that it was only the want of good-will that made me not comply with his wish. I assured him that I had given him a great many presents against my own inclination. He owned that he had driven a rather hard bargain with me, but, when he wanted me to acknowledge at least that he had done me no personal harm, I told him that the reason was rather his want of power than his want of inclination, and that, although I had nothing to object to him in other respects, I should not like to trust myself in his hands alone in the wilderness.
The difficulties which a place like Timbuktu presents to a free commercial intercourse with Europeans are very great. For while the remarkable situation of the town, at the edge of the desert and on the border of various races, in the present degenerated condition of the native kingdoms, makes a strong government very difficult, nay, almost impossible, its distance from either the west coast or the mouth of the Niger is very considerable. But, on the other hand, the great importance of its situation at the northern curve or elbow of that majestic river, which, in an immense sweep encompasses the whole southern half of North-Central Africa, including countries densely populated and of the greatest productive capabilities, renders it most desirable to open it to European commerce, while the river itself affords immense facilities for such a purpose. For, although the town is nearer to the French settlements in Algeria on the one side, and those on the Senegal on the other, yet it is separated from the former by a tract of frightful desert, while between it and the Senegal lies an elevated tract of country, nay, along the nearest road a mountain chain extends of tolerable height. Farther: we have here a family which, long before the French commenced their conquest of Algeria, exhibited their friendly feelings toward the English in an unquestionable manner, and at the present moment the most distinguished member of this family is most anxious to open free intercourse with the English. Even in the event of the greatest success of the French policy in Africa, they will never effect the conquest of this region. On the other hand, if a liberal government were secured to Timbuktu, by establishing a ruler independent of the F6lbe of Hamda-Allihi, who are strongly opposed to all intercourse with Europeans, whether French or English, an immense field might be opened to European commerce, and thus the whole of this part of the world might again be subjected to a wholesome organization. The sequel of my narrative will show how, under the protection of the Sheikh el Bakiy, I endeavored to open the track along the Niger.

CHAPTER LXXII
ABORTIVE ATTEMPT AT DEPARTURE FROM TIMBU'KTU.
I HAD been obliged to leave the town on the 17th of March, in consequence of the brothers of the sheik having deemed such a step essential for the security of the town, and advantageous to their own personal interest. Since that time my departure had been earnestly discussed almost daily, but, nevertheless, amid infinite delays and procrastinations, the 19th of April had arrived before we at length set out from our encampment, situated at the head of the remarkable and highly-indented creek of B6se-bingo. Notwithstanding the importance of the day, my excellent friend the Sheikh el Bak-y could not even then overcome his habitual custom of taking matters easy. He slept till a late hour in the morning, while his pupils were disputing with the owners of the camels which had been hired for the journey, and who would not stir. At length my friend got up, and our sluggish caravan left the encampment.
There were, besides our own camels, a good many asses belonging to the Gwanin, and laden with cotton strips. It was past eleven o'clock, and the sun had already become very troublesome, when we left the camp. The chief was so extremely fond of his wife and children, that it was an affair of some importance to take leave of them. I myself had become sincerely attached to his little boys, especially the youngest one, Zdn el 'Abidin, who, I am led to hope, will remember his friend 'Abd el Kerim; but, notwithstanding my discontent at my protector's want of energy, I could not be angry with him, and, when he asked me whether he had now deceived me or kept his word, I could not but praise his conduct, although I told him that I must first see the end of it. He smiled, and turning to his companion, the old Haiballah (Habib Allah), who had come from A'zawd to spend some time in his company, asked him whether I was not too mistrustful; but the event unluckily proved that I was not.

The vegetation in the neighborhood of B6se-bingo is extremely rich, but, as we advanced, gradually the trees ceased, with the exception of the k£1go, the bush so often mentioned by me in Husa, and which here begins to be very common. I was greatly disappointed in my expectation of making a good day's march, for, after proceeding a little more than three miles, I saw my tent, which had gone in advance, pitched in the neighborhood of an encampment of Arabs belonging to the tribe of the Ergigeda. Here we staid the remainder of the day, enjoying the hospitality of these people, who had to pay dearly for the honor of such a visit; for the pupils of my friend, who had capital appetites, required a great deal of substantial nourishment to satisfy their cravings, and, besides a dozen dishes of rice, and a great quantity of milk, two oxen had to be slaughtered by our hosts. These Arabs, who formed here an encampment of about twenty-five spacious tents, made of sheepskins or firrwel, have no camels, and possess only a few cows, their principal herds being sheep and goats, besides a large number of asses. They have been settled in this district, near the river, since the time when Sidi Mukhtir, the elder brother of El Bakiy, established himself in Timbiktu, that is to say, in the year 1832.

Although I should have liked much better to have made at once a fair start on our journey, I was glad that we had at least set out at all, and, lying down in the shade of a small k£1go-tree, I indulged in the hope that in a period of from forty to fifty days I might reach S6koto; but I had no idea of the unfavorable circumstances which were gathering to frustrate my hopes.

The whole of this district is richly clothed with siwdk, or 'irik (Capparis sodata), and is greatly infested with lions, for which reason we were obliged to surround our camping-ground with a thick fence, or zerfba; and the encampment of the sheikh, for whom an immense leathern tent had been pitched, with his companions, horses, and camels, together with the large fires, presented a very imposing appearance. I was told that the lion hereabout has no mane, or, at least, a very small one, like the lion of A'sben.

Thursday, April 20th. The first part of this day's march led through a flat country, which some time before had been entirely inundated. Even at present, not only on
the south side of the path, toward the river, were extensive inundations to be seen, but on the left, or north side, a large open sheet spread out. Having passed numbers of Tawdrek, who were shifting their tents, as well as two miserable-looking encampments of the Shdmman-A'mmas, whose movements afforded some proofs of the disturbed state of the country, we ascended the higher sandy bank, where I first observed the poisonous euyhorbia, called here "abdri e'sebiwa," or "t~boru," which generally grows in the shade of the trees, especially in that of aoacias, and is said frequently to cause the death of the lion, from which circumstance its name is derived. Pursuing our easterly course, and keeping along the sandy bank, with a deep marshy ground on our right, we then reached a group of two encampments, one belonging to the l'denan, and the other to the Sh6mman-A'mmas, and here halted during the hot hours of the day. Both the above-mentioned tribes are of a degraded character; and the women were any thing but decent and respectable in their behavior. Having here decided that it was better to go ourselves and fetch the rest of our party whom we had sent in advance from B6se-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

bingo, instead of dispatching a messenger for them, although the place lay entirely out of our route, we started late in the afternoon, leaving our camels and baggage behind. Returning for the first mile and a half almost along the same road we had come, then passing the site of a former encampment of the two chiefs named Mushtiba and Rummn, whom I have mentioned before, we entered the swampy ground to the south along a narrow neck of land thickly overgrown with dim palms and brushwood, and thus affording a secure retreat to the lion. In the clear light of the evening, encompassed as the scenery was on either side, by high sandy downs toward the south on the side of the river, and by a green grassy ground with a channel-like sheet of water on the other, it exhibited a very interesting spectacle highly characteristic of this peculiar watery region. Having kept along this neck of land, which is called Temdhar6t, for about two miles, and reached its terminating point, we had to cross a part of the swamp itself which separates this rising ground from the downs on the bank of the river, and which less than a month previously had been impassable, while at present the sheet of water was interrupted, and was only from three to three and a half feet in depth at the deepest part. We then reached the downs, and here again turned westward, having the low swampy ground on our right and an open branch of the river on our left. This whole tract of country is of a very peculiar character, and presents a very different spectacle at various seasons of the year. During the highest state of the inundation, only the loftiest downs rise above the surface of the water like separate islands, and are only accessible by boats during the summer; while the low swampy grounds, laid bare and fertilized by the retiring waters, afford excellent pastures to innumerable herds of cattle. Even at present, while the sun was setting, the whole tract through which we were proceeding along the downs was enveloped in dense clouds of dust, raised by the numerous herds of the K61-n-Nokndnder, who were returning to their encampment. Here we were most
joyfully received by the followers of the sheikh, who had been waiting already several days for us, and I received especially a most cordial welcome from my young friend Mohammed ben Khottir, the sheikh's nephew, whom I esteemed greatly on account of his intelligent and chivalrous character. He informed me how anxious they had been on my account, owing to our continued delay. Having brought no tent with me, a large leathern one was pitched, and I was hospitably treated with milk and rice.

The Kel-n-Nokuder are a division of the numerous tribe of the Idenin, and although in a political respect they do not enjoy the privileges of full liberty and nobility, yet, protected by the Kunti, and the Sheikh el Bakiy in particular, they have succeeded in retaining possession of a considerable number of cattle. All of them are tolba, that is to say, students; and they are all able to read. Some of them can even write, although the Idenin can not now boast of men distinguished for great learning as they could in former times.

All these people who come under the category of tolba are distinguished by their fair complexion, and do not possess the muscular frame common among the free I'meshagh. Their fair complexion is the more conspicuous, as the men, with scarcely an exception, wear white shirts and white turbans. All of them took a great interest in me, and looked with extreme curiosity upon the few European articles which I had with me at the time. After some little delay the next morning we left the place, and at that time I little fancied that I was soon to visit this spot again. It is called Erndsse, or Niikka el kebfa, the great (sandy) down. Having this time excellent guides with us who knew the difficult ground thoroughly, after leaving the sandy downs we struck right across the swampy meadow grounds, so that we reached our encampment on the other side of Amalglle in a much shorter time than on our out-journey, while by continual windings we almost entirely avoided the swamps; but, without a good guide, no one can enter these low lands, which constitute a very remarkable feature in the character of the river. One of the Kel-n-Nokinder, of the name of Ay6ba, whom I had occasionally seen in the town, and who was not less distinguished by his loquacity than by his activity, here received a small present from me, as well as some of the Idenin, who, during my absence, had treated my people hospitably. Starting in the afternoon, after a march of about eight miles, at first through a low swampy country, afterward through a sandy wilderness with an undulating surface and with high sandy downs toward the river, we reached an encampment of Kel-li, the same people who had repeatedly protected me during my stay in the town, and, on firing a few shots, we were received by our friends with the warlike demonstration of a loud beating of their shields.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
The hospitable treatment which they exhibited toward us in the coarse of the evening really filled me with pity on their account, for, having no rice or milk, they slaughtered not less than three oxen and twenty goats, in order to feast our
numerous and hungry party, and make a holiday for themselves. Thus, having arrived after sunset, great part of the night was spent in reveling, and the encampment, with the many fires, the numbers of people, horses, and beasts of burden, in the midst of the trees, formed a highly interesting scene. In the course of the evening I received a visit from my protector. I had promised him another handsome present as soon as he should have fairly entered with me upon my home-journey, and he now wanted to know what it was. I informed him that it consisted of a pair of richly ornamented pistols, which I had kept expressly for the occasion: but instead of at once taking possession of them, he requested me to keep them for him till another time; for he himself was no doubt fully aware that our journey was not yet fairly begun; and its abortive character became fully apparent the following day, when, after a march of less than seven miles, we encamped near the tents of Tni, or E' T6ni, the first chief of the Tarabanisa. The locality, which is called Tns-arori, was of so swampy a character that we looked for some time in vain for a tolerably dry spot to pitch our tents, and it had a most unfavorable effect upon my health. Here we remained this and the two following days: and it became evident that as this chief persisted in his disobedience to his liege lord Alkiittabu, the other more powerful chief, A'khbi, whose mutinous behavior had been the chief reason of the former not coming to Timb-iktu, would certainly follow his example. The fact was, that, irritated against their superior chief, or more probably treating him with contempt on account of his youth and want of energy, after the death of his predecessor, E' Nbegha, they had fallen upon his mercenaries, especially the Sh6mman-A'mmas, and deprived them of their whole stock of cattle. This was the first time that I saw these more easterly Tawirek in their own territory; and I was greatly astonished at their superior bearing in comparison with the Tademekket and I'regenten, both in their countenance and in their dress. They were also richly ornamented with small metal boxes, made very neatly, and consisting of tin and copper: but it was in vain that I endeavored to obtain some of them as a curiosity. They wore also a rich pro-

CAMP OF THE TARABANA'SA.

fusion of white rings, which are made of the bones of that very remarkable animal the "ay,'" or Manatus, which seems to be not less frequent in the western than in the eastern branch of the Niger. As a token of their nobility and liberty all of them carried iron spears and swords, the degraded tribes not being allowed to make use of these manly weapons. The encampment consisted of about thirty leathern tents, of great size; and, besides the Tarabandsa, a party of the K61-hekfkan of Zfllikay were encamped. This was a less favorable circumstance; for, while as yet I had been always on the best footing with these Tawrek, the latter proved rather troublesome: and I got involved in a religious dispute with one of their chiefs named Ayiib, or Sfnnefel, against my inclination, which might have done me some harm. On his asking me why we did not pray in the same manner as themselves, I replied that our God did not live in the east, but was every where, and that therefore we had no occasion to offer up our prayers in that direction. This answer appeared to satisfy him; but he
affected to be horrified when he heard that we did not practice circumcision, and
endeavored to excite the fanatical zeal of the whole camp against me. I, however,
succeeded in partly effacing the bad impression thus caused, by making use of a
Biblical expression, and observing that we circumcised our hearts, and not any
other part of our body, having expressly abolished that rite, as it appeared to us to
be an emblem of the Jewish creed.
I also told them that if they thought that circumcision was a privilege and an
emblem of Islam they were greatly mistaken, as many of the pagan tribes around
them, whom they treated with so much contempt, practiced this rite. This latter
observation especially made a great impression upon them; and they did not fail
to remark that I always knew how to parry any attack made against my creed. But,
in other respects, I was very cautious in avoiding any dispute, and I was
extremely lucky in not having any thing to do with an arrogant relative of the
sheikh, of the name of 'Abd e' Rahmin Weled Sfd, who had lately come from
A'zaw~d to stay some time with his uncle, and obtain from him some present.
With the small present which I made to each of the Tarabanda I got on very well
with them; but as for their women, who, as was always the case at these
encampments, came in the evening to have a look at me, and, if possible, to obtain
a small present, I

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
left them without the least acknowledgment. Among the whole tribe I did not
observe one distinguished in any manner by her beauty or becoming manners.
The chief behaved so inhospitably that my companions were almost starved to
death, and I had to treat several of them; but, in acknowledgment, I received some
useful information.*
Tuesday, April 25th. At length we left this uncomfortable and unhealthy camping-
ground, and had some difficulty in turning round the swamp which is here
formed, and farther on in traversing a dense forest which almost precluded any
progress. Having then passed along a rising sandy ground, we had again to cross a
most difficult swampy tract, overgrown with dense forest, which at times obliged
us to ascend the high sandy downs that bordered the great river on our right, and
afforded a splendid view over the surrounding scenery.
Gradually we emerged from the dense forest upon the green border of a
backwater which stretched out behind the sandy downs, which were enlivened by
cattle. Marching along this low verdant ground we reached a place called Taidtilt
at eleven o'clock. Here W6ghda, the father-in-law of W6ghdugu, had just pitched
his tents, and part of his luggage was, at the moment of our arrival, being carried
over from the island of K6ra, where the chief Siul had encamped, and the shores
of which were enlivened by numerous herds of horned cattle.
Such is the remarkable mode of life adopted by these southern sections of the
mysterious veiled rovers of the desert. Totally metamorphosed as they are by the
character of the new region of which they have taken possession, they wander
about and emove
* A complete list of all the tribes and sections of the I'mishagh or Tawdrek will
be given in Appendix XI. Here I will communicate the family relations of those
chiefs of the Igwddare, which are of importance for understanding clearly the political state of things in this part of the Niger, and which may be of some use to any future expedition. First, A'khbi, the principal chief of this tribe, is a son of Sdlém, son of Hemne, son of Akhdum. His rival is Sadiktu, the nephew of Simsim, who is a son of El A'mmer (the name of Sadgktu's father I do not know), son of Walaswarislar, son of Akhdum. Associated with A'khbi is El W6ghdugu, a chief of a section of the Tarabaudsa, a very chivalrous man, and a great friend of the Sheikh el Bak-y, and son of E'g el Henne, son of Mansir; El WY6ghdugu's brothers are Mfni, Mohammed, Aniti, and Lubdd. Another chief of the Tarabanda, and a deadly enemy of El W6ghdugu, although allied with A'khbi, is E'Tdni, son of Agdnte, son of Khgwi, son of Mansdr, son of Ag e' Saade, son of Aw-dha. E'Tni's sons are: Umbilnge, Imnbekke or Bdba, Asdtil, and Inn6sara; sons of a brother of E'Tni are: Babaye and Bubikkeri. Another great man related to E'Teni is U'gast, son of Shdt, son of Khdwi.

RELATIONS OF VARIOUS CHIEFS.

their encampments from one island to the other, and from one shore to the other, swimming their cattle across the river. They have almost renounced the use of the camel, that hardy animal which afforded their only means of existence in those desert regions which had formerly been their home.

It was a highly interesting camping-ground. This branch of the river, which was about two hundred yards broad, and at present from six to eight feet deep, was enlivened by several boats, together with a good number of cattle, apparently rather averse to entering the water, which in summer usually dries up; the Tawgrek busily arranging their little property and pitching their tents, or erecting their little booth-like huts of matting; then behind us the dense forest, closely enveloped by climbing plants. The principal branch of the river is from two to three miles distant.

We had scarcely arrived when the cheerful little Woghda started from his tent with a sudden bound worthy of a public exhibition, in order to receive his friend the Sheikh el Bakdy. We encamped in the shade of the large trees, close to the border of the water, where we were soon visited by several Songhay people who inhabit a small hamlet on the island of K6ra, where they cultivate tobacco. This article constituted in former times the chief branch of cultivation all along the river, but at present, since the conquest of the country by the Fdlbe, it has become a contraband article, so that the people from Timbuktu come stealthily hither in order to buy from these people their produce with cotton strips or t6ri.

This chief, W6ghdha, had been present, when quite a boy, at the attack which the Igwidaren at E'gedesh made upon Mungo Park, whom all the old men along the river know very well, from his large strange-looking boat, with his white sail, his long coat, his straw hat, and large gloves. He had stopped at B6mba in order to buy fowls, of which he appears to have endeavored to obtain a supply at every large place along the river. Woghda farther asserted that it was on this occasion that the Tawgrek killed two of the Christians in the boat; but this seems to be a mistake, as it appears evident that two of the four valiant men who, solitary and
abandoned, in their boat, like a little fortress, navigated this river for so many hundred miles in the midst of these hostile tribes, were killed much lower down. The people have plenty of asses, and a sword-blade of the corn-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

monest German or Solingen manufacture fetches every where two of these animals, which are sold for at least 6000 shells each in the town. But the more conscientious Arabs do not trade with the Tawirek, whose property they well know, for the greatest part, to be "harim," or forbidden, because taken by violent means.

It had been announced that we were to start in the afternoon, but there was no reason for hurrying our departure, and we quietly encamped here for the night, when we were visited by a great number of the Weld Molk, whose encampment was at no great distance from ours. They were short, thick-set men, with fair complexions and expressive prepossessing features, but some of them were suffering dreadfully from a disgusting disease, which they attributed to the bad quality of the water. One or two of them, at least, had their nose and part of their face entirely eaten away by cancers, and formed altogether a horrible spectacle.

Much more agreeable was a visit which I received from the Tawirek chief Siul, the leader of the Kl-Timuliit, a very stately personage, who remained the greater part of the night with us, engaged in animated conversation with the sheikh. The following morning, while we were arranging our luggage, he and another chief of the name of Khasib came to pay me their compliments, and sat for a long time near me in order to observe my habits.

At length we were again on our march, following the windings of the river, which at times spread out to a fine sheet of water, but at others became hid behind sandy downs. On our left we had a well-wooded country, now and then changing into a, low swampy ground, and enlivened by guinea-fowls. In this place we met a fine tall T6rki, mounted upon one of the highest "mehira" I had ever seen. It was W6ghdugu, the most valiant of all the southern Taw6rek, Awelfmmiden, Igw~daren, and Tadem6kket taken together, and a sincere and faithful friend of the Sheikh el Bakiy. He was a fine, tall, broad-shouldered man, of six feet four or five inches, and evidently possessing immense muscular strength, although he was by no means fat at the time, and even pretended not to be in the enjoyment of good health.

Numerous deeds of valor are related of this man, which remind one of the best age of European or Arab chivalry. He is said, at the time when the Tawirek conquered the town of Guindam from the Fuilbe, to have jumped from his horse upon the wall of that place, and catching upon his shield the spears of all the enemy.

412

RETROGRADE MOVEMENT TOWARD TIMBU'KTU.

who were posted there, to have opened a way for his comrades. A few days before, he had been surprised, when quite alone, by a party of from ten to twelve of his private enemies, the followers of E'Tni, but he succeeded in defending
himself against them, and catching upon his shield all their iron spears, he reached the river, and made good his retreat in a boat.

Led on by this interesting man, and by a brother of his of the name of Mohammed, we soon reached a place named Izgberen, so called from two sandy downs rising from a flat shore, and at times entirely insulated. Inland, a large swampy backwater leaves only a narrow neck of land dry.

CHAPTER LXXIV.

RETROGRADE MOVEMENT TOWARD TIMBUKITU.

The locality of Izgberen, where we had encamped, was not at all inviting, as it was but scantily provided with trees. Here we gave up our journey eastward, and again commenced our retrograde movement toward Timbuktu. I was now filled with the saddest forebodings; for, after three or four days spent in vain dispute between the sheikh and A'khbi, the chief of the Igwddaren, who was encamped here, the latter persisted in his rebellious conduct against his liege lord, Alk~ittabu; and, instead of restoring what he had taken from the tribes placed under the protection of the latter, he made up his mind to follow the instigations of the sheikh's enemy and rival, Hammddi, and to throw himself into the arms of the Fiilbe and of the chief of Hamda-Alldhi. He thus caused an immense disturbance in this whole region; and in fact a bloody war broke out soon after my safe departure.

The encampment at Izgberen, to which this sad remembrance attaches, was tolerably enlivened with some interesting people, including as well some kinsmen of A'khbi, as more especially the sons of E'g el Henne, Wdghdugu, and his brethren, Mohammed, Aniti, and Mini, all of whom are of a very cheerful disposition, and (as far as it possible for a Tirki to be so) even amiable men.

Among the former there was a boy named Kizngu, whose arrogance at first was a little troublesome, but eventually he became one of my best friends, and even now occupies a foremost place in my remembrance. He was a nephew of A'khbi's, and his father

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

had been distinguished for his valor and warlike enterprise, but had been killed in battle at an early age, like most of the kinsfolk of this chief, so that the boy was brought up and educated by his mother, Tatinita, who was a daughter of A'wib, the chief of the Tademdkket, whom I have repeatedly mentioned on former occasions.

A'khbi himself was a man of about forty years of age, goodlooking, but of an overbearing character. His father, Silem, who had died a few months before at a very advanced age, had been distinguished by his intelligence, while A'khbi, as soon as he acceded to power, had broken his allegiance to his liege lord and entered into open hostilities with him. He had allowed his own small tribe, which scarcely numbered more than two hundred fighting men, to be divided into two hostile encampments, and in consequence of that feud had sustained a very heavy loss among his own followers. His quarrel with Alkidttabu was evidently a consequence of the intrigues of the Fidlbe and Hammidi, who, seeing that the political power of the Sheikh el Bakiy was based upon his friendship with the
chief of the Awelimmiden, used all his endeavors to raise up an adversary to the latter; and the progress of this struggle, of which I did not see the end, may have been productive of great changes in the political relations of Timbiiktu. The endeavor to preserve the unity of the whole tribe of the Awelimmiden, which my protector had sincerely at heart, and thus to keep up the friendly relation of this tribe with that of the Igwidaren, induced him to postpone my interests and to return once more westward, in order to exert his utmost to settle this serious affair; for the very tribe of the Igwddaren, from the first, when they were settled in A'zawid, had been the protectors of the Kunta, the tribe to which the family of Mukhtir belonged, and had especially defended them against the hostilities of the I'gelid, by whose subjection the former had founded their power. El Bakiy could not but see with the most heartfelt sorrow his former supporters likely to become the auxiliaries of his enemies; and his brother, Sidi Mohammed, whom he had left to fill his place in Timbdiktu during his absence, had sent an express messenger from the town, requesting him to come, in order that he might consult with him upon the state of affairs. As for myself, being anxious about my own interest, and fearing even for my life, which I was convinced was seriously threatened by another return toward Timbiiktu, I employed every means in my power to persuade my friend to allow me to pursue my journey eastward, in the company of those pupils and followers of his whom he had promised to send along with me. But he would not consent to this, and I felt extremely dejected at the time, and could not but regard this retrograde journey to Timbiiktu as a most unfortunate event. Just at this time the news was brought, by way of Ghad6mes, of the French having completely vanquished the Shaamba, and made an expedition to Wirgeli and Metlfli. In consequence of this report, the fear of the progress of these foreign and hated intruders into the interior of these regions became very general, and caused suspicion to attach to me, as these people could not but think that my journey to their country had some connection with the expedition of the French. But, taking all the circumstances into account, I found afterward that my friend was altogether right in postponing for the time my journey eastward. Sunday, April 30th. This was the sad day when, with the most gloomy forebodings, I began my return-journey toward the west. There had been the most evident signs of the approach of the rainy season, which, in the zone farther to the south, had already set in, when, after so many reiterated delays, I was obliged once more to return toward that very place which I had felt so happy in having at length left behind me. My protector was well aware of the state of my feelings, and, while the people were loading the camels, he came to me, and once more excused himself on account of this retrograde movement. There were, besides myself, some Arabs of the tribe of Gwanfn, who wanted to go on to Ghergo in order to buy tobacco, and
who now likewise were obliged to return once more to the westward, as they had no guarantee for their security in making the journey alone.

The splendid river along the banks of which lay our road, and which here was about half a mile across, afforded the only consolation in my cheerless mood. The junction of the two branches, as seen from this spot, presented a very fine spectacle. The gerredh-trees also, which were in full blossom, attracted my attention.

Keeping a little nearer to the sandy downs, we soon reached the place of our former encampment in Tautilt. Having then passed along the small backwater of Bark-nge, the volume of which had greatly decreased in these few days, we encamped about

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

four miles beyond, in the open swampy ground which we had had such difficulty in crossing on our outward journey. It is called Er-sar. In this low ground, between two swamps, and about 800 yards from the bank of the river, without the shade of the smallest tree, the Igwidaren had encamped. It was owing to these swampy sites that I was afflicted with those severe rheumatic pains from which I afterward suffered so much in Böru, and which I occasionally feel even now.

The place was the more disagreeable as we remained here the three following days, El Bakiy endeavoring all the time to persuade the chief A'khbi to restore the property which he had taken from the subjects of his liege lord. I was, in the mean time, anxious to keep up a friendly intercourse with the people with whom I was thus brought into contact, although most of the Igwidaren had already gone on in advance to their new retreat, and at that time were collected at Ernösse, while the straightforward and fearless chief W6ghdugu and his friend Shamuw6l were still behind. I took a great interest in the name of the latter, for I thought that the names of Shamuw6l, Siul, and Dani6l—all being of frequent occurrence among this tribe, while, as far as I am aware, none of them is found among the Arabs—tend to confirm the closer relation which these Berbers keep up with the Canaanitic tribes than with the Arabs. There was, in particular, a man of the name of Sima, who was very friendly with me. On reading with him some writing in "Tefinaghen," or the native Berber character, I became aware that this word signifies nothing more than tokens, or alphabet; for as soon as the people beheld my books, and observed that they all consisted of letters, they exclaimed repeatedly, "Teffnaghen-ay-Teffnaghen!" and my little friend K-ingu, who had just learned the Arabic alphabet, was very anxious to know something about the value of the letters. I here, also, had proof of the great dislike which the Tawirek have to the name of their father being mentioned, for, when the little Haibilla, the companion of the son of the sheikh, mentioned the death of K-ingu's father, the little fellow flew into a great rage, and was ready to kill him on the spot.

I received, besides, a great deal of information from a young man who had lately come from the north, in order to study under the sheikh. He belonged to the Welid Yo'aza, a section of the tribe of the Mgshedif, which originally appears to have been of pure Berber extraction, being identical with the celebrated tribe
THE SWAMPS AND THE RAINS.
of the Masdfa, but who, at present, have become Arabicized. He was evidently a
man of a good family; but being now rather scantily supplied with food, he took
refuge with me, in order to enjoy my hospitality. On this occasion I learned from
him a great deal with regard to some districts of the desert with which I had been
unacquainted.
In the same encampment we received full confirmation of the news with regard to
the progress of the French toward the south, and of their having taken possession
of Wirgeli. The excitement produced in consequence was very great, and made
my situation extremely difficult and dangerous. The Sheikh el Bakiy came twice
in the same afternoon to me, expressing his intention of uniting the strength of the
Tawitiye and the Aweliniden in a common attack upon the French. But I
endeavored to show him the absurdity of such a proceeding, telling him that they
themselves would gain nothing by such inconsiderate conduct, and would only
furnish a fresh pretext to the French for penetrating farther into the interior.
Moreover, I gave it as my opinion, that the latter, unless instigated, would not
undertake such a thing as a military expedition to these distant regions, but would
endeavor to open commercial intercourse with them in a peaceful manner. There
the matter stopped for the moment.
Thursday, May 4th. All the exertions of the sheikh to persuade A'khbi to return
the property which he had taken by force from the tribes placed under the
protection of the Awelfmmiden being in vain, the latter broke up his encampment,
in order to pursue his journey westward in search of new protectors and allies. To
prevent the mischief which might result from this course, my friend followed, and
I was obliged reluctantly to accompany him. The river had fallen considerably
since I had last visited this district, and the scanty foliage of the lower part of the
trees in the swampy tract which we traversed in the beginning of our march bore
evident testimony to the higher state of the water some time before.
Leaving then our former camping-ground in Tensafiri on one side, we encamped
after a march of a little more than six miles, on ground which was still so
extremely damp that almost all my luggage was spoiled, while it likewise
exercised a most unfavorable effect upon my health. We had previously had
evident signs of the approach of the rainy season; but, to-day, we had the first
regular shower accompanied by a thunder-storm, and rain fell
VOL. III.-D D

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
round about us- in a much more considerable quantity. The Tawirek were well
aware that this was the real beginning of the rainy season, giving vent to their
feelings in the words "ikase yuse"-" the rainy season has set in ;" but my Arab
companions, who repeatedly assured me that long before the setting in of the
rainy season I should certainly reach S6koto, would not acknowledge this as a
regular rain, but qualified it as quite an exceptional phenomenon connected with
the setting of the "Pleiads," and calling it in sequence, "mghreb el thrayi." ' There
was a great dread of lions in our encampment. I especially was warned to be on
Friday, May 5th. Although I had been promised that we should certainly not pass this place on our return westward, nevertheless, in the morning the order was suddenly given to decamp; and on we went, A'khbi in the van and we in the rear, passing many small temporary encampments of the Igwidaren, who were exiling themselves from their own country. Having thus made a short march of about four miles, through a country now rising in sandy downs, covered with siwik and du'm bush, at other times spreading out in low swampy meadow-grounds, and leaving I'ndikuway on our left, we encamped again in the midst of a swamp, at a short distance from the bank of the river. Fortunately, there was some rising ground, opening a fine view over the river, which here formed an arm of about 600 yards in breadth, while the opposite shore of A'ribinda exhibited a very pleasant background. Cautiously I pitched my tent as high as possible, with the door looking toward the river, in order to console myself with the aspect of the stream. A beautiful j6ja or caoutchouc tree, here called 6nderen, which I scarcely remember to have seen anywhere else in the whole of this district, gave life and animation to the encampment. A few miles toward the west, the high sandy downs of Ul'e Tehirge formed also an object of great interest.

It was extremely fortunate that the ground of this encampment did not present such a uniform level as in our last day's imazigh, for in the afternoon we were visited by a violent tempest, which threw back the fence that we had erected around our camping-ground upon ourselves and our horses, and threatened to tear the tent to pieces: then, having made the round of the whole horizon, it returned once more from the north and discharged itself in a terrific shower, which lasted more than two hours, and changed the whole of the lower part of the plain into a large lake.

This thunder-storm afforded evident proofs of the full power of the rainy season; and as I had not yet even begun my long journey eastward, through districts so full of large rivers and of swampy valleys, my feelings may be more easily imagined than described. I felt very dissatisfied with the Sheikh el Bakiy, and he, on his part, was well aware of it. His own trustworthy and amiable character inspired me with the confidence that I should at length get safely out of all my trouble; but an immense amount of Joblike patience was required, for we staid in this encampment the five following days.

But we had a little intercourse with some remarkable persons which gave me some occupation. The most interesting of the passers-by were three noble ladies of the tribe of the K6l-hekikan, well mounted on camels in an open cage, or jakhfa, of rather simple structure, with the exception of the rich ornament on the head of the animal, as is represented in the accompanying wood-cut. But the ladies themselves afforded an interesting sight, being well formed, of rather full proportions, though very plainly dressed. Then the whole of the Igwidaren, male and female, passed by close to my tent. There were, besides, the K6l-ter-rart and the K6l-tamugit, or, as the Arabs called them, A'hel e' Siul; and I...
had a long conversation with a troop of eight horsemen of the latter, who, in the evening, came to my tent in order to pay their respects to me. I reciprocated fully their protestations of friendship, and requested one of the two kinsmen of the chief Siul, who were among this troop, to accompany me on my journey eastward, promising to see him safe to Mekka. But, although be

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
greatly valued my offer, he was afraid of the Ar6wan or K61ger6s, and of the inhabitants of A’fr.
There was a great congregation of different chiefs with the Sheikh el Bakgy; and he flattered himself that he had made peace between inveterate enemies, such as E’T6ni and W6ghdugu; but the sequel showed that he was greatly mistakeh, for these petty tribes can not remain quiet for a moment. Great numbers of the Sh6mman-A’mmas were hovering round us, all of them begging for food. But my spirits were too much imbittered to exercise great hospitality from the small stock of my provisions, which were fast dwindling away. Indeed, the stores which I had laid in, in the hope that they would last me until I reached Say, were almost consumed, and I was very glad to obtain a small supply of milk, which I usually bought with looking-glasses, or rather rewarded the gifts of the people by the acknowledgment of such a present. But these people were really very miserably off, and almost in a starving condition, all their property having been taken from them. They informed me that the Igwidaren had plundered twelve villages along the Eghfrreu, among others those of Bnmba, E’gedesh, Aslhman, and Z6mgoy. The river was enlivened the whole day long with boats going up and down, and some of the people asserted that these boats belonged to the Fuiibe, who were looking out for an opportunity of striking a blow. The whole world seemed to be in a state of revolution. The news from the north of the advance of the French, the particulars of which, of course, could not but become greatly exaggerated, as the report was carried from tribe to tribe, excited my friend greatly, and the several letters, written by the people of Tawit who were resident in Timbiktu, having reference to the same event, with which the messenger whom he had sent to that place returned, did not fail to increase his anxiety.
All these people seemed to be inspired with the same fear, that the French might without any farther delay march from el Golda, which they were said to have occupied, upon Timbuktu, or at least upon Tawit. On the whole it was very fortunate, indeed, that I was not in the town at this conjuncture, as in the first excitement these very people from Tawit, who previously had taken me under there especial protection, and defended me repeatedly, would have contributed to my ruin, as, from their general prejudice against a Christian, they lost all distinction between English and French, and represented me as a spy whose proceedings were connected with that expedition from the north.

EXCITING NEWS.
They now urgently requested the sheikh to write a letter to the whole community of Tawit, and to stimulate them to make an attack upon Wirgeli conjointly with
the Hogir and A'zgar; but I did all in my power to prevent him from acceding to such a proposal, although he thought that I was greatly underrating the military strength of the people of Tawit. However, although I succeeded in preventing such a bold stroke of policy, I could not prevent his writing a letter to the French, in which he interdicted them from penetrating farther into the interior, or entering the desert, under any pretext whatever, except as single travelers. He also wanted me to write immediately to Tripoli, to request that an Englishman should go as consul to Tawit; but I told him that this was not so easily done, and that he must first be able to offer full guarantee that the agent should be respected.

In my opinion it would be better if the French would leave the inhabitants of Tawit to themselves, merely obliging them to respect Europeans, and keep open the road to the interior; but although at that time I was not fully aware of the intimate alliance which had been entered into between the French and the English, I was persuaded that the latter neither could nor would protect the people of Tawit against any aggressive policy of the French, except by peaceable means, as Tawit is pre-eminently situated within the range of their own commerce. If both the English and French could agree on a certain line of policy with regard to the tribes of the interior, those extensive regions might, I think, be easily opened to peaceful intercourse. Be this as it may, under the pressure of circumstances, I found myself obliged to affix my name to the letter written by the sheikh, as having been present at the time, and candor imposed upon me the duty of not signing a wrong name.

All this excitement, which was disagreeable enough, had, however, one great advantage for me, as I was now informed that letters had reached my address, and that I should have them; but I was astonished to hear that these letters had arrived in A'zawid some months previously. I expostulated very strongly with my friend upon this circumstance, telling him that if they wanted friendship and "imina," or security of intercourse with us, they ought to be far more strict in observing the conditions consequent upon such a relation. I then received the promise that I should have the letters in a few days.

Wednesday, Mifay 10th. Our hosts the K41-g6gi removed their encampment, and, we followed them, although my protector had repeatedly assured me that in our retrograde movement we should certainly not have to pass the fine caoutchouc-tree that adorned our encampment. Leaving the high sandy downs of U'le-Tehairge, on the banks of the river, we kept around the extensive swampy meadow-ground which spreads out behind them, several small encampments of the wandering Tawirek enlivening the green border of the swamp. Crossing, then, some rising ground beyond the reach of the wide expanse of shallow backwaters connected with the river, we came to the well-known creek of Amal6lle, and followed its northerly shore till we reached its source or head, where our friend A'khbi had taken up his encampment in the midst of a swampy meadow-ground, which afforded rich pasture to his numerous herds of cattle; for,
as I have had occasion repeatedly to state, the Tawirek think nothing of encamping in the midst of a swamp.

As for ourselves, we were obliged to look out for some better protected and drier spot, and therefore ascended the sandy downs, which rise to a considerable elevation, and are well adorned with talha-trees and siwik, or Capparis sodata. Having pitched my tent in the midst of an old fence, or zeriba, I stretched myself out in the cool shade, and, forgetting—for a moment the unpleasant character of my situation, enjoyed the interesting scenery of the landscape, which was highly characteristic of the labyrinth of backwaters and creeks which are connected with this large river of Western Central Africa.

At the foot of the downs was the encampment of our friends the Tawgrek, with its larger and smaller leathern tents, some of them open and presenting the interior of these simple movable dwellings; beyond, the swampy creek, enlivened by a numerous herd of cattle half immersed in the water; then a dense border of vegetation, and beyond in the distance, the white sandy downs of Ern6sse, with a small strip of the river. I made a sketch of this pleasant and animated locality, which is represented in the plate, opposite. The scenery was particularly beautiful in the moonlight when I ascended the ridge of the downs, which rise to about 150 feet in height. In the evening I received a little milk from the wife of one of the chiefs of the K4l-gogi of the name of Limmge, who was a good-looking woman, and to whom I made a present of a looking-glass and a few needles in return. The Tawirek, while they are fond of their wives, and almost entirely abstain from polygamy, are not at all jealous; and the degree of liberty which the women enjoy is astonishing; but, according to all that I have heard, instances of faithlessness are very rare among the nobler tribes. Among the degraded sections, however, and especially among the K61 e' Siik, female chastity appears to be less highly esteemed, as we find to be the case also among many Berber tribes at the time when El Bekrf wrote his interesting account of Africa.*

Meanwhile my good and benevolent protector was in a most unpleasant dilemma, between his regard for his own interest and his respect for myself. He severely rebuked the Trki chief for having disturbed the friendly relation which had formerly existed between himself and me; for since our retrograde movement, in order to incite my friend to a greater degree of energy, I never went to his tent, although he repeatedly paid me a visit. At length, after mature consideration, the sheikh had decided that I, together with the greater part of his followers, should go to Ern6sse, there to await his return, while he himself intended to approach still nearer to Timbdktu, although he affirmed that he would not enter the town under any condition.

Thus we separated the next morning, and I took leave of the friends whom I had made among the tribe of the Igwidaren. These people were leaving their former homes and their former allies, in order to seek new dwelling-places and new friends. There was especially the little Ku'ngu, who, early in the morning, came
on his white horse to bid me farewell. We had become very good friends, and he used to call daily to talk with me about distant countries, and the different varieties of nations as far as he had any idea of such things. He was an intelligent and chivalrous lad, and with his long black hair, his large expressive eyes, and his melancholy turn of mind, I liked him much. When I told him - that he would yet become one of the great chiefs of the Tawgrek, and a celebrated warrior, he expressed his fear that it would be his destiny to die young like his brothers, who had all fallen in battle at an early age; but I consoled him, and promised that if any friend of mine should visit these regions after me I would not fail to send him a present for himself. He regretted having left the neighborhood of Bimba, which he extolled very highly on account of its fine trees and rich pasture-grounds; but

* El Bk,f, ed. de Slane, p. 182. JbL ,

425

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

he spoke enthusiastically of the R~far-n-iman, or, as the Arabs call it, the Ris el mi, with the rich grassy backwaters and creeks which surround it, especially the valley called Tis6rmaten, the reminiscences of which filled his boyish mind with the highest delight.

Thus I took leave of this young Trki lad, after having given him such little presents as I could spare. Swinging himself upon his horse by means of his iron spear, he rode off with a martial air, probably never to hear of me again. I took the opposite direction, along the shore of the creek Amalgle, accompanied by a guide whom Ahmed el Wadiwi had brought from Erngsse, and followed by Mohammed ben Khottir the sheik's nephew, Sidi Mohammed the sheik's son, and almost the whole of his followers. However, the company of all these people did not inspire me with so much confidence that my friend and protector would not tarry long behind, as the fact of the presence of his favorite female cook, Diko, who accompanied us, and whose services my friend could scarcely dispense with; and I thus agreed in the opinion of his confidential pupil, Mohammed el A'mn, who, knowing well the character of his teacher, disputed with energy with those among my companions who thought that the sheikh would send us word to join him in the town.

I therefore cheerfully enjoyed once more the very peculiar character of this river district, with its many creeks, small necks of land, and extensive swamps. Since we had last visited this place the waters had retired considerably, and the extensive swampy lowlands between Temdharet and Ern6sse had become quite dry, so that we had to cross only a narrow channel-like strip of water. Following then the sandy downs, we soon reached the well-known encampment of the K6l-n-Nokdinder, where I was hospitably entertained with a bowl of ghussub-water. I was disposed to enjoy in privacy the view over the river, while lying in the shade of a siwik, but the number of Tawdrek who were passing by did not allow me much leisure, for the tents of Siul, as well as those of El W6ghdugu, were at a short distance. But these people, conscious of their having deserved punishment at the hand of their liege lord, were frightened away by the rising of a simuim, as it is popularly believed in the country that this wind is the sign of the approach of
the great army, or tfbu, of the Awelmmiden, and they all started off the next morning.

The river, which is here very broad, forms a large low island called Banga-gungu, the "hippopotamus iaiand," while a smaller one, distinguished by a fine tamarind-tree, is called Bire. I endeavored in the afternoon to reach the bank of the river itself; but it is beset with a peculiar kind of grass of great height, armed with such offensive bristles that it is almost impossible to penetrate through it. In the latter part of the cold and during the hot season, a path leads along this low grassy shore, but, during some months of the year, the water reaches the very downs. It is a fine spot for an encampment, the air being good. But the whole site consists only of a narrow sandy ridge, backed toward the north by an extensive swamp, the border of which is girt with the richest profusion of vegetation, interwoven with creeping plants, and interspersed with dim bush. This place is called "iggada," and forms a haunt for numbers of wild beasts, especially lions, and the inhabitants gave an animated description of a nocturnal combat which, two days previously, had raged between two lions on account of a lioness. It had been decided that we should await here the return of the sheikh; but, after we had passed the following day in this place, our friends the K61-n-Nokiinder, already satisfied with the honor of entertaining so many guests for one day, endeavored to escape from our hands, and, without having given us the slightest warning, on the morning of Saturday suddenly removed their encampment. Fortunately they went eastward, in which direction I would have followed them to the end of the world. Thus my companions, the t6lamid, rushed after them like hungry vultures after their prey. I had my things packed in a moment, and we followed them along the same narrow neck of downs on which our route had lain in coming from Amal6lle; but, instead of traversing the swamp by the ford northward, we kept along it toward the east, where the downs gradually decrease in height, being overgrown with colocynths, and, farther on, with tirsha, or Asclepias gigantea, and the blue Crucifera or daman-kidda. Farther on they cease entirely, and give way to a low shore, which, during the highest state of the inundation, forms a connection between the river and the swampy background stretching out behind the downs. Here, where the river takes a fine sweep to the southeast, and forms several islands, was situated in former times a town of the name of Belesiro, but, at present, nothing but groups of a beautiful species of wild fig-tree, called here duw6, mark this spot as the former scene of human industry.

428 TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Crossing then a low swampy ground, overgrown with rich bfrgu and rank reed-grass, we reached the high sandy downs of UleTehirge, which had already attracted my attention from our encampment in Tehirge. On the highest part of these, downs the K61-n-Noku'nder chose the place for their new encampment, and I fixed upon a former fence, wherein I pitched my tent, which from this
elevated position was visible over a great part of the river. But my young friend, the sheikh's nephew, imbued with the superstitious prejudices of his mother, always greatly objected to my using the former dwelling-places of other people, as if they were haunted by spirits.

It was a beautiful camping-ground, elevated about 150 feet above the surface of the river, over which it afforded a magnificent prospect, the river here forming a very noble sheet of water. It is asserted, however, that in summer it is fordable at the place called E'sowdd. A little beyond the end of the downs, where it formed another reach toward the south, the river presented the appearance of an extensive lake. Nearer the opposite shore a low grassy island called Ribara stretched out, and another narrow strip of ground called Wiraka was separated from the shore, on our side, by a narrow channel, and overgrown with the finest bftgu. Toward the south, the steep sandy downs were bordered by a strip of rich vegetation, behind which a green swampy plain stretched out, intersected by an open channel, which separated us from the main, where another village of the K6l-n-Noku'nder was lying, the barking of whose dogs was distinctly heard.

The small creek which separated the island of Wiraka from our shore was full of crocodiles, some of which measured as much as eighteen feet, the greatest length which I have ever seen this animal attain in Central Africa; and swimming just below the surface of the water, with the head occasionally peeping forth, they greatly threatened the security of the cattle, who were grazing on the fine rank grass growing on the border of the creek. In the course of the day these voracious and most dangerous animals succeeded in seizing two cows belonging to our hosts, and inflicted a very severe wound upon a man who was busy cutting grass for my horses.

This man had attached himself to my party in order to return to Mlusa, which was originally his home. But there was a great difference of opinion as to whether he was at liberty to go, although he was a liberated slave, and I was given to understand that his

A FRIENDLY CHAT.

company might involve me in disputes with his former masters; for, in general, even liberated slaves are supposed to observe some sort of duty to their former employers. Nevertheless, I had allowed him to stay, but was now obliged to send him back to Timbfiktu, as almost the whole of his foot had been carried away by the monster, so that he was entirely unfit for the journey, and required immediate relief.

The view of the river was the more interesting, as a strong northeast wind, or, as the Tawirek say, "erife," ruffled its surface so considerably that it crested the waves with white foam, and presented a very animated appearance, the magnificent sheet of water, the green island and shore, and the high ridge of the wide sandy downs forming a most pleasing contrast.

There was, also, no lack of intercourse. Sometimes it was some fishermen of the Songhay who solicited my hospitality in the evening; at others, it was a troop of Tawirek horsemen, who came to see the Christian stranger of whom they had heard so much. The most remarkable among them were the horsemen of the K6l-
tab₆rit and the KMI-timuliit,* with whom I had a long conversation, in the course of which I endeavored to make them understand that the whole of this extensive region, of which they knew only a small part, was "nothing but a large island or gungu" ("gdngu ghis"), in the great salt sea, just as the island of Ribara, opposite to us, was with regard to the Niger, or the Eghfr⁻⁻⁻u, the only name by which this river is known to all the Berber tribes. They thus became aware that the dominion of the sea was of some importance, as it gave access to all these countries, whereas before they had only looked with a sort of contempt upon people living only, as they thought, in vessels on the sea; and they

* Two of the Kel-tab₆rit gave me the following list of places from hence along the river as far as A'nsong6, and, as it contains a few names with which I did not become acquainted in the right place, and moreover presents various forms, I will here insert it; Ejiji, Y6 Kaina, Karre, G6wa, Klima, Kokfshi, Boginne, Serire, Aribis, Anrabdra, Ajima, Tergrwist, K6rsejiy, Tdda6f6, Ajgta, Alitelmakkoren, Tekinkant, Insimmen, E'm-n-tab₆rak, Asiya, Samgoy, Tighemart, Kdyaga, Tatisa, Burrem, Tdn-dzede, Hd, G6g66, Borno, Bra, Enejdti, Tufddaf6r, Ebdlbelen, A'nsong6. At the same time I learned the localities along the road from A'nsong6, or probably from Bifre to D6re, the chief place of Libtdko, which is a track not unfrequently followed by the inhabitants of the districts on the left bank of the Niger: Inblm, Ejdrar, Timbelghil, Akhabelbel, E'nkulbd, Wendn (Ddre). Akhabelbel, or Khalebleb, is the name of a large lake or backwater, which is also touched at ill going from G6g66 to D6re, and which seems to deserve the full attention of European explorers.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

were not a little surprised when I told them that we were able to come up this river from the sea. They likewise had heard, and some of them perhaps had even seen, something of that adventurous Christian who, fifty years ago, had navigated this river,' and who, even after this lapse of time, remains a mysterious and insoluble enigma to them, as to the place from whence he so suddenly appeared, and whither he was going.

The influence of conversation is great among these simple dwellers of the desert, and the more we talked the more friendly became the behavior of my visitors, till at last they asked me why I did not marry one of their daughters and settle among them. On the other side of the river there were encampments of the Imediddiren and Terf₆ntik, and some of the latter paid our hosts a rather abrupt visit, taking away from them a head of cattle, so that the sheikh's nephew, Mohammed ben Khottir, was obliged to cross the river in order to obtain damages from them. The K61-n-Noklinder, who in former times had been greatly ill-used by the free Im6shagh, have been imbued by their protectors, the Kunta, with such a feeling of independence that they are now not inclined to bear even the slightest injustice, and they had certainly some right to demand that, at the very moment while they were treating so large a party belonging to their protector they should not themselves suffer any violence. However, I heard, to my great surprise, that they likewise pay zek'a to the Flilbe, or Fuljin. My friend, who had some trouble in persuading the freebooters from beyond the river to restore the property,
represented them to me as fine tall men, kinsfolk of the Tarabanisa, but very poor. It is really surprising that a family of peaceable men should exercise such an influence over these wild hordes, who are continually waging war against each other, merely from their supposed sanctity and their purity of manners. The interesting character of the locality did not suffice, however, for our material welfare, and my companions made serious complaints on account of the scanty supply of food which they received from our hosts; and for this reason they were almost as eager to hear some news of the sheikh as I myself.

From our former encampment in Ern6sse I had sent my servant, Mohammed el Gatr6ni, into the town in order to procure me a supply of the most necessary provisions, as my former stock was entirely consumed; and it was fortunate, on this account, that I had saved 5000 shells, which I was able to give him for this purpose. He now joined us again in this place on the 14th, and, of course, every one hastened to learn what news he had brought from the town and from the camp of the sheikh. He had arrived in Timbdktu a little before sunset, and, having finished without delay his purchases of the articles wanted by me, immediately hurried away to the camp of my protector; for, as soon as the news of the arrival of my servant had got abroad in the town in conjunction with the return of the sheikh to his camp, the utmost excitement prevailed among the townspeople, who fancied that I myself was returning, and, in consequence, the alarm-drum was beaten. My servant also informed me that the Tawitiye themselves were greatly excited against me, as if I had had any thing to do with the proceedings of the French against Wargela.; and he assured me that, if I had still been in the town, they would have been the first to have threatened my life. He had only slept one night in the camp, and then left early the following morning, and therefore knew nothing about our protector's coming, but he confirmed the fact that there were letters for me. Fortunately, on returning, he had been informed that we had changed our camping-ground, and finding a guide, he had been able to join us without delay. The sunlye of negro-millet fetched at the time, in the market of Timb-iktu, 4500; a large block of salt of about 60 lb. weight, 5000; and k6la nuts, from 80 to 100 shells each. With my limited supply of means it was fortunate that I never became accustomed to the latter luxury.

CHAPTER LXXV.

Wednesday, May 17th. About noon the whole encampment was thrown into a state of the greatest excitement by the arrival of two of the sheikh's followers, who informed us that our friend had not only left the camp, but had even passed us, keeping along the northern border of the swamp which stretched behind our camping-ground. All was joy and excitement, and in an instant my tent was struck and my luggage arranged on the backs of the camels. But we had to take a very roundabout way to get out of this place, surrounded and insulated as it was by deep swamps,
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

for with our horses and camels, together with our heavy luggage, we could not think of crossing the creek which entirely cuts off the downs of U'le-Teharge. We were thus obliged to return all the way to Belesiro, almost as far as our previous fording-place between Amal-lle and Ern-sse. Here, cutting through the swampy plain (which at present at this spot was for the greater part dry) along the localities' called Tin-6ggedad, and farther on Oriken, we at length, having gained firm ground, were able to change our direction to the east along Elfgedd-if and Ewibe. We had just marched three hours when we found ourselves opposite our encampment on the downs, separated from them by the swampy ground of about half a mile in extent.

Uncertain as to the direction which our friend had taken, we now began to rove about, here and there, in search of him; but there was no inducement to tarry long, as, by the breaking up of a great number of encampments of the Tawarek, an innumerable host of small flies had been left in this district without occupation and sustenance, and thus, left destitute of their usual food, greedily attacked ourselves. Leaving then behind us the low downs, which were thickly covered with d-m bush, the resort of a numerous host of guinea-fowl, we entered again low swampy ground, and at length, after having traversed a thickly-wooded district, ascertained the spot whither the sheikh had betaken himself, which was at a place called A'kale, the eminence on the bank of the river being called E'm-aawen. But, when we at length reached it, we found the holy man sleeping in the shade of a siwik, or Capparis, and the noise of our horses, as we came galloping along, was not sufficient to awaken him from his deep slumber. Such was the mild and inoffensive character of this man, in the midst of these warlike and lawless hordes.

Waiting till my protector should rise from his peaceful slumber, I sat down in the shade of a rich siwik, enjoying the faint prospect of my journey home, now opening before me.

At length my friend awoke, and I went to him. He received me with a gentle smile, telling me that he was now ready to conduct me on my journey without any farther delay or obstruction, and handing me at the same time a parcel of letters and papers. There were copies of two letters from Lord John Russell, of the 19th February, 1853; one from Lord Clarendon, of the 24th of the same month; a letter from Chevalier Bunsen; another from Colonel Hermann; and two from her majesty's agent in Fezzin.

A WELCOME PARCEL.

There were no other letters, either from home or from any of my friends; but there were, besides, ten Galignanis, and a number of the Atheneum, of the 19th March, 1853.

I can scarcely describe the intense delight I felt at hearing again from Europe, but still more satisfactory to me was the general letter of Lord John Russell, which expressed the warmest interest in my proceedings. The other letters chiefly
concerned the sending out of Dr. Vogel and his companions, which opened to me the prospect of finding some European society in Bdrnu, if I should succeed in reaching my African head-quarters in safety. But of the expedition to the Tsadda or Bgnuw6, which had started for its destination some time previously to the date of my receiving these letters, I obtained no intimation by this opportunity; and, indeed, did not obtain the slightest hint of that undertaking, of which I myself was to form a part, till December, when it had already returned to England. I thanked the sheikh for having at length put me in possession of these dispatches, but I repeated at the same time my previous remarks, that if he and his friends wanted to have "imidna," or well-established peaceable intercourse with us, security ought first of all to prevail as to our letters, and I was assured that this parcel had been lying in A'zawid for at least two months. But the sheikh excused himself, stating that one of the chief men in that district, probably the chief of the B'rabfish, had kept them back under the impression that they might contain something prejudicial to his country; an opinion which, of course, could not fail to be confirmed by the proceedings of the French in the southwestern districts bordering upon Algeria. But, altogether, the history of this parcel was marvelous. It had evidently come by way of Bôrnu; yet there was not a single line from the vizier, who, if all had been right, I felt sure would have written to me; moreover, the outer cover had been taken off, although the seal of the inner parcel had not been injured. But the reason, of which I, however, did not become aware till a much later period, was this, that, before the parcel left Sokoto, the news of the execution of the vizier had already reached that place, when the letter addressed by that person to myself was taken away, and probably also something else which he had sent for me. But it moreover happened that the man who was commissioned to convey the parcel to Tim!Uiktu was slain by the .G6beriwa, or Mariadiwa, on the road between Gando and Say, at a moment when the packet was by accident left in the hands of a companion of his, who, pursuing his route in safety, took it to A'zawid. But the death of the principal bearer of the letters addressed to me, in all probability, contributed not a little to confirm the rumor of myself having been slain near Maridi. However, at that time, and even much later, I had no idea that such rumors were current in the quarter which I had left.

Thursday, May 18th. It was with a very pleasant feeling that I at length found myself in the company of my noble host, again pursuing my journey eastward; and I enjoyed the peculiar features of the country with tolerable ease and comfort. The varied composition of our troop, among whom there were several well-disposed friends, afforded also much relief. The country was the same that I had already traversed; but it presented some new features, as we followed another path. I was principally struck with the enormous size of the "reten," or broom, which here assumed the proportions of considerable trees of more than twenty feet in height, while the siwik, or Cappari sodata, was in great abundance.
Having rested, after a march of about ten miles, in a dense part of the forest, which is said to be frequented by lions, we pursued our march in the afternoon; when, proceeding along the swampy creek of Barkinge, which was now almost dried up, and passing Tautilt, we pitched our tents a little beyond the former imaz-gh of the chief W6ghda, near a camp of the Weid-Moldk. The branch of the river at this spot was at present so shallow, that a flock of sheep was seen fording it toward the island; water-fowl, also, and especially such birds as live upon fish, were in immense numbers. Crocodiles were seen in abundance, and caused us some anxiety for the horses, which were pasturing on the fine rank grass at the border of the river.

The Tawirek having now left the banks of the river, the black natives seemed to be more at their ease, and several boats belonging to the Songhay crossed over to us from the island of K6ra. I had seen the male portion of the Arab tribe of the Wel-d-Molik on a former occasion, but I here, for the first time, saw their wives and daughters, who, attracted by curiosity, came in the evening to catch a glimpse of the Christian stranger, and were roving about my tent, but I did not observe a single attractive person among them, and, feeling rather sleepy, paid but little attention to them.

Friday, May 19th. While the other members of our troop kept more inland, I followed the bank of the river, which here, with its fine open sheet of water, presents a highly interesting aspect, till I reached our old camping-ground at Iz6beren, from whence I had some difficulty in rejoining my friends, for the whole of this part of the river is full of backwaters and creeks, which renders the communication rather difficult to people who are not well acquainted with the character of the country, but on this very account they afford rich pasture-grounds after the river has begun to decrease. Unfortunately, even now, when we had finally entered upon our journey, the dilatory character of my host remained unaltered, and, after a march of seven miles, we halted near a small encampment of the K6l-n-Nokidnder, professedly as if we were to start again in the afternoon, but in reality in order to pass the night there. However, I was glad that we had at least gone beyond the place which we had reached on ourformer abortive start.

The locality was adorned with some luxuriant specimens of duw6 and the tagelilet, or agito. Under one of these fine trees, the dense foliage of which almost reached the ground, I passed the heat of the day in friendly conversation with some of the peaceable Tolba, who came to have a chat with me on religious topics. When the cool of the evening set in I pitched my tent near the bank of the open branch of the river, which was girt by a fine border of rank grass; but the river was here broken, and did not present that noble character which I was wont to admire in it.

Saturday, May 20th. We were to start at a very early hour, but the difficulty of making out the right path among these numerous swamps and creeks kept us back till all our companions were ready. We then had to turn round a very difficult
swamp, which had now begun to dry up, and where we observed the first traces of the wild hog that I had hitherto seen along this part of the Niger. After we had left this swamp behind us, the river exhibited its truly magnificent character, and we proceeded close along the border of its limpid waters, on a beautiful sandy beach, our left being shut in by high sandy downs, richly clad with ddm palms and tageliet.

It was here, for the first time, that I observed the traces of the zangway. This animal appears to be quite distinct from the crocodile, and perhaps resembles the American igwana. It is much smaller than the crocodile; and its footprint indicated a much broader foot, the toes being apparently connected by a continuous membrane. Unfortunately I never obtained a sight of the animal itself, but only observed its footprints in the sand: it attains, as it seems, only to the length of from six to eight feet.

The well-defined character of the river, however, did not last long, and again there succeeded the low swampy shore, which occasionally obliged us to keep at a greater distance from the main trunk, while the vegetation in general was abundant. The predominant tree in this district, also, was the siwik, or Capparis, which, with its small berries, which were just ripening, afforded us occasionally a slight refreshment. They can however, only be taken in small quantities, as they have a very strong taste, like pepper, and on this account are much pleasanter when they are dried, in which state they afford a not inconsiderable portion of the food of the nomadic inhabitants of these regions. Besides the siwik, or "t淡水," there was also a great quantity of "retem," which is here called atirkit, or isabay; farther on dim palms became very prevalent.

Leaving, then, the locality called Tahnt on our left, we reached a very large grassy creek, which was enlivened by herds of cattle, and encamped on its border, in the shade of a dense belt of fine trees, woven together by an immense number of climbing plants. The whole bottom of the valley was at least seven hundred yards wide, and behind a smaller strip of water a larger open branch was observed, intersecting the rich grassy valley. It is very remarkable that neither the Imfoşaghe, or Tawfirek, nor the Arabs, have, as far as I am aware, a name sufficiently expressive for these shallow vales; the Arabs in general calling an open creek of water "rejl," or "&I kr," and a less open one "bot-hi ;" while the Tawrek call them in general an arm, properly a leg, of the river, or "Adar-n-eghrfr-u ;" but the native Husa name "ffiddama" is far more significant. It was on this account that Cailif called the whole of these shallow creeks by the corrupted Jolof name, "marigot."

Close behind our encampment the ground formed a slight slope, and presented the site or tazmbut of a former Songhay place called Hendi-kfr, a place which is perhaps identical with Kambakfri, mentioned in the history of Songhay as the spot where a dreadful battle was fought between two rival pretenders.* It is difficult to imagine the different aspect which this country must have presented in former times, when all the favorable sites formed
E'M-N-KURIS.

the seats of flourishing dwelling-places, and animated intercourse was thronging along the track on the side of the river. It was a fine halting-place, characteristic of the whole nature of this region; but the ants were very numerous, and disturbed us greatly during our short halt.

After resting for about four hours we pursued our march eastward, keeping for the first mile close along the bot-hi, which soon changed its character to a considerable open sheet of water. Leaving then this water, and crossing several smaller grassy creeks, and traversing a low sandy ridge, we reached another large backwater; and winding along it in a southeasterly direction, through bushes and dm palms, we reached, after a march of about six miles, an interesting sandy headland called E'm-n-kdris, situated at the point where the creek joins the river, which here forms a fine sweep, changing its course from a westerly to a southerly direction.

On this open sandy promontory we chose the spot for our night's quarters, opposite an encampment of the K6l-antsir, which was situated on the other side of the creek, and enlivened by dm palms. The river itself formed a fine open sheet, broken only by a small island, and, being animated by several boats, exhibited a grand spectacle. There was a good deal of consultation in the evening between the elders, or amaghir, of the K61-antsir and my protector, with regard to the course to be pursued under the present political circumstances of the country, these poor people scarcely knowing which party to follow amid the general confusion which prevailed. I learned on this occasion that the I'gelid, to whom the tribe of the K6l-antsir belongs, have three learned chiefs or judges, the most respected of whom, El Tiher, lives at RA's el mi. The night which we passed here on a rising ground just over the stream was beautifully fresh, while the elevation caused us to be exempt from the plague usual in these swampy lowlands.

Sunday, May 21st. While we were breaking up our encampment and loading our animals, the opposite camp of our friends was enlivened by numerous herds of sheep and goats, and we should have made a very interesting day's march, as we were now approaching a better-inhabited district, if it had not been for the hospitable treatment of our hosts, who, in order to satisfy their numerous visitors, had probably, the preceding night, mixed together all sorts of milk, so that almost all the people were seriously ill; and

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

the first part of our march presented so distressing a spectacle that most of my companions thought the milk had been poisoned.

Thus we passed a remarkable locality on a rising sandy bank behind a considerable creek, which by its name, Tamizgda, evidently indicates the site of a former dwelling-place, and is probably identical with the Tirka (or rather Tirekka) of Arab geographers,* if that identity does not apply to Ghgrgo. Having passed
this place, we followed the shallow water, which gradually widened, being intersected by fences and dikes for the purpose of cultivating rice and catching fish. Larger trees became gradually more scanty, indicating our approach to a still existing dwelling-place, as is generally the case in Negroland, the trees being consumed for fire-wood; but just as we came in sight of this place, which is Ghgrgo (pronounced Rgrgo), in order to avoid the heat during the midday hours, on an almost unprotected shore, we thought it better to halt in the shade of the last trees. I myself found shelter under the densely-woven foliage of a fine group formed by the union of a g6za with an aghel1, where I had nothing better to do than to treat all my people with tea and coffee, in order to restore their wasted spirits and strength, as they had suffered greatly from their last night's diet.

Our road from this point to the town led along the border of the swampy lowlands, following a great many windings round the indented shore of the creek. Thus we reached, after a march of a little more than two miles, the bank opposite the village of Ghgrgo, and began looking about for some time for a fit place to encamp, for the village itself, situated as it is behind a large backwater, could not be reached. The opposite shore is exceedingly bleak and unbroken, being destitute even of bush, while only three isolated trees dotted the ground for a great distance, and these were unfortunately too far off from the ford, where we chose our camping-ground, to be of any use to us during our stay.

Gh6rgo is a place not without interest, and seems to be of considerable antiquity. According to tradition, it is stated to be seven years older than Timbutu, or Timbfiktu, and seems therefore well deserving of a right to be identified with one of the celebrated centres of life in these regions in the first dawn of historical rec* See the highly interesting account of this place, the great commercial entrep6t between Ghana in the west and Tademekka in the east in El Bekri, "Ddscription de l'Afrique," p. 180. The express mention of the ants which he here makes is very important, as, in coming from Timbdktu, the first ants were observed by us near Hendi-kdri.

438

GHE'RG'O.

ord. It was originally situated on the main, occupying an eminence a little to the east of our encampment, till, in more recent times, the weakened and unprotected inhabitants were obliged to retire behind the backwater from fear of the Tawirek. Certainly, the insular nature of their dwelling-place is of a rather indistinct character; for, in general, with the exception of those years when the inundations of the river reach an extraordinary height, as had been the case this year, the smaller branch dries up to such an extent that a person may enter the place without wetting his feet; but this happens at a season when their tormentors, the Taw-rek, leave the banks of the river and retire inland, so that they suffer but little from them. This year the high state of the inundation had inspired them with so much confidence that they had refused their boats to the tibu, or the army of their great liege lord himself. The river had risen to such an elevation that it had reached their very huts, which, separated into three distinct groups, are situated on a slightly rising ground.
The inhabitants, even in the present reduced state of the country, raise a good deal of rice and tobacco, though the cultivation ought to be much more extensive, if we consider the wide expanse of the low swampy ground which is reached by the inundation. The river, indeed, is at such a distance, that it is not seen at all, being hidden behind the sandy downs which form its inner bank. But it is remarkable that the nutritious grass, the bfrgu, which I have so repeatedly mentioned, was almost wanting here, and the cattle of the village were obliged to be driven to a great distance, so that, notwithstanding the richness of the pasturegrounds in general, I was in want of milk.

We remained here the following day, and after a very cold morning, which seemed rather remarkable in the month of May, I took a walk up the gradually rising downs, which partly consisted of sand and gravel, partly exhibited a more stony character, and, contrasted with the wide green valley of the river, presented a bleak desert scenery with undulating ground toward the north, clad with nothing but isolated tufts of dry herbage. From the higher ground I had an interesting view over the whole village, situated in the midst of swampy creeks and bordered on each side by a solitary tree. I counted from this point about 350 huts.

On returning from my walk to our encampment I found a great number of the inhabitants of the place assembled, and, after they had paid their compliments to the sheikh, anxiously looking out for the stranger in order to obtain his blessing also. But I did not find them sufficiently interesting to have much intercourse with them, for they have very little of that noble independent carriage which distinguishes, in such an eminent degree, their southeastern countrymen; and their stature, as well as their features, seemed to indicate plainly a very strong intermixture with M6si slaves. It is not improbable that the whole indigenous population of this northern bank of the Niger originally belonged to the race of the Tombo. Most of these people wore closely fitting white shirts and trowsers, both made of a broad kind of cotton strip, or t−ri, of very coarse texture, while their head is generally encircled with a very rugged and poor turban, if we may so call it, of the same material, only a few of them being dressed in a more decent style. They had a good deal of butter, but dared not sell it, through fear of the Taw−rek. I was not a little surprised at the large species of geese which they were breeding.

Tuesday, Hay 23d. We started in the cool of the morning, keeping close to the border of the swampy creek, which gradually becomes narrower, while the principal trunk of the river approaches. After a march of about a mile and a half we receded a little into the desert, which exhibited an immense number of footprints of the giraffe, generally three or four together. Here the vegetation was rather scanty, the ground in general being covered with nothing but low bushes; but, after we had approached a small ridge of sandy downs, we crossed a hollow, which, being the dried−up ground of a pond, or dhaye, was surrounded with dilm bush and tobacco−grounds.

We had been joined some time previously by a chief of the K6t−antsir, who invited us to spend the hot hours of the day with him. We therefore halted at an
early hour by the side of his encampment, which was situated on a promontory close beyond the rich vale whence the district was called "ershar;" Kiftebe and Tirashft we had left on one side. The people slaughtered a whole ox, and sent us a great many dishes of rice and sour milk. The whole tribe of the K6l-antsir is rather numerous, numbering upward of 1000 fall-grown men, but they are scattered over a wide extent of country, reaching from G6g6 to Ris el mi, and even into the interior of Taginet, the district between Timbiiktu and A'zawa'd. We had intended to pitch our tent here, but we found the ground so extremely dry and hard that it would not hold the pegs.

440

HOSPITALITY OF THE K6L-ANTSAR.

Soon after starting in the afternoon, on descending from the eminence we had a fine view of the river, two branches of which united behind an island. But the scenery soon changed, and, leaving the river at some distance, proceeding first over sandy ground, and then crossing a large backwater which was at present tolerably dry, and following a large herd of cattle that were returning from their pasture-grounds, we reached another considerable Amazagh of the K6l-antsar, and encamped between them and the green swampy shore of the river. The place is called Zir-ho, but in the river* lies the island of K-irkozAy, which has obtained a kind of celebrity on account of a sanguinary battle which was fought there thirty-five years previous to the time of my visit, between the Tawrek on the one side, and the Songhay and Erma, or Rumi, on the other. The people here seemed to be very rich in cattle, and supplied us with an enormous quantity of fresh milk.

Wednesday, May 24th. While we were loading our camels, the sky was overcast with thick clouds, and heavy rain evidently fell in A'ribmnda, while with us the strong wind prevented the clouds from discharging their contents. I have repeatedly remarked upon the quantity of rain that falls on the southern side of the river compared with the northern. Dry as the country here appeared to be, we this day became more than ever entangled among the numerous backwaters which make the passage along the river so difficult, although they afford the richest pasturage to the cattle. The fault was that of our guide, who directed our course too far south from east, till, on becoming aware of our error, we had to cross two very considerable grassy creeks, the first having three and a half feet of water, and the last being still deeper. The tall rank grass of the blrgu entangled the feet of the horses, and caused them to fall, to the great discomfiture of their riders.

Having at length succeeded in crossing this double creek, we had still to traverse another grassy inlet, joining it from the north side, after which, all these swampy lowlands, uniting together, formed a very extensive fiddama, at the broadest part about two or three miles wide, the whole surface of the water being covered with water-lilies (Nymphcea Lotus). Beyond this extensive backwater, on a grassy island of the river, lies the hamlet Tabilit, and at a short distance from it another Adabay, of the name of A'baten. Here the extensive backwaters after a little

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
while cease, and allow the river itself to approach the sandy downs, which in this spot rise to a considerable height. They thus afforded myself and the sheikh's nephew a fine view over the river, which here forms a "large island," designated by this very name, "autel-makkfren," or "imakkfren;" it often forms the camping-ground for Tawarek tribes. The sandy downs, however, soon gave way to swampy backwaters, the indented outline of which gave to our march a very indistinct direction, and formed a remarkable contrast to the dreary rising ground on our left. The difficulties, however, after a while became more serious than ever, for we suddenly found ourselves on a narrow dike, destined to keep back the water for the cultivation of rice, situated in the midst of a swamp. For the people of Timbiktu, who were brought up in the swampy grounds, were not aware of any difficulty until we approached the opposite shore, when we found that the dike was intersected by a narrow channel, over which it was dangerous to leap our horses; and although my own horse accomplished the feat with success, many of the others refused to do so, so that most of the people preferred making their way through the swamp. As for myself, it was highly interesting to me thus to become aware of all the various features of this whole formation, although, for the sake of comfort, we ought to have kept farther inland.

When we at length left this swampy ground behind us, every thing bore testimony to the fact that we were approaching another little centre of life in this neglected tract, which, from a certain degree of civilization, has almost relapsed into a state of total barbarism. Dikes made for the cultivation of rice, and places where the brugu, the rank grass of the river, was passed through a slight fire in order to obtain honey from the stalks thus deprived of the small leaves, were succeeded by small fields of tobacco and wheat. Nay, even barley was seen, an almost unheard of article in the whole of these regions. Meanwhile, the deep channels made for irrigating these grounds showed a degree of industry which I had not seen for a long time. At present, of course, they were dry, the stubble of the wheat and barley alone remaining in the fields, irrigation being employed only during the highest state of the river, when the water closely approaches these grounds. Here, where an open branch of the river was seen dividing into two smaller arms, we obtained a view of the town of Bimba, or rather of its date palms, which waved their feathery foliage over 442

APPROACH TO BA'MBA.

a sandy promontory. However, the sky was by no means clear. Soon we reached this spot, and I was highly delighted at seeing again some fine specimens of the date palm, having scarcely beheld a single one since leaving Kan6. The trees on the western side of the village are formed into groups, and in their neglected state, with the old dry leaves hanging down from under the fresh ones, formed a very picturesque spectacle. On the east side, also, where we were encamped, close to a magnificent tamarind, were two tall, slender specimens of this majestic tree; but altogether there were scarcely more than forty full-grown date palms. They are said to furnish a good kind of fruit, but, not having tasted them myself I can not give an opinion as to their quality.
The village at present consists of about two hundred huts, built of mattings, and oval shaped; for, besides a small mosque, there are only two or three clay buildings, or rather magazines, one of which belongs to Bibi Ahmed, a younger brother of the Sheikh el Bakiy, who generally resides here; at present, however, he was absent.

Such is the condition of this place at present; but there can not be any doubt that it was of much more importance three centuries ago, as it is repeatedly mentioned in the history of Songhay; and its situation—at a point where the river, from having been spread, at least during a great part of the year, over a surface of several miles, is shut in by steep banks, and compressed at the narrowest point to from 600 to 700 yards—must have been of the highest importance at a time when the whole of the region along this large navigable river was comprised under the rule of a mighty kingdom of great extent, and even afterward, when it had become a province of Morocco.

This was evidently the reason why the place was fortified at that time, and probably it had formerly a strong fortress, constantly occupied by a garrison, which accounts for the Tawirek, even at the present day, calling the whole place by the name of K6sba. It also serves to explain the fact that the whole population of the village, even at the present time, consists of Rumi, the progeny of the musketeers who conquered this province for the Emperor of Morocco. But, while in former times they were the ruling race, at present they drag on a rather miserable existence, the protection of the Kunta being scarcely sufficient to defend them against the daily contributions levied upon them by the overbearing rulers of the desert. A short time previously the chief Sad6ktu had driven away almost all their cattle.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

While awaiting the camels I sat down on a cliff overhanging the steep bank, which here was about twenty-five feet in height, and enjoyed the splendid view over that great watery high road of West Central Africa. The waves of the river were raised by a strong wind, and offered considerable resistance to some light boats endeavoring to reach the opposite shore. My companions soon observed the interest which I took in the scene, and my amiable friend, the sheikh's nephew, joined me here to enjoy the pleasant prospect. He was glad to find that, since we were fairly proceeding on our journey, my mind had become far easier and more cheerful. He often spoke with me about my happy return to my native country, and I expressed to him the wish that he might accompany me, and witness for himself some of the achievements of Europeans. He had been to this place several times before, and had always taken great interest in the difference in the nature of the river, which, from spreading out over flat, swampy shores, with numerous backwaters, with a few exceptions, here becomes compressed between high banks; and he again repeated to me his account of the great narrowing of the river at T6saye, where a stone might easily be thrown from one bank to the other, while, at the same time, the river was so deep that a line made from the narrow strips of a whole bullock's skin was not sufficient to reach the bottom.
While thus cheerfully enjoying the interesting scenery we were joined by several Rumi inhabitants of the village, who rather disturbed our silent contemplation. But their own character was not wholly uninteresting, for several of them were distinguished from the common Songhay people by the glossy lustre and the lighter hue of their skin; their features also were more regular, and their eyes more expressive. All of them wore, as an outward token of their descent, a red bandage about two inches wide over the shawl which covered the upper part of their face, and a leathern belt hanging loose over the right shoulder, ready to be fastened round the waist at the first signal of danger. Several of them were also distinguished by their better style of dress, which betokened a greater degree of cleanliness and comfort. As for smoking, all the inhabitants along the shores of this great river seemed to be equally fond of it. The pipe is scarcely ever out of their mouth. While smoking they keep their mouth covered, after the fashion which they have learned from the Tawirek. The head of the pipe sticks out from below the shawl.

SIM MOHAMMED'S FAMILY.

At length the camels arrived. They had been called back by mistake from the upper road which they were pursuing into the difficult swampy ground which we ourselves had traversed. A large comfortable dwelling of matting, or "bdge," as it is called, was erected on the sand-hills for the sheikh and his companions; but I had my tent pitched near the fine group of date palms, and from this point I made the subjoined sketch, which will impart to the reader a tolerably correct idea of the place.

Here we remained the following day, when I was roused at a very early hour by the crowing of the cocks in Bimba, which could not but recall to my mind the fate of the enterprising but unfortunate Mungo Park, who is said by the natives to have staid here a couple of hours in order to provide himself with fowls, and thus to have given leisure to the Tawirek, lower down the river, to collect together and impede his passage; a story which is also related with regard to Gog6 and some other places along the river, though it is more probable that his chief reason for making a halt near the principal places along the river was to open communication with the natives, and more particularly in order to make astronomical observations.

Rising at an early hour, while the sky was beautifully clear, I enjoyed an hour's pleasing reverie on my favorite rock of the previous day, overhanging the river. Although in full agitation the day before, this morning its surface was unruffled, and several boats were crossing over toward the island.
I afterward called upon my protector. One of his younger brothers, Sidi I'lemin, had the preceding day come to pay him a visit as he was passing through this country, and when I was ascending the sandy hill, on the slope of which their matting dwelling had been erected, he came out to meet me, and complimented me in a very cheerful manner. He was a respectable man, with a very pleasing countenance, and had with him his son, a most beautiful boy of seven years. I could not help thinking what a noble family this was. They were all sons of Sidi Mohammed el Kuiati, the chief who received Major Laing in A'zawid. First, Mukhtdr, Bakiy's elder brother, who succeeded to his father when that chief had succumbed to an epidemic fever which raged in A'zawid, just at the time of Major Laing's arrival, and who died in 1847; then Sidi Mohammed, a man with a truly princely demeanor; then El Bakiy himself; next, 'Abidin, likewise well deserving the distinguished position of a chief, although he differed in politics from El Bakfy; then Himma, a man with whom I did not become personally acquainted, but who was represented by all as a noble man; Sidi I'lemin; B6b6 A'hem; and Sidi A'mmer. This latter is the youngest, but certainly not the least noble of the family. While on a visit to S6koto, together with his brother, El Bak'y, he made a deeper impression upon the people and obtained their favor more generally than his elder brother. A'lawite is the only member of this family who, with the exception of his learning, does not seem to contribute much to its honor; but, even in his case, we must take into account the customs of the country, and not judge of him according to our views of nobility.

The light dwelling which had been erected for my protector, simple as it was, was spacious and elegant, affording a very cool resting-place during the heat of the day. It was of an oblong shape, measuring about 20 feet by 9, with two doors opposite each other, a large angreb forming a comfortable resting-place. The mats of which these huts are constructed are very large and excellently woven, the huts being supported by a frame-work of slender bushes. But the hut, although very pleasant, was too crowded, and, during the hot hours of noon, I retired to a group of magnificent gerredh-trees which overshadowed the cemetery, lying at the southern side of the village, and, interwoven by a dense growth of creepers, afforded a most agreeable shade, such as I had never before observed in the case of this tree. Together with the adjoining tobacco-fields, which were just exhibiting their fresh green, this cemetery formed a striking contrast to the barren country farther north, which, although broken by a dhaye, or pond, of considerable size, and excellently adapted for the cultivation of rice, has neither trees nor bushes, with the exception of two or three isolated date palms surrounding the border of the pond.

We had considerable difficulty in obtaining from the inhabitants a small supply of rice and butter, as they asserted that their means were so reduced that they were sustaining themselves entirely on bfrgu, or native grass; but I had reason to suspect that they made this statement through fear of the Tawirek. At all events tobacco was the only article they offered for sale, the tobacco of Bimba, called
"sherikfye," being far-famed along the Niger and much sought after, although it is not so good as the

THUNDER-STORM.

"ttibow6," the tobacco of E'gedesh. Ofbyrgu they have an unlimited supply; and I tasted here the honey-water which they prepare from it, but found it insipid, besides being slightly purgative, not unlike the maddi, or göreba water, in Husa.

CHAPTER LXXVI.
THE DESERT.-COUNTRY ALONG THE BORDER OF THE RIVER.

A SLIGHT fall of rain, and then a thunder-storm, which, however, passed over our heads without discharging itself, delayed our departure in the afternoon, and, the camels having been sent to a great distance for a little pasture, it was past five o'clock when we left our camping-ground. A numerous crowd of Rumi, Songhay, and I'meshagh having assembled to witness my departure, I distributed a good many small presents among them, reserving the few articles of value which I still possessed for mightier chiefs.

Having crossed, after a march of two miles, a backwater much overgrown with grass, and at present almost dry, we had the faddama or bot-hi of the river close on our right, while the open water was at about an hour's march distance. Here a considerable amount of cultivation was seen, a good many grounds for corn and tobacco being laid out and connected with the river by channels, through which the water, during the highest state of the inundation, approached closely, and rendered irrigation very easy; but, unfortunately, a heavy thunder-storm, rising in a tremendous battery of clouds, and enveloping the whole country in a dense mass of sand, did not allow of any exact observations being made. The many channels which here intersected our road proved a disagreeable hinderance in our 'hurried march, and although the clouds passed by without bringing any rain, yet darkness set in before we had reached our destination, and, to my great disappointment, prevented my noticing the whole character of the district.

But the inconvenience soon increased when we entered upon the swampy, grassy border of the river; for, although a small fire, on the dry shore to our left, held out to my companions, who were traveling almost without supplies, the prospect of a rather poor supper, a long line of fires in the midst of the river promised them better fare. Without regarding, therefore, the difficulties of the ground and the darkness of the night, we made straight for them. My friends were not even deterred when we reached a narrow dike scarcely fit for one horse, and in great decay, and which the guide declared to be the only path leading through a sheet of water separating us from the encampment. Thus we boldly entered upon this dike, but we had only proceeded a few hundred yards when it was pronounced, even by these people, so well accustomed to an amphibious life, to
be totally impracticable, so that we were obliged to retrace our steps. While engaged in this most dangerous proceeding, my servant, the Gatrôni, met with a serious accident, falling, with his horse, down the dike into the water; and although, with his native agility, he succeeded in extricating himself, with a few contusions, from his unpleasant situation, we had great difficulty in getting the horse out from the hollow into which it had fallen, my companions asserting that it was dead, and wanting to leave it behind. At length we got away from the dike, and, finding a ford through the water, we reached the encampment, which was pitched on a narrow neck of grassy land, and completely dazzled us with the glare of its many fires, coming, as we did, out of the darkness. From the opposite side of the river, two hamlets of Songhay, called Inzdmmen and Takankôimte, were visible likewise by their fires.

The encampment belonged to some K41 e’ Siik, who manifested a rather thievish disposition; and, although not altogether inhospitable, they were unable to treat my companions well, as in the swampland there was an entire want of fire-wood. It was one of those encampments which contributed in a great measure to ruin my health, partly in consequence of the heavy dew which fell during the night. Meanwhile my servant, who was a most faithful person, was searching the greater part of the night for his pistols, which in his fall he had lost in the swamp.

Friday, May 26th. While my companions still lagged behind in order to indemnify themselves for their lost supper by a good breakfast, I set off at a tolerably early hour, in order to get out of the swampland; and, fearing lest we might again be entangled in these interminable low grounds, we kept at a considerable distance from the river, over the gentle sandy downs, bare at first, but afterward clad with a considerable quantity of dry grass. But some of our companions who overtook us would not allow us to pursue our northeasterly direction, and led us back again to the border of a broad swampland sheet of water, which is called Terirart.

TERA’RART, NORTHERNMOST CREEK.

and at this spot formed a shallow water full of water-plants and geese, but gradually widening to a very extensive swamp, which again increased to a large open branch. The river, however, which was now almost at its lowest level, must present a very different aspect during the highest state of the inundation, when the downs of snow-white sand, which at present separated the principal trunk from the swamp, must appear like a narrow sand-bank in the midst of the water. Behind these downs, but separated from the main branch by a smaller creek, called "the false river," Eghfru-n-biho, lies the hamlet E’gedesh, which at the present season was deserted, the inhabitants being scattered over the islands in the river. The three villages Garbime, E’m-n-Tab6rak, and Nsh6rifen, are situated on its opposite southern bank.

Exchanging at this remarkable spot our east-northeasterly direction for an east-southeasterly one, we encamped, after a march of three miles and a half, in the shade of a dense belt of underwood which girded its shores, and after a short time we were here joined by El Bakiy. A little more than a mile beyond this place, at the downs called Ghadfr, this large backwater joins the river, and here, when we
pursued our march in the afternoon, we ascended for a while a higher level, consisting of sandstone rock in a state of great decomposition; but after a march of three miles, again descended to its shores, the river being here full of green islands, with plenty of fine cattle. Two miles farther on, we encamped in a place called Tewilaten, or Stewflaten, at the side of a rather poor encampment of the K6l-Tebank6rit. Notwithstanding their poor condition, the people slaughtered two oxen on our behalf.

I had this day still farther cause to feel satisfied that we were traveling along the north, and not along the south side of the river; for while we ourselves had but a slight shower, besides summer lightning the whole of the evening, in the course of the afternoon a considerable fall of rain took place beyond the river in A'riblna. Before we started I began conversing with the people of the encampment (the chief of whom, a man of renowned valor, is called Hammaliti) in a cheerful manner; whereupon they praised me as an excellent man, but made, at the same time, the candid avowal that the preceding night, when I did not speak a word, they felt a great antipathy toward me.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Having proceeded at a tolerable rate as far as this place, we here once more relapsed into our usual slow mode of progress; and after a short march of scarcely three miles over a ground strewn with pebbles and small stones, and clad only with scanty vegetation, we encamped close to the steep bank which descended toward the river opposite the island of Zamgoy, for here we were told was the residence of Sadiktu, the chief who had levied such heavy contributions upon the inhabitants of Bimba. As the country itself did not present any features of interest, it was some recompense to me for the delay we met with in this place that the character of the river was remarkable; and, in order to enjoy it as much as possible, I prepared myself a resting-place on the slope of the bank, which was thickly overgrown with small trees.

It is here that the beginning of the rocky district through which the river takes its course is first perceptible. The western end of a small island is entirely surrounded by large granite blocks, which have given to the island the remarkable name of Tah6ntn-6ggish, clearly indicating that even the natives themselves regard this place, for him who comes down the river, as the "entrance-rock," or the beginning of the rocky district.

The island of Zamgoy lies nearer to the southern shore, and seems to be of considerable extent, densely clothed with trees, and containing a small hamlet or ddbay. Besides the view of the river, and a walk now and then over the desert ground in our neighborhood, where I observed the ruins of some stone dwellings, I had plenty of occupation during this and the three following days which we remained here in conversing with the natives.

Sadiktu himself was very unwell, and greatly wanted my medical assistance; but after I had made him feel the efficacy of my medicines so strongly that he declared every evil to be removed from his body, he did not reward my zeal with so much as a drop of milk. I therefore could not help observing, to the great delight of his subjects, that he was the most niggardly chief I had ever met with.
There were, however, others who were more social and communicative, if not more liberal, than this chief. There was, first, a wealthy and good-looking man of the name of Jemfil, of the K61-Burrum or the people of Burrum, who evidently originate in a mixture of free Songhay people and I'm6shagh, and he himself seemed to unite in a certain degree the qualities of these different nations, while his rich dress and his embonpoint proved that he was not an austere inhabitant of the desert. A great deal

452

THE CHIEF SADA'KTU.

of trouble was caused me by another man of the name of Simsim, the son of Sfdi A'immer, and the eldest of seven brothers, a very rich A'm6shagh, who was totally blind, but who, nevertheless, expected me to restore his sight; and it really seemed as if my friend El Baky confirmed him in this belief, in order to obtain from him some handsome presents for himself. This person also had the stately appearance peculiar to all these easterly Tawdrek, who seem to have enriched themselves with the spoil of the native Songhay population, the latter having in a great measure been reduced by them to the condition of serfs. Almost all of them had a very proud bearing, but nevertheless, upon nearer acquaintance, they proved to be of a very cheerful disposition; and, although of a wild character and of warlike propensities, they have an easy temper, and are not difficult to manage.

The poor inhabitants of Bimba, from whom Saddktu had taken seventy cows and ten slaves, joined us here in the endeavor to recover their property. They earnestly begged me to be the mediator between them and that hostile chief; and I was very glad when, after a good deal of dispute, the chief returned half of the spoil. It was here also that I learned that the whole population of A'fr, under the command of HMj 'Abdiiwa, had gained a great victory over the Dinnik, or Awelfmmiden-wen-Bodhdl, and the Arewan, or Kl-gergs. The tribe of the K61-fadiye enjoy a great name in this region; and it is evident that, in former times, they occupied a much more conspicuous position than they do at present. Even El Bakiy himself had taken a wife from that tribe; and I was also informed here that they lay claim to a descent from sherffs.

We had a storm almost every day during our stay in this place; but, although we ourselves had very little else than a disagreeable sand-wind, there seemed to be a very heavy fall of rain in A'ribfnda. In one of these thunder-storms we nearly lost our camels, which, headed by one of their companions that had lately come from A'zawid, were making straight for that district, their beloved home, and had proceeded a distance of some miles before they were overtaken.

Wlednesday, -May 31st. At length we pursued our journey, but only for a short march of two hours; and I was so disgusted at the repeated delays and sham traveling, that I prayed earnestly that the Almighty would speedily deliver me from this sort of bondage. Throughout our march, the bare desert, here consisting

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
of stony ground, torn by many small channels, closely crept up to the fertile bed of the river, where a green swampy lowland girded the present reduced sheet of water. Among the stones with which the ground was covered, fine white and red striped rock was discernible; and I observed another island, with a rocky point, toward the west.

The ground where we encamped was bleak in the extreme, without any shade, although a few hundred yards in front of us there was a fine grove of gerredh; but as these trees adorned a cemetery, my companions, from superstitious motives, were too much afraid to choose that place for their encampment. Although our camping-ground was excessively hot, I was agreeably surprised to find the water of the river so pleasantly cool at a time when the sun was high, and could only attribute this phenomenon to the rocky character of the channel and to its considerable depth. Nevertheless, crocodiles, as well as river-horses, were numerous.

In this unprotected ground we remained not only this, but the following day, although the place was as uncomfortable for the people, who were almost scorched by the heat of the sun, as it was detrimental to the animals, who found nothing to eat here. The sheikh had gone in the morning to visit Sadiktu, in the island of Zamgoy, and from thence did not join us until late in the evening. It was one of the hottest days we had had; and it was here that, about noon, we discovered in my tent a large black, poisonous arachnæa, or spider, the body of which measured almost two inches in diameter, and whose like my companions from Timbktu had never seen. The Tawirek were so disgusted at the sight, that while I was attentively looking at it, after we had killed it, they threw it hastily away with their swords, so that I did not see it again; but they told me that it was the most dangerous and abominable creature to be found in these regions.

The excessive heat rendered a thunder-storm which we had in the afternoon of the second day highly acceptable, especially as the heavy gale was followed by a light rain, which greatly relieved the burning heat of the sandy soil. It was highly amusing to me to observe also, this time, that although a large leathern tent had been pitched for the sheikh, nevertheless, as was always the case when a thunder-storm arose, every body hastened to carry his treasures, especially the saddles and books, under cover of my small European tent, which had now withstood more than four years' exposure to the weather, and was mended and patched in such a manner that the original material was scarcely discernible.

Friday, June 2d. We at length left this place, but only to move on a distance of seven or eight miles, to an encampment of a wealthy man of the name of Sidi I'lem fn, who, although belonging to the tribe of the Fiilbe, was living among the Tawirek, and had been settled in the place for a great many years. The contrast between the open river, bordered by the green grassy lowlands, which at present had been laid bare by the retiring waters, and the bleak desert which closely approached it, was very remarkable, especially a short distance before we reached
the encampment, where an extensive sandy eminence excluded for a while the view of the river, and with a few scattered bushes of the poisonous fernin, and the short herbage called "ellob," made one fancy one's self transported into the heart of the desert.

Along the former part of our road the low shore of the river had been clothed with a profusion of excellent by'rgu, but here there was none, and the poor camels again fared very badly. In the whole of this district along the river, where trees are very scanty, the camel is reduced to the diet of bf rgu, although it by no means agrees with animals accustomed to the food of the young acacia-trees and the dry herbage of the desert. All circumstances considered, my camels were in a very bad condition, and there was good reason for my kind friend and protector looking about for some fresh animals to enable me to reach more favored regions. He therefore determined to set out from this point to the nearest of his "kissib," or herds of camels, while we were to wait for him at a place called Tin-sherifen.

The river, which, in its present state, was about 900 yards from our camp, had here a very shallow, and not at all an imposing appearance, although a few miles below it enters a very rocky district, where it is inclosed by steep banks and broken by islets and cliffs. Four boats were lying on the shore. The place was called Igomaren.

The encampment of Sidi I'lemfn was large, consisting of very spacious leathern tents, where Tawirek and Fiilbe, and some Arabs also, were living together in peaceful community. Although they are tolerably wealthy, they have only asses, and no horses. A good many Tawirek joined us here the day of our arrival, and, while I rewarded the most respectable among them with a small present of some kind or other, I had some difficulty in satisfying a more powerful lord of the name of MWki, the son of Elsa; and found it still more difficult to satisfy his companion, or "6nhad," who, as is very often the case in Europe, raised his pretensions much higher than his master. The blind Simsim also accompanied us to this place, and troubled me not a little with begging a remedy for his blindness. Among other chiefs, there was one whose name seemed to me rather remarkable, as he called himself El I'sfah6ni; but what he or his ancestors had to do with the famous town of I'sfahn I could not make out. Sidi I'lemfn treated us well with a number of large dishes of rice, but the food being prepared without any salt, I was not able to enjoy it, and was the more grateful at being furnished in the evening with a rich supply of milk.

Saturday, June 3d. While my protector directed his steps toward the desert, I, with the greater part of his followers, continued my journey along the banks of the river, which had now almost become a second home to me, and with its many backwaters, islands, and cliffs, afforded me a never-failing source of interest. About half a mile beyond our encampment we passed the site of a former settlement or dwelling-place, after which the sandy downs receded a little from the bank, affording comfortable ground for a good number of Tawirek encampments. Having then left on our right an extensive swampy lowland, which, during the highest state of the river, becomes inundated, we reached the beginning.
of the rocky district, through which the river has to pass. After a very short march, we encamped in a place called Himbermme, on account of the indisposition of my friend Mohammed ben Khotir. The slope where we halted was very handsomely adorned with fine shady taborak, and the river was here free from rocks, being divided into two branches by a low sand-bank, while a mile higher up a mighty ledge of granite rocks projected into the water. But about 1000 yards below our halting-place the river presented a very wild aspect, a considerable rocky island, consisting of immense granite blocks, together with a rocky ledge projecting from the high bank, shutting in half the breadth of the river, and forcing it, with a direction from S. 300 E. to N. 300 W., into a channel of probably not more than 350 yards broad. This remarkable place, where the river, when it is full, must form a very powerful current, is called Tin-ilshiden. The heat of the day having passed by, we continued our march, cutting off the bend of the river over a ground which was at first bare and destitute of vegetation, but after a while became overgrown with stunted taiha-trees, a few siwdk, and a great profusion of retem; till, after a march of two miles, the river again approached on our right, being here free from rocks, and bordered by a grassy lowland richly clad with the famous b-rgu. On our left, a few tobacco plantations gave proof of a certain degree of industry on the part of the natives, although on this side only a nomadic encampment was to be seen, but on the opposite bank a hamlet appeared. The whole of this district belongs to Tinsherffen. As the river takes here a very winding course, meandering along between steep banks, we again left it at some distance on our right, ascending from a low swampy inlet upon higher ground where we passed another Tawirek encampment, and then, as darkness was setting in, we again descended to the green shore, where the river seemed to be obstructed by islands. Parallel with the bank, a shallow grassy swamp stretched along, and from beyond the southern bank, a little higher up, a village was seen. On the largest of the islands, which was at the same time the nearest to our side, was the residence of Kira, the father of a young man named Sila, one of the pupils of El Bak6y. This was the reason why my companions, notwithstanding the darkness of the evening, and although the island was at present separated from the main land by a deep channel, entertained the absurd idea of crossing over to the latter. It was only after much uncertainty, and a great deal of dispute, that we decided upon encamping on the narrow neck between the swamp and the river. In this place we remained the four following days, my protector not returning until the third day, and my patience was again put to a severe trial. But, altogether, the stay here was not so uninteresting, as we received a great many visits from the inhabitants of this and the neighboring districts. First there came Kira, the governor of the island, a stately-looking old man, dressed in a fine white tobe, with a white shawl round his head. Having entered into conversation with
me, he stated, without the subject being brought forward by myself, that about fifty years ago a Christian had come down the river in a large boat with a white tent, and the river being then full, had passed without any accident the rocky passage ahead of us. But he added that the K61-terirart had attacked him at Zamgoy. Park had passed this place in the morning, while he (Kira) was encamped with his people on the sandy downs of A'ribfnda. This chief himself, although he was not at all hospitable, had really something in his demeanor which might indicate a descent from a nobler stock, but the rest of the inhabitants of the island had much the same appearance as the less noble tribes of the Tawirek in general. However, there is no doubt that the name of the whole district, Tin-sherffen, is taken from the supposed origin of these people—from sheriffs. And here in this district, as well as in the neighboring one of Burrum, where the great river, after having made this remarkable bend into the heart of the desert, changes its easterly course into a southeasterly one, we must evidently look for the earliest Mohammedan settlers along the Niger.

I here also first came into more intimate relation with that remarkable tribe the K6l e' Sdk, who seem to deserve a great deal of attention among these nomadic tribes, although I am not yet able to elucidate all the points connected with their history, for they themselves take very little interest in historical facts, and if there exist written records they are not generally known. But this much is certain, that these K6l e' Siik have been so called from a place, Silk, or at least generally called Sdk,* situated at the distance of five days' journey from this point, and six from G6g6, which seems to have been a very considerable place in former times, but was destroyed in the latter half of the fifteenth century by Sonni 'All, the great predecessor of the still greater conqueror H1j Mohammed A'ski. The original name of this place I did not succeed in making out, but it is no doubt that very place which, by El Bekrft and other Arab geographers, after the name of the tribe, has been called Tademkkt, and which, till the middle of the seventeenth century, ruled over this region.

This large and well-built town appears to have been the centre of various tribes, although I can scarcely conceive that my informants were right when they asserted that their ancestors had been living there, together with the Hogar and the K6lowf, as from this statement, if it were true, we should have in this place the reader need not be under the impression that the name "silk" indicates Arabic influence, for the word is of the most extensive Semitic range. El Bekrft, who is the only reliable authority, in the edition of de Slane, p. 181, et seq. The distance of nine days from G6g6, according to El Bekri, is to be regarded as the rate for heavily-laden caravans, corresponding well to six days of light camels or mehira. See the itinerary from Tawit to this place, in the Appendix. Of the (erroneous) derivation of the name of the town, I have spoken on a former occasion. See ante, p. 335.

KHOZE'MATEN.
a much more remarkable example of a community founded by several Berber tribes together than is afforded by the history of A'gades. Be this as it may, the name of Suik has settled upon this tribe, who still form quite a separate body, being distinguished from the neighboring tribes for their learning and peaceable pursuits.

Besides several respectable men of this tribe, I received a visit also from Na'ssaru, a daughter of one of their chiefs named Khozomatfen. She was one of the finest women that I saw in this country. Her decent apparel contributed not a little to increase her beauty, for over her under-gown she wore an upper garment of red and black silk, in alternate stripes, which she occasionally drew over her head. Her features were remarkable for their soft expression and regularity, but her person rather inclined to corpulency, which is highly esteemed by the Tawirek. Seeing that I took an interest in her, she half-jokingly proposed that I should marry her; and I declared myself ready to take her with me if one of my rather weak camels should be found able to support her weight. As a mark of distinction I presented her with a looking-glass, which I was always accustomed to give to the most handsome woman in an encampment, the rest receiving nothing but needles. She returned the next day with some of her relations, who were equally distinguished for their comeliness, and who were anxious to obtain a glimpse of me, not less than of the Sheikh el Bak-y. These noble Tawa'rek ladies furnished a remarkable example of the extreme liberty which the females belonging to this tribe enjoy; and I was greatly astonished to see the pipe pass continually from their mouths to those of the men, and from the latter back again into the mouths of the women. In other respects, I can only hope that they surpass the female portion of the population of Tademekka, of whose virtue El Bekrf speaks in rather doubtful terms.

Less agreeable than the company of these people was the arrival of the blind Simsim, who, it seems, had been rather disappointed in his expectation of having his sight restored, although my friend had contrived to get from him a present of a camel and a female slave. We were here also at length joined by A'hadmed Wad6wi, the principal pupil of the sheikh, whom I scarcely expected to see again; but, being fully aware of the slow and deliberate character of his master, he felt convinced that he could never come too late. Altogether I was glad that he had arrived, for,
him, had been obliged to pursue him to A'ribfnda. He brought the news from Timbiktu that the rebel chief A'khbi, whom we had been unable to persuade to return to his former allegiance, was collecting an army against Alkuittabu.

The whole time of our stay at Tin-sherifen the weather was excessively hot, the heat being felt the more severely, as there was not the slightest shade near our encampment; and as my tent was almost insupportably hot, in order to obtain a little shade I wandered to a considerable distance up the slope which rose behind our encampment, and here lay down under a small h-jilj, or tab6rak. From this spot I had an interesting view over the river, which, on account of its peculiar features, here deserved my full attention, and even more than I was able at the time to bestow upon it. as, in the absence of my protector, my companions were rather anxious about my safety. My young and cheerful friend, Mohammed ben Khottir, was suffering all this time from severe indisposition, so that I had no one to rove about with me. A little lower down, the road recedes from the bank of the river for a short distance, and hence I am not able to lay down the river, between this place and T6saye, with that minuteness of detail which it deserves, in order to facilitate navigation. Under other circumstances, I should have made a special drawing of this remarkable locality on a larger scale; but the assertion of the natives, that Park, in his large boat (his majesty's schooner Joliba), had passed through in December or January without accident, reassured me perfectly. Besides, as I myself had to travel all along the bank of the river by land, I had to take care not to excite too much the suspicions of the natives.

From this spot I had a clear prospect over the point where the river, issuing forth from between the islands, is shut in by two

THE RIVER AT TIN-SHERIFEN. .

masses of rock, called, I think, Shabdr* and Barr6r, which obstructed it like a sort of iron gate, although the passage between them, especially at high water, appeared to be open and clear. In summer, however, during the lowest state of the river, the difficulty of the navigation is greatly increased by the sand-bank which is formed a little above this strait between the islands and the bank. On the island where the chief Kdla resided, also, a mass of rock, which at times, in the sunlight of the afternoon, appeared like a snow-white boulder of quartz rock, started forth like an artificial terrace. Higher up, the river was encompassed in its winding course by steep banks; but, in one spot, on the opposite shore, where the sandy downs formed a recess, a low grassy headland or island was formed, which at the time was enlivened by numbers of horses, cattle, and sheep, and was adorned by stately trees, especially a fine group of ddm palms; for ddm palms apparently begin to prevail here, and lower down the river are found occasionally in great numbers. The slope itself, from whence I overlooked this scenery, consisted entirely of rock. Quartz and mica slate were visible every where, and an uninterrupted ledge of the latter mineral set right across with an inclination toward east. The evenings were beautiful, and nothing afforded me greater delight than to walk along the fine sandy beach far into the river. During the lowest state of the
water, this beach forms a junction between the main land and the island where Kdla resided.
Our attention was also attracted to some young zangway, the small species of alligator, which every evening raised their cry from the swamp where they were left by their dams. It sounds like the barking of a dog, and it appeared to us as if they were bred purposely in this backwater, in order that they might not fall a prey to some larger animal in the river.

CHAPTER LXXVII.
TO/SAYE, OR THE NARROWING OF THE RIVER.-BURRUM; ANCIENT RELATION TO EGYPT. - GREAT SOUTH-SOUTHEASTERLY REACH.
AT length, in the course of the 8th, my protector returned from his herd of camels, or, as the Arabs call it, "kissib," bringing with
*
I am not quite certain whether Shab6r may not be the name of the island and not of the rock.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
him seven fresh camels. He was accompanied by a nobleman of the country, and a near relative of his, of the name of Sidi 'Ali. Soon after his arrival, he came expressly to ask me whether one of our steam-boats would be able to cross this rocky passage, and I told him that, as far as I had been able to investigate the character of the locality from this point, I thought there was not much difficulty for a small boat or launch, at least during the highest state of the river. In the evening he sent me a small bullock to cut up for our journey, and a short time afterward a camel, in order to supply the place of the most exhausted of my animals, and it now appeared as if we were fully prepared to pursue our journey at a more accelerated rate.

Friday, June 9th. Having taken leave of all the new friends whose acquaintance I had made here, I started at a rather late hour, first keeping along the shore, but, after having proceeded about 1400 yards, turning away, and, with a northeasterly direction, entering the stony slope of the desert plateau, which here consisted of black sandstone in a state of decomposition. At this spot, where I was obliged to keep away from the bank, the great rocky ledge, to which Barr6r belongs, crosses the river. This rock, not being illumined to-day by the sun, exhibited the same black character which is peculiar to the whole locality, and there is no doubt that it intercepts the navigation for larger boats during a great part of the year. The bare rocky slope was succeeded by sandy downs, which surrounded and inclosed small irregular vales, the bottom of which was formed of small black stones. A little farther on we passed the locality called Tin-rissen, where Sadiktu had once vanquished a superior force led by A'khbi, who, notwithstanding the close relation which subsisted between them, had come to attack him. The women, hurrying forth from the encampment, had met their kinsfolk with bare breasts, which they held forth to them as having suckled their kindred, and implored them, for the sake of their near relationship, not to shed the blood of their own kinsmen. But this appeal for mercy being without effect, Sadiktu and his handful of men, inspired with fear for the lives of their wives and children,
and fighting with the courage of despair, had beaten the superior force of his arrogant relation, and killed nine free men of his tribe.

A little more than half a mile beyond Tin-rissen we again reached the river, at that remarkable place called Tosaye, or T6s.

462

ISLAND OF A'DAR-N-HA'UT.

463

where the noble Niger is compressed between steep banks to a breadth perhaps of not more than 150 yards, but of such a depth that, as I have before observed, the bottom has not been found by the natives. Here the sheikh, who, as in general, had slept till late in the morning, overtook us, and seemed much interested when I told him that I thought a small, strong-built steamer might safely cross this obstructed passage, as, in the case of the current being too strong, it might be assisted by chains fastened to the rocks. The locality is of the greatest importance, on account of the intercourse between the desert and the province of Libtiko, as the Arabs of A'zawid in general prefer crossing the river at this point, which, although very deep, is easily passed by the camels and cattle, while in other places they have to swim for miles.

Immediately beyond this narrowing of the river the sandy downs cease, and a low stony level, of black, dismal color, stretched out before us. The river, winding along this tract in a northeasterly bend, and illumined by the dazzling light of the sun, scarcely appeared to be the same large and noble stream which I had admired higher up. The black, stony ground was torn by several small channels, and being only sparingly clad with the sad-looking, poisonous bush, the "fernin," exhibited a very melancholy appearance. But gradually, as we descended from this rough ground upon the green shore, clothed with the rank grass of the bfrgu, the river again began to widen, and to assume its former noble character, while a little farther on a large island, called "A'dar-n-hiut," was formed, separated from the main land by a narrow channel. We encamped opposite the place where the latter again joins the principal branch, and where, in the present low state of the river, a ledge of rock was seen projecting a considerable distance into the water, and numerous isolated cliffs starting forth from their middle course. I chose my campingground a few hundred yards from the shore, among the trees, where we found some shelter during the hot hours of the day; and I even remained here during the following night, although all the people tried to frighten me with the assurance that the lions which infest the neighborhood would not leave a bone of my horses and camels.

We were visited in this encampment by the inhabitants of the opposite island, who, although belonging to the mixed tribe of the Rumi, have a much better appearance than their brethren in

464

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Bimba. Their chief, of the name of Mohammed, was greatly distinguished by his fine glossy skin, his beautiful, black and lively, eyes, and his regular Circassian features. The dress of these people, however, is every where the same-white shirts
of the commonest and coarsest make, sewed together of narrow strips (only persons of higher rank adorn them with a little silk embroidery), and long white trowsers, besides a miserable bandage of native cotton tied round the head, over which some of them wore another bandage of red cloth. All of them had slung over their shoulders the open leathern belt with which they gird their waists in case of emergency. The intelligence of these people seemed very limited, and it was impossible for me to enter into any serious conversation with them. I was, however, fortunately enabled to buy some rice with cotton strips.

Saturday, June 10th. As if I was destined to spend my whole life in this region, we this day only moved on three miles, keeping close along the shore of the river, which here formed several islands, and gradually took a more southerly direction. The whole of this part of the river, the valley of which, including the islands, measures certainly more than three miles in breadth, is called Burrum, and was formerly one of the chief seats of the Songhay. There is a remarkable tradition that a Pharaoh once came from Egypt to this spot, and again returned. This story would at least imply an early intercourse with Egypt, and should not, I think, be viewed incredulously; for, if it had no foundation whatever, it would certainly attach to the capital of the nation itself, and not to a place which possesses no great historical importance. But, on the other hand, it is highly interesting to observe that this is the spot where the great river, which here makes a bend from a west-easterly into a southerly direction, is nearest to Egypt. Let it be farther taken into account that the inhabitants of the oasis of Aijjila, which lies on the great commercial road from Egypt to these regions, were the first who opened this western part of Negroland to the intercourse of the Arabs. The whole history of Songhay points to Egypt; the itinerary of the route of the Nasamones, if rightly constructed, inclines to this quarter; and it is easily to be understood how Herodotus,* on receiving the news that so large a river was running eastward, in such a northerly latitude as nearly 18°, could conceive the opinion that this was the Upper Nile. Even in more modern times, we find

* Book ii., chap. xxxii., r7v 66bv 7ro yvivoc 7rpbr ;ivpov dve/Aov.

SLOW PROGRESS.

Egyptian merchants established from the eleventh century in the town of Bfru, or Walita, side by side with those of Ghadmes and Tafilglet; the principal commerce of Gigho and Kiikia was directed toward Egypt, and the large commercial entrepôt-Sdkof the tribe of the Tadem6kka, about one hundred miles from Burrum, on that great high road, was evidently founded for that purpose. Formerly there were three villages, containing a considerable population, till, about eleven years ago,* the Fdlbe, under the command of 'Abd All6hi, the uncle of the present ruler of M"sina, who at that time was a very energetic and warlike chieftain, made an expedition to this place with about 6000 horse and 20,000 foot, while the whole of the Taw-rek, the Avelimmiden, Igwidaren, and Tadem6kket, collected together near T6ndibi, did not dare to offer them open battle. Destroying, then, those villages of Burrum, the Fdlbe transferred the whole population, consisting of nearly 4000 people, into the neighborhood of Gdindam.
A good deal of rice is here cultivated, the cultivation of that article in this region being said to have proceeded from this very locality, a fact which is of the greatest interest as regards the ancient intercourse with Egypt. Even now, those among the rest of the inhabitants of Burrum who belong to the Tawirek tribe of the Tademekket are distinguished for their wealth and their more refined manners; and I here made the acquaintance of two eminent men among them, named E'nnas and Gedgma, the latter particularly remarkable for his corpulence.

At the place where we chose our encampment, the low grassy shore was greatly compressed, a steep bank of black sandstone rising to about thirty feet elevation close behind us, and forming at the top a flat level, strewn with black pebbles, which, if a person turned his back to the river, offered almost the same view as the most dreary part of the waste; but as soon as one directed one's eyes southward the picture was entirely reversed; a magnificent stream, studded with rich grassy islands and affording the most refreshing breeze, appeared in sight.

The sheikh had so many dealings with the inhabitants of the islands opposite our encampment, that he was obliged to stay here several days; but, in order to satisfy me, he made us move on a little. However, we only proceeded for about the distance of a mile, leaving this steep rocky bank behind us, the ground remaining stony, clad with nothing but small stunted trees. Here we encamped again near the border of the green shore, where alone the soil was soft enough to admit the pegs, opposite a long sandbank, which was the resort of numerous flocks of white waterfowl. Of course this sort of progress did not exactly suit my wishes, and, in order to soothe my discontent, El Bak-y, soon after we had encamped, paid me a long visit, in order to cheer me up, telling me that he had heard that there really had been, as I conjectured myself, a letter from Hij Beshfr, with my parcel, and enumerating those of his pupils, or t6lamid, whom he wanted to send along with me.

There being no stated market-place all along this river, the buying of provisions is sometimes accompanied with a great deal of trouble; and although the only produce of this district is rice, that article is never to be obtained in a prepared state. Nothing but k6kesh, that is to say, rice in the husk, is procurable; and this is a circumstance not to be overlooked by Europeans who attempt the navigation of this river, as they must always be prepared to lose some time in getting ready and cleaning their rice. I here bought the n6fseka of this kind of rice for two dr'a of t-ri, equal to forty shells. Butter fetched twenty dr'a per n6ffeka.

During our two days' stay in this place I received some valuable information from some Arabs of the tribe of the Welil Moluk, who were settled in Aribinda, that is to say, on the southern bank of the river, and kept up a small trade with Libtiko, which is distant from here about ten days' march. The river being here so broad, it did not at all surprise me to hear from these people that, in average years, during the lowest state of the river, it is fordable in several places.
Far more interesting than the visit of these mixed Berbers was that of a man called Mohammed, who, with eight companions, was on his way from G6g6, his native place, to Bimba by water, in a middle-sized boat, thus proving that the water communication between those places was still kept up, notwithstanding the total political ruin of the country, and that, too, at the present season of the year, when the water was at its very lowest. He was a wealthy man, belonging to the mulatto stock of the Rumi, and spoke only Songhay. He also brought me the latest news from the districts farther eastward, and I was glad to hear that, owing to the rebel army of Zab6rma having been beaten by the Governor of Timkala, the road by Say was open.

RIVER BETWEEN STEEP CLIFFS.

Tuesday, June 13th. Having had a thunder-storm during the latter part of the night, with a heavy squall of wind, but without rain, we started at a rather late hour along the grassy shore, which gradually becomes lower, and is filled with numerous small ponds, till, after proceeding a little more than a mile, rocky ground began to rise to the surface on our left. It soon assumed the form of steep cliffs, rising to the height of about 120 feet; but although during the inundation it is closely approached by the river, at present a narrow passage was left along the green shore. A heavy gale raised the waves of the river to a considerable height; but the sky was so overcast and enveloped in fog that nothing of the opposite shore was to be discovered.

Numerous small torrents had intersected the cliffs, while a thick bush of an unknown species lined the foot of them. A little farther on, while slightly decreasing in height, the rocks became more regularly stratified, presenting numerous crevices and caverns.

Having then passed a place where the cliffs formed a deep recess, the low grassy shore extending far into the river, we were obliged to ascend the higher level for a while, an open branch coming close up to the foot of the rocks. We, however, descended again after a little more than half a mile, near two magnificent sycamores, and encamped at 11 o’clock in the midst of a dense growth of ddm bushes, while the sheikh himself pitched his tent on the top of the downs, near an encampment of K6l-tenikse, a division of the K6l e’ Sdik, to whom belonged also another encampment upon an island in the river.

The sandy shore, thickly covered with ddm bush, was represented to us as the retreat of numerous lions, and we were warned not to encamp here; but we preferred exposing ourselves to this slight danger, as the strong wind did not allow us to pitch our tents on the top of the downs. We had scarcely made ourselves comfortable, when a great multitude of people belonging to the different tribes settled in the neighborhood—Tawgrek, K6l e’ Siik, Rum6, and Songhay gathered round us. Many of them had fine features, while others bore distinctly the African character. The K6l e’ Sik, who seemed to presume upon their learning, scanty as it was, brought forward their religious prejudices, and I had a sharp disputation with them.
The whole of this district still belongs to Burrum. The Rumi seemed to have also a hamlet of their own in this tract on an island in the river, and appeared to be tolerably well off. A great deal of rice is cultivated hereabouts. I bought some, and had it pounded by two females, one of whom, during her work, laughed and made merry almost without interruption, while her companion, who was of a more sullen temper, rendered herself guilty of theft, but was caught in the fact. Almost all the slaves of these Tawirek wear nothing but a leathern dress, that of the females consisting only of a long apron, while the males very often provide themselves with a tight shirt or kilt of the same material. From all that I observed, I must conclude that the state of the morals of these Tawarek slaves is very low, particularly those of the K61 e’SU’k. The latter were formerly the inhabitants of fixed settlements on the borders of the desert, where a great deal of foreign commerce centred, and have thence contracted manners which were strange to their origin. But we must remember that, from the most ancient times, prostitution, as a proof of hospitality, has been in practice among various Berber tribes of North Africa.

Wednesday, June 14th. Having staid here during the forenoon, we started late in the day. My protector remained behind in order to settle some business, while I proceeded in advance with the most trustworthy of his pupils, first keeping close along the river, which here seemed to be of considerable depth quite near the shore, but farther on turning away to some distance from it, through the plain, which was here well clad with small talhatrees. Thus, after a march of about four miles from our former encampment, we ascended sandy downs, behind which a broad belt of swampy meadow ground stretched along at a distance of more than two miles from the river itself. The higher level soon became more rocky, being strewn with black pebbles, between which numerous footprints of the giraffe were visible. It was pleasantly undulating, a ledge of sandstone and calcareous rock intersecting it like a wall. Having here heard from a shepherd who was watering his flock at a small pond formed by the recent fall of rain that there was an encampment at some distance, we gave to our course a more southerly direction, and soon reached a village lying at the very brink of the steep bank of the river, consisting of huts, and inhabited conjointly by some Arabs of the tribe of the Bi-'Alf, and some poorer members of the tribe of the K61 e' Siik. The huts consisted of matting, and were very clean and well ventilated, each of them having two doors, one on the north and another on the south side, both of moderate dimensions.

THE TIN-GER-E'GEDESH.

It was late in the evening when we arrived here, and there being an entire want of trees, we had great difficulty in obtaining a little fire-wood; nor was there any good bfrgu for the horses, the river, which here divided into two branches, being too deep to allow this rank grass, which prefers the swampy lowlands, to grow to
any extent. The poverty of the inhabitants, also, could not at all satisfy the wants of my companions, who were very fond of a good supper; hence El Bakay himself, who was well aware of this circumstance, had passed this locality, and, notwithstanding the lateness of the hour, directed his steps to another encampment farther on. This was also the reason of our following day's march being limited to a few hundred yards. We thus exchanged our encampment at Isibegen for that of El Bakay's at As6kan Imb6gge; but the change was by no means advantageous to us, as the high level presented here a most dreary aspect, being almost totally destitute of trees or shrubs. The border of the river, however, bore a very different character, and the swampy lowlands extended to a great distance, intersected by a dead water which at present had no connection with the river. The profusion of herbage which grew in this locality enabled me to buy here a good supply of butter, although the country in general appeared to be very bleak. A large island, also, is formed in the river, which is inhabited by Songhay, and called E'ha. The previous afternoon, we had observed ahead of us, to the east, a mountain chain called A'segha'rbu, and we now saw it more distinctly, stretching from east to west 150 south.

We had scarcely pitched our tents when we were visited by a great number of Tawirek of the tribe of the Tin-ger-6gedesh, who were encamped at a short distance with their chiefs Amire and Sadgktu. They were distinguished by their noble countenance and superior style of dress, and in both respects resembled the Tarabanisa, whose enemies they are. Most of them wore black tobes, the black alternatingly interchanging with a white band; and I counted not less than fifty of them, all decent-looking men. After a while I became very good friends with them, although the commencement of our intercourse was rather awkward. They had had some dealings with Mungo Park, whose policy it was to fire at any one who approached him in a threatening attitude;*

* It was this policy of Mungo Park, which he no doubt adopted much against his own inclination, that inspired Major Laing, when he heard of it in Tawlit, with such ominous dread of the fate which might await himself. In one of his letters, which

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

and having lost some of their tribe by his well-directed balls, they kept at first at some distance from me, viewing me with a rather suspicious and malevolent eye. But when they observed that I had entered into cheerful conversation with some of their party they convinced themselves that I did not belong to the class of wild beasts, or "tawakast;" for such, from the reception they had met with from Park, they had supposed all Europeans to be. I even, to my great astonishment, found here, with one of the K6l e' Siik, the life of Bruce, published by Murray in 1835, and which most probably had been the property of Davidson, the K6l e' S-6k having brought it from A'zawAd, where it had been taken by Himma, a younger brother of El Bakay, who, about the time of Davidson's journey, had paid a visit to Tawit and the country of the 'Arib. It was almost complete, only ten leaves
being wanting, and I bought it for three benAg, or strips of indigodyed cotton. It had been used as a talisman, an Arabic charm having been added to it. Here, as in general, I allayed the suspicions of the people, and made them more familiar by showing them some pictures of men of various tribes. Notwithstanding the great distance which separated my tent from the encampment, none of the women remained behind, all being anxious to have a look at this curious and novel exhibition; and having been sent about their business when they came in the daytime, they again returned toward night in such numbers that my people, being anxious for the safety of my small tent, which became endangered by these unwieldy creatures, endeavored to frighten them away with powder. But all was in vain; they would not stir till they had seen the pictures, which, in accordance with the disposition of each, excited their great delight or amazement. My custom, which I have mentioned before, of honoring the handsomest woman in every encampment with a looking-glass, created here a great struggle for the honor; but I was so unfortunate as to hurt the feelings of a mother by giving the prize of beauty to her daughter, who was rather a handsome person. I had the opportunity of inspecting through the kindness of General Sabine, he exclaims, after having mentioned that he met a Trki who had been wounded by Mungo Park: "How imprudent, how unthinking! I may even say how selfish was it in Park to attempt to make discoveries in this country at the expense of the blood of the inhabitants, and to the exclusion of all after-communication; how unjustifiable was such conduct!" It was on this account that Major Laing sent back the sailors that he had with him, and almost gave up his design of navigating the river below Timbdktn.

A CONTROVERSY.
We remained here the following day, when we had, in the morning, a considerable fall of rain, which lasted several hours, and drenched the sheikh and his followers in their leathern tent, while my old and worn white bell tent, pitched in this open hamm-da, withstood the rain beautifully, to the great astonishment of the Tawirek, who all came, soon after the rain was over, to see if I had not been swamped in my frail dwelling, which, before, they had looked upon with contempt.
I had afterward a very important controversy with the sheikh's people, in which I had to make use of all my energy in order to carry out my intention of following up the shores of the river: for the K61 e' Silk wanted to persuade the sheikh to enter here the open desert, and to make straight for the encampment of their chief, Khoz6maten, who, they said, would provide me with every thing necessary for my farther journey. They were seconded in their endeavor by all the eloquence of A'hmed Wadiwi, El Bak6.y's favorite pupil, who asserted that, after the heavy rains that had fallen, the desert afforded plenty of herbage for the horses. But I opposed these arguments in the most determined manner, assuring the sheikh that, even if he should go, I would not, but that I should pursue my route straight along the river; and, in order to make an impression on his mind, I reminded him of the distinct promise which he had given me of conducting me to G66g6. The sheikh
then, seeing that I was firm, adhered to his word, and it was therefore decided that a message should be sent to the chiefs of the K61 e' Silk to the effect that they were to meet us in Go6g6, while we continued our march along the river.

Thus we left this cheerless camping-ground in the afternoon, and soon descended by a gradual inclination from the higher desert tract, which, however, after the heavy rain that had fallen in the morning, was full of pools of stagnant water. We then passed several encampments, till we reached the low grassy shore of the river, when the high ground on our left was intersected by several dry water-courses, and obliged us, although only for a short time, to exchange the green bottom for the rocky slope at a place where a branch of the river, which approached closely, was full of crocodiles.

Entering then an open grassy plain intersected by several channels, and making our way with difficulty through this swampy ground, called Erirar, we reached about dark an encampment of K61 e' Sik, at the border of an open branch of the river, which

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

was here about 400 yards broad. The locality was called Tab6rak, though not a single tree was to be seen hereabouts; the whole district is here still called E'ha. The open river afforded a very pleasant sight, as, during the last few days, I had seen nothing but swampy creeks. Toward the southeast the watery plain was bounded by Mount T6ndibi, which juts out into the river in the shape of a promontory of considerable elevation. The locality, however, was so very unhealthy, that I could not long enjoy the fresh air outside, but was obliged to retire into my tent at an early hour.

Saturday, June 17th. On leaving our camping-ground in the morning we had to cross two small creeks, and then, keeping along the swampy plain, soon got entangled in a larger sheet of water, which stretched along the foot of Mount T6ndibi, and appeared to intercept our passage. We therefore thought it better to get out of the swampy ground, which here was full of water covered with water-lilies, and to ascend the sandy downs, where we passed another imazagh of the Tin-ger-dgedesh. There is no doubt that this swampy plain, for several months of the year, presents one uninterrupted sheet of water. Thus we ascended the northerly offshoots of Mount T6ndibi, which formed undulating sandy downs, stretching forth from the foot of the rocky mount, and richly clad with didm bush; but we soon passed them, and descended again on the other side into the grassy swampy plain, at present dry, but intersected by a creek every now and then. The river was at a considerable distance.

A mile beyond we reached an encampment of the K61 e’ Sk, consisting of reed huts, and at the instigation of the Wadiwi, in the absence of the sheikh, made a halt and unloaded our camels, when we suddenly received counter-orders, and, reloading our camels with great alacrity, proceeded on our march. The plain was here intersected by several winding channels, where we observed numerous herds of cattle and flocks of sheep belonging to the slaves of Khozmaten, who, like all the Tawirek, were about to leave the river, and to enter the region of the desert,
and the mountainous tract of A'derir, where, in consequence of the rains, fresh herbage was springing up.*

* I here subjoin a list of the names of the most celebrated wells and pasturegrounds of A'derr, some of which were, at a former period, the sites of wealthy towns: Am9sin, A'rab'a, Tin-dardn, Ydnhan or Gdnhan, Sdkf or e' Silk, Ijenlishen, A'zel-ad r, Kidal, a very fine district; E'n-ddsheddit, Taghelib, Marret, Talibit, Ta-

APPEARANCE OF OUR PARTY.
Here we ascended the sandy downs, keeping close along the green border of the bot-hi, and passing two small encampments, till we descended again from the rising ground into the green bed of the valley, which was here about three miles broad, and richly overgrown with daman-kidda interspersed between the dl'im bush, with which the small isolated sandy downs were adorned, besides a little "'ashur," tursha, or Asclepias. But we soon received another serious warning not to trust to this low swampy ground, for we suddenly observed a considerable sheet of water, which seemed to be connected with the principal river, extending in front of us, so that we were obliged to regain the higher ground.

While riding a while by myself I was much amused in observing our motley troop, consisting of about thirty individuals, some mounted on horses, riding singly or in pairs, others on camels, others again toiling along on foot, some armed with guns, and some with spears, and all in different attire, moving along this low swampy ground, where it rose a few feet above the deepest bottom, and was well lined with bush. It being then noon, the sun was very powerful, and when we reached the drier ground the heat became very troublesome. My companions, therefore, were well pleased when we reached a village of the Songhay, or rather of that division of them which is called Iba'wijiten, or Ibiujiten, hoping that they should be able to get some refreshment; but the Songhay, now that they have lost almost all their national independence, and are constantly exposed to all sorts of contributions, are inhospitable in the extreme; and they pointed out to us the encampment of their chief at a considerable distance along the river, where we were to look for quarters. The whole district is called Ab-6ba. Following the example of my companions, who were lightly laden and not very cautious, I was induced once more to enter the swampy grounds; and, being obliged to cross two boggy channels, we regained with difficulty the sandy downs, which were enlivened with three separate groups of ddim palms, which adorned a cemetery. Here we encamped in a small field, inclosed with fernin, but at present empty, the locality being called Fdgong.

The situation on these high downs was so conspicuous, that my tent, being visible at a great distance over the valley, attracted a dakkdt, A'sway, An-emellen, An-sittefen, Asherobbak, Tin-zgwaten, T-jemart, Elwi, Dohodal, Tin-aj6la, E'n-rar, Ejgrak, A'shu, A'kit, Takelhift, Dafelliina, E'n-ifara.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
great proportion of the neighboring population, among whom there were also some Ruma. A few of them were even mounted on horses, although of a very unseemly breed. They were seated upon a very awkward kind of saddle, which was merely thrown over the horse's back without a belly-band, and quite low behind. Their dress was also poor, and of the same character as that of the inhabitants of Bimba and Ghrgo. All these people belong to the tribe of the Ibawijiten, and were remarkable for more than ordinary ignorance. Many of them came to solicit medicine from me; and one can not wonder that, in such a locality, a great deal of sickness prevails, for the whole river is almost entirely lost in a broad shallow valley of about three miles in width, which, in its present low condition, bordered by steep banks, was nothing but a labyrinth of small creeks, intercepting swampy meadow grounds, although, during the higher state of the inundation, it must be filled up by the river, and form one large stream. Seeing so few trees hereabout, I was astonished to hear all the people speak of the number of lions which infested this district; they even begged us urgently to be upon our guard against them during the night.

Sunday, June 18th. Having heard nothing of lions or wild beasts during the night, we prepared early for our departure, but were detained some time, as the sheikh had again business to transact as a general pacificator; these Ibawijiten having purchased two of the slaves whom Sadiktu had taken from the people of Bimba, and not feeling inclined to return them. At length we started, but found it extremely difficult to avoid a wide swampy creek which deeply indented the country, while it afforded a beautiful field for the cultivation of rice, and even in the present decayed state of the country was not left wholly unprofitable. At length, having passed several small channels, we regained the border of the sandy downs, which were richly clothed with vegetation, although the melancholy-looking fern-n bush here also vindicates its right beside the retem and the talha-tree.

We at length resumed our southerly direction, but were not allowed for any length of time to follow a straight course across this swampy ground, being recalled by some of our companions, who conducted us to a sandy promontory, with projecting granite blocks and dtim bushes, where the sheikh had made a halt, opposite an encampment of the Songhay, in the "Armas," as the Imoshagh call the bottom of the valley. Although I was sorry to break off our march so soon, the view from this place was highly

GREAT BREADTH OF THE RIVER.

interesting, as it afforded a distant prospect over the river, if I may so call a broad swampy valley, hemmed in by steep banks, inclosing in the midst an abundance of rank grass, and scarcely affording at the present time the aspect of an open sheet of water, smaller and larger creeks, and more extensive ponds being formed in every direction. But the most curious sight was that presented by the river a little higher up, where, corresponding to the deep gulf which we had turned round in the morning, there appeared on the opposite side another swampy gulf, the whole width of the valley at that place being scarcely less than eight miles. It is
evident, from all that I saw here, that the navigable branch of the river runs on the side of A'ribinda, that is to say, the southern bank. As it had been decided that we should remain here during the night, we had already pitched our tents, and made ourselves comfortable, when our companions, having been informed that in a neighboring encampment there was a better prospect of a good supper, suddenly started off, although a thunder-storm gathered with threatening appearance over our heads; but, fortunately, the encampment was not far distant, and the storm passed by without rain. This encampment belonged to the K61 e’ Siik, and was very considerable. The next morning several very decent-looking men were introduced to me by my officious friend, A’hmed el Wadiwi, when they assured me that the whole road to Say was safe. All these people, who possess a small degree of learning, and pride themselves in writing a few phrases from the Kurin, were extremely anxious to obtain some scraps of paper, and I was glad to be still enabled, besides small strips of black cotton cloth and needles, to give away some trifling presents of this kind.

When we left the encampment, which was at about 800 yards from the outer bank of the river, the country assumed quite a different aspect, and we had soon to descend a rough rocky passage of blackened, sandstone, interspersed with granite blocks, in a great state of decomposition, and, passing several encampments of Tawirek, of the tribe of the I'medidderen, we entered a plain richly wooded with talha, hijil’j, retem, fernin, and the poisonous euphorbia, which, as is generally the case, grew in the shade of the talha-trees.

We very nearly became embroiled in a serious quarrel with the inhabitants of one of these camps, who seized a small box which I had given to the sheikh, and which one of his young slaves was carrying. I was riding in advance, and the people allowed me to pass unmolested, contenting themselves with putting some questions to me. The whole country was in a state of great agitation, a rumor having got abroad that I, in conjunction with the sheikh, was to establish here a new kingdom. But a few considerate admonitions from the more respectable members of the troop brought the Tawirek to reason; and it was very curious to witness the theatrical attitudes which one of these simple-minded but energetic original inhabitants of North Africa made use of, in order to demonstrate to the author of the riot the absurdity of his proceedings.

. After some slight delay caused by this theatrical intermezzo, we put our little troop once more in motion, following our former southerly direction till we were overtaken by a messenger from the sheikh with the order that we were to approach nearer the river. Proceeding, therefore, in a southwesterly direction, we soon came to the exterior embankment of the river reached by its waters during the highest state of the inundation, and girt by a dense grove of diim bush and talha-trees, but destitute of the nutritious bfrgu.
In this locality, which is called K6koro, we made a halt in order to wait for El Bakiy; but, as he did not come, and as we were unable to stay in this wilderness where no encampment was near, we moved on in the afternoon, with an almost exact southerly direction, toward G6g6, G’aw6, or Ghgdo, the celebrated capital of the Songhay empire. We first kept along the border of the green swampy creek, which farther on presented an open sheet of water, while on our left between the dense d-im bush, dfim palms also began to appear. But about two miles farther on, leaving the creek for a while, we ascended sandy downs, where, from the deserted site of a former imazagh, bearing evident traces of having been the resting-place of a numerous herd of cattle, my companions descried in the distance the tops of the palm-trees of G6g6, while I strained my eyes in vain, filled as I was with the most ardent desire of at length reaching that place. Descending then into a slight depression, we reached a larger fiddama, which soon after was joined by a considerable branch from the northwest, gradually filling with water as we advanced, and forming an arm of the river. From beyond the other side a very comfortable-looking encampment became visible, and almost induced my companions to give up the plan of reaching the deso-

THE ANCIENT CAPITAL OF SONGHAY.
late site of the former capital of this Nigritian empire; but the fine tamarind-trees and the beautiful date palms burst now too distinctly upon our view to allow me to relinquish the pleasure of reaching them without farther delay. It was a most interesting and cheering sight to behold a large expanse of fields of native corn take the place of the desert. The whole country became one open cultivable level, uninterrupted by any downs; and I thought at that moment that we had bid farewell to the desert forever, and entered the fertile region of Central Negroland, an expectation which, however, was not fully realized by what I observed farther on. But here, at least, even in the present decayed state of the country, there were some remains of industry, and the stubblefields of siba, or sorghum, were succeeded by tobacco plantations, and, after a slight interruption, by rice-grounds under water. However, darkness set in before we reached the miserable hovels of G6g6, and we encamped on a large open area, bordered round about by detached huts of matting, from which the ruins of a large tower-like building of clay arose
to a considerable height, and by a fine grove of rich trees, running on into a dense underwood of siwdk. The river was not visible from this point.

CHAPTER LXXVIII.

THE ANCIENT CAPITAL OF SONGHAY AND ITS NEIGHBORHOOD.

Tuesday, June 20th. As soon as I had made out that G6g6 was the place which for several centuries had been the capital of a strong and mighty empire in this region, I felt a more ardent desire to visit it than I had to reach Timb-dktu. The latter, no doubt, had become celebrated throughout the whole of Europe on account of the commerce which centred in it; nevertheless, I was fully aware that Timbidktu had never been more than a provincial town, although it exercised considerable influence upon the neighboring regions from its being the seat of Mohammedan learning. But G'aw6, or G6g6, had been the centre of a great national movement, from whence powerful and successful princes, such as the great Mohammed el Hij A'skia, spread their conquests from Kebbi, or rather Hiusa, in the east, as far as Fuita in the west, and from Tawt in the north, as far as Wngara and M6si toward the south.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Cheered at having reached this spot, I passed a tranquil night, and, rising early in the morning, lay down outside my tent, quietly enjoying the prospect over this once busy locality, which, according to the unanimous statements of former writers, was the most splendid city of Negroland, though it is now the desolate abode of a small and miserable population. Just opposite to my tent, toward the south, lay the ruined massive tower, the last remains of the principal mosque, or jfinger6-b6r, of the capital, the sepulchre of the great conqueror, Mohammed. All around the wide open area where we were encamped was woven a rich corona of vegetation, among which, in the clear light of the morning, I discovered different species of trees that I had long ago lost sight of, such as date palms, tamarind-trees, ngibor6, or sycamores, and even the silk-cotton-tree, although the specimens of the latter plant were rather poor and of small growth.

Having enjoyed the scenery for some time, I went with my young Shfiwa lad in order to obtain a sight of the river, of which, as yet, I had seen nothing here. Emerging from the fine group of trees, I found that only a very small creek, without an outlet at the present season, closely approached the town, while an extensive swampy lowland extended far into the river; but for several months in the year this lowland is inundated, with the exception, perhaps, of a few spots which rise to a greater height, and are adorned with talha-trees.

At present the name of G'aw6 is given not only to the site of the former capital, but also to the island, and even to the opposite shore of A'ribinda; and I once supposed that the chief part of the town was situated on the island, but this does not appear to have been the case; neither does it appear to have stood on the western bank. The fact is, that in former times there were two distinct quarters of G6g6, the quarter of the idolaters on the western bank toward Gfirma, and the royal and Mohammedan quarter on the eastern bank toward Egypt, whence Islam, with its accompanying civilization, had been introduced. In the course of time the
latter quarter would gain over the former, which from the beginning, when pagan worship was prevalent, was no doubt the more considerable.
Even at present, when all this ground was left dry by the retiring waters and formed a rich grassy island, only a few huts were seen on the island, as well as on the shore of A'ribinda. But the present inhabitants appear scarcely to be in want of the

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF GO'GO'.
river, for only a single seaworthy boat was to be seen, and four others out of repair were lying on the shore. The natives, when I expressed my astonishment at the miserable state of their craft, complained that they had no wood for building boats. Between the huts and the little creek, which by means of a northerly branch serves to irrigate the rice-fields, there is a tobacco plantation. It is here that the finest trees are grouped together, and I now observed, that besides from twenty to twenty-five date palms, which were just full of fruit, bordering upon ripeness, there were two or three d-im palms.
Having thus surveyed the river, I took a turn round the hamlet, which altogether consists of about 800 huts, grouped in separate clusters, and surrounded by heaps of rubbish, which seemed to indicate the site of some larger buildings of the former city. While walking round the huts, the women came out from their 1bge," or matting huts, and gathered cheerfully round us, exclaiming one above the other, "1 Nasira, nasira, Allah afikbar!" "A Christian, a Christian: God is great!" but they seemed to take a greater interest in my younger Shilwa lad than in myself, dancing round him in a very cheerful and fascinating manner. Some of them had tolerably regular features, and were tall and of good proportions. They were all dressed in the same style, very different from the dress of the women in Timbiiktu, having a broad wrapper of thick woolen cloth of different colored stripes fastened below the breast, so that it came down almost to their ankles, and many of them had even fastened this dress over their shoulders by a pair of short braces, in the same way as men wear their trowsers in Europe, and others had simply fastened it from behind.
While I was thus walking round the village I met an old man who greeted me in the most cheerful manner, and attached himself to me. From what he intimated, I could not but conclude that he had come into close contact with the Christian who so many years ago navigated this river in such a mysterious manner; but, unfortunately, he was of weak understanding, and I could not make out half of what he said to me. I regretted this the more, as he conducted me through the heaps of rubbish to a long, narrow clay building at a short distance west from the mosque, where he wanted to show me something of interest, but the owner of the house refused me admittance.
Leaving then the farthermost huts on my right, I turned my steps toward the jfinger6-bgr, and endeavored to make out as well as I could the plan of this building.
According to all appearance, the mosque consisted originally of a low building, flanked on the east and west side by a large tower, the whole court-yard being surrounded by a wall about eight feet in height. The eastern tower is in ruins, but the western one is still tolerably well preserved, though its proportions are extremely heavy. It rises in seven terraces, which gradually decrease in diameter, so that while the lowest measures from forty to fifty feet on each side, the highest does not appear to exceed fifteen. The inhabitants still offer their prayers in this sacred place, where their great conqueror, Hij Mohammed, is interred, although they have not, sufficient energy to repair the whole. The east quarter of the mosque evidently was formerly the most frequented and best inhabited part of the town, and is entirely girded with a thick grove of siwAk bushes, which covers all the uninhabited part of the former city. The town, in its most flourishing period, seems to have had a circumference of about six miles. According to the statement of Leo,* it appears never to have been surrounded by a wall. The dwellings in general do not seem to have been distinguished by their style of architecture, with the exception of the residence of the king, although even that was of such a description that the Bashı Jedar, on conquering the town, wrote to inform his master, Mdl6y e’ Dh6hebi, that the house of the Sheikh el Harim, in Morocco, was much better than the palace of the A’skia.t

When I returned to my tent from this my first excursion I found a great crowd of men assembled there, but was unable to make the acquaintance of any one who might give me some information about the tace, and, on the whole, I did not succeed in entering into any amicable relations with the inhabitants of Gég6. Their sullen behavior seems to be accounted for by the fact, as I shall mention farther on, that they had behaved rather treacherously toward the Christian who had visited this place some fifty years before.

I endeavored also, although in vain, to buy Indian corn from the inhabitants, although it was perhaps the fear of the Tawirek which made them deny that they had any. Thus I found myself reduced to the necessity of providing myself with a supply of Uizak, or enfti, that is to say, the seeds of the Pennisetum dis* L. vii., c. 3. t Journ. Leipsic Oriental Soc., vol. ix., p. 549.

MEETING OF NATIVE CHIEFS.
tichum, which is generally used as an article of food by the Tawirek, my horses having fared very badly for some time.

It was not until the second day of our arrival that my protector, accompanied by Hanna, Khoz6maten, Hammaliba, and the other chief men of the K6l e’ Silk, who had come to have an interview with him, joined us. These people were mounted partly on camels, partly on horseback, and the large open area which spread out between the mosque and our tents thus became greatly enlivened, and it was not long before the messengers who had been sent to Alkuittabu returned with the answer that he would meet the sheikh in this place in three days. It almost appeared as if G6g6 was again to acquire some slight historical importance as the place of meeting between the native chiefs of these disturbed regions and a European anxious to inspire the natives of these countries with fresh energy, and
to establish a regular intercourse along the high road which Nature herself has prepared.

When all these people arrived, I was just busy laying down, as well as circumstances allowed, my route from Timbiktu to G6g6, which I was very anxious to finish, and to send off from here, and thus to secure the results of my exploration, in case of any mischance befalling myself. At that time, the legs of my table being broken, I was obliged to finish this map on a board placed upon my knees, and sitting on my mat, as I had at that period neither chair nor box.

Having finished this business, I went with the sheikh, in order to pay my compliments to the K61 e' Silk, who had just concluded their prayers. The two chiefs, Khoz6maten and Hanna, principally claimed my attention. But, although they were very, respectable men, it was a rather curious circumstance that both were blind, or nearly so; Hanna, who was the elder by two years, had only one eye, and Khoz6maten was totally blind; notwithstanding which, he felt confident that I was able to cure him.

Besides the transactions with these people, preparations for my home-journey were going on, although slowly; and the sheikh addressed a letter in my favor to the chiefs on the road along which I had to pass. It was couched in flattering terms, and could not fail to be of the greatest service to me after my separation from him.* Notwithstanding that a tolerable variety of business was on hand, the locality soon became loathsome to me on account of the great heat which prevailed. The shade which was afforded

* A translation of this letter will be given in Appendix XIV.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

by the frne sycamores near the nver was at too great a distance from my tent, and too much frequented by birds to be of any avail. I was therefore glad that the visit of some other people induced my host to interrupt our stay here by a small excursion.

These people were the G6-b6ro, as they are generally called, or, according to their original nomenclature, Sidu-kimil, a numerous tribe of Filbe, who have been settled in these regions for several hundred years, and from fear of the persecution of the A'skii, or Sfkkfa, have exchanged their own native language for that of the inhabitants of the country. They had formerly enjoyed almost undisturbed liberty, in a state of nominal dependence on the Governor of Say; but some time previously they had been forced to acknowledge the supremacy of Hombori, the governor of which place had made an expedition against them and killed some thirty of their number. They therefore desired the sheikh to come and extend his protection over them and impart a blessing to them. However, we did not leave this place till the afternoon of the 25th.

Having left behind us the area of the ancient town, and then traversed a plain clad with small talha-trees and ddm bush, we reached, after a march of about four miles, the grassy border of the river, and boldly entered the swampy grounds; for in the midst of these lowlands, from whence the river had retired, there were several clusters of matting huts, inhabited by GU-bdro and Rum. Not having
taken any tents with us, sheds were erected both for El Bakiy and myself, but they were in a miserable condition, and it was fortunate that a thunder-storm, which had hovered over our heads almost the whole of the afternoon, was moving northward, where a great deal of rain fell, and left us tolerably free from wet and wind.

Monday, June 26th. The inhabitants of the hamlet treated us rather inhospitably, and we set out at an early hour to pursue our march in the swampy vale. After proceeding for about a mile we passed a small hamlet, situated on a rising ground, adorned with ddim palms. Crossing several small channels, where the people were busy renewing the dikes encompassing the rice-fields, we reached the firm shore, which was adorned with ddm bush, fernin, kalgo, tursha, and damankddda. The river, which forms here a tolerably open sheet, is bordered on the side of A’ribinda by a steep bank, which, a little farther on, is succeeded by sandy downs. However, after a short time we were again obliged to enter the low, swampy ground, which at present formed a wide grassy gulf inclosed by hills.

VISIT TO THE GA’-BE’RO.
The plain was cultivated with a good deal of sorghum, the blades of which were just starting forth, but the grain does not ripen before the period when the inundation covers this spot and transforms it into a lake-like widening of the river. Winding along between several channels which had not yet dried up, we were glad when we again reached the firm shore, where the rocky slope, from 80 to 100 feet elevation, closely approaches the open river. A party of K61 e’ Slik were just pitching their tents here.

Keeping along the narrow slip of level shore, which gradually became more and more compressed, from which circumstance the locality is called Tin-shgran, we found ourselves, after a march of about a mile, opposite an encampment of the Ggbro, spreading out on a flat sandy beach, which at present formed the border of a very extensive grassy plain, but which, when the river rises to a greater height, forms a sort of sand-bank, till it is overwhelmed, in its turn, by the rising waters of the Niger. These being the people who had invited us to come and pay them a visit, we chose our camping-ground on the high sand-hills forming the offshoots of the rocky slope, which here rose to the height of 200 or 300 feet. It was a beautiful open place, and the G6 -bdro,* as soon as they observed us, began to beat their drum, or tobl, and prepared to cross over to us. To accomplish this, however, it was first necessary for them to borrow some boats, as they themselves did not possess any, from fear of the Tawi.rek, who might easily cross over to them and annoy them.

Having sent three oxen swimming across the river as a first token of hospitality, they began to raise a very _peat matting dwelling for the sheikh; but my noble friend, with great courtesy, gave it up to me, and ordered another for himself. These people exhibited great superiority both in carriage and intelligence over the Songhay inhabitants, although their dress is not very different from that of the Filbe, being only a little fuller and less shabby. A few, such as their chief, Hanna,
and his people, wear black tobes, with pockets of red cloth, like the Tawirek. Their wives dress like the Songhay women, wrapping a woolen shawl round the lower part of the body, below the breast, and fastening it over the shoulder. They derive their descent partly from Fita, and partly from the

* The G-bro are divided into the following tribes: the Shôdibg, the Bwijil, the Sillinche (the latter probably so called from the well-known town Silla), the A’gades, and the Gorrong.

485

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

tribe of the U’rubu settled in Misina. Some sheriffs are also stated to have intermarried with them; and it was with considerable interest that I beheld among them several individuals with real Ptillo features. They are greatly afraid, not less of the Fu’lbe of Hômbori (the place mentioned in my outward journey, which is only four good days’ march distant from here) than of the Kortfta, a division of the Songhay settled farther down the river. They were therefore most anxious to possess a double talisman against this twofold danger which threatened them, and received a blessing from me as well as from the sheikh; for although I told them repeatedly that the blessing of the sheikh was quite sufficient for them, they insisted upon receiving my own benediction likewise. I now learned that several of them had made my personal acquaintance on a former occasion, having been among the troop of natives who assisted me in crossing the dangerous swamp a few miles from A’ribfnda.

In this place which is called Borno, or Barno, we remained the four following days; and I might have enjoyed the fine air and the charming view over the river, notwithstanding my eager desire to continue my journey without any longer delay, if it had not been that I was badly off for food, the rice with which we were supplied not being seasoned with salt, and there being an entire lack of milk. The communication with the opposite shore was rendered rather difficult by the great breadth of the open river, which, moreover, became repeatedly agitated by a thunder-storm, and was infested by several hippopotami, which at times were furiously snorting about in the river, as if in anger at our having disturbed their quiet retreat. The day of our arrival they had thrown the whole of our horses into disorder and put them to flight while they were pasturing near the shore. They even at times interrupted the intercourse between the two banks, and altogether exhibited a very noisy character, especially during the evening and in the course of the night, when they wanted to come out for their usual food. Two white "ar," a rather rare species of antelope in these quarters, were seen by some of my companions on the rocky heights above.

At times I was roaming about in the recesses of the rocky slope, which offered very charming views, one of which is represented in the plate opposite, or I had some conversation with people who were passing by. Among the latter were especially a troop of Sherifen, a section of the K1 e’t Silk, but very dif-
ferent from the general character of that tribe, whose distinguishing features are humility and harmlessness. All of them came in full armor, and many were well dressed, and their general bearing bore testimony to an independent mind. It was curious, however, that the chief of these people mistook me for El Bakiy, and therefore paid his compliments to me first, probably in consequence of my beard being longer.

Saturday, July 1st. The herd of cattle which the Gi-b6ro were to make a present of to the sheikh having at length successfully regained their native shore, we set out on our return march to G6g6 late in the afternoon, and keeping along the rocky slope, where it recedes inland, behind Tin-sh6ran, we halted for the night in an encampment of the K61-giinhon, which was very considerable, consisting of more than 100 leathern tents. The encampment was full of young slaves, such as I had rarely seen with -my of these Tawirek; but, as I have observed on a former occasion, the K61 e’ Suk do not seem as yet to have entirely forgotten their former residence in a large, luxurious place, and even at the present time indulge greatly in the traffic of slaves. Here, also, the slaves, male and female, were entirely clad in leather, but, on the whole, they were good looking, and appeared cheerful.

Sunday, July 2d. I again reached G6g6, while the sheikh remained behind in the encampment of another body of K61 e’ Siik, situated on a sort of promontory projecting into the swampy plain, which we reached about five miles after setting out from the place where we had passed the night. Our march lay along the foot of the rocky slope, full of caverns and ravines, and enlivened with trees and bush, the swampy ground on our left being laid out in rice-fields, which the people were busy cultivating, and interrupted here and there by insulated rising ground clad with dilm bush.

On my arrival in my tent, I was glad, after my long abstinence from palatable food, to indulge in an excellent rejire, the favorite drink made with cheese and dates, which is very acceptable in the desert country, but rather difficult to digest in the feverish regions of Negroland. Thus r began to prepare myself for my homejourney, which from henceforward I might confidently expect to pursue with more steadiness. I then went to pay a visit to my friends the K61 e’ Sdk, who, during our long absence, had grown very impatient, and, as it would seem, not without good reason. They received me very cheerfully, and in their excess of friendly

feeling made an endeavor to convert me to their creed; but, having received a direct refusal, they entreated me very earnestly to return to them as soon as possible, but this time by way of Tawit. However, I was obliged to tell them that it was very unlikely I should ever return, and more improbable still by way of Tawit, that road being extremely dangerous for us; but I informed them that I entertained no doubt that, if it were possible to get over the rapids which
obstructed the lower course of the river, the English would not be long in paying them a visit.

All my friends, who now saw my departure near at hand, began to evince their attachment to me more strongly than ever, and in the evening, after I had dismissed El Munir and In6sa, the sons of Khoz6maten, both of them worthy young men, I had a very animated conversation with my friend Mohammed el KhottAr over our tea, and I promised him a considerable number of Arabic books in the event of his paying a visit to England.*

The following morning, when I was lying outside my tent, as was my custom, enjoying the fresh air, all my friends gathered round me, and I had to read to them passages from various European books, including the Greek text of the Evangelists. The German principally attracted the attention of these people, the full heavy words of that language appearing to them somewhat like their own idiom, and they became highly elated when I recited to them from memory some verses of a favorite German poem.

All my people were so full of enthusiasm on account of a fair prospect of a speedy departure on our home-journey being held out to them, that they gave the Sheikh el Bakiy, when he joined us, in the course of the morning, in G6gS, a most hearty reception, and fired away a good deal of powder in honor of him. I afterward went with him to distribute some presents among the chiefs of the KQI e’ Silk and some great men of the Awelimmiden who had arrived in the company of the sheikh. Khoz6maten received a fine black N’pe tobe and a black lithim; Hanna, a tfirkedf and. a lithim; the four Awelfmmiden, viz., Bodhi1, Riwa, Aliso, and Sibet, each a lithim, besides some smaller articles; and each of the sons of Khoz6maten and Hanna the half of a lithim. Every one was content, although some of them would have liked to receive articles of greater value.

* This young man actually came to Tripoli in the course of last summer, but the unfortunate state of Indian affairs, and other circumstances, together with an illness common with people coming from the interior, which attacked both him and his companions, prevented his coming to this country.

PREPARATIONS TO LEAVE GO’GO’.

There being no prospect that Alkdittabu would join us here, as we were told that he had gone to drive back a predatory expedition of the K6l-fadiye, I returned the fine black horse which the sheikh had made me a present of, and which I had destined for the chief of the Awelimmiden, to the former, who was going to visit that chief, in order that he might present it to him in my name. I also made ready the present which I intended to make to Thfkkefi, the son of the former chief, and El A’gwi, a near relation of his.

The sheikh himself showed his consciousness of our approaching separation by assuming a lively air. In the evening I had a very animated conversation with him and Sfdi A’hmed el Wa’dawi, the most learned of his pupils, with regard to the shape of the earth, and succeeded, at length, in clearly demonstrating to him its globular shape and the circular motion’ of the whole system of the planets. He was not a little struck when, speaking of what was above the earth and under it, I told him that, with regard to the Omnipresent Being, such as we and they recognize
the Almighty Creator of the universe to be, the idea of an above and below was not to be entertained, but that such expressions had only reference to human speculation. But although, as a Mohammedan, he could not entirely concur in such a doctrine, being overawed by the authority of the Kuran, yet, having before his eyes the beautiful panorama of the hemisphere, he became quite convinced that on the whole I was right, although, shut up within the narrow walls of his room in the town, he had always thought it both absurd and profane to assert such a thing.

Wednesday, July 5th. All was ready for our departure, when Thikkefi, the cousin of the present ruler of the Awelimmiden, and son of the late powerful chief E'Nibegha, joined us with a few of his companions, among whom Soh6b was the most conspicuous. The arrival of this important personage caused us fresh delay, which, however, on the whole, was agreeable to me, as he was authorized by Alkittabu to grant me full franchise and perfect security for all Englishmen traveling or trading in their territory; and in the course of conversation he even made the remarkable proposal to me that the English should endeavor, by means of a strong expedition up the river, to establish regular intercourse with them. Meanwhile the chiefs of the K6l e' Suik departed for their respective homes, holding forth the prospect that I myself might

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

soon follow. Thgkkefi staid with me almost the whole of the day, inspecting my effects with the greatest curiosity and attention. He was a fine, tall man, possessed of great strength and remarkable intelligence, and had the most ardent wish to see more of our ingenious manufactures. I was very sorry that I was able to show him so little, as almost the whole of my supplies were exhausted. A spear had been thrust through his neck from behind in the sudden attack by the K6l-gerds at Tintal-it, where his father was slain, and he was very anxious to obtain some efficacious plaster for his wound. Every thing went on so well in my intercourse with this chief, that in the afternoon of the day following his arrival the letter of franchise was written by Dani6l, the secretary of Alkittabu, and the day after Thikkefi himself called upon me in my tent. He appeared to have some particular object in view, and, having carefully secured the entrance of the tent, in order to prevent other people from overhearing our conversation, he expressed his desire and that of his uncle that the English might send three well-armed boats up the river, in order to establish intercourse with them. I took care to point out to him that, however anxious the English were to establish commerce -and an exchange of produce with this region, yet the success of their endeavors was dependent on the circumstance whether they would be able to cross the rapids and the rocky passage which obstructed the river lower down, between Btsa and R6,ba, and that therefore I was unable to promise him any thing with certainty. I gave to this chief, who, besides being possessed of great vigor, had a good deal of good-nature about him, one tobe shahariye, two black tobes, two black shawls, three tidrkedis, a silk cord of F~s manufacture for suspending the sword, and several other smaller articles.
During our stay in this place I had laid down the course of the river between Timbldktu and G6g6 on a tolerably large scale, as far as it was possible to do so, written a dispatch to government, and several letters to members of the Royal Geographical Society and other private friends, and, having sealed the parcel, I delivered it to the sheikh in order that he might forward it without delay upon his return to Timbliktu. I am sorry to say, however, that this parcel only arrived a few months ago, having been laid up at Ghad6mes for more than two years.

Before leaving G6g6, I was anxious to ascertain exactly the nature of the river along this shore, as on our march both to and

SURVEY OF THE RIVER.

from the Gd-b6ro we had kept at some distance from its bank, and I arranged with the sheikh's nephew to survey the shores of the river for some distance downward. When I was about to mount on horseback Thikkefi requested that I would put on my European dress, as he was anxious to see how it looked; but, unfortunately, instead of an officer's dress, which would certainly have pleased them very much, I had no European clothes with me except a black dress suit, which could only impress them with a rather unfavorable idea of our style of clothing; and although they approved of the trowsers, they could scarcely fail to think the shape of the coat highly absurd. But, having never before seen fine black cloth, they were surprised at its appearance, and, at a distance, all the people mistook it for a coat of mail, as most of them had been accustomed to see only red cloth.

Pursuing then my proposed excursion, I observed, also, below the village, some fine groups of date palms. I also assured myself that the creek of G6g6, at least at this season of the year, is quite unnavigable, although I could not understand why the modern capital of the Songhay empire was not built on the open river, the only advantage derived from its actual situation being that the small creek forms a kind of close harbor, which affords protection to the boats, and may easily be defended in case of need. As for the site of the former capital K-6kiya, or Kilgha, I am sorry I did not arrive at a distinct conclusion respecting it.

Having follo*ed the bank as far as the point where the creek joins the principal branch of the river, I felt myself induced, by the precarious state of my companion's health, to retrace my steps. This indisposition of the sheikh's nephew influenced the choice of my companions on my return-journey, as it had been originally the sheikh's intention to send his nephew along with me as far as S6koto. In his place another, but more distant relation of the sheikh, Mohammed ben Mukht-r, an energetic and intelligent young man, but of a less noble turn of mind, was appointed; and besides him, there was the Hartni Milek, son of a freed slave, who was to return with the last-named messenger from Timkala; then M-6stafa, and Mohammed Diddeb, the latter a native of Timbiktu, who were to return from S6koto, and A'hemd el Widiwi, and Hij Ahmed, who were to return from B6rnui.

In the evening preceding our departure our camp exhibited a busy scene, as we were engaged in finishing our preparations for the journey, the sheikh undertaking the outfit of one half the
messengers, and I the other; but the presents, also, which the latter destined for
the chiefs of Negroland, were delivered to me, in order that I might take them
under my care. He had, besides, the goodness to supply me with some native
cotton and tobacco, to distribute as presents to the Tawirek and Songhay on our
road; he also gave a dress to each of my companions, I doing the same to those
among his pupils who had been most attached to me. I even felt induced to make
a present of a very handsome tobe from Sansindi, richly ornamented with silk,
which I had intended to take with me as a specimen of that very interesting
manufacture, to Sidi Mohammed, a son of the sheikh, who had accompanied us,
and who, on account of our long absence from the town, was rather shabbily
dressed at the time.

. CHAPTER LXXIX.
SEPARATION FROM THE SHEIKH.- CROSS THE RIVER TO THE
SOUTHWESTERN SIDE.-VARIOUS ENCAMPMENTS.-RIVER STUDDED
WITH ISLANDS.-ANSOINGHO.
Saturday, July 8th. At length the day dawned when I was, in reality, to begin my
home-journey, for all our former movements along the river had rather resembled
the wanderings of the natives themselves than the direct march of a European
traveler, and, although I felt sincerely attached to my protector, and under other
circumstances might still have found a great many objects worthy of my
investigation and research in this region, I could not but feel greatly satisfied at
being at length enabled to retrace my steps homeward, with a tolerable guarantee
as to my safety. It was highly gratifying to me that when I left this place a great
many people wished me a hearty farewell and a prosperous journey; nay,
Tha'kkefi even commissioned me to offer his special regards to Queen Victoria,
with whose name I had made him acquainted.
Having then pursued our march through the level tract along the river, which here
forms a great northsoutherly reach, and which, from having been full of life, is
now empty and desolate, we reached the site of the encampment of the K61 e' Sik
on the sandy eminence which we had passed a few days before, but which was
now deserted. From thence -we descended into the

SEPARATION FROM THE SHEIKH.
swampy ground toward the river, and here passed by a Songhay hamlet, the
inhabitants of which received us with their usual inhospitality, and even refused
us a little water-an unkind feeling which displeased me most from a young newly-
marrried lady, who, standing in front of her neat hut of matting, with her fine
figure and varied- ornaments of all sorts of beads, presented quite an attractive
appearance. Turning then round a creek filled with water we reached an
encampment of K61 e' Silk, and pitched our tent; for, although it was our
intention to cross the river as soon as possible, yet, no boats having as yet arrived,
we were so long delayed that evening came on before we could carry out our
design; and, obstinately refusing to be separated from my luggage, I preferred crossing the river together with my people and effects the next morning. Our hosts possessing a great number of cattle, we were well treated, and I was able to indulge in plenty of milk. The Taw-rek have a common name for the whole northeasterly bank of the river. They call the whole of it to the northwest of Gg6, Tgrant, and to the southeast, A'ghel6.

Sunday, July 9th. This was the day when I had to separate from the person whom, among all the people with whom I had come in contact in the course of my long journey, I esteemed the most highly, and whom, in all but his dilatory habits and phlegmatic indifference, I had found a most excellent and trustworthy man. I had lived with him for so long a time in daily intercourse, and in the most turbulent circumstances, sharing all his perplexities and anxieties, that I could not but feel the parting very severely. Having exorted the messengers whom he was to send along with me never to quarrel, and to follow my advice implicitly in all cases, but especially with regard to the rate of progress in the journey, as he knew that I was impatiently looking forward to my home-journey, he gave me his blessing, and assured me that I should certainly reach home in safety. Mohammed I en Khott-r, who, in consequence of his serious indisposition, was prevented from accompanying me any farther, and the sheikh's eldest son, Sidi Mohammed, did not take leave of me until I was in the boat. When I had safely landed on the opposite shore I fired twice a farewell, in conformity with the request of the sheikh.

The river here, at present, was studded with sand-banks, which greatly facilitated the crossing of my camels and horses, although between the sand-banks and the southwesterly shore there was

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

a deep channel of considerable breadth. The locality where I touched the southwestern bank of the river is called Gôna, a name identical with that of a place of great celebrity for its learning and its schools in the countries of the Mohammedan Mandingoos to the south. The sandy downs were lined with a, fine belt of trees. Three different paths lead over these downs into the interior, the most important being the track leading straight to Dôre, the chief place of the Province of Libtiko, and joining, at a very extensive lake or backwater, called Khalebleb, the road leading to the same place from Burre to the south of the island Ans6ngho, lower down the river. At present a broad swampy lowland spread out between the downs and the brink of the river.

The chief of my companions, A'hem el Widiwi, being once more called beyond the river into the presence of the sheikh, we did not leave this place till a late hour in the afternoon, keeping along the low swampy shore. After a while an open branch approached us from the river on our left, forming an island of the name of Berta. Here an animated scene presented itself to our eyes. An immense female hippopotamus was driving her calf before her and protecting it from behind, her body half out of the water, while a great number of "agamba" and "zangway," crocodiles and alligators, were basking in the sun on the low sand-banks, and glided into the water with great celerity at the noise of our approach.
Here the swampy shore presented some cultivation of rice, while on the opposite side the river was bounded by the rocky cliffs of Tin-shdран; but the sandy beach, which a week previously had been animated by the numerous encampments of the Gbёro, was now desolate and deserted, and we continued our march in order to find out their new camping-ground.

While ascending a spur of rising ground called G-6ndam, a fierce poisonous snake made a spring at my mounted servant, who was close behind me, but was killed by the men who fortunately followed him at a short distance. It was about four feet and a half long, and its body did not exceed an inch and a half in diameter.

Having then kept along the slope for a little more than a mile, we again descended into the grassy plain, and reached a considerable creek, forming a series of rapids gushing over a low ledge of rocks, and encompassing the island of Bornu-Gungu, where the G -b6ro were at present encamped. The creek being too consid.

496

THE GA'-BI'BI.-LOCUSTS.

erable to allow of our crossing it with all our effects we encamped between it and the swamp, in a locality called J-ina-biria; and I here distributed among my companions the articles which I had promised them. The river at this point was frequented by several hippopotami, one of which, in its pursuit of good pasturage in the dusk of the evening, left the shore far behind it, and was pursued by my companions, who fired at it, without, however, hurting it or preventing its reaching the water.

Monday, July 10th. It was a beautiful morning; and while the Widiwi crossed over to the island in order to fetch a supply of rice, I had sufficient leisure to look around me. The shore on this side presented little of interest, and was only scantily adorned with trees, but the island was richly clothed with vegetation. The only interesting feature in the scenery was the opposite shore, with the imposing cliffs of Bornu, where we had been encamped some time before. When at length we started, we were soon obliged to leave the shore in order to avoid an extensive swamp, and approached the hills, at the foot of which we had to cross a small creek, which during a great part of the year forms the border of the river itself, and then continued along the downs. Numbers of people, who had their temporary abode in the swampy plain, came to pay me their compliments. These people are called G-bfi, a name which is said to have reference to their black tents, which distinguish them from the matting dwellings of the Gi-b6ro. I was here not a little surprised at the swarms of locusts which the wind drove into our faces, and which certainly indicated our approach to more fertile regions. Proceeding in this manner, we reached a fine camping-ground in an opening of the slope of the downs, through which a path led to the interior, thus giving to the herds of cattle access to the river, and therefore called Diniyime, "the watering-place of the cattle." A fine hijilf afforded a cool shade, the vegetation in general consisting only of fernan, retem, and bui-r6kkeba, and we at once decided to halt here, in order to await our guide, HammaHamma, one of the G--bdro, who had gone to visit his family, but had promised to rejoin us at this spot. The situation of
our camping-ground afforded us an interesting prospect over the valley, and numbers of the inhabitants of the neighboring hamlets and camps visited us in the course of the evening, and even supplied us with a tolerable provision of milk late at night.

VOL. III.-I I

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Tuesday, July 11th. The guide who was to accompany us as far as Say not having arrived, I had great difficulty in inducing my companions to set off without him; and we started at an early hour, keeping along the sandy downs, which a little farther on became adorned with the rich bush called "ind6rren" or "k61koli," while ledges of rock obstructed the river. Gradually the downs decreased in height, and the melancholy-looking fernin succeeded to the fresh ind'rren, but its place was supplied for a while by the richer tab6rak. The locality was called Alikke, and farther on, D6rgimi; but fixed settlements of any kind are at present looked for in vain in these districts. In A'ussa, however, on the northeastern side of the river, we left, first, a hamlet called Dergonne, and farther on a place called A'ghador, which, as the name indicates, must have been formerly a walled place. West from Derg6nne is probably the halting-place Shinjeri, and A'ghador is most likely identical with a place called Eben-ef6ghan, said to be hereabouts. The opposite bank, gradually sloping down and being clad with large trees, bore the appearance of a pleasant, cultivable country, while the shore on this side the river likewise improved; altogether it seemed as if we had left the desert far behind us. I am not sure how the country here is called; but I think that the district called A'zawagh may reach down to the eastern border of the river. The Niger was for a moment entirely free from rocks, forming a magnificent open sheet of water, but farther on it again became obstructed by isolated cliffs.

Meanwhile, as we pursued our march steadily onward, at a short distance from the bank, in a S.S.E. direction, the K61 e' Siiki, Mohammed e' Telmfidi, entertained me, from the back of his tall m6hari, with a description of the power of the Trki chief, El Khadfr, the southern verge of whose territory we had passed on our outward journey, and now again turned round the northern side of it. The chief, at this time, was encamped about three days from here, toward the west, collecting, as we are told, an expedition against the principality of Hil6mbori, the governor of which claims dominion over the whole district. There are even here several settlements of Fdilbe, a troop of whom we fell in with, and recognized in them young noble people, who in their countenances bore evident traces of a pure descent. Their idiom was closely related to the dialect of Masina. During the spring, however, the Trki chief generally frequents the banks of the river, which then afford the richest pasturage.

TONGI.-BARBAROUS CUSTOM.

Gradually the green shore widened, and formed a swampy ground of more than half a mile in breadth, adorned by a line of trees which, during the inundation, likewise becomes annually submerged by the water. The valley is bordered on this side by steep banks of considerable elevation. As soon as I became aware of
the swampy character of the plain, which greatly retarded the progress of my Camels, I endeavored to strike across the swampy ground, and to reach the firm bank again, but had considerable difficulty in doing so. The bank was adorned by a growth of the finest trees, which gave to the river scenery a peculiar character, and invited us to halt during the hot hours of the day. We therefore encamped opposite Tongi, a hamlet lying on a low swampy island, separated from us by a considerable open creek, and ruled over by a man of the name of Slah, who was a brother of Hamma-Hamma, the very man who was to serve us as a guide, but who had broken his word. The people, who seemed to be called Dekften, behaved very hospitably, sending us immediately upon our arrival cows' and goats' milk as a refreshment, and giving us, in the course of the afternoon, a bullock for our farther entertainment. I have already mentioned, I think, on a former occasion, how cruelly the inhabitants of these regions treat oxen which have been destined for slaughter, although in general they are rather mildly disposed toward animals. In conformity with their barbarous custom, my companions broke the hind legs of the animal which had been given us as a present, and allowed it to drag itself about in this state until they found it convenient to slaughter it. While detained here the remainder of the day, I had the pleasure of meeting, among the people who crossed over to us from the island, an old man who had a very lively remembrance of Mungo Park, and who gave me an accurate description of his tall, commanding figure, and his large boat. He related, besides, the manner in which the Tawirek of the tribe of the I'de-Muisa, the name of whose present chief, is El Getgga, attacked that mysterious voyager near Ansongho, where the river is hemmed in by rapids, but without being able to inflict any harm upon him, while the intrepid Scotchman shot one of his pursuers, and caused two to be drowned in the river. It was altogether a fine camping-ground, the talha and siwik being thickly interwoven with creeping plants; but a heavy thunder-storm, accompanied with rain, which lasted almost the whole 499

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
of the night, rendered us rather uncomfortable. Besides this circumstance, the fact that the people of the sheikh could only with difficulty be induced to forego the companionship of our guide, lost us here the best half of the day. But I collected a good deal of valuable information, especially with regard to the chief settlements of the independent Songhay, as the famous towns of Dirgol, Tra, and Kilman, situated between the river and our former route through Yggpha and Libtko, which I shall give in the Appendix.* At length I succeeded, at a rather late hour in the afternoon, in stirring up my companions, and, leading the way, we crossed from this advanced headland a swampy creek which separated us from the main, and then kept along the rising ground, which was richly clad with vegetation, and from time to time formed recesses, as the one called Tennel, the river being now more open. But farther on it became obstructed by cliffs and rocks, till at length, after a march of about seven
miles, the river, which here formed a fine bend, assuming a southeasterly direction, exhibited an open, undivided sheet of water, and on this account forms the general place of embarkation, called A'dar-and-irren, properly "the small branch," meaning evidently here a narrowing of the river; for people going from Kidlman to this part of A'ussa generally cross here. A little higher up there is a hamlet called Tabiliat, inhabited by sherffi, with a chief named Mohammed. Just at that moment some people were crossing over, but, when we horsemen hurried in advance, they immediately took to flight with their boats, leaving behind them some slaves, and four or five packoxen, and all our shouting was not able to convince these native travelers of our peaceable intentions. Here, owing to a small creek which runs closely at the foot of the hills, we were obliged to ascend the rising ground, and, rather against the advice of our more prudent K6l e' Sdiki guide, encamped on the heights, which were clad with rich herbage, but covered with great quantities of the feathery bristle. This spot afforded a commanding view over the surrounding country, but on this very account appeared less secure for a small party; and, notwithstanding the elevation, the camping-ground was greatly infested by musquitoes, which almost drove our camels to distraction, and troubled our own night's rest not a little.

But the view which I here enjoyed over the northern end of

* See Appendix XV.

IRON GATES OF AKARA'MBAY. 503

the island, round which the river divided into four branches, was highly interesting to me, as being one of the places along the river best known to the natives as scenes where that heroic voyager from the north had to struggle with nature as well as with hostile men. Our fires having given to those poor lads who had been left behind by their frightened masters an opportunity of discovering what kind of people we were, they took courage and came to us, when we learned that they were K6l e' Silk, who had paid a visit to Ku'lman, and were now returning home. They also informed us that the crocodiles had devoured one of the packoxen upon their attempting to swim them across the river.

Thursday, July 13th. Breaking up our encampment at an early hour, we descended, when the branch nearest to us again assumed an open character tolerably free from rocks; but after a short time we were again forced by a ridge of sandstone, about twenty feet high, which here formed the bank of the river, to
ascend the higher ground. We thus obtained a clearer prospect over the whole valley, which at this spot attains a breadth of from four to six miles, the ground being open, and the view only for a short time shut in by a dense grove of gerredli and talha trees.

Farther on the river afforded a very wild spectacle, a sketch of which is represented in the plate opposite. In the distance before us the iron gates of Akarimbay became visible, bordered by the high sandy downs of Tidejittfen; a grand mass of rock, like an immense artificial wall, with a strong northerly dip, started up from the creek; and from the extensive grassy island of Ans6ngho similar masses appeared, which rose to an elevation of from seventy to eighty feet. Gradually the shore became more stony and barren, forming a plain called Erirar-n-tgsawel by the Tawirek, and Farri by the Songhay. We passed a deserted hamlet which had formerly been inhabited by the Tde-Mu'sa, and here the river again approached nearer on our left, but after a short time it again receded and became obstructed by ledges of rocks, especially at the place called Taz6ri, where an uninterrupted ridge of cliffs breaks through the surface of the water. Even at this season of the year it leaves a small channel beyond the grassy shore, which evidently connects the open water above and below the rapids.

About 1500 yards below this ledge, in a southeasterly direction, we reached the iron gates of Akarimbay, where the river, or at least this westerly branch of it, is forced through between two considerable masses of rock, at present from thirty-five to forty feet high, and about as many yards distant from each other. On the right the sandy downs rise to a considerable elevation opposite a large hamlet, situated on the island Ans6ngho, and adorned with dim palms.

Following a southeasterly direction, in a short time we reached the place where the several branches into which the river had divided at A'dar-andirren again join; but being full of ledges and rocks, at least in the present low state of the water, they exhibited a wild and sombre aspect. The river, however, does not long retain this character, and a little more than half a mile below it widens to a broad and tolerably open sheet of water, the shore, which hitherto had been clothed only with the gloomy fernin, being now beautifully adorned with an isolated tamarind-tree, which (together with the d-im palms on the island of Ans6ngho) might well serve as a landmark to people who would attempt to ascend this river. But the hills, which ascended to a height of 300 feet, approached so closely the bank of the river that we were obliged to ascend the steep slope, which was thickly clothed with fernin, and, being torn by many small water-courses, scarcely afforded a passage for the camels.

Descending from the slope, we reached the Teauwent, or place of embarkation of Burre, a hamlet lying on the opposite shore, but at present deserted, where the river forms only a single branch, from 800 to 900 yards wide, and a little farther on about 1000, and on the whole unobstructed, with the exception of a few rocks near the shore. Having here passed a rocky cone, projecting into the river, we encamped near a cluster of ant-hills, formed by and adorned with the bushes of
the Cappari sodata; but it was a very inauspicious place, as the camels, not finding food enough in the neighborhood, were, through the negligence of A'bbega, lost in the evening, and it cost us the whole forenoon of the following day to find them again. When we at length started, I was obliged to yield to the wishes of my companions, who, in order to obtain some supplies for their journey, were most anxious to halt near a small farming village of a P611o settler, Mohammed-Sidi, a distant relation of Mohammed-Jubbo, who had settled here several years before among Tawirek and Songhay; and my friends, having been informed that this person was a pious and liberal man, felt little inclination to forego such an opportunity of receiving a few alms. Having encamped on a high ground rising to considerable elevation, we had an extensive view over the river, which was here again broken by rocky islets and intersected by ledges, so that, seen from this distance, in several places it appeared almost lost. Beyond, on the other shore, across this labyrinth of rapids and divided creeks, filling a breadth of two to three miles, were seen the two mountains of Ay6la and Tikanaziten, where, in the time of the chief Kiwa, a bloody and decisive battle was fought between the Dinnik and the Awelimmiden. Toward the south, on the contrary, a fertile and well-cultivated plain, bordered by low hills, where the crops of native millet were just shooting forth, stretched out, nothing but retem and fernin breaking the monotonous level. The hamlet of our host consisted of only six huts; but the district did not seem to be uninhabited, and in the course of the day a considerable number of Fibe and Songhay collected around us, and troubled me greatly, begging me to impart my blessing to them by laying my hand upon their head, or spitting into a handful of sand, and thus imbuing it with full efficacy for curing sickness, or for other purposes. Even the river did not seem quite destitute of life and animation, and the previous evening, while I was enjoying the scenery, seated on the cliffs at some distance from our camping-ground, two boats filled with natives passed by, and procured me an interesting intermezzo.

Saturday, July 15th. The good treatment that we received here seemed to please my companions so much that they tried to detain me another day by hiding one of their camels behind a bush and pretending it was lost. When at length I had found it, and was on the point of setting out to pursue my journey, a very heavy thunderstorm broke out; and, although I persisted in proceeding, the rain became so violent that I was obliged to halt for fully an hour near some bushes that protected us a little from the heavy gale which accompanied the torrents of rain. Here, also, the river was obstructed by a great number of rocks, while the adjacent grounds were partly cultivated, but only sparingly clad with trees, till, after a march of a couple of miles, rich talha-trees and gerredh began to appear; but even here groups of rocks cropped out from the surface. Thus keeping along at some little distance from the river, we encamped shortly after noon at the foot of a sandy eminence, and were very glad when we were enabled to dry our wet clothes and recruit our strength with a dish of mohamsa.
Having ascended the rising ground in order to obtain a view

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of the mountains on the opposite shore, I went down to the river and enjoyed the wild scenery of the rapids, which here also obstructed its course, forcing this westerly branch to a velocity of perhaps six miles an hour, intersected by flat cliffs, which at present were only a few feet out of the water. A fine belt of trees lined the bank at a short distance from the edge of the river, the islands also being clad with rich vegetation, and, altogether, the locality seemed to me worthy of a slight sketch, which has been represented in the plate opposite. I had hitherto looked in vain all along the shore for traces of the elephant, but I discovered that this part is visited by them in great numbers. The place is called Tiboriwen. Having indulged in quiet repose for several hours, we were joined by our companions, who, seeing that I was not to be detained by their tergiversations, were anxious to come up with us.

Sunday, July 16th. Keeping a short distance from the river, first in a more winding, and then in a southwesterly direction, we entered, after a march of three miles, more undulating and fresher pasture-grounds; but stony ground soon began to prevail, although without entirely excluding vegetation. Here, before we reached the cape called Imminan, meaning the fish-cape, the several branches of the river united, while a grassy lowland was attached to the higher bank which bounds the river during the period of its inundation. This fresh grassy tract, full of herbage and trees, was a while interrupted by the high ground attached to the cape; but as soon as we had left the naked hills behind us, we descended into a lovely little valley or ravine, which in a winding course led us to the beach of the river, which here formed a magnificent reach; but a little farther on, at a place called Ekeziriden, it was broken by a ledge of rocks, which stretched almost across its whole breadth, and, at this season at least, made it totally unnavigable. A short distance beyond, a second ledge set across the river, while a little farther on a rocky islet, overgrown with rich vegetation, caused the stream to divide. The bank itself now became stony, mica slate protruding every where, and we ascended a small ridge, which formed a higher cone at some distance on our right, while on our left it formed a promontory jutting out into the river. The whole district is called BMting.

Having descended from this small ridge, we approached nearer the river, which was here tolerably free from rocks, and then en-

I}

THE I'MEL'IGIGIZEN.

tered a dense but short tract of forest, full of the dung of the elephant, and traces of the footsteps of the banga, or hippopotamus. Here we had to cross several water-courses, at present dry, one of which is called Galndu, and is said to be identical with the Biggoma, which we had crossed with so much difficulty before
reaching the town of A'ribfnda. But rocky ground soon prevailed again, and another promontory jutted out into the water, the river, which on the whole has here a southwesterly direction, being once more broken by cliffs.

A little farther on we encamped opposite a hamlet called Waigun, which was just building, while another one of the same name was lying a little higher up the river. However, we derived no advantage from the neighborhood of this little centre of life, for, having no boat at our disposal, we were not able to communicate with those people ourselves, and they, on their part, felt little inclination to make our acquaintance, as they could not expect that we should be of much use to them, except in lightening their stores. My companion, the K61 e’ Suiki, with shouts endeavored to intimate to the people that their sovereign lord, Boz6ri, was himself present; but this artifice did not succeed. The I'meliggizen, or their slaves, who dominate both shores, are ill-famed on account of their thievish propensities, and we protected ourselves by firing a good many shots in the course of the night.

Monday, July 17th. Pursuing our course at an early hour, generally in a southwesterly direction, we reached, after a march of about four miles, a fine running stream, about twenty-five feet broad and fifteen inches deep, traversing a beautifully fresh vale, the slopes of which exhibited traces of several former encampments of the Tawirek. It joins the river at a spot where it forms an open and unbroken sheet of water, and greatly contributes to enhance the whole character of the scenery, although, about 1200 yards below, it was again broken by a ledge of rocks crossing almost the whole breadth of the river, but mostly covered by the water, even at the present season. About 500 yards below this ledge a small island lies in the midst of the river, occupied almost entirely by a village called Kitubu, consisting of about 200 snuglooking huts, which were most pleasantly adorned by two beautiful tamarind-trees. But the peace of the inhabitants appeared to have been disturbed, as they had probably heard our firing during the night, and were therefore on their guard. Five or six boats, filled with men, lay around the island at various distances, most

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

probably spying out our proceedings, although some of our party thought that they were fishing.

We here left the beach for a while, and ascended the higher ground, which rose to a greater height, cutting off a curve of the shore. The river, farther on, was again broken by a ledge of rocks, but so that a passage remained open on the side of A'ussa; and shortly afterward the various branches joined, and formed a fine noble reach. The country now became more hilly and better wooded, being clad with retem, besides k6rna and hijilfj. Numerous ponds of water were formed in the hollows, and antelopes of various species, including that called "didarit," were observed. Leaving then a path leading to a place called Tkala, situated at a distance of about fifty miles inland, in a southeasterly direction, we reached, about a quarter past ten o'clock, the highest point of this undulating ground, from whence we obtained a view over a wild and gloomy-looking forest region, behind
which the river disappeared, after having inclosed a well-wooded island called Sakkengwen.

From this higher ground we descended into a fine rich vale, the vegetation of which was distinguished by a few busdsu, ighanit, or tamarind-trees. Emerging from this richly-clad valley, we again obtained a sight of the river-if river it can be called-for, seen from hence, it looks almost like an archipelago or net-work of islands and rocky cliffs in the wildest confusion, the river foaming along through these obstructed passages; for, just as it turns round a cape, which juts far out to the N.N.W., and is continued under water toward the opposite shore in a long reef of rocks, forming a sort of semicircle, it is broken into several branches by a number of islands, through which it makes its way, as well as it is able, over cliffs and rocks, in such a manner that along this southwesterly shore there is no idea of navigation even during the highest state of the river, but on the A'ussa side it is more open, and renders navigation possible, although even there caution is evidently necessary. I have no doubt that this is one of the most difficult passages of the river. The name of the cape is E’m-nishib, or rather E’m-n-ishid, "the cape of the ass."

Having passed a place where the most westerly branch forms a small waterfall of about eighteen inches elevation, foaming along with great violence, we encamped on the slope of the green bank, adorned with fine herbage and luxuriant hijiltj, in full view of this wild scenery. I made a sketch of it from the highest ground.

WITHOUT A GUIDE.

near our halting-place, which is occupied by a small cemetery, the locality having been formerly enlivened by a hamlet of the I'melfggizen, of the name of Lebbezeya. This encampment was also important to me, as I here had to take leave of our guide, Mohammed K6l e’ Saiki, whom I had vainly endeavored to persuade to accompany me as fax as Say, although he would have had no objection to have fulfilled his promise, if our other guide, HammaHamma, had not broken his word and staid behind, for, alone, he was afraid to trust himself to the Fd5lbe. It was, moreover, his intention to proceed from here on a visit to his friends the Udilen. Convinced, therefore, of the justice of his arguments, I gave him his present, although I missed him very much, as he was an intelligent man, and had given me some valuable information.

CHAPTER LXXX.

DENSER POPULATION BEGINS.

Tuesday, July 18th. The beginning of our journey without a guide was not very fortunate; for, having set out first from our encampment, endeavoring to cut off the great windings of the river, with my camels and my three freed blacks, my companions, in the dawn of the morning, lost the traces of my footsteps upon the
grassy undulating ground, and it was some time before they joined me. The ground became at times stony, talha, gerredh, and other spices of mimosas being the predominant trees; and after a march of eight miles, we had to ascend another ridge, clothed with thick forest, where the kuika, or tgdumt, the monkey-bread-tree, which I had not seen for so long a time, was very common. This was an almost certain sign of the locality having once been a centre of human life, but at present only the traces of a former ksar, or hamlet, were to be seen. Having then crossed a small "rek" or "faire," that is to say, a barren, naked plain, we descended again, while the desolate character of the country continued, and the only signs of human life which we observed were the traces of two men, with three head of cattle, probably robbers from the other side of the river, who were returning to their haunts with their booty. But gradually the country assumed a more cheerful aspect, being clad with large trees, and exhibiting evident signs of former cultivation, while isolated masses of rock were projecting

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

here and there. The country altogether was so pleasant, that, having met with a shallow pond of water in a trough-like cavity of the grassy ground, we decided on encamping, for it was with great difficulty that I was able to drag on my companions more than fifteen miles a day at the utmost. However, we had scarcely pitched our tents, when we became aware that our camping-ground close beyond the belt of trees with which it was girt was skirted by a small rivulet, which, although full of rocks, was yet so deep that it afforded sufficient room for crocodiles or alligators, and was not fordable here. It was a pity that we had not a guide with us who might have given us some clear information respecting the features of the country, for the conjecture of my companions,* who fancied that this rivulet took its rise to the south of ll6mbori, where it was called A'gel6, was quite absurd if it be correct that the Galindu, which we had crossed the preceding day, was really the lower course of the river near A'ribinda; but it is very difficult to say how these courses correspond, and nothing is more likely than that the same watercourse may join the Niger by several openings. As it was, we had a long dispute as to the manner in which we should cross this water, and the following morning we had to take a tedious roundabout way to get over it. After a march of two miles from our starting-point we reached a crossway. We followed the advice of the WAd~wi, who, having taken the lead at the moment, chose the path to our left, though that on the right crosses the rivulet at this spot; but in the end it was perhaps as well that we did so, as otherwise we should scarcely have been able to ford it. We therefore continued our march after my companions had finished their prayers, which, as we always set out at an early hour, they used to say on the road. The open pasture-grounds were here broken by large boulders of granite, while the rivulet, girt by fine large trees, approached on our right, or at least one branch of it, the river dividing near its mouth into a delta of a great many smaller branches.
Among my companions, the Hartgni Mdleki, who had visited the countries of M6si and B.mbara, possessed some interesting information concerning unknown or little known districts of these regions; but, unfortunately, he had something very uncouth in his manner, which prevented my learning from him all that would have been possible under other circumstances. This day I wrote down, from his information, the name of the pagan tribe of the Nenmer, who are settled between the Tombo and B~mbara, besides that of the Norma, who are chiefly settled in two places, one of which is called Pdira.

AYORU AND ITS CULTIVATION.

We here changed our direction, keeping parallel along the shore of the great river, where, on a rocky island, was situated the village of Ay6ru, or Airu, from whence a troop of about twenty people were just proceeding toward their field-labors. Most of them were tall, well-made men, almost naked, with the exception of a white cap and a clean white cotton wrapper. Two or three of them wore blue tobes. Their weapons consisted of a bow and arrows or a spear, and their agricultural implements were limited to a long-handled hoe of a peculiar shape, such as is called jerrin by the Arabs, and kimbul by the Songhay. But, besides a weapon and implement, each of them bore a small bowl, containing a large round clod of pounded millet and a little curdled milk, which they hospitably offered to us, although it constituted their whole supply of food for the day. We rewarded them with a few needles and by repeating the fat-hi, or opening prayer of the Kuran.* It was, moreover, very fortunate that we had met them just here, as, if not directed by their information, we should scarcely have been able to cross without accident these numerous creeks, some of which were of an extremely boggy nature, and others obstructed by rocks, which caused us considerable delay; for the principal branch or g6ru of the rivulet was not less than about thirtyfive yards broad and about two and a half feet in depth, with a rocky bottom. Fine busuisu, or tamarind-trees, and wide-spread duw6, or fig-trees, adorned the delta, while a good deal of a kind of grain called "adel6nka," or "donh6re," was cultivated in the fields. Having at length left this difficult delta of small rivulets behind us, which may occasionally cause great trouble to a traveler, we ascended sandy downs, and obtained from thence a view over the whole valley, which here rather resembles a large well-timbered fiddama than a river, only a small open branch becoming visible, not obstructed by rocks. The district exhibited a good deal of cultivation, the fields of Ayoru extending for more than two miles, and the low shore of the creek was adorned farther on by a rich profusion of kenya, or teddmunt. The richly-wooded islands afforded a very pleasant sight, one of them being enlivened by a great number of horses, which were left here to pasture, and the shore formed one uninterrupted line of tamarind-trees. But the navigation may be very difficult here, as from time to time the river, or at least as much as we saw of it, became greatly obstruct.* They informed us that Kulman was six hours' distance from here.

* Among my companions, the Hartgni Mdleki, who had visited the countries of M6si and B.mbara, possessed some interesting information concerning unknown or little known districts of these regions; but, unfortunately, he had something very uncouth in his manner, which prevented my learning from him all that would have been possible under other circumstances. This day I wrote down, from his information, the name of the pagan tribe of the Nenmer, who are settled between the Tombo and B~mbara, besides that of the Norma, who are chiefly settled in two places, one of which is called Pdira.

514

AYORU AND ITS CULTIVATION.

We here changed our direction, keeping parallel along the shore of the great river, where, on a rocky island, was situated the village of Ay6ru, or Airu, from whence a troop of about twenty people were just proceeding toward their field-labors. Most of them were tall, well-made men, almost naked, with the exception of a white cap and a clean white cotton wrapper. Two or three of them wore blue tobes. Their weapons consisted of a bow and arrows or a spear, and their agricultural implements were limited to a long-handled hoe of a peculiar shape, such as is called jerrin by the Arabs, and kimbul by the Songhay. But, besides a weapon and implement, each of them bore a small bowl, containing a large round clod of pounded millet and a little curdled milk, which they hospitably offered to us, although it constituted their whole supply of food for the day. We rewarded them with a few needles and by repeating the fat-hi, or opening prayer of the Kuran.* It was, moreover, very fortunate that we had met them just here, as, if not directed by their information, we should scarcely have been able to cross without accident these numerous creeks, some of which were of an extremely boggy nature, and others obstructed by rocks, which caused us considerable delay; for the principal branch or g6ru of the rivulet was not less than about thirtyfive yards broad and about two and a half feet in depth, with a rocky bottom. Fine busuisu, or tamarind-trees, and wide-spread duw6, or fig-trees, adorned the delta, while a good deal of a kind of grain called "adel6nka," or "donh6re," was cultivated in the fields. Having at length left this difficult delta of small rivulets behind us, which may occasionally cause great trouble to a traveler, we ascended sandy downs, and obtained from thence a view over the whole valley, which here rather resembles a large well-timbered fiddama than a river, only a small open branch becoming visible, not obstructed by rocks. The district exhibited a good deal of cultivation, the fields of Ayoru extending for more than two miles, and the low shore of the creek was adorned farther on by a rich profusion of kenya, or teddmunt. The richly-wooded islands afforded a very pleasant sight, one of them being enlivened by a great number of horses, which were left here to pasture, and the shore formed one uninterrupted line of tamarind-trees. But the navigation may be very difficult here, as from time to time the river, or at least as much as we saw of it, became greatly obstruct.* They informed us that Kulman was six hours' distance from here.

515
ed by rocks. It was pleasing to observe that we had at length entered more
hospitalable regions, for a short time after we left behind us the fields of Ay6ru
cultivated ground again succeeded, and apparently very well kept.
Having then turned round a swampy gulf we ascended higher ground, and now
obtained a view of the remarkably wild scenery of the river which attaches to the
island of Kendaji and the rocky cone Wirba, which had been in sight all the
morning, and encamped, at half-past eleven o'clock, on a rising ground at some
distance from the island. The river here presented a very wild character, so that it
almost seemed as if the navigation was interrupted entirely. Between the island of
Kendiji and the rocky cone there really does not appear to be any passage open,
but beyond the island there are evidently two more branches, and, as far as it can
be seen from here, they are not nearly so much obstructed by rocks. The village
seemed to be of considerable size, the huts covering the whole surface of the
island; but, at the time of our arrival, not a living soul was to be seen, with the
exception of an unfortunate man who was lamed by Guinea-worm, all the healthy
people having gone to the labors of the field. But in the course of the afternoon
the scenery became pleasantly enlivened by the arrival of a numerous herd of
cattle and a flock of sheep, belonging to Fulbe settlers in the neighborhood, that
were brought here to be watered.
Gradually, also, the inhabitants of the village returned from their labors, and
began to give life to the scenery, crossing over to their insulated domicile in small
canoes. Others, in the company of their chief, came to pay us a visit. The latter
was a man of tall, stout figure, but of not very intelligent expression of
countenance, and, as it appeared, not of a very liberal and hospitable disposition,
for he received the eloquent address of my noble friend the Widawi, who adduced
all the claims which he and his party had upon the chief's hospitality, very coldly,
answering through the medium of a Pilló fiki who had been staying here for some
time, and rather laying claim himself to a handsome present than acknowledging
the demands made upon him by my companions for hospitable treatment. The
most interesting feature about this petty chief was his name, which reminded one
of the more glorious times of the Songhay empire, for he called himself "Farma-
Erkezu-izze;" "farma" being, as I have said on a former occasion, the
princely title of a governor; "izze" means

THE I'MELI'GGIZEN.
son, Erkezu being the name of his father. It was also highly interesting to me to
observe that these Songhay, the inhabitants of Kendaji as well as those of Ay6ru,
call themselves, in their native language, Kido (in the singular) and Hibe (in the
plural form), a name which the Filbe have made use of to indicate, in general, the
Khelini, or the native black population of all the regions conquered by
themselves; and it seems almost as if the latter had taken the name from this tribe.
Besides these Songhay, we also received a visit from a Tirki gentleman of the
name of Misakh, son of Elldkken, and nephew of Sinnefel, the chief of the
I'melggizen of 'Aribfnda. These people are on hostile terms with their brethren in
A'ussa, where the populous district Amira is situated, and thus, fortunately, undermine their own strength, which is only employed in the way of mischief, although they are still strong enough to lay heavy contributions upon the poor Songhay inhabitants of these distracted shores. They had levied, the preceding year, a tribute of four horses on the people of Kendiji, and a camel, together with a quantity of corn, upon those of Ay6ru. But although our guest, who was accompanied by two or three followers, was a rather decent young man, nevertheless the neighborhood of these Tawgrek inspired us with just as little confidence as the behavior of our friends the Songhay on the island, and we kept a good watch, firing the whole night. Nothing is more probable than that Park had a serious quarrel with these islanders.

Fortunately, we were not disturbed; and we set out from our camping-ground at a very early hour, in order to make a good day's journey, but we were first obliged to search about in the two hamlets which lie opposite the island, and one at the very foot of the rocky cone of Wdrba, for the guide that had been promised to us the preceding day. We had scarcely set out fairly on our march when a heavy thunder-storm, rising in the southeast, threatened us with a serious deluge, and obliged us to seek shelter under some trees to the right of our path. We then unloaded the camels, and endeavored to protect ourselves and the luggage, as well as possible, with the skins and mattings; but the storm was confined to a very violent gale, which scattered the clouds, so that only very little rain fell. Having thus lost almost two hours of the best part of the day, we proceeded on our march, not now digressing to the right and left, but following a broad, well-trodden path, which led us through carefully cultivated corn-fields,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
shaded with fine hijilf. But soon the ground became more undulating, and we followed a sort of backwater at some distance from the principal branch of the river, and then crossed a cavity or hollow where calcareous rock interrupted the granite. The river also, in its present low state, laid bare a good many rocky islets, and farther on divided into five branches, over which, from the rising bank, we obtained an interesting view, with a cone, on the A'ussa shore, toward the north. One of the islands was handsomely adorned with duim palms, while the shore was clothed with a plant called "hekik."

This district appeared to be extremely fertile, and its populous state, after the desolate region which we had traversed, seemed the more remarkable; for soon after, having passed a small hamlet, we had on the opposite shore the considerable place Tornre, and just beyond, on an island, another village called Fichile, densely inhabited, and full of life and bustle. Scarcely had we passed this busy place on our left when another hamlet appeared, called Koch6mere, and it was most gratifying to behold the river, which, during the greater part of our journey, had seemed to roll its mighty stream along without the least use being made of it, covered with small canoes, which carried over to our shore numbers of people who were going to the labors of the field. The bank itself also became here beautiful by a variety of luxuriant trees, such as the kgwa, the dingi, the balire, the
hijilij, and others of various species, the hijil-j, especially, exhibiting here a very luxuriant and rich growth. A sort of shallow grassy creek separated from the bank a low island, which, during the highest state of the inundation, is under water. Two miles beyond Torndre the character of the country changed, and deep sandy soil, clothed with the herbage called rodim, and destitute of trees, succeeded to the fine arable soil; but after a march of about a mile cultivation again appeared, and even extended over the hilly chain which we ascended. We then passed a slave village called Gandfitan, belonging to the Tirki chief, Mohammed el Amin, where numerous horses were seen grazing in the fields, distinguished by the kind of herbage called by the Arabs el deb6di, in which my companions were delighted to recognize an old friend of theirs, as growing also plentifully in the A'beras of Tim. buiktu. Crossing the plain, where we met several travelers, we began to ascend the slope of a promontory called E'm-Aliwen, and soon reached the residence of the chief just mentioned, who

CAMP OF ERATAFA'NI.

is the head of one of the two divisions of the Eritaffini. The village consisted of 150 to 200 huts of matting, with a larger and a smaller leathern tent in the centre; but as it did not offer any cool shade, being perched on the bare hot gravel overlying the rock, we thought it very uninviting, and preferred descending the steep eastern slope, upon the narrow slip of the low shore which stretched along the river, and which, being richly clothed with bhjifj, bauire, and other trees, offered a very pleasant resting-place. We were, however, not allowed to enjoy much repose, but were soon visited by the whole male population of the village, Tawirek and Songhay, full-grown men and children, who gathered round us with great curiosity, but without entering into close conversation, as they did not know what to make of me, and scrutinized suspiciously what my real character might be, my companions passing me for a sheff. Later in the afternoon, the chief himself, who had not been present on our arrival, paid us a visit, and behaved in a very becoming manner, so that I made him a present of half a lithm, while I distributed a quantity of needles among his people. The place was tolerably well supplied with provisions, and I bought a good supply of butter and rice; but milk was scarce, although I succeeded in bartering a small quantity for some dates, of which these people were extremely fond. A little below our encampment, on the low shore, there was a farm, and on the island nearest the shore two small hamlets; for the branch of the river, which in general appears to be of considerable depth, was studded with green islands, which stretched out lengthwise in two parallel rows, being of the same height as the bank on which we were encamped, and which at present formed a steep descent to the shores of the river of about ten feet, rendering the watering of the horses very difficult. It was only with the utmost exertion that we rescued one of them which fell into the stream.

The whole district is said to be greatly infested by lions, and we saw the remains of four horses which a single individual of that species had torn to pieces the preceding day; but, notwithstanding the strength and ferocity of this animal, I was
assured by all the inhabitants that the lion of this region, like that of A'ir, has no
mane, and that its outward appearance was altogether very unlike that beautiful
skin upon which I used to lie down, being the exuvie of an animal from L6gone.

Friday, July 21st. On our way hither the preceding day we had

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

been overtaken, near the village of Ganditdan, by a band of some three or four
Songhay people, who had rather a warlike and enterprising appearance, and were
very well mounted. Having kept close to us for some time, and spoken a great
deal about my arms, they had disappeared, but at a very early hour this morning,
while it was yet dark, and we were getting our luggage ready for the day's march,
they again appeared, and inspired my companions with some little fear as to their
ulterior intentions. They therefore induced the chief of the Erdtaffini to accompany
us for a while, with some of his people on horseback, as they were well aware that
the Songhay, who at present have almost entirely lost their independence, can not
undertake any enterprise without the connivance of the Taw6rek; but as for
myself, I was not quite sure who were most to be feared, our protectors, or those
vagabonds of whom my companions were so much afraid; for, although the chief
himself seemed to be a respectable man, these people, who are of a mixed race of
Tawirek and Songhay, do not appear to be very trustworthy, and I should advise
any traveler in this region to be more on his guard against them than against the
true Tawirek. But, under the present circumstances, when they accompanied us on
the road, I thought it better to tell them plainly who I was, although my
companions had endeavored to keep them in the dark respecting my real
character. They had taken me for a Ghadimsi merchant, who wanted to pass
through their territory without making them a suitable present. After I had made
this confession they became much more cheerful and openhearted, and we parted
the best of friends. The cunning Widwi.also contributed toward establishing with
them a more intimate relation by bartering his little pony for one of their mares.
Nothing renders people in these countries so communicative, and, at the same
time, allays their suspicions so much, as a little trading.

Having separated from our friends, and made our way with some difficulty
through a tract of country partly inundated, we at length fell in with a well-
trodden path, where on our right a low hilly chain approached. Here a little duim
bush began to appear, and farther on monkey-bread-trees adorned the landscape;
but the river, after having approached for a short time with its wide valley, retired
to such a distance that, not having provided a supply of water, we began to suffer
from thirst. I therefore rode in advance, and chose a place for a short halt during
the midday heat, where a sort of fiddama, which during the highest state of

ROCKY NATURE OF RIVER BED.

the inundation forms a considerable open sheet of water round an island thickly
clad with duim palms, indents the rising bank of the river, offering, even at the
present time, a handsome tank of clear water. The surrounding slope was adorned
with a fine grove of duim palms, and, protected by the shade of some rich hjillij, produced a great profusion of succulent herbage.

Having rested in this pleasant spot for a couple of hours, we pursued our march along this green hollow, at present half dried up, and feeding also a good many tamarind-trees, and after a march of about half a mile reached the spot where this shallow branch joins a considerable open arm of the river, which here is tolerably free from rocks. A little below, it is compressed between rocky masses projecting from either bank, intersecting the whole branch, so that only a narrow passage is left, inclosed as it were by a pair of iron gates formed by nature. Yet the navigation was not obstructed even at the present season, as a boat about thirty-five feet long, and rowed by six men, which went quickly past us, evidently proved. The path was lined with mushrooms, called by my companions tobl e ndgri.

This branch of the river presented a very different aspect when, after having ascended a rising ground, we had cut off a bend or elbow of the river, for here it formed a kind of rapid, over which the water foamed along, and from the circumstance of the boat having followed another branch, this locality did not seem to be passable at present. The low shores, which are annually inundated, and even now left swampy ground between us and the river, were cultivated with rice; the higher ground, rising above the reach of the inundation, bordered by a belt of damank6dda and thorny bushes, was reserved for millet; and beyond, the whole valley, which is here very broad, is bordered by a mountainous chain. The rocky nature of the river was farther demonstrated by a remarkable group of rocks rising from an island a little farther on, and affording a very conspicuous landmark; but, in general, this part of its course seems to be free from cliffs.

We had long strained our eyes in vain in order to obtain a sight of the large town of Sfnder, which we knew to be situated on an island, till at length, from a hilly chain which here borders the river, we obtained a fair sight of the whole breadth of the valley, and were able to distinguish an extensive range of huts spreading over one or two islands in the river. Here, therefore, we encamped at the side of a few huts, although it would have been more prudent, as we afterward found, to have chosen our encampment a little lower down the river, where a channel leads straight to the island of Sinder, with which we wanted to open communication; while, from the spot where we actually encamped, another considerable island town, called Garui, lies in front of it.

The whole valley, which is probably not less than from six to eight miles broad, and is studded with extensive islands, is very fertile, and tolerably well inhabited. The two towns together, Gard and Sfnder, according to the little I saw of them, did not seem to contain less than from 16,000 to 18,000 inhabitants, and are of the utmost importance to Europeans in any attempt to navigate the upper part of the river, as they must here prepare to encounter great difficulties with the natives, and at the same time ought here to provide themselves with corn sufficient to carry them almost to Timb-6ktu; for Sinder, which in some respects still...
acknowledges the authority of the Governor of Say, is also the market for all the corn used in this district. A large quantity of millet can at any time be readily obtained here, and during my journey was even exported in large quantities to supply the wants of the whole of the provinces of Zabrma and Dndina. Notwithstanding this great demand, the price was very low, and I bartered half a suniye of dukhn, equal to about two hundred pounds' weight, for a piece of black cloth, feruwi, or zenne, which I had purchased in Gando for 1050 shells, a very low price indeed, not only when we take into account the state of things in Europe, but even when we consider the condition of the other countries of Negroland. I was also fortunate enough to barter the eighth part of a lump of rock-salt from Taiddnni for eight dr'a of shish or muslin; but as for rice, it is difficult to be got here, at least in a prepared state, although rice in the husk, or k6kesh, is in abundance.

A great many people visited me, and altogether behaved very friendly. In this little suburb where we had encamped, there was staying a very clever fiki, belonging originally to the G-b6ro, and called Mohammed Sieh. To my great astonishment, I became aware that this man was acquainted with my whole story; and, upon inquiring how he had obtained his information, I learned that a pilgrim, named Mohammed Fidhl, a native of the distant country of F-6ta, who, being engaged in a pilgrimage, had undertaken the journey from Timbuktu along the river in a boat, had acquainted the people with all my proceedings in that place.

DATE PALMS.

This fiki also informed us of the present state of Hiusa. He told us that Di-id, the rebellious prince of Zerma, or Zab6rma, after his whole army had been cut to pieces by A'bbi el Hassan, had made his escape to Ye'lu, the capital of Dndina, where the rebels were still keeping their ground. Meanwhile 'Aliyu, the Emir el Mlmenfn, had arrived before Argdro, but, in consequence of his own unwarlike character, and a dispute with Khalflu, to whom that part of Kebbi belongs, he retraced his steps, without achieving anything worthy of notice. But I learned that, owing to the revolt continuing, the Dendi were still in open rebellion, and that, in consequence, the road from Timkala to Fogha was as unsafe as ever, although part of the Miuri had again returned to their allegiance.

I should have liked very much to visit the town of Sfnder, but, not feeling well, and for other reasons, I thought it more prudent to remain where I was; for, besides the fact that the governor himself is only in a certain degree dependent on the ruler of Say, there were here a good many Tawdrekg roving about, which rendered it not advisable for me to separate from my luggage; I therefore gave a small present to my companions, which they were to offer to the governor in my name. In consequence of this they were well received, and the governor himself came to meet them half way between the towns of Sfnder and Gari, and behaved very friendly to them.

Sunday, July 23d. After a rainy night, we left this rich and populous district in order to pursue our journey to Say. Keeping close along the bank of the river, our attention was soon attracted by some young palm bushes covered with fruit,
which caused a long dispute between my people and the followers of the sheikh, part of them asserting that it was the oil palm, while others affirmed it to be the date palm. This latter opinion appeared the correct one, considering that the oil palm does not grow at any distance from salt water; for on our whole journey through the interior we had only met with it in the valley of Fogha, which contains a great quantity of salt. This opinion was confirmed by farther observation, when we discovered the male and female seeds, which wanted nothing but the civilizing influence of man in order to produce good fruit. Without an artificial alliance of the male and female, the fruit remains in a wild and embryo-like state. Thus keeping along the shore, we passed several islands in the river, first Juntu, and at a short distance from it Bisse-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

giingu; farther on, K6ma and Bossa, adorned with a fine growth of trees; and about five miles from our halting-place, after we had passed a small hilly chain called Miri, the island of N-ne, which is likewise richly timbered. This island is remarkable on account of its being the birth-place of the great Songhay conqueror, HAJ Mohammed A'skia, or Sikkf6a.

Our march was the more interesting, as we were so fortunate as to be accompanied by the ffiki, Mohammed Sieh, whose acquaintance I had made during my stay near Garp. He was very communicative and social, and I regretted that I was not allowed to traverse in his company the whole territory of the independent Songhay in various directions. He dwelt particularly on the distinguishing character of Dargol, the principal seat of the free Songhay, especially the Koi-z6, with the remains of the royal family of the Sikkfk, of which several princes were still living.

My companion also informed me of the attack which the natives of Gurma, under the command of their chief, Wentinne, in conjunction with the Songhay, had made a short time previously upon the emir of the Torode, or Terobe. He likewise gave me an account of the extensive dominion of D6Ad, the grandfather of Omir, the present chief of the Eritaffin, who succeeded in founding a large kingdom, when he was murdered by a rival nephew, and all his power was annihilated.

Our sociable and well-informed companion now left us. A little lower down the river, on the opposite bank, are the villages of Tilla-b6ra and Tilla-kaina, which are governed by 'Othmin, a. relation of Mohammed Tondo. The whole country is undulating, covered with rank grass, and adorned with hMjil-j, and altogether left a pleasing impression; while here and there, Cultivated ground, with crops shooting up to the height of from two to four feet, gave some variety to the landscape. A little farther on, large monkey-bread-trees appeared; and beyond that, besides talha of a rather luxuriant growth, kalgo also became plentiful. The river was at some distance from the path, so that we encamped a little after noon in the midst of the forest, near a swampy pond full of herbage and musquitoes, and surrounded with large, luxuriant monkey-bread-trees and fine sycamores. I felt here extremely feverish, and was obliged to take a good dose of medicine.
Monday, July 24th. Having been detained by a heavy thunderstorm, we at length started, traversing a dense forest full of monkey-bread-trees, and extending about two miles. We then turned round a large swampy inlet, when a hilly chain approached on our right, and the shore of the river was clad with a rich bush called y'u by my companions. About two miles beyond, we reached a hamlet called A'zemay, spreading out on a hill, and encamped a short distance beyond, toward the southeast. The village is inhabited by Tawirek of the tribe of the Eritaffin, who have exchanged their nomadic habits for those of settlers, but without giving up their character or language. A few K61 e' S-6k live among them; but nearly half the population of the village consists of Filbe, of the tribe of the Zoghorin, this settlement presenting the remarkable instance of a peaceful amalgamation of these two tribes. But the Eritaffin, as I have stated above, have lost their former power, although under the dominion of Didd they held all the towns as far as Say under their sway. Notwithstanding their diminished power, they appeared to be well off, for not only were they dressed decently, but they also treated us hospitably with excellent furu, the favorite Hiusa dish of sour milk with pounded millet; and in the evening they sent a great quantity of pudding and milk, and a young heifer. I here provided myself with a supply of corn, as I had been given to understand that it fetches a high price in the market of Say. I found that the price already far exceeded that of Sinder, one feruwi of Gando buying only twenty-three k61 of millet; but my camels were extremely weak, and one had died the preceding night, so that I was not able to carry with me a greater supply. As for rice, none was to be had, and no cultivation of this grain was to be seen, although it might be supposed to succeed here, the river being wide, and forming a large island called Delluw6.

Tuesday, July 25th. The good treatment of the people of A'zemay made my companions rather unwilling to leave this place so soon, and a farther delay was caused by their bartering. When at length we set out on our march, we had to make a considerable detour, in order to avoid the lower course of a rivulet, which is here not passable. Our path lay through cornfields till we reached the village of Kasinni, consisting of two groups, one of which was surrounded by a keffi, or stockade, and inhabited by Filbe; the other was merely a slave hamlet. Rich cornfields, shaded by fine trees and broken by projecting rocks, extended on all sides. Close beyond this hamlet we crossed a little rivulet called TUderint by the Tawirek, which in this spot, although only twenty-one feet wide and a foot in depth, caused us a short delay, owing to its banks rising to the height of about ten feet. But, inconsiderable as was the size of the river, it became important to me, as in crossing it my ear was greeted for the first time by the usual Hiusa salute, which I had not heard for so long a time, and which transported me once more into a region for which I had contracted a great predilection, and

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

...
which, among all the tracts that I had visited in Negroland, I had found the most agreeable for a foreigner to reside in.

We then continued our march through the district of G6te, which is chiefly adorned with the monkey-bread-tree, till we reached a small village called B6se, which is inhabited by the tribe of the Koi-zd, or Koiziten (who came originally from Damg6t). It consisted entirely of the kind of huts which are usual in Hiusa, and manifested that we had left the Songhay architecture behind us. But, although it possesses a small mosque, most of the inhabitants, together with the head man himself, are idolaters. Here we were hospitably treated with a bowl of ghusub-water, while I had to give the people my blessing in return. Two miles and a half beyond B6se lies the village of Hend6bo, on a small branch of the river. We encamped a short distance from it, in the shade of a luxuriant duw6, on a ground rising slightly from the swampy plain opposite the island Barma-g-dngu, which is situated a little farther in the midst of the river, which here, from N. 200 W. to S. 200 E., changes its course to a direction from N. 200 E. to S. 200 W.

The island is adorned with diim palms, and is the residence of the chief of the Kortf6ta, or Kort6be, whose real name is Slfmmin, or Solimin G6ro Kdse-izzle, the son of Kiise, but who is generally known in the district under the name of Solimin Sildi. My companions, who were very anxious not to neglect any great men of the country, had determined to pay this chief a visit, in order to try to obtain a present from him. But the eloquent Widiwi and his companions did not appear to have succeeded with these islanders, for they returned with rather dejected spirits from their visit to the chief, who showed us not the slightest mark of hospitality. But from another quarter I myself, at least, was well treated, for the inhabitants of a small island in the river brought me a plentiful supper in the evening, consisting of prepared millet, a couple of fowls, and some milk.

Wednesday, July 26th. Traversing the swampy ground, after a 526

THE RIVER SIRBA.

march of half a mile we reached again the direct path, keeping at some distance from the bank of the river, which, although divided into several branches, exhibited a charming spectacle in the rising sun. Cultivated ground and wilderness alternated, and the monkey-bread-tree appeared in great abundance; but farther on the duw6 and keny6 began to prevail; the islands in the river also, as Nasfle and Ler, being richly clad with vegetation.

However, the district did not seem to be very populous, and the only village which we passed on the main was Sh6fre, surrounded by a stockade, where we endeavored, in vain, to obtain a little milk. We left, at a distance of several miles to the west, the town of Larba, which, as I have mentioned on my outward journey, is inhabited by a warlike set of people greatly feared by their neighbors; but at present we heard that the ruler of that town, of the name of Bito, had lately returned from Say, to whose governor, A'bui Bakr, he was said to have made his submission, although it is probable that his only intention had been to keep free that side, in order to be undisturbed in his proceedings against the chief of the Tor6de, or T6robe.
Altogether the region presented a very interesting feature, when, close behind the village of Gurbeguri, we reached the River Srba, with which, in its upper course, we had first made acquaintance at B6se-bdngo, but which here had a very different character, rushing along, in a knee-like bend, from southwest to northeast, over a bed of rocks from sixty to seventy yards across, and leaving the impression that at the time when it is full of water it is scarcely passable. But at present we found no difficulty in crossing it, the water being only a foot deep. Nevertheless, the Sfrba is of great importance in these regions, and we can well understand how Bello could call it the 'All Bibi, of the small rivers. Ascending then the opposite bank of this stream, we obtained a view of a hilly chain ahead of us, but the country which we had to traverse was at present desolate, although in former times the cornfields of the important island town Koirwa spread out here. However, we had a long delay, caused by another of our camels' being knocked up, so that we were obliged to leave it behind; an unfortunate circumstance, which afforded a fresh proof of the uselessness of the camels of the desert tract of A'zaw6d for a journey along the banks of the river.

The country improved greatly after we had crossed a small hilly chain which approached on the right, but it did not exhibit any traces of cultivation, the inhabitants having taken refuge on the other side of the river. We also passed here a pretty little rivulet of middle size, girt by fine trees, and encamped close beyond the ruins of a village called Namiro, opposite the village of Kuttuk6le, situated on an island in the river. The place was extremely rich in herbage, but greatly infested by ants, and, in consequence, full of ant-hills; but we only passed here the hot hours of the day, in order to give our animals some rest, and then set out again just as a thunder-storm was gathering in A'ussa, on the opposite side of the river.

The sheet of water is here broad and open, forming an island, and does not exhibit the least traces of rocks. The shore was richly clad with vegetation, and a little farther on seemed even to be frequented by a good many people, but they did not inspire us with much confidence. Meanwhile, the thunder-storm threatening to cross over from the other side of the river and reach us, we hastened onward, and encamped on the low and grassy shore, opposite a small village called Wintila, situated on an island full of tall diim palms, which, however, at. present, was only separated from the main by a narrow swampy creek. However, we had a sleepless night, the district being greatly infested by the people of Larba. The governor of this place, as we now learned, was then staying in the town of Karma, which we had just passed, and from whence proceeded a noise of warlike din and drumming which continued the whole night.

At an early hour, therefore, the next morning we set out, keeping at a short distance along the river, the ground presenting no signs of cultivation, while the steep slope on the opposite bank almost assumed the character of a mountain chain, the highest group being from 800 to 1000 feet in height, and called Binggwi by our guide, while he gave to the succeeding one the name of Wigata;
the most distant part of the chain he called Bdibo. At the foot of this ridge lies the
village of Tagabita, which we passed a little farther on.

Enjoying the varied character of the scenery we continued our march rather
slowly, an ass which my companions had bartered on the road lagging behind and
causing us some delay, when we entered a dense underwood of thorny trees which
entirely hemmed in our view, while on our right a hilly chain approached, called
from a neighboring village Senudgbd, exactly like the French settlement on the
Falgm6 in the far west.

AN ALARMING ADVENTURE.

Proceeding thus onward, we suddenly observed that the covert in front of us was
full of armed men. As soon as they became aware that we had observed them,
they advanced toward us with the most hostile gesticulations, swinging their
spears and fitting their arrows to their bows, and we were just going to fire upon
them, when we observed among them my servant, the Gatr6ni, whom a short time
before I had sent to fetch some water from the river. This fortunate circumstance
suddenly arrested our hostile intentions and led to a peaceable understanding. We
were then informed that, obtaining a sight of us from a hill while we were still at a
distance, and seeing six armed horsemen, they had taken us for a hostile host, and
had armed themselves; and it was very fortunate for my servant with whom they
first met, as well as for ourselves, that one of them understood a little husa, and
was able to make out from his description the nature of our undertaking. But for
this, we should perhaps have been overwhelmed by numbers. The first troop
consisted of upward of 100 men, all armed with bow and spear, and round black
shields, many of them wearing a battle-axe besides; and smaller detachments were
posted at short intervals up to the very outskirts of their village. They consisted of
both Songhay and Fiiilbe, and the greater part wore nothing but leathern aprons.
They wanted us to accompany them to their village, but we did not feel sufficient
confidence in them to do so, and we were glad when we got rid of them. On this
occasion I had another proof of the warlike character of my Arab companion.'Ali
el A'geren, who, as long as there was any danger kept at a respectful distance
behind the camels, but, as soon as he saw that all was over, he rushed out his little
pony in the most furious manner, and threatened to put to death the whole body of
men, so that I had great difficulty in appeasing him. Probably, if we had had a
serious encounter, he would have turned his horse's head, and I should never have
seen him again.

When we continued our march, we were gratified to see a wide extent of ground
covered with fine cotton plantations; on our left, where the river again
approached, much kharrwa, or berkinde, appeared. Farther on, fields of millet
succeeded to the cotton plantations, and the cultivation now continued without
interruption, extending to the slope of the hills, while on the other side of the river
five villages appeared at short intervals. We then entered upon hilly sandy ground,
but even this less favored tract was covered with fine crops. I had made it a rule,
owing to the weak
ness of my camels, which required a good feed, always to encamp at some
distance from a larger place, and we therefore chose our camping-ground about
two miles on this side of the town of Bifrni, among monkey-bread-trees and hijilij,
at a short distance from a swampy creek of the river. Our encampment, however,
became unpleasant in the extreme, as we had to sustain here a very heavy
thunder-storm, accompanied by violent rain.
All the inhabitants of this district are Filbe, or Songhay speaking the language of
the Fdlbe, the conquering tribe of the latter beginning to prevail here almost
exclusively. All of them wear indigo-dyed shirts. We also met here an old man,
originally belonging to the tribe of the Udilen, a section of Imghid, or degraded
Tawirek, but at present in the service of a Pdllo, who, assisted by his slaves, was
just getting his harvest into the town of Birni, where he invited us to follow him
on the approach of night.
Friday, July 28th. Having lost the greater part of the morning in order to dry
ourselves and our animals, we continued our march straight upon a kind of defile,
which seemed almost to hem in the passage along the river. The bank here
exhibits a peculiar feature, and the locality would be of the highest importance if
the state of the country was in any way settled, for the hilly chain on the right
closely joins a group of rocky eminences which nearly approaches the river, and
opening toward it in the shape of a horse-shoe, leaves only a very narrow passage
between the southeasterly corner of this semicircle of the hills and a detached
cone rising close over the brink of the river, the latter being likewise full of rocks.
On the slope of the amphitheatre, called Sire-g6ru, about half way up the height,
lies the village or town of Birni,* presenting a very picturesque spectacle,
notwithstanding the frail character of the dwellings.
Even beyond this passage only a small border is left between the slope of the hills
and the river, especially behind the little village of Kollarnte, which is separated
by a small ravine into two distinct groups, and very pleasantly situated in a fine
recess of the

* There is no doubt that this was formerly a place of considerable importance"
and commanded the whole of the surrounding district, as the masters of this defile
had at the same time in their hands the whole intercourse along the shore. In this
respect the name Bifrni is not less remarkable than that of Sire-g6ru, both "bfrni,"
as well as "sire," being the names given to cities, or large walled places, in various
negr languages. Sdre-g6ru means the rivulet or channel (g6ru) of the city (sire).

ISLAND OF BE'-GU'NGU.
hills; at the same time, busy scenes of domestic life attracted our attention. Here
the shore formed a bend, and the river glided along in a slow, majestic, and
undivided stream, but a little farther on formed two islands, and on the main we
observed again that cotton was cultivated. Traversing then a swampy plain,
covered with several large farms belonging to people of the Kort6re, we reached a
small detached chain on our right, called Kirogiji, distinguished by three separate
cones. Cultivation here is carried on to a great extent, and the number of horses
scattered over the plain afforded a tolerable proof of the wealth of the inhabitants, and we passed the residence of a rich farmer, called U’ro-M6dibo, " iro" being the P-illo term for a farm, and "m6dibo" the title of a learned gentleman. At the village of Siga also, which, a little more than two miles farther on, we left on our right, beyond swampy meadow-grounds, numbers of horses and extensive cotton plantations attracted our attention.

Three miles beyond Siga we encamped near a small rivulet lined with luxuriant trees, of the species called gamji or ganki, at the foot of the hills, the slope of which was covered with the richest crop of millet, and crowned with two villages inhabited by Fidlbe of the tribe of the Bitink6be, the river forming a rich and populous island called B6-gdingu. This place is the residence of a sort of emir of the name of Bite, to whom my companions paid a visit, and obtained from him a supper and a small viaticum.

Saturday, July 29th. We made a very interesting day's march. The hills, which are here crowned with the various hamlets, form a bend closely approaching the river, and the path wound along the slope, which was intersected by several ravines full of rocks and trees, and afforded a beautiful view over the stream. Descending from this slope, we kept along the bank, richly adorned with kenya, or nelbi-trees, the river spreading out in one unbroken sheet, interrupted only by a few isolated masses of rock. We here crossed a broad channel or dry water-course starting forth from the hilly chain, and called G6rul-tilk6il, or G6ru-k6re. This water-course my guide, probably erroneously, indicated as a branch of the river Sirba. It was succeeded by several others, one of which, distinguished by its breadth, was called G6rul-luggul. The bank of the river at this spot was cultivated with great care, and we passed several farming villages, one of which, called Lell6li, was the residence of a young P11o woman who had at-
only a border a few feet in width was left, and this narrow strip was beautifully adorned with dunkutrees, the dark green foliage of which formed a beautiful contrast with the steep white cliffs behind them. The leaves are used by the natives for making a kind of sauce and for seasoning their food, like those of the monkey-bread-tree. Farther on, underwood of arbutus succeeded. The rocky ledge was interrupted, for a short time exhibiting the aspect of a crumbled wall, but farther on again assumed the shape of precipitous cliffs, although less regularly stratified than in its northwesterly part.

This steep range of cliffs is called by the natives "Yuri." Just where it began to fall off and to become smoother we were obliged to leave the margin of the beautiful stream, which, near the bank apparently descended to a great depth, in order to ascend the higher ground; for here the land juts out into the river in the form of a broad promontory, the whole slope being covered with fine crops, which were just approaching to ripeness. Thus we reached the farming village, or rmde, belonging to Fittia Imim,

ARRIVAL AT SAY.

or, as the name is generally pronounced, Mam Fittti, a wealthy PO, who possesses also a farm in the plain at the foot of the promontory close to the river. Here we encamped on the southeast side of the village, where the ground afforded good pasture for the camels.

I had been reposing a while in the shade of a small k6ma, when my people informed me that they had discovered on the slope of the hills a spring of living water, and I was easily induced, by the novelty of the phenomenon in this region, to accompany them to the spot.

The whole slope is about 500 feet high, and the view from this point across the river is extensive, but toward the southeast it is obstructed by the hills rising in that direction to a greater elevation. This culminating point of the ridge we ascended the next morning, when we found that the highest level expanded to an open plain, well clad with bush and grass and a rich supply of corn, although the crops did not exhibit here the same luxuriant growth as on the slope of the hills.

Proceeding then for a mile along this level, we reached a small village, in the court-yards of which, besides sesamum, a little mekka, as it is here called, or ghaffili-misr, was cultivated. Here I, together with my horsemen, started in advance of my train, in order to prepare our quarters in the town of Say, as we had a good day's march before us. The country here became adorned with gonda bush, of which we had entirely lost sight during our whole journey along the upper course of the Niger. Having passed the larger village D6go, where with some difficulty we obtained a drop of milk, and having traversed a richly-cultivated district, we descended into the valley of Say, along the rugged cliffs which bounded it on the west. But the greater part of the valley was covered with water to such a degree that we became entangled every moment in a swamp, and therefore preferred again ascending the cliffs and keeping along the higher border. In this northerly part the rocky slope attained in general a height of 150 feet, but gradually began to decrease in elevation. About half an hour before noon we changed our direction, and made across the swampy bottom of the valley,
traversing two more considerable sheets of water, the first of three, and the second of two and a half feet in depth.
Thus we approached the town of Say, which was scarcely visible, owing to the exuberant vegetation which surrounded its wall on every side, and which exhibited a most remarkable contrast to

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
that dryness and monotony which characterized the place on my former visit. The town itself was at present intersected by a broad sheet of water, which seemed almost to separate it into two distinct quarters. I at length reached the house of the governor, where I, as well as my horse, were cheerfully recognized as old acquaintances. I was quartered in the same little hut in which I had resided more than a year previously, but a considerable change had been made in its arrangement. The comfortable little sleeping place of matting had been restored, and was very acceptable in the rainy season, more especially as it did not entirely preclude a current of air, while it enabled me to put away all my small treasures in security.

CHAPTER LXXXI.
SECOND RESIDENCE IN SAY.-JOURNEY THROUGH DE/NDINA AND KEBBI.
HAVING rested a while in my hut, I, with my companions, obeyed the summons of the governor, and found our poor old friend, A'bdi-Bakr, in the very same room where we had left him more than a year previously. He was now quite lame in consequence of his disease of seli, but looked a little better than on the former occasion, and I soon had an opportunity of admiring his accurate knowledge of the country; for when A'hmed el Wdawi had read to him the kaslif or poems addressed by my friend El Bakgy to the Emir A'hmedu, and began to relate some of the more remarkable incidents of our journey, he was corrected every moment in the nomenclature of the places by the governor, who appeared to possess the most accurate philological knowledge of all the spots along the river as far as T6ndibi, where he had been obliged to turn his back on his voyage up the Niger. He apparently took great interest in the endeavor of the sheikh to open a communication with the Fulbe of Gando and S6koto, and expressed his deep sorrow that on his former voyage he was prevented by the hostile behavior of the chief El Khadir from reaching Timbuktu, when my companions assured him that the sheikh, on the first news of his approach, had sent a messenger in order to insure his safety from the Tawirek.
Even if we do not take into account this attempt of his, there

MARKET OF SAY.
is no doubt that the Governor of Say is of the utmost importance in the endeavor to ascend this river, and it is only to be lamented that he has not greater means, pecuniary and military, at his disposal, in order to draw from the favorable position of his province all the results possible. Altogether, his circumstances at
this moment, especially in consequence of the rebellion of the Province of D6ndina, were rather poor. At the same time, his own debilitated condition prevents him from exerting his power, and can only tend to increase his political weakness. The rather inhospitable treatment which we received may thus be explained. Nevertheless, I made him this time a considerable present, including a red bernis of inferior quality, which I had kept back for the occasion. However, I was so fortunate, in acknowledgment for some medicines with which I endeavored to alleviate his complaint, as to receive from him a small piece of sugar, which was a great treat to me, as I had long been deprived of this luxury, there being none in the market; and when we left the place, after a stay of three days, he was generous enough to make my companions a present of a camel, of which they stood much in need.

The market was in many respects better provided than on our outward journey, but with this advantage was coupled the great disadvantage to me personally that, a large troop of Hiusa traders having recently arrived and richly supplied the market with the manufactures of that region, the prices at present ranged much lower, and for the very best indigo-dyed shirt I obtained only 6000 shells, while two others did not fetch more than 2000 each. Millet was plentiful, although by no means cheap, the third part of a sunlye, or twenty-four measures of Timbaku, being sold for 4000 shells, consequently twice or thrice as dear as in the latter place; but there was hardly any rice. There was not a single sheep in the market, nor any horned cattle, either for slaughtering or for carrying burdens; nor were there any dod6wa cakes or tamarinds; nay, even the fruit of the monkey-bread-tree, or kdika, was wanting; the only small luxury which was to be found in the market, besides the fruit of the diim palm, consisting of fresh onions, certainly a great comfort in these regions.

Such is the miserable character of this market, which, in such a position, situated on the shore of this magnificent river, and on the principal high road between Eastern and Western Negroland, ought to be of primary importance. It was with great delight that the feeble but well-meaning governor listened to my dis-
the river at present seemed only about five feet higher than it had been the previous year, a little earlier in the season, and the inconvenience must be greatly increased when the water reaches a higher level. It is a wonder that the town is not sometimes entirely swamped, although we must not forget that the river, the preceding year, had attained an unusual height, so that the water this year could scarcely have sunk to its average level before it had again commenced rising. The rocky cliff which obstructs the river about the middle of its course at present only emerged from the water about a foot and a half. According to all appearances it must sometimes be entirely submerged, so that vessels must be upon their guard in navigating this part of the river, especially as it is not improbable that there are more sunken rocks hereabouts.

It was with a deep feeling of satisfaction that I again crossed this magnificent river, on whose banks I had lived for so long a time, and the course of which I had followed for so many hundred itiles. It would have been of no small importance if I had been able to follow its banks as far as Yauiri, and thus to connect by my own inspection the middle course of this noble river with the lower part, as far as it has been visited by the Landers, and partly, at least, by various distinguished English officers. But such an undertaking was entirely out of the question, on account of the exhausted state of my means, the weak condition of my health, and the advanced stage of the rainy season, which made it absolutely necessary for me to reach S6koto as soon as possible;

and, what was still more, in consequence of the rebellious state of the Province of Dgndino, which at the time made any intercourse along the river impossible for so small a troop as I had then under my command. At this season of the year, moreover, it would be impracticable, even if the country were in a tranquil state, to keep close along the banks of the river.

This time also I had succeeded in crossing the river without any accident, with the single exception that a camel which belonged to one of my companions was so obstinate that it was found impossible to induce it to enter the boats, which were not of the same size as those of the preceding year. It was thus forced to cross the river by swimming alongside, and arrived in the most exhausted state, the river being about 900 yards across. The nearest village being too far off, we were obliged to encamp for the night on the gentle grassy slope of the bank, which, a little above and below the place of embarkation, forms steep cliffs of about 80 feet elevation. The evening was beautiful, and the scenery of the river, with the feathery diim palms on the opposite shore, was lovely in the extreme, and well adapted to leave on my mind a lasting impression of the magnificent watery high road which Nature has opened into the heart of this continent. Thus I took leave of the Niger.

Thursday, 3d August. We now commenced our journey along our former well-known path, which, however, in the richer garment of vegetable life in which Nature had decked herself out, presented now a very different aspect, and after a march of six miles we reached the village of Tôndiffi, surrounded by fine crops of
millet, which were almost ripe and of the very remarkable height of fifteen to twenty feet. In order to protect their property from the attacks of the numberless swarms of birds, almost the whole population was scattered through this forest-like plantation, and kept up such a continual noise and clamor that it had quite an alarming effect, more especially as the people were concealed from view.

Having then kept along the fiddama as far as the village of Tanna, we left our former route for a more northerly direction, and after a march of five miles reached the miserable remains of a hamlet called Jidder, which the preceding year had been ransacked and entirely destroyed by the Jermbe, as the inhabitants of Zerma, or Zabórma, are called by the F-61be. But the fine crops around testified to the natural fertility of the soil. In this

TRAVEL IN AFRICA.

village, which has a well surrounded by diim palms, it had been our intention to halt; but, through a ridiculous misunderstanding of my Møjebri companion, who never could shorten the march sufficiently, but who this time was punished for his troublesome conduct, we continued on, and, leaving the village of Hari-bango at some distance on our right, did not reach another hamlet till after a march of about five miles more. This place, which is called Minge, had been likewise ransacked by the enemy in the turbulent state of the country, and exhibited a most miserable appearance; but here also there was a good deal of cultivation, and I was not a little astonished at finding, in such a desolate place, a man who was retailing meat in his hut, but on farther inquiry it proved to be the flesh of a sick animal, a few head of cattle having remained in the possession of the inhabitants.

In order to avoid sleeping in the dirty huts, I had pitched my tent on the grassy ground, but was so much persecuted by a species of hairy ant, such as I had not observed before, that I obtained almost less sleep than the preceding night on the banks of the Niger, where musquitoes had swarmed.

Friday, August 4th. This day brought me to Tmkala; my camels pursuing a shorter and I a more circuitous route, but both arriving at the same time at the gate of this town. It had been my intention from the beginning to visit this place, but the turbulent state of the country had induced me the year before to follow a more direct road, and I did not learn until now that on that occasion A'bu' el iassan, as soon as he heard of my approach, had sent four horsemen to Girbo in order to conduct me to his presence, but they did not arrive till after I had left that place.

The town of Tmkala, which gives great celebrity to this region, had suffered considerably during the revolution of Zabórma; and if the bulky crops of native corn (which were just ripe) had not hid the greater part of the town from view, it would most probably have presented even a more dilapidated appearance; for not only was the wall which surrounded the place in a great state of decay, but even the house of the governor himself was reduced almost to a heap of ruins. It was rather remarkable that, as I approached the building, a female slave, of rather light yellowish color, saluted me, the white man, in a familiar manner, as if I had been a countryman and co-religionist of hers. She belonged, I think, to a tribe to the south of A'damiwa.

Having then paid our respects to the governor, we returned to
our quarters, which, although not so objectionable in themselves, were so closely surrounded by the crops that we could scarcely find a spot to tie up our horses; and the huts were so full of all sorts of vermin that I scarcely got a moment’s repose during my stay here. Besides the common plague of different species of ants and numberless swarms of musquitoes, to my great surprise I found the place also full of fleas, an insect which I had not seen since I had left Kidkawa, and which formerly was believed to be entirely wanting in Negroland. Thus I had sufficient reason to lament that I had here been obliged to take up my quarters inside the town, the place being situated at the brink of a swampy valley, the dallul Bosso filled at present with water and diim palms, and the crops surrounding the wall so closely that no space was left to pitch a tent. It was just market-day, but besides meat, sour milk, tobacco, and pepper, nothing was to be got. Millet was very dear; indeed, the poor state of the market was well adapted to confirm the report that the greater part of the inhabitants were subsisting on the fruit of the diim palm. However, I had no affairs to transact in this town besides paying my compliments to the governor, and therefore was not compelled to make a long stay. But my business with the latter was of rather a peculiar character, the people assuring me that he was very angry with me for not having paid him a visit the previous year. My companions, the followers of the sheikh, even wanted to make me believe that he objected to see me at all; but I entertained a strong suspicion that this was only a petty trick played by them to further their own interest; for, being supplied by the sheikh with a present for this governor, they wanted to claim for themselves all the merit of the visit. Having declared that if the governor did not want to see me, he should certainly not obtain a present from me, I very speedily obtained an audience, and was so graciously received that I could scarcely believe that he had entertained any hostile feeling toward me, for on my entrance he rose from his seat, or divan, made of reed, and met me at the door. Responding to his cordiality in the most friendly manner, I told him that only the most urgent circumstances and the advice of my own guide, the messenger of Khalflu, had induced me the preceding year to act contrary to my own well-determined principle, which was to make friendship with all governors possessed of power and authority along my road, and that, in consequence

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

of his warlike disposition and straightforward and chivalrous character, he had become known to me long before, and occupied the first rank among those whom I intended to visit. My speech, backed by a tolerable present, made a very favorable impression upon the governor, especially when he understood that it was I who had induced the sheikh to honor him with a mission; and he entered into a very friendly conversation, admitting that the Jermibe, or the inhabitants of
Zerma, had really pressed him very severely the last year, till he had at last succeeded in vanquishing their host and killing a great number of them. We then read to him the letter of the sheikh, who bestowed great praise upon my character, and recommended me in the most favorable terms. Sidi A'hmed made a most eloquent speech, especially as regarded the sanctity and learning of his master, who, he said, was very anxious to establish peaceable intercourse along the Niger, and wanted A'bu el Hassan to prevent the Berber tribe of the K6l-ger6s and Dinnik from continuing their predatory expeditions upon the territory and against the people of Alkiittabu. The energetic governor, feeling flattered by these compliments, took very graciously the hints which my eloquent friend threw out, that, besides his other noble efforts, the sheikh had no objection to having homage paid to his exalted position by a small number of decent presents; and two of the pupils of the sheikh, Mohammed ben Mukht6r and Mileki, were pointed out to him as the persons who would remain here, in order to receive at his hand the presents destined for the sheikh at the earliest possible opportunity. This whole business having been transacted in the presence of only one or two of his most confidential friends, the governor had all his courtiers again called in, when Sidi A'hmed read to them the poem in which the sheikh had satirized the chief of Hamda Alfi6hi, A'hemdu ben A'hemdu, on account of his not being able to catch me, which caused a great deal of merriment, but of course could only be appreciated by those who had a very good knowledge of Arabic, of which the greater part of the audience probably did not understand a single word. It was rather a curious circumstance that these people should express their satisfaction at the failure of an undertaking of their own countrymen. Altogether A'bu el Hassan made a favorable impression upon me. He was by no means a man of stately appearance or of commanding manners, and his features wanted the expressive cast which in general characterizes the Fdlbe; and being destitute of any beard, he looked much younger than he really was, as his age can certainly not be much under sixty. His skin was very fair, and his dress of great simplicity, consisting of a shirt and turban of white color, the red bernnis which my companions had presented to him only hanging loosely from his shoulders. He is a native of the island of Ansongho, where his forefathers were settled from ancient times, and it is entirely owing to his personal courage and his learning that he has reached the position he now occupies. A'bd el Hassan seems fully to deserve to be under the orders of a more energetic liege lord than the monkish and lazy Khalilu, who allows his kingdom to be shattered to pieces, and in any attempt to ascend the Niger the Governor of Tmkala is of considerable importance. The principal weakness of his position consists in his want of horses, as he is thus prevented from following up the partial successes which he at times obtains over his enemies. Having thus met with fall success in our transactions with the governor, we left the audience-hall (which struck me by its simple mode of architecture), consisting of a long narrow room covered with a gabled roof thatched with reed, such as are
common in Yoruba. On returning to my quarters I distributed my last presents among those of my companions who were to remain here, and handed them a letter for the sheikh, wherein I again assured him of my attachment to his family, and expressed the hope that, even at a great distance, we might not cease to cultivate our mutual friendship.

It had been our intention this time to choose the road by Junju, the place which I have mentioned before as lying on the northern part of the course of the dallul Miuri; but the governor advised us urgently to avoid this place, which, being only of small size, and not strong enough to follow a certain line of policy, was open to the intrigues of friends as well as enemies.

Sunday, August 6th. Before we started the governor sent me a camel as a present, but I gave it to my companions, although my own animals were in a very reduced state. There was a good deal of cultivation along the track which we pursued, but the irregular way in which the crops had sprung up did not seem to testify to any considerable degree of care and industry: but my people argued that famished men, like the distressed inhabitants of this town, did not possess sufficient energy for cultivating the ground.

Following a southerly direction, we approached nearer the border of the dallul or rill, the surface of which alternately presented higher or lower ground, the depression being of a swampy character. Toward the east the valley was bordered by a chain of hills, rising to a considerable elevation, on the top of which an isolated baobab-tree indicated the site of a place called G'aw6, by which the road leads from Timkala to Junju. Gradually the cultivation decreased, and was for a time succeeded by dim bush, from which a very fine but solitary gamji-tree started forth. However, the country farther on improved and began to exhibit an appearance of greater industry, consisting of cornfields and small villages, half of which indicated by their names their origin from the Songhay; others pointed to Mlusa. All of them were surrounded by fine crops, and one called BomMo-h6gu was furnished with a small market-place. It was a cheering incident that an inhabitant of the village of Gatara, which we passed farther on, gave vent to his generous feelings by presenting me with a gift of fifty shells, which I could not refuse, although I handed them to my companions. It was here also that we met the only horseman whom we had seen in the province. They had rather an energetic and stately appearance. Having passed a small marketplace, situated in the midst of the cornfields, and at present empty, we reached the village of Bishi, where we expected to find quarters prepared for us, but were only able, after a great deal of delay, to procure a rather indifferent place.

We were glad to meet here a native traveler or mai-falkW, from Wurn6, who communicated to us the most recent news from Hlusa and Kebbi, although very little was to be told of the chivalrous deeds of the two great Follani chiefs, 'Alfyu and Khalflu, both of whom were accelerating the ruin of their nation. About an hour after our arrival we were joined by a native duke, who, according to the arrangement of the Governor of Timkala, was to perform the journey through the
unsafe wilderness of F6gha in our company. This man was 'Abdii serkf-n-Chfko, lord of Chfko, or, to speak correctly, lord of the wilderness; his title or "riwani" (properly shawl or turban) being just as empty and vain as many others in Europe, the town of Chfko having many years previously been destroyed by the enemy. But, whatever the hollowness, of his title might be, he himself was of noble birth, being the son of 'Abd e' Salim,* who was well known as being once the independ* The original residence of 'Abd e' Salim had been K6ri, from whence he had carried on war with 'Othmgn for five years.

A HA'USA NOBLEMAN.

ent master of the important and wealthy town of J6ga, which had made so long and successful resistance against 'Othmin, the Jihdi; Bokhiri, the present ruler of that place, was 'Abdi's brother. Besides his noble descent, the company of this man proved to be interesting, for he displayed all the pomp peculiar to the petty Husa chiefs, marching to the sound of drums and horns. He was richly decked out with a green bermauis, and mounted on a sprightly charger, although his whole military force numbered only three horsemen and six archers; and his retinue had by no means a princely appearance, consisting of a motley assemblage of slaves, cattle, sheep, and all sorts of encumbrances. But, notwithstanding this empty show, he was a welcome companion on the infested road before me, and when he paid me a visit in my hut, I at once presented him with a fine black riwan, thus confirming on my part the whole of his titles. He at once proceeded to give me a proof of his knowledge of the world and of his intelligence, and I found sundry points of resemblance between him and Mohammed-B6r6, my noble friend of A'gades. Having been joined here also by two attendants of 'Abd el Kideri, a younger brother of Khalflu, there seemed to be a sufficient guarantee for the safety of our march. The village where I fell in with tuese people was rather poorly supplied with provisions, and neither milk nor any thing else was to be got, and, owing to the number of musquitoes, repose was quite out of the question.

Monday, August 7th. A moderate rain which came on in the morning delayed us for some time. Our route lay through a rich country, at times exhibiting traces of careful cultivation, at others left to its own wild luxuriant growth. Having passed the village of Belinde, which was adorned by numbers of ddim palms, and the extensive hamlet called U’ro-emfro, we entered more properly the bottom of the valley or rifi, being already at this season for a great part covered with swamps, which a month later render the communication extremely difficult, although at times the ground rises a few feet higher than the ordinary level. But, although this low ground is extremely well adapted for the cultivation of rice, very little was at present actually to be seen.

At length we thought that we had entirely left the swampy ground behind us; but about a mile and a half beyond the village Gerlije, which we left on one side, we had to cross a very deep and broad swamp, in which one of the last of my camels fell down and died. Three miles beyond, we reached the village of

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
Girbo, which was already familiar to me from my outward journey, although I was scarcely able to recognize it, so great was the change produced by the rich vegetation and the crops of millet and sorghum which had sprung up through the influence of the rainy season. But the inhabitants also, elated by the hope which the prospect of a rich harvest held out to them, exhibited a far more cheerful temperament than on my former visit, and immediately led me through the narrow lanes to the house of the emir, who received me in a hearty manner as an old friend. On entering into conversation with him, I was not a little astonished to find that he was acquainted with all the incidents of my stay in Timbuktu. He quartered me in the same small but neatly arranged hut where I had been lodged during my former stay, and from which I felt rather sorry to drive away the industrious landlady. The governor treated me in an extremely hospitable manner, sending me, besides milk and corn, even a small heifer, although I had made him only a very trifling present. His name is 'Abd el Wahb, and he is a brother of A’bu’ el Hassan by his father’s side, With such cheerful treatment we enjoyed our stay here very much, the weather having cleared up, and a rainy mowing being succeeded by a fine afternoon.

The friendly disposition of the governor was the more agreeable, as we were delayed here the following day, several of my companions being disabled by sickness, and the Serld-n-Chfko wanting to lay in a supply of corn for the road. I spent a great deal of my leisure time, thus involuntarily obtained, in the company of the latter, who detailed to me the incidents of the struggle of his family with the Jihidi, and dilated on the importance of the town of Jga, which is a market-place of great consequence, especially for rough silk, with which it supplies the whole of Zinfara, and even the distant market of Al6ri or I16ri. In fact, I am quite sure that the silk which has been obtained from the missionary station in Y6ruba is nothing but the selfsame article introduced into this country from Tripoli, and again exported from thence to Husa. In my conversation with this man, he mentioned a circumstance which struck me as peculiar, that the Husa people have no general name for the Songhay. Their only designation for them is Yammatiwa, meaning the western people, a term which is only used in opposition to Gabbestiwa, the "eastern people," without any regard to nationality.

Wednesday, August 9th. On leaving the village of Girbo we were induced to follow the traces of our Husa companion, and to ascend directly the steep rocky passage which we had turned on our former journey; but we found that this time also the proverb was confirmed, that "the more haste the less speed," for the passage proved so difficult that all the luggage fell from the backs of the camels, and caused us a great deal of delay. However, as soon as we reached the flat level of the forest, we proceeded onward without interruption till we had passed our former place of encampment. Finding no water here, we pushed on, but, unfortunately, on account of part of our caravan having gone on in advance, we were prevented from encamping before the storm, which had gathered over our heads during the afternoon, broke forth, when the whole ground was in a
moment so deeply covered with water that it was impossible to encamp. Thus, although drenched to the skin, we were obliged to keep on, in the most uncomfortable manner, till we found a little higher ground, where the branches of a sylvan encampment supplied us with the means of protecting our luggage against the extreme humidity of the ground. It is such encampments as these which are the cause of so much unhealthiness to travelers, and I did not feel at all comfortable until, with great difficulty, I had lighted a fire inside my wet tent, the rain continuing outside with increased violence. But the weather affected my people, who were less protected than myself, in such a manner that they were shivering with wet and cold in the morning, and we did not get off until a late hour.

Having met some energetic and warlike-looking horsemen from Fogha, and passing several small ponds, we descended a little, and then proceeding over the hilly ground, which was more scantily timbered, we gradually approached the remarkable valley of Fogha. As I had decided upon visiting the town of Kalfyul, I was obliged to change here my direction to the southwest, keeping along the side of the valley. The narrow footpath was now overgrown with rank grass, and the numerous salt-manufacturing hamlets were destitute of life and animation, and overgrown with vegetation. We were also glad, for the sake of the famished inhabitants of this district, to see the fields waving with tolerably rich crops, and a few cattle grazing about. Some animation was caused by an encampment of native traders which we passed, consisting of light sheds built of reed.

Proceeding thus onward we reached the town of Kalfyul, and were here received outside the gate by two horsemen, when I was

VOL. III.-M X

545

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

without delay quartered in a large and clean hut built of clay, and about thirty feet in diameter. I had scarcely made myself comfortable, when Serina, and the most respectable of the inhabitants, came to pay their compliments to me in the most cheerful manner, saluting me as an old acquaintance, and as an enterprising and successful traveler, while I, in my turn, complimented them on account of their having retrieved some of their losses by capturing a fine herd of cattle from the enemy. I was glad to see that they were not in such a famished condition as when I was here a year previously, and I gratefully acknowledged the moderate proof of hospitality which they were able to bestow upon me, consisting of a little tidwo, a large quantity of milk, and a few kobla nuts. I rewarded their kindness as well as I was able under my present reduced circumstances.

It was here that I learned with certainty the death of my friend the Vizier of Bérnu; for although the Governor of Say, when we read to him the general letter of recommendation which the Sheikh el Bak-y had written for me, had remarked that 'Omir was no longer ruler of Bérnu, and had thrown out some hints respecting the death of the vizier, those indications were too vague to be relied on; but now circumstances were mentioned in such a positive manner that I could no longer entertain a doubt as to the truth of the report, and it was with some anxiety
that I thought of Mr. Vogel and his companions, and my own affairs in the country of B6rnu.
Toward evening I wandered about a little, and found the town only scantily inhabited, although, as I have said before, the hamlets for manufacturing salt are almost deserted at this time of year, as no salt can be obtained as long as the bottom of the valley is covered with water. The situation of the place is of considerable strength, being defended not only by the wall on the east side, but also by a swamp on the west side, at least during part of the year, and it is this circumstance which renders it more intelligible how the inhabitants have been able to defend themselves against the repeated attacks of the revolted D6ndi. The greatest object of interest for me, and which would alone have rewarded a visit to the place, was a specimen of an oil palm, Elai8 Guineensis, quite isolated, but, together with some palm bushes of the same species, serving to prove that this palm can thrive, even in the interior, in localities where the soil is impregnated with salt, as is here the case, although in general it is as-

DE'BE. 547

sumed, and seems to be proved by experience, that it can not grow at any great distance from the ocean.
We had taken up our quarters inside the town in consequence of the statement of 'Abdid that we should be able to cross the valley at this spot, but, to my great disappointment, I learned that I should have to retrace my steps for some miles, as far as the spot where I had crossed the valley on my outward journey. In order, therefore, not to lose more time than was necessary, I left the place in the afternoon of the next day, intending to encamp beyond the valley at the entrance of the forest. After a good deal of opposition from my companions, I effected my purpose, being escorted out of the town by Serfina, with two mounted archers, and followed by all the people who wanted to take the same road; for as soon as they saw me marching out with confidence, they all followed, one after the other, and encamped close round my tent, which I had pitched on the eminence above the valley near the diim palms, as if it were a talisman to protect them against any attack; and midnight had scarcely passed, when the drum of 'Abd-6 was heard in the distance, indicating that he also did not tarry. But in consequence of the laziness of my people, whom the numbers of musquitoes had scarcely allowed to close their eyes, he arrived before we had prepared our luggage, so that we did not get off until three o'clock in the morning; and, owing to a pack-ox belonging to 'Abdi having fallen down in the narrow path in the forest, we lost another hour before we could fairly proceed.
Marching then onward without farther delay, we reached, half an hour before noon, the site of Dgbe, in the dense thicket of the forest, which was inundated with water, and made a short halt, without dismounting, in order to allow the Hiusa people to drink their furi. There were about one hundred fat-ki or native traders, most of them bearing their little merchandise on pack-oxen or asses, but some of them carrying it on their heads as dan-garunfu. Having refreshed ourselves, we continued our march, but,
frightened by a thunder-storm which was gathering over our heads, encamped near a shallow pond of water. However, there was but little rain, and we had a tolerably quiet evening. Here also we suffered greatly from the musquitoes, which, together with the extreme insecurity of the communication, are the great drawback to the full enjoyment of a journey through Kebsi.

Sunday, August 13th. About two miles from our starting-point,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Having slightly ascended, we had again to descend the steep rocky passage, the rising ground before us, with its dense timber, appearing like a chain of mountains. Having then ascended again, we reached the tebki, or pond, which I have mentioned on my outward journey, and being thirsty, we all went to drink, but found the water so abominable that all my companions from Timbiktu were attacked with serious illness, especially Sidi A’hmmed, who was seized suddenly with such a severe attack of fever that he declared the water to have been poisoned. But although it is not totally impossible that the enemy might have poisoned the pond—form which they knew that all the passers-by supplied themselves with water—with some herb or other, I think that its unwholesome character was caused in the same manner as the water of the brook near U’ro B6leng, which had made one of my companions and myself ill on a former occasion.

Having again descended a rocky passage, we passed the site of a former encampment of Sultan Bello, which he used as his headquarters when he destroyed the towns of D6be and K-dka. The sight of this place, together with the remembrance of the ruinous warfare which had proceeded from thence, gave my companions an opportunity of expatiating on the great strength of Kebsi in former times, when the whole of Guirma, with all the Soughay places as far as Tra, were subject to them; but I never heard that the dominion of this country, or of any province of Husa, had ever extended as far as Timb-dktu. Proceeding then cheerfully on, we reached the first monkey-bread-trees at the border of the forest, and were greatly delighted at the sight of the fine herds of cattle belonging to the inhabitants of Tilli, with the rich crops, part of which was already cut in order to satisfy the most urgent wants of the population. The whole district, together with its fine timber, which had now put forth its utmost exuberance of foliage, left a very pleasing impression.

Thus we reached the town of Tilli, but the western gate being very narrow, we had to turn round half the circumference of the wall in order to reach the eastern entrance; but, having at length penetrated into the interior, we were lodged close to the western gate, where we had arrived an hour previously. I had thus the advantage of getting a good insight into the relations of the population of this place, and found the town to be much better off and more densely inhabited than Zogfrma. But while the governor of the latter town ranks like a petty sultan, and has some cavalry

548

THE SWAMPY GU’LBI-N-SO’KOTO.
under his command, that of Tilli is a mere mayor, without rank or authority. The present governor, whose name is Biiba-Sadfki, enjoyed still less authority from personal reasons, as he was prostrated with the same illness which had lamed the Governor of Say. This "seA.i" or rheumatism, as I have stated on former occasions, is a kind of disease of which every African traveler who exposes himself a great deal during the rainy season, particularly along swampy regions and in leaky boats, is very susceptible. I suffered dreadfully from it after my return to B6ru.

While the t6lamfd of the sheikh went in person to the governor in order to alleviate, if possible, his enfeebled state by means of their prayers and blessing, I made him a small present and he sent me some rice in acknowledgment. The little market was tolerably well supplied, and I was very glad to find here, besides sorghum, the large wholesome onions of Gando, and some dod6wa, sour milk also being in considerable abundance; and it was interesting to observe how much more cheerful all the inhabitants were under the present circumstances than they had been the previous year. I should have liked very much to have paid my compliments to my friend of Zogirma, in order to see how he was going on after being relieved from a great part of the anxiety which appeared to oppress him the year before; but, fearing the delay, I resolved to make direct from here to Birni-n-Kebbi.

Monday, August 14th. We had heard already on our journey that we had arrived at the very latest time in order to cross, with any degree of safety, the swampy fiddama of the gdlbi-n-S6koto, which a little later in the season is extremely difficult to pass. At all events, it was very fortunate that no rain had fallen for the last few days, or we should have experienced considerable difficulty in crossing this swampy ground; even as it was, we had to traverse three sheets of water, the first of which was about three feet deep and of considerable breadth, the second forming the real bed of the river, running with a southwesterly bend toward the Kwkra, although not so wide as the former, and the third forming a stagnant creek. Having passed some rice-fields, we at length, after a march of little more than three miles, emerged from the swampy bottom of the valley, and ascended rising ground covered with the fine crops belonging to the inhabitants of Diggi, and soon after left the town itself on our right, which, from our former journey, had remained in our remembrance, as we had here been met by the chivalrous sons of the Governor of Zogrma.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Here dukhn and durra were grown promiscuously in the same field, affording a proof that this ground is well adapted for both kinds of cultivation. Having here fallen into our former road, I hastened on in advance along the well-known path toward Birni-n-Kebbi, which, however, now exhibited a different character, on account of the whole country being covered with tall crops; and turning round the walls of K61a, we reached the gate of Birni-n-Kebbi. The aspect of this town had likewise undergone an entire change, but not to its advantage; the town, which of itself is narrow, being still more hemmed in by the crops. For the
moment, the place had certainly a rather desolate appearance, the greater part of
the inhabitants being engaged in an expedition led on by 'Abd el Kideri, or, as he
is commonly called, 'Abd el Kideri-ay, a younger brother of Khalilu. As I rode up
to the house of the migaji or governor, Mohammed Lowel, he was just sitting in
his parlor with a few of his people, when he, or rather his attendants, having
recognized me as his old acquaintance 'Abd el Kerim, came out to salute me in a
very cheerful manner. However, the expedition being expected to return the same
evening, there was no room for us inside the town, and we were obliged to seek
shelter outside, descending the steep and rugged slope to the border of the
fiddama, where we obtained, with difficulty, quarters for myself in an isolated
farm. The hut was extremely small, and full of ants; but the door was provided
with a peculiar kind of curtain, made of the leaves of the del-b palm, which,
while admitting access, entirely excluded the musquitoes, which infested this
place in enormous quantities. We were well treated by the owner or maigida of
the farm, in conformance with the orders which he received from the migaji, to
whom I sent a small present, reminding him of the larger gift which I had given
him the preceding year. His hospitality was the more acceptable, as the market
was very badly supplied, neither millet nor rice being procurable; sour milk also
was extremely dear, as, on account of the crops, and the quantity of water
covering the valley, the cattle had been all sent off to a great distance, into the
neighborhood of Gando.
Late in the evening the expedition returned, bringing about one hundred head of
cattle and thirty slaves whom they had captured from the enemy; but,
although the commander of the expedition was to return to Gando himself, I did not like to
wait for him, and started early the next morning along our old path, which
550
GULUMBE'-KO'CHI-JE'GA.
was -only distinguished at present by the quantity of water with which it was
covered, especially near the village Hiusiwa, where the whole shallow bed of the
valley formed one sheet of water three feet deep. A good deal of cultivation of
rice was at present to be seen. Thus we reached Gdumb6, where, this time, in
consequence of the quantity of rain that had fallen, inundating the ground outside
close up to the wall, I took up my quarters inside the town, and obtained tolerably
good lodgings, the court-yard being surrounded by a most exuberant growth of
vegetation and the finest timber; but the mayor did not treat us quite so well as I
expected, although I made him a present of a black shawl. The market here also
being badly provided, I had great difficulty in obtaining a sufficient supply of
corn for my horse.
We had scarcely left the narrow lanes of the town, with its extraordinary
exuberance of vegetation, when the rain set in, so that we were wet both from
above and below, the path either leading through tall crops or through pools of
stagnant water. The path farther on, according to the information which we
collected from people whom we met on the road, being entirely inundated, when
we reached that western branch of the fiddama, near the village of Badda-badda,
we followed a more southerly direction to the large open village K6chi, where we
intended passing the night. But it was with the utmost difficulty that we obtained lodgings, nor did we experience the least sign of hospitality; and while an immense quantity of rain fell outside, I was greatly tormented by the number of mosquitoes, which were insufficiently excluded from my hut by a stiff piece of leather hung before the door.

Thursday, August 17th. As soon as the weather allowed us we left this inhospitable village, and soon afterward entered forest, to which succeeded fine crops of corn. Four miles beyond K6chi we had to cross a large fiddama full of water, and intersected in the middle by a running stream, bordered by great numbers of water-lilies, and giving us altogether a fair idea of the difficulties attending traveling through this country at the present season of the year. A month later it would be entirely impassable for a European traveler encumbered with any amount of luggage. But the road was tolerably well frequented, and we were met by a long train of broad-shouldered, square-built I'pe females, each with a load of from six to eight enormous calabashes on her head, journeying to the Friday market of Jdga.

This is the important place which, under the command of 'Abd e' Salim, had made a long and successful resistance against the author of the reformatory movement of the Etlbe, and which, on account of its mercantile importance, had attracted attention in Europe a good many years ago; and although it has declined at present from its former importance, it was still of sufficient consequence to make me desirous of visiting it; but the great quantity of rain which fell at this time, by rendering the communication very difficult for loaded camels, prevented me from executing my design. A little farther on I met with one of those incidents which, although simple and unimportant in their character, yet often serve to cheer the solitary traveler in foreign countries more than the most brilliant reception. After having crossed a valley, we were ascending the last rocky passage before coming to Gando, when we met here a troop of men, and, as soon as one of them saw me in the distance, he broke out into the cheering exclamation, "Mirhaba, mirhaba, 'Abd el Kerfm." It was highly gratifying to me, when returning after a long absence to a place where I had resided so short a time, to be recognized immediately and saluted in so hearty a manner, although my stay in Gando was connected with many a melancholy reminiscence.

Here, on the top of the rocky eminence, we obtained a view of the valley of Gando, and, descending, soon reached the gate of the town, and straightway rode to the house of the monkish prince, where we were soon surrounded by a number of people, who congratulated me on my fortunate return. After a while there appeared also my tormentor, El Bakiy, which name now appeared to me as a mere satire, associating as it did this vilest of Arabs with that noble man who had showed me so much disinterested friendship. But when he again commenced his old tactics I immediately made a serious protest, declaring at once that the only thing which it was in my power to give him this time was a black tobe and a red cap, and this I assured him he should not get until the very moment when I was
about to leave the place. The dismal clay house where I had been lodged during my former stay in the place had since fallen in, and other quarters were assigned to me, consisting of a court-yard and two huts.

AWKWARD FATE OF A LETTER.
CHAPTER LXXXII.
SECOND STAY IN GANDO, SO/KOTO, AND WURNO'.
The quarters which had been allotted to me this time were at least a little more airy than my former ones. My former guide, Dahome, here paid me a visit. Upon asking him whether he had faithfully delivered to the m'allem 'Abd el Kider, in Sokoto, the parcel I had given him on his taking leave of me at Dore, he put on a rather sullen look, took from his cap a small leather case, opened it, and, drawing forth a dirty piece of paper, to my utmost surprise and disappointment, exclaimed, "Here is your letter!" I then learned that, in consequence of the violent rains through which he had had to make his way, and the many rivers and swamps which he had to cross, the whole envelope of the letter, containing the lines addressed to my friend in Sokoto, had been destroyed, so that the latter, receiving only the English letter, and not knowing what to do with this hieroglyphic, at length returned it to the bearer, who had since used it as a charm. Besides this mishap, which had delayed this letter so long, instead of its being forwarded directly to Europe in order to inform my friends of my proceedings, there was another disagreeable piece of information for me here, viz., that nearly the half of the huts composing the town had been consumed during my absence by a conflagration, and that all my books which I had left behind had in consequence been destroyed.

I staid four days in Gando, endeavoring once more, in vain, to obtain an audience from the prince, and to persuade my companions, the t6lamfd, to give up their hopes of a handsome present from this niggardly man, who sent me, if I may attribute the proceedings of his slaves to himself, in return for all the presents I had made him, a common black tobe and 3000 shells, although my supplies were totally exhausted, and the two camels which I still possessed were more or less worn out, so that I stood greatly in need of generous aid; but, not wanting any thing besides from the governor, I was thankful that I had passed unmolested through his extensive dominions on my outward as well as on my homejourney, and even protected, as far as his feeble power was able to grant protection.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
The town was no better off now than it had been a year before, the expedition against Argengo, of which I had heard on the road as being undertaken by 'Alfyu, having turned out a mere sham, and, in consequence, the pagan rebels being stronger and more daring than ever; and, just as was the case during my former residence, there was an expedition on a small scale every Tuesday and Thursday, made by the old people and the women, in order to collect wood with some degree of security. On the whole there was nothing of interest to record, except the remarkable quantity of rain which fell during my stay and which was said to have fallen before my arrival, confirming the impression already previously
received, in my mind that Gando was one of those places most abundantly supplied with the watery element; and it was highly interesting for me to learn from the people on this occasion that, as a general rule, they reckon upon ninety-two rainy days annually. I am quite sure that the average rain-fall in this place is certainly not less than sixty inches, but it is probably more than eighty, and perhaps even one hundred.

Wednesday, August 23d. I was heartily glad when I left this town, where I had experienced a great deal of trouble, although I could not but acknowledge that, if I had not succeeded in some degree in securing the friendship of the ruling men in this place, it would not have fallen to my lot to have reached even the banks of the Niger.

It is to be hoped that Khalflu will soon be succeeded by a more energetic prince, who will restore peace and security to the extensive dominions of which Gando is the capital. Under such circumstances, this town, on account of its mercantile connections with the provinces along the Niger, could hardly fail to become a place of the greatest interest.

A great many sweet potatoes, or dinkali, were cultivated in the district through which I passed, although the aspect of the crops was far from being satisfactory. The monkey-bread or baobab trees, on the other hand, were now in the full exuberance of their foliage. Leaving our former route a little to the north, we took the southerly road to the town of D6go-n-diji, which was enlivened by passengers proceeding to visit the market held at that place, which proved to be much more important than that of Gando, cattle, sheep, salt, and beads constituting the chief articles for sale. But, just at the moment we arrived, a thunderstorm broke out, which dispersed all the customers in the market, and left us in a difficult position to supply our wants. The town itself, although the clay wall was in a state of great decay, presented an interesting aspect, being full of gonda, or .Erica Papaya, and date trees, which were just loaded with fruit, a rather rare sight in Negroland.

Thursday, August 24th. When we left the town of D6go-n-da'ji we crossed the market-place, which is adorned by five monkey-bread-trees, but, being empty at the time, it looked somewhat desolate.

At the present day, at the outskirts of almost all the larger towns of Negroland, F米尔be families are established, who rear cattle for the express purpose of supplying milk for the daily wants of the inhabitants, and these people gladly provide travelers with that most desirable article when they are well paid for it; but, having degenerated to mere tradesmen, they, of course, possess little hospitable feeling. Leaving then the town of Sila at about two miles distance to the north, and passing through a populous district, rich in pastures and the cultivation of rice and sorghum, and exhibiting near the town of Kus6da a good many dm and delgb palms, we ascended at length along a difficult passage, rendered almost impassable by the quantity of rain which had fallen, until we reached Shag~ri, the place where we had slept on our outward journey, and where
a market was just being held. We were fortunate enough, this time, to obtain tolerable quarters, and to be well treated.

The whole country which we traversed on our next day's march was clothed with the richest vegetation, the crops being almost ripe, but cattle and horses being very scanty. Thus, after a good march, we reached the town of Bodinga, having lost another of our camels on the road, which, in crossing one of the swampy valleys in which this part of Negroland abounds, had fallen backward with his load, and died on the spot. But the quantity of water that we had to sustain from above and below was not only destructive to animals, but likewise to men, and I myself felt most cheerless, weak, and without appetite, bearing already within me the germs of dysentery, which soon were to develop themselves, and undermine my health in the most serious way. My companions were not much better off, and of the messengers of the Sheikh el Bakiy, none but Sfdi Ahmmed was able to keep up with us.

A large and well-frequented market was held before the west-gate of the town of Bodfnga, exhibiting a great number of horned cattle and asses; but the more desolate appeared the extensive and at present useless area of the town itself, which was now covered with rank grass, or laid out in kitchen gardens, while only a few straggling cottages were to be seen. Although I again preferred taking up my quarters outside, in my old place, I entered the town expressly in order to pay my compliments to the governor, and was here most hospitably treated by my friend, who manifested the greatest delight at my safe return to his province from my dangerous journey westward. But I had great need of the assistance of a powerful friend, as my camels were not able to carry my little luggage any farther; and the good-tempered son of my old friend M6dibo 'Ali not only assisted me with camels, but also himself mounted the following morning on a stately charger, and escorted me several miles on my road to S6koto.

I reached the old residence of the Ahel F6diye in a very exhausted state, having been delayed on the road by falling in, in the midst of a swampy fAddama, with a numerous caravan of asses, which entirely obstructed the winding watery path. But, notwithstanding my sickness, I took extreme delight in the varied aspect which the country at present exhibited, in comparison with the almost total nakedness which it had displayed, when I set out from S6koto sixteen months previously; and I felt extremely grateful when I again found myself in this town, having accomplished more than I ever thought I should be able to do.

The whole town, suburbs, wall, cottages, and gardens, were now enveloped in one dense mass of vegetation, through which it was difficult to make one's way, and recognize places well known from former visits. Scarcey had I been quartered in a comfortable hut, when my friend 'Abd el Kider Dan-Taffa sent his compliments to me, and shortly after made his appearance himself, expressing the liveliest satisfaction at seeing me again, and sincere compassion for the reduced state of my health. Not less encouraging was the reception I met with from my old friend M6dibo 'Alf. When I made him a small present, regretting that after the long time
I had been without supplies I was not able to make him a better one, he was so kind as to express his astonishment that I had any thing left at all. He also begged me not to go on at once to Wurn6, but to stay a day in this place, and to write to 'Al'yu, informing him of my safe return, and how much I stood in need of his aid. I made use of this opportunity of at once re-

LEAVE S6KOTO.
questing the Emir el Muimenfn to forward me with as little delay as possible on my journey, hinting, at the same time, that I should feel very grateful to him if he would assist me with horses and camels. I intimated also that, as I myself, on account of the reduced state of my health, was anxious to reach home by the most direct road, I had to beg permission for a countryman of mine, who had just come to B6rnun, meaning Mr. Vogel, to visit the southeastern provinces of his kingdom. The following evening a messenger arrived from the Vizier 'Abdii, son of Gedido, informing me that we were to start on the succeeding day, and that we should find camels on the other side of the river. The river, as I had already learned, was very much swollen, and extremely difficult to cross.

While my Mohammedan and black friends thus behaved toward me in the kindest and most hospitable manner, the way in which I felt myself treated by my friends in Europe was not at all encouraging, and little adapted to raise my failing spirits; for it was only by accident, through a liberated female slave from Stainbill, who called upon me soon after my arrival, that I obtained information of the important fact that five Christians had arrived in K-ikawa, with a train of forty camels. While I endeavored to identify the individuals, of whom this person gave me some account, from a very selfish point of view, with the particulars contained in Lord Russell's dispatch, which I had received near Timbaikutu, about the members of an auxiliary expedition to be sent out to join me, I was greatly astonished that, for myself, there was not a single line from those gentlemen, although I felt still authorized to consider myself the director of the African Expedition; and I could only conclude from all this that something was wrong. I had not yet any direct intimation of the rumor which was spread abroad with regard to my death; and, taking every thing into consideration, it was certainly a want of circumspection in Mr. Vogel, notwithstanding the rumors which were current in B6rnun, not to endeavor to place himself in communication with me in the event of my being still alive.

Tuesday, August 29th. Having arranged my luggage at an early hour, and waited some time for my people to get ready, I set out. Winding down the slope of the hill on which S6koto is situated, and which was now covered with crops, we reached the border of the stream, which, from having been an insignificant brook at the time of my first arrival in the place, was now changed into a pow-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
erful torrent, about 200 yards broad, and rushing along with the most impetuous violence, undermining the banks, and leaving in its course small patches of grassy islands, which made the passage extremely difficult. The view opposite will give an idea of the scenery. Having at length crossed this stream in frail barks,
dragging our horses and beasts of burden alongside of them, we had to wait a
good while on the opposite shore till the camels sent from S6koto came to meet
us, when we proceeded about eight miles, and, having been caught in a heavy
shower, took up our quarters in A’chi-da-Mfia, a large straggling farming village.
Here I felt extremely weak and exhausted, my case assuming more distinctly the
character of dysentery.
Wednesday, August 30th. After an agreeable march of about six miles, it being a
fine clear day, we reached Wurn6, the residence of ’Aliyu. Here we were lodged
in our old quarters, where, however, the frail building of the hut had disappeared,
and nothing remained but the clay house. I was received by the court of the Emir
el Mtimenin also with great kindness, and, curious as it may appear to Europeans,
my hostile relation with the FMlbe of Hamda-Allihi seemed only to have
increased my esteem in the eyes of these people. ’Al’yu had even heard of the
ungenerous conduct of the Sheikh el Bakay’s younger brother toward me; and
while he greatly praised the straightforward behavior of the former, he did not fail
to reproach Sidi A’law/te with meanness. He treated me very hospitably, although
I was not able to enjoy greatly the more luxurious kind of food which was here
offered to me, for luxurious it seemed after my poor diet in the famished and
distracted region near the Niger. It was only by the strictest diet, especially by
keeping to sour milk, together with repose, that I succeeded, after a great deal of
suffering, in keeping under the disease. However, my recovery in the beginning
was only temporary, and on the 13th of the following month dysentery broke out
with considerable violence, and caused me a total loss of strength; but, after a
severe crisis, it was overcome by the use of Dover's powders, although even then
a simple diet was the most effectual remedy, my food consisting of nothing but
pounded rice, mixed with curdled milk, and the seeds of the Mimosa Nilotica. At
length, on the 22d of September, I was again enabled to move about a little on
horseback, and from that day forward my health continued to improve.
Finding that my segffa excluded every draught of air, I built

STATE OF INSECURITY.
myself a shed of matting in front of the door of the clay house, where I spent my
time pleasantly enough, until the great humidity of the ground, in consequence of
the rains that began to fall, drove me back into my hall. The whole breadth of the
valley to the very foot of the rocky border was now under water to a considerable
depth, and covered with water-lilies. Scarcely a small foot-path remained. A great
deal of rice was to be seen in the low ground, while the cultivation on the higher
ground consisted entirely of sorghum. But the richness of the country around was
scarcely of any avail, for greater insecurity prevailed than on my former visit,
even at the distance of a few miles from the capital. A small host of the enemy
had succeeded in carrying into slavery, from a distance of less than ten miles from
the capital, a considerable number of people and cattle.* Another predatory
expedition of the Bdgaje from Alakkos, a few days later, drove away two herds of
cattle from the very village of Giy6wa; and on the 2d of October, a small foray of
Tagama plundered the village of Salime, together with a neighboring hamlet, carrying away a good number of people.

A great dearth of provisions prevailed, not only with regard to meat, but even corn, which was the more surprising to us, as we had been accustomed in Timbktu to very low prices, although provisions are there brought from so great a distance. We were able in that town to buy a sheep for 500 or 600 kurdf, but we could here find none under 3000, the best fetching as much as 5000; and as for corn, the sunfye, which we bought in Timbktu for 3000 to 4000, we should have been glad to buy here with 10,000, if such large quantities had been brought into the market at all. It was, besides, extremely difficult for me to find shells. I was thus obliged to sell five dollars for 11,000 shells, while in Timbktu they would have fetched 15,000. I also sold the corals which I had left at a low price, in order to be enabled to keep up my establishment. Cotton strips, which are liked better in the country places, were still dearer in proportion than shells.

The horse which I rode myself being incapable of any farther

* This expedition was led by the Dan-ghaladima-Gober, and fell upon the border district of Jyju, situated in the rocky district between Gydwa and Wurn6, and comprising many small hamlets, or gfdaje, as the Gida-n-Riya, Gida-n-Alis6wa, Gfda-n-Gorg-be, Gida-n-Kola-Dallidi, Gida-n-Maidanga, Gida-n-Yakubu, Gidan-Ruggun-diji, Rtme-n-ghaladima, and Alkili-Asben. A brother of his ran.. sacked Wino, separated only by a narrow valley from Salime.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

exertion, and my camels having either died or become totally exhausted, I was thus thrown, much against my inclination, upon the generosity of the prince; and, in order to stimulate his goodwill, besides the present which I offered to him at my first interview, I gave him, in a second audience, ten dollars, silver l eing always an article much esteemed by these people. I had made it a point of

reserving the last bernuis I possessed for the Governor of Kan6, who, in the present state of anarchy into which B6rnu seemed to be plunged, might be a person of great importance to me. But, nevertheless, I could not induce this not very highspirited and noble-minded prince to make a sacrifice of a handsome horse, and he gave me an animal which, although it did not prove to be a bad

traveling horse, was of small size, had a very bad walk, was not able to gallop at all, and, altogether, was more like an ass than a horse. Besides a horse, 1Afyu was kind enough to send me a large loaf of Englih sugar, a rather uncommon article in this country. I felt very grateful for this present, as I was entirely destitute of sugar.

I had a good deal of trouble with my companions,*who did not like to leave this place so soon as it was my intention to do. This extended not only to the

messengers of the sheikh, all of whom suffered a great deal from illness, but still more to my head man, ‘All el A'geren, whom I would have sent away long before if I had been able to pay him off; for this man, who found it very convenient to trade at my expense, while he had nothing to do except to receive a good salary,
entered into all sorts of intrigues to keep me in this place, just as he had done in Timb-dktu.

Notwithstanding the reiterated delays, I succeeded in fixing my departure for the 7th of October, and as I afterward convinced myself from my own experience, the state of the roads which we had to cross would scarcely have allowed us to commence our journey before that time; but the rainy season was now almost over; and while the noxious insect, called tumidnragaye, which toward the end of the rainy season infests the whole ground, increased in numbers, the quantity of rain decreased. Being now rather better and feeling stronger, I began again to move about a little on horseback, although the swampy character of the valley which surrounds Wurn6 on almost every side, together with the rocky character of the remaining part of the district, prevented me from making long excursions.

During this my second stay in the capital of this extensive em-

SAD CONDITION OF NEGROLAND.

pire. I had again full opportunity of observing the extreme weakness and want of energy which prevails in its very centre, although I could not but acknowledge the feeling of justice which animates the ruler himself, notwithstanding his want of spirit. In proof of this, I may relate that, being informed one day that five young sons of his had committed hits of injustice in the marklet, he became greatly enraged, and immediately sent his two chief courtiers, 'Abdu and the ghaladima, with positive orders to seize and imprison the offenders; and when the young outlaws succeeded in escaping and hiding themselves for a day or two, he had the chief slave, who had been with them, executed. But the cowardice of his people, and their oppression of the weak and unprotected, became fully apparent. A most disgraceftl affair happened at this time. A caravan of inoffensive traders who had encamped in G6.wasi were surprised by them, and, after considerable havoc had been made among them, were deprived of almost all their property. These people had been reported to be hostile pagans, or A'zena, from the district of Saje, in Gdber, and dependent on the protection of the

K61-gergs and the Awelimmidenwugn-Bodh6d, and were represented as having been trading with the inhabitants of Tlta, which was hostile to the F6lani; but after this cruel act of injustice had been committed, it was ascertained that they were peaceable traders on their way to Kano, and that among them there were even several inhabitants of Wurnr.

But it almost seemed as if the prospects of this part of Negroland were to darken more and more, for the rumors which I had heard on the Niger of the ancient feud between the K61-owl and K61-ger6s having again broken out in a sanguinary struggle were tntirely confirmed here. The K61-owl had undertaken this year an expedition on a large scale, consisting of five thousand men mounted on horses and camels, and, according to report, with as many as 1000 muskets, against the K6l-gergs and the Awelimmiden, and had penetrated almost as far as Sije, which place they destroyed by fire. The K6l-gergs having taken part in the expedition of the G6ber-wa against the empire of Sokoto, the relation of the K61-owl with the latter had assumed a much more friendly character, and our old friend A'nur had paid a visit to the town of Kitsena. My friend 'Abd el Kider, the Sultan of A'gades,
who, as I have mentioned in my outward journey, had been deposed, and had been succeeded by Himed e' Rufiy, had now

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
turned merchant on a grand scale, endeavoring at the same time to attach the FMlbe to his cause. His usual residence was now in Kitsena, but he had paid a visit the previous year, in company with the governor of that place, to the Emfr el Mdmenfn, taking him, besides a quantity of bernses and other valuable articles, a present of thirteen horses of Tawirek breed, and receiving from the latter, besides a number: of tobes, 3,000,000 shells and 260 slaves. Having remained about two months in Wurn6, and having been treated altogether in the most distinguished manner, the Ex-king” of A'gades had been forwarded with a numerous escort; for, notwithstanding the extreme weakness of this empire, if viewed from a European point of view, it even now is not quite destitute of means. During my stay the messengers arrived from Ziriya with a bi-monthly tribute of 300,000 shells, 85 slaves, and 100 tobes.

Having at length overcome the laziness of my companions, I had the satisfaction of seeing my departure finally arranged for the 5th of October. The ghaladfna, in whose company on my outward journey I had come from Kitsena, was again to be my fellowtraveler on my return eastward. I therefore completed my preparations, and on the 4th of October I had my final leave-taking, or, as the Husa people say, the babankwina, when I took the opportunity of excusing myself to 'Alfyu for having been this year a little troublesome, after the fashion of those Arab sherffs who used to visit him, stating at the same time that if my means had not been almost exhausted, I should have preferred buying a horse for myself. Having made this prelude, I endeavored to impress upon him the dangerous state of the road, when he made use of the expression common in tiusa, "Alla shibiideta I" ("God may open it I"); but I protested against such an excess of reliance upon the Divine intervention, and exhorted him to employ his own strength and power for such a purpose, for without security of roads I assured him there could be no intercourse or traffic. He either was, or seemed to be, very desirous that the English should open trading relations with him; and I even touched on the circumstance that, in order to facilitate such an intercourse, it would be best to blow up certain rocks which most obstructed the navigation between Yiuri and Buisa, but of such an undertaking I convinced myself that it was better not to say too much at once, as that ought to be an affair of time.

Altogether, 'Alfyu had entered into the most cheerful conversa-

LEAVE-TAKING.
tion with me on all occasions, and had questioned me upon every subject without reserve. He also furnished me with four letters of recommendation, one to the Governor of Kan6, one to that of Bauchi, one to that of A'damiwa, and one in a more general sense, addressed to all the governors of the different provinces in his empire. Thus I took leave of him and his court, probably never to see that region again, and lamenting that this extensive empire, which is so advantageously
sient for a steady intercourse with Europeans, was not in the hands of an energetic chieftain, who would be able to give stability to conquest, and to organize the government of these provinces, so richly endowed by nature, with a strong hand.

Thursday, October 51h. It was about three o'clock in the afternoon when I took my final leave of Wurn6. I had twice resided in this capital for some length of time, experiencing, on the whole, much kindness. On my outward journey I had been furnished on my dangerous undertaking with a strong and powerful recommendation; and on my return, although I had come into hostile contact with another section of the same tribe to which the inhabitants of this country belong, I had been again received without the least suspicion, had been treated with great regard, notwithstanding the exhausted state of my finances, and allowed to pursue my home-journey as soon as the season reopened the communication with the neighboring province.

Following now quite a different and more southerly road from that which we had pursued on our outward journey, we encamped this day in Dan-Shaura,* a walled town, strengthened by three moats, tolerably well inhabited, and adorned with fine groups of trees, among which some large gonda-trees, or Fica Papaya, were distinguished. The town belongs to the district of Riba, which forms the title of its governor, who is called Serkf-n-R~ba. He was a decent sort of man, and treated us hospitably, a dish of fish proving a great luxury to me in this inland region, and bearing testimony to the considerable size of a large pond which borders the town on the east side, being apparently in connection with

* I here give a list of the towns and villages lying along this river on the side of Dan-Shura: Dogdwa, Tungtimmaza, Tunsumdwa, T6fa, Gida-n-dan-Damwa, Gida-n-Laudam, Bastinsan, Gida-n-Somgba, G. Mdgaji, Gelgil, G. Ataftru, Jan Tumbagebe, Birni-n-Dangdda, Gajgre, Dor6wa-n-birni, Dakuriwa, Kundus, Pura. Between the town of Rdba, from whence this river has received the name Gulbi-nRiba, and S6koto, there are the places Kurfi, Tor6nka, Kgwasu, Durbel, DThnguji, Tunga-ddiwatsu, Kabdnga (Ungwa Ibrahima), Gari-n-serkf-n-A'zena. 565

TRAVEL IN AFRICA.

the gulbi-n-Riba or Bugga. The evening was clear, and I enjoyed for a long time the scenery of the place in the fine moonlight, but the governor would not honor me with his company, being greatly afraid of the bad influence of the moon, the effect of which he thought far more injurious than that of the sun.

Friday, October 6th. After a night greatly disturbed first by musquitoes, and then by a heavy gale, we pursued our journey, entering a fine open country, which was intersected farther on by a broad lAddama, and beyond that presented several ponds half dried up; but, after a march of about ten miles, we had a larger valley full of water on our right, and three miles farther on had to cross it at a spot where the sheet of water was at present narrowed to about 100 yards in width and 3 feet in depth, and, notwithstanding a considerable current, afforded an easier passage than the other part of the rainy season bed, which at present exhibited swampy
ground, partly overgrown with rank grass, but was very difficult to cross, and a few days previously had been totally impracticable for horses or camels. Four miles and a half beyond this river, through a country adorned with fine trees, but without any traces of cultivation, we reached a large river about 250 yards broad, and more than 5 feet deep, running here in a northeasterly direction, and no doubt identical with the river which we had lately crossed. How it is that the river here contains so much more water than it does lower down I can not state with certainty, but my opinion is that a great portion of it is withdrawn toward the north, where the forest seems gradually to slope down toward the desert region of the centre of Guindumi, where, in a sort of mould or hollow, a large lake-like pond is formed. It is rather unfortunate that I had not an opportunity of asking information on this subject from one of the followers of the ghaladima, who, instead of crossing the first sheet of water, kept along its northern bank, and thus, with a longer circuit, but without the necessity of embarking in a boat, reached the town of Gandi. Having then crossed another small fiddama, in a wide open country, where sorghum and cotton were cultivated together in the same fields, we reached the town of Gandi. It is surrounded by a wall (in a state of decay) and by two moats, and is of considerable size, but half deserted. We traversed with some difficulty the entrance to the town, which was adorned on the outside with three very tall bombax or silk-cotton trees, and was almost entirely obstructed by a wooden gate, and then made our way through the desolate area of the town, overgrown with tall herbage, diim palms, and k6rna, until we reached the house of the migaji, who is one of the five rulers of this vast and desolate place. But we had a great deal of trouble in procuring quarters in an empty court-yard, where we were glad to obtain some rest, as, owing to my long illness, and my entire want of any strengthening food, I felt extremely exhausted by our day's march. I had, moreover, the dissatisfaction to find that one of my people, a liberated slave from N'pe, had remained behind and could not be found. As for myself, I was not able to stir much about to inquire after him, for I wanted rest the more, as we had a long day's march before us,* and had to rise at a very early hour. It was three o'clock the following morning when we all assembled round the court-yard of the ghaladima, but, on account of the guide who had promised to conduct us through the wilderness not daring to trust himself with these people without receiving his reward beforehand, we did not get off till half past five o'clock, after we were quite tired out and ill prepared for a long march. The forest was overgrown with rank grass, and in the beginning exhibited some large ponds. The dor6wa formed the principal tree, only now and then a diim palm giving some variety to the vegetation. Through this dense forest we marched at such a rate that it rather resembled a flight than any thing else, rendering it impossible for me to lay down this road with the same degree of accuracy to which I had adhered with the greatest perseverance throughout the whole extent of my long wanderings. At lngth, after a march of more than twenty miles, we reached the
beginning of the large pond Sub-dbú, which, however, at present was almost dried up, presenting nothing but small pools of water; but I was sadly disappointed in my hopes of obtaining here some rest, the locality being regarded as too insecure to make a long halt, although, on account of this sheet of water, we had evidently given to our course a direction greatly diverging from that of our main route, which was to the northeast. I felt so much exhausted that I was obliged shortly after to remain secretly behind, protected only by my faithful servant El Gatróni, when I lay down flat on the ground for a few moments, and then, refreshed a little, hastily

* Close to Gandi is the small hill Dan-Fiwa, where the ancient town was situated, and at a distance of about ten miles is the well-known town of Bakdra, after which the river is called Gulbi-n-Bakra.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

followed the troop. Thus we proceeded onward, and the day passed by without there appearing any vestige of a town. After many disappointments, dragging myself along in the most desperate state of exhaustion, about an hour after midnight we at length reached cultivated fields, and encamped at some distance from the town of Danfiwa or Dan-Fiwa, on an open piece of ground. Not being able to wait till the tent was pitched, I fell fast asleep as soon as I dismounted. A very heavy dew fell during the night.

Sunday, October 8th. Having obtained some water and a couple of fowls from some farming people in our neighborhood, we succeeded in finding our camels (which, on account of the exhausted condition of my people, had wandered away), and set out a little after noon, passing close by the town, where a tolerable market was held, and where I provided myself with corn for the next few days. The town of Dan-Fiwa is tolerably populous, and there are even a good many huts outside the walls; but I was astonished at observing the filthy condition of the pond from which the inhabitants procure their supply of water. It could not fail to confirm my former conjecture that most of the diseases of the inhabitants, especially the Guinea-worm, are due to this dirt and filth which they swallow at certain seasons of the year in this sort of water.

Having lost some time in the market, I overtook my people as they were winding along the steep bank of a considerable river, which, taking a northerly course, and evidently identical with the water-course at Katídru, joins the great valley of Góber a few miles to the northwest of Sansinne ’Afsa. At the place where we crossed it was about 200 yards broad, but very shallow at the time, being only a foot deep and full of sand-banks: but I was not a little astonished to find that it contained a very great quantity of fish, numbers of people being employed in catching them by the beating of drums. Although the bank was so steep, there were evident signs that a short time before it had been covered by the water, and part of the crops, even beyond its border, had been damaged by the inundation. The country appeared to be well inhabited. A little farther on we passed on our left a populous walled town called D61e, and an apparently larger place became
visible on the other side, the pasture-grounds being covered with extremely fine cattle. After we had crossed the river I found that the highest stalks of Indian corn, which was fast ripening, measured not less than twentyeight feet. Besides sorghum, sweet potatoes, or ddnkali, were also cultivated here to a great extent. Having then crossed a stony tract, we again reached the town of Moriki, where the river approaches to within a few hundred yards. On the high ground close to the border of the town a market-place spreads out. Having observed the narrowness of the lanes, I preferred encamping a considerable distance beyond the town, near a hamlet surrounded by a thick, fence, and inhabited by Fdlbe of the tribes of the Jakabiwa and Kukod.wa. The neighborhood of Morfki was said to be infested by the inhabitants of the town of Tlta, who were reported to make nightly forays, carrying away horses and cattle; but, notwithstanding this information, we had an undisturbed night's rest, although I thought it prudent to fire several shots.

Monday, October 9th. Having dried our tent a little from the extremely heavy dew which had fallen during the night, we set out to join our companions. Traversing the same rocky district through which we had passed on our outward journey, we reached again the well-known place of Didchi, and entering with difficulty the obstructed lanes of the village, where we lost another of our camels, pitched our tent on a small open square opposite the house where the ghaladima had taken up his quarters. Some tamarind-trees on the slope of a rocky eminence, which rose close behind our resting-place, afforded us a tolerable shelter during the hot hours of the day.

Tuesday, October 10th. Our day's march carried us as far as Bijnka, with the loss of another of our camels, and we encamped this time inside the town, in a tolerably spacious court-yard, the surrounding fields being now covered with tall crops, and not affording sufficient ground for encamping. Altogether the country presented a very different aspect from what it had done on our outward journey, and the water-course near Zy'rimi, with its steep banks, offered a difficult passage, although the water was not more than a foot and a half deep. My camels being either knocked up or having entirely succumbed, I endeavored in vain to procure a good ox of burden, the principal reason of my difficulty being that I was not provided with shells, and, in consequence, I had some trouble the next day in reaching the town of Kimmane.

* The water-course is here still of considerable size, and comes a good many miles from the southeast, from a place called G6zaki, skirting the towns of Kadrin-Nam6da and G6ga.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
where the ghaladima took up his quarters. Already on the road I had observed a good deal of indigo and cotton cultivated between the sorghum. Even here, close to the town, we found the grounds divided between the cultivation of rice and indigo, and I soon learned that the whole industry of the inhabitants consisted in weaving and dyeing. They have very little millet of any kind, so that their food is
chiefly limited to ground-nuts or kolche. They have no cattle, but their cotton is celebrated on account of its strength, and the shirts which they dye here are distinguished for the peculiar lustre which they know how to give to them. Although the inhabitants have only about twenty horses, they are able, according to their own statement, to bring into the field not less than 5000 archers. However exaggerated this statement may be, they had not found it very difficult, the preceding year, to drive back the expedition of the Göberiwa; for they keep their wall in excellent repair, and even at present only one gate was passable at all for laden animals, the others being only accessible by a kad.rku or narrow drawbridge. The whole interior of the town presented an interesting aspect, tall diim palms shooting up between the several granite mounds which rise to a considerable elevation,* while the court-yards exhibited a great deal of industry, the people being busy with their labors till late in the evening. The proprietor of the court-yard where I had taken up my quarters treated me with the favorite drink of fari soon after my arrival, and with tiwio in the evening. I was also fortunate enough to obtain some milk from the villagers outside.

Thursday, October 12th. It was rather late when we left this place for another long forced march, a dense fog enveloping the country; but it was still much too early for my noble friend the ghalad'ima, who was busy installing a new governor, for which he received a present of a horse and large heaps of shells, so that it was almost ten o'clock before we had fairly entered upon our march. This district being very dangerous, we proceeded on with great haste, and I really conjectured that it was in truth the unsafe state of the road which had caused the delay of our departure, the people being anxious to disappoint the enemy, who, if they had heard the news of our arrival in this place, would of

* Kimmand is one of those places which are distinguished on account of their granite mounds, and which extend from A'yo and Mgdard to Chiiban6, A'jjia, and the fifteen rocky mounds of Kotôrkoshd, where the Sultan of S6koto had the preceding year directed his expedition.

570

TAKING LEAVE OF THE GHALADI'IMA.

course expect that we should set out in the morning. Having made our way for about six hours through a dense forest, we left a granite mound and the ivy-mantled wall of Riibo on one side, with a fine ri'mi and abundance of fresh grass of tall growth. The forest then became clearer, and we reached a considerable tebki, or pond, which being regarded as the end of the dangerous tract, my companions came to congratulate me upon having now at length escaped the dangers of the road. However, our day's march was still tolerably long, extending altogether to twelve hours, and, being rather unwell that day, I had considerable difficulty in keeping up with the troop. In consequence of our late departure, we had to traverse the most difficult part of our route, that ifearest to U'mmadaw, which is intersected by granite blocks, in the dark, so that our march was frequently obstructed, especially at a spot where two mighty granitic masses left only a narrow passage. A good deal of indigo is here cultivated between the millet: and the town itself is very spacious; but, arriving at so late an hour, we had
great difficulty in obtaining quarters, all the open grounds being covered with corn, and we were glad to find at length an open square where we might pitch our tent.

Friday, October 13th. Here my route separated from that of the ghaladfma, as I was going to Kan6, while he, again, along this roundabout way (the direct route having been almost entirely broken up by the enemy), directed his steps toward Katsena. After satisfying our appetites, for which we had not been able to provide the preceding night, I took a small present with me, and went to bid farewell to the ghaladfima and those of his suite who had been particularly kind to me, and I hope that they will long remember me. Having fulfilled this duty, I proceeded with my people, in order to continue my march alone. The country was tolerably open, broken only here and there by granite rocks, while the vegetation was enlivened now and then by diim palms. Cultivation was limited to certain tracts; but, notwithstanding the unsafe state of the country, the pasture-grounds were not quite destitute of cattle, and, being at length able to travel according to my own inclinations, I enjoyed the scenery extremely. It had been my original intention to pursue the road to Kor6fi; but, by mistake, after leaving Wurn6, I had got into the track leading to Birchi. I reached this latter town after a march of altogether about twelve miles, having crossed my former route from Kuiray6 to K-6refi. I found that almost all the male inhabitants of the place had joined the expedition against Kiura; and I pitched my tent in front of the house of the ghaladfma, but was invited by the people who were left as guardians to pass the hot hours of the day in the cool entrance-hall of his court-yard.

Although the place does not exhibit any great signs of wealth or comfort, I was glad to find that the corn here was much cheaper than in U'mmadaw. I was also enabled to buy some butter. Moreover, the absence of the governor exercised no unfavorable influence upon my treatment, which was very kind: an old m'allem especially evinced a friendly disposition toward me.

Saturday, October 14th. After a march of about fourteen miles, passing by the town of Raw66, where a small market was held, and traversing the suburb of Sakissar, with its beautiful "ngbor6," or fig-trees, we reached the town of Mije, which had been represented to us as rich in cattle and milk, but which I found half deserted; the town having greatly declined about twelve years previously, when the whole country, including the places Takabiwa, Matzu, Kor6fi, and Kirkojingo, revolted, and gave free passage to an army of the G6ber~wa. I was glad to buy a good sheep for 1500 shells. The governor of the place was absent in Kitsena, where he generally resides. We had pitched our tent in the shade of a beautiful fig-tree, and passed the afternoon very pleasantly, but were greatly troubled during the night by the numbers of musquitoes.

Rising at an early hour, and traversing a fine country, I reached the large town of Kusida in the afternoon, and encamped here, outside, not far from the market-place, which at the time of my arrival was quite untenanted; but the following night it became well frequented by a number of travelers who sought quarters there. On this march I observed a specimen of industry on a small scale, exercised
by the inhabitants of the town of Maje, who buy sour milk in a place called KAńkia, at a considerable distance, and supply the town of Kor6fi with it. Numerous villages were lying on either side of our path, cultivated and uncultivated ground succeeding alternately, Indian millet being here the chief product besides cotton. The pasture-grounds also were enlivened by a good number of horses.

Pursuing from this point my old road through the fine province of Kan6, rich in all kinds of produce, and well stocked with cattle, and encamping the next night close beyond the town of Bichi, I reached the town of Kan6 in the afternoon of the 17th, having sent one of my people in advance.

EMBARRASSMENTS.

CHAPTER LXXXIII.
SECOND RESIDENCE IN KANO1, UNDER UNFAVORABLE CIRCUMSTANCES.-MARCH TO KU'KAWA.

ON my arrival in Kan6 I found every thing prepared, and took up my quarters in a house provided for me; but I was greatly disappointed in finding neither letters nor supplies, being entirely destitute of means, and having several debts to pay in this place -among others, the money due to my servants, to whom I had paid nothing during the whole journey from Kuikawa to Timbdktu and back. I was scarcely able to explain how all this could have happened, having fully relied upon finding here every thing I wanted, together with satisfactory information with regard to the proceedings of Mr. Vogel and his companions, whose arrival in Kdkawa I had as yet only accidently learned from a liberated slave in S6koto. But fortunately, without relying much upon Sfđi Rdshid, the man whom I knew to be at the time the agent of her majesty's vice-consul in Miirzuk, I had given my confidence at once to Sidi 'Aif, the merchant whom I have mentioned already in the account of my former stay in this place as a tolerably trustworthy person, and whose good-will I endeavored at once to secure by sacrificing to him almost every thing I had left of value, including a small six-barreled pistol. In return, he promised to supply my wants till I should be put in possession of the money and merchandise which I had deposited in Zinder.

The first thing, therefore, which I had to do the next morning, after having paid my compliments to the ghaladfma and the governor, and made to each of them a handsome present, such as my means would allow, was to send my servant Mohammed el Gatr6ni, upon whom I could fully rely, to Zinder, giving him full instructions, and promising him a handsome present if he should succeed in bringing away all my effects, both those which had been deposited on a former occasion, and the merchandise which had been forwarded on my account at a later period, and a smaller one in case he should only find the latter portion; for, after all, I was by no means sure that the box of ironware and the four hundred dollars had remained safe during the severe civil struggles which

TRAVELS IN AFRIdA.
had agitated Bernu during my absence. Meanwhile, till the return of this messenger, I endeavored to pass my time as usefully as possible by completing a survey of the town which I had begun during my former residence, but was far from having finished. At the same time, the state of my health, on account of the close quarters in which I was here lodged, after having roved about in the open air for so long a time, required uninterrupted exercise. Owing to the change in my mode of living, severe fits of fever attacked me repeatedly.

Kan6 will always remain one of the most unfavorable localities for Europeans in this region; and it was well that Mr. Vogel, for the first year after his arrival in Negroland, purposely avoided this spot. Even my animals did not escape the malignant effect of the climate. Three of my horses were seized, one after the other, with a contagious disease, commencing with a swelling of the thighs, and from thence spreading to the breast and the head, and generally proving fatal in six or eight days. In this way I lost two out of my three horses, including my old companion, who had carried me through so many dangerous campaigns, and who had shared all my fatigues and sufferings for nearly three years; but the small and ugly, but strong horse which the Sultan of S6koto had made me a present of, escaped with its life. This disease which attacked my horses, of course, interfered greatly with my excursions, and took away almost all the pleasure which they would otherwise have afforded, as I was reduced to the necessity of making use of very indifferent animals. Nevertheless, I enjoyed greatly the open country which extended outside the gates of this picturesque but extremely dirty town, dotted with large villages at no great distance; and I followed up especially, with great interest, the easterly of the three roads which diverge from the Kffa-n-kiira, and which leads to the small rivulet known as the Kegi-n-Kan6. Occasionally, also, I went to visit some cattle-pens, in order to get a little fresh milk, which I was unable to procure.*

* in the town; for inside the place I succeeded only after great exertion in obtaining a little goat's milk. The pools produced by the rainy season had now dried up almost everywhere, and that peculiar kind of sorghum called "maiwa" had been harvested; and a few days afterward, while making another excursion to the south, I met the servants of the governor gathering the corn for their master. Besides my own private concerns, and the anxiety produced by

WANT OF INFORMATION.

the urgency of my debts and the uncertainty with regard to the property left by me in Zinder, there were two objects which attracted my whole attention, and caused me a good deal of perplexity and hesitation. The first of these was the expedition sent by the English government up the River B~nuw6, of which I had not the slightest idea at the time when it was carried out, for the dispatches which I had received in Timb6ktu, after so much delay, did not contain a word about such a proceeding; and the letters which were forwarded afterward to my address, informing me that such an expedition was to be undertaken, remained in K-ikawa, and I did not get them until my arrival in that place at the end of December. Thus it was not until the 29th of October that, just in the same manner as I had heard
accidentally in S6koto of the arrival of Mr. Vogel in Kuikawa, I was informed here, by the report of the natives, of such an expedition having taken place. I at first thought that it was undertaken by Captain M'Leod, of whose proposal to ascend the Niger I had accidentally gleaned some information through a number of the Galignani, and it was not until the 13th of November that I succeeded in meeting the person who had seen the expedition with his own eyes. This man informed me that the expedition consisted of one large boat, he did not know whether of iron or of wood, and two smaller ones, containing altogether seven gentlemen and seventy slaves, he of course taking the Kroomen for slaves. Moreover, I learned from him that the members of this expedition had not gone as far as Y6la, the capital of A'damawa, as the Governor of Hamirruwa had warned them not to go up to that place with their steamer, on account of the narrow passage between the mountains. He also informed me that they had commenced their home-journey earlier than had been expected, and that he himself, having proceeded to Ya'koba in order to procure more ivory for them, had found them gone on his return.

The other circumstance which greatly occupied my mind at this time was the state of affairs in Kiikawa; for in the beginning, on the first news of the revolution in B6ru, and of the Sheikh 'Omir being dethroned and his vizier slain, I had given up my project of returning by B6ru, intending to try again the difficult road by A'fr. At a later season, however, when I heard on the road that 'Omir was again installed, I cherished the hope that it might be possible to take the safer route by the Tebu country, especially as I received the news of a most sanguinary struggle having taken place between the K61-bwf and the K61-ger-s. In this struggle a great many of the noblest men of the former were said to have fallen, together with several hundred of the common people on both sides. I was sorry to hear that in this struggle my best friends had succumbed. Meanwhile the news from Kiikawa remained very unsatisfactory, and false rumors were continually brought from thence. Thus it was reported on the 1 of November that the Suguirti had vanquished Omar, who had made his escape accompanied only by a couple of horsemen; and it was not until the 9th that we received trustworthy news that he was holding his position steadily against the intrigues of the party of his brother, whom he kept in prison. It was with great satisfaction that I saw messengers from 'Omir arrive in the course of a few days, in order to present his compliments to the governor of this place. I at once had them called to my house, and made them a few presents, in order to express my satisfaction at their master having recovered his kingdom, and still holding his position; for it was a most important point with me to see my road to B6ru clear, and to meet there with Mr. Vogel and his party, in order to give him my advice and assistance with respect to the countries which it was most desirable that he should explore. But in the situation in which I was thus placed, it proved most difficult to obtain the means of reaching Kd'kawa, as I had no money at my disposal; for, to my great disappointment, the servant whom I had sent to Zinder
on the 18th, in order to bring from thence the property which I had deposited there, as well as the merchandise which had arrived afterward, returned on the 4th of November empty-handed, bringing nothing but a few letters. It was now that I heard that the news of my death had been everywhere believed, and that a servant of Mr. Vogel's, together with a slave of 'Abd e' Rahmin's, had arrived in Zinder from K-kawa, and had taken away all the merchandise that had reached that place on my account, the box with the 400 dollars and the cutlery having been stolen long before, immediately after the assassination of the sherrif.

Thus, then, I was left destitute also from this side, and I felt the want of supplies the more, as my head man, '_Alf el A'geren, supported by the wording of the contract which I had entered into with him, had claimed here peremptorily the payment of the rest of his salary, which amounted to 111 dollars, and I had been obliged to request Sidi 'All to pay him this sum on my account.

LETTER TO 'ALIYU.

This man had cost me very dear, and if I had possessed sufficient means I should have discharged him in Timbuktu, as he there threw off all allegiance and obedience to me as soon as he became aware of the dangers which surrounded me. He was likewise of very little service to me on my return-journey; but, of course, he was now anxious to excuse himself for his conduct on the road, and even laid claim to the present which I had promised him in the event of his conduct proving quite to my satisfaction. This, however, I refused with good reason; and I was glad to find that my other servants, whose salaries amounted altogether to nearly 200 dollars, were willing to wait for their payment until we reached Kiikawa.

However, the parcel which my servant brought me from Zinder was not quite devoid of subjects of gratification, as besides a few letters from Europe, including a map of South Africa by Mr. Cooley, it contained two beautifully written Arabic letters, one addressed to 'Alfyu, the Emir of S6koto, and the other a general letter of recommendation addressed by her majesty's consul in Tripoli to the chiefs of the Filbe. These letters I had expressly written for, and if I had received them two years earlier they would have been of great service to me. As it was, I sent the letter destined for 'Aliyu to the governor, who was so much pleased with it that he forwarded it by a special messenger, accompanied by a letter from myself, wherein I expressed my regret that I had not been able to present this letter to him on my personal visit, while at the same time I excused myself for not being able at the time to send him a small present, not having found here any supplies, and being entirely destitute of means. Having heard a report, which afterward proved to be false, that the Governor of Hamirruwa had formed the intention of attacking the people in the English steamer with a large force, I took the opportunity of protesting in this letter against such proceedings, giving the chief a plain statement of the peaceable intentions of the expedition.

The parcel which my servant had brought me from Zinder seemed also to hold out the prospect of material aid; for the letter from Mr. Dickson, dated the latter part of 1853, wherein he at the same time informed me, to my great disappointment, that he was about to leave his post for the Crimea, contained two letters of
recommendation to a couple of Ghadimsi merchants, of the names of Haj A'habed ben Sliman and Mohammed ben Misa.  

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
who, as he informed me, had property of his own in their hands, in order to assist me in case I should be in want of money; but when I sent these letters to their destination they were very coldly received, and it was intimated to me that I could not be accommodated. The disappointment which the awkwardness of my pecuniary circumstances caused me was soothed in some degree by the offer which the Fezzini merchant, Khweldi, whose kindness to me I have mentioned on a previous occasion, made me at the same time, of lending me 200 dollars in cash. In the afternoon of the 14th a servant of his arrived with the money, which, however, did not suffice for my actual wants, as I had to return to Sidi 'All el the 111 dollars which he had paid to my servant 'All el A'geren. After having made a suitable present to the messenger, I had therefore only a very small sum remaining, and the disappointment which I had experienced with regard to my luggage made me reluctant to forego the project which I had formed of taking home with me specimens of the manufactures of this place. I had also to buy two horses and a couple of camels, together with sundry other articles, and I was therefore obliged to procure farther means, however difficult it might be. I had even a great deal of trouble with Sfdi 'Al, who put off his promise to accommodate me from day to day.  

At length, having, on the 10th of November, written an energetic letter to this merchant, it was agreed that the affair between myself and the Ghadimsi merchants, who refused to lend me money, -although they had English property in their hands, should be referred to the ghalafma, who granted me a public interview for the purpose. In this audience, in which a great number of other people were present, the merchants founded their refusal to comply with my request on the old date of the letter in which they were ordered to attend to my wishes; and it wag not -until the ghalafma had ordered them to bring into his presence all that they possessed of the British agent's property that they agreed the following day to lend me a sum of money, at the usual rate of one hundred per cent. Being obliged to agree to this condition, as it had never been my intention to oblige them by force to grant me a loan without allowing them their usual profit, I stipulated to receive from them 500,000 shells, equal in this place to 200 dollars, on the condition that 400 should be repaid in Tripoli at four months' date. This loan, which would not have been necessary at all if I had found my supplies, enabled me, on the other hand, to send off my dispatches with the greatest ease and security, as it was, of course, the interest of these merchants to have these letters forwarded to Tripoli by the safest and shortest route. A courier was therefore dispatched immediately, who, being an experienced and well-known person, would be able to make his
way through the country of A’ir, which in its temporarily disturbed state was closed to any one else. The only thing which caused me some displeasure in this transaction was the circumstance that these merchants from Ghadimes had the insolence, although half the money with which they trade is Christian money, to call the Christians, in the presence of the ghaladfma, by the offensive name of "Kdfardwa" ("the infidels"), and I made a serious protest against such a term being employed in official transactions.

The difficulty which I had in supplying my wants, and purchasing the articles that in my opinion were necessary for my outfit, was the greater, as every thing was very dear at the time, the merchants being of opinion, on account of the turbulent state of the road, that no caravan from the north would arrive that year. Camels especially were exceedingly dear, seven fine animals which Khweldi had sent from Zinder being sold for 60,000 shells each, a very high price for a camel. I deemed myself, therefore, very fortunate in being able to purchase a she-camel of inferior quality for 45,000. I also was so lucky as to buy an excellent mare for 70,000 shells, or less than thirty dollars. Having thus at length provided for all my wants, I got every thing ready for starting on the 21st, and heartily glad I was when I was fairly embarked on this the last stage of my journeying in Negroland, with the prospect before me that, in six months or so, I might again breathe the invigorating air of the north.

I therefore cheerfully took leave of my friends from the far west, who were to follow as soon as possible to K-6kawa; for, although they were not likely to be of any farther assistance to me, they wanted to lay the chief of that country under some contribution for their own benefit and that of their master. I then pursued my journey with great cheerfulness; and although the general character of the country was not new to me, yet the route which I was obliged to take had not been traveled by me before. The road, although perhaps less populous, seemed to possess the advantage of richer vegetation, and delgb palms especially formed the ornament of many a hamlet or of the open scenery. Fine cattle also were to be seen in considerable numbers, and altogether it was a pleasant ride. Thus, after a march of about eleven miles, we reached the town of Wise or Wisa, and here took up our quarters; but, as usual, we found the gate so narrow that we were obliged to take most of the luggage off the camels, and this was the reason that we always preferred encamping outside, although here it was deemed too unsafe. Even inside the place the people were very much afraid of thieves. The town was tolerably populous, and the court-yards were fenced with hedges of living trees, almost in the same way as U’ba, and the one where we lodged was well shaded. Although, in the present disturbed state of the country, and with the prospect of another expedition of Bokhiri, the inhabitants did not feel much at their ease, we were nevertheless tolerably well treated.

November 24th. We had the same difficulty in getting out of the town as we had in entering it, so that I was quite sick of these places, and resolved, if possible, never to enter one again. The sorghum or Indian corn had just been cut, but was
lying on the ground unthreshed, or rather unbeaten. The dor6wa-tree or Bassia Parkii, which seemed to be the prevailing tree in this district, appeared in great numbers a little farther on, and even date-trees were seen, close to a hamlet. Having then passed through a more open country, the scenery became exceedingly fine, and continued so as far as the town of Sab6-n-garf, which we passed at some distance on our left. The market-place, enlivened by two beautiful baire-tree, remained close at the side of our track. It was here that the Governor of Kan6 intended to collect his troops in order to oppose Bokhdri; but it was not very likely, taking into account his own want of energy and the cowardly disposition of his host, that he would offer serious resistance to that energetic and enterprising chief, with his warlike bands, elated by victory and pillage.

 Twelve miles beyond Sabd-n-garf, through a less-favored district, we reached the town of Yerfmar, surrounded with a keffi, while on its outer side a market was just being held. But there being here no food for the camels, we proceeded on, through a district covered with underwood, until we reached, about two miles beyond, a village called "Gőda-n-Alla" ("the house of God"), which, besides being surrounded with a keffi, was so completely hidden behind a dense covert of trees, which form a natural defense, that we could scarcely discover it. But inside this covert there was a fine open field, whereon we pitched our tent.

THE THIEVES OF GE'RKI.

and were soon visited by the mayor and the chief inhabitants, who behaved in a very friendly manner toward us, and provided us with every thing we wanted, the place being rich in small millet and Indian corn. The village was, however, very badly supplied with water, the well being at a great distance. The camping-ground was extremely pleasant, the open green being varied by dense groups of trees, and the vegetation being moreover enlivened by a good many del6b palms. The road which we pursued the following day was more beset by thorny bushes, but here also delgb palms were numerous, and dor6wa and tamarind trees contributed to enliven more favored spots. Thus we reached the place where this northern route is joined by a more southerly one which passes by Geziwa, but not the same track which I had pursued on my former journey. Here we continued on at an accelerated pace, as all the people whom we met were flying in haste before Bokhiri. Thus we passed Diikawa, a considerable village, fortified with a keffi, and surrounded with numbers of monkey-bread-trees, which at present were destitute of foliage, although the fruit was just ripening. As the heat became rather oppressive, especially as we were not provided with water, all the ponds being now dried up, I rode in advance to Hexbiri, fortified, like most of the hamlets hereabouts, with a stockade, and adorned outside by large tamarind and monkey-bread trees, and, while watering the horses, refreshed myself with a little sour milk. Passing then through a dense fcrest, I reached the well in front of the town of G'rki. My people had already arrived, but had not yet succeeded in obtaining the smallest quantity of water, the well, although not very deep, being rather poor, considering the number of people which it had to supply. I had, in consequence, to pay 300 shells for supplying the wants of myself and my animals. Not feeling
any greater inclination this time to encamp inside Gerki than I had done on my former journey, I chose my own camping-ground on the north side of the town. It was a pleasant spot, but, unfortunately, it was too near a large monkey-bread-tree, which in the course of the night afforded to an audacious thief an excellent cover under which to proceed twice to a very clever performance of his art. I would strongly advise any future traveler in these districts, the inhabitants of which are very expert thieves, to take care not to pitch his tent too near a large tree. As it was, to my great disgust, the fellow succeeded in carrying away, first the tobe, and then the

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

trowsers belonging to one of my servants; but I strongly suspected one of the inhabitants of Hôbiri, from whom I had bought, the previous evening, an ox of burden for 9000 shells, to be the culprit. Gerki is famous on account of the many thefts which are committed in its neighborhood. Although I had not paid my respects to the governor of the town, he accompanied me the next morning with ten horsemen, four of whom were his own sons. He himself was quite a stately person, and was well mounted. Having then taken leave of him at the frontier of the territory of Kanô and Bôrnu, I reached the town of Birmeniwa, the small frontier town of Bôrnu, which I have mentioned on my former journey, but which, at present, had assumed more remarkable political importance, as it had not made its subjection to Shôrî, the present ruler of Gidmmel, but still adhered to his opponent and rival, the Governor of Tômbî. On this account, the inhabitants of this town endeavored to cut off the peaceable intercourse between Guimmel and Kanô, and I thought it necessary, in order to prevent any unpleasantness, to pay my respects to the petty chief; and to procure his good-will by a small present, while my camels pursued the direct track. Thus we reached Gu'mmel, and encamped outside at some distance from the wall to the northeast.

I had left this town on my former journey in the enjoyment of a considerable degree of wealth and comfort, under the rule of the old Dan Tanôma. But civil war, which cuts short the finest germs of human prosperity, had been raging here; the person appointed by Bôrnu as the successor of the former governor having been vanquished by his rival Shôrî, who, having taken possession of the town after much serious fighting, had again been driven out by the Governor of Zinder, sent against him by the Sheikh of Bôrnu. Having taken refuge in the territory of Kanô, and collected there fresh strength, the rebellious governor had reconquered his seat, where he was now tacitly acknowledged by his liege lord, in the weak state to which the kingdom of Bôrnu had been reduced by the civil war. The town was almost desolate, while the palace had been ransacked, pillaged, and destroyed by fire, and the new governor himself, who, after a long struggle with his rival and near kinsman, had at length succeeded in taking possession of this government, was residing amidst the towering ruins of the royal residence, blackened by fire, and exhibiting altogether the saddest spectacle. It was with a melancholy feeling
REDUCED STATE OF GU’MMEL.

that I remembered the beautiful tamarind-tree which spread its shade over the whole court-yard of the palace, where, on my former visit, I had witnessed the pompous ceremonies of this petty court. All now presented an appearance of poverty and misery. The governor himself, a man of about thirty-five years of age, and with features void of expression, was dressed in a very shabby manner, wearing nothing but a black tobe, and having his head uncovered. There was, however, another man sitting by his side, whose exterior was more imposing; but I soon recognized him as my old friend Mohammed e’ Sfiksi, who had accompanied us on our outset from Miirzuk, and who, from being an agent of Mr. Gagliuffi, had become, through successful trading and speculation, a wealthy merchant himself. He was now speculating upon the successful issue of an expedition of his protector against the town of Birmengwa, the inhabitants of which braved the authority of the governor; but, fortunately, the debt which Mr. Richardson had contracted with him had at length been paid, and he expressed nothing but kindly feelings toward me, and congratulated me, as it appeared sincerely, upon my safe return from my dangerous undertaking, praising my courage and perseverance in the highest terms before his friend the governor. Presenting to the latter a small gift, consisting of a red cap and turban, together with a flask of rose oil, I requested him to furnish me with a guide, in order to accompany me to the Governor of Mdshe na. He consented to do so, although, perhaps, he never intended to perform his promise; and I myself, at the time, had no idea of the difficulties with which such a proceeding would be accompanied, as the road to Malim, where the Governor of Mishena at present resided, led close to the territory of Tymbi, the residence of Shgri’s rival. Having returned to my tent outside the town, I was visited by several of my former acquaintances, and among others by Mohammed Ab~ak-6ta, the remarkable freed slave from Y6ruba, whom I have mentioned on a former occasion. But the most interesting visit was that of E’ Sfiksi in the evening, who brought me a quantity of sweetmeats from his well-supplied household, and spent several hours with me, giving me the first authentic account of the state of affairs in B6rnu, as well as of the English expedition which had arrived there. As a reward for his friendly feeling and for his information, I presented him with a young heifer, which the governor of the town had sent me as a present.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

My, camels having proved insufficient for the journey before them, I was looking out for fresh ones, but in the present reduced state of the place was not able to procure any, a circumstance which caused me afterward a great deal of delay on my journey.

Monday, Nov. 27th. After losing much time awaiting the coming of the guide who had been promised me, I started after my people, whom I had allowed to go on with the camels. The road, in consequence of the civil war which had raged between Sh6ri and his rival, had become quite desolate. The inhabitants had deserted their native villages, leaving the crops standing ripe in the fields, and forsaking every thing which had been dear to them. Not a single human being was
to be seen for a stretch of more than twenty-five miles, when at length we fell in with a party of native travelers, or fatfiki, who were going to Kan6. We soon after reached the small town of Finyakangwa, surrounded by a wall and stockade, and encamped on the stubble-fields, which were covered with small dfim bush, not far from a deep well, and we were glad to find that we had at length reached a land of tolerable plenty, the corn being just half the price it was in Giimmel. There were also a great number of cattle, and I had a plentiful supply of milk; but water was at the present season very scanty, and I could scarcely imagine what the people would do in the dry season.

A march of a little more than two miles brought us to Mal~m, consisting of two villages, the eastern one being encompassed by a clay wall which was being repaired, while the western one, where the present governor resided, was just being surrounded with a stockade. Between the two villages lies the market-place, where a market is held every Sunday and Thursday. The present Governor of Mashena, whose father I had visited on my former journey, is a young and inexperienced man, who may have some difficulty in protecting his province in the turbulent state into which the empire of B6ru has been plunged, in consequence of the civil war raging between the Sheikh 'Omar and his brother 'Abd e' Rahma'n.

While staying here during the hot hours I was visited by several Arab traders, one of whom informed me that Mr. Vogel had gone on a journey to Mandari, but without taking with him any of his companions. I left in the afternoon, as early as the heat of the midday hours allowed me, in order to continue my journey toward the town of Mshena. We encamped this evening at the

MA'SHENA.

well belonging to a village called Allamiibe, a name not unfrequent in this region, and we were most hospitably treated by the inhabitants, who, enjoying themselves with music and dancing, celebrated also my own arrival with a song; they, moreover, sent me several dishes of native food.

Wednesday, November 29th. The whole tract which we traversed in pursuing our road from hence to the town of Mdshena was chiefly adorned with dfim palms, which did not cease till just before we reached DeminmAria; and the country was tolerably well inhabited, and exhibited some signs of industry. Cattle also were not wanting; and I observed that, at a village which we passed near the town of Mairimf6ja, although it was then nearly half past nine o'clock in the morning, the cattle had not yet been driven out. Here the water did not seem to be at any great depth below the surface, some of the wells measuring not more than four fathoms. Having then traversed a district where the tamarind-tree was the greatest ornament, we reached the town of Mdshena, with its rocky eminences scattered about the landscape, and encamped a few hundred yards to the west of the town. I have made a few" observations with regard to this place on my former journey, but neither then nor at this time did I visit the interior. I will only add that it was in this place that the Sherff Mohammed el F6si, the agent of the Vizier of B6ru in Zinder, with whom my supplies had been deposited, was slain in the revolution of the preceding year. Not long after I had pitched my tent I received a visit from
an Arab of the name of 'Abd Allhhi Sh6n, who had assisted the usurper 'Abd e' Rahmin as a sort of broker, and who, in consequence, had been exiled by the Sheikh 'Omir as soon as the latter again recovered possession of the supreme power, and it was in order to beg me to solicit his pardon at the hands of the sheikh that he addressed himself to me. He also informed me that the road was at present by no means safe, being greatly infested by the people of B6rnu, who were taking advantage of the weak state to which the B6rnu kingdom had been reduced by the civil war. Corn was here exceedingly dear, or rather not to be had at all, and beans was the only thing I could procure.

From hence I followed at first my former track till I came to the place where on that occasion I had lost my road, and here I took a more southerly direction, and passed the hot hours in Lamiso, a middle-sized town surrounded with a low rampart of earth. Outside the town there was a market-place, where a mark:

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

et was just being held, tolerably well supplied, not only with corn, but also with cotton; besides these, beans, dod6wa, the diim fruit, dried fish, and indigo, formed the chief articles for sale; and I bought here a pack-ox for 10,000 shells. As soon as the bargain was concluded I again pursued my journey, and, after some time, fell into my old track. Having thus reached the town of Allamay, I pitched my tent inside the thick fence of thorny bushes. I had passed this town also on my former journey, and had then been greatly pleased at the sight of a numerous herd of cattle; but, in the present ruinous condition of the country, not a single cow was to be seen, the whole place being entirely desolate. Even the water, which it was very difficult to obtain, was of bad quality.

The next morning I reached Buindi after a short march, proceeding in advance of my camels in order to pay my compliments to the governor, and to obtain from him an escort through the unsafe district which intervened between this town and Zurr.kulo. After a little turgiversation, my old friend, the ghaladima, 'Omir, acceded to my request, giving me a guide who, he assured me, would procure an escort for me in the village of Shesh6ri, where a squadron of horse was stationed for the greater security of the road. I had experienced the inhospitable disposition of this officer during my former stay here, and felt, therefore, little inclination to be his guest a second time; but if I had had any foreboding that Mr. Vogel was so near at hand, I would gladly have made some stay.

Having rejoined my camels, I set out, without delay, through the forest, taking the lead with my head servant; but I had scarcely proceeded three miles when I saw advancing toward me a person of strange aspect—a young man of very fair complexion, dressed in a tobe like the one I wore myself, and with a white turban wound thickly round his head. He was accompanied by two or three blacks, likewise on horseback. One of them I recognized as my servant M'adi, whom, on setting out from Kikawa, I had left in the house as a guardian. As soon as he saw me he told the young man that I was 'Abd el KerIm, in consequence of which Mr. Vogel (for he it was) rushed forward, and, taken by surprise as both of us were, we gave each other a hearty reception from horseback. As for myself, I had not
had the remotest idea of meeting him, and he, on his part, had only a short time before received the intelligence of my safe return from the west. Not having the slightest notion that I was alive, and judging from its

MEETING WITH MR. VOGEL.
Arab address that the letter which I forwarded to him from Kan6 was a letter from some Arab, he had put it by without opening it, waiting till he might meet with a person who should be able to read it. In the midst of this inhospitable forest we dismounted and sat down together on the ground; and my camels having arrived, I took out my small bag of provisions, and had some coffee boiled, so that we were quite at home. It was with great amazement that I heard from my young friend that there were no supplies in Kiikawa; that what he had brought with him had been spent; and that the usurper 'Abd e' Rahmin had treated him very badly, having even taken possession of the property which I had left in Zfinder. He moreover informed me that he himself was on his way to that place, in order to see whether fresh supplies had not arrived, being also anxious to determine the position of that important town by an astronomical observation, and thus to give a firmer basis to my own labors. But the news of the want of pecuniary supplies did not cause me so much surprise as the report which I received from him that he did not possess a single bottle of wine; for, having now been for more than three years without a drop of any stimulant except coffee, and having suffered severely from frequent attacks of fever and dysentery, I had an insuperable longing for the juice of the grape, of which former experience had taught me the benefit. On my former journey through Asia Minor I had contracted a serious fever in the swamps of Lycia, and quickly regained my strength by the use of good French wine. I could not help reproaching my friend for having too hastily believed the news of my death before he had made all possible inquiries; but, as he was a new-comer into this country and did not possess a knowledge of the language, I could easily perceive that he had no means of ascertaining the truth or falsehood of those reports. I also learned from him that there were dispatches for me in Kidkawa, informing me of the expedition sent up the River Tsadda, or B6nuw6. With regard to his own proceedings, he informed me that his sole object in going to Mindari had been to join that expedition, having been misled by the opinion of my friends in Europe, who thought that I had gone to A'damiwa by way of Mindari, and that, when once in Mori, he had become aware of the mistake he had committed when too late, and had endeavored in vain to retrieve his error by going from that place to Uj6, from

TRAVELS IN ARICA.
whence the overthrow of the usurper 'Abd e' Rahman and the return of his brother 'Omir to power had obliged him to return to K-dkawa.
While we were thus conversing together the other members of the caravan in whose company Mr. Vogel was traveling arrived, and expressed their astonishment and surprise at my sitting quietly here in the midst of the forest,
talking with my friend, while the whole district was infested by hostile men. But these Arab traders are great cowards; and I learned from my countryman that he had found a great number of these merchants assembled in Borziri, and afraid of a few robbers who infested the road beyond that place, and it was only after he had joined them with his companions that they had decided upon advancing. After about two hours' conversation we had to separate; and while Mr. Vogel pursued his journey to Zinder (whence he promised to join me before the end of the month), I hastened to overtake my people, whom I had ordered to wait for me in Kilemrf. I have described this place on my outward journey as a cheerful and industrious village, consisting of two straggling groups, full of cattle and animation; but here also desolation had supplanted human happiness, and a few scattered huts were all that was at present to be seen. Having rested here for about an hour with my people, who had unloaded the animals at a short distance from the well, I started again at three o'clock in the afternoon, and reached Shechgri, where I was to receive my escort, this being the reason why I had been obliged to deviate from the main direction of my route. This time we encamped on the open square inside the village, where we were exposed to the dust and dirt raised by a numerous herd of cattle on their return from their pasture-grounds. This was a sign of some sort of comfort remaining; but we were disturbed in the night by a shrill cry raised on account of a report having been just received that a party of native traders, or "fatiki," had been attacked by the Taw-irek. In the morning I had great difficulty in obtaining two horsemen for an escort; but I at last set out, taking a southerly detour instead of the direct road to Zumkulo, and thus reached the town of Ker-zemin, situated two miles and a half southwest from the former, along a track ornamented by a dense grove of d6m palms. Thus I reached Zurrikulo for the third time during my travels in Negroland, but found it in a much worse condition than when I had last visited it in 1851; and the wall, although it had been con-

**ZURRI'KULO.**

siderably contracted, was still much too large for the small number of inhabitants. The governor, Kash-la S'aid, who paid me a visit in the evening, when I had pitched my tent at a short distance from his residence, requested urgently that, on my arrival in the capital, I would employ my influence with the sheikh in order to induce him either to send him sufficient succors, or to recall him from this dangerous post, otherwise he should take to flight with the rest of the inhabitants. There were here some Arabs who were scarcely able to conceive how I could pursue these difficult roads quite by myself, without a caravan.

In order to lessen the danger, I decided upon traveling at night, and set out about two o'clock in the morning, entering now a region consisting of high sandy downs and irregular hollows, full of ddm palms, and occasionally forming the receptacle for a swampy sheet of water, where the wild hog appears to find a pleasant home. After a march of nearly ten hours, which greatly fatigued my camels on account of the numerous sandy slopes which we had to go up and down, we reached the little hamlet of Gab6re, situated in a rather commanding position, bordered toward the north by a hollow dell. Here I encamped on the eastern side of the
village, and was glad to treat my people with a sheep and a few fowls. From the presence of these articles of luxury I was led to conclude that the inhabitants were tolerably well off; but I was not a little astonished to learn that they pay a certain tribute to the Tawirek, in order not to be exposed to their predatory incursions. Monday, December 41h. It was not yet four o’clock when I was again en route. I thought it remarkable that all this time, although not the slightest quantity of rain or moisture was perceptible, the sky was always overcast before sunrise. I was greatly pleased when I crossed my former path at the neat little village Kiliwa, the aspect of which had made so deep an impression upon me at that time. Farther on I kept to the south of my former track, through a well-cultivated district, where all the fields were provided with those raised platforms intended as stations for the guardians, of which I have spoken on a former occasion. Thus passing a good many villages, we made halt during the hot hours at the village Dimfugi, under a group of fine hijilfj, the inhabitants treating us hospitably. Having then continued our journey at an early hour in the afternoon, we soon passed a village which in other respects presents nothing interesting, but the

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

name of which is remarkable as showing the facetious turn of the natives. It is called "Bidne kaygrde S’afd," meaning "Sleep, and rely upon S’afd," the hamlet having evidently received this name from the native traders proceeding from the side of B6rnuu, who thus evinced the confidence they felt in entering the province of the energetic Kash6lla S’afd, who they knew kept it in such a state of security that there was no danger from robbers.

While we were proceeding through an uninhabited hilly tract, my guide suddenly left me, so that, being misled by the greater width of the path, and passing the village of Jfingerf, animated at the time by a group of lively females in their best attire, and just performing a marriage ceremony, I reached the town of Widi, which I had touched at on my outward journey, and at length by a roundabout way arrived at Borziri, where I expected my people to join me. But I looked for them in vain the whole night. They had taken the road to Gr6marf. The governor treated me hospitably; but his object was to induce me to speak a word in favor of him to his liege lord.

In consequence of my people having taken another road, I lost the whole forenoon of the following day, and encamped about seven miles beyond Gr6marf, near the village called Mariamari. During this encampment I again heard the unusual sound of a lion during the night. But it must be taken into consideration that a branch of the komddugu passes at a short distance to the south of this place, and I therefore think myself right in supposing that, in B6rnuu at least, lions are scarcely ever met with, except in this entangled net of water-courses which I had here reached. The next day I marched for a considerable time along the northern border of this channel, girt by fine tamarind and fig trees, and occasionally by a group of ddm palms, till, having passed the village of Dimon, and traversed a wide swampy tract, we crossed the first branch, which formed a fine sheet of water about a hundred yards broad, but only three feet deep, the only difficulty being in the steepness of the opposite shore.
Having passed the heat of the day under a neighboring tamarind-tree, we continued our march in a southeasterly direction to the village Diway. Here we pitched our tent in the neat little square near the "msid," all the matting fences surrounding the cottages being new and having a very clean appearance. My object in staying here was to confer with the "bfllama" as to the best means of crossing the larger branch of the komidugu, which

DAWAY.-KINJETBERIP.
runs at a short distance beyond this village, and the passage of which was said to be very difficult at the time, encumbered as we were with animals and luggage. But it was very extraordinary that the people here contended that the river then was higher than it had been ten days previously, although I did not find this statement confirmed on our actually crossing it the following morning, the water exhibiting evident signs of having decreased, an observation which exactly corresponds with what I have remarked on a former occasion with regard to the nature of this komidugut. The river here spread out to a considerable extent, and we had some difficulty in crossing it. The greatest depth was more than four feet; but the spreading out of the water was the reason that it was here passable at all, although it had become too shallow to employ the native craft, while lower down, between this place and Z-ŋiriri, it could not be forded. Having then crossed three smaller channels and passed the village Kinj-berf, once a large town and encompassed by a wide clay wall, we took up our quarters in a poor hamlet called Margwa Sheriferi, from a sherff who had settled here many years ago; for, in order to procure myself a good reception from the ruler of Bdrnu, after the great political disturbances which had taken place, I thought it prudent to send a messenger to him to announce my arrival. I only needed to give full expression to my real feelings in order to render my letter acceptable to my former protector, for my delight had been extreme, after the news which I had received of 'Abd e' Rahmin having usurped the supreme power, on hearing that the just and lawful Sheikh 'Omir had once more regained possession of the royal authority. The consequence was, that when, after having traversed the district of Koyim, with its straggling villages, its fine herds of camels, and its deep wells, some of them more than forty fathoms in depth, I approached the town on the 11th of December, I found 'Abd e' Nebf, the chief eunuch of the sheikh, with thirty horsemen, posted at the village of Kallluwi, where a market was just held, in order to give me an honorable reception. Thus I re-entered the town of Kidkawa, whence I had set out on my dangerous journey to the west, in stately procession.

On entering my quarters, I was agreeably surprised at finding the two sappers, Corporal Church and private Macguire, who had been sent out from England to accompany Mr. Vogel, and to join me, if possible, in my proceedings.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
CHAPTER LXXXIV.
LAST RESIDENCE IN Kuf KAWA.-BENEFIT OF EUROPEAN SOCIETY.
ON reaching safely the town of K1dkawa, which had been my head-quarters for so long a period, and from whence I had first commenced my journeys of exploration in Negroland, it might seem that I had overcome all the difficulties in the way of complete success, and that I could now enjoy a short stay in the same place before traversing the last stage of my homeward journey. Such, however, was not the case, and it was my lot to pass four months in this town under rather unpleasant circumstances. I had expected to find sufficient means here, and had, in consequence, agreed to repay the sum of 200 dollars lent me by the Fezzini merchant Khweldi in Kan6; but there were only a few dollars in cash left of the supplies taken out by Mr. Vogel, those deposited by myself in Zinder in the hands of the Sherff el F~si, viz., 400 dollars in cash and a box containing a considerable amount of ironware, having been plundered during the turbulent state of the country produced by the revolution. Even of the merchandise which had been lately dispatched to Zinder, and from thence, in consequence of Mr. Vogel's arrangements, transported to Kkawa, a very considerable proportion was found, on a close examination, to have been abstracted. Being therefore in want of money, and convinced that if such an outrage were allowed to pass by unnoticed no peaceable intercourse could ever be carried on between this country and Europeans, I explained these circumstances in the first audience which I had of the sheikh, to whom I made a present worth about eight pounds sterling. While, therefore, once more assuring him of my unbounded satisfaction at finding him reinstated in his former power, I requested him not to suffer me to be treated in this manner by thieves and robbers, and to exert his influence for the restoration of my property. This proceeding of mine, as responsible to the government under whose auspices I was traveling, involved me in a series of difficulties, and excited against me Diggama, one of the most influential courtiers at the time, and a man of mean character, as it was his servant, or more probably himself, who had obtained possession of the greater part of the plunder. In order to counteract the intrigues of this man, I endeavored to secure the friendship of Yusuf, the sheikh's next eldest brother, an intelligent and straightforward man, by making him a handsome present, and explaining to him, in unequivocal terms, how a friendly intercourse between themselves and the English could only exist if they acted in a conscientious manner. Another circumstance which contributed to render my situation in this place still more uncomfortable was the relation which existed between Mr. Vogel and Corporal Church, one of the sappers who had come with him from England; and I was sorry that the praiseworthy and generous intention of the government in sending out these two useful persons should not be carried out to the fullest extent, but, on the contrary, should be baffled by private animosity. In this respect I had already been greatly disappointed ind grieved on hearing from Mr. Vogel, when I met him on the road, that he had gone alone to Mindari, without making any use of the services of his companions. I did all in my power to convince the two sappers thati under the circumstances in which they were placed, they ought to forget petty jealousies, as it was only by a mutual
good understanding that complete success in such undertakings could be secured. I succeeded in convincing Macguire, although I was less successful with Corporal Church.

Meanwhile, I spent my time in a tolerably useful manner, looking over some of the books which Mr. Vogel had brought with him, especially M. Jomard's introduction to the translation of the "Voyage au Waday" by M. Perron, and the "Flora Nigritia" of Sir William Hooker. I was also considerably interested by the perusal of a packet of letters which had been conveyed in the very box that had been plundered, and which, although dating back as late as December, 1851, afforded me a great deal of pleasure. Partly in order to fulfill a vow which I had made, and partly to obtain a more secure hold upon the friendly dispositions of the natives, I made a present to the inhabitants of the capital on Christmas day of fourteen oxen, not forgetting either rich or poor, blind or fôkara, nor even the Arab strangers.

My residence in the town became infinitely more cheerful in consequence of the arrival of Mr. Vogel on the 29th of December, when I spent a period of twenty days most pleasantly in the company of this enterprising and courageous young traveler, who,}

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

with surprising facility, accustomed himself to all the relations of this strange life. But, while borne away by the izppulse of his own enthusiasm, and giving up all pretensions to the comforts of life, he unfortunately committed the mistake of expecting that his companions, recently arrived from Europe, and whose ideas were less elevated, should do the same, and this had given rise to a lamentable quarrel, which frustrated in a great measure the intentions of the government who had sent out the party. Exchanging opinions with regard to countries which we had both of us traversed, and planning schemes as to the future course which Mr. Vogel was to pursue, and especially as to the next journey which he was to undertake toward Ygkoba and A'damAwa, we passed our time very agreeably. I communicated to him, as far as it was possible in so short a space of time, all the information which I had collected during my extensive wanderings, and called his attention to various points which I begged him to clear up, especially with regard to some remarkable specimens of the vegetable kingdom, and the famous mermaid of the Bônuwô, the "ayi." It was rather unfortunate that no copy of the map which had been constructed from the materials which I had sent home had reached him, so that he remained in the dark with regard to many points which I had already cleared up. I also delivered to Mr. Vogel those letters of introduction which I had received from the ruler of Sôkoto, addressed to the various governors of the provinces in this part of his empire, so that he had a fair prospect before him of being well received. We, moreover, lost no time in obtaining the sheikh's consent to his journey, and at the same time caused to be imprisoned Mesa-id, that servant of the mission who, by his connivance, had facilitated the theft committed upon my effects. In consequence of this energetic proceeding, several of the
stolen articles came to light, even of those which had formed the contents of the box sent from England.
Thus we began cheerfully the year 1855, in which I was to return to Europe from my long career of hardships and privations, and in which my young friend was to endeavor to complete my discoveries and researches, first in a southwesterly direction toward the B6nuw6, and then eastward in the direction of the Nile. We likewise indulged in the hope that he might succeed, after having explored the provinces of Ba-dchi and Adamwa, in penetrating eastward along that highly interesting route which leads from Sariwu to L6ggon, round the southern border of the mountainous country of M6ndar.

DEPARTURE OF MR. VOGEL.
Meanwhile some interesting excursions to the shores of the Tsid formed a pleasant interruption in our course of studies and scientific communications, and these little trips were especially interesting on account of the extraordinary manner in which the shores of the lake had been changed since I last saw them on my return from Bagirmi, the water having destroyed almost the whole of the town of Ng6rnu, and extending as far as the village of Kdikia, where we had encamped the first night on our expedition to Mfisgu. There were two subjects which caused me some degree of anxiety with regard to the prospects of this enterprising young traveler, the first being his want of experience, which could not be otherwise expected in a young man fresh from Europe, and the other the weakness of his stomach, which made it impossible for him to eat any meat at all. The very sight of a dish of meat made him sick. I observed that Macguire was affected in the same manner.

Having obtained, with some difficulty, the letter of recommendation from the sheikh, and prepared every thing that Mr. Vogel wanted to take with him, forming a sufficient supply to maintain him for a whole year, I accompanied my young friend out of the town in the afternoon of the 20th of January. But our start was rather unlucky, several things having been left behind; and it was after some delay and uncertainty that we joined the people who had gone on in advance with the camels, at a late hour, at the village of Diggigi. Here we passed a cheerful evening, and drank with spirit to the success of the enterprise upon which my companion was then about to engage. Mr. Vogel had also taken with him all his meteorological instruments, and his luggage being of a manifold description and rather heavy, I foresaw that he would have great trouble in transporting it through the difficult country beyond Yikoba, especially during the rainy season; and, indeed, it is evident, from the knowledge which we possess of his farther proceedings, that he either left his instruments behind in the capital of Bafichi, or that he lost them in crossing a river between that place and Zariya. As for his barometer, which he had transported with great care to Klikawa, it went out of order the moment it was taken from the wall.

Having borne him company during the following day's march, I left him with the best wishes for his success. I had taken consideralle pains in instructing his
companion, Corporal Macguire, in the use of the compass, as the accurate laying down of the con-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
figuration of the ground seemed to me of the highest importance in a mountainous country like Baiichi and Adamnwa; for Mr. Vogel himself could not be induced to undertake such a task, as it would have interfered greatly with the collecting of plants, which, besides making astronomical observations, was his chief object; and besides, being an extremely tedious business, it required a degree of patience which my young friend did not possess.* However, I am afraid that even Macguire did not follow up my instructions for any length of time. At all events, as he did not accompany Mr. Vogel beyond Yikoba, it seems evident that, even if his journal should be saved, we should probably not find all the information with regard to the particulars of his route which we might desire in such a country; for, during all the journeys which he has pursued, as far as we have any knowledge of them, he relied entirely upon his astronomical observations. I will say nothing here with regard to the results of this journey, as we may entertain the hope that his journals may still be saved, and that we may thus learn something more of him than the little which has as yet come to our knowledge.
It may be easily imagined that, on returning to Kikawa, I felt rather desolate and lonely; but I had other reasons for feeling uncomfortable, for, having exposed myself to the cold the preceding night, I was seized with a violent attack of rheumatism, which laid me up for a long time, and which, causing me many sleepless nights, reduced me to an extraordinary degree of weakness, from which I did not recover for the greater part of the month., Nevertheless, I did not desist from requesting the sheikh, in the most urgent terms, to send me on my way, and to supply me at least with camels, in compensation for the loss which I had sustained through the insurrection. I had hopes that he would allow me to set out at the beginning of the next Mohammedan month, and I was therefore extremely delighted when two respectable Arabs came forward and offered to accompany me on my journey to Fezzin, although I did not much rely on the expectations which they raised. Meanwhile, on the 3d of February, the pupils of the Sheikh el Bak6y, who had staid so long behind in Kan6, reached Kikawa, and their arrival was not at all disagreeable to me, although
* Macguire was to accompany Mr. Vogel on his excursion, and he promised cheerfully to assist him in every way toward accomplishing the objects of her majesty's government. As for Corporal Church, it was thought the best plan that he should return to Europe in my company.

ABORTIVE PLAN OF DEPARTURE.
they put me to fresh expense; for, by their authority, as being the followers of a highly venerated Mohammedan chief, they increased the probability of my safely entering upon my home-journey. I therefore went with my friends to pay a visit to Z6n el A'bidin, the son-in-law of the Sheikh el Bak6y, who, having been formerly employed by the Sheikh 'Omar as a messenger to the Emir of Sokoto, was now again to return eastward; for having in the beginning been treated rather unkindly
by his wife Z6na, "The Ornament," El Bakiy's daughter, he had thought it better to console himself with a pilgrimage to Mekka, and did not now appear willing to listen to the solicitations of his repentant wife, who sincerely wished him to return to bear her company. I found him a simple and decent-looking man, whose manners pleased me the more as he abstained entirely from begging, and I testified the obligation which I bore to his family by sending him an ox for slaughtering, a sheep, and some smaller articles. I had also the pleasure of meeting here the Sherif' Abd e' Rahmin, the same man whom we had met four years previously in the country of A'fr, and who had lately returned from A'damiwa. He brought me the latest information of the state of that country, and as he was to return again in that direction, at a later period, when I had received fresh supplies, I thought it prudent to give him a small parcel to deliver to Mr. Vogel wherever he should fall in with him, especially a few turkedis and some sugar, of which he had taken with him only a small supply.

Having hired a guide and protested repeatedly to the sheikh that I could not wait any longer, my health having suffered considerably from my five years' stay in these countries, I left the town on the 20th of February, and pitched my tent on the high ground at Dirwerghfi, just above the pool or swamp, round the southern border of which sorghum is cultivated to a considerable extent, and which in the daytime formed the watering-place for numerous herds of cattle. During the night it was visited by a great number of water-fowl. On the whole, I felt extremely happy in having at length left behind me a town of which I had become excessively tired.

But it was not my destiny to get off so easily, and leave this country so soon, for I had had repeated and very serious consultations, not only with the sheikh, but especially with his brother, Abba Yusuf, who was distinguished by his learning and his love of justice, about the parcel sent by her majesty's government, together with the 400 dollars which I had left behind in Zinder, and which had been stolen in consequence of the revolutionary outbreak. After a great deal of discussion, the sheikh promised me that he would restore what I had lost; but, knowing from experience that with these people time is of no value, and finding my health rapidly declining, I had come to the resolution of not waiting any longer, and the sheikh, seeing that I was determined, according to all appearance gave his full approval to my departure by sending me, on the morning of the 21st, five camels, which, although of very inferior quality, yet held out to me a slight hope of proceeding on my journey. But in the afternoon of the 22d he sent to me my old friend Hij Edris, in order to induce me to return into the town; and the latter made me all sorts of promises as to the manner in which the sheikh wanted to grant me redress for all the claims which I had upon him. In order to show the ruler of the country that I had no fault to find with his own conduct, and to entreat him once more to send me off without farther delay, I went into the town in the course of the afternoon and paid my respects to him. He desired me to return with all my effects to my old quarters; but I told him that was impossible, as my state of health rendered it essential for me to return home without farther delay,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

gether with the 400 dollars which I had left behind in Zinder, and which had been stolen in consequence of the revolutionary outbreak. After a great deal of discussion, the sheikh promised me that he would restore what I had lost; but, knowing from experience that with these people time is of no value, and finding my health rapidly declining, I had come to the resolution of not waiting any longer, and the sheikh, seeing that I was determined, according to all appearance gave his full approval to my departure by sending me, on the morning of the 21st, five camels, which, although of very inferior quality, yet held out to me a slight hope of proceeding on my journey. But in the afternoon of the 22d he sent to me my old friend Hij Edris, in order to induce me to return into the town; and the latter made me all sorts of promises as to the manner in which the sheikh wanted to grant me redress for all the claims which I had upon him. In order to show the ruler of the country that I had no fault to find with his own conduct, and to entreat him once more to send me off without farther delay, I went into the town in the course of the afternoon and paid my respects to him. He desired me to return with all my effects to my old quarters; but I told him that was impossible, as my state of health rendered it essential for me to return home without farther delay,
whereas by taking up my quarters once more inside the town, according to their own slow mode of proceeding, I was sure not to get away before a couple of months had elapsed; but I said that I would gladly wait outside some days longer, and that, if he wished, I would come into the town every day in order to ascertain if there was any thing he wished to say to me. To this the sheikh seemed to agree at the time, and thus I took leave of him in the most quiet and satisfactory manner, and it appeared as if every thing was arranged, and that he would in no way interfere with my departure. I therefore bought two more camels the following day out of a large number which had been brought into the town by the Tebu from the Bahhr el Ghazil, and on the 25th, through the mediation of a respectable Tebu merchant, of the name of Hlj el Biggela, made an agreement with a guide, paying him half of his salary in advance. The same evening the sheikh sent me some more provisions.

Thus all seemed ready for my departure, although I had not many people at my disposal; but when it had only been delayed one day by accident, there appeared suddenly, in the afternoon

RE-ENTER THE TOWN.

of the 28th, Ali Zfntelma, that same servant of Dlglgema who had stolen part of the merchandise which he was bringing from Znder to Kuikawa, at the head of four horsemen armed with muskets, bringing me an order from the sheikh to return to the town. Feeling convinced, from the character of the messenger, that if I did not obey the order I should expose myself to all sorts of insults from this contemptible villain, if I did not rid myself of him in a violent and unlawful manner, ‘I thought it prudent, heartrending though it was, to resign myself in obedience to the tyrannical will of these people. It happened rather fortunately for me that Sidi A’hamed, the chief of Sfdi el Bakiy’s messengers, was staying with me at the time in my encampment. Having, therefore, sent my people in advance, I went to see the sheikh. I then protested against such a proceeding; but he himself did not speak, a younger brother of his, of the name of Abba ‘Othmin, taking the lead in the conversation, and stating that the sheikh could not allow me to depart in this manner; and from all that I could learn, I concluded that it was especially this man who had persuaded his elder brother that it was not prudent to allow me to go, unsatisfied as I was, and without having settled my claims, the dangers of the road also being very great. But the principal reason was, that a Tebu messenger had arrived with letters from the north, although I did not hear what the letters addressed to the sheikh himself contained; but I afterward learned that this man had brought the news of the approach of a caravan, and it was but natural that the sheikh should wish to await its arrival.

This messenger brought nothing for me except a copy of a dispatch of Lord Clarendon’s, dated 10th of June, 1853, and consequently more than twenty months old. The news of my death seemed to be fully accredited in Tripoli and Fezzin, my letter, forwarded from Kan6, of course not having arrived in the latter place when this parcel left; and the only thing which afforded me satisfaction in my unpleasant situation were a few Maltese portfolios, which gave me some information of what had been going on in Europe four months previously.
All that now remained for me under the present circumstances was to resign myself in patience, although the delay pressed upon me with indescribable heaviness, and I had scarcely energy enough to endeavor to employ my time usefully. However, a rather pleasant intermezzo occurred, whereby at the same time one of the conditions was fulfilled upon which my own departure was

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

dependent, by the arrival of the Arab caravan from the north; and on the 23d of March I went to see them encamped in 1Djergi, the path being enlivened by all sorts of people going out to meet their friends, and to hear what news had been brought by the new-comers. The caravan consisted of rather more than a hundred Arabs, but not more than sixty camels, the chief of the caravan being Hij Jiber, an old, experienced Fezzini merchant. There was, besides, an important personage of considerable intelligence, notwithstanding his youth, viz., Abba A'hamed ben Hamma el Kinemi. These people had left Fezzin under the impression that I was dead, and were therefore not a little surprised at finding me alive, especially that same Mohammed el 'Akerolit, from whom I had received the 1000 dollars in Zinder, and who was again come to Kegroland on a little mercantile speculation. This caravan also carried 1000 dollars for the mission, but it was not addressed to me, as I had long been consigned to the grave, but to Mr. Vogel, although the chief of the caravan offered to deliver it to me. All this mismanagement, in consequence of the false news of my death, greatly enhanced the unpleasant nature of my situation; for, instead of leaving this country under honorable circumstances, I was considered as almost disgraced by those who had sent me out, the command having been taken from me and given to another. There is no doubt that such an opinion delayed my departure considerably, for otherwise the sheikh would have exerted himself in quite a different manner to see me off, and would have agreed to any sacrifice in order to satisfy my claims. However, in consequence of the representations of Abba A'hamed, he sent me on the 28th, through that same Diggelma, to whom I was indebted for the greater part of my unpleasant situation, the 400 dollars which had come along with the box of English' ironware, and he offered even to indemnify me for the loss of the articles contained in the box. This, however, I did not feel justified in accepting, as the value of those contents had been greatly exaggerated by the agent in Miirzuk, and claims raised in consequence. Nevertheless, the amount received was a great relief to me, as, without touching the sum brought by the caravan, I was thus enabled to pay back the 200 dollars lent me by the Fezzini merchant Khweldi, and to pay my servant Mohammed el Gatrøni, the only one of my free servants who was still staying with me, the greater proportion of the salary due to him, for I had succeeded in paying off my other servants from the money realized by my merchandise.

NEWS FROM MR. VOGEL.

Meanwhile I endeavored to pass my time as well as I could, studying the history of the empire of Bornu, and entering occasionally into a longer conversation with some of the better instructed of my acquaintances, or making a short excursion;
but altogether my usual energy was gone, and my health totally undermined, and
the sole object which occupied my thoughts was to convey my feeble body in
safety home. My reduced state of
body and mind was aggravated by the weather, as it was extremely hot during this
period, the thermometer in the latter part of the month of April, at half past two
o'clock in the afternoon, rising as high as 1130.* My exhausted condition had at
least this effect upon the people, that it served to hasten my departure, by
convincing them that I should not be able to stand this climate any longer. From
the 20th of April, therefore, on*ard, I was made to hope that I should be allowed
to proceed on my journey in the company of a Tebu merchant of the name of
Klo. A small caravan of Tebu, proceeding to Bilma to fetch salt, having gone in
advance on the 25th, I went in the afternoon of the 28th to the sheikh in company
with Abba A'had, who, on the whole, was extremely useful to me in my
endeavors to get off, in order to make my final arrangement with K'lo. This day
was certainly the happiest day or the only happy one which I passed in this place
after the departure of Mr. Vogel; for, in the morning, on returning from an
excursion to Diwerghui, I found a messenger with letters from my companion,
one dated from Gijeba, the other from Ydkoba, wherein he informed me of the
progress of his journey, and how he had safely reached the latter place, which had
never before been visited by a European. He also informed me that he was just
about to start for the camp or sansdnie of the governor, who had been waging war
for the last seven years against a tribe of idolaters whom he had sworn to subject.
Greatly delighted at the prospect which opened to my fellow-
traveler, whom I
was to leave behind me, of filling up the blanks which I had left in my
discoveries, I made the messenger a handsome present. Being thus considerably
relieved in mind and full of hopes, I bore with patience and resignation some little
disagreeable incidents which occurred before my final departure, especially the
loss of two of the camels which I had recently bought.
* It was rather remarkable that on the 15th of April we had a few drops of rain,
accompanied by repeated thunder; and altogether, as the sequel showed, the rainy
season that year appeared to set in at a rather unusual and early period for
Kdkawa.

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
CHAPTER LXXXV..
REAL START.-SMALL PARTY.
AT length, on the 4th of May, I left the town and encamped outside, close in front
of the gate. The sheikh had also given me another came], and a young and rather
weak horse, which did not seem very fit for such a journey, and which, in the
sequel, proved rather a burden than otherwise to me. In this spot I remained some
days, waiting for my fellow-traveler Klo, who was still detained in the town, so
that I did not take leave of the sheikh until the 9th of the month, when he' received
me with great kindness, but was by no means backward in begging for several
articles to be sent to him, especially a small cannon, which was rather out of
comparison with the poor present which he had bestowed upon myself. However,
he promised me that I should still receive another camel from him, of which I
stood greatly in need, although I had made up for one which was lost during my stay before the gate of the town, through the carelessness of A’bbegt, by buying a fresh camel at the last moment of my departure. It was for this purpose that I took the sum of thirty dollars from the 1000 dollars brought by the caravan, and which I was anxious to leave behind for the use of Mr. Vogel. Altogether I was extremely unfortunate with my camels, and lost a third one before I had proceeded many miles from the town, so that I was obliged to throw away several things with which my people had overladen my animals.

Our move from Diwergh-6 in the afternoon of the 10th was very inauspicious; and while a heavy thunder-storm was raging, enveloping every thing in impenetrable darkness, only occasionally illumined by the flashes of lightning, I lost my people, and had great difficulty in joining them again. Having then moved on by very short marches as far as Nghrutuwa, through a finely wooded valley called H6nderi Galliram, we pitched our tents on the 14th of May near the town of Y6, where, to my utmost disappointment, we had to stay the five following days, during which the interesting character of the komidugu, which at present did not contain a drop of water, with its border of vegetation, afford-

REAL START.
ed me but insufficient entertainment. It would, however, have been curious for any European who had adhered to the theory of the great eastern branch of the Niger flowing along this bed from the Ts64 to see us encamped in thp dry bottom of this valley. At all events, oppressed as I had been all the time by the apprehension that something might still occur to frustrate my departure, I deemed it one of the happiest moments of my life when, in the afternoon of Saturday the 19th, we at length left our station at this northern frontier of B6rnu, in the present reduced state of that kingdom, and I turned my back with great satisfaction upon these countries where I had spent full five years in incessant toil and exertion. On retracing my steps northward I was filled with the hope that a merciful Providence would allow me to reach home in safety, in order to give a full account of my labors and discoveries, and, if possible, to follow up the connections which I had established with the interior for opening regular intercourse with that continent.

Our first day's march from here, however, was far from being auspicious; for, having met with frequent delays and stoppages, such as are common at the commencement of a journey, and darkness having set in, the three monkeys which I wished to take with me, by their noise and cries, frightened the camels so much that they started off at a gallop, breaking several things, and, among others, a strong musket. I saw, therefore, that nothing was to be done but to let loose these malicious little creatures, which, instead of remaining quiet, continually amused themselves with loosening all the ropes with which the luggage was tied on the backs of the animals. Having encamped this night at a late hour, we reached, the following morning, the town of Birruwa, and remained here the whole day, in order to provide ourselves with the dried fish which is here prepared in large quantities, and which constitutes the most useful article for procuring the necessary supplies in the Tebu country. The Diza, or B-61gudi, who were to join us on the march, had been encamped in this spot since the previous day. From
here we pursued our road to Ng6gimi; but the aspect of the country had greatly changed since I last traversed it on my return from Kinem, the whole of the road which I at that time followed being now covered with water, the great inundation of the Tsid not having yet retired within its ordinary boundaries. The whole shore seemed to have given way and sunk a few feet. Besides this changed aspect of

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

the country, several hamlets of Kinembii cattle-breeders, such as represented in the accompanying wood-cut, caused great relief and animation.

It was also interesting to observe the Buidduma, the pirate inhabitants of the islands of the lagune, busily employed in their peculiar occupation of obtaining salt from the ashes of the "siwik," or the Capparis sodata. Having rested during the hot hours of the day, we took up our quarters in the evening just beyond a temporary. hamlet of these islanders; for although watchfulness, even here, was very necessary in order to guard against any thievish attempt, yet, in general, the Buidduma seem to be on good terms with the Tebu, with whom they appear to have stood in intimate political connection from ancient times.

Tuesday, Hay 22d. At the distance of only a mile from our encampment we passed, close on our left, the site of W'idi, enlivened by a few date palms, the whole open grassy plain to the right, over which our former road to Kinem had lain, being enveloped in a wider or narrower strip of water. Having halted again at the beginning of the hot hours, in a well-wooded tract, we observed in the afternoon a herd of elephants, which passed the heat of the day comfortably in the midst of the water, and among the number a female with her young. Farther on we

NGE'GIMI.

were met by a troop of five buffaloes, an animal which, during my former journey, I had not observed near the lake.

Thus we reached the new village of Ng6gimi, which was built on the slope of the hills, the former town having been entirely swept away by the inundation. Here we remained the forenoon of the following day, the encampment being enlivened by a great number of women from the village, offering for sale fish in a fresh and dried state, besides a few fowls, milk, and "6mmari," the seeds of the cotton-plant; but, with the exception of a few beads for adorning their own sable persons, they were scarcely willing to receive anything besides corn. I was glad to see, instead of the ugly B6ru females, these more symmetrical figures of the Kanembui ladies, the glossy blackness of whose skin was agreeably relieved by their white teeth as well as by their beads of the same color. Our friends the Daza, who five weeks previously had been driven back by the Tawirek, had recovered here their luggage, which on that occasion they had hastily deposited with the villagers when making an attempt to cross the desert. They were here to separate from us for a time, as, for some reason or other, they wanted to pursue a more westerly track, leading by the Bfr el Hammim, or Met6mmi, which is mentioned by the former expedition, while our friend K6lo was bent upon keeping nearer the shores of the lagune, by way of Kibbo.
After a short conversation with the chief of the place, the MayNg6gimibe, we set out in the afternoon, and, proceeding at a slow rate, as the camels were very heavily laden, we passed, after a march of about eight miles, along a large open creek of the lagune and, having met some solitary travelers coming from Kinem, encamped, about eight in the evening, on rather uneven ground, and kept alternate watch during the night. Thursday, ifay 24th. Starting at a very early hour, we soon ascended hilly ground, but, after we had proceeded some miles, were greatly frightened by the sight of people on our right, when we three horsemen pursued them till we had driven them to the border of the lake; for this whole tract is so very unsafe that a traveler may feel certain that the few people whom he meets on the road, unless they bear distinctly the character of travelers like himself, will betray him to some predatory band. Having proceeded about nine miles, we halted near an outlying creek of the lake, the water of which was fresh, although most of these creeks contain brackish water. When we continued our march in the afternoon, we passed another creek, or rather a separate lake, and, winding along a narrow path made by the elephants, which are here very numerous, reached, after a march of a little more than ten miles, the leafy vale, or “hgnderi,” of Kfbbo, and encamped on the opposite margin. This locality is interesting, as constituting, apparently, the northern limit of the white ant. We, however, were prevented by the darkness from making use of the well, as these vales are full of wild beasts, and we were therefore obliged to remain here the forenoon of the following day. a circumstance which was not displeasing to me, as I did not feel at all well, and was obliged to have recourse to my favorite remedy of tamarind-water. We pursued our march before the sun had attained its greatest power, but met with frequent stoppages, the slaves of our Tebu companions, who were heavily laden and suffering from the effects of the water, being scarcely able to keep up; a big fellow even lay down never to rise again. Indeed, it would seem as if the Tebu treated their slaves more cruelly than even the Arabs, making them carry all sorts of articles, especially their favorite dried fish. After a march of not more than twelve miles, we halted some distance to the east of the well of Kuf6, and were greatly excited in consequence of the approach of our fellow-travelers the Diza, whom, at the moment, we did not at first recognize. This locality was also regarded so unsafe for a small caravan, that we started again soon after midnight, and halted after a march of about fifteen miles, when we met a courier coming from Kawar with the important news that Hassan Bashi, the Governor of Fezzin, who had been suffering from severe illness for several years, had at length succumbed, and that the E’fede, that turbulent tribe on the northern frontier of A’sben, which had caused us such an immense deal of trouble in the first part of our expedition, had undertaken a foray to Tibesti, a piece of news which influenced our own proceedings very considerably, as we were thus exposed, to the especial danger of falling in with this predatory band, besides the danger which in general attaches to the passage through this extensive desert tract, which extends from Negroland to the cultivated zone of North Africa. It was this
circumstance, together with the great heat of the midday hours at this hottest part of the year, which obliged us, without the least regard to our own comfort, to travel the greater part of the night, so that I was unable to rectify and complete, in general, the observations of the former

THE WELL BEDWA'EAM.

expedition, the route of which, being entirely changed by the new astronomical data obtained by Mr. Vogel, would be liable to some little rectification throughout.

Having Tested during the hot hours of the day, we pursued our march about two o'clock in the afternoon, when, after a stretch of about two miles, we entered a fine hilly district, well adapted for pasture-grounds for camels and sheep, but untenanted in the present deserted state of the country. A mile and a half farther on we passed the well of Mul, which was at present dry, and then winding along the fine valley, were detained a long time by the loss of another camel. Having then encamped, after a march altogether of about ten miles, we started again an hour after midnight, and, after traveling nearly thirteen miles, reached the well of U'nghurutin, situated in a hollow surrounded with fine vegetation, and affording that most excellent fodder for camels, the "hid;" besides which, there was a great deal of "retem," or broom.

Monday, May 28th. Having spent the Sunday in U'nghurutfn quietly, and indulging in some little repose, we started a little after midnight, and did not encamp till after a march of about fifteen miles. It was interesting to observe, when the day began to dawn, that all along this region a considerable quantity of rain had fallen, in consequence of which "hid" and "seb6d" covered the ground, although we were extremely glad to escape from that great annoyance to travelers, the feathery bristle, or "ngfbbi." Another twelve miles in the afternoon, through a more open country, broken in the earlier part by a few specimens of the tree "sfmsim," brought us to the well Bedwaram, or B6lkashi-firri, where we encamped at the foot of the eastern eminence, choosing our ground with great care, as we were to recruit here our strength by a longer stay, the well being at present frequented by a number of that section of the Gunda tribe of Tebu which is called "Windala," or "Aussa;" for in general the well is by no means a safe retreat, and it seems to have been at this well, or in the neighborhood, that Corporal Macguire was slain last year when returning home after the report of the death of his chief, Mr. Vogel.

We had great trouble in opening the wells; for we needed a large provision of water, as, besides filling our skins, we had here to water all our camels. Only one of the wells was open at the time, and contained but very little water. It is easily to be understood in what a perilous position a small caravan would be if attacked under such circumstances by a gang of highway robbers,

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

and I felt particularly obliged to Sheikh 'Omir for having afforded me the protection of the salt-merchants, the Diza, who were busy the whole day long in
digging out the wells. I was glad to find that the temporary inhabitants of the place behaved quietly and decently, and even brought us some camels' milk, which they bartered for small looking-glasses.

Having remained here also the 30th, we started in the afternoon of the last of May, and, after a good stretch of nearly twenty miles, encamped. We set out again after about four hours' rest, when, having proceeded some six miles, we entered the open sandy waste just beyond a fine group of sfmsim-trees, and halted again during the heat of the day, after a march of about six miles more. I here enjoyed again the wide expanse of the open desert, which, notwithstanding its monotony, has something very grand about it, and is well adapted to impress the human mind with the consciousness of its own littleness, although, at the present season, it presented itself in its most awful character, owing to the intense heat which prevailed.

Having a tedious march before us through the dreary desert of Tint-dmma, we started for a long, wearisome night's march some time before the heat had attained its highest degree, only one hour after noon, but probably we should have acted wiser to have waited till the heat was past, as the poor slaves of my fellow-travelers were knocked up before the heat came on. Only a short rest of forty minutes was granted, at eight o'clock in the evening, for a cold supper of Guinea-corn, when the caravan started again, to continue its night-march over this unbounded sandy waste; but I, as well as my chief servant, being on horseback, I found myself at liberty to remain some time behind, indulging in the luxury of a cup of coffee. I remained, however, almost, too long; and if it had not been that, contrary to my orders, which were to the effect to spare the powder as much as possible, my servants kept firing their pistols off at random, in order to cheer themselves and the poor slaves, I should have had some difficulty in following the caravan. Cheered by the firing, and perhaps impressed with the awful character of the country which we were traversing at such an hour, the slaves, forgetful of their over-fatigue, kept up an uninterrupted song, the sounds of which fell occasionally upon my ears, as I followed them at a great distance; but under the effects of this excitement, and in the cool of the evening, they marched at such a rate that I did not overtake them

FATIGUE IN THE DESERT.

till long after midnight, when freemen and slaves began to feel exhausted, and would gladly have lagged behind; and I had to urge on several of these unfortunates, and prevent them from staying behind, and falling a sacrifice to thirst and fatigue. One of my servants was not to be seen. In fact, this desert is famous for people well accustomed to it losing their way, and the white sand, extending to a boundless distance, is so confounding that people often miss their direction entirely. But the fatigue of this night's march was very great indeed, and when the day dawned I gladly availed myself of the opportunity afforded by a little herbage of giving a slight feed to my exhausted horse to obtain a few minutes' repose.
Pursuing then our dreary march, while a heavy wind rose, which, by raising the dust, made the desert look still more gloomy, we gradually discovered the rocky mountains of A'gadem ahead of us, but did not enter the peculiar valley formation till a quarter past seven o'clock. Here we chose our campingground in a corner surrounded by the "siwik," which form quite a little plantation, and occasionally attract temporary settlers, especially of the tribe called Bolo-d-6wa or A'm-wad6be. However, the-sand-wind made our stay here very cheerless, which was increased by the circumstance of the ground being full of camel lice, this being the usual camping-ground. The water of the well was clean and excellent, but not very plentiful, so that we had to take our supply for the road before us from a more northerly well. The servant who was missing not having been found, we waited anxiously for the arrival of the Diza in the afternoon, when he made his appearance in their company. They had fortunately seen him at a great distance, when he had completely lost his way, and was wandering southward. I made a present to the man who had brought him back. We remained here the following day, and, besides the small luxury of the wild fruit of the siwik, I was glad to be able to buy a vessel of butter from our friends the salt-traders, as my store of this article was nearly consumed.

Monday, June 4th. The poor slaves of our companions were so totally exhausted by the fatigue of the journey that they would have preferred any thing to a continuance of such suffering, and when we started at a very early hour a poor female slave tried to make her escape by hiding herself in the bushes, but she was soon found out, and received a severe flogging for her pains. Proceeding along a very peculiar basin of natron at the foot of the rocky slope, we reached, after a march of about four miles, the northern well, situated in an open, pleasant landscape, the mountains on the east side receding in the distance. We remained here this day and the following forenoon, keeping back the Diza, who were anxious to pursue their journey, for animals as well as men stood in need of some repose, in order to enable them to traverse the long desert tract which separated us from the Tebu country.

June 5th. Just about noon, as we were packing ready to start, a thunder-storm gathered on the chain toward the east, and a few drops of rain fell while we were setting out. Having then kept along the valley for about three miles, we ascended the higher ground with an easterly direction, and obtained a sight of the eastern slope of the chain which borders the valley, which, although not so high on this side as toward the west, seemed yet to have an elevation of about 300 feet. About three o'clock we had again a slight shower of rain. The whole of A'gadem, as I here became aware, forms a sort of wide, extensive hollow, bordered on the eastern side by this rocky chain, and toward the west at the distance of about three miles, as well as toward the north, by sandy downs. The higher level itself, over which our track lay, was broken by considerable depressions, running east and west, and forming such steep slopes, that Clapperton's expression of high sand-hills which he had here to cross seems well justified; and we ourselves took up...
our encampment after a march of a little more than eleven miles in a hollow of this description, bordered by high sand-hills toward the west. However, our halt was very short, and soon after midnight we pursued our march, the desert now becoming more level, and therefore allowing a steady, progress by night. Pursuing our march with alacrity, we encamped, after a stretch of about sixteen miles, in a spot which was full of those remarkable crystallized tubes which are called "bargom-chfdibe" by the KaUnri, and "kauchin-kassa" by the Hiusa people, and the character of which has been explained in such various ways, some supposing them to be the effect of lightning, while others fancy them to be the covered walks with which the white ant had surrounded stalks of negro corn. Pursuing from here our march, a little before two in the afternoon we entered a sandy waste, which well deserved to be compared to the wide expanse of the ocean, although even here small rocky ridges protruded in some places; and after a march of about ten miles, we ourselves encamped under the protection of such a ridge.

WELL OF DI'BBELA.

Thursday, June 7th. Starting again from here at a very early hour in the night, we reached, after a march of about six miles, the well of Dibbela, the romantic character of which, with its high sand-hills, from which black rocky masses towered forth, together with its diim palms, struck me not a little. But the water is abominable, being impregnated with an immense quantity of natron; and it was here that Mr. Henry Warrington, who had accompanied Mr. Vogel to K-ikawa, succumbed to the dysentery, with which he had been seized on the road, the bad quality of the water having probably brought the disorder to a crisis. It was, moreover, a very hot day, although not hotter than usual, the thermometer at two o'clock indicating 1090 in the best shade I could find; and the masses of sand all around were quite bewitching and bewildering. Starting again in the afternoon as soon as the heat had reached its greatest intensity, we ascended the sandy downs with a considerable westerly deviation, leaving just beyond this hollow another one, with some talha-trees, and then keeping over the sandy level with a ridge of the same character, and passing, after a march of about five miles, a great quantity of kajfji, till, after a good stretch of altogether seventeen miles, we encamped on hard sandy ground. On this tedious journey I always felt greatly delighted, on our arrival at the camping-ground, to stretch myself at full length on the clean sand, the softness of which makes one feel in no want of a couch.

June 8th. Having encamped at a rather late hour, we did not start so early as usual, and halted, after a march of about eight miles, on a ground almost entirely destitute of herbage, but, what seemed very remarkable, soaked by the rain of the previous day, and affording another and still stronger proof of the incorrectness of the opinion which had hitherto been entertained of this whole tract never being fertilized by the rains. The soil also was full of the footprints of the "bagr-el-wihesh," Antelope bubalis, which, being pursued by the sportsmen of A'gadem and Dibbela, had evidently sought a refuge in this region. Having from hence made a stretch of about ten miles in the afternoon, and halted for nearly four hours at sunset, we started again for a wearisome night's march, deviating very considerably from our former track; and after a march of a little
more than eighteen miles, the latter part over a difficult range of sandhills, we reached in the morning the well of Zaw-kuri in a dreadfully-fatigued state, and with the loss of four camels; but it was

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

cheering to find that the locality—a vale richly adorned with siwik, or Capparis sodala, afforded some relief not only to the body, but even to the mind. We here met with a small caravan of Tebu, natives of the very ancient village of A'gherim or A'ghram, the place of which I have spoken on a former occasion,* and which lies three days northwest from here by way of Yawi. Being on their road to B6rnu, they were anxious to exchange their camels for mine, the latter being accustomed to the climate of B6rnu, whither they were going. Such an exchange is certainly advisable to travelers proceeding in either direction, in the event of the animals of each party being equally good; but, on the one hand, I wanted too badly the few camels which had withstood the fatigue, and, on the other, those of these people were too poor to allow me to accept their offer, and, in consequence, they had to load the five horses which they had with them with water-skins. These people gave us the important information that the ghazzia of the Tawirek had returned from Tib6sti, having made only a small booty of forty camels and thirty slaves, on account of the Tebu having been on their guard, although they threatened to return at some future period. We remained here the following day, enjoying the repose of which we stood so much in need. A strong wind had been blowing all night, but the heat, at two o'clock in the afternoon, reached its usual elevation of 108° in the best shade.

Monday, June 11th. We started again in the afternoon, winding round the southeastern edge of the considerable mountain group to which the vale is indebted for its existence, and having on our right sandy downs. Just at the spot where we left the small oasis, known to the traders of the desert as Zaw-kanwa, on our left, we fell in with the footsteps of a small party, when, supposing them to be marauders, we followed them up for a while, till we had convinced ourselves that they were people in search of a runaway slave. Pursuing then our march altogether about sixteen miles, we halted at nine o'clock in the evening, but started again at midnight, and, after a march of fourteen miles, reach d, Muskitenu, the southernmost limit of the oasis of Kawir, although nothing but an inconsiderable shallow depression, full of marl and alum.

Although the heat was greater than usual, the thermometer indicating as much as 110°, we started with great alacrity in the afternoon, as we were now approaching the seats of Tebu power and See vol. ii., p. 595.

612

BILMA AND KALALA.

civilization in the heart of the desert, where nature has provided this little fertile spot in order to facilitate intercourse between distant nations. However, several sandy ridges opposed themselves to our progress before we reached the real beginning of the valley, at the western foot of a large and broad-topped rocky mound; but the sand was not so deep as I had been led by the description of other
people to expect. Here the scenery became highly interesting, the verdant ground-where small patches of the grass called “ghedeb” and vegetables were sown, surrounded by slight fences of palm bushes—being overtopped by handsome groups of palm-trees; and cheered as I felt by this spectacle, after the dreary march which we had made, I could not grudge my people a few shots of powder. But while our friends, the Diza salt-traders, encamped at the very thickest grove, where the dilapidated town of Bilma is situated, we ourselves entered a dreary salt-pan, and encamped about a mile farther on, near a miserable little village called Kal£1a, without the ornament or shade of a single tree. Moreover, the ground was so hard that it was only with the greatest difficulty that we were able to pitch the tent; and having no wood wherewith to cook a supper, a small hospitable gift from our friend K6lo, consisting first in a dish of fresh dates, and afterward in a mess of cooked pudding, proved very acceptable. The miserable hamlet, besides a few hovels scarcely to be distinguished from the ground, contained only the ruins of a mosque, which had been turned into a magazine for salt.

Our stay here became the more disagreeable, as toward the morning of the following day a heavy gale arose, against which this open tract offered not the slightest protection; but I amused myself by paying a visit to the salt-pits, in the high mounds of rubbish a few hundred yards to the east of our encampment. I was highly interested in the very peculiar character which they presented, the pits forming small quadrangular basins of about four or five yards in diameter, deeply cut into the rock, where all the saltish substance contained in the ground collects, and is thence obtained by pouring this water, impregnated with salt, into moulds of clay, of the shape which I have described in my notice of the salt-trade,* in that part of my journey where I was myself traveling in the company of the salt-traders of A'sben. The salt, filtering through the sides of the mound, had all the appearance of long icicles. But at present only a small quantity of

* Vol. i., p. 392.

613

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

prepared salt was lying here, the season for the K6l-owf to carry it away being some months later, when this tract must present a very different aspect, and exhibit a considerable degree of activity; and it would have been highly interesting if Mr. Overweg had been able to visit the place at such a season, as he had intended.

It was also a circumstance of considerable interest, that about two o’clock in the afternoon, while the thermometer indicated 1070 3’ in the best shade I could find, we had a slight shower, although this whole region has been set down as an entirely rainless zone. My camels being greatly reduced, and several of them of little value, I exchanged the two worst among them for one belonging to the Dza, our former fellow-travelers, who, being bent upon staying here a few days before they undertook their homejourney to Bornu, were thus enabled to wait until the animals had recruited their strength.
June 14th. At an early hour in the morning, long before the dawn of day, we continued our journey northward along the Widi Kawir, as it is called by the Arabs, or the Hneri-teg6, valley of the Teg6 or Tedi, as it is called by the natives, having the steep rocky cliffs, which at times formed picturesque platforms, at about three miles distance on our right. Meanwhile the country became beautifully wooded at the dawn of the day, and numerous travelers attested a certain degree of industry in this curious abode of men in the heart of the desert.

After a march of about twelve miles, where the valley became contracted by a lower rocky ridge crossing it, we encamped at the side of a palm grove, with a number of draw-wells, or "kha'tatfr," where every kind of vegetable might be easily raised. The ground produced "agh-6l" and "molukha," or Corchorus olitorius, and was surrounded by high sandy downs, while at some distance eastward a village is situated of the name of E'ggir. Having halted here for about five hours, we pursued our journey, the strip of trees closely approaching the rocky cliff, and after a march of three miles, left on our right the village E'mimiddama, and farther on, that called Shemforderu, lying partly at the foot, partly on the slope of the rocky cliffs on our right. Having then left a small isolated grove of date-trees on the same side, we reached the beginning of the plantation of Dfrki; and traversing the grove where the fruit was just ripening, we approached the dilapidated wall of the town, which presented a very poor spectacle, and then kept between it and the offensive salt-

A'SHENU'MMA.

pool on our right, and encamped on the north side. This town, which, notwithstanding its insignificance, has a name all over the desert, was of some importance to me, from the fact of its containing the only blacksmith in the whole of this oasis, whom I wanted to prepare for me a double set of strong shoes for each of my horses, as we had a very stony tract to traverse beyond this oasis. He promised to make them, and to bring them up to us at A'shenimma, but he did not keep his word, and thus was the cause of my losing one of my horses in that difficult tract. Having passed the villages of Tegimimi and El ji, we reached the town of A'shenumma, the residence of the chief of these Tebu, situated on a lower terrace formed by a gentle slope at the foot of the steep cliffs, and encamped in the bottom of the valley near an isolated group of sandstone rock, round which the moisture collects in large hollows, scarcely a foot below the surface of the gravel. All around, a rather thin grove of date-trees spreads out; farther westward there are the two salt lakes mentioned by the members of the former expedition.

In the afternoon I went into the town to pay my respects to the chief, whose name is Mai-Bikr. The place, which seems to have attracted the notice of Arab geographers from an early date, consists of about 120 cottages, built with rough stones, and scattered about on the slope, besides a few yards erected with palm branches. The cottages are very low, and covered in with the stems and leaves of the palm-tree. A solitary conical hut, like those of Sudan, was likewise to be seen. One of the stone houses exhibited a greater degree of industry by its whitewashing, but the residence of the chief was not distinguished in any way. The latter, who bears the title of Maina, was a man of advanced age and
respectable behavior. At the time of our entrance he was squatted on fresh white sand in front of his "diggel," placed in the ante-chamber or segffa. He received my present (which consisted of a black tobe, two tiirkedis, and a harim, worth altogether about four Spanish dollars) kindly, and expressed his hope that I might get safely over the tract before me, if I did not lose any time by a longer delay. Meanwhile a Tebu merchant who was present gave me the very doubtful information that the people of Tawit paid to the French an annual tribute of 60,000 dollars. The inhabitants of A'sheniimma and of the neighboring places are very differently situated from those of Dfrki and Bilma, for the latter, on account of their being the medium of communication in the salt trade, are

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

respected by the Tawirek, for whom they prepare that article, and who, in consequence, do not plunder them even when they meet them in the desert. Nay, they even protect them, as I have described in the former part of my journey, so that merchants from Dfrki and Bilma were proceeding to Husa by way of A'sben. The inhabitants of the other places, on the contrary, such as A'shendimma, are exposed to all sorts of oppression from the former, and even run the risk of being slain by them when met alone. With regard to the Tebu in general, I have already spoken repeatedly about their intimate connection with the Kanidri race, and have enumerated the names of the sections of their tribe, so far as I have become acquainted with them, and I shall say more on the subject of their language in a preface to my vocabularies. It was a remarkable fact, but easily to be explained, that the greatest heat which I experienced in the desert was in this valley, the thermometer at two o'clock in the afternoon rising daily to between 1100 and 112'.

We remained here the following day, when I enjoyed the scenery of the locality extremely, and made a sketch of it, which is represented in the plate opposite. I also desired Corporal Church, who, as I have stated above, was in my company, and who felt assured that Captain Clapperton had indicated the mountain chain on the west by mistake, to ascend the slope of the chain above A'sben, in order to convince himself that that meritorious traveler had not been misled in such a strange manner. With the aid of my telescope, he discovered in the far distance to the west a chain bordering the valley in that direction. This breadth of the valley is even indicated by the distance intervening between A'gherim and Fishi on the one side, and Bilma and Dirki on the other.

It was the holiday of the 'Aid el fotr, and the inhabitants of the little town celebrated the day by a religious procession, in which there figured even as many as ten horses, and a few rounds of powder were fired. The petty chief also sent me a holiday dish, consisting of a sort of macaroni made of millet, with a porridge of beans. It is a very remarkable circumstance, and one that must not be forgotten by any traveler who pursues this road, that the inhabitants of the Tebu country esteem nothing more highly, nay, scarcely value any thing at all, except dried fish, the stinking "bdini," and that he may starve with all sorts of treasures in his bags unless he be possessed of this article. I myself was even
ANIKI'MMA.-A’NAY.

obliged to buy the grass or ghedeb (of which I stood in need for my camels) with
dried fish, and I felt sorry that I had not laid in a greater supply of this article in
Birruwa.

Monday, June 17th. Before setting out, I thought it prudent to pay another visit
and bid farewell formally to Mai-BAkr, as I was anxious, unprotected as I was, to
secure my rear. I then followed my camels, and having crossed two defiles,
formed by projecting cliffs, which interrupt the valley, reached, after a march of
seven miles, the town of Anikimma, situated at the side of an isolated promontory
projecting from the cliffs, which form here a sort of wide recess, and encamped at
the border of the palm grove, when I immediately received some hospitable
treatment from my friend K61o, who was a native of this place. This is the
modern road which is taken at the present time, the town of Kisbi, or rather
G6zibi, which lies on the western side of the valley, and along which the former
mission passed, being at present deserted. This road led in former times by Kisbi
to Azanôres. But, although we were treated in a friendly manner in this place, I
did not like to lose any time, but was anxious to proceed at once to A'nay, the
northernmost town in the valley of Kaw6r, in order to prepare myself there,
without the least delay, for that second great station of my desert journey, which I
had to traverse quite by myself, as my friend K61o was to stay behind, and was
not going to undertake the journey for a month or so. I recommended to him my
freed slave 'Othmdn, who had remained behind, as he was suffering from the
effects of the Guinea-worm. K'lo, however, accompanied me in the afternoon for
a few hundred yards, together with a Tebu fiom Tibdsti of the name of Maina
Dadakôre, who had recently been plundered of all his property by the Tawirek.
The distance from Anikimma to A'nay is not very great, about two miles and a
half. The site of A'nay is very peculiar, as may be seen from the description given
by the former expedition,* who were greatly struck by its singular appearance,
although the view which they have given of the locality is far from being correct.
The first thing which I had to do here was to endeavor, by means of dollars,
cloves, and the remnant of dried fish which I still had left, to procure as large a
supply of ghedeb as possible, in order to carry my camels through this trying
journey, as my only safety with my small band of people consisted in the greatest
speed. It was very unlucky for me that the black* Denham and Clapperton's
Travels, p. 17.
619

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

smith of Dfrki broke his word in not bringing up the shoes for my horses, a
circumstance which would have been productive of the most serious
consequences if I had been attacked on the road, as both my horses became lame.
Tuesday, June 18th. Having prepared every thing in the forenoon, we set out on our lonely and dangerous journey with a fervent prayer, and after a march of little less than two miles emerged from the valley, or ĩ possibilità, through a rocky defile. We then gradually ascended the higher level of the desert plain, and having made a stretch of about sixteen miles, we encamped. Having kept strict watch, as it was not improbable that some people might have followed us, we started again at an early hour, long before the dawn of day, and, after a march of about thirteen miles, reached I'ggeba (Denham's 'Ikbar), a shallow depression at the western foot of a mountain, clothed with some herbage, and adorned with a rich profusion of ddm palms. The well here afforded a supply of the most delicious water. However,' the locality was too unsafe for our small troop to make here a long stay, it being frequently visited by predatory expeditions. We therefore thought it prudent to start again in the afternoon along the western road, by way of Siggedim, which has been laid down very erroneously by the former expedition, they probably not having taken the accurate distances and directions of this route, as they relied upon the direct track, which they had traced with accuracy. This road is called "Nefisa seghira," from a defile or "thn'ye" which we crossed about two miles and a half from our starting-point. About ten miles beyond we encamped, and reached the next morning, after a march of ten miles more, over a beautiful gravelly flat, and crossing the track of a small caravan of asses coming from Bribu, the beginning of the oasis of Siggedim, stretching out at the western foot of a considerable mountain group, the direction of which is from east to west, and well wooded with ddm palms, date-trees, and with gerredh, or Mimosa Nilotica. The ground, which is richly overgrown with sebot, in several places shows an incrustation of salt. We halted for the midday hours, a little more than a mile farther on, near the well, as we could not afford to make any long stay here. The place was at present quite deserted, but I was told that about a month later in the season people occasionally take up their temporary residence here, and a few isolated stone dwellings on a projecting cliff testified to the occasional presence of settlers.

VALUE OF HORSES IN THE DESERT.

From hence we reached, in an afternoon's and a long morning's march of altogether nearly thirty-four miles, the shallow vale of Jehiya (Denham's Izhya) or Yat. We were in a sad state, as besides being exhausted by fatigue, we were almost totally blinded by the glare of the sand in the heat of the day. A smaller strip of vegetation on the west side of the rocky eminences which dotted this country had already some time previously led us to hope that we had reached the end of our march; but when at length we had gained the spot, we found the vale, with its rich growth of herbage, very refreshing, and men as well as animals had an opportunity of recruiting their strength a little.

June 22d. The horse which the sheikh had given me being quite lame, I wanted to mount the only one of the camels which seemed strong enough to carry such a burden in addition to its load, but it refused to rise with me, and I was thus obliged to mount the donkey-like nag which the Sultan of Sokoto had given me,
my servant going on foot. It is certainly very difficult to carry horses through this
frightful desert with limited means, but it is of the utmost importance for a small
party to have a horse or two with them, in order to scour the country to see
whether all be right, and to make a spirited attack or to pursue the robbers in case
of a theft having been committed.

Having advanced in the course of the evening a little more than eighteen miles,
we traversed early the next morning a narrow defile, inclosed between rocky
heights on both sides, in a very stony tract of country, and, halted, after a march of
about twelve miles, at a little distance from the mountain group Tfiggera-n-
diimma, where the boundary is formed between Fezzan and the independent Tebu
country., by a -Valley clothed with a good profusion of herbage and a few talha-
trees just in flower. From here we reached, after a march of sixteen. riileg more,
the well of Mafaras, the southermost well of Fezzan, in such a state of
exhaustion that we felt induced, notwithstanding the danger from the E'fadaye, to
allow ourselves and the animals a day and a half's repose; I myself being
particularly in want of a little rest, as I had been suffering a great deal from
rheumatism for the last few days. In addition to this, the well contained so little
water that it required an enormous time to water the animals and to fill our skins.
The vale was pleasantly adorned with a good number of fine talhatrees, and there
was even one isolated duim palm, while of another one nothing but the trunk was
remaining. Although we had

TRAVEL S IN AFRICA.
advanced so much toward the north, we did not yet feel the slightest decrease in
the temperature, and the thermometer all this time, at two o'clock in the afternoon,
constantly indicated 1090.
This is the southern well of the name of Mifaras, while the northern spot of the
same name, where Mr. Vogel made his astronomical observation, is about
nineteen miles farther to the north. We did not pass the latter till early in the
morning of the 26th, when, stretching over an open desert flat, a real mirror or
"meraye," the exhaustion of our animals became fully apparent, so that just in the
very place where a small Tebu caravan, which had preceded us a few days, had
left behind one of their camels, we also were obliged to abandon the camel upon
whose strength we had hitherto placed our chief reliance.
About eleven miles beyond the northern well Mifaras, we halted during the heat
of the day in a spot entirely destitute of herbage, and made another stretch of
fifteen miles in the afternoon, leaving the well-known mound of Fija, along which
the road leads to Tib6sti, at some distance on our right. In order to recruit the
strength of the camels we gave them a good supper of dates, ground-
nuts, and
millet, so that each of the poor animals, according to his habits and national taste,
could pick out what was most palatable to him.
June 27th. A march of about thirteen miles brought us to the well "El A'hmard," or
"Mddema," in an open desert country, bounded on the west by a large, imposing
mountain group, and distinguished by a great profusion of khereb or kaye, the
whole ground being overgrown with "handal" or colocynth, and strewed with
bones. Here we passed an excessively hot day, the thermometer indicating 1140 at
two o'clock in the afternoon in the best shade I could find, and 1050 at sunset, it remaining extremely hot the whole night, till after midnight, when a heavy gale arose. Nature here showed some animation, and beetles were in extraordinary numbers; we also beheld here a herd of gazelles, but no beast of prey. At a very early hour the following morning we started with a good supply of water, and, after proceeding for about ten miles, reached a valley tolerably well provided with talha-trees and overgrown with dry herbage. We were obliged to stay here the whole day, in order to give the camels a feed, as they were reduced to the greatest extremity: we had also to provide ourselves with wood and water. But, although we staid here till the fore-

RUGGED PASSAGES.
noon of the following day, we had only proceeded a few miles when we lost another of our camels, and thus were obliged to halt earlier than we intended. In order to retrieve this loss we started before midnight, and marching the whole night, a distance of about twenty-four miles, and making only a short halt during the hottest part of the day, we encamped in the evening of the 30th close to the well "El Wir" or "Temmi," having entered the narrow winding glen leading into the heart of the mountain mass itself, although caravans in general encamp at its opening. We remained here the following morning, when I found shelter from the sun in the cave where the water collects, which is of a cool and pleasant character, a heavy gale which had sprung up the previous evening continuing all the while. But we had no time to tarry here, this being the worst and most fatiguing part of our journey. Taking all things into consideration, there is no reason to wonder how Mr. Vogel made no observation during the whole of this journey, comprising a tract of three degrees and a half.

Having filled our water-skins and watered the animals we pursued our journey before noon, and made a stretch of about fifteen miles. Starting then again at midnight, and marching twenty miles, only halting about four hours at noon, we encamped at night, but halted only for a couple of hours, after which we marched about fifteen miles, and again halted for the heat of the day. On this march we passed a very rugged passage called "Thnïye e’ seghira," where the rocks were rippled in a very remarkable manner, like the water. Having been accustomed to an intense degree of heat for some time, we felt it very cold this morning at sunrise, the thermometer indicating 68', which was certainly a great difference, it having been 81' the preceding morning.

July 3d. Again we started, a little after midnight, and having passed, early in the morning, with considerable difficulty and long delay, the rugged sandy passage called "Thnïye el kebra,” we halted, after a march of eight hours and a half, having accomplished only a distance of about fifteen miles. I felt greatly exhausted, and I was the more sensible of fatigue, as I had a long march before me, the well being still distant; and after a most toilsome and wearisome stretch of more than eighteen miles, with numerous delays, and several difficult passages over the sand-hills, we reached the well "Mgsheru," which is notorious on account of the number of bones of the unfortunate slaves by which it is sur-
TRAVELS IN AFRICA.
rounded. The water of this well, which is five fathoms in depth, is generally considered of good quality, notwithstanding the remnant of human bones which are constantly driven into it by the gale; but at present it was rather dirty. The whole country around presents a very remarkable spectacle, especially the tract closely bordering on the well to the north, and which, in a rather maliciously witty manner, has been called by the Arabs "Dendal Ghaladafma" ("the Promenade of the Minister"). It would form a good study for a painter experienced in water colors, although it would be impossible to express the features in a pencil sketch. But not even here were we enabled to grant ourselves the slightest repose, only staying long enough to take in a sufficient supply of water, and to slaughter one of our camels, which was totally unfit to proceed. Having made this day about eighteen miles, we reached the following day, after a moderate march of from nineteen to twenty miles, the southernmost solitary dategrove of Fezzin. Here we were so fortunate as to meet a small caravan of Tebu, comprising a few very respectable men, who brought us the latest news from MU'rzuk, where I was glad to hear that Mr. Frederick Warrington, the gentleman who had so kindly escorted me out of Tripoli more than five years previously, was awaiting me, and that the very governor who had been appointed to the government of Fezzin during our first stay there had a few days before again been reinstalled in that office.

July 6th. This was an important day in my journey, as, having performed the most dangerous part of this wearisome desert march, I reached Teggrri or Tejgrri, the first outlying inhabited place of Fezzin. The village, although very small in itself, with its towering walls, the view of which burst suddenly upon us through the date-grove, made a most pleasing impression, and I could not prevent my people from expressing their delight in having successfully accomplished the by no means contemptible feat of traversing this desert tract with so small a band by firing a good number of shots. In consequence of this demonstration, the whole population of the little town came out to salute and congratulate me on having traversed this infested desert tract without any accident. But that was the only advantage that we reaped from having reached a place of settled habitation; and having taken up our encampment on the northwestern side of the kasr, among the date-trees, we had the greatest difficulty in procuring even the slightest luxury, and I was glad when I was at

ARRIVAL AT TEJE'RRI.
length able to obtain a single fowl and a few measures of dates. There was, therefore, no possibility of our staying here and allowing the animals a little rest, but we were obliged to push on without delay to the village of Madrisa. But I had the greatest difficulty in reaching that place in the evening of the 8th, having lost another camel and one of my horses; and of the animals which remained to me, I was obliged to abandon in Madr-isa another, while I had to pay for the hire of a couple of camels to carry my luggage to Midrzuk.
This was the native place of my servant El Gatr6ni, who had served me for nearly five years (with the exception of a year's leave of absence, which I granted him in
order to see his wife and children) with the strictest fidelity, while his conduct had proved almost unexceptionable; and, of course, he was delighted to see his family again. Besides a good breakfast and a couple of fowls with which he treated me, he made me also a present of a bunch of grapes, which caused me no little delight as a most unusual treat. However, being anxious to get over this desert tract, I started a little after noon the same day, and met at the village of Bakhfl, about six miles beyond, a Tebu caravan, which was accompanied by a courier from Kiikawa, who had found an excuse in the state of the country to remain absent on his mission to Mirzuk nine months, instead of having retraced his steps directly to his own country. About four miles farther on we reached Gat'r'n, consisting of narrow groups lying closely together, and by the fringe of its date-grove contrasting very prettily with the sandy waste around. Here also we were hospitably treated by the relatives of another seryant, who was glad to have reached his home; and we encamped the following day at Dekfr, where we had some trouble first in finding and then in digging out the well, which was entirely filled up with sand. In two very long days' stretches from here, the first including a night's march, we reached the well, two miles and a half this side of the village Bedin, when we heard that Mr. Warrington was encamped five miles beyond, in the village of Yes6.

Saturday, July 13th. Having got ready at an early hour, we proceeded cheerfully through the poor plantation, scattered thinly over a soil deeply impregnated with salt, and fired a few shots on approaching the comfortable tent of my friend. I could not but feel deeply affected when, after so long an absence, I again found myself in friendly hands, and within the reach of European comforts. Having moved on a little in the afternoon to a more pleasant spot, we entered Mu'rzuk the following morning, and were most honorably received by a great many of the principal inhabitants, including an officer of the bashi, who had come out a great distance to meet us. Thus I had again reached this place, where, under ordinary circumstances, all dangers and difficulties might be supposed to have ceased. But such was not the case at the present time; for, in consequence of the oppression of the Turkish government, a very serious revolution had broken out among the more independent tribes of the regency of Tripoli, extending from the Jebel over the whole of Gurian, and spreading farther and farther, cutting off all intercourse, and making my retreat very difficult. The instigator of this revolution was a chief of the name of Gh6ma, who, having been made prisoner by the Turks many years before, had, through the events of the Crimean war, contrived to make his escape from confinement in Trebizond. This unforeseen circumstance caused me a little longer delay in Mirzuk than I should otherwise have allowed myself, as I was most anxious to proceed. on my journey; nevertheless, I staid only six days. Having some preparations to make for this last stage of my march, I had thus full opportunity of becoming aware of the immense difference in the prices of
provisions between this outlying oasis of Northern Africa and Negroland, especially Kkawa, and for the little supply which I wanted for my journey from here to Tripoli I had to pay as much as 100 makhb6bs. Besides procuring here my necessary supplies for the road, my chief business was in discharging some of my servants, and more particularly Mohammed el Gatn6ni, whose fidelity I have mentioned before. I added to the small remainder of his salary which I still owed him the stipulated present of fifty Spanish dollars, which I would willingly have doubled if I had had the means, as he well deserved it, for it is only with the most straightforward conduct and with a generous reward that a European traveler will be able to make his way in these regions.

As for encountering the dangers of the road, the arrangement of the bashi, that a party of soldiers whom he had discharged, and who were returning home, should travel in my company, seemed rather of doubtful effect, as such a company, while it afforded a little more security in certain tracts, could not fail to turn against myself the disposition of the native population in those districts where the revolt against the Turkish government was a popular movement; I was obliged, therefore, to leave it to circumstances to decide how I should make my way out of these difficulties. The bashi for some time thought that the only safe course for me to pursue would be to turn my steps toward BenGhzi, in order to avoid the revolted district altogether; but such a plan seemed very objectionable, as well on account of the greater distance and expense of this road, as with regard to the disposition of the Arabs of that region, who, if the revolution should prove successful, would certainly not lose a moment in following the example of their brethren.

July 20th. I left the town of Mdrzuk in the afternoon, and encamped in the plantation, and the next day moved on a short distance toward Sheggwa, where Mr. Warrington took leave of me. Halting then for the greater part of the following day near the village of D6m, and making a good stretch in the evening and the early part of the morning, we reached Ghodwa, with its pretty plantation and its many remains of former well-being. Starting again in the afternoon, and making a long stretch during the night, we encamped in the evening of the following day at the border of the plantation of Sebha, some twenty years ago the residence of the chief of the Welid Slimn. Here we staid the following day in order to obtain some rest. The heat all this time was very considerable, and the thermometer at two o'clock in the afternoon, on an average, indicated from 1100 to 1120.

July 26th. A march of from eighteen to nineteen miles brought us from Sebha to the small town of Temihint, and we encamped a little beyond the well, where a numerous herd of camels, belonging to a camp of Araba, was being watered. I was greatly pestered during my halt by a number of Welid Slimn, who were anxious for information with regard to their relations in Kinem, and greedy for some presents.

Making a short halt in the evening, and starting a little after midnight, we encamped the following day near Zfghen. Here I had to hire fresh camels in order
to pursue my journey, and therefore did not set out again till the afternoon of the following day, when, through the barren desert tract by O'm el 'abfd, and by a very rugged mountainous passage, we reached the important town of Sokna in the morning of the 2d of August.

Here the difficulties of my journey, in consequence of the revolution, increased, and, after a long consultation with some friends to whom I had been recommended, the only possible way of proceeding was found to be that of leaving the usual track by way of B6njem altogether, and taking an entirely different road by a series of valleys lying farther west, the road by Ben-Ghizi also having been found impracticable. Sokna, even at the present time, is a very interesting place, as well on account of its mercantile activity and its fine plantations of date and other fruit-trees, as owing to the peculiar character of its inhabitants, who still retain a distinct idiom of the Berber language; but at the present moment, on account of the total interruption of the communication with the coast, the price of provisions was very high, and the natives scarcely knew what political course to pursue. There was especially a merchant of the name of Beshila, who showed me an extraordinary degree of kindness and attention.

Having therefore waited until the arrival of the "rekis," or courier, in order to obtain the most recent news, and having, in consequence of their unfavorable tenor, been induced to increase the wages of my camel-drivers, whom I had hired previously, I at length got off on the 12th of August. Pursuing the track called Tri'k el Merh6ma, which was never before traversed by a European, and passing by the wells El Hammkm, El Mariti, Ershidfye, and Gedaffye, and then by the narrow Widi Ghirza (the place once the great object of African research for Lieutenant, now Admiral Smyth), with its interesting ancient sepulchres in the form of obelisks, we reached Widi Zemzem on the 19th. Here there was a considerable encampment of Arabs, and some of the ringleaders of the revolution residing here at the time, I found myself in a serious dilemma. But the English were too much respected by these tribes for them to oppose my passage, although they told me plainly that, if they suspected that the English were opposed to the revolution, they would cut my throat, as well as that of any European traveler who might fall into their hands. However, after some quiet explanations with them as to what was most conducive to their own interests, and about the probability of their succeeding in making themselves independent of the Turkish sway, and after having promised a handsome present to one of the more influential men among them, they allowed me to

* Also in El Fok-ha, distant three days from Sokna, on the road to Ben-Ghdzi, the same idiom is spoken.

628

A'IN ZA'RA.
pass on. I had also great difficulty in hiring some fresh camels, the safety of which I guaranteed, to take me to Tripoli. I thus pursued my journey to Beni-Ulid, with its deep valley overpowered by the ruins of many a Middle-Age castle, and adorned by numbers of beautiful olive-trees, besides being enlivened by many small villages consisting of stone dwellings half in decay. On approaching the place, I fell in with a messenger, sent very kindly to meet me by Mr. Reade, her majesty's vice-consul in Tripoli, who, besides a few letters, brought me what was most gratifying to me in my exhausted state, a bottle of wine, a luxury of which I had been deprived for so many years.

I had some little trouble in this place, as there was residing here at the time a brother of Gh6ma, the rebel chief himself, who had sent an express messenger on my account; and differences of interest between the various chiefs of the place caused me at the same time some difficulties, though, in other respects, they facilitated my proceedings. Altogether I was very glad when I had left this turbulent little community behind me, which appeared to be the last difficulty that opposed itself to my return home.

In the evening of the fourth day after leaving Beni-Ulid I reached the little oasis of 'Ain Zira, the same place where I had staid several days preparatory to my setting out on my long African wanderings, and was here most kindly received by Mr. Reade, who had come out of the town with his tent, and provided with sundry articles of European comfort, to receive me again at the threshold of civilization. Having spent a cheerful evening in his company, I set out the following morning on my last march on the African soil, in order to enter the town of Tripoli; and although the impression made upon my mind by the rich vegetation of the gardens which surround the town, after the long journey through the desert waste, was very great, yet infinitely greater was the effect produced upon me by the wide expanse of the sea, which, in the bright sunshine of this intermediate zone, spread out with a tint of the darkest blue. I felt so grateful to Providence for having again reached in safety the border of this Mediterranean basin, the cradle of European civilization, which from an early period had formed the object of my earnest longings and most serious course of studies, that I would fain have alighted from my horse on the sea-beach to offer up a prayer of thanksgiving to the Almighty, who, with the most conspicuous mercy, had led me through the many dan-

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

gers which surrounded my path, both from fanatical men and an unhealthy climate.

It was market-day, and the open place intervening between the plantation of the Meshiah and the town was full of life and bustle. The soldiers who had recently arrived from Europe to quell the revolution were drawn up on the beach in order to make an impression on the natives, and I observed a good many fine, sturdy men among them. Amid this busy scene in the most dazzling sunshine, with the open sea and the ships on my right, I entered the snow-white walls of the town, and was most kindly received by all my former friends.
Having staid four days in Tripoli, I embarked in a Turkish steamer which had brought the troops and was returning to Malta, and having made only a short stay in that island, again embarked in a steamer for Marseilles, in order to reach England by the most direct route. Without making any stay in Paris, I arrived in London on the 6th of September, and was most kindly received by Lord Palmerston as well as by Lord Clarendon, who took the greatest interest in the remarkable success which had accompanied my proceedings. Thus I closed my long and exhausting career as an African explorer, of which these volumes endeavor to incorporate the results. Having previously gained a good deal of experience of African traveling during an extensive journey through Barbary, I had embarked on this undertaking as a volunteer, under the most unfavorable circumstances for myself. The scale and the means of the mission seemed to be extremely limited, and it was only in consequence of the success which accompanied our proceedings that a wider extent was given to the range and objects of the expedition;* and after its original leader had succumbed in his arduous task, instead of giving way to despair, I had continued in my career amid great embarrassment, carrying on the exploration of extensive regions almost without any means. And when the leadership of the mission, in consequence of the confidence of her majesty's government, was intrusted to me, and I had been deprived of the only European companion who remained with me, I resolved upon undertaking, with a very limited supply of means, a journey to the far west, in order to endeavor to reach

* This greater success was especially due to the journey which I undertook to the Sultan of A'gades, thus restoring confidence in our little band, which had been entirely shaken by great reverses.

630

CONCLUSION.

Timbuktu, and to explore that part of the Niger which, through the untimely fate of Mungo Park, had remained unknown to the scientific world. In this enterprise I succeeded to my utmost expectation, and not only made known the whole of that vast region, which even to the Arab merchants in general had remained more unknown than any other part of Africa,* but I succeeded also in establishing friendly relations with all the most powerful chiefs along the river up to that mysterious city itself. The whole of this was achieved, including the payment of the debts left by the former expedition, and £200 which I contributed myself, with the sum of about £1600. No doubt, even in the track which I myself pursued, I have left a good deal for my successors in this career to improve upon; but I have the satisfaction to feel that I have opened to the view of the scientific public of Europe a most extensive tract of the secluded African world, and not only made it tolerably known, but rendered the opening of a regular intercourse between Europeans and those regions possible.

* "It appears singular that the country immediately to the eastward of Timbuctoo, as far as Kashna, should be more imperfectly known to the Moorish traders than the rest of Central Africa." -Quarterly Review, May, 1820, p. 234. Compare what
Clapperton says about the dangers of the road from S6koto to Timbfiktu. Sec. Exped., p. 235.

APPENDIX.
APPENDIX I.
PRESENT CONDITION OF THE PROVINCE OF ZA'NFARA.
The province of Za'nfara in former times was far more extensive than at present, its ancient capital being situated half a day (hantsi) east from Sansfinne 'Aisa, on the road to T6ze, and this is perhaps Birni-n-Zinfara, founded by the powerful chief Babdri about a century ago. At that time the province was a powerful kingdom, but at present it is in the most distracted condition, half of the places belonging to it being still under the rule of the Fulbe, while the other half have revolted successfully, and are strictly allied with the G6berdwa.

* Under the rule of the Ftilbe, or Fullin, are the following places: Z~rmi, with three governors: one, A'bu Himid, who has ruled (in 1853) seven, another, Tarna, who has ruled fifteen years, and a third one, a younger brother of Tarna, but who has exercised power for thirty years;* Kduri-n-Nam6da, at present governed by Maham-Idu, a younger brother of the warlike and far-famed chief Nam6da, who has ruled for the last twelve years; Btinka, B6ka, G6ga, Ydnkaba, Diba, Banga, Birni-n-M-iddera, M6diki, Morfik with Ne-ebbtisuwa, K6re with Makauru, Dunfdwa, Ddchi, Badariwa, Katdru, Kanna, Dan I'sa, Watinaka-n-Fellani (in order to distinguish it from another town of the same name, which is allied with the G6bertwa), Yangwoy, Ki~wa, Rdira, Watini, Jirgdba, Gabdke, Kangwa, Kadgmusi, Yanbtikki, Tadk-adoy, Birni-n-Mdgaji, Birni-n-Tor6wa or Mdrekay, with Dan Korgdi, Tuddu Makingeri, Rdwiya, Biddji, Chibiri.

The independent places are the following:
A'nka, residence of 'Abdii, the rebel chief of Zdnfara (Serki-n-Zdnfara); M ffara, residence of Serki-thita; Gummi, residence of the chief Banytri; Z6ma, residence of 'Al, and close by G611i; Sab6nbirni Diragi, residence of Bdnagd; Maridu, residence of Serki-n-Kiya; Ggumachd and G6ra close by; M6tusgi, residence of Ajfa; Girbadd and Kiggarg, Munrd, Bokdra, residence of Serki-n-Btwa; Damri, Sab6ngari, Dtiffwa Miffari, a district, with the chief place, Rdwiwa-n-b6re; Dank6, U'ya.

In order to arrange these places topographically, I shall first give an itinerary from Kand to Sdkoto, by way of Kiuri-n-Nam6da. Day.
1st. Rfmi-n-Gadd.
2d. Shd-ndno, a large walled place, having passed Yingad.
3d. Kdrkej6m or Kdrkejingo, first place of the province of Kitsena, having passed Sdbberd.
4th. Midsgwa, a large walled town, with a market; short march. 5th. Y-mintemiki, with a water-course on its east side running south; having passed U'ngwa Simia.
6th. Sgwi, having passed Yi-milsa, Shaw~re, and Jigdwa 7th. Ajja, a walled place of middle size.
8th. Kiwa, very large walled place, formerly the capital of Zdnfara, at present rather thinly inhabited.

9th. Kduri-n-Nam6da, residence of Namdda (brother of Mahamidu), with a market held every Monday and Tuesday, and a considerable water-course on the west side, once a very large and populous place. A short day's march south, a little west from this place, lies Riyiwa (not Rdnia), and west from it Btingudii, at present said to be the largest place in Zinfara among those which belong to the faction of the Fdllani; to its district or territory belong the smaller places of Alibawd, Biddji, Kasardwa, M6domdwa, Friddam-wa, Formerly there was in Zfrmi a powerful governor belonging to the faction of the Gberdw, called Dan Jdka, who ruled twenty years, when he was murdered by Mfimmedu (Moh'mmedu).

634 APPENDIX


10th. Birni-n-G6ga, on the east side of the same water-course. 11th. Kijsari, a small place inhabited by Failbe. 12th. Gwgra, large walled place, having crossed a water-course. 13th. Bakdra, large walled place, formerly residence of 'Atiku, the son of Hdmelu, till the town was taken by the G6bergwa. To the territory of this town belong the places Sab6ngari, Ddmmeri, S6la, Dog6je. Bakilra from A'nka one long day south, farther than Gndi from Wurn6; Bakdra from Gndi one good day south, passing by Glumachd. The river forms a large bend west of Bakiira, and at the angle lies Timba.

14th. Timba, walled place on the west side of the Gdlbi-n-Bakdra, at present in the hands of the A'zena. Between T~mba and Bakilra lie the towns Birni-n-Ddmbo and Birni-n-Riygde, and hereabout are the places Ahbani, Bid-ji, Kasariwa, Fdlldani-n-Ddwaki, Fdlani-n-Takd-adoy, M6domliwa, Fiddamgwa, Kontambdini.

15th. Galdi or Danfa, large place, with a pond of stagnant water. '16th. A place of elephant-hunters.

17th. S6koto.

I shall now connect Binagi, or rather Sab6nbirni Diragd, as it is more properly called, with a few other places, and shall then conclude this Appendix, reserving for Appendix III. an enumeration of the towns and villages situated along the course of the Gtdlbi-n-Zma to where it joins the Gflbi-n-S6koto. From Bdnaggi to A'auk is one long day north, just as from Gndi to Wurn6; from Banagg to Gdmmi three days W.N.W. 1st day. Adebka, Gari-n-serkf-Kiydwa. 2d. Birni-n-T~ddu, on the south side of the Giflbi-n-Z6ma. 3d. Gdmmi, passing by the town of Kawi.


N.B.-Besides Bini and Mutimji, there are, in the same quarter, the district inclosed between Bgnagg, Kotti-n-ktra-Koti-n-ktira being from BEnag6 two days S.W.-and Gwiri, the small principalities of Machdri, Bna, Morgeb, and
Kumbdshi, all residences of petty chiefs, dependent in some degree on the governor of Kgtsena.

Between Bakdra and Z6ma lie Damrl, Sab6ngarf, Sila, Takgre; farther on, entering the territory of Z6ma, Dangartinfa, Mdsu, Matsifa, Gilsar6, B6kuyum, Solli.

From Š6koto to Z6ma, south, three days: first day, Danchddi, the same as from Š6koto to Wurn6; then a long night's march, reaching in the morning Birni-nMdga6i, distance the same as that from Zelkka to Btinka; from Migaji to Z6ma short march. From Gand6 the distance is shorter.

Z6ma lies about half way between A'anka and Gilmiia, on a river called after it, Gdilbi-n-Z6ma; but I shall give all the particulars with regard to the towns lying along this valley farther on, in Appendix IV., as this river, which lower down is called Giflbi-n-Gindi, unites with the Giflbi-n-Š6koto within the boundaries of Kebbi.

I here subjoin a list of the places situated along the water-course, which lower down is called "Giflbi-n-Š6koto," between Sansgnne-‘Af6sa and Dimbis6, but at present almost all of them are destroyed and deserted: first, T6ze on the south side; Gawingas6, where the branch of Margdi and Chc'beri joins the greater trunk valley; Alkaldwa (written Alkadhiiwa), the former capital of G6ber, destroyed by the Fdlbe, Laijfinge, both south; Piday, north; Tsdmay, north; Tsiche, north; B6re, south; Kak6kia, north; Mirennd, south; Marifa, south; Kirdre, north; Shingka, south; Gyiwa, Dimbis6. The valley, which probably has a very winding course, must therefore approach Giydwa a little nearer than it has been laid down on the map.

APPENDIX II.
A FEW HISTORICAL FACTS RELATING TO GO'BER AND ZA'NFARA.

(a.) Princes of Gdber.
Sdba, residing in MagAle, one day west from Chebiri, made war against Gurma and Barba (Bargu), beyond the River Kwira, wherein he discovered a ford.

U'ba Ashd succeeded to Soba.

HISTORICAL FACTS AND LINE OF DESCENT.

Babdri, King of Gober, reigned about fifty years, was introduced by the chief men of Zinfara into Birni-n-Zinfara, then a wealthy place and the centre of an important commerce (1764), which he conquered and destroyed; whereupon he founded Alkaldwa, which then became the capital of G6ber. This was the origin of the national hatred which exists between the Gdberiwa and Zinfariwa.

Ddngudti, killed by the A'sbeniwa.

B6wa, with the surname Maydki, the warrior, on account of his restless and warlike character. During the eight years of his reign he only remained forty days in Alkahiwa, waging war the whole time.

Ygkoba, a younger brother of Bdiwa, reigned seven years, was killed by Agorggi, the ruler of Kitsena, which place appears at that time to have reached its highest degree of power.

Btinu reigned seven years, died in Alkaliwa.

Yilnfa reigned forty-four years.
Ddne or Dan Yinfa reigned six years, made war against 'Othmdn the Reformer, son of Fodiye, when he was killed by Bello, son of 'Othmin, at the taking of Alkaldwa.

Sdlehu dan Babliwi resided in Mdzuum, reigned two years, till killed by Bello.

G6mki, seven years, slain by Bello.

'Ali, eighteen years, according to others twelve, slain by the Fdlbe, together with Rtiuda serki-n-Kdtsena.

Jibbo Tiwuba reigned seven years, according to others three years, residing in Margdi.

Bdchiri, seven months.

The present King of Gober, generally known under the name of Mayi.ki, the warrior, on account of his martial disposition, son of Ydkoba, has ruled since 1836.

(b.) A few data with reference to the ruling families in Sdkoto and Gandd. Bello-built S6koto while 'Othmiin was residing in Gand6; from hence the latter went to Sifiwi or Shifdwa, thence to S6koto, where he resided ten years more.

Rulers of Sdcoto.

'Othmdn died 3 Jumdd II., 1817 (A. H. 1233), aged sixty-four years, having resided thirteen years in Gand6 and Sifdwa, and ten in S6koto.

Bello, twenty-one years, died 25 Rejeb, 1837 (A.H. 1253), aged fifty-eight years.

'Atfku, another son of 'Othmdn, succeeded him, reigned five years three months, died in the beginning of 1843.

Aliyu, son of Bello, had reigned ten (lunar) years four months in April, 1853.

Rulers of Gandd.

Abd Alhhi died 1827, Wednesday, A.H. 20 Moharrem, 1245. Mohammed Wini died 1836, A. H. 4 Ramadhdn, 1250. Khalflu was, A.D. 1853, in the eighteenth year of his reign.

Children of Fodiye, son of Mlohammed.

'Al, father of M6dibo 'Ali; Sheikh 'Othmin; 'Abd-Allahi; Hotihun Miunuma; Enhatikko, a daughter-all born of one mother.

Mamefiro; Elf Omro; Mamma Jffma, still alive; Bak6dda-born of different mothers.

Children of 'Othmdn dan Fodiye.

Mohammed Bisda; Sambo Wuliy; Bello; 'Atiu; Mohammed Bokhiri, a very learned man, died 1840, A.H. the 23 Hdij, 1255, aged fifty-five years three months; Hassan, father of Khalflu dan Hassan; Mohammed Hfijo; 'Abd el Kddiri; Himed el Rufmy, and 'Isa, alive still, the former residing in T6zo.

'Ali Jddi, the father of A'bf 'I Hassan, serkf-n-ytki; Modji, an influential chief of the tribe of the Wolbe; and the serki-n-Syllebdwa, were the three principal advisers of 'Othmdn dan F6diye, and were the persons who placed his successor, Bello, upon the throne.

(c.) Fdlbe Tribes.

Divisions of the Fellani-n-Sdkoto.

Torunkdiwa, Tor6de or T6robe, Torunkiiwa Sabdni (thus called because, when as
APPENDIX.

yet nothing but m'allemfn, or learned men, they prepared much soap, in order to keep their dress of the purest white), Woldrbe, in Kebbi, Fellani-n-Konne, U'da, herdsman, Kasariwa, in Z6ma, 'Alebgwa, in Zjrimi, 'Alwa, in Kimmani, Bidaz(gwa, in Dnkogi, Fellani-n-dandji, in K6tse, Fdilani-n-Delhji, in K6tse, Fellani-n-Bedji, Fellani-n-Yand6tu, Geziwa, Gtari, Fdilani-n-Rdma, Fillani-n-Takabiwa, Jatdhe, dengi-n-'Othmin (the family of 'Othm-'n).

Fillani-n-A'dar.

Mansiibin Mohammedini, Bilerankoyen, Rgnerankoyen, Bardngankoyen, dengin-'Abd el Kidiri, Tamankoye, Kugga, Tanagamiwa, Sunskoyen, Kofayenkoyen, Hirlbe, Chiliiwa, Alinkoyen, Alkdmunkoyen, Gdmborankoyen, Bdotankoyen, Sekke, Mibberankoyen, Sisankoyen, Wewdhe, Bororooye, Gurgibe.

The Governors of A'dar.

To the N.E. of S6koto lies the province of A'dar, with the chief market-place Konni, ruled by four different chiefs or siraki: Serki-n-A'dar Hmidu, belonging to the Tauzamiwa, in A'zaw, a place four days north from Wurno, fortified with a Keffi or stockade.

Serki-n-A'dar Mallem, likewise of the Tauzamiwa, in Illdle, five days from Wurno, with keffi; one day from A'zaw.

Serki-n-A'dar Ygkoba, also Tauzamiwa, in Tw, six days from Wurno, one from Illele.

Serki-n-A'dar Sherif, in Tsambo, four days from Wurno, one S.W. from A'zaw.

APPENDIX III.

GiMMUL SiKHO 'OTHMINO.

ALLIHO limido dum essalito burdo fukka:

Domada yi A'hmedu jenido lesde fukka.

Allho gettaini omdje omojnde neimmo fukka.

Neloimo A'hmedu hinne ktibdo takelle fukka.

Ann6ro makko yokdm w6ni isseli tlkeli fukka:

Ann6ro hakklfllo non ann6ro gide fukka:

Ann6ro Imini Mumenfye tohiute fukka:

Ann6ro yimbe Wiliya ka 6nnaba k6 fukka:

Nange he lum he m6bgel jenat6di fukka,

Fandiki iissuru jellimmdo fukka.

All1ho burneri I'brabima t-kele fukka.

Bolidel wolwide Milsa der togfde fukka.

Ah6kki I'sa bosimbido roibo r6ho fukka. Amobda migiki b6luki non boyide fukka.

Alliho kams6di A'damu der togfde fukka.

Nan suibtedi Ndhu I'brahfma woddu fukka;

KursheHdshimo derbaldje makko fukka.

SONG OF SrEIKH 'OTHMAN.

GOD, the Lord, he excels all in superiority:
He is greater than you, A'hmed (Mohammed); his light illumines the whole earth.
I praise the Lord God, who sent his blessing [mercy?].
He sent A'hmed to all his creatures.
His light shines over all his creatures: the light of intelligence, as well as that of sight, all-comprising: the splendor of the ImAm of the Faithful reaches every where ;"
all the splendor of the Weli [holy men] and of the prophets: and when sun and moon unite all that is splendid, their light does not reach His resplendence.

God blessed Abraham among the whole of his creatures.
Moses obtained eloquence among mankind.
To Jesus was given strength and spirit. Thou hast obtained a sight of Him (of God); thou hast obtained eloquence and authority.
God has distinguished Adam among all mankind.
Thus Noah and Abraham were distinguished in all their dealings; Kurdish and Hdshem in their dwellings.

TOWNS OF KEBBI: 'ALI'U'S DOMINION.

By God thou hast been distinguished over all God's creatures.
All the creatures of God, in heaven and on earth, bless thee:
all the creatures of God, in heaven and on earth, praise thee:
all the creatures of God, in heaven and
on earth, salute thee:
all the creatures of God, in heaven and
on earth, do homage to thee:
all that is blessed in creation is blessed
through thee:
all those who have been distinguished
among the creatures, have been distinguished on thy account:
all that has been created, has been created through thy grace.
On account of thy blessing have I come
to thee:
for such a purpose have I addressed thee. May God hear my prayer through thy
grace.
APPENDIX IV.
PARTITION OF KEBBI.
KEBBI, ACCORDING TO ITS PARTITION BETWEEN THE EMPIRE OF
s6kOTO AND TEAT OF GANDO.
Garziru-a-Kebsi, rdba-a-'Aliyu.
That portion of Kebbi which belongs to 'Aliyu:
Jekawadd, T6zo (the residence of Ruf6y, a younger brother of Bello), Ddnkala,
Sildme, Gandi, Koido, Kalimmi, Birni-n-Gungu, Bubtiche, Atigi,* Tiggi, Leldba,
Fadistinko, Mdra, all along the gulbi-n-S6koto, Dundy, B. G6mash, Sebera
(close by the latter), Pungi, Danggdi, B. Gamfnda, Bakale, B. Rdwa, Binji,
Gammagamma, Lokk~swa or Lukuyiwa, Bodinga, B. Magebdshi, Jar~di, B.
Dandi, Danchddi, Wabibi, Bfdo, Fdro, Sirgi, Asdre, Gangam, B. Buldi, Shagdri,
Gadarire, Buloniki, Kajfji, Jobo, Ydibo (two towns of the name), Sa~ina,
Kaldngu, Salghu, Manddrra, Bawi, Dankal or Dinkala, Guddli, Dukkd, Bang~wa,
Guddm, Rrd, Tiggi, Bdgura on the N. shore of gulbi-n-Kebbi, Nitsini, Kalflladfn,
Demdna (near Aiigi), Tdwo-n-S6ro (W. near Adgi), Bangdwa, Kaling (W. of
Sanfna), Matdnkaifu, Illa, Gajdire, Dtsiti-n-Kfira, Gankay (E. from Atigi), B.-n-
Chdra, B. Yardndi, Sassagire, B6nkarf, Diddibd, Gannaj~i, Ariba, Darkyee,
Tmmuni (E. of Aligi), two towns of the name of Fissena, one of them inhabited
by Sylebtiwa, Galluujil gar-n-Sylebtiwa, Ginnega, Badje G. Sylebtiwa, O'ri,
Bdiir6, Kub6do, Laini, Gerterina (E. of Ddnkala), Tuddd-Mankdri, Denke
(Sylebtiwa), Girdbshi, Kalambdna (W. of S6koto), B. Gdsserd (Sylebtiwa),
Hausiwa, Dfnngadi (Sylebtdwa), Badtwa, Gitimbi, Arkilla, B. Wdskd
(Toronktwa), Danajfwa, B. Sfe, Akitukd, Rkingi, Shiffini, Damba, Rfyo Sinsirdga,
Bagarfowa, Bdregay, Sangahiwa (Sylebtiwa), Basoyi (or Bajoiyi), BAmgi, B.-n-
Boddiye, B. Wadgrro, Dange, Rtidu, Sabaddwa, Sess~da, Gdjar, Gintam6,
Lmbo, Dangdwa, Sfrud, Kutdtturti, B.-n-Gfrnegd, Sifwa, Jardi, Ginggwa,
Kimba, Chilg6ri, Alkaliji, A'diga, Danndngel, B.-n-Mustiro, Dagdwa,
Rumdemaunde (the great slave hamlet), Fakd, D6no, Bulbulf, Woiud (baki-
diji: on the border of the wilderness), Zanz6mo, B.-n-6dahd, Danehdi, B.-n-
Foro (between S6koto and Z6ma: mountainous), B.-n-Girgirl, Gijerg, Dingorg,
Bdo, B.-n-Fakkd (on the rock), B. Pangalalla, B. M6za, Yakur-itu (all W. from
S6koto), Gu4 A6gi and MWra, the principal towns of Kebbi, together with Koido,
were destroyed by 'Aliyu. Azgi was situated N. from Seffina, the same distance as
from Gfiwasai to S6koto, from Argaxngo E.N.E. eight or ten miles. Opposite Afigi the dallul Gaminda joins the gulbi-n-Kebbi from the N., and along it lie the following places: Birni-n-Gaminda, B. Rfiwa, Bakfle, Alkalijji, Biszer, Sakibiyyre, B. Buldi, Mfiza, Baiyfiwa, Dankal, Bubfiche, close to the junction, and about eight or ten miles from Argfingu.

APPENDIX.
dgli, Labini, Gddembd, Girebshi, Baidi, Giwazd (garf-n-Bonkino), B.-n-Mamman Gabdif (W. of Gajdire), Lbag6bi, Mdchisi (gari-n-R6ba), Innime, Aj6ge, B.-n-Gunginge, Kdmbami, Gertarina, Surme, Ldka, B.-n-Filfild, B.-n-Kdkilo (now deserted), Lok6ko.

I here enumerate the towns and villages along the gulbi-n-Zdma, although only part of them belong to Kebbi. This is a branch which joins the gulbi-n-S6koto at the town of Gindi, about eight miles S.E. from and opposite Bunza, and is equal to it in the quantity of water, although the whole valley (or fiddama) is said not to be of the same width. Commencing from Bdmaga, you pass on the S. side of the river the town of Z6ma, which has given its name to the river, and is situated half way between A'nka and Gummi, and three good days S. from S6koto; starting from S6koto you reach Danchidi, at the same distance as Wurno; thence to Migaji, a long night's march the same distance as from Zekka to Bunka; from here Z6ma, the same distance as Rdba from Wurno; then you pass Dan Gardufa, Jika, Birnin-Felleled, B. Kaiwa (on the S. side of the river), B. Tuddd (still in the territory of Z6ma), B. Kigalf; B. Gummi (S.W. from the river, with a small territory of its own), Gelnge, B. Gtissurd (in the territory of Gummi), B. Adibka, B. Gairi, Girkau, Girk (the first town of Kebbi), Zabga, Dngandm, Birni-n-Kebbe (different from Kebbi). Along the N. side of the river, again beginning with B. Zoma: Tak6'e, Sab6nbirmi, B. Mdgaji, B. Gaziirra (where 'Atiku, the predecessor of 'Aliyu, made a foray), Bilkkuru, B. Solli, B. Fanda, B. Kunda (belonging to the territory of Gummi), B. Falamgtingu (N. of Gairi); from hence Gindi W. at a short distance. It is impossible to lay down the river from these data with accuracy. Probably not all the towns have been given in their natural order. According to other information, between A'nka and Takdre, which lie on the N. bank, there are Birni-n-Tuddd k6ramf and Bunkddo, and between Takire and Gazdirra, Dan garinha and B. Mdzu.

At Birni-n-Zondu, 25 m. from Gindi, the mdyo-ranndo, or dhannno (a very general name, also to be recognized in Clapperton's Maiyarro), or firi-n-ridwa, joins the gulbi-n-S6koto, and is said to be larger than the G. Zoma.

Gardrua-n-Kebbi, rdba-n-K7alilu.

Towns of Kebbi belonging to Khahlu, as far as they are inhabited by Hausdwa and F'ilbe (or Fdllani):
The chief places besides Argiingu, the residence of the rebel chief, and the centre of the pagan worship with the holy tree (a tamarind-tree), called "tunka," are Gando, Birni-n-Kebbi, Tdmbawel,* and Jdgat; the following list observes a certain topographical order. The direction (W.S.) refers to Gando:
Maddi, K6chi, Fdgha, Migaji-n-kgda, Kadiri-n-ladin, K. Mammaiiddi, Mangidi, Gdfuru, Margay, Rgfi-n-bauna, Kangfiwa, B. Bime, Dodd-n-gilssuma, Masima,
Køsgard, B. Bagdri, Gumbaye (E. of Gando), Yel6ngu, B. Mdg, B. Køldi (W.), Ligi (W.); G6ra-n-Dahdwa (S.), G6ra-n-Kddtudd, B. Lalle, Gurzaw, Shimferf, B. Misu, Bigdig, Rgfi-n-dor6wva (all of them S.); Gerge, Raziy, Chimbfika (between Aliru and Jdga), Gumbi-n-d--ri (between Aliru and Alelu), Mdlissa, Dancha (close to it D6go-n-(Lji), Mamang6ma (all of them S. between Gondo and Gindi): K6riy6, Martida, Kosiri, Babanidi (E.), Lokerdnga, Rdgga-n-diwa, Rumbiki, B. Riwa, Kalambaina s6fwa (between Gondo and Tmbawel, at present deserted), Kalambaina sdbwa; Y6le (W., to the E. of Kdmbsa), B. Ygmamg (W. of Gondu, close to Kalgo), Kamba gair-n-'Abd e’ Salmi, Sambiva, Bikayd (close to Midochi on the River Gindi, E. of Birni-n-Gindf), Letsdda (near Gondu), Sobiki (between Gondo and Argilngu), Ambtirsa (between Argdngu and Zro), Ditsiel (E. of Gondu), Dilijam (N.), Dingi (N. on the fdlama-n-Argingu), Ujdr6y6 (E. of Ambdrlsa, between this and Argdngu), B. K6s6r6 (between Argtingu and Z6ro), Z6ro or J4ggara (W. of Gondu), Kalliul-laddn (E. of Gulma), Gulma (on the gubni-n-Kebbi), Kaliul Mamma Yidi, Birni-n-Gatdgo, B. Midara (close to Gulma), S6wa (N. of Gondu), Zazagdwa, K6kosd (on the border of the territory of ‘Alfyu and Khalflu, and commanding the ford between Gulma and Argdngu, therefore called ”s6rk-n-rda”), A’damangutta (W. of S6wa), B. Bunga, B. Morninga (where natron is gathered), Tmbawel, formerly the residence of the learned Bokhari, at present that of his son Omfro, two days N. from Yima. Near Tfebawel Aliru. Ykg, two days E. of Birni-n-Kebbi, residence of Mohammed Nyello, with the title of ”Serki-n-Kebbl.”

t Jga, a very important place S.E. from Birni-n-Kebbi, at the same distance as S6koto from Wurno; going there from Gando, you pass the night in Alhro, whence the distance to J ja is the same as that from Wurno to Bam,rna. Jvga is the residence of Mslemu, a grandson of Abd e’ Sal.m.

TOWNS AND VILLAGES OF DE’NDINA.

Sïru (E. of Bunza, on the gulbi, with a very white kind of salt); B. Geggi, B. KLika, Tilli, Zogirma, Got6mo, Aluwisa, Fdlindd, Ligi (two towns of the name), Kimbasa, Ambtirsa, B. Tsri, Gdlumbd, B. Lliga, 1{ardi, Z6ro, Hammdhi, D6go-n-dlij, Randili, Fulmungini, Kermi, Giwa-taz6, Maizumma, Kdra, B. Gindf, Kimba, Aldlu, Jadidi, Ksilgo, Maddochi, R6smo, Dammdl, B. Kaya, Bargi, U’mbut, Girkau, Zabga (close to the frontier of Z6ma); back from Kebbi, K61a, Jtiggurf, Dfgg, Mutubtiri, Bangdna, Samu, Maidebini, Gdradi, Rdba, Sab6-n-birni, Basdura, Matdnkari (all these on the ffidama-n-Kebbi).

Sections of the Fdlani-n-Kebbi:

Njibtangkoyen, J6gaddnkoyen, Magdijiankoyen, Beyfnkoyen, Tere’bbe, Jaringankoyen, Dikankoyen (the first tribe of the Fdlbe who immigrated into Kebbi), M6dibankoyen, Gtindarunkoyen, Trasankoyen, Kdmakanko yen (regarded as the most warlike among these tribes), Gtimborunkoyen, Ddgelankoyen, Tafdrankoyen (from Tafdra, near Gandi), Tammankoyen, Jennankoyen.
The eastern part of the province of Ddndina, in a political point of view, is now comprised in the province of Kebbi.

APPENDIX V.

PART I.

TOWNS AND VILLAGES OF DE'NDINA.

The eastern part of the province of Ddndina, in a political point of view, is now comprised in the province of Kebbi.

Ydlu, * the principal place of Ddndina, at present the residence of a rebel chief. See what I have said, p. eg.0; Gdyat on the east side of the river, a most important market-place of Ddndina; Kalimmadhi (Kalimmori); Tara; Tinda; Komba, an important place for crossing the river; Karimdmma; Sandfini, junction of the gulbi-n-S6koto; Deibe; Kilisard.; Ddki-n-garf, Birni-n-Zdgha, Fond, three important towns, very flourishing in former times; Fingilla; Kengakoye, formerly very important; Kamba; Tinuniga; B. K6kkobi; B. D6le; Bgnamakdfo; Chdso; Bdkway; Matinkari; Kainiki, with a wonderful tree (an idol ?); B. Sengelu, with salt, close to Stiru; B. Ginga, with salt; Bdkoshi, with salt, which is boiled here; Ddnden6, salt-work, baki-n-gulbi, on the bank of the I'sa; Shdbe or Sibe, salt; Kdji, Jakwa, Tauro, Bendu, all along the gulbi-n-Kebbi; Birni-n-Lanne; Girro; Zondo; B.-n-Btidn; Jiwaru baki-n-Kwira; Aljenndre; B. Kitaru, between Kdji and Fond; Ungwa M'allem, east of Siko; Koifa, east of Gfro; Shiba, east of Bendu. on the Kwira; Bandi, between the Kwira and the fiddamma Stiru; B. Zondu, near B. Sdr; Banimdtte; Lna; S6luld baki-n-Fdgha; B. Riya baki-n-F6gha; Bandgagi, on the Kwira; Dide, on the Kwira; B. Alahinne; B. Tire, all these on the east side of the Kwira, E. and S.E. of Giya; B. Donubdni (almost deserted); B. Kangudwel, between Ggya and D61e; Nyinsamd, south of Ydlu baki-n-Fdgha; Latakfri, between Bunza and Fdgha; Gdza, in the wilderness between Bunza and Fingilla; T6rmushf baki-n-F6gha, south of De'be; Rtima baki-n-F6gha; J6kwat, Sellowd, between Bunza and Zogfrma; B. G6de; Sfri, west of G6de; Gedg, on a mountain in the fiddamma, between Ildde abd Zogirma; B. Tarrikord, east of Bakway; Kebia, south of Tarrikor; Jiriya, north of Kebia; Bdjurti, south of Jdriya; B. I'ssed6, between Bakway and Giro; K6la, baki-n-fdddam; Todul, east of Bakway, S.E. of Tarrikori; Hkre [Hkre?], east of Stiru, baki-n-fiddama; Kaheb6ka, north of Stiru; Ballebdmbori, on the Kwira, half a day east of Gdy; Karjatime, on the Kwira, S.E. of Ballebdmbori; Dumtfinde, once destroyed by the governor of Z6ma; Dodire, on the Kwira, S.E. of Karjatime; S6nkoro, west of Zd* Yelu, one day from Zogirma through forest, one day W. from Bunza, south of the former road, and about 8 m. S. of Kalliul, on the dallul Fogha.

From Yelu to Giya, one day S.W., passing through the following places: Bamba, a large hamlet, KahinjanAwa, Fatag:'su, Ritwa-n-kangwa Zag6nji, P6de.bod6ji, a hamlet of F6lbe, or rather Zargabe; then B3irni-n-Ghya.

From Yelu to YAuri, S.R.E., short days. Fon6, formerly a large town, which gave its name to a whole province; KfssarA ; Windefda; Bessekttu, a hamlet belonging to the territory of Yiuri; Sfiwasi; T6ndi; Birni-n-Yiuri. t Between Ghy and Kirofthiai, another town higher up the Niger, about 15 m. S. from Say, lie the following places: Tara, Sanafini, and BlingagA. At irot.'shi, the rafi-u-Zab rmi, which skirts the east side of "Trimkala, joins the I'aa, or Niger.
640  APPENDIX.

gha; B. A’ngang; B. Wdgguru, on an island in the river; B. Niyaila, on the river; B. Zaghy, on the river; Bfiia, S.E. of Zagh.y; Ubinga; B. Y6gumu, on an island as large as Egga, and accessible by a ford in summer; Gullingfere, S.E. of Y6gumu; Dabbdje; B. Mong6ttt6ere, on an island; B. S6ka, between J6kwa and T6ro on the river; B. Kormissa, between Riha and Bunza; S6mbila; Kullwa, an island, ia. ny Fiflbe; B. Gabiilo, on the river; B. Tutdlbri, on the river S.W. of D6dime; hujngu; Chiwa, in the fiddama west of Tutubari; Jdingul, in the fiddama; B. Gerkwa, on the Kwira, S. E. of Ddki-n-gari, once the residence of a king of Kebbi, who fled before the King of Znfara; B. Kamagdme, south of Zigha; B. Jdgudi, north of Fond; B. Ddnia, on the river between Rdha and Nyanga; B. Nania, oh the fiddama, a rocky eminence with plenty 4f delgb palms; B. Kiria, on the ford where the river is crossed to l’16 (baki-n-maikdtare-n 116); B. Modib6ji, on the river; Kdlwa, in the Kwdra, birddam gungu; Gungu-n-Gdyaa (Akdtekld), island of Gdyaa ; B. Dor6wa, between Giya and Tara, nearer to the former, on the river; B. Balda, on the Kwdra, a small and populous town; B. Buldi, between Giya and Kengako; B. Mdddochi or Kdhi, south of Ttinunga, on the Kwdra; B. Kittika, south of Siko, on a branch of the Kwgra, with plenty of river horses; B. Yday, on the Kwdra, Fellani-n-Jogaddwa; B. Bdli, at a short distance north of Ydgumu; B. KArufa, also called Jamde and Munday, on the fiddama of the Kwira; B. Bokki-bodghi (bokki means baobabs), east of Bakway, many Fdllani; B. Rufini, close on the west side of Silru; B. G6jia, called B. Biriji by the Fulbe, on the west side of the river of Bunza; B. Fdnia, on the same water; B. Kusdge, west of Bikoshi, between it and Matdnkari, south of Bunza; Dembul, between Jingga and Bunza, west of Kermissa; Shdma, south of Bunza; B. I’ssafay, south of Bunza, with much agriculture; B. B6kkird, south of Bunza; B. DTikkishi on a rd6, between Gtza and Fingfla; B. Kdkad6, at a short distance east of Debe; B. Kariya, east of Kiikad6, south of Zogfrma ; B. O’wa, on an eminence overhanging a water with crocodiles, east of Kariya; B. Bletaide, south of O’wa; B. Bamba, south of Ylu; Kahinjan6wa, south of Bamba, east of Debe; Btinu, east of Kahfnjandwa; Wauna, between Debe and Gdyaa; D6wa, west of Gfro; Babd-abif, between Bendu and Giro; Barkdhi or Kalgo, between T6ro and Gfro, on a ford of the river; Bilmo, south of J6kwa, between it and Giro; YAnderdwel, formerly a hamlet, now a town in the faddama; B6lopdsi, south of the former, and between it and Gfro; Goljillldhi, on the Kwra.

Towns inhabited or colonies founded by Dendi or Songhay, on the west side of the river, in the country of Barba or Burgu.

116, beyond the l’sa, one day from Bdisa; Gard; Lo16 Birni-n-Sdniya, a Songhay colony, one day S.W. of 116, on the G6ru, a shallow branch joining the Kw6ra; Takku, one day south from SAmiya; the inhabitants have vindicated their independence against the Fiflbe; Shgund, at no great distance W.N.W. from Takku; Derdna, S.W. of Shegung; Ifinia, south of Derdna; Sdguy, residence of an independent governor; Udfilo; Gari-n-Danga, Lord of Gdniane; B. Girris; Ydntalh; B. Tdru; B. G6sser6; Ldiffagd, west of Beriwuay; B. Bditulule, east of It; B. Fdtutfdttu, west of Bdituli; B. K6chi, west of Fdtutfdttu, inhabited by people
called Koi-jebdba, subjects of the Governor of Gdya; B. Genne, on the Kwdra, rich in dor6wa-trees; B. Biri, on the Kwdra, east of Genne; B. Bailil, on a rocky eminence on the Kwdra; B. BMfoye, west of Tanda, south of the Kwira; B. Somsom, south of the Kwdra, which separates it from Gdya; B. Fdrma.

I here add the itinerary of the track from S6koto to Komba on the Niger, which was the common route of travelers a few years ago, and which will show the situation of several places mentioned in this and a former Appendix. Day.
1st. T6zo, open place, having passed the gulbi-n-S6koto.
2d. Katdmmi, territory of Khalfiu.
3d. Aigi, walled place, skirted on the west side by a water-course navigable in the rainy season.
4th. Kgnar6, in the same valley.
5th. Gulma, at the foot of a large mountain, skirted on the east side by a fiddama.
6th. Sdwa, rich in corn.
7th. Kaikayggi, a village skirted on the south side by a fiddama. 8th. Kdka, birni, with a fiddama on the south side. 9th. Ddji (wilderness; no town).

YA’URI.-ZABE’RMA. 641

Day.
10th. Db, birni.
11th. Yelu, birni, in the valley of F6gha, where salt is found. 12th. Tunga, a hamlet on a fAddama, with plenty of rice and fish. 13th. Sdnehina, on a fiddama or backwater of the Kw6ra. 14th. Lomba, on the other side of the Kwdra, which you here cross. The latter places, beginning with Ddbd, inhabited by Songhay or Jelmdbe.

PART II.

A FEW RE MARKS ON THE PROVINCE OF YA’URI, AND ON THOSE OF MA’URI AND ZABE’RMA.

Mohammed, the elder brother and predecessor of Khalilu, granted imdna to DanAy, a Nyffdwil by birth, who ruled Yiuri for thirty years, and was succeeded by Mafom, who governs Yduri at the present time.
The annual tribute which Yturi pays to Gand6 consists of 500 shirts, and from thirty to fifty slaves, while that of Nlpe consists of 1000 shirts and 300 slaves.

I will here add a few remarks with regard to Ndpe or Nyffi. The northern frontier of Ndpe or Nyffi is Fdshi; the eastern border toward Gwgrri is Lifie; the southern one, K6ro, toward Yiguchi and Banu. The large town Charigi, inhabited half by Yorubiba, half by Nyffdwla, is two days from Rdba by way of Kardkard. It is the Yorubiba who call the Ndpe people Tgpa. The Nyffliwa themselves call the Hlusdwa, Kenchi, and the Fdlbe, Goy. The Hiusisiwa call the Nyffgwa, as well as some other related tribes, Baibay. The rivulet or fiddama called Kontag6ra separates the territory of the Abdwa or Ebbiwa from that of Nlpe, while on the other side it borders upon Yfuri. On the Kontagdra is the large town Kdra, belonging to the Kfumbari. The Abdwa live especially on the ManjAra, are said to have an idiom of their own, and are armed exclusively with arrows. The people of Ndpe Proper are exclusively cavalry.
Principal towns and villages in the province of Yduri, beginning from Besseklittu: Shenga, Kakatd, Dukku, B. Yiuri, Gangwo, Stiwasi, Tondi, Funtu-n-ddchi, Fombo, Sombo, A'qidg, Shobbon6, Rgbak6, Biged4, Mof6ngi, Lchi, M6chipg, Nggski, A'gurA, Obaki (large place), Berway, Kwdne, Zente, Mojinga, all near to B. Yguri; M6fil6 (domain of the heir apparent or "dan serki," half a day east from Yiuri), Wdra (a place of embarkation, "bki-n-makdtare," on the Kwgra), Jatdwu, Kaw6je, between Y-uri and a place called Dandi Fellani; Bokki-jdruni, Lanne, Sonwuay, Dlich- or Ddtsi-n-Miri. Now follow the islands, or "gdngu," in the river, all of which are inhabited by Kaimbari: ShishiyA, R6piya, Gabilo. The principal towns of the independent K-mbari are Rej6, Bto, Fantanddchi, A'chira, Shdbbend, TRgba-n-Kdmbari, Ubakka.

I here add the seats of three particular tribes settled in the neighborhood of Yguri: the Bangi, between Yguri and Kot6rkoshe; the Shengdwa in Jakwa, between Yguri and Hadsa and the Dekgrkeri4 settled in Tabd, Zdru, Bangenjat6wa, and in Kagaye.

FRoM BUNZA TO YIuaI.

(a.) Western road.

Day.
1st. Tsdr. 2d. A’lleh, on a river of the same name. 3d. Diji, perhaps the word meaning wilderness; no town. 4th. Gangu (giingu, "the island" [on the Kwraf]). 5th. Yluri.

Day.
(b.). Eastern road.

1st. Bussukiittu, according to this information, a village of Kebbi; but generally regarded as belonging to the territory of Y.uri.
2d. Kdsard, lying on the other side of a rivulet called Gulbi-n-Chdso; here you sleep when the river is full of water, the crossing of it occupying a long time; else proceed, and halt in Zingo-n-dimmia. 3d. Gangwo.
4th. Yguri.

I here give, as I have no other place, a short itinerary from Yduri to Kotd-nkdra, or rather Koti-n-kor6.

VOL. III.-S s

642 APENDIX.

Day.
1st. 1Rgad, belonging to the territory of Yiuri. 2d. A hamlet of the Kimbari.
3d. Koti-n-kor6, a place larger than Zinder, under the dominion of Kitsena, with A daily market.

ZABERMA.
The province .of Zabdrma or Zdrma (Jdrma) is bordered toward the southwest by the Niger, toward the south by the province of Ddndina and the district of T.Umkala, and toward the southeast by the province of Meuri. Its northern, or rather northwestern border can not be well defined with the insufficient knowledge which we possess of that quarter- although thus much is clear, that the district of I'mmanan, which lies between the former and Kidal, the province of the DebbAkal, or the Bend Sdkki, is to be sought for in that neighborhood. It is inhabited by a race of Songhay and Tawgrek, but apparently of a degraded and
mixed character, who give to the country, or at least to the eastern portion of the province, the name Chandgazar, which, however, seems to attach to one locality in particular; the people of this tract appear to have a chief of their own named Hatta. The country, with the exception of one or two open places, appears scarcely to have any centres of a settled population, and the chief interest attaching to it seems to be the broad valley, rich in natron, which intersects the province. (See Itineraries in the note.*) The trees most common in the province are the g6reba or ddm palm, the rkkora, and the g'a6, and the valley is said to be girt by fine tamarind-trees. This province is also famous on account of its rich pasture-grounds, and is for this reason frequented also by a good many sections of the Fdlbe or Fdlani during some months of the year, if the state of the land is favorable, even the cattle of the Fellani-nKdtsena pasturing in that country.

I here give a list of the sections of the Fdlbe or Fellani who usually pasture here. Fdlani-n-Zabdrma:

Jelg6be, Ddmbub6, Kurmug, Se~inankoye, Mddibankoye, Wdreb, Fittuga, Nibdnankoyen, Kilasankoyen, Jdborinkoyen, ChenbAngankoyen, Dfrankoyen, Fdrmkad, Biliyankoyen, Tdkankoyen, Kddurankoyen, Gargdnga.

The Fdlani-n.Hiwa call all those countrymen of theirs who are scattered over these western districts by the nickname Mendmnata Hus-re (properly, 'I do not understand Hiwa'), proving by such a name, which is an opprobrium to themselves, their own loss of nationality, and that they, although Fdlbe, usually address their own people more in Hiwa than in their own idiom, the Fuldld language.

LIST OF PLACES IN MA'URI on A'REWA'.

Zormakoye (residence of a special governor), Lokoye (the capital of the province 1 1. Itinerary from Aigi, along a winding track, by wa o of Mduri and Zabrma, to T~mtkaya. Day.

2d. Dmbug~l, belonging to the territory of Mduri or A'rewh. 3d. Dammina. 4th. Karfikard, at the western frontier of A'rewd. 5th. Fergza, village of elephant-hunters, the first place (maffri) of Zabrma. 6th. Tembekire. 7th. D6so, open capital of Zabrma; residence of DATfd, son of Hammam Bfikara, during the period of my journey independent. Besides him, there seems to be another chief in Zabrma, named Hammam Jymma. From here direction S. or S.E. 8th. YVlni, on the eastern side of the broad dallul Bso or Bosso, which comes from Kfrfay, and rejoins the Kwlr at Kirothshi; it is full of natron, but along the border of the valley there are wells of fresh water one fathom in depth. 9th. T,(mkala. 2. Indication of a route from Yini to KXirfay, in very long marches in a N. W. direction along the natron valley.

1st Station. Tdghazar or Chggazar, on the west side of the dallul, at several miles' distance, and
evidently E. or N.E. from D6so. The data furnished by Mohammed el Msmini are of the utmost importance, and fully confirmed. J6rma (Zab--rma) on the right, probably S.E., of T&ghazar, and extending down to the very border of the River Kwira: Tghazar, on the contrary, three days from the river, through a barren desert full of wild beasts, and the deep stream running at half a day's distance.

2d Station. I'mmanan, likewise on the western, or rather northwestern side of the dallul. 5d Station. Kury.

Whether the name of this tribe has any connection with the name of the province Fermdgha to the west of Timbiktu, I can not say, Mr. Cooley suggests to me that it may have some relation to the Mandingo.

GURMA, MO'SI, AND TOMBO.

Whether the name of this tribe has any connection with the name of the province Fermdgha to the west of Timbiktu, I can not say, Mr. Cooley suggests to me that it may have some relation to the Mandingo.

APPENDIX VI.
INFORMATION WITH REGARD TO THE PROVINCES OF GURMA, MO'SI, AND TOMBO.

The whole triangle interposed between the Niger toward the north, and the country of the Eastern Mandingoes or Wsngartwa toward the south, appears to be inhabited by a single race of people, whose language, although they are divided into several different states and nations, nevertheless appears originally to have been of the same stock. It is very probable that this race in ancient times occupied the whole upper course of the Niger, and that this tract may have been wrested from them in later times by the Soaghay and the Mandingoes, especially that section of the latter which is generally called Btimbara. These are the Gurma toward the N.E., the Tombo toward the N.W., and between them the Mdsi, or, as they appear to call themselves, M6re. Gurma, also, does not appear to be the indigenous name by which those people designate themselves, but is, I think, of Songhay origin. The Gurma, on account of the neighborhood of the centres of the Songhay empire, appear to have lost almost their whole independence and nationality, the Songhay conquering from them great part of their territory, and wasting the remainder by continuous pikdatory expeditions; but the former seem to have recovered part of their strength since the weakening of the power of the F&ilbe in these quarters, who followed upon the heels of the Songhay, and who appear to have formed settlements all along the great high road from Mdsina to Hiusa, having established themselves firmly in the latter province from very remote times. The strongest among these pagan kingdoms five centuries ago, and even at the present moment, is that of the M6si, although the country is split into a number of small principalities, almost totally independent of each other, and paying only some slight homage to the ruler of the principality of W6ghodog6. The M6si are called Morba (perhaps originally M6re-bd, bi being, as Mr. Cooley informs me, a formative of personal nouns in the Mandingo language) by the B--imbara. They themselves give peculiar names to the tribes around them, calling the Fiilbe, Chilmigo; the Songhay, Mardnga; the Gurma, Bimba; the Wsngara,
Taurdarga; the Hiusa people, Zdngor6; the Asanti or Asianti, Santi. The inhabitants of Gurma call the Hiusdiwa, Jongoy; but the name of the Fdlbe they have changed only very slightly, calling them Fuljo in the singular, Fulga in the plural form. The Bimbara give to the A’swinek or Swaninki the name Marka.

With regard to the line of Mandingo or Wingara settlements, which extend through the whole breadth of this tract along the tenth parallel of north latitude, I shall say more farther on. I will here only remark that Mr. Cooley ("Negroland of the Arabs," p. 79) seems to have been right in his supposition respecting the original settlements of that eminent African race.

Besides the nationalities mentioned, there are in the tract described several smaller tribes, the degree of whose affinity it is not so easy to determine, especially as the names are more or less corrupted by the traders: Tuksiwa, Gurtinga, Basinga, well known also from other sources, with the chief places Ldirabu and Tangay, the Susimga, Samgay, Kfintanti, Kdirkardi, Ch6kostf, whose chief place, situated on an eminence, seems to be Gambsga, formerly supposed to be the name of a country; Choksiwa is probably only the Hiusa form of Chdkoshi. The Tombot seem to have been very powerful in former times, extending probably to the very banks of the Niger at Timbilktu, and became known to the Portuguese from the end of the fifteenth century; but having still, in the latter half of the last century, constituted an important political power, they seem to have suffered very severely by the continual attacks of the Fdlbe, who have invaded their territory from two different quarters at the same time—from Mdsina toward the N.W., and

It is very remarkable that, while this town is mentioned in that excellent little geographical treatise of Mohammed ben A’hmed MAsini, appended to Captain Clapperton’s Second Travels, p. 332, as belonging to the country or district of Emanoo, none of the other towns of Mituri which I have enumerated are there named, with the exception of Lokoye (Lu-kooyow), but in their stead four others of which I heard nothing. But those places which then were the most considerable may have been since either greatly reduced, or even destroyed. There can be no doubt that Mohammed’s Emanoo is the district I’mmanan, mentioned by me as lying between Tghazar and MAnaur. t The Tombo call the Songhay 11Jennawelam.”

APPENDIX.

from Gilgdji toward the N.E., the latter province being entirely wrested from them, so that they have lost all national independence, although they still retain a large territory of about 150 miles in every direction. I will here at once proceed to communicate the little information which I have been able to collect with regard to them, in order then to subjoin a network of routes which will constitute a fair framework whereupon to lay down, in an approximate manner, the topography of Gurma and M6si.

The country of the Tombo at present extends from the province of Gilg6ji in the N.E., the greater part of the inhabitants of which belong to the same race, and Dwentsa in the N., and from near Konna toward the N.W., to the territory of Benenddgu, or country of the Beni, in the S., and to that of Yidega in the S.E.
From the latter they seem to be separated by the territory of the Urbl and Tinigel, who, however, evidently belong to the same stock. The eastern and western portion of the region thus included is mountainous, the central part more level, and clothed with a rich vegetation of tamarind and other trees. The chief place of the whole territory is said to be A'rre, situated fifteen days from Gilg6ji, and fifteen from Dimmajd, a place on the road to W6ghodog6, nine days from Soffra; and the next in importance are said to be the following towns or villages: Ninge, one day south from Dwentsa, Bambar, Kdja, NayAmma, H6nduk, Dimbilf, Kong, Sh6le, An'mali, K6mmogam, Sh6go, Kaulu, Yelme, Kul, Tiyaugu, Shanger, W6dibil (apparently inhabited, at least partly, by Mandingoes), Kfina, Andtil, Gimle, I'nde, Kvar, Fanjekkara, Kommaige, Tamit6ngo, M6we, Timmin, Uhil. All these places or towns are said to be of considerable extent, and to have each its own chief.

I now proceed to give the itineraries illustrating the geography of Gurma and M6si. But I must first say a word about Mr. Duncan's route from Ab6me to Adafulia, * or, as he writes, Adda-foodia, which will be found to coincide partly with the region here described by myself. This route of Mr. Duncan will be found, in course of time, to contain a few gross mistakes, to say the least. It is quite impossible for an African traveler to go over such distances in so short a time as Mr. Duncan did, who one day counts his journey at not less than forty-four miles.t It is not clear from his journal whether the population of the places visited by him be Mandingo or Fulfdle, although it appears to be evident, from certain hints which he throws out, that he supposes it to consist of these two elements; but, in reality, the more northern part of the route traveled over by him is entirely inhabited by native tribes. Supposing the population of the country thus traversed consisted of Fellita or Filbe, it seems very unlikely that these people, who are so suspicious, should allow a traveler to hurry on at this rate, without any stoppages. Moreover, I doubt very much whether in any of the countries hereabout dromedaries and elephants will be found tamed, such as Duncan found in Sogbo, and whether the sugar-cane and oil-palm grow there. I have not been able to connect any of the towns between Assafdfda and Ad~fudfa, as laid down by Duncan, with my itineraries, nay, I have not been able to learn the names or become aware of the existence of any such places; but this I leave to future travelers who may have the fortune to visit that quarter.

I now give first an itinerary from Komba on the Niger to Sansinne Maugho, in order to circumscribe the country of Gurma on its southeastern side, and thence to Selga, the great entrep6t of the gdro-trade.

A. Route from Komba to Sansdnne 3lfangho.

Day.
1st. Korkojingo garf-n-'Abdu Fellani, a PMlo settlement.
2d. No village.
3d. Mikuru, on a water-course without a current, numbers of wild beasts.
4th. Digu, a village belonging to Gurma, and skirted by a fiddama on its west side.
5th. S6fo-n-Ddggu, "Old Dfgu," at present uninhabited. 6th. Biziiggu or Bisdggu, large place, residence of chief Yanjo. Between Digu
* Duncan's Travels.
t Vol. ii., p. 82. From Baffo to Zafoora. "I had traveled forty-four miles (in one
day) almost without halting." A still greater rate of traveling occurs p. 145.
t Duncan says (vol. ii., p. 96) that the Niger appears to be known here only by the
name Joleeba, not Joliba. Whatever the form, that name is Mandingo;
nevertheless, he states the population expressly to belong to the Fellfita (or
F6ibe). The latter, from what he says (p.:109 and 126), seem to hold the dominion
of the country; but none of the names which he gives belong to that language.
Then the customs do not agree at all with such a state of society, neither the p6to

BIZU'GGU.-SA.NSANNE MANGHO. 645

Day.
and Bizifggu one day perhaps is left out; at least, other travelers make
three stations between these two towns, the first in Stido-melle, the next in
Zok6ga, a Gurma village, the third in Mekkdra, another Gurma village. 7th.
Tanga, a hamlet, bordered toward the south by a mountain, and skirted on the east
side by a water-course running from W. to E. 8th. Maj6ri, a hamlet, on the north
side of a large mountain.
I here add another direct road from Komba to Maj6ri without passing by Bizggu:
Day.
1st. Korkojingo.
2d. Fellald, a mountain, and therefore called F6lald-n-dtitsi (ditisi meaning
mountain in Hiusa), with a water-course. 3d. Small water-course, with water
occasionally. 4th. Dgu, a village of Gurma. 5th. Sildo-melle, a large market-place
of Gurma, probably a settlement of the
6th. 7th. 8th.
9th. 10th. 11th.
Wingara, who are always called by the natives of this district WdugaraMelle;
"sddo" means dwelling in Fulfilde. A village belonging to Barba or Bdggu. A
village of idolaters in a mountainous district. Sabdlga, a pagan village, still under
Gurma. Bizdggu, one day west from here.
Sabglgu, a small village, the whole country mountainous. A small water-course.
Maj6ri, now deserted.
9th. Halt in the wilderness "on the bank of a river" (baki-n-gulbi), which is
crossed on skins.
10th. Barbar, a hamlet.
11th. Famma; a mountain toward the east. 12th. Halt "on the bank of a river"
(baki-n-gulbi) in the wilderness. 13th. Flald or F6lald, a large village, inhabited by
native Gurma, naked, and only
protecting their hind quarters with a wisp. Mountainous. "Filald," as I
have said, means mountain or rock.
14th. Belgu, called by the H-usa traders "maigigifia," on account of its being so
rich in deldb palms. Situated on the bank of the river in a mountainous
district.
15th. Sansinne Mangho or Mango ("the camp of Mohammed"), an old settlement
of the Mandingoes or Wingariwa, who seem to have been settled in this quarter from ancient times, engaged in the gold trade between Kong and Kdkia (the old capital of Songhay), which received its gold from hence. Even now a peculiar weight of mithkil (see vol. iii., p. 360) is still used here. The number of inhabitants about 3000. The name of the present governor is Kancho. From hence a track leads to W6ghodog6.

16th. Halt on the border of a river, having crossed another river in the course of the day.

17th. A well-inhabited (probably Mandingo or Wingara) place, called by the Hiusa traders "gari-n-mafbdndega," on account of the people being all armed with muskets. Territory of Governor Mangha. 18th. Sakoiga, territory of Yendi. 19th. Yendi, an important place, but not near so large as was believed formerly, from the account given by the travelers to Asianti, it appearing, in reality, to have a population of about 5000. They are idolaters, and drink biza or pgto in great quantity. The name of the governor is Kiringu, before whose house two baskets of meat are daily given to the vultures, to whom a sort of worship seems to be paid.

20th. Sambo, a village situated on the other side of the river. 21st. Kobier or K6bia.

22d. A halt on the bank of a river, no village. 23d. Sungtingu.

24th. Tdru, a village.

25th. Ydnsald.

26th. Salga or Selga, capital of the province of Gonja, residence of a governor;

APPENDIX.

population about 1000 inhabitants, the market of the gdro trade, and destitute of water, which is brought from a rivulet at some distance, called "gulbi-n-bariwu," on account of its being occasionally infested by robbers.

I will now give at once the route from this place, which is connected with Kumissi, the capital of Asianti, by a tolerably ascertained route, to Tanidra or Tangdrda, an important point approximately laid down according to Caili's route.

B. Route from Selga to Tai ra by way of Kong, very short marches.

Day.

1st. Sitgunkollo, a small town belonging to the province of Gonja, but ruled by a governor of its own.

2d. K6nkorosid, a place in a district rich in gdro-trees. 3d. A rivulet, called by the IMdusa traders "kidremi-n-ftta," on account of its banks being richly clad with the tree which supplies the leaves called "ftta," wherein the gtiro is packed up in the little baskets called "wdgha."

4th. Halt in the wilderness, traversed by a rivulet, and frequented by elephants.

5th. -A rivulet containing gold particles in its sand, and therefore called "gulbinzninia." Territory of Gonja.

6th. Bitdgu, a large town, residence of a governor of the name Addugara, who acknowledges the supremacy of Asianti.
13th. Another river with gold, called therefore "gulbi-n-zingria." 26th. Kong, a large town, the houses consisting entirely of clay dwellings. The inhabitants, Mandingoes or Wiingara, and most of them Mohammedans. Also Fullin or Fillbe are found there. They have a good deal of weaving, and their cotton is very celebrated, especially the kind called "el harrotife" in Timbiikut, with alternating stripes in red and black. 27th. Nifand, a village. 28th. Halt in the fields of Ndfang. 29th. A village belonging to the territory of Taigon6, which stretches southward to the neighborhood of a considerable place called A'rna. 30th. A large place, likewise in Taigon6. 31st. Halt on the bank of a rivulet running from N. to S., navigable, during the rainy season, and then animated by river-horses, but without water in the dry season. 32d. Kdmu, a large town of the territory of Taigon6, with a considerable mountain toward the south, and many small water-courses. 33d. Another village of Taigon6. 34th. Village belonging to the territory of Fulun6. 35th. Another village of the same. 36th. A village of the territory Kurdiigu. All these different territories are inhabited by Mandingoes or Wiingara. 39th. Kanydnni, a large town, situated on a krdremi or a small water-course, and an important market-place, the most important one of this whole tract with the exception of Furi. The inhabitants Wiingarda, Moslemin, and idolaters. 40th. Sdggand, on a water-course, as it seems, the same as that of Kanydnni. 50th. Gan6ni, an important market-place of the Fulund. 59th. TaTira, another place of the Fulund, larger than Gan6ni, and built of clay. This is evidently Caillid's Tangdra (i., p. 385 et seq.). In going from TatlUra to Ydmina, or Nydmina, a journey of twenty-nine short marches, the traveler reaches on the fourth day a large river (probably the Bagoe of Caillid), on the other side of which the territory of Yimina commences. C. From Kirotshdi, a town on the east side qf the Niger, one day south of Say, to Wdghodogh6. Day. 1st. Halt on the west side of the Kwdra or I'sa. 2d. B6ti, residence of a chief of Gurma. 3d. Wilderness. 4th. Wilderness. 7th. Bizdggu, called by the HAusa traders "Fdda-n-Gurma," "palace of durma," and residence of a chief called by them Tobini-n-kfi. 8th. Yenga, the frontier town of M6si in this direction. 9th. Bennandba (or rather Be-nfba) or Nungu, called Nomma by the Fdlbe, KULFE'LA.-BELA'NGA.-BU'SSUMO. Fida-n-Gurma by the Husa people, the residence of BoJjo, the supreme chief of Gurma: the name of his predecessor, it seems, was Chenchirm or Yengirma. The distance from Bizdggu to the latter place seems rather long for two common marches, although it certainly does not exceed sixty miles; other people make four
halts, the first in Land6, the second in Burgu, the third in Kankanchili, a large
town, and the fourth in a place called
by the traders "Gari-n-Maggjia."
I here subjoin a route leading from Champag6re to Land6 or Lend6, a place which
is of considerable importance on account of its being the residence of the warlike
chief Wintdle, whose princely title is Fan-du. From Champag6re: Mayinga, a
hamlet inhabited by slaves of the Fiilbe; Champelga, already belonging to the
territory of Lend6; Lend6.

Day.
10th. Tinkurgf.
13th. Kulfela, a well-frequented market-place of M6si, and of greater importance
than all the other towns of M6si; the governor's name is Ndbere Giger.
The inhabitants are celebrated archers. Another informant going from Kulfela to
Tdnkurgdi makes three stations, the first in Liilugd, a large town, the second in Liilugd, and the third in a village called K6go. 15th.
W6ghodogh6.
N. B.-If this were a tolerably direct road, it would have a great influence upon the
position of the various places mentioned; but it would seem that my informant
turned away from his direct track in order to visit the market-place Kulfela. Other
people, in going slowly from Kulfela to W6ghodogh6, spend eight days on the
road, sleeping the first night in Pdshipinga, the second in Tngay, the third in
Zor6go, the next in a place ruled by a man called Mdne Bog6nje, the fifth in
another village called Tngay, and reach W6ghodogh6 on the eighth. I shall here
join Tdnkurgti with Sansinne Mangho by an itinerary, which, however, does not
lay claim to completeness.

Day.
1st. Benda, belonging to the territory of Businga.
2d. Samga, a large town.
5th. Sansanne Mangho.
D. From Ydgha to Beldnga (long marches).
Day.
1st. Kibo, a village of YCigha.
2d. Sehingu, a Gurma village belonging to the territory of Behinga.
3d. Jafinge, a large Gurma place (long march).
4th. On the bank of the River Shirba in the wilderness. 5th. Beling or Belinga,
residence of one of the Gurma chiefs, styled Belem-bdttu (bdttu means chief,
king, in the Gurma language), who at present is one of the most powerful rulers of
that country, his territory extending about four days' good march in every
direction, the more important places being Yamba, Sirbald, Jepdngald, Basirihi,
Balga, Tubga, Ddngo, Tamp6do, Mokka,
Yop6nga, Japdng0, Bdla.
From Belinga to Nungu or Be-niba there are four very short days, passing by
Yamba, a large place, Ybel-ygbel, and Tubga.
E. From Jibo, capital of the province of Gilgoji or .il6di (about 60 miles S. from
.Munddro, 55 W.S. W. from A'ribinda, and 35 S.S. W. from Tinge), by way of
Kaye, to Mdni and Wdghodoghd (very short marches).
1st day. Kije. 2d. Sebbe. 3d. Ginkomi (not Gaikom). 4th. T6ngomelle or T6ngomaye, a market-place of some importance, which may be reached on horseback in one day from Jbo. 5th. Nyange. 6th. K6bay. 7th. Surgdisumfd, the last place of the territory of Gilg6ji. 8th. K4lbo, the first village of the territory of M6si; the border district in general is regarded as very unsafe. 9th. Dffia. 10th. Sokkopndndu. 11th. Kondu-bdollo (probably not the name of the place, but that of the chief; this is perhaps the place Konda or Kamgo which is said to have

APPENDIX,
From Kaye to WV6ghodoghd.
1st day. Jetinga. 2d. Nessemetinga. 3d. Liida. 4th. Mdku. 5th. Bifssumo (or, as it is called by the traders, "F6, dan Btissumo"), an important place, residence of a powerful chief, probably the most powerful of the M6si chiefs at the present time, especially with regard to cavalry. 6th. Kurzum6go, residence of a governor ("yerima") under Btissumo. 7th. Mdni, another residence of a powerful chief, who, however, in a certain degree, seems to acknowledge the supremacy of Bdissumo. 8th. Yiko, a considerable place. 10th. W6ghodogh6.

F. From Mdni- Yddega.
1st day. Ygko. 2d. Kurzom6go, not identical, as it appears, with the synonymous place mentioned in the previous itinerary; residence of a governor under Yddega. 3d. Jegd, a considerable place, with huts of reed. 4th. ZUmche. 5th. Dammeko. 6th. Fissela. 7th. Yerimchi (probably only a name given to the place by the traders as being the residence of a yerima or governor). 8th. Yidega.

G 1. From .Tdni to Kong, and back by a more easterly road.
1st day. Temma. 2d. Yiko. 3d. Ld. 4th. Sarma. 5th. BMfori. 6th. Sdfand. 7th. Langafgra. 8th. Dit6ri. 9th. TUberd. 10th. Kong, a large place, according to my informant, inhabited by Bimbara. It can scarcely be identical with the well-known town Kong, if the itinerary be correct; but nevertheless it may be the case.

G 2. Return from Kong.

H. From Kaye to Behissa, and thence to Beldnga.
1st day. Dimla, a large town of M6si, with a warlike population, therefore called "Maimishi" (mistress of spears) by the traders. 2d. Ponsa, also a considerable place. 3d. Pissela. 4th. Belissa, a large town, seat of an independent Gurma chief who possesses numerous cavalry.
From Behissa a person on horseback reaches Beldnga comfortably the second day, the great station between these two towns being Alitinga, still belonging to M6si, and an important place, inhabited by M6si and Hgusa traders; but common native travelers generally halt twice between Behissa and Alitfnga, in Nyennydga and Kobtri, and once between Alitfnga and Beldnga, in a Gurma village called Yamba.
Beltissa seems to be situated from Belinga not true W., as I have placed it in the map which I sent home, but a little more to the N.

Between Behissa and Kulfela lie the following places: Jiga, Zimche, Sdlugu (still belonging to the territory of Behissa), Kumshdg, S6re (a market-place), Wunfg, Yyniba (residence of a Mandingo or Wingara chief, whom the traders call Yergdwa), then a village belonging to a Pillo resident in Kulfela ("ungwa serki-nFel6n-n-Kulfela"), Futinga, Nakilba, Ligiddemel-demi, and Kulfela.

1. From Pissela to D6re in Libtdko (very short marches).


12th. Tambo. 13th. Mardrraba, belonging to Libtdko, and inhabited by Filbe. Mar-rraba means "half way" in the Husa language, and it would be important to know what the names of the two places are between which this village is considered as lying half way. 14th. Kila, also inhabited by Fillbe. 15th. Debbero-koy, Fillbe. 16th. Lraba. 17th. D6re.

K. Route from Sego on the Niger to Meggard in _fienka or Menka.

1st day. Fenya, having crossed a considerable Tiver called Bbdeld Sirsinkend.

SHEIKH SIDI A'HMED EL BAKA'Y. 649


APPENDIX VII.

PEDIGREE OF THE SHEIKH SIDI A'HMED EL BAKA'Y.

Sidi 'Ukba, son of 'Omdr, with the surname El Mdstaigb, the great conqueror of Barbary.

Sakdra. 'Abd el Kerfm. D6man.

Yadrdbfa. Mohammed. Yahia.


Sfdi A'hmed, or Mohammed, el Kuntf, born of a Lmintia mother called Yigeddsh. He is said to have died in Fask, a district W. of Shingit. Sidi A'hmed el Baktiy, died in Walita.

Sidi 'Omr e' Sheikh, is said to have changed the cruel custom prevailing in the family before him, of murdering all the (male) children except one, and to have left all his three sons alive. For this reason it is that his name occupies a prominent position in El Baktys poem. He was a great friend of'Abd el Kerfinen Mohammed el Maghfli, and is said to have visited in his company the learned Sheikh e' Soytiti in Egypt. He is said to have died A.H. 960 (A.D. 1553), in the district of Gidi or I'gidi, E. of the Sikiet cl hamra.
Sidi el Wdfi, although Sidi 'Omir's second son, succeeded his father as WVelh, while the Sheikhdom rested with his elder brother Sidi Mukhtgr, who died in the sanctuary or chapel called Zawyet Kunta, situated in the neighborhood of B-'Alf, the ksar or village of Tawit, where the family of El Maghli resided. El Wdfi's younger brother was Sidi A'hamd e' Regfi. Sidi Haiballa (Habib-allah). Sidi Mohammed. These four were only Weliye, without having the dignity of Sheikh. Bibi A'hmed. Mukhtir, also called Mukhtir el kebir, in order to distinguish him from his grandson. With him the dignity of Sheikh was transferred into this branch of the family. He died A.H. 1226 (A.D. 1811). A dream or sacred vision, which he had in the year 1209, is very famous in those parts of Negroland. Sidi Mohammed e' Sheikh died 2d Shawil, 1241 (10th May, 1826), during Major Laing's residence in the hilleh in A'zawgid. Mukhtir, his eldest son, died 1263, in Timbktktu. Sidi A'hamd el Bakiy, Mukhtir's younger brother, the present chief.

APPENDIX.
APPENDIX VIII.
TWO POEMS OF THE SHEIKH EL BAKA'Y, WHEREIN BE SATIRIZES THE FUrLBE OF MA'SINA.

EL BAKA'Y'S FIRST POEM. 651

EL BAKA'Y'S SECOND POEM. 653

APPENDIX.
- U~ JU .9 LU
- -j

EL BAKA'Y'S FIRST POEM. 651

EL BAKA'Y'S SECOND POEM. 653
TRANSLATION OF THE TWO POEMS OF A’HMED EL BAKA’Y.
BY DR. JOHN NICHOLSON, PENRITH.
"In the name of GOD,” &c.
"And our Sheikh and Lord, A’hmed el Bakiy, the son of our Sheikh and Lord Mohammed, the son of our Sheikh and Lord El Mukht6r, said, addressing the assembly of the Fuln of Misina, when they attacked his guest, 'Abd el Kerfm Barth, the Englishman, (The metre is khaIf.)
"Tell the host of the Fulin-I say, shameful! I am attacked in a great and weighty matter. Ye have sought my guest: you will find him, when you do find him, mighty, protected, the free guest of a free man, who is the son of a free woman, who was daughter of a freeman, and whose father was a freeman, who lavished benefits. No slave bore me, nor did such foster me in their bosoms as a suckling; and my father is he whom you know, and his father. We have not descended from Sdm, except as noble, as munificent, as white of face, as lords or chieftains. Among their mothers there is no daughter of a slave who bears coals, like herself, that she may sell them; whose son is her master, whereas his father is his master; who effected his manumission, as being obedient. No daughter nor son of Hdm was my parent, nor will I obey the sons of the lazy Him. Among the sons of the
lazy Hlim none but fat women and corpulent men see guests [?]. My guest is my honor, and
DND POEM. 655
4.jJ W
., U
Wy . :1V.I
, ~...~ -

APPENDIX.

my honor never was in jeopardy, therefore its guest shall never be imperiled. 'Abd Mendf ben Kosay ben Kihib ben Morra, my ancestor, and Luway ben Ghileb, and Nizdr ben M'add admonish me not to fear, and Fehr ben M6lik ben El Nadhr* for bids me to entertain alarm or suspicion. El Wdfi increases 'Omdr, the Sheikh of the sons of A'hmed el Bakay, by the addition of a fair, freeborn man; and El Kunti increased him-the progeny of 'Ali--who sprang from 'Ukba the Accepted, who perished heroically. Such were my ancestors, noblemen, and their guest never died in agony.

"The Sultan is not alarmed that the homage and allegiance of the Sultan will not be duly paid. He will not be afraid of you until the Sultan 'Abd el Mejfd is afraid of Nukmah.$ War and blows are to be found elsewhere than where ye seek; and wounds among the Zinj drive forth the flowing blood-without molesting this man-and long spears and cuts of swords round about on all sides, and the explosion of cannon's hither and thither, like thunders which crash in blasts and reverberations. They consider the death in which men are destroyed-they count it a garden and a vernal season of noble youths and gallant lads, and mature men, who have grown old together in dignity, mounted on sleek, swift horses, steeds, coursers trained to run, tall piebalds, five-year-olds, tall, fleet, wide-stepping, rapid, plump, long-boned, strong in back and neck, Arabian blood-horses of E1 H6dh, or Taginet, or Kidgil.§ that are fed upon cooling milk.

"I am secure in my position. He who attempts to contend with me will be cut off, overwhelmed. I rely on ALLAH, the Lord of Moses, and Jesus, and the prophets, that I may see myself contented. HE aids the solitary and deserted with His help, so that HE overwhelsm the multitude altogether. Lo! Pharaoh was very wicked and very mighty: he lost his way in the sea, and the host were laid low.

"Oh, Mdsina! reprove your brother, that he may become a submissive friend to me, like the Im-im Bello; or that he may be to me as both his parents were before: if they did not suffer, they did not fear. Or let him leave me alone with his evil, and I will leave him alone. The best of evil is that it should not manifest itself.

"Behold! the learned and the humane among you, the A'l F6diye; they do not adopt a chief; they do not adopt any but one who is wise about the way of the Most High, and who sees and hears. They respect the honorable, because they are themselves such. They do not associate with the ignoble; they only consort with those that are saints, learned, poets, pious, abstemious. Repair the evil ye have done our neighbor, and preserve affection for us; preserve for us unfailing gratitude and inviolate brotherhood. If ye were willing, like them, ye should be in
it, and would earn both fame and benefits. But nature is queen. If cowards only could, they certainly would be brave."

"And he said again, addressing the Fulldn on the subject of his guest. (The metre 4s 'Tawfl.)"

"Did Mohammed Sfd, the slave, and that slave a black one, really come from A'hmed [ben] A'hmed, to inquire about my guest, in order to make him return as [become] his guest, that he might plunder him, and fetter him, and make him a guest of Kadri with him, and with San-Shirfu?** My guest is not accustomed to this! Or did Yaktin say the speech? Is he not a dreamer? Yes, a dreamer, by ALLAH! A'hmed, A'hmed! And, besides my guest, there is 'Aikil, and Yalam* All the preceding names are those of well-known ancestors of Mohammed, the prophet; those that follow are the poet's own.

I can not approve this translation of Dr. Nicholson. I read 7 and translate, "The Sultan is not afraid lest he may not be feared, or obedience not be paid him. The Sultan ('Abd el Mejid) is not a young lad." El Bakiy, I think, opposes here the Sultan 'Abd el Mejid to the young chief A'hemedu ben A'hmedn, who was quite a young man. Dr. Nicholson observes that there is a great fault in the metre of the first hemistich, but that the consonants of the text are strictly those of the MS.-H. B.

This place, Nukmah or Ndgumna, is probably the small place of that name In Misina, and not the village called also 'Rear el MWallemin," mentioned above, p. 179; but I am not quite certain about It-H. B.

§ Three districts celebrated for their breed of horses. Kidfil lies between Mbrfik and the country of the Awelimmiden.-H. B.

I Literally," My fat is in my wallet." Freitag, "Arab. Prov.," i., p. 664. If The poet here exhibits to the hostile ruler of Mislna the docile behavior of his friends, the rulers of S6koto, the successors of the Sheikh Fddive.-1H. B.

- San-Shlrfu is the name of one of the two kfddhis of Timbfiktu. Kafri is the name of the emir.

-H. B.

EL BAKA'Y'S SECOND POEM.-CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE. 657

Iam, and Ridhwa, and Hamhin, and Kudsu and Dhurwad.* Will he take him before death and the Indian cimeters seize on his own head? Will he take him, while the sword and the spear are asleep, by stealth. Lo! the lances do not miss their aim. Will he take him where all the Tawirck are, and of the Arabs, a Sheikh, and a mature man, and a lad?

"The descendants of the Sheikh 'Othmln ben F6diye are our army; and of our army Miisa ben Bodhil is a witness; and Targaitamdtu, the lions, whose tribe Lik~way,t the nephew of Alkiittabu, leads, who lightens, thunders; and A'khbi ben Sglem, round whom are the Igwddaren, and Woghdu Agga 'I Henne has a gathered host. And among the Tinkirikff there are noble men, the Benu Hammelasa, whose troop shows valor; and young men from the K61 e' Silk, who are lions in calamities, and who are brave, assist my guest. These are the people in El Islim: they do not disappoint me, and they are my brothers, and very useful and helpful to me. I have among the tribe of the Fulldn a body of mef in the land who
run and hasten to defend the religion of ALLAH. Dearer to them than their house, and family, and souls is the religion of ALLAH, who is mighty! Whenever they see infidelity and rebellion against their Lord, they resist, and go aside from every impious person. And I have some of the men of ALLAH in the land, and also of the angels, as an auxiliary and a scattering host. And my trust—my trust is in ALLAH, whose majesty is great! and there is no help except from him; and ALLAH is most mighty! So there is no help except from him—not even from the angels, though they be mighty and worthy of praise. He is GOD, who is great! He redoubles His aid against every oppressor who is violent and exorbitant. As for me, it is sufficient protection against Ahmed that I should pray to ALLAH in the belly of this night that approaches. I will aim my prayer at Him, at the dawn, like an arrow. He shall find himself, when he sees to-morrow, smitten with death. But if lie repents one day, that will be best for him. But if he refuse—will not repent—then the matter is referred to ALLAH. Before him Pharaoh, and Nimrod, and 'Aid, and Sheddeld ben 'Ad rebelled; but all those on whom their prophets invoked vengeance perished, and disappeared, and were desolated. Moses, and Jesus, and Sulih, and Hdd, and Abraham, and subsequently Mohammed, called on their Lord. He alone then—glory to his name!—is the One we invoke. Just as they obey, so will He answer and help the faithful. Then help me, 0 LORD, in the same way as Thou didst help them, for there is no defense and no help above Thee. And bless and prosper them with benedictions, for there are not any among them but those that deserve praise and honor.

"Finished with the help of GOD," etc., etc.

APPENDIX IX.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY AND THE NEIGHBORING KINGDOMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Songhay</th>
<th>Neighboring Kingdoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.D. 300. The kingdom of Ghana, or Gh~nata, the central portion of which comprises the present province of Bighena, founded by Wakayamagha or mangho (mango = great? Magha = Mohammed?) about three centuries before the Hejra; the ruling family whites (Leucothiopes? Fulbe?). At the commencement of the Hejra twentyZi Alaygmin (Z6 el Yemeni) comes ning of two kings had ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to Kdkif (El Bekri's Kilgha, Ca B of Hja. Already, at this early date, an exal Mosto's Cochia), a very an- A.D. 679. tensive Mohammedan quarter cient place, and the older residence A.H. 60. existed in Ghgnata, containing dence of Songhay, and founds 12 mosques.[[ There is considthe eldest dynasty of the Z9. The erable doubt with regard to the Libyan origin of this dynasty, of accuracy of the date.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* This passage about Yaktin neither I nor Dr. Nicholson are able to clear up fully.- L. B. t See what is said about this man, whose name is generally pronounced Elfegwi, in Appendix XII. of this volume, p. 720. A'xhibi, Woghdu, and the other people are mentioned repeatedly by me. 
- H. B. t i. e., The latter third. 
APPENDIX.

Songhay.

which that of the Sonni was a A.D. 837. Death of Tihitan, chief of the Limmere continuation, is very dis- A.H. 222. tdna, very powerful in the distinctly intimated by Leo Africa- e rt; he adopted Iblim, and connus, in the words, "della stirpe verted the neighboring Negro di Libya."* tribes.

Gog6, an important commercial A.D. 893. place, where Makhled E'bn Kai- A.H. 280. did, with the surname of A'btil Yezid, that great revolutionist who brought so much mischief over Northern Africa, was born. His father came often from T6zer to this place for trading purposes, evidently by way of Wirgeli, that most ancient trading place on the northern border of the desert.

We thus see that the commerce between Northern Africa and Negroland was infinitely older than it has ever been supposed. I may here add that I have not the slightest doubt that Wirgeld is meant by the Bakalitis of Ptolemy (lib. iv., c. 7, p. 305, ed. Wilberg.), which he describes from the side of Egypt as lying beyond Fezzin, although no Roman ruins exist in Wirgeli. Kdikii still

t of the Kin ready at very powe A.D. 900. Death of Ilettan, the successor of A.H. 287. Tilitan.

A.D. 918. Temim, the successor of Ilettan, A.H. 306. slain by the Zenigha or Senhija, after which a division takes place among the Berber tribes established on the border of the desert and Negroland. -he ordinary residence A.D. 961. Tin-Yerdtin, king of, or rather a .g of Songhay, who al- A.H. 350. Berber chief having his residence that period becomes in, Aildaghost, an important rful. trading colony of the Zenigha, who appear at that time to have dominated over the whole of the neighboring part of Negroland, including Ghinata. In the very year mentioned, this place, which carried on at that time a most flourishing trade with Sijilmasn, was visited by the Arab geographer, E'bn Hadikal.: Kxigha (Kdiki) was at that period so powerful that the King of Aildaghost thought it prudent to make presents to the king of that place (the King of Songhay), in order to prevent him from making war upon him. Nevertheless, twentythree Negro kings are said to have been tributary to another king of Aildaghost, named Tinezwa, in the fourth century of the Hejra.

The site of Aildaghost is quite evident from El Bckri's excellent itinerary: "You march five days in the sand-hills of Wardn, till you come to the copious well of the Beni Wdreh; then, farther on, the well Warin; then a well-watered district of three days." At the same time the abundance of gum-trees near Aildaghost proves distinctly that the distance of fifteen days intervening between Aildaghost or
Ghdnata (near Waldta), is to be reckoned in a westerly direction, and that Addaghost therefore is to be sought for in the neighborhood of Tejigja and Kasr el Barka, and not to the northeast of Walita. I shall say more on this subject in another place.

At that time Aulil was the great place for salt.

A.D. 990. Intercourse established with NeA.H. 380. groland, according to the statement of Leo.§

Zi Kasi, the 15th prince of the dy- A.D. 1009.
nasty of the Z, adopts Islam. A.H. 400.

4 Descr. dell’ Africa, lib. vii., c. 1. t For this highly important statement, see Ebn Kbaldfn, trans. by De Slane, vol. iii, p. 201. t Journal Asiatique, ., 1842, p. 50. § Leo, 1. vii., c. 1, even speaks of Negroland as if it had been quite unknown before his time, "1fu. rono scoperti."
658

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 659

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

A.D. 1009. A'bdi 'Abd Allah, son of Tifaut, surnamed Naresh, again unites under A.n. 426. his sway all the Berber tribes of the desert; makes a pilgrimage; dies 429.

A.D. 1040. Warjgbi, the Mohammedan apostle of Tekrdr, died. Among others, A.H. 432. the inhabitants of Silla were converted by him. A.D. 1043. Jinni is founded,* and soon becomes wealthy, owing to the trade in A.H. 435. salt (from Teghiza) and gold (from Bite). A.D. 1048. 'Abd Allah E'bn Yasin begins to teach and to reform. A.H. 440.

A.D. 1052. Addaghost, which had become dependent upon Ghtnata, conquered A.H. 445. and ransacked by the Meribetin, the disciples of 'Abd Allah E'bn Yasin, in the same year as Sijilmessa.

A.D. 1055. Yahia E'bn 'Omdr, chief of the Mertebefn, dies, and is succeeded by A.H. 447. his brother A'bif Bakr. The King of Ghinata, Tankimenin, son of the sister of Besi, an excellent king, evidently dependent on Abt Bakr.

A.D. 1061. A'btd Bakr ben 'Omdr makes an expedition on a grand scale against A.H. 453. the Negro tribes.

G6g6t or Gaigho (the capital of A.D. 1067. The Senhija, at this period, ruled Songhay), consisting of two A.H. 460. over the whole western part of towns, one the residence of the king and the quarter of the Negrohamedans, the other inhabited by idolaters. Farther eastward, between the southerly bend of the Niger and a Moslim could be king; nay, on the Seghmgra, under the dominion of a new king, three royal emblems, consisting a very large town (Tademgkka),
of a ring, a sword, and a Kurin, which were said to have been handed down from former times, having been sent by an Emir el Mdmenin (evidently from Egypt), were given to him. Thus we see that already, at that early period, the King of Songhay was a Ruler of power.

The town was first founded in a place called Zagari, on the south side of the southerly branch of the river, and therefore not identical with the Zaghari of Ebn Latita. El Bekri appears to have had no knowledge of Jinni.

El Bekri, besides Gδg6, gives a very interesting account of Kcigha, but, unfortunately, he givest no particulars with regard to its situation, except the distance of fifteen days from Ghfnata, and espe* A‘hmed Bbi, J. L. O. q., vol. ix., p. 528, seq. He describes the site of this important town in the most perspicuous and clear manner as being part of the year, from August to February, an island.

The town was first founded in a place called Zagari, on the south side of the southerly branch of the river, and therefore not identical with the Zaghari of Ebn Latita. El Bekri appears to have had no knowledge of Jinni.

El Bekri, ed. Maegackin de Slane, p. 183. The name, which the Arabs give to the inhabitants seems to have some connection with the surname of one of the successors of Sunni, B‘zekin or Bizerkin.

El Bekri, 179. It is a great pity that just in this place the author, whose statements in general are distinguished by their clearness, should commit a palpable mistake, by placing Ambtra (H6mbori) west of Gbinata.

APPENDIX.

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

A.D. 1076.
A.H. 469.
Toward the end of the fifth century of the Hejra, Timbuktu, or Tmbutu, founded by the I’mishagh (Tawdrek), especially the tribes of the I’dendn and the Imedidderen, after it had been for a time their occasional camping ground, just as was the case with A’rawin. First settlement at B6sebdngo. It was at first a A.D. 1087.

small market place for the in- A.B. 480.

habitants of the province of Rad. (?)


Ghunata conquered by the Senhija, and great part of the inhabitants, as well as the neighboring districts of Negroland, compelled by the Merfibetin to embrace the Mohammedan faith.

Abi Bakr ben ’Omir takes up his residence in this part of Negroland.

A’bd Bakr ben ’Omfr dies. 

ing to Edrisi, power- A.D. 1153. El Edrisi’s account of Negroland, dominating over the A.H. 548. composed at this period, is not to g tracts; horses and be relied on in general, with the e nobility well dress- the face veiled; the where he enters into particulars: ople wearing leathern for instance, the populous state ’he natives of Adjila of the towns of Silla and Tekrtir that period, carried (Zigha), the latter being more ted trade with G6g6 populous and industrious; the i., p. 238). salt mines of Aulil, the only ones known at that time in Negroland! (p. 11); the rising of the Mandingo or Wingara race (the Wgkord), a name then first appearing. Very doubtful appear the following data: Tirk, or Tirkka, belonging to Wdngara; even Kdgha, a dependence of Wingara, while at the same time G6gd-the real Gag6t-is said to have been absolute and independent. The great commercial importance of W6,rgeld is confirmed, the inhabitant s supplying G6g6 with dates, and buying up the greater part of the gold brought there to market.

Rice cultivated on the Niger, in the district of the Merdsa.

Ghunata ruled by a descendant of A’bdi TWleb, $ of the Zendgha tribe, who paid allegiance to the khalif in the East; but, if we can believe Edrisi, he had still a large empire.

Ghinata, having become very weak, is conquered by the Stisu, a tribe related to the Wskor4.

The tribe or dynasty of the A’rtsyn becomes powerful in the neighborhood of Walita.

The inhabitants of Jinni, at least the ruling portion, including the king, adopt Islam.
Timbdktu (erroneously) stated by A.f1. 1213. ? Baraminddna, first Moslim king
Leo Africanus§ to have been A.H. 610. of Melle, styled King of Tek* Aloise Ca da Mosto, Navigazione, c. 14. t Edrisl makes great confusion, produced by the similarity of the names G6g6 or K6k6, Kfika (on the Fittri), and Kerker, but what he relates (I., p. 28) seems really to refer to G6g6.
4 Edrisi, I., p. 61 ; compare Cooley, p. 66.
0 Leo, 1. vii., c. 6. As it is certain that no king of the name Slimin ruled at that period over

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 661
Soughay.
 founded by Mansa Slimdn. This is evident confusion, the reason of which is that Mansa Sfmian,
who reigne fourteenth c bdktu after ed by the p
A.D. 1235 to 1260. A. n. 633 to 658.
Neighboring Kingdoms.
rdr by Makrizi, makes the pilgrimage.
din the middle of the A.D. 1233 With the death of Ebn Ghania entury, restored
Tim- to 1234. the domination of the great race it had been plunder- A.H. 631
of the SenhAja ends.* The recople of M6si. to 633. mains of this great tribe
in the
southern part of the desert (the
Limttina and Messdfa) [the latter as Meshedff] are gradually reduced to the
degraded condition of tributaries. Islam spreads east of the Niger, and the name
Tekrdr appears in Kebbi, probably in connection with the town of Zgha (see
Appendix VI.). Biru or Waldta at that time the great
emporium of Western Negroland.
Mtiri J6itah, King of Melle, on the upper Niger, conquers the Sdsu,
who at that time were masters of Gnata. This is evidently the period of the
beginning of the great commercial importance of Jinni, which now became a most
powerful and wealthy state, as a wellfrequented market of the Serracolets or
Wakord, Fdlbe, Jolof, Zenmgha, the inhabitants of Western Tekrdr, and the
Udgya.t
A.D. 1259 Mansa W-li, son of M, Jitah, to 1276. performs the pilgrimage to
MekA.n. 658 ka in the reign of Sultan Bibars. to 675.
A.D. 1276. Mansa Wdli, brother of the latter. A.H. 675. Mansa Khalifa succeeds
him; of
Some authors, such as Makrfzi
(Opuscl. Mscr., fol. 129, r.), attribute to this chief the conquest of G6gho or G6gd,
that is to say, Songhav, by the Mellians; but
insane mind; is murdered by his
people.
Mansa A'bd Bakr.
A.D. 1310. Sgkdira, or rather Sibkara, a usurpA.I. 710. er, made the pilgrimage
to Mekka in the time of El Mlik e'
from the account of A'hemd A.D. 1311 Mansa Mdsa (properly Kunkur Bdbii it is clear that such was to 1331. Mdsa), the greatest king of Melle the case. A.H. 711 le, succeeds this usurper, develo 73 1. ops the whole military and political power of that kingdom, which, according to the expressive terms of A'hemd Bgbd, the Songhay historian, possessed "an aggressive strength without measure or limit." While thus extending his dominion over an immense portion of Negroland, he kept on the very best terms with the Sultan A'bi 'I Hassan of El Mighreb (Morocco).

Mansa Mdsa subjected to his dominion the four large territories of the Western part of Negroland; first, Bighena, formed out of the remnants of the kingdom of Ghinata, and including the whole inhabited country of Taginet and A'derdr; secondly, Zggha, or the Western Tekrtdr, together with Silla; then Timbdktu, at that time still, as it seems, independent of G6g6 ; and finally Songhay, with its capital G6g6. Jinni, however, probably owing to its nearly insular character, seems not to have become subjected to Melle even at this period, although it was engaged in continual warfare.

It is probably at the period of this A.D. 1326. Mansa Mdsa makes a pilgrimage to Mekka, with a very numerous cortege, resembling an army, and not before, that A.H. 726. to Mekka, with a very numerous Melle, Mr. Cooley, in order to explain Leo's statement, supposed him to be a king of the Sfisu.-LYCgroland of the Arabs, p. 6T, seq.


APPENDIX.

Foughay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

both Songhay and Timbdktu be-

 came dependent on Melle, al-

 though the dependence was even
cortege, resembling an army, and of Walita and Tawdt and reat this time limited, the King of turning by GCigho or G6g6.

Songhay having, as it seems, Melle Proper seems to have had a quietly made his subjection on double principle of government, the approach of the host of Mel-

other nals. In political respects mihriib outside the then town prov(Mohammedan quarter?) of inces, a northerly and a southerG6g6.

Timbliktu also, as it would seem, Dhi-fliba; the governor of the surrendered without resistance,* ly one, probably divided by the former being called Farand (Faand the

King of Melle built here rengh) Stra, the other Sanghara palace (m'a-
dugu), and the zdi-m’a.t. But in national regret, mosque Jdngerd-bdr, or spect Melle formed three large Jdm’a el kebira, with the assistance of the same I’s-hik, a native of Granita (the “Granata vir artificissimus” of Leo, al-commonly called e’ Sd-heli, as if he were a native of the province of K6la was called WaMorocco), who built his palace ffila-fegngh. K6la comprised in Melle. That space of the evidently the province next to town of Timbilktu included between the two great mosques, the river, including the towns of Jdnger6-bdr in the southwestern and San-kord in the northern quarter, was at that time open and not inhabited. The mosque San-kord is generally stated to have been the oldest mosque in Timbdlktu, although Ahmed Bid, who only states that it was built at the expense of a rich Sabarrodgu beyond, in the direcwife, is not very explicit with regard to this circumstance. Melle. The important district advantage from becoming a portion of a powerful kingdom, and being thus well protected against any violence offered on the part of the neighboring Berber population; and in consequence the town increased rapidly, it becoming soon a market place of the flit rank, so that the most respectable merchants from Misr, Fezzin, Ghaddmes, Tawdt, Tafilelet, Dar’ah, Fis, Sdis, and other places gradually left Bfiri or Waldta, and migrated to Timbldktu, although this was more frequently the case after the time of Sonni ’Ali. The town of Timbldktu ransacked and destroyed by fire and sword by A.D. 1329. the King of M6si, the garrison of Melle making their escape and A.H. ? 730. giving up the town. The power of M6si, which up to this time has The translation of Mr. Ralfs in the Journal of the Leipsie Oriental Society is here not correct. He translates "I er bezwang Timbflktu," while the words of the author are "a we do not know what part in these affairs the general, Sagminhu, bore, who, according to "bn Khald−n’s account, was stated by some of his informants to have achieved this conquest. There may have been partial resistance in Songhay. The final "ma," in Mandingo, corresponds exactly with the final "ma" in the Kau’iri titles.
It is a very remarkable fact that the titles mentioned by A’hmed BAbA are all formed by attaching to the name of a town the syllable "key," which would seem to be of Songhay origin.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 663

songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.
always been the successful champion of paganism, is very remarkable at such an early period, but the date is not quite certain within a year or two. If the date given be right, it happened toward the end of the reign of Mansa Mtisa.
A.D. 1331# Mansa Migha succeeds to his fato 1335. ther Mansa Mdisa, and reigns A.R. 732 four years.
The Songhay prince 'Ali Killun, to 736.
or Kilnu, son of Zi Ytisebi, escapes in the company of his brother from the court of Melle, where the princes had served as pages, Songhay owing allegiance to Melle at that period. Having safely reached his native country, Songhay Proper, with the capital G6g6, he makes himself independent in a certain degree from Melle by founding the dynasty of the Sonni. *
Timbuktut having been left, as it seems, to itself for seven years, relapses into a state of subjection or allegiance to Melle, and remains in this condition for the next 100 years.
A.D. 1335. Mansa Slhmin, a brother of Mdsa A.U. 736. and uncle of Mdgha, succeeds to the throne of Melle, and restores the strength of the kingdom.
A.R. 737. Mansa Slfmdn again takes possession of Timbuktut, t and even obliges Songhay Proper to acknowledge his supremacy.
A.H. 752. A king of Tektrlr makes a pilgrimage.1 Travels of E’bn Battita, who visits Walita, the frontier province of Melle, and an important trading place, where at that time the Mastifa formed the higher class; thence, by way of Karsekho, he went to Melle, or Mili, the capital of the great empire, situated on a northerly creek of the Dhidiliba,§ whence he proceeded by land by way of Mimah to Timbtktu.
Timbktut at that time was inhabited mostly by people of Mimah and by Tawtrek (Molihemin), especially Masiffa, who had a head man of their own, while the Melle governor was Farba Midsa. E’bn Batilta embarked in Timbdktu, or rather Kdbara, and went along the river to G6g6, evidently the town of Tademgl.


1353. A.H. 753
754.
ika, or rather ry of the Tathis time evideal of its im-
The fact of Marl Jitah conquering
Tekidda, at that time the commercial entrepôm between Songhay and Egypt, also
mentioned by E'bn Battita, shows clearly
A.H. 775.
Mansa E'bn Slimin reigned nine
months.
Mansa Jdtah, son of Mansa Migha,
ascended the throne.
The same king sent an embassy to
A'bid el Hassan of Morocco.
Mansa Mcisa (II.), son of the latter, a weak king, the vizier Mgri Jitah usurping
the power and conquering Tekidda (the trading place spoken of on a for mer occa-
* A'hmed fib' says (p. 524), "'Ali Killun put an end to the supremacy of Melle
over Songhay. After his death his brother ruled, Silman Nr. Their dominion was
limited to Songhay and the neighboring districts."
* The date seems to be certain, for if A'hmed BbA had only known that the second
dominion of the kings of Melle over Timbiktu, which they lost in the year 83T,
had lasted 100 years, we might doubt about the fact that the epoch began exactly
with the year 737, but the author gives the precise date of that very year. I
therefore prefer his arrangement to the arguments of Mr. Ralfs, p. 582.
* Makrizi, Notes et Extraits, vol. xii., p. 638, note.
§ Cooley, "Negroland," p. 79.

APPENDIX.
Songhay.
that he was master of Songhay, and exercised over it a certain degree of
supremacy. Timbdk- A.D. 1387. tu, as Timbuch, appears in the A.H. 789.
Mappainondo Catalan-the first time that it becomes known to * Europeans.
A.D. 1388.
A.H. 790.
A.D. 1390.
A.H. 792.
A.D. 1431.
A.H. 835.

Neighboring Kingdoms.
sion, vol. i., p. 365) for a short
time.
Mansa Migha, brother of the preceding king, succeeds to the throne; is killed after
a reign
of about a year.
Another usurper.
Mahmiid, a descendant of Mri
Jitah, the first king.
A king of Tekrtir makes a pilgrimage, dies in the town of T6r, in
the peninsula of Sinai.

Timbuktu conquered by the I'm6 - A.D. 1433. The empire of Melle shagh (probably not the Masifa, A.H. 837. ually to decline, t at that time not yet blended with ing divided amo
the Arabs, and who had always rather five, separat
been powerful in that place) under A'kil (Eg Malwal). The national provinces
under A'kil (Eg Malwal). The governors of each
people of Melle had been so governors of the p
much weakened by continual in-
roads that they retired before the time spreading de
greater force, and were driven everywhere.
out forever. A'kil, however, did not reside in the town, preferring
a nomadic life; but he installed as governor, or Tdmbutu-koy, Mohammed Ngsr,
a Senhaji from Shingft, who had also taken part in the government of the town
under the rule of Melle. This Mohammed Nisr built the mosque Ydhia in
Timbdktu, which was called after his friend the Weli YAhia from Tidelest. To the
Timbutu-koy belonged the third part of all taxes and of the whole revenue of the
town. In the beginning the rule of the Tawdrek, which, according to the distinct
statement of A'hmed Bb(L, never extended beyond the river, was mild; but
gradually they became overbearing, using even violence toward the wives of the
inhabitants, and offending 'Omgr, the son and successor of Mohammed
Nisr, by cheating him out of his revenue.

begins gradhe power beng three, or :e parties, the of the three and the two political
provk at the same vastation ev-
A.D. 1448. The Portuguese Company for opening the trade along the coast of
A.U. 852. Africa is established. A.D. 1454. Melle, in the account of Aloise Ca
da Mosto, still a very powerful A.H. 860. kingdom, the most powerful in the
whole of Negroland, including the whole of the Gambia, and most important for
the commerce of gold, the trade in which divided into three branches; one
proceeding from Melle toward Kitkid, and thence to Egypt; the other from Melle
to Tafmbutu, and thence to Tawit: the other likewise by way of Tdmbutu, but
thence to Waddn (Oden), which then was a very important place, not only
for gold, but also for the slaveTimbfiktu, or Tdlmbutu, an impor-
entrepbt for the salt-trade. *
Timbfiktu already at
tant entrep-t for the salt-trade. that time was a very important
entrept for the salt, which all
came from the mines of Teghiza.
A.D. 1460. The town of A'gades built, according to Marmol (see vol. i., p. 361),
A.H. 865-6. and nothing is more probable than that this commercial entrep6t was
built about this time, perhaps a few years later, as it is Sonni 'Ali who is said to
have destroyed the very important market-place of Tadem-kka, which for many
centuries had carried on the commerce between the Niger and Egypt.
Ca da Mosto, Prima Navigazione, c. 13. With regard to Oden, see c. 10; for
Timbfiktu, c. 12.
SONNI ’ALL, son of Sonni Mohammed D’ad, "the great tyrant and A.D. 1464-5. famous miscreant," but a king of the highest historical importance A. 1. 869. for
Negroland, the sixteenth of the Sonni, ascended the throne in Gigho, and changed
the whole face of this part of Africa by prostrating the kingdom of Melle.
Invited by ’Omir, the Ttimbutu-koy, Sonni ’All marches against Tim- A.D. 1468-9.
biiktu, which had never before belonged to Songhay Proper. While A.H. 873.
his horsemen appear on the south side of the river, A’kil makes his escape toward
Biru or Waldta. Sonni ’All then, instead of attacking immediately the town of
Timbiktu, went first to El H6dh, the southwestern province of Walita. Having
thence returned to Timbqiktu, from whence ‘Omdr also, the Ttimbutu-koy, had
meanwhile fled to Biru,* he ransacked and plundered the town, and made a
terrible havoc among its inhabitants, even surpassing that which took place on the
occasion of the pagan king of M6shi conquering the town. Sonni ’Ali seems
especially to have exercised some cruelty against the learned men. But,
notwithstanding, the town seems soon to have recovered from this blow, for it
was in the latter part of this century that it became more densely inhabited than
before. But the reason was that, in consequence of the conquests
of Sonni ’Ali, the Arab merchants from the north broke off
their traffic with Ghdnata or Walita or Biru becomes insignifi
(Bfru), and instead began cant, all the merchants emigratto visit the
markets of Timbiktu ing to Timbdktu and G6g6.
and G6g6.
Sonni’Ali conquered Bighena, that
is, the centre or original part of the ancient kingdom of Ghdnata and the later
Walita, but satisfied himself with making the chief of that country his tributary.
Sonni ’Ali then made Jinni likewise tributary, which place had not been conquered
even by the kings of Melle, and he there likewise caused an immense bloodshed.
Jinni was at that time highly flourishing through its industry in native cloth.t At a
later time the first A’sklA held the King of Jinni as a
prisoner in his capital. (Leo, 1. vii., c. 3.) It must have been Sonni ’Ali to whom
Joao II. of Portugal sent
In the southwestern part of the
an embassy; and it was evident- desert the Berabfish and the Udgly that
king who allowed the ya struggling for the predomin
establish a factory ance. The Zenigha already in
in Wadin, or H6den, which a degraded position.
however they did not preserve A.D. 1471. The coast of Guinea explored by
for a long time, the place being A.H. 876. the Portuguese.
too barren and at too considera- A.D. 1481. Alfonso V. dies; is succeeded by ble a
distance from the coast. A.H. 886. the still more energetic Joio II.
But nevertheless the establish-
The Portuguese build Elmina,
ment of this factory is a very re-
the first European establishment
markable fact. on the coast of Guinea.
A.D. 1488. The Jolof prince, Bemoy, came to A.H. 894. Portugal, and communicated so much information with regard to the nations of the interior of Africa, especially the M6si, who, according to him, had much in common with Christians, that he excited the greatest interest. It was supposed that the King of M6si was the long-sought Prester John. Ogane is the native royal title of the King of M6si. In consequence, from this time forward, weTFrom A'hmed BlIA we learn nothing more respecting the fate of 'Om~r; but we see in another passage that Sonni 'Ali imprisoned Al MukhtAr, another son of Mohammed N~sr, who, from what follows, it is evident was Tmbutu-koy.

De Barros, in the highly interesting passage, i., 1. 3. c. 12, p. 257; and the curious report of the German Valetin Ferdinand, by Kunstmann, in Abbandlungen der K. Ivaier., Akad., cl. iii., vol. viii., first section a, 1856. It is, however, remarkable that the German author, although he speaks of Wa. dfin, does not say any thing of it ever having been a factory.

APPENDIX.

Soughay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

merous messengers were sent into the interior by the King Joio from different quarters, and a nearer alliance seems to have been concluded with the King of the Mandingoes, although it was well understood in Portugal at that time that the empire of the Mellians had fallen to ruin.

Sonni 'All was drowned in a tor- Sth November, rent on his return from an expe- A.Dt. 1492.


The army of the deceased king proceeded from B'anebi (Ben'aba? the 2 Jumad, capital of Gurma; see Appendix VI., p. 647) to Daugha, evidently A.H. 898. the place (Denga) touched at by myself on my journey, and here A'btl Bakr D'atl, son of Sonni 'All, ascended the throne. But Mohammed, son of A'bsi Bakr, a native of Songhay ("Nigrita"-Leo) and officer of Sonni, collected his party and marched against the new king. But having attacked him at Dangha, he was beaten, when he escaped to the neighborhood of Gdgho, where he collected again his army, and vanquished the king in a most sanguinary but decisive battle. Sonni A'btl Bakr D'al fled to Abar (Adar?), where he died.

Mohammed ben Abif Bakr, surnamed e' Thdri, on ascending the 14Jm. 11., throne with the titles Emir el Mdmenin and Khalifa el Moslemin, A.H. 898. adopted as royal title A'skii or Sikkia.1 Thus the dynasty of a foreign family, Libyan, Coptic, or Himyaritic, was supplanted by a native Songhay and African (e tornb el dominio nei Negri), although it leaned more toward Islam and Mohammedan learning than the former one, for A'skii was a friend of the learned and followed their advice.
The first thing which this great Songhay king felt it incumbent to do was to give his subjects some repose, by reducing his army and allowing part of the people to engage in pacific pursuits, all the inhabitants having been employed by Sonni 'Ali in warlike purposes. Altogether it does not appear exaggerated what A’hmed Bdbi, says of this distinguished king, that "God made use of his service in order to save the true believers (in Negroland) from their sufferings and calamities."

Immediately after his accession to power, A’askfi sent for his brother ‘Omir, from Biru or Waldta, far as Walita and Jinni.

which place already at this time had so totally merged into a Songhay province that the Songhay idiom, at least in the higher circles, where a traveler like Leo was likely to move about, had become the common language. "Questa gente," says Leo of the inhabitants of Wahita, "usa un certo linguaggio detto Sungai."§ A’askid then made his brother, in whom he had implicit confidence, Tmbutu-koy, in the place of 11 Al Mukhtir ben Mohammed Nisr. He then sent his older brother, likewise called ‘Omir, but with the A.D. 1494. surname Kumzighu, the Ferdng of Kfirma, who conquered the End of important town of Zdgha, and made war against "Bukr m’a," A.H. 899.

* ee what I have said respecting the tribe of the Zoghortin or Jawambe, p. 129.

t See De Barros, in the passage mentioned before, "lecy dos Fulios."

† The origin of this name, as stated by A’hmed Bb30, Is not very probable; but although It Is true that "A'skhi" was rather a royal title, which the founder of this new dynasty adopted, nevertheless, in Negroland, the popular name of this great ruler and conqueror is nothing but A’sklf, and that was the reason why Leo calls him only by this name, changing It into Ischia.

§ Leo, i. vi., c. 2, p. 138, ed. Venezia, 1837.

I These words Mr. Ralfs (p. 533) has neglected to translate. Whether this ‘Omir received )is surname Kumz–ghu only from the circumstance of his taking

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 667

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

(Burkum’a?), evidently a Mandingo governor of the empire of Melle. He also, according to Leo, imprisoned the ruler of Jinni, whom Sonni ‘Ali had allowed to reside in his own capital, and kept him during his lifetime a prisoner in Giigho, ruling Jinni by means of a governor.

Having thus not only consolidated, 90th sept., Jodo II., the indefatigable king but even extended the empire, A.D. 1495. Portugal, died, whose spirit fo the first A'skif undertook a pil- A.I. 901. no repose but in promoting pi Safer, orps uti rmtn grimage to Mekka, which brought A.H. 902. welfare of his people, and in him into contact with the princes tant discoveries, especially in and learned men of the East,’ rica. As we learn from an
and made him more famous than any other of his enterprises, The most distinguished men of all the tribes under his command accompanied him on his great journey, especially the great Well M'fr Sileh Jdr, a Wsikor4, native of the town of Tutolna,t in the province of Tindfrma, and 1500 armed men, 1000 on foot and 500 on horseback. He took with him 300,000 mithkdl, but behaved so generously that, according to Leo, he was obliged to contract a loan of 150,000 mithkil more. He had an official investiture performed by the Sherif el 'Abdsi, as Khalifa in Songhay, and took the advice of the most learned and pious men, such as Jelil e' Sotiti. He also founded a charitable institution in Mekka for the people of Tektrir. August, Hdj Mohammed A'skig returned to Gigho. A.D. 149'

Hdj Mohammed undertakes an expedition, or a formal jibhid, against N'asi, the Sultan of M6si, having sent the Weli Mifr Salch Ntir as an ambassador to that king, in order to induce him to embrace Islam. But the M6si people having consulted the souls of their ancestors, and refused to change their native worship, A'skiiii devastated their country. He came back from this expedition in Ramadhoin. He (himself or 'Othmsn) then conquered the country of Bdighena, the ancient seat of the empire of Ghinah or Ghdnata, the king of which had already been made tributary by Sonni 'Alf, and slew the F6llani (Pillo) chieftain Damba-
dumbi. We therefore at this early period find the Fdlbe very powerful, as well in the south (Gurma, see p. 666) as in the northwest; while from De Barros we learn that their power in the southwest was not less great. The Songhay king made an expedition against Abairu (?), and deprived him of his kingdom. $ A'skd. then sent his brother 'Omgr Kumzighu against Melle, where the K6.id Kim Fati Kalliyeen seems to have exercised at the time supreme power; but 'Omir not feeling himself strong enough to take the town of Zillen or Zalna, where the court of Melle seems to have been, he sent for the king himself, encamping meanwhile in a place called Tnfaren, a little to the east from Zillen. Hiji Mohammed A'skii then came in person, vanquished the koid, destroyed the town, together with the palace of the King of Melle, and sold the inhabitants into slavery.

of und the disAf oc this bas-

7-8.

A.D. 14991500. A.H. 905.

the town of Zfigha, we can not decide: but there is no doubt that he must be distinguished from the other brother of the same name, else A'hmed Bb& would be guilty of an absurdity. We never find that a governor of the important province of Kfirmina was at the same time Timbutu-koy; and the difference of the two
individuals is quite evident, for 'Omfr Kumzfgihiu died 926, and 'OmAr son of B6 Bakr—that is to say, his other brother—the Timbutu-koy, 928. See farther down.

* De Barros, i., 1 iii., c. 12, p. 25T, dizendo (the later Mansa, In Manuel's time) que havia em boa ventura ser lhe enviado este mensageiro, porque a sen f6 que tinha a seu proprio nome fora, enviado outro mensageiro do outro Rey D. Joio de Portugal. t Tukalna, as the name is given by Ralfs, is wrpng. t In the Gibla, the southwestern district of the great desert, there is a tribe of the name Welfd Ab-ri.

APPENDIX.

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

According to Leo, * A'skid made the whole of Melle tributary, laying such a heavy tribute upon that ruler that he entirely tied his hands. Nevertheless the capital of Melle still at that time was a flourishing place, and the largest town in Negroland, containing about 6000 dwellings. Perhaps this is the town called Zillen or Zalna by A'hemed Bibd.

In the same year Hij Mohammed 'Alf Ghajiddni, the powerful king of B6rnu (see vol. ii., p. 589), Bargtfl, or, as it is more justly about this time probably undercalled, Barbti, the country in— took his expedition to the south closed between Gurma, Ì'ruba, western frontier of his large emand the great river. The in— pire, beyond the Kwira, in or inhabitants of this country being a der to protect it against the envery warlike set of people, the croachments of his powerful construggle appears to have been temporary the Songhay king. very violent; and although A'hemed Bibd does not seem to intimate the whole of the result, yet it is clear, from the fact that the Songhay king was occupied with Bargti for the next four or five years, that he met with great resistance; this is also clearly indicated by traditions still extant in that country, the name Bargl being generally derived from the Songhay words five (go), horses (beri), "five horses" being the only remnant of an army led into the country by the Songhay king. Such a state of things is also clearly indicated by another document.$

The Songhay king made an expedition against Kelinbft. The fol- A.D. 1506. lowing years no expedition seems to have been undertaken, the A.H. 912. A'skid being busy with the internal affairs of his extensive empire, which extended from Kebbi in the east as far as the present country of Kaarta, and from Bennendggu as far as Teghgza. It appears that he staid the greater part of this period near Timbiikutu, where he was evidently when Leo visited this part of Africa, who thought Timbciiktu to be his usual residence, but nevertheless was fully aware, although he did not clearly express it, that Gigho was his other residence: "Questo signor fu preso dal detto Izchia e tenuto in Gdgo fino alla morte," 1. vii., c. 3, at the end. The A'skid staid in K6(bara, "the well-known harbor," when he heard of the learned man, the Fikih Mahmsid, having come to Gigho, and he immediately embarked and went there by water, for almost all the
intercourse between Timbktu and the whole western quarter, on the one side, and the centre of the Songhay empire with its capital, on the other, was along the river.

Hdj Mohammed sends the B'akukurakoy 'Ali Fuldnu and Belgha Mo- A.D. 1511. hammed Kiri against M'a Futa§ Kaitil, the Fereng of Bdghena, A.H. 917. who had revolted.

Hdj Mohammed, always extending his empire farther westward, A.D. 1512. marched against a powerful chieftain, All'ainll Almatni Tindhar, A.H. 918. and slew him in Zard. This is a highly interesting expedition,

This is probably the meaning of the words of Leo, 1. vii., c. 4. t This true native form of the name of that country A'hmmed Bfib5 gives himself. At the timo when I made the excerpts I did not identify the name, having misspelled it Barka; but the form Barbh is quite decisive.

App. to Clapperton's Second Expedition, p. 3398. "And it is recorded that, when the equitable Prince Hadgi Mohammed Allah-kaja (A'skiA) ruled over this province, he could gain no advantage over them."

The name is remarkable; "r'a," a Mandingo word, it may belong to the title "fereng," as a sort of tautology.

It is not improbable that the name All'ain expresses the national term Dhelian or Dbelianke, to whom this founder of the new dynasty in FRita Tro belonged.

---

**CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.D. 1511</td>
<td>Hdg Mohammed sends the B'akukurakoy 'Ali Fuldnu and Belgha Mo- to attack M'a Futa§ Kaitil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.D. 1512</td>
<td>Hdg Mohammed marches against All'ainll Almatni Tindhar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.D. 1513</td>
<td>The Portuguese, under the direction of the Son, take possession of Jolof.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Songhay. Neighboring

as the results of it exercised a powerful influence as far as the coast, where the enterprising Portuguese were at that time establishing their power. For it happened just at the time that Kolli, All'ain's eldest son, was absent on an expedition, and when he heard of the fate of his father he fled with his army to Fita, which at that time belonged to the King of Jolof, and endeavored to assume the sovereign power, in which attempt he succeeded by the slaughter of the King of Jolof. The country of Jolof thus became divided between Kolli (Kolli Salti [Siti- gi?] Tindhar) and Ddmala (D- mil, a common title, the Temala tira, a most exellent of the Portuguese), the most powerful of the governors of the former king of Jolof. Kolli founded a po dynasty, and was succeeded Kahibi (Kol) by his son Yurima, t ended on account and justice; then fo son of Yurima.

At the end of this year, the Son- A.D. 1513. The Portuguese, und ghay king marched against Kdt- A.H. 919. take possession of 1
sena, and returned from thence in the first Rebi of the following year. This is an extraordinary short time for so distant an expedition, even if he had been residing in the easternmost part of his empire at the time when he undertook it. Nevertheless, if we can believe Leo, the A'skiti conquered not only Ktsena, but also G6ber (which already at that time had a very large capital and a good trade, and considerable industry, especially in leather work), Zdnfara, Zegzeg, Kan6, and almost the whole of H-usa; but it would almost appear to me as if The Hiusa States b Leo in this case had confounded tant-Kor6rofa.

A'skii with Kanta, the ruler of Kebbi. A.D. 1514. The Portuguese occu

About the end of this year the A'skf% marched against Al'Ad~let, the King of A'gades, and returned from thence the A.H. 920. A.D. 1515. A.H. 921. Kingdoms.

the Senegal e great flame uerra) which ged all the to west.* rerful Negro succeeded by o whom sueli Labbe) Bant prince, celt of his piety flowed Kata, er D'Ataide, izemmdir.
ecome imporpy Tednest.

* The following is the highly interesting account which we have received from De Barros (Asil, 1., 1 3, c. 12, p. 258) of this great commotion: 11 E nio somente per estes e per Pero d' Evora, mas ainda per hum Mem Royz escudeiro de sua casa e per Pero de Astuniga Beu mo-o d esporas quo elle levava por companheiro, mandou El Rey algumas vezes recados a El Rey de Tungubutu e ao mesmo Temald (Damil) que se chiamava Rey dos Fullos. 0 qual Temali nestes tiempos foi nas quellas partes hun incendio de guerra levantandose da parte do Sol ex huma Comarca chamada Futa con tanto numero de gente que seccavam hum rio quando a elle chegavam; e assiera esquivo e barbaro este aoute d' aquella gente pagi que assolava quanto se lhe punha diante. E como con vesta ferocidade tinha feito grande'damno emos amigos e servidores del Rey, principalmente a el Rey de Tungubutu, Mandi Mansa, Uli.Mansa mandon Ihe per algumas vezes seus recados de amizade, e outros de rogo sobre os negocios da guerra que tinha com estes." It is highly interesting to see how the course of affairs in this quarter confirms all that we know from other sources. Thus M. le Colonel Faidherbe, at present governor of the Senegal, in opposition to common tradition, which would have carried back the foundation of the new dynasty in Futa, which he well understood proceeded from the east, to the middle of the fourteenth century, arrives at the conclusion that it must have been established about the year 1500. -Bulletin de la Soc. Geogr., iv., p. 281. t Leo heard this report evidently from merchants, and in a very exaggerated manner, for A'hemd D b would be guilty of Inaccuracy beyond measure, if he had forgotten to mention a second expedition which HQ Mohammed, according to Leo's account, undertook three years after the first; nay, such an expedition is totally impossible, on account of the hostility of Kauts, the ruler of Kebbi. who made himself independent of Soaghay the second year after
the expedition to Kitsena, and there was no road from Songhay to Kan6 except through KebbL

APPENDIX.

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

following year, having driven out, as we know from other sources,* the Berber tribes, and transplanted there a good many of his own people, although the Songhay language may have been spoken there before this period. However, it is evident from Leo's account, t who seems to know nothing of this expedition, that the King of A'gades paid tribute to A'skif already before this time. At all events, this was the highest pitch of power to which not only Hdj Mohammed himself, but the A'skigs in general attained; for, on his return from this expedition, Kanta, the Governor of Leka, in the province of Kebbi, who owed A.D. 1516. Kanta founds an independent kinghim allegiance, and who had ac- A.H. 922. dom in Kebbi. Starting from accompanied him in this war, de- Birmi-n-Duggul, in the province manded his share in the booty, of Ktsena, he took up his resiwhich probably was very great, dence first in Gungu, then in Suand not being satisfied, rose rime, and finally in Leka. against him, and vanquished him in a great battle, after which he made himself independent of Songhay, and was successful, A.D. 1517. Kanta vindicates his independence A'skid, who marched against A.H. 923. of Songhay. him the following year, being obliged to retrace his steps without having obtained the slightest success. It is therefore next to impossible that A'skig achieved the conquest of the Hausa provinces, as described by Leo. Hij Mohammed again visited the western part of his empire, and on A.D. 1518. the 15th Ramadhin staid in Timbtiktu. A.B. 924. The name Songhay, not mentioned by former authors, becomes conspicuous, being employed as well by Leo as by De Barros. The king resided again in Songhay Proper, and was in Sankar, a A.D. 1520. place beyond Klikii, when he learned the death of his beloved A.H. 926. brother 'Omir Kumzghu, to whom he was so much indebted for the stability of his rule. He then invested another brother, named Ydhia, with the governor- or fergengship of Kdirmina, which certainly was the most important province of the empire. H6ij Mohammed lost another brother, 'Omdr the Tdmbutu-koy (see p. A.D. 1521-2. 667), and thus having been deprived of his most faithful servants, A.H. 928. and having passed the prime of life, became the plaything of his overbearing sons, the intrigues taking a more open turn after some affair in Bauku or Bango, the character of which is not quite A.D. 1524-5. clear. A:H. 931. At length affairs assumed such a serious character that the heir-ap- A.D. 1527-8. parent, or Fergngmangha Hij Mtisa, the eldest son of the king, A.H. 934.
who had accompanied him on his pilgrimage, threatened to kill him; so that the aged Mohammed fled to Tindirma, and placed himself under the protection of his brother Yhia. The latter then seems to have brought about some understanding among the members of the royal family; for in the following year we find the old A.D. 1528-9.

king again in G(Lgho, when Mtesa revolted openly against his father, A.H. 935. and went with some of his brothers to Kikffi. Ydhia, the Fer-ng of Keirmina, being again requested by his brother to interfere between him and his sons, came to Gigho, and was sent by the latter to Kilkid, but was openly attacked by the mutinous children and murdered. Msda then, seeing that his father was powerless, returned to Gdgho, and toward the end of the year, on the great holiday, forced him to abdicate, after a reign of thirty-six years and six months. Nevertheless, he left him in his palace, while he himself staid in his own house. Hfij Mohammed A'ski, as A'hmed Bb6 says, was too great (or too mild) to rule a (turbulent) country like Songhay.

* See vol. L, p. 3, % aeq.
t Leo, 1. vii., c. 9.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 671

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

That the extent of the empire in its prime, was not exaggerated by the author of the History of Songhay is clear from the account of M!ly A'hmed's expedition.

A'skid Al[tisa began his bloody and restless reign by endeavoring to A.D. 1529. murder all his brothers, and pursued them to Kdirmina, where they A.H. 935. had taken refuge under the protection of the governor of that province, 'Othmin Jubdbu, another son of Hdij Mohammed; but he forced them all to decamp, together with the governor of the province himself, as well as the Governor of Banku or Bango, and other great men. The aged 'Ali Fuhinu, who had accompanied El Hu j Mohammed on his pilgrimage, fled to Kan6,*

lMutisa, having returned to Gigho, A.D. 1533. 'Abd el Kerim ben Maghfli, from continued the attempt to murder A.H. 940. BtiAli, in Tawit, the great aposhis remaining brothers, as far as the title of Middle Negroland, where he was able to lay his hands on them, while they, on their part, endeavored to rid themselves of their tormentor, so that he had not a moment's rest. he is stated to have transplanted.

the power formerly grafted upon Songhay, is said to have died this year. If this be really the case, as it would seem to be,
a former passage in my work about this distinguished man (vol. i., p. 476) has to be altered a little.

At this period the Portuguese sent presents to the King of Melle, who
was reduced to the western provinces of his empire, and therefore is now styled Mandi Mansa, and who then waged war with Temal6 (the Dimil, rey dos Fullos; see above). The Portuguese endeavored also to open communication with the King of M6si (el rey dos Moses), of whose power they had received reports, but from the wrong side, nitmely, from Benin. The King of M6si was then waging war with the Mandi Mausa.

In this sanguinary reign, it is cheering to find that the Portuguese A.D. 1534. sent an embassy, among the other princes in the interior, also to a A.H. 941. nephew of this Mdisa, King of Songhay, t from the side of Mina, or Elmina, their colony on the Gold Coast.

Mdisa died. Mohammed Bnkord, son of Omir Kumz~ghu, was made A.D. 1535-6.

A'skid in a place called Manstir. This cruel prince drove the old Hij A.H. 942. Mohammed from the royal palace, where even Mdisa had left him, and imprisoned him in a place called Kankika. Mohammed Btinkord was a warlike prince, but he was not successful in his

The power of the kingdom of Kebcareer, nor was he a favorite with the people. He marched after the death of the first Kanto, against Kantao, but was totally routed at a place called Wenslantfisa (a Berber name), and fled most ingloriously, having a

* In this instance also it is not certain whether the town of Kan6 be meant, or whether that name at the time attached only to the whole province.

translated from Barros, Asia, . c., p. 259. That nephew of Musa, therefore, was evidently governor of the former principal province of the kingdom of Melle. "The king," says De Barros farther on, "was not a little surprised at the King of Portugal sending him presents." It is very probable that among these presents were the articles of Portuguese workmanship mentioned by the author of the memoir to Philip IT., on the power of Mufy e' Dhbebi, as found by the Maroccans among the spoil of Gflgho. See lower down.

672 APPENDIX.

Soughay. Neighbor Kingdoms.

very narrow escape through the back the former with the aid of waters of the Niger. the Fdlbe.

Ile then marched against Gurma, A.D. 1536.

and sent Mri Tamiza, the Fe- A.H. 943.
rdng of Dendi, against the enemy. But the latter, having laid in chains all the leading men in the army, deposed the king, 2d Dhu el K'ada (12th April), and installed Ismi'ail, a son of Haj Mohammed, on the throne as A'skii.

Ismi'ail brought his aged father from Kankdka back to Gdgho, where A.D. 1537. he died in the night preceding the 'Aid el Fotr, and was buried in A.H. 944. the great mosque. In the same year Ismd'afil went to Dire.* A'skif Ismd'afal then marched against the Bakabdki (the chief of Boj- A.H. 945. jo?), in Gurma, and killed and carried into slavery a great many people, so that a slave in Gfigho fetched not more than 300 shells.

A'skif Ismd'afal, a very energetic and much-respected king, unfortu- A.D. 1539. nately reigned too short a period, and died after a reign of not A.H. 946. more than two years, nine months, six days, in the month of Rejeb (October or November).

The army, which had just marched out upon an expedition, made I'shik, another son of Hdj Mohammed, A'skif, on the 16th Sh'abin. The new king proved a very stern master, the severest king who ruled over Songhay; but he made himself also respected by his enemies, even in the most distant quarter. Thus, in the third year of his A.D. 1542. reign, he marched against Yaghaba (not Baghaba), the most dis- A.H. 949. tant place of the sultans of Banduk, or Bennendtigu, on the remotest southwesterly branch of A.D. 1544. About this time Mohammed, the the Niger; and two years later A.H. 951. ruler of B6rnu, fought a celehe waged war on the opposite side of his vast dominions against with the King of Kebbi, probaKdikurkib (Kokoy-Kibi ?),t in bly T6mo, who founded here a the territory of Dendi. new and large capital, Birni-nIn the course of this year I's-hk A.D. 1545. Kebbi. (See vol. ii., p. 590.) sent his brother Dild, the Fe- A.B. 952. rdng of Kdirmina, against Melle. The Sultan (Mansa) of Melle, who, having been reduced to the position of a tributary chief by the great Hij Mohammad, seems to have conceived the hope of making himself again independent under his successors, left his palace and fled, and Didd remained for seven days in the capital, defiling the honor of the royal palace in the grossest manner.

At the same time, this energetic Songhay king showed his power to A.D. 1549. Mtildy Ahmed, the powerful ruler of Morocco, who, looking about A.B. 956. for a fresh source of strength, cast a longing eye on Negroland, and requested the A'skii to deliver up to him the salt mines of Teghiza; whereupon I's-hk sent an army of 2000 Tawgrek to Daf a, who plundered the market of the Beni A'saj without shedding any blood.

But the Songhay king was destined soon to succumb; and, having fallen sick, died in Ktikfi, where he had gone in the beginning of that year, on the 24th Safar (24th March), after a reign of nine years and six months, having named as his successor Diid, then governor of Kdirmina, who was fortunate enough to arrive before I's-hdk's death.
Diid having ascended the throne in Kikig one day before the death of I's-hik, returned to Gdgho on the 1st Rebi I. Did was a very peaceable king, and undertook no expedition at all. He re A.D. 1553. Sidi 'Omir e' Sheikh, the great sided toward the end of his life a A.H. 960. ancestor of the family of El Ba long time in the cap kgy, died in the district Gidi o ital of the province of Ktirmina, where he had a palace, and kept a large establishment. Askii Didd, who is said by the Imdm e' Tekrdri, as cited by De Slane,* to have imitated the example of his father, Hij Mohammed, died after a reign of nearly thirty-four (lunar) years. El Hij, or El Hij Mohammed, then ascended the throne, being the A.D. 1582. eldest son of Dgidd, and named after his grandfather, whom he is A.II. 990. said to have equaled in the qualities of bravery and patient endurance, although he remained far behind in success, and was plunged from the beginning of his reign in civil war, which began to rage the very day of his accession to the throne, the Ferng Mohammed Bnkord preparing to oppose him; but, fortunately, the latter was induced by the Faki Mohammed, the Kddhi of Timbciktu, to give up his pretensions, in order to apply himself to study. He was then arrested and lodged in the state prison in Kantil. Then El Hddi, son of A'skfi Didd, and brother of El Hij, whom, as the A.D. 1584. most faithful, the king had intrusted with the government of Kidr safer, mina, revolted, left Tindirma, and marched against the capital, Gi A.I. 992. gho. He even succeeded in entering the town in the night before the 4th Rebi-awel, clad in a coat of mail, and preceded by a trumpet, drum, and other insignia of royal power, while the A'skifd, who at the time was very weak and sick, was seized with fear of losing his throne; but through the aid of Hiki, the governor of the powerful province of Dendi, the revolt was overcome. El HAdi was then thrown into the state prison at Kantil, and all his adherents were severely punished. While the empire was thus undermined by intestine civil wars, the great enemy who was to crush it from without approached from the north; but this time the of Kebbi, therefore, probably ha

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 673

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

peaceable king, and undertook no expedition at all. He re A.D. 1553. Sidi 'Omir e' Sheikh, the great sided toward the end of his life a A.H. 960. ancestor of the family of El Ba long time in the cap kgy, died in the district Gidi o ital of the province of Ktirmina, where he had a palace, and kept a large establishment. Askii Didd, who is said by the Imdm e' Tekrdri, as cited by De Slane,* to have imitated the example of his father, Hij Mohammed, died after a reign of nearly thirty-four (lunar) years. El Hij, or El Hij Mohammed, then ascended the throne, being the A.D. 1582. eldest son of Dgidd, and named after his grandfather, whom he is A.II. 990. said to have equaled in the qualities of bravery and patient endurance, although he remained far behind in success, and was plunged from the beginning of his reign in civil war, which began to rage the very day of his accession to the throne, the Ferng Mohammed Bnkord preparing to oppose him; but, fortunately, the latter was induced by the Faki Mohammed, the Kddhi of Timbciktu, to give up his pretensions, in order to apply himself to study. He was then arrested and lodged in the state prison in Kantil. Then El Hddi, son of A'skfi Didd, and brother of El Hij, whom, as the A.D. 1584. most faithful, the king had intrusted with the government of Kidr safer, mina, revolted, left Tindirma, and marched against the capital, Gi A.I. 992. gho. He even succeeded in entering the town in the night before the 4th Rebi-awel, clad in a coat of mail, and preceded by a trumpet, drum, and other insignia of royal power, while the A'skifd, who at the time was very weak and sick, was seized with fear of losing his throne; but through the aid of Hiki, the governor of the powerful province of Dendi, the revolt was overcome. El HAdi was then thrown into the state prison at Kantil, and all his adherents were severely punished. While the empire was thus undermined by intestine civil wars, the great enemy who was to crush it from without approached from the north; but this time the

* This phrase, JI −.7 t has not been translated by Mr. Ralfs.

† There seems little doubt that the name KAbi is here implied, although A'hemd IBAAb himself uses the form Kebbi, and he adds that it was the name of a locality, "makfin ;" but the author had very little knowledge of these easterly regions, and probably did not know the relation of Kebbi—which he generally designates as the territory of Kanta-to Dendi, the name commonly given to thi, province ceast of the Niger.
danger passed by. Midly Hl-
med, or A'ahmed, in order to learn the real state of affairs in
Tekrdr, and especially in Songhay, whose power could not fail to attract his
attention, sent an embassy with costly presents; but the A'skia received the
messengers kindly, and sent a more valuable present in return, among other
articles 80 eunuchs. But shortly after the departure of this embassy the rumor
spread of Midly Himed having sent a large army, and this report was soon
confirmed. The Emperor of Morocco sent a very numerous host, said to be
20,000t strong, in the direction of WadAn, at that time the general caravan road,
with the order to conquer all the places along the river (the Senegal and Niger,probably, regarded together),* and thus to proceed toward Timbdktu, an order
which clearly shows the immense extent of the Songhay empire even at that time;
and the Imam e'Tekrdri§ distinctly states that, even at the time of its downfall, it
comprised a region of six months in extent. But this time also
If
d
er
A
0 De Slane, in 11 La Revue Africaine," i., p. 291. t The number may not be much
exaggerated. It was probably this example which taught Miy lfitmed that a small,
well-disciplined army was by far more useful for such a purpose than an
undisciplined host.
* Most probably the people in Morocco had a very confused idea of the relation
of the two great rivers of that region, the Senegal and Niger, with the ocean, and
both rivers are here meant when MdyliyHifmed ordered the army vi 6Jy1A ja
I
U
in
re
L
Revue Africaine, L, 291.
VOL. H. -U U
r
674
APPENDIX.
Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.
the danger pasea by, the numbers of the army themselves causing its ruin in
consequence of hunger and thirst. In order to take at least a slight revenge, the
Sultan of Morocco then sent an officer with a small troop of musketeers to take
possession of the salt mines of Teghdza, which at that time supplied the whole of
Western Negroland with that necessar? article,* and thus to deprive the
inhabitants of Songhay of it.t It was in the month of Shaw~l (September) that the
news reached Giigho that all intercourse with those
salt mines had been cut off. It was then that people went and dug salt in Tadddnni
and other
places.t
While the danger was gathering A.D. 1586. The salt mines of Teghiza shut, from
without, a new intestine A.H. 994. and those of Tabddnni opened on
war broke out, which does not appear to testify to the great courage and energy for which A’hmed Bdbi praises this A’skii.

For, in the last month of this year, the brothers of El Hdj A’skii revolted, and brought Mohammed Bdna, another of the numerous sons of Didd, with them from Kari (1,Sj?) to Gagho, and, deposing El Hij, installed the former in his place as A’skisi, on the 4th Moharrem. El Hdj, probably, notwithstanding his original brave energy and energy, was suffering from disease all the time of his reign. A.D. 1587. A.i. 995. He died (a natural death apparently) a few days after his deposition, having reigned four years and five months.

Immediately after the accession of Mohammed Bdna to the throne, a new conspiracy was formed, issuing from the state prisoners in Kantil, especially the two pretenders, El Hddi and Mohammed Benkord, and aiming at the installation of Ndhi, another son of Dsiid, the Farma of Bantal; but the rebellion was successfully suppressed, most of the conspirators killed, and Ndib, together with his brother Mifstapha, whom El Hdj had designated as his successor (Ferdngmangha), laid in chains, and imprisoned in the province of Dendi.

The Balm’a, Mohammed e’ Sddik, son of A’skig Ddild, having punished the oppressive governor of Kdbara, and vanquished his own brother Sileh, the Ferdng of Kdrmina (24 Rebi II.), and being joined by the troops of the latter, and by many other bodies of the great army of the West, the Ferdng of Bdghena, Mansa, the H6mborikoy, and others, left Kdbara on the 1st Jumdda. A’skid Mohammed Buna marched out of Gdgho on the 12th, in order to meet the rebel, but died the same day, either from the effects of wrath, or in consequence of the heat of the weather and his own corpulency. He reigned one year, four months, and eight days.

The day following the death of Mohammed Bina, the army having re-entered the town of Gdgho, I’s-hbk, another son of Ddhid, ascended the throne as A’skii. But the Pretender, having been...

* The place Taghiza seems to have had a considerable population at that time, which shows the importance of this traffic. See Caillié , ii., p. 128. t We see from this report the remarkable fact that the whole of Songhay at that time was provided from Teghiza, while we have seen from El Bekri’s account that in the eleventh century Songhay Proper was supplied from the mines of TaUtek. The words of Bfib fi A’hmed, not translated by Mr. Ralfs, can be only understood by him who has traveled in Negroland, and who knows what a precious article salt is in many regions, and what it is "to be deprived of salt." t The translation of this passage by Mr. Ralfs (p. 543) is rather defective. § Bl A’hmed is here very distinct, stating expressly, apparently in order to contradict current reports, "and they dug (began to dig) here In Taid6nni the salt at this period" ( e* ..,) U1 and they pave up (the salt minrs of] Teghdza this tine, or on this occasion). The latter words have not been translited by Mr. Ralfs at all.
Son

ghay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

raised by his troops on his way to Gdgho to the dignity of A'skid, pursued his

march, while A'skii I's-hik left his capital, when both armies met at a place called

Kamba-Kiri, evidently only four days' march from Gagho, where, after a violent

struggle which lasted the whole day, the army of the Pretender was beaten, and he

escaped toward Timbdktu. Great was the disappointment of the inhabitants of

this town. They had celebrated the accession of power of their favorite,

Mohammed e' Sidik, with the greatest manifestations of joy, and had even

imprisoned, on the 21st, at his request, the messenger who had announced the

accession of I's-hik. On the 28th, there arrived the favorite as a fugitive, who

brought them the account of the unfortunate battle, and, having plunged them into

deep sorrow, continued his flight, in company with the Humborikoy, the Barakoy,

by way of Tindirma, across the river to the other side. He was, however,

overtaken, and confined in the state prison at Kantf, where he was killed, together

with the Barakoy, as were also the Ttimbutukoy and the I'm6shaghenkoy. Of

course the inhabitants of Timbtiktu, having so openly favored the proceedings of

the Pretender, were severely punished, and a new Ttimbutukoy, Al Hasan, the last

during the Songhay period, and a new I'm6shaghenkoy were installed. A'skii I's-
h(Lk likewise installed new governors of Banku, Bal, and KiIrmina, and

confirmed others

in their provinces.

Having recovered from the severe shock inflicted upon the empire by A.D. 1588-
9.

this rebellion, A'skig I's-hik undertook an expedition against Na- A.H. 997.

manddg, evidently the place touched at by myself on my road to Timbdktu,

inhabited by pagans of the Gurma tribe, and the following year he undertook an

expedition against some other part of A.H. 998-9.

Gurma, namely, Tinfiri. Having thus had some respite, and consolidated his

empire, he planned an expedition against Kala, the province to the north of Jinni,

which, it would seem, had been subjected to the former A'skid; but when about to

undertake this expedition into the farthest parts of his empire, he heard of the

arrivalt of the Mahalla of the Bashd J6dar, a valiant eunuch of Mtiliy Htimed, the

Emperor of Morocco, with an army of 3600 musketeers, in 174 divisions of 20

each besides the officers ;§ and he met him

on the battle-field on the 18th Jumdd II., but fled before him.

J6dar remained only seventeen days in Gdgho, when the Khatfb Mahmild

behaved in a very hostile manner toward the strangers. On visiting the palace of

the A'skfi, in the presence of witnesses, he found it not equal to his expectation,

and accepted the conditions of I's-hdk, who offered to give him 1000 slaves and

100,000 mithkd of. gold, if he gave up the conquered country. The Bashd,

although he was not authorized to agree upon these conditions himself, consented

to write an account of them to his liege lord, and return meanwhile to Timbuiktu.

He therefore wrote to Mdliy Hmed, in conjunction with the Kiid A'hmed ben el

Haddsid, adding at the same time, in order to show his master that the conquered

country was not worth a great deal, that the dwelling of Sheikh el Harim (a very
(inferior personage) in Morocco excelled by far the palace of the A'skfii. But the ambitious Multy Himed, the friend of Philip II., who, in following the example of his friend the mighty prince of Europe, contemplated the conquest of new regions, was filled with wrath at the receipt of the dispatches of his officer J6dar, deposed him on the spot, and sent the Bashti Mahmd ben Zarkdib, accompanied by 80 musketeers, with instructions to under* Eighteen days' march with an army from Timb6ktu, nine days for a single horseman on flight. § The name Gurma seems to be employed here quite in a general sense. t It is remarkable that Bib& A'hmed does not intimate at all by what road the Basbt arrived. § That Judar was a eunuch, and a native of Almeria, we learn from a Spanish source, a paper written the 16th of October, 1643, by an unknown author, in 11 Papeles Curiosas," of the Egerton Collection, n. 10,262, p. ?35: "Aquel valeroso lunocon renegado natural de Almeria;" and farther on, "Eata conquista hiz6 el famoso Jaudar, que fu celebre en Berberia como uno de loe de lafama."

676 APPENDIX.

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdomn.
take the command of the army, and drive A'skid Is-hik out of Sudin.
Meanwhile J6dar having arrived at M6se- or B6se-Bango (the same creek of the great river where I was encamped for some time) on the last day of Jumdda II., remained encamped for thirty-five days, from the first Rejeb till the 6th Sh'abin, outside the town of Timbtdktu, * when, the term fixed for the return of his courier from Morocco having elapsed, he well saw that all was not right, and that his master was not content with his proceedings. He therefore entered the town with his soldiers, chose for himself the quarter of the Ghadimsfyin, between the gate leading to Kdbara and the market, as the most densely inhabited quarter, and as containing the largest houses, for the purpose of erecting there a kasbah, driving the inhabitants out of their dwellings by force. It also seems, from another passage of A'hmed Bdbi, that the Rum6 shut all the gates of the town with the exception of the gate leading to Kdibara, the consequence of which was that all the people, in order to enter the town or to go out of it, had to pass through or under the kasbah, so that the whole traffic and all the intercourse could easily be overawed by a limited garrison.

On Friday, the 26th Shawil, the new Bashi Mahmdd arrived in Timbtiku, accompanied by the two kifd's, 'Abd el 'AAf and Ham Baraka, and deposed J6dar, reproaching him bitterly for not having pursued the King Is-hik; but J6dar excused himself by pleading that he had no boats at his disposition. The first thing therefore which the Bashi Mohmild had to do was to procure boats, the inspector of the harbor having fled with the whole fleet in the direction of Banku or Bengu. It was on this occasion that all the trees in the town were cut down.

On the 20th Dhii '1 Kida, the Bashi Mahmdld left Timbdktu with the whole of his army, taking the ex-bashi J6dar with him, and installing in the government of the town the KAid El Mustapha and the Emir Ham from Wddi
Dar'a. Having kept the great festival near the town in a place called Sihank (?), he marched against I'shik, who approached with his army to make a last struggle for his kingdom and the independence of his country. But although the A'skfa seems to have been not totally devoid of energy, he could not contend against that terrible weapon which spread devastation from a great distance, for the Songhay do not seem to have possessed a single musket; and it is not impossible that the Moroccans had some small field-pieces, t while the Songhay did not even know A.D. 1591. how to use the one small cannon which the Portuguese had once A.D. 860. made them a present of, and which the Bashi afterward found in Gigho. The consequence was that in the battle which ensued, on Monday the 25th Dhd-el Hijje, I's-hik and the Songhay were beaten, and the king fled on the road to Dendi, making a short stay in Kira-Kurma, and leaving behind him some officers, whom he ordered to make a stand in certain stations, especially the Balm'a Mohammed Kdgho, who had been wounded by a ball, and the Barakoy Buttu. To the latter he gave orders at the same time to make forays against the Fulldn, a fact of the highest importance, and which, combined with another fact, which I shall soon bring forward, shows how this remarkable tribe, which we have seen stirring in these regions al-

t This is not certain, although farther on Alhmed Bfibd mentions tjj, which Mr. Italfa translates (p. 554) by "Gechiitz ;" but the common musket being called J by the Arabs in and t

near Timb6ktu, It Is not quite certain whether the author means field-pieces or matchlocks.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 677

Soughay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

ready several years previously, as soon as they saw the established government endangered, broke out in order to make use of circumstances for establishing themselves firmly in the country.

A'skii I's-hdk wanted the Barakoy to imprison the royal princes who were in his company at the time, in order to prevent their joining the enemy, but they escaped; and he also endeavored in vain to cause a diversion in his rear by raising a revolt in Timbdiktu, but his messenger was killed. The Basli Mahmild ben Zarkilb pursued the king, and did not halt till he reached Kdkii, having with him, according to A'hmmed BAbM, 174 divisions of musketeers, each of twenty men," so that, if the ranks were all filled, he had 3480 men, or, including the officers, about 3600; and these being all armed with matchlocks, there was certainly no army in Negroland able to resist them.t Seeing that a numerous undisciplined army against a well-disciplined and. compact band, armed with such a destructive weapon, was only a burden, the Songhay king seems to have thought that a band of choice men, even if small in numbers, was preferable, and he therefore sent Hiki Serkia, an officer of acknowledged bravery, with a body of
1200 of the best horsemen of his army, who had never fled before an enemy, to attack the BashU. But the fate of Songhay was decided, treachery and disunion still further impaired the power which, even if well kept together, would still have had great difficulty in resisting such an enemy. When therefore that very body of cavalry rendered homage to the Balm'a Mohammed Kigho, in A.D. 1591, the tribe of the Erhmena becomes the beginning of the last year of 1592. powerful in the west.

The tenth century of the Hejra, A.H. 1000. The Zoghardn or Jawimbe conand made him A'skid, I's-hdk, seeing that all was lost (from Soughay country.

Dendi, where he staid at the time?), took the direction of Kebbi. He was, however, obliged to retrace his steps, as the Kanta, the ruler of that kingdom, which at that period was still enjoying very great power, afraid probably of drawing upon himself the revenge of the dreaded foreign foe, who with the thunder of his musketry was disturbing the repose of Negroland, or moved by that ancient hatred which since the expedition to A'gades existed between the Songhay and the inhabitants of Kebbi, refused him admission into his dominions. I's-hik therefore recrossed the river, and went to T4ra,§ where his last friends took leave of him. Even the inhabitants of this very place, who have preserved their independence till the present day, were not able, or were not inclined to to defend their liege lord. "There they separated and bade each other farewell. The king wept, and they (the courtiers) wept, and it was the last time that they saw each other." There was certainly a strong reason for weeping over the fate of Songhay. That splendid empire, which a few years back had extended from the the middle of Hsusa as far as the ocean, and from M6si as far as Tawdt, was gone, its king an exile and fugitive from his native land.

* In order to make out the whole numbers of the army of the Bashd, we must add the garrison of Timbdktu, which could certainly not be less than a couple of hundred men. t It would be highly absurd to conclude, from what A'hemd Bjiibi says of the strength of this army, that its numbers made it so, for in numbers it was certainly a very small army for Negroland, where armies of from 30,000 to 50,000 men are of common occurrence, and the Imdm e' Tekruri says that the Songhay king had an army of 140,000 men. Revue Africain", 1. c.

t Bb, A'hemd writes this name exactly as it is pronounced, ...while the name KAbi is never used, but must have been formerly used, as is evident from the form Kxbiwa. See page 146.

0 i’ (p. 558), not Tara. There is no doubt that the well-known Songhay town of that name (vol. iiL, Ap. V.) is meant.

APPENDIX.

678 Neighboring Kingdoms.

Songbay. deserted by his friends and nearest relations, had 'to seek refuge with his very enemies. Driven back from the Mohammedans in Kebbi, he now turned toward the pagans of Gurma and those very inhabitants of Tinfiri upon whom he had
made war two years before; and indeed the pagans were more merciful than the Mohammedans, and forgot their recent wrong sooner than the latter their old one; but probably the ex-king excited their fear, and after having resided there some time he was slain, together with his son and all his followers, in the month of Jumda the second.

Meanwhile there seemed to be still a slight prospect for the pretender Mohammed Kdgho to save at least part of the empire, as all that remained of wealth and authority in Songhay gathered round him to do him homage; but even now the ancient family discord prevailed, and while he strengthened himself by some of his brothers, whom he liberated from prison, especially Ndh, the former governor of Bantal, others among his brothers, sons of Didd, fled to the enemy, and, being well received, dragged after them a great many of the most influential men of the army. After this Mohammed Kdgho was induced by treachery to throw himself upon the mercy of the Bashd, from whom he received the assurance that he had nothing to fear; but he was laid in chains, and soon after executed.

The Bash Mahmdd, although he evidently governed the country with a strong hand, nevertheless, in the beginning at least, thought it more prudent to keep up a certain national form, and conferred the dignity of A'skiti upon the Barakoy Bultu; but the latter soon found it better to provide for his own safety by a speedy flight, and the BashCL then gave the hollow title of A'skfi to Slimdn ben A'skili Ddidd, who had been the first to put himself under his protection. The Bashd then went to pursue Nh, formerly Governor of Bantal, who, having been liberated from his prison by Mohammed Klgho, returned to Dendi, that outlying and important province of Songhay, as soon as he saw his protector fail, and declared himself A'skid in Dendi; but even beyond the Niger he seemed not to be safe; such was the remarkable vigor of this small Moroccan army and the energy of its leader, under the auspices of that aspiring genius Mily Hdmed. On the frontier of Dendi the Moroccan musketeers, within hearing of the subjects of Kanta, fought a battle with this last germ of Songhay independence, and vanquished A'skfd Ndh even there; and the BashO pursued the fugitive prince without relaxation from place to place for full two years, fighting repeated battles with him. Nay, he even built a fortress or kasbah in Kalna (?*), and placed there a garrison of 200 musketeers under the Kid 'Omir, as if he intended to hold possession forever of this distant province for his master in Morocco. This is a highly interesting fact. But a small spark of native independence nevertheless remained behind in this province, from whence the Moroccains, after the first energetic impulse was gone, were forced to fall back.

While the Bashd himself was thus waging relentless war against the nucleus and eastern part of the Songhay empire, the conquest and destruction of national independence was going on no less in the west. The great centre of national feeling and of independent spirit in that quarter was Timbufktu, a town almost enjoying the rank of a second capital, on account of the greater amount of Mohammedan learning therein concentrated. It was on account of
According to the writer whose interesting account Macguckin de Slane has published in the "Revue Africaine," i., n. 4, p. 296, the authority of Mansfir extended as far as Kan6; nay, even the ruler of B6rn is said to have made his subjection; but the latter assertion is very improbable, the then ruler of Ilrn being none else than the warlike and energetic Edris A'law6ma. It is remarkable, however, that that author mentions Kan6 without saying any thing about Kebbi, which was the neighboring kingdom, intervening between Songhay and Kand, and at that time very powerful.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 679
Soughay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

this feeling of independence, probably, that the inhabitants would not bear the encroachments of the Kifd el Milstapha upon their liberty, especially as he wanted to fill from his own choice, after the death of Ytíia, the place of the Timbutu- koy, or Timbutu-mangha, as he ig here called, the office of the native governor. Thus a bloody tumult arose in the town, when the Tirki chief Ausamba came to the assistance of the distressed Kiiid, probably from motives of plunder, and thus the whole town was consumed by flames, it being a dreadful day for the inhabitants. Nay, the enraged Ktid, who had now got the upper hand, wanted to slaughter them all; but the K gid Miimi succeeded in re-establishing peace between the inhabitants and El Mdstatapha, and quiet and comfort began to return, so that even those who had emigrated again returned to their native homes. Even the inspector of the harbor, who had retired to the province of Banku or Bengu, came back with the fleet. The communication therefore with Jinni and the region on the upper course of the river was re-opened.

Having then made a successful expedition against the Zoghorin, who devastated the districts of Bara and Dirma, and inflicted upon them a most severe punishment, the Kgifd Md1mi went himself to Jinni, which had suffered a great The Bimbara appear as a conquerdeal from the devastating incur- sions of the pagan Bgmbara, and took up his residence for a time in the palace of the Jinnikoy. Having then installed 'Abd-Allah ben 'Othmin as Governor of Jinni, and arranged matters in that distant place, he returned to Timbdktu. Samba Limido ("Imido" means "governor"), evidently a Thillo, in Danka or Deng, devastated many of the places on the Ris el md, and committed great havoc and bloodshed. Thus the Moroccains had conquered almost the whole of this extensive empire, from Dendi as far as and even beyond Jinni, for they even took possession of part of Bdghena, and conquered the whole province of H6mbori, or, as it is called, from its rocky character, T6ndi or El Hajri, to the south of the river. Nay, they even conquered part of Tombo, the strong native kingdom inclosed between H6mbori, M6si, Jinni, and Jimballa. They had their chief garrisons in Jinni, Timbdktu, Bimba, which on this account received the name Kasbah, in Gigho, and Kalna in Dendi, and their chief strength consisted in intermarrying with the natives, and thus producing a distinct class of people, who, as Erm.6 or Rum6, are
distinguished to this very day, while the peculiar dialect of Songhay, which they speak, has been produced lately as a distinct language by M. Raffenel.* But these half-castes soon found all their interest in their new abode, and cared very little for Morocco, so that the advantage which the latter country drew from this conquest was only of a very transitory character. Certainly, there was some sort of order established, but there was no new organization, as it seems, the old forms being preserved, and soon becoming effete. On the whole, we can not but admire the correctness of the following passage of Bdbg A'hmed, who says, "Thus this MahaUa at that period found in Suddn (Songhay) one of those countries of the earth which are most favored with comfort, plenty, peace, and prosperity every where; such was the working of the government of the Emir el Mtimenin, A'skfd el Hij Mohammed ben A'bti Bakr, in consequence of his justice and the power of his royal command, which took full and peremptory effect, not only in his capital, but in all the districts of his whole empire, from the province of Dendi to the frontiers of Morocco, and from the territory of Bennendtigu (to the south of Jinni) as far as Teghdza and Tawit. But in a moment all was

0 See p. 29'.

APPENDIX.

Songhay. Neighboring Kingdoms.

changed, and peaceful repose was succeeded by a constant state of fear, comfort and security by trouble and suffering; ruin and misfortune took the place of prosperity, and people began every where to fight against each other, and property became exposed to constant danger; and this ruin began, spread, increased, and at length prevailed throughout the whole region."

Thus wrote old Biibi A'hmed, who had himself lost every thing in h6me begin to become power consequence of that paramount calamity which had befallen his native land, and who had been carried a prisoner to the country of the conqueror, till, owing to the unbounded respect which the enemy himself felt for the learning and sanctity of the prisoner, he was released, and allowed to return to Songhay, where he seems to have finished his days by endeavoring to console himself for the loss of all that was dear to him with science, and in writing the history of his unfortunate native country.

Mdliy Hdmel Mansdr, the conqueror of Songhay, died. A.D. 160

Z&ddn his youngest son, is proclaimed sultan, but has to sustain a long struggle against his brothers 'Abd-Allah and Sheikh, and after an unfortunate battle on the 8th December, is driven beyond the limits of Morocco, when Sheikh is recognized for a limited period. All these changes could not fail to exercise an immediate influence upon the government of Songhay, which had now become a province of Morocco.*

Mdldiy Zgdn died. A.D. 1630.

Mdlfy 'Abd el Melek succeeds him: is assassinated.
The History of
by A'hmed B Great inundatio
consequence taned by the
A.D. 1637. The French make a settlement on A.H. 1048. the Senegal.
Songhay composed A.D. 1640. The Tademkket are driven out of CU.
A.H. 1050. their former seats and deprived
in in Timbiktu, in of their supremacy by the Aweof the high level at-
limmid or A'welimmiden (the
river. Lamta), who formerly had been
settled in Igfdi with the Welbd
Deldm, with whom they were allied. Kariddnne, the son of Shw-sh and of a wife
from the tribe of the Tademekket, murdered the chief of the latter tribe, and drove
them out of A'der-r, when they went westward and implored the protection of the
Bashi, who assigned them new seats round about the backwaters between
Timbdktu and Gdindam.
Mdly A'hmed Sheikh succeeds to A.D. 1647.
Mdly Wdlid, but is soon after A.H. 1057.
killed in a revolt.
Kr6m el Hdji usurps the throne: is A.D. 1654-5.
soon after assassinated. A.H. 1065.
Mdly Mohammed, son of Mdly A.D. 1664.
'Ali, the founder of the Fiili dy
A.H. 1075-8.
nasty, dethroned by his brother E, Rashid: E' Rashid takes possession of the town
of Morocco.
4I had no time to excerpt this latter part of BbA A'hemd's history, but It is full of
information with regard to this turbulent period.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF SONGHAY. 681
Songhay.
Sidi 'All, Governor of Stis, takes
refuge in Songhay* a proof that the garrison stationed there had made themselves
quite independent of Morocco at that time, notwithstanding the energetic rule of
E' Rashid, who died
. Neighboring Kingdoms. A.D. 1667. About this time the Welhd Bille, A.H.
1078- in Tishit, possessed great power.
1079.
A.D. 1672. A.H. 1083.
Mdledy Ism'afl succeeds him, but A.D. 1672. Henndn, the son of B6hedal, chief
without being able to establish A.H. 1083. of the Welid Mebdrek, received his
power over all parts of the the investiture as ruler of Bdempire. It is
very remarkable ghena from Ism-'ail.
that this king formed a standing army of Negroes, especially Songhay, whom he married to Moroccan women, in order to rule his own subjects, just in the same manner as a body of Moroccan soldiers intermarrying with Negro women dominated Songhay.
These were the "'abid mt'a Sidi Bokhcir." t
Miiliy A'hmed, the nephew of Miiliy Ahra. About this time S6ba, the mighty
16y Ism('afl, Governor of Dara A.H. 1091. king of G6ber, residing in M4and
Sil, undertook an expedi-
tion into S6nn, with a large makes warlike expeditions bebody of
troops, and although he lost 1500 men in crossing the desert, brought back a rich spoil
in gold and slaves, principally from a place called Tagaret, which it is not easy to identify, especially as it is said that he found there a king of S6dn. It is probably a place in Taganet, most likely Tejfgja. There is no mention of a garrison dependent upon Morocco.
In this same year Timbulktu is said to have been conquered by the
Mandingoes (Bdmbara?). March 22,
Mdlly A'hmed el Dhdhebi succeeds to the aged Ismafl. Although his reign lasted only two years, and he was constantly engaged in A.H. 1140-1.
civil war, he is said to have made an expedition into S6nn, from whence he brought back great treasures. § But this is evidently a confused statement, and probably refers to the deeds of his elder namesake, Mldhly A'hmed el Dhdhebi.
Mdlly 'Abd-Alla succeeds to the A.D. 1727.
throne. Constant civil war in A.H. 1142-3.
the beginning of his reign.
A.D. 1740. About this time the Kl-owi take
A.H. 1153. possession of A'ir or A'iben. Sidi Mohammed built Swira or A.D.
1757. Babdiri, powerful king in G6ber.
A.D. 1770. 'Abd el Ktider produces a religious A.H. 1184. revolution in Fita,
combined perhaps with a reaction of the
Wolof against the conquerors. §
or rather of the race of the Tor6de-the Wolof intermixed with
About this time G6g6, which had the Fdlbe-against the element
hitherto been ruled by the Rumin, M6linke and Psflo. Sittigi
*Here again Jackson (Account of Morocco, p. 295) has made a most erroneous statement, saying that Sidi 'Ali escaped into S6ddn, where the King of Bmbara received him hospitably, so that 'Ali was enabled to collect 8000 black warriors, with whom he miirthed against Morocco; and that these blacks were the means by which Isma'all obtained influence in Timbiftktu. t There is great confusion in an article concerning this subject in a letter addressed by Jackson to Sir James Bankes, in the Proceedings of the African Association, vol I., p. 868. Here the annual tribute which Timbifttu paid to this king is estimated at 5,000,000 dollars. The same sort of exaggeration we find in all Jackson's slatements. t Even the very

682
APPENDIX.
Songhay.
was conquered by the Taw-rek tribe of the Awelimmiden.
Probably in consequence of this event A’gades, having been deprived of its commercial resources, begins to decline.
The chief K–wa, who rules seventy A.D. 1780.
years over the Awelimmiden, A.H. 1195.
establishes a powerful dominion on the north bank of the Niger (A’usa).
Timbuktu, according to the very A.D. 1787.
doubtful statement of Shabfni,* A.H. 1202 under the supremacy of H–tisa.
1203.
If this were true, it would be a very important fact; but it is evidently a mistake, A’usa being meant.
Timbuktu, under the sovereignty A.D. 1803 of Mansong, at that time King 1804.
of Bimbara [very questionable].t A.r. 1218.
Professor Ritter$ supposes the Moors to have been ejected at that time, so that Timbuktu became an independent Negro town.
A.D. 1804.
A.H. 1219.
Mungo Park navigates the Niger. A.D. 1805-6.
A.H. 1220-1.
Mohammed or A’hmed Lebbo brings the religious banner from Gando, and gradually acquires the supremacy in Mdsina over the native chiefs.
Lebbo commences hostilities with Mohammed Galijo, the chief of Kondri, vanquishes him, and forces him to retreat eastward.
A.D. 1811. A.H. 1226.
Neighboring Kingdoms.
Sambalimu, the last of the S61tana Deniank6be. The order of the succession is as follows:
Chdro Solimin Bal,
Almdme ‘Abdu,
Almimie Mukht-r, Almdme Bd-bakr,
Almine Shiray, Almimne Ysuf, Almdme Birtin, 
Almdme Hammed, 
Almdme Makhmildo, 
Almgme Mohammed el Amin, 
son of Mohammed Biran. Venture collects his information 
from two Moroccain merchants.

Tombo very powerful. Marka, the Aswinek, in Bighena. Kawdr, the Ftilbe, in Mdsina.

About this period falls the quarrel 
between the Sheikh el Mukhtgr el kebfr and the Weldd Bille, the former 
overthrowing the latter, with the assistance of the Mdshediff and the A'hel 
Zendghi.

El Mukhtgr opens friendship with 
'Othmgn dan F6die, the Jihidi, who this year entered into open hostility against 
Bawa, the King of G6ber, and brought about that immense revolution in the whole 
centre of Negroland.

About this period a great struggle 
between the Awelimmiden and 
the Tademdkket.

The Filbe make Gando, in Kebbi, 
the seat of their operations.

The Ruing, still powerful between 
Sebi and Timbtku, dominate 
the passage of the Niger. Sidi Mukhtgr dies. 

A.D. 1816. Great and sanguinary battle beA.H. 1232- between the Songhay, Rums, and 
1233. Berabfsh on the one side, and 
the Awelimmiden on the other, 
near the island Kdrkozay.

A.D. 1817. Sheikh 'Othmnu dan F6die before A.H. 1233. his death divides his extensive 
dominions between his brother 'Abd-Allihi and his son Bello, the former 
receiving all the western provinces along the Niger, with Gando as his capital, the latter the southeasterly provinces, with S6koto.

* Shabini, p. 12. 

The Fdilbe of Mdsina occupy Timbdktu in the beginning of the year. A.D. 1826. 
Major Laing left 'En-Silah on the 10th of January; was attacked, A.H. 1242-3.
and almost slain, in Wadi Ahennet, on the 27th (?), by a party of Tawgrek; was
received very kindly by Sidi Mohammed, the son of Sidi Mukhtir, in the hillet e'
Sheikh Sidi Mukhir, in A'zawfid.
Sidi Mohammed died in consequence of a contagious fever. Laing left this place
about August 12th; arrived at Timbdktu August 18th; being ordered out of the
town by the Fdlbe, he left that place on September 22d, under the protection of
A'hmmed Weled 'Abdda,
and was murdered by hh and Hgmed Weled Habib, probably
on the 24th.
The Sheikh el Mukhtdr, the son A.D. 1827. 'Abd-Allihi, the ruler of Gando,
and successor of Sidi Moham- A.1. 1243. dies. Is succeeded by his son
med settles in Timbdktu. Mohammed Wdni.
Caillid stays in Timbdktu from the A.D. 1828.
20th April till the 3d May. A.H. 1244. The Fdlbe enter Timbdktu with a A.D.
1831.
stronger force. A.H. 1247.
The Tawgrek conquer the F6lbe. The Fdlbe, under 'Abd-Allihi,
make a great expedition along
the Niger as far as Burrum.
Lebbo dies. His son A'hemedu
succeeds him.
Sheikh el Mukhtdr dies in the month Rebi el 6wel; El Bakgy succeeds him.
The young A'hemedu succeeds his
father A'hemedu.
The Fdlbe make a great expedition against Timbdktu.
Klallu succeeds to the empire or
Gando.
A.D. 1851. The Kel-gerds kill E'Ndbeqha, the A.H. 1268- chief of the
Awelimmeden, at
the A.H. 1272-3. Awelimmeden.
APPENDIX X.
COLLECTION OF ITINERARIES ILLUSTRATING TIE WESTERN HALF OF
THE DESERT, ITS DISTRICTS, AND ITS INHABITANTS, AND THE
COURSE OF THE UPPER NIGER.
A. Eastern Route from Tawdt to A'abrizc, and thence to Timbziktu.
N.B.-The route proceeds from Atilef in Tidikelt, which is situated one short day
from A'kabli (this is the right accent), and three days from I'nsala or 'Ain Silah,
the distance between A'kabli and the latter place being about the same. Day.
2d. Terfshumin, a well.
4th. Derim.
7th. I'znfze, a well. As far as this point the route follows a course a little E. of S.
evidently in the direction of G6g6), but from this point onward S.W.
The syllable "'i'n," or "'in," seems to be the old Berber-Semitic form
for "ain."
14th. I'n-denin, a well, having crossed the desert tract called Tanezrdifet. 17th. I'n-
tabtrak; the last stage is only half a day's march. 19th. Mioila.
22d. Taunant; the last stage is half a day's march. 24th. Mabrtik.
The ordinary and general road from Mabrtik to Timbdktu leads by A'arwdn:

684
APPENDIX.
2 days. M'amdn.
2 " Bd-Jebehia. I shall speak about these places in the general account of
2 " A'rawin. j A'zawd.
4 " Tenig el haye, or Tendg el h-j. 1+ " Timbtiktu.
Between Tenig el hij and the town there are the following localities: El A'riye, El
Ghiba, El Merdra, A'thelet el Megl, E'llib el A'ghebe, Tiyire el Jefdl, Tiygret el
Wisa.
Route from the hillet e' Sheikh el Mukhtir, generally called "el hilheh" (see the
itinerary from Timbdiktu to the hilleh, vol. iii., p. 310), to T6saye, in long days'
marches; direction, as my informant supposes, exactly S.: Day.
1st. Niir, a mountain without water. 2d. A locality on this side of a place called
Dergel. 3d. Kazdf, a large pond of water in the rainy season. 5th. T6saye or Tdsd,
the great narrowing of the river (see the journal).
From the hilleh to G6gd is reckoned a distance of eight days.
B. Route from I'nzize to G6gd.
Day.
4th. Tfmmsau (has Mdsa? I think it can not be the well of that name on the
direct road from Tawit to Mabrdk, which would give this whole route a far more
westerly direction). Near the well is a rocky eminence like a castle, and famous on
account Qf the tale of the footprint of Moses' horse, a story also attaching to the
other well which I mentioned. It appears, from this route, that the arid desert, the
Tanezrtifet, becomes narrower and more contracted toward the east.
7th. I'n-azfil; the last march but half a day. 9th.Sdk or "E' Sdk" (Esstik), the
ancient dwelling-place of the Kel e' Slik, now without settled inhabitants, situated
between two "k6dia" or hilly eminences, one lying toward the E. and the other
toward the W., just as the ancient city of Tademdkka is described, with which it
was evidently identical (see the journal). The town was destroyed by the Songhay
conqueror, Sonni 'Ali, in the latter half of the fifteenth century. The vale is said to
be rich in trees.
11th. Gtinhan, another site of an ancient
dwelling-place, and once the residence of
the Kel-gdnhan, with a hilly eminence. 13th. Takerdnnat, another site.
14th. Tel-6,kkevfn (or Tin-(Lkkevin), a well. 16th. Tin-6ker; the last stage half a
day's march. 18th. G6g6 or Ggho, the last day again a short one.
C. Western Road from Allef to MXabrdc.
1st. Dhbhar el hamir, a hilly chain called the ass's back-bone.
3d. El Immerdghen.
5th. Wallen, a well.
12th. A'm-rannin, a well, two days W. from I'n-denin, having crossed the arid
desert Tanezrifet. In summer you travel here by night. In winter, traveling night and day, with only short halts, you may accomplish this march in four days.

17th. In-asserdr, perhaps "the well of the stony tract," or hammida, "serir" being the proper term for such a region.

20th. Tin-hekikan, a well, in former times the common settlement of the tribe, which thence has received the name Kel-hekfkan. It is W. or S.W. of the well called Taunant (see preceding page). 22d. Mabrdk; the last day's march a short one.

D. A few particulars with regard to the region called A'zawdd and the adjoining districts.

The name A'zawid is a corruption due to the Arabs of the Berber name Azawgh (pronounced A'zaw(Lr), which is common to many desert tracts. But the district which has become known to the Europeans under the name A'zawdd comprises an extensive tract of country to the N. of Timbilktu, stretching northwestward as far

DISTRICT OF A'ZAWA'D. 685

as "El Jtff," the great sink or "belly" of the desert, full of rock-salt, and to the N.N.E. a little to the N. of Mabrdik, while its southern part, extending from the distance of one day's march from Timbtdktu to about three days northward, is more properly called Tagdnet. I will only add that Caillid mistook the name A'zagvdd, which he writes Zaw6it, for that of a tribe (vol. ii., p. 97, and elsewhere).

The tract of A'zaw6d, although appearing to us a most sterile tract of country, and thus characterized already by Arab travelers from the N., as E'bn Battita and Leo Africanus, is a sort of Paradise to the wandering Moorish Arab born in these climes. For in the more favored localities of this district he finds plenty of food for his camels, and even for a few heads of cattle, while the transport of the salt of Ta6ddnni to A'rawiin and Timbdltku affords him the means of obtaining corn and anything else he may be in want of. There are four small towns in A'zawgd, the most considerable of which is A'rawin, a town small in extent, such as described by Cailli6,* the number of its inhabitants scarcely exceeding 1500, but a very important place for this part of the world, and where a great deal of business is transacted, principally in gold, as I have described on a former occasion (p. 360, et seq.). On account of this trade several Ghaddmiye merchants are established here. It is a fact which was unknown before, but which is indisputable, that the original inhabitants of this place, as well as of the whole of A'zawid, belong to the Songhay nation, the Songhay-kini, even at the present day, being the favored idiom of which all the inhabitants, including the Arab residents, make use. The present chief or head man of the town is Sidi Mohammed, a younger son of the notorious chief El Habib Weled Sidi A'hmed Agside, who died the year previous to my arrival in Timbtiktu. The younger son gained the precedence over his elder brother O'ba, who has performed a pilgrimage to Mecca solely on account of his mother being the sister of Hfimed Weled 'Abdda Weled Rehil, the chief of the Bdrabish, and the murderer of Major Laing. The family of El Habib belongs to the
I'gelid, forming at present a small section of the large group of the A'welimmiden. They are now only distinguished by their learning, but formerly they were very powerful, and, together with the Imedidderen, were the most ancient inhabitants of the locality of Timbuktu. The inhabitants of A'rawgn pay an annual tribute of sixty mithkdl of gold to the Hogir, in order not to be molested by their continual predatory incursions.

The three other small towns or permanent dwelling-places in A'zawid, viz., B&tiJebdha, Mamtin, and Mabrilk, all lying in a line N.N.E. from A'rawdn, almost at the equal distance from each other of two days' easy traveling with camels, are much smaller and less considerable than A'rawdn. Of rather more importance at present than the two others is Bti-Jebdha, which is principally inhabited by Kel e’ Stik, and has a little commerce; but Mabriik seems to have been of great importance in former times, when it was inhabited by Soughay people, had a Songhay name-Mabrtik being a comparatively modern name given to it by the Arabs-and was the market of Wal-ta. In some respects this place might seem to have a right to be identified with the ancient Aaidaghost; and there are certainly the sites of some former dwelling-places in the neighborhood, especially Tel-Arist, two days N.E. either from Mabrik or from the hilleh; but in another place I have explained (vol. iii., p. 658) why we have to seek the site of Aaidaghost in quite a different locality. There are some valleys clad with palm-trees to the east of Mabrtik (see vol. i., Appendix, p. 607), especially the valley called Tesilite, which produces two different kinds of dates, viz., the tissagin and the tin-fiser. The names of the respective chiefs of the three places are Mohammed Weled Sidi ’Omir, the chief of the tribe of the Ergigeda in M'amln; Najib Weled el Mdistapha el Kdl e’ Sdiki (the same who signed the letter of A’wgb, the chief of the Tadem dkket, giving a complete imina to the English in the territory comprised between Glindam, Bamba, Timbdktu, A'rawgn, and Bdi-Jebdha), together with 'Azizi in Bil-Jebdha, and Mdní Weled Sidi ‘Omrir in Mbrdk.t

There was formerly in A’zawgd another place with a permanent settlement, called "El Hilleh," or "Hillet e’ Sheikh Sidi Mukhtir," which I have mentioned in a former place (vol. i., p. 602, and vol. iii., p. 310), two days east of M'amín.; and * Cailli's Travels to Timbuctoo, vol. ii., p. 99, et seg. According to my information, A'rawfin seems to lie from Timbktu about 150 W. from N.

* No merchant from the north can pass B3-Jebha, and certainly not A'rawan, unless he be escorted by some well-known person belonging to the tribe of the Tadem.kket.

† The position which I have assigned to these places in the map which I sent home froih Timbtktu is slightly erroneous.
batn, is a locality called "El Midher," with good pasturage for horses. Other well-known localities thereabout are Shirshe el Kebira and Shirshe e' Seghira.

Of the wells of A'zaw~d, the following are the most notorious: first, in the southern part of the district, toward Taggnet, Mamin, different from the place of the same name; E'nneffs, a copious well, two hours S.W. from iWamin, and situated in a hilly district, thickly clad with underwood, and containing quarries of a beautiful black limestone, from which the Tawirek manufacture their heavy arm-rings or ishebe; Merdta, Makhmdd, Shiker, Gir, Kart-l, a very copious well, 'En-filfil, and others. Farther to the N. and N.W. are the wells Hall, El H6de, Shebi, Temand6rit, Tdkar6it, Anishay, A'short, a well where the Sheikh A'hmmed el Bak-y, in the early part of his life, resided for a long time, A'nnazau, to the north of Mabrdik; Alib~da ('Alf Bb?), d el Mehine or Bel Meh~in, the well mentioned in the itinerary (vol. iii., p. 310) as distant about ten miles from the hilleh, Belb6t, S. of Bel Mehin; Trakshfwen; Merzihe, S. of the latter; Megdgelit, two days S. of the hilleh, and others.

The most famous wells in the district called Tag~net are Wdn-alshin, situated at the distance of four days from Timbdiktu and three from the hilleh, where Mohammed e' Seghir, El Bakiy's older brother, usually encamps part of the year; Tin-tatis, half a day S.W. from the former; 'En-6shif, I'mmildsh, 'En-gibe, En-sdek, 'Enoddke, a well where Bdbd, a younger brother of El Baky, has his encampment, three days south from M'amdn, four days N.E. from Timbdktu; A'mensh6r, A'rrazaf, 'Arilk, El Makhmdd, different from the well of the same name mentioned above; I'girre, Mdrizk, Twil, Waruzfl.

Toward the north, the district of A'zawid is separated from the dreary and waterless desert known by the general Berber name of Tanezrdlfet (meaning "arid hammida") by the two small districts called "Afeidle" (meaning the little desert, or "afelle"), and north of it A'hrdr. Afeldle is a highly favored region for the breeding of camels, and contains some famous valleys, or "wdign," such as Tekhatimit or Teshatimit, Afdd-6nak6n or Afdd-n-akin, Tadulilit, 'Abat6l, Shdnisin, Ag-r, and others. A'herdr, likewise, is considered by the Arabs as a fine country, diversified by hill and dale, with plenty of wells, and even temporary torrents. This is the district in one of the valleys of which, "Widi A'herdr," Major Laing was attacked and almost killed by the Taw~rek.

Toward the east, the districts of A'zawad and Taginet are limited by several smaller ones, where the Arab population is greatly mixed with the Berber or Tawdrek element, especially the Ifoghas. At the same time these districts separate A'zawi.d from A'derdr, the fine hilly country of the Awelimmiden, which is excellent not only for the breed of camels, but also for that of cattle. These intermediate districts are Ir-eggeldla, a district of about two days' extent in every direction, consisting of black soil, and furnished with shallow wells; E. and E.N.E. of Tag6net is Tilirsi, a district rich in food for the camel; E.N.E. of the hillel e' Sheikh el Mukht~r is another district called Tiritrdn, with many wells and a few villages; and E.N.E. of the latter, the district called Tirdsht, or Tighisht, bordering on A'derir.
Of Arab tribes in A'zawdd and the adjoining districts I have first to mention several sections of the great tribe of the Kunta, who are distinguished by their purer blood and by their learning above almost all the tribes of the desert. The Kunta are divided into the following sections: The Ergdgeda, who were formerly regarded as the Welaye, or the holy tribe. The Welid el W6ifi, at present the Welaye, with the Sheikh A'hmed el Bakiy as Weli, while his elder brother, Sidi Mohammed, exercises great authority over the whole of A'zawdd. The Weird el W6ifi cultivate the friendship of the Hogdr, while the Welid Sidi Mukhtför are the deadly enemies of the latter. They are subdivided into three divisions, called El Mesidhefa, Wehid ben Haiballa, and Welid ben 'Abd e' Rahmin.

The Weldd Sidi Mukhtför.
El Hemml.
The Togdt also are said to belong to the Kunta.

THE BERABI'SH.-ROUTE FROM BO'NE TO HAMDA-ALLA'HI. 687
The Berabish (singl. Berbdlishi), a tribe less numerous than the Kunta, mustering about 260 men armed with muskets, and 180 horsemen, and not spreading over so wide a tract, being concentrated in the district between A'rawin and Bit-Jcbdha. They pay a tribute of 40 mithkll of gold to the Hogdr, and are molested by continual incursions of the Weld 'Alish. The Berabish, who probably are identical with the Perorsi of the ancient geographers, have migrated southward since that time, and are of very mixed blood. They lived formerly in El H6dh, and are mentioned by Marmol Carvajal, who wrote in the seventeenth century, as visiting the market of Sdog; in the beginning of the sixteenth century they lived still farther to the west, and visited especially the market of Jinni.* The Berabish are divided into two groups, the principal of which is ruled by the chief Himed Weled 'Abdda Weled Rehdh, and consists of the following sections: The Welad Simgn, the Shidkh, that is to say, the tribe to whom the sheikh belongs, and who have based their power and wealth upon the ruin and spoil of the Welid Gh(inem. The Welid'Esh. The Welid Bd-Hinde. El Gwanin el kohol. El Gwanfn el bddh. Welid A'hmed.

These are the free tribes of this group; the following are the degraded and servile tribes, the "lahme" or "khodden-n:: the Yad(s, the L6dim, or rather only a small portion of that tribe, the A'arakdn, the A'hel 'Aisa Tajiwa, El U'ssera.

The second group of the Berabish as a whole, bears the remarkable name of "Botn el jemel," on account of its being composed of heterogeneous elements, brought together by chance, just as is the case with various kinds of food in the "stomach of the camel." It is ruled by a chief of the name of Hamma, and consists of the following tribes: Weird ReIdn; Weld Deris, originating from Tafildlet; Wehdid Bd-Khasfb; Welad Ghdnem; and the Turmus, the latter being the tribe of which I have spoken on a former occasion.

E. Route from Bdne or from Hdmbori, by way of Konna, to Hamda-Alldh.
Dalla, the chief place of the province of the same name, is of considerable size, and the residence of a governor. M6di B61e, who was a man of some note, died a short time before the period of my journey. The place is mostly inhabited by
Tombo, only a small portion of the inhabitants being Songhay. The mountains are inhabited by the Sdna, probably a section of the Tombo who have still preserved their independence. The town of Dalla is two good days' journey from H6mbori, and one from B6ne.

1 day. Dwentsa, a considerable place, said to be as large as Kdikawa, and important as a market-place. The road traverses a mountainous region, described as being supplied with running streams (in the rainy season?), and to be richly clad with trees.

I day. Ddmbari, large place, seat of a governor, but destitute of any handicraft. Country mountainous.

1 day. Nyimi-nyba, a middle-sized place. Country a little mountainous. I day. Bord, a large town, seat of a governor. Country mountainous, intersected by channels for irrigating the kitchen gardens. Cotton, rice, and corn are cultivated. All these appear to be very long days' marches.

2 days. Timme, a large town, seat of a governor. On the road you see the Dhidliba, or rather its floods, on your right, at least during part of the year. Cultivation of rice exclusively.

2 days. Kari or Konna (as the Songhay call it), seat of & governor, and important as a market-place. All the black inhabitants of the town speak the Songhay language. The town is also called Benne-n-dgu or Bana-n-dgu, the tribe of that name, the Benni, having probably extended much farther to the north in former times. See Cailli4, ii., p. 16.

2 days. Niak6ngo, seat of a governor of the name of H6J M6di, brother of Ilaj 'Omir. After the rainy season the floods of the river closely approach the town. I day. Hamda-Allihi.

F. From Timbtiktu by Gindam to Ydwaru, and from Ydwaru to Hamda-Alldhi.

Day.

3d. Gindam. There are no settled halting-places between Timbdktu and Gdn* De Barros, L, iii., c. viii., p. 220, Gennfi. "Concorriam a ella os pfvos que lhe sao mais vizinhos: assi corn os Caragolees, Fullos. Jal4os, Azaneges, Brabaxijs, Tigurarijs, Luddayas." See the chronological tables at the end of this vol., p. 6TO.

688 APPENDIX.

Day.

dam. People generally perform the distance in two days and a half. The following is a list of the names of localities between these two places: Tdshak, Finderiye, El Hindema, Aristoremek, Egdti, Tin-getn, Tin-rdro, Timbar~geri, two villages of the name El Meshra, Takdmbaut, Tenkeriye, Naudis, Gimmat6r. Gdndam is a walled town (ksar or koira), the chief place of the district Adissa, and of considerable size, its population consisting of Songhay, Rumd, and Fillbe or Fullin. The town has a suburb on its W. side, where live the. T6ki, a tribe of the Fullin, and another suburb on the water-side, where live the Erb~bi. On the N. side there is a black hill, full of fern~n. Also to the S. an eminence is seen presenting the same appearance. The town is situated on the N. side of a large khtlij or rijl (branch of the river) coming from Dire and turning toward Rgs el m6,
the celebrated "head of the waters," distant from here two days, either by land or by water, W. a little N. Another creek runs from Gndam to K6bara: but during the highest level of the inundation the whole country presents almost one uninterrupted sheet of water. On the east side of Gndam is a dry creek called Arishaf, one day long and half an hour wide.

At its eastern border, E.S.E. from Gtindam, is the place called Waye e' semen, with a creek adorned with the tree called tdderes.

4th. A walled village (koira) of Im6shagh and Songhay on the trunk of the river, having passed in the morning the branch on which Gtindam is situated. 5th. Arabube, a village inhabited by Fdlbe. 6th. Nyasiinke, a large village, inhabited in former times by Im6shagh, but at present people by Ftilbe.

7th. Iketwen. Having passed in the morning close behind Nyaftdnke, a large branch of the river, halt at noon in a village called Sherifikoira.

8th. A'tari, a large village of Ftlbe, on the east side of a considerable branch of the river going to Gasf Gdmo.

9th. Fadhl-Alldhi, a Fdlbe village.

10th. Y6waru. Y6waru is one of the two chief places of Fermigha, and although consisting entirely of reed huts, is said to be little inferior in the number of its inhabitants to the town of Timbilktu. The importance of the place is clear enough from the annual amount of tribute which it pays, amounting altogether (zek'a and modhr taken together) to 4000 head of cattle. During the inundation, Y6waru lies at the border of Lake Ddbu, which at that season extends from S'a to Y6waru, but during the dry season it is about one mile distant from the small branch. Close to the latter lies a suburb where the Surk or K6rongoy, a degraded section of the Songhay, dwell.* In Ydwaru and the neighborhood live a great number of Fdlbe or Full--n belonging to the following tribes: the Sonnibe, Yalbe, Feroibe, Ydwarunkdbe, and Jawimbe or Zoghorin or Zoromiwa.

G. From Ydwaru to Tendngu.

1st. Urungiye, an important place.

2d. Miyo, a village so called from a small creek, the MLyo S6rroba, on which it lies. Between Urungiye and Mayo seem to lie the villages Sri and Nyamihira, the former inhabited by Songhay, the latter by Fdlbe. 3d. Ganga.

4th. K6gi or J6gi, having passed several hamlets, one of them called Ginnew6, a hamlet of cattle breeders, with a ksar, then Dok6, Ngtidderi, J6fieri, Sabire, and Burl.

5th. Kora.

6th. Konna.

7th. Tendngu. The distance between Urungiye and Tendngu can, however, be performed in two days' good traveling.

Between Urungiye and M6bti lie the following places: U'ro-M6di, Kdram, a Songhay village; Rogfnte, a hamlet of Ftilbe; Yerdre, a hamlet inhabited by slaves of the Fillbe; Wfilo, on the Miyo Fenga; Kaya, a village inhabited by Aswdnek;

* I have not been able to make even a short vocabulary of the idiom of these people. I only succeeded in making out two terms which they use, "dmly"" (" how are you ?") and "dna" (" welcome").
and, finally, Stire-mdle and Sdre-bdle, the river probably forming a great bend near Wônyaka, so that these latter towns are touched at in coming from both sides, either the N. or the S.

H. From Ydwaru to Hamda-Alldhii.

Day.
1st. D6go, on a small creek.
2d. Shay, probably meaning the place of embarkation, on the N.W. side of the river, which is very wide in this spot. Pass on the road one or two branches of stagnant water, which you must cross in a boat. Perhaps one of these branches is the same on which the village Miyo lies.
3d. Encamp on the bank of a smaller creek (Miyo dhanndo?). 4th. Niak6ngo.
5th. Berber, a very short march.
6th. Siye, in the morning.
7th. Hamda-Allhi, the capital of the kingdom of Mdsina.

1. List of towns and villages situated along the bank of the chief trunk of the River IT'sabdre or Afryo-mangho, from Dire upward to Sansdndi. This branch is the northwesterly one; the other, which Caillid navigated, is the southeasterly, and is called Bara-Isa.

Dire, a very important place, one of the oldest settlements of the Songhay in this quarter, situated at the point of junction of two branches which have separated from each other in the lake Ddbu.*

Tindirma, one of the original seats of the Songhay, by some regarded as the original seat of the whole tribe. That portion of them called Sôhena were especially settled here. It is now principally the residence of the Ch6kii, who formerly were settled in Gtindam. With regard to its importance in former times as the capital of the province of Kcfrmina, see vol. iii., p. 290. A little distance from the bank of the river lies Gitigdttta, and on the island in the river the locality called "Al Mohalla," probably from having been once the spot where part of the Mohalla, or the army of the Moroccains, remained encamped. At Tindirma the branch of Gtindam separates from the main trunk of the river.

Hamma-koiro.
Nyafitnke.
Sibo. This is evidently the town Seebi where Mungo Park is said to have made some stay on his voyage from Jenni to Timbdktu. (Clapperton's Second Journey, Appendix, p. 334.)

Dghhabi-koiro, called after a shérif belonging to the family of Muîy el Dhdehei.
Gdmmo.
A'tara.
Tongomdre.
J 'ro.

Y6waru. In crossing from Y6waru the next branch, and leaving Gifram on one side, you reach Zinzo, or Jinjo, or Gfjo, as it is called, in four or five hours. This is another of the oldest seats of the Songhay, and probably the place from whence
Islam spread in this quarter, there being here the sepulchre of a venerable saint called Mohammed el Kiberi, belonging to the Idaw el Hgj. It is not impossible that this is the place of pilgrimage to which Scott, the sailor, went as a captive by way of the Giblah, crossing the lake. In the neighboring hamlet, Togga, also is the tomb of a holy man called Morimina B~ika. There is another tradition current in Zinzo of a saint of the name of Elfa Zakkariyd, who is said to have visited this place at a time when no village existed, nothing but a cavern being then inhabited. S.E. of Zinzo, at some little distance from Lake Debu lies A'wi. The Debu is so shallow during the dry season that the native boats can only proceed with great difficulty along the main channel, and often stick fast entirely. In the dry season the natives ford it by wading through the water. Where the main branch, called by the Fdlbe Miyo balldo, reaches the lake, at least during the rainy season, it divides into a net of smaller branches, thus increasing the difficulty of the navigation. On the contrary, the advantage of the smaller branch, the Bara-I'sa, or River of Bara, called by the Fdlbe Mfyo dhanndo, consists in preserving one unbroken volume of water. This was the reason probably why the party with whom Caillie went down the Niger from Jinni followed this branch. Besides the Mayo balMo and dhanndo, the chief creeks which join the Debu are the Mayo Pfru and the Mayo J6ga, not inconsiderable during the rainy season, but very small during the dry one.

The lake, besides fish, contains numbers of that curious animal called ayd (manatus). From the lake upward there lie along the principal branch of the river the following places: Btri; Binghida; Walddu; Ingtrruwe; Minyata; Kossandnna; Timnare; B6wa; Kbirinkiri; Ggnde-Tima; Sarbdre; Kdra, an important place, after which the river is sometimes called "the River of Kira;" Ingdnshi; Ddggada; Kumiy, a place of some importance, distant two days from Yg-salgme,* which is about three days from the considerable market-place Ten4ngu (p. 688), both west from the river; Jdgi; Nyisu; K6lifiango; Sabire; Bufrruwd; Fenga, a middlesized

APPENDIX.

* From Dire, down the river toward Timbfiktu, my informant indicated several places which neither I myself nor Caillie have mentioned on our passage down the river: Biram, a large village (Kdra, Danga), Sems(iro (Koierten), Lenga, all on the south side; Segaliye, on the north side of the river; an Adabay or hamlet, belonging to Bram, E'luwa, on an island, Hendibingo. t Edinburgh Philological Journal, vol. iv., p. 35, et seq. There is no such district hereabout a "El Sharray," but I have not the slightest doubt that this name is nothing but a corruption of the term "e' sherk," with which the Moors of that region indicate the south. There are some inaccuracies in Scott's account, which might cause suspicion of his sincerity; and among these is the circumstance that he mentions as living on the lake the Moorish tribes of the E'ergebitt and Sekarna, both of which live in the northern districts. But it is very remarkable that he should call that tomb by the name of " Saidna Mohammed."

VOL. III.-X x
place, after which this whole branch of the river is also called "Miyo Fenga," about two hours E. from Tendngu, and one good day's march from Ffarik.

We now proceed along the southeastern shore of the Debu, and along the Myo dhando.

Giram, a considerable place, situated round a large rocky eminence, k6dia, as the Arabs call it, or "haire," as it is called by the Ftilbe, who celebrate it highly as the "haire maunde Giiram." The mount is so conspicuous in the flat alluvial level that it is visible from Ydwaru. Caillie saw it at the distance of three or four miles (ii., p. 18), and again farther on, where he calls it St. Charles' Island (ii., p. 20). The village is separated into three distinct groups, one of which is called Gdram Ftilbe, lying at the northern foot of the k6dia; the other, Gifram Hibe, inhabited by Songhay; farther on and finally, Gdram S-drgube, inhabited by (degraded?) Tawirek or Surgu.

Bang.) Both inhabited by K6rongoy.

S6ba.

S6roba, situated at the foot of another smaller rocky eminence called "haire S6roba," lying opposite to Giram on the S. side of the river, which seems to make here a great bend. It is mentioned by Mohammed el M-sini (Appendix to Clapperton's Second Journey, p. 331). Caillie gave it the ridiculous name of "Henry Island."

Jantaye, a considerable place.

Mdyo Tina, a place close to the former, inhabited by Tawgrek.

K6bi. (Compare Caillie's account, ii., p. 16.)

Nye.

Batamsine.

Sfyo, distant half a day's journey from the Batamdne, towns close to the bank of the river becoming here more rare.

Wdfiaka, where the two branches unite, being joined besides by a small westerly creek, called by some Miyo Fenga.

Homb6lbe, the principal seat of the K6rongoy or Surk, who constitute the chief inhabitants of the places Ngirruwe and Toy.

Karashiru.

Kara-tira.

Nemdnte, and not far from it inland the village called "rtdgga B6de."

Nfta.

* I here add a short itinerary from Y6warn to Ya'salfme: Day.
1t. Hasi Joll(ib, with a settlement of Zuwaye Sombimne. 2d. A well.
8d. Ya-salfme, a place of about the same size as Ydwaru, on a backwater at a considerable distance from the chief river. From Basiknnu to Ya'saldme, four days.

ZA'GHA.-HAMDA-ALLA'HI TO KA'BARA.

Kammi.

M6bti or Isika, situated at the point of junction of the two branches of the river, which have divided at Jafardbe, a low point of land, as it seems, separated by the river into a group of six islands, where all the boats coming from Hamda-Alihi
and the lower river, and proceeding to Sansindi, are obliged to disembark their merchandise, which henceforward has to be transported on the back of donkeys to the place of its destination. Of these two branches the northwestern* one bears also the name of Mayo Jigha, from a very important place, the celebrated Zdgha of the Arab geographers, which, on account of its situation out of the great commercial track, is at present not very generally known in those quarters. The original form of the name, both with Songhay and Fiilbe, seems to be Jgka or Jigha, but the letters Z and J are continually interchanged. The town is said to lie at the distance of one and a half days S.W. from Sdre-dfna, "the city of the (Mohammedan) religion," and only half a day N.E. from Jafaribe, and is still celebrated on account of its excellent "tiri" or "leppi."

I here add a short list of the towns and villages between Kdna, the place where the river is ordinarily crossed in proceeding from Sofira to the island of Mgsina Proper, and M6bti: from Kdna, about six miles E., is Ndma, situated on the E. side of the river; from Ndma, Tikkdtii, on the W. side of the river; Sire-bgle, on the E., Sire-mdle, on the W. of the river, N. of Tikkdti6; G6mi, a large town on the bank of the river; M6bti, on the E. side, with large fortifications, if I have understood right, of an ancient date, where the two branches join; Nymit6go, on the E. side of the river.

The distance from Tendngu is also a day and a half, and between them lie the following places, beginning with Tendngu: Takandne, Chilbe, a hamlet inhabited by slaves, Kumbel, Ingell-ye, Taikiri, K6llima, and Waringha. From Jafaribe upward along the river are situated the places Kongunkoro ("old Kongu"), K6no, J6ru, Sfbila, Maddina, Sansindi (this is the Songhay form) or Sansinne (the Mandingo form), the well-known starting-point of Mungo Park's voyage down the river. Mr. Cooley supposes that "di" is a contraction of "ding," meaning "I little."

K. From Hamda-Alldhi to Kdbara, by land, by way of S'a.
1 day. Niyakdngo, a large town at a considerable distance from the river; much cultivation.
1 day. Dendngu (?), a place inhabited by Fdlbe and Songhay, the latter being more numerous than the former; near the bank of the river.
1 day. U'ro-Billo, a place inhabited by Fdlbe, on the E. side of the De'bu.
1 day. S'a, a large place, inhabited chiefly by Bambara, the seat of a governor, as was also the case in former times; on the E. side of the Mayo dhanndo or Baral'sa. Many dtim palms, or rather deldp palms, grow in this neighborhood, from whence Timbdiktu is supplied with rafters. The floods of the lake and the various branches or creeks are so considerable during the rainy season that at that period of the year a person can not reach Hamda-Allghi in less than six days.
1 day. K6ma, a small town of Bambara, at a considerable distance E. from the river.
1 day. Chiay, close to the bank of the Mayo dhanngo.
1 day. Sire-fergng, a Bambara place. The road leads all the way along the S.E. bank of the river.
1 day. Janginire, a Bambara place.
1 day. A'rkọja, a town partly inhabited by Bambara, partly by Songhay, the former prevailing.

1 day. Dri, a large place of Fillbe, who call it Dar e' Salim. No Bambara inhabitants.

1 day. Bonges~mba, a village inhabited by Fillbe Sudube, close to the point of junction, called I'sofay, of the two branches of the Dhiuliba, the white (dhanndo) and the black (balldo), the quality of their, waters being totally different, one being full * On the southeastern branch up to Jenni or Jenne (this is the Aswfinek form), or Zenne (Zinne, as the Songhay call it), or Jinne (the Bmbara form), lie the following towns and villages: B61ay, a ksar or koira, Sildoy, Konne, K6me, Isika or M6bti, Kfina, Soffira, Zinne. Soffira, which lies half way between Hamda-Allahi and Jenni or Zinne, has a market every Wednesday and Thursday. The eastern side of soffira is skirted by a small branch or creek of the Niger called Gof6nno, and on the eastern bank of the latter lies a village called G6ffima. t These particulars I obtained after having finished my manuscript map in Timbuktu.

APPENDIX.

of crocodiles, hippopotami, and fish, and the other containing nothing of the kind, just as is the case with the Tsdd. The water of the black river overwhelms The white water of the dhanndo. Cross the river.

1 day. Tindirma, a large Songhay place. A long day.

1 day. Dire, one of the oldest places of the Songhay.

1 day. Dongoy, inhabited by Songhay, no Fillbe; on the E. side of the river.

1 day. Tdyai, a Songhay village; the Tademekket rove in this neighborhood. Country level and without trees, being temporarily flooded.

2 days. Ktbara, keeping close along the river, and crossing a small rivulet or creek.

L 1. From Hamda-Alldhi to Kddima. Day.

1st. Sfye.

2d. Niyak6ngo, having passed the heat in the hainlet called Berber. 3d. Benne-nddgu or Konna, having passed the heat in N'amet-All~ihi (a long day's, if not two days' journey).

4th. Toy. Arrive before noon.

5th. A Songhay village or ksar. 6th. Konsa, a Fillbe village.

7th. A village inhabited by Fillbe, Songhay, and Bimbara. 8th. Tak6ti.

9th. Sambejerihit.

10th. Ungdma.

11th. I9fiima, on a branch of the river coming from Bimbara (see ante, p. 249), end at a day's march from the latter place.


2d. D6ra, a rdldme, or slave hamlet. 3d. Tak6ti, or Jenginre, both on the Bara-I'sa, Jenginfire lying a little to the S.W. of the former.
4th. Another town on the Niger, the name of which informant has forgotten, probably Sare-ferdng.

5th. Gulimbu, on the widening of the creek Debu or D6bu. (Another road leads from Knfima, by Labo, Lang6ma, Konse, and another place, to Gulimbu). 6th. Doy or Toy, a large Songhay place. 7th. Karri, Konna, or Benne-ndtigu, all names of the same place. On your way you pass Kori-dntsa, a large Piillo village. 8th. N'amet-Alldhi, a town of the Feroibe. 9th. Fat6ma, the market-place (the market being held every Saturday) of Kontri, not a large place.

10th. Hamda-Allhi, a good day's march of ten hours.

M. List of towns in Jimbilla, Zdnkara, and Atissa.

(A.) Towns in Jimballa, the district S. of the river, W. from the district Kfso: Ayain,Ksffa, Sdre-ferdng (the town mentioned p. 689), probably the seat of government under the empire of Melle, Tdsi, A'rokoja, H6re-ayd, Dangal, B6ria, Ngorko or Gorofiya, a considerable market-place between Z(Lnkara and San-kord, and distant one and a half day's journey S. from Diri, Kdlesongho, Guddunga. The following places lie in the central region of Jimbilla: T6robe, Gmoy, Gunki, Gdngare, l'chi al Haibe, Sdzi, Seguil, Bugo-lishdre, Gn6rjja. It is a very remarkable fact that three places to which the origin of the Blimbara nation is referred are said to be the oldest places in Jimballa, viz., Kanembdgu, Jdnjenabigu, and Tsororbdigu. The following are the tribes of the Ffiibe in Jimbilla: F'ttobe, Sangho, Uralifond, Bulsuri, Kaya, U'tro-M6di, Dugurtbe, Tongbe in Sdzi, Zuckerre, Tor6di (probably settled in the locality called T6robe), Nar-hau, Yaffoli. There is besides a tribe of Ftiibe called D6ngo, mixed with Rumi, settled in four places of Jimbilla, viz., Kurdm on the-Myo balfdo, Sdbi, Waiki, and Gong. In Sdbi, the place mentioned p. 689, resides a chief of the Rumd who formerly commanded the whole communication along the river, and with whom therefore Park had some business to settle-this evidently being indicated by the words wrongly translated by Mr. Silame, "that they might cross the way of the river."

ZA'NKARA AND AU'SSA.-FERMA'GHA.

South of Jimbilla is the district Sikkerd, under the dominion of the Ftiibe, but chiefly inhabited by Zoghorin. Chief place D6ko, one day from Koisa, and not far from U'tro-Bdilo.

(B.) Zinkara, the district S. of the river, inclosed between the latter and the districts of Kiso and Jimbilla *

Tomme, Clidngari, Manjebtigo, A'njau, Jebir, Bdko, Binikan, Jd, Jf-kdrimi, Wiki, Tondo, Jindigatta, Wabango, Kitigu, Bidi, Gom. The capital of this province is Ddni, or Dir e' Salim, residence of the governor 'Abd-Alldhi, son of Sheikh A'hem. S.E. from Diri is Ganniti, a considerable market-place.

(c.) In Aiiissa (the province north of the river, between Timbliktu and Fermigha): Tomba, Mdkore near Gtindam, Bankorffye, Jango, Akoire-n-dhe, Hammakoire, Kamba-dumba, Ungurtinne, Nyaftinch, Hard6nia or Bdllaga, Gn6ro, Baba-danga, Bifiaga, T6ndi-diro, Gubbo, Dhdbabi-koiire, Sibo, Alwdli-koiire, Gombo, Tommi, Gaudel, Kurbal, Kattwden, Fadhllillihi, Attora, Ndnru, Ny6dogu, Gaude, another Mdkore near Kurbal, Kibara-tanda, Dw6d-ird near Dongoy, Tdsakal,
Minkaldgungu between Dongoy and Kibara, Telfi, Koddisabiri; Sob6nne, I think, is not the name of a place, but of a section of the Fulbe settled here. I also think this a fit place to insert some lists of towns lying along the various routes traversing the territories of Fermigha, the province to which Y6waru belongs, and Bergu, the province bordering on the former toward the S., although I can not fully testify to the accuracy of the order in which the towns are mentioned. I will here also add that this district Bergu, as it is called by some of the natives, the original form of the name being probably Marka, and of which Y-salime is the chief place, is a very flat country, almost destitute of trees, and producing no crops, but, on account of its ample supply of water, affording fine pasture-grounds. Fermdgha, on the contrary, is a well-timbered province. My informant is Dddtd, the brother of the PtFillo chief Mohammed ben 'Abd-Alldhhi whom I have mentioned in my journal.

Between Y6waru and Yi-salime, along the western road, are said to lie the following places, beginning with the former: Binghita, a village of learned men or m'allemin, Siredina, D6go, the place touched at in going from Y6waru to Niyak6ngo by way of Shay, Urtinde, Gog6rla, Launyndnc, Laundrde, Merdnuma, Urungiye (1st day) (Urungiye in the dry season is at half a day's distance from the river; it is still reckoned by some as belonging to Misina); Tanna, Kingurn, having crossed between these two villages a small creek, Heriwa, Bandare, Chiki, Kasisdgi, Gachi- (or Gasii-) limo, Nanka, Kirangdrre, Surdingo, Kdru (2d day); M6di Masanire, Kundba, Jthre, Ikdre, Btirburank6be, Ny6jii, Diggesire, YU-salime, a considerable town inhabited by Aswinek and Fulbe (3d day).

Between Y6waru and YA-salime, along the western road by Urungiye. After having passed Urungiye: Alamde, Ucha-malngo, Ukinnu, Jowendjia, a village called Almtim%, another called Fittobe, Doroy, Sdre-yrdr, Diggesre, Yd-salime. Between Yi-salme and Saredina, a journey of three days: K6ra, Ttiguri, Jappdje, Sendektibi, a hamlet inhabited by slaves of the Fdlbe and Jgka, Sende-k6rrobe, Chtfbe, Bil-derije, Ginda, Gauye, Nomirde, Saredina. This road probably passes at no great distance W. of Tendngu.

Between Yi-salime and Koniri, a journey of three days: Burtupdddde, Geldji, D6ko, not the one mentioned above, J6nyori (1st day); K61e, Wandebiite, Kollek6mbe, Salsilbe (2d day); U'nguremiji, Kondri.

Between Basikinnu and Yi-salime: Kussumire, Jifera, Jerri-Jifera, a village inhabited by slaves (1st day, short march); Binyamis, a place inhabited by Arabs, Terebgkko, S6rbira, K61lima, Tdgguri (2d day); Tilre-sangha, a place at present inhabited by Arabs (formerly by Songhay? tdr= Mohammedan M6leki ?), K6jole, Pche, Batawa, a place inhabited by hirratin, Kire (residence of?) Btigon6, chief of the Bowir, Bdburank6be, Um-muswdle, Yi-salime. Between Basikinnu and Y6waru, a journey of five and a half days: Barkinne or Barkinnu (1st day); another road goes by Jppata; Shim, Ldre (2d day); Nimmer, a creek called by the Arabs "el m6 hammer," "the red water," where you pass the heat, Dogomdra, Nyenche, Bdya (3d day); Kardnna, Gungn, Sal6nguri, Chfllunga, Gasi-lfdmo (leaving Gasi-Jerma toward the N.) (4th day); Kalasige, Chdki (5th day); Y6waru.
Between Ikinnu, a town lying one day W. of Urungfye, and the town of Gdndam: Sdda, Bunddire, Sabdre-16de, Tinuma, Jamwdli, T6mor6 (both of these villages in-

694

APPENDIX.

habited by Songhay and Asw~nek conjointly), Suringo, Jabati, Ldre, Gasi-Jerma, N6si, K–ti, Kfibara, situated to the east of a large pond or dhaye, Kok6nta, a Songhay village, Kat'aw6, Sumpi, Tikaji, Ny6dog6, H6ro, Tele, Gund6 or Gijndam.

N. Route from Timbtiktu to Sansndni by way of Basikzinnu, from the information of Skkho Weled A'mmer Waldti.

2d day. Gifndam, having passed by Kbera (not necessary, but most people do so); Tdsakant or Tisakalt, another village or idabay, a village called Duwdkird, and Dunge, a village inhabited by Rumi.

3d. Tle, a creek or rijl, with many villages.

4th. Tdrijit, a village on a creek of the river.

5th. Kat'aw6, another village inhabited originally by Tawgrek.

6th. K(Lbara, or, to distinguish it from the other village of the same name, Kibara Tanda, inhabited by Songhay.

7th. Janga, a place inhabited by Aswinek.

8th. Ldre.

9th. Barkinni, a well, frequented by Arabs; a long day's march.

10th. Basikdnnu, a middle-sized place or ksar, inhabited by Arabs, especially the Weldd 'Ahish, a very warlike tribe, mustering about 700 armed people; but the chief part of the inhabitants consists of the slaves of the latter. Basikdnnu lies in the district called Eriggi, and is distant nine or ten days from Kasamb'ra.

14th. Kiri, a well not far from the town of Kila, which informant intended to avoid, the direct road passing close along the western wall of that town.

15th. Sarad6bi, a deserted place.

16th. Falambfgu, a place inhabited by Bdmbara.

17th. Swdra, a considerable place.

18th. Sansndni.

0. Route from Sansndni to Timbtiktu, deviating a little, from the general track for fear of the Fulldn. Injbrmant Sidi A'hmed el Mazdki el Bdgheni.

1st day. Asgr (probably identical with Swdra, the latter being the diminutive form), a village inhabited by Bambara. You arrive a little after sunset, having started from Sansgndi in the afternoon.

2d. A place with a dhaye or tank. Pass the heat of the day in a deserted place, leaving Karadifgu a little to the E. This whole country is pillaged and laid waste by continual forays, owing to the feud between the Benfber or Bgmbara and the Fullin.

3d. Ak6r, a deserted place or ksar.
4th. Encamp in a spot in the wilderness, having passed the heat of the day in a place called by the Arabs Akilmbu jemel; leave the considerable place Killa, inhabited by Bgmbara, to the W.
5th. Encamp in the wilderness.
6th. Sfre-bila, a place formerly inhabited by the Wehid 'Ahish and the Ideleb6, but at present deserted.
7th. Gello, a village in the neighborhood of a large "dhaye" or pond, two days from Y6waru, at present inhabited by the Teghdaust.
8th. Bir el H6ij 'Om~r, a well with an occasional encampment of the Zuwayne. The road, which in the first part of the journey was almost from S. to N., here turns more to the E.
9th. Lire, a village or ksar or the Wehid Zayem, an Arab tribe dependent on the Fulldn. A branch of the river skirts its east and south side. Even in the dry season, immense sheets of water are here collected, as is the case with the whole of Fermggha. The latter, which comprises this whole tract of country, is a larger province and better inhabited than Adissa.
10th. Gasi e' Siheli or Gasi-Jerma, distant one and a half day's march to the north from the more important place Gasi-Ghiima or Gasi-Ltimo, the great marketplace of the "killa" or coarse colored stuff of mixed cotton and wool, and the second place of the province of Fermigha, next to Y6waru. Gasi-Ghilma'lies on the backwaters of the river running parallel with the main branch between Lake Debu and Gtindam, and joining the river near Salga, while a branch runs from here to Gasi-Jerma, and thence to Ldre. Gasi-Jerma has no great commercial activity, but a good supply of corn; shells are not current. It is inhabited by Songhay and Zoghordn, and is distant five days from Basikdinnu, toward the east.

TIMBU’KTU TO WALA’TA.-RA’S EL MA’.
695
11th. Sudfi, a place inhabited by Songhay, and belonging to Adssa. You pass the heat of the day in the ksar Nyedddgu.
12th. No place.
13th. A village or ksar on a branch of the river. You pass the heat of the day near the dhaye H6r, and then keep along this sheet of water, which is a branch of the Ris el Mi, and, according to my informant, extends as far as Gasi-Glima.
14th. Giffdam. N.B.-Perhaps one station has been left out, viz., Tld.
17th. Timbilktu.
P. Route from Timbtktu to Waldta.
1st day. Farsha, a locality at the foot of a hill.
2d. Mdjerin, a lake in connection with the river, by means of the branch which separates from the latter between Betagdngu and Toga-bango, and encircled by hills. A short day's march. Gtndam from here S. S.W. The Kdl-antsdr of the I'gelid, whose chief is Thiher, encamp here.
3d. Gelb el Ghinem, a fertile locality, with a high mount seen from Gtindam, situated on the bank of a branch of the river. You pass between nine and ten o'clock in the morning Abinko, a small place, inhabited by slaves and a few Songhay.
4th. A'm-gunndn, a favored spot, where the slaves of the Tawirek cultivate the ground. "A'm" is not pure Arabic, but of Semitic origin.

5th. Rds el m6 ("the head of the water"), called "Araf-n-A'man" by the Tawirek or 'Im6shagh, the outlying creek where the traveler from the north on his way to Walita seems formerly to have first reached the river. This creek is stated by tradition to have been dug by the Bashi J6dar and his musketeers or "ermdl." On the south side of this basin, already mentioned by El Bekri,* there are small villages or "ddabay" (pl. "tadebit") inhabited by the 'I'deleb6, a poor Moorish tribe, said to be related to the Shemman-A'mmas. It is an important fact that all the wheat consumed in Timbuktu is cultivated round the Rds el mi, and not brought from the north, as Cailli6 stated (Travels to Timbuctoo, vol. ii., p. 20).

From Ris el mi, which appears to be a little S. from W. of Timbuktu, the direct road to Walta leaves the basin of the river, and reaches that place in seven good days' march, or even in traveling as a courier in five; direction a little N. from W. In the dry season there is no water along this road, but in the rainy season plenty of tanks or "dhaye" are met with, so that at that time of the year some people prefer traveling at their leisure, performing the distance in ten or twelve days.

Our road keeps at some distance from the outlying backwaters of the river and reaches, with a long march.

6th day. Uhikids, a very deep well, about twenty fathoms deep. On the way you pass the locality "Tidemdt," called by this name from a group of " tddumt," as the baobab is called by the people of Timbuktu.

7th. A'dar, a well, with a small dwelling-place or "ksar" inhabited by Songhay and slaves of the 'I'deleb6.

8th. Bfr e' Selem, a well.

9th. Bti-Seribe, a well; a long day's march. You pass another well called Zegzig.

10th. Basikdinnu.

15th. Walita, as the town is called by the Arabs and Tawgrek, or Bfru, as it is called by the blacks, especially the Azdr, a section of the Aswinek, who are the original inhabitants of the place. It is a considerable town, consisting of houses built carefully of a good species of clay, with a rough-cast of plaster, as it would seem. But the situation of Wahita, at the eastern border of the district El H6dh, at the foot of a range of hills called "Dhihar Wahita," which encircle it on this side, while a large valley, richly clad with trees, skirts the north and east side, is considered as extremely unhealthy, and on this account is called "khineg el haye," "the throat of the snake," the district El H6dh being considered as the snake. Thus in this respect Wahita entirely resembles Ghinata, or the capital of the empire; but besides being a hot-bed of disease, the town is now also the seat of poverty and misery, which Ghinata, at least during its prime, certainly was not. For, as we have seen (Chronolog. Tables, p. 665), in the course of the fifteenth century

* El Bekri, p. 160.

696 APPENDIX.

all the commercial importance of that place was transferred to Timbuktu, and gothing remained except the trade in provisions, especially negro corn or "dneli."
The inhabitants of Wagta are a mixed race of blacks and whites. The former, at present greatly reduced in numbers and their moral standard considerably lowered, belong to the widely-scattered nation of the Swaninki or Azdr; the whites are Berbers and Arabs, the Arabs belonging to various tribes, but especially to the tribe of the Mdhajib, who, even among themselves, make use almost exclusively of the Azdriye idiom, this being the indigenous language. About one mile west from Bfru are the ruins of an ancient place called Tezdght, formerly inhabited by the Berber tribe of the Idgw el Hij, who were the chief propagators of Isldm over these parts of Negroland, and ruled them for a long time. Among the ruins much gold is said to be found occasionally at this very day. At that time Biru was only inhabited by native blacks. All circumstances taken into account, although the whole district called El H6dh was once thickly covered with towns or "ksdr," it can not be denied that the double town of Tezdght-Biru is more fully entitled than any other place to be identified with the celebrated capital of the Ghfnata empire.* The distance of Ghiuata from Rds el m-the five days being taken at the rate of a courier-and that from Amfima, or Mime, or, as the name is generally pronounced, Maima, a locality still bearing this name, although the place is at present deserted, a little to the west of LUre, correspond exactly; the distance of three days from that place to the river (at Safnakil or Safekd) does not harmonize exactly with the present state of the country, the smallest distance of Walhta from the river being five days, but it is not impossible that the outlying creeks eight centuries ago approached a little closer the site of Walhta. . As for the distance of twenty days between Ghdnata and Silla, which is certainly the town on the bank of the Niger visited by Mungo Park, it is to be considered at the rate of marching with loaded caravans. Silla was a very important place, and gave its name to the Sillit, that section of the Swanfnki or Aswunek which is most distinguished on account of the antiquity and purity of its Islam, but the town has recently been destroyed in the wars between the Bimbara and Fulldn. There is a spacious mosque in Waluta, of high antiquity, but certainly wrongly attributed to Sfdi 'Ukba el Mifstajib.

Between Walita and Arawuin ten days are counted, in an east-northeasterly direction, through the "A'kela," the very name given to a portion of the old Ghgnata, A'kela being nothing but another form of the name Aiikir, a district consisting of light isolated sand-hills, full of excellent shrubs for the camel, but entirely destitute of water, the tribe of the K6betit, who are wandering hereabout, not less than their camels, subsisting entirely on water-melons, which grow here in great plenty, and contain a sufficient supply of the aqueous element.

Q 1. Routes from Waldta to Sansndni.

Most people who undertake this journey go from Wal(ta to Basiktinnu, and thence to Sansundi, along the track described above; for the direct route which I am now about to communicate, according to the statements of my two informants, leads through a district much frequented by Arabs from El H6dh, whom peaceful travelers endeavor to avoid. I first give the route according to Shdkho Weled A'mmer WalUti.

1st day. Simberinne, a spot in the sand-hills only a short, or rather half a day's march.
2d. Rini, a well.
3d. E’ Shemin, a well of great depth.
4th. Sigunnejit, a group of shallow wells dry in summer.
5th. Dendfre, a large tank or dhaye, site of a former ksar, with an extensive forest or "ghuba."
6th. Kork, a wooded and hilly locality.
7th. El Bardk, a well.
8th. Bdglà, a deep well surrounded by fine groups of the tddum or baobab. You pass on the road the wells El Ghnimt and Jelhik.
9th. El Trdik, a well, or El Mdkrundt, a little farther on.

I here can not omit to express my admiration of Mr. Cooley's critical judgment, who, from the incomplete materials which he at the time possessed, arrived at the same conclusion in his researches on the Negroland of the Arabs. See especially p. 43.

WALA’ATA TO SANSA’NDI.-KASAMBA’RA TO WALA’ATA. 697
10th. Atwdl, a well to the east of Sinydre, or you may make a long march, and go to Farabfgu, a Bdmbara village.
11th. KAla, a large town of Bdmbara, only two or three hours from Farabfgu. It is no doubt the same Ktila which once constituted a small kingdom of itself, and of which A’hmed’Bfib6 speaks so repeatedly.* In course of time it constituted one of the three great divisions of the empire of Melle, the two others being Bennendtdgu and Sabardtigu.
12th. Sd6bil or Sara-ddgu.
13th. Falam-tdigu.
14th. Swdra.
15th. Sansndndi.

Q 2. Same route according to El Beshir.

N.B.-Informant proceeded on this route with a caravan of camels and packoxen, the former traveling from morning till about four o'clock in the afternoon, the latter resting during the heat of the day and following in the evening.

1st day. Ardni (evidently identical with Rini), or another group of wells called A’jel el A’bmar.

2d. Ardk, sand-hills, having passed the heat of the day at the Bir A’shim-mln (E’ Shemin).
3d. Ajibi, or, if you proceed a little farther and keep more to the east, Tenwakkar.
4th. El Ghdnimit, a well with a pond or "dhaye."
5th. Encamp at the foot of a conspicuous eminence, "e’ sfn,” of the chain called "Dhdihar Waldta,” which encircles El 116dh on the east side, and which is here crossed.
6th. Encamp without water.
7th. Sinydre, a village or ksar of the Swgninki or Aswinek.
8th. K-ila, as above. My informant states that this town, like the last station before Sansindi, is called Swdra by the Asw(Lnek.
9th. Falambdgu, a few miles to the west of Karadtdgu.
10th. Swdra.
11th. Sansdindi, a short march.

R. Route from Kasambdra to Waldta.

Kasambdra is regarded as the chief town in Bdghena, and is often the residence of the chief of the Weld Mebdrek.

1st day. Lombo-tendi, a rather long day. Lombo-tendi is the name of a well and a ksar or village of clay huts, inhabited by Rumi or Ermti (see ante, p. 296). Besides Lombo-tendi, there are two other kstir in Bdghena inhabited by this remarkable set of mulattoes, both of them called Barasifa, the one situated it no great distance S.E. from Lombo-tendi, the other lying near Bistiga, to the N.E. These three villages together form the group called in Bdghena "Kstir e' Rlimme."

2d. Tamtra, a tank or dhaye.

3d. Agtmmu, a well and tank.

4th. Bti-Lawin, a well.

5th. N'ama, a pretty ksar or small town, built about fifty years ago by a grandson of Mtily Ismd'ail, in consequence of a civil war which had broken out among the Shurfa residing in Walatta. The village is inhabited by Shurfa, Mdhajfb, And by I'ddleb6. The houses are built of clay and stone; the west side of the village is skirted by a valley which contains some hundreds of palm-trees, and where some tobacco is grown. N'ama is situated at the foot of the hilly chain which encircles the whole of El Bedh, or the basin. You arrive early in the morning.

8th. Walita.

S. From Kasambdra to Jawdra, from the information of Sidi A'hemd el 2tlazgki el Bdgheni.

1st day. Encamp in the wilderness, having rested two or three hours in Bistiga.

2d. Retinne, a group of shallow wells or hasign. You pass the heat in Ben6n, at present a ksar inhabited by Aswtnek, but evidently identical with the place of encampment of the chief of the Ludamar (Weld 'Omdr, pronounced A'mmer), * Journal of Leipsic Oriental Society, vol. ix., p. 52T.

APPENDIX.

where Mungo Park suffered so much. Another road leads from Bisiga to Ben6n, by a place called Dtinu.

3d. Jaw-ra, called by the Fiilbe or Fullin J-ra Melle, once the capital of the empire of Melle, at present deserted; during the latter period of its existence inhabited by Rimme (Rumi) and Gurmfibe.

Jawdra is distant one and a half day N.N.E. from Jebdga, and two days from Samakkde, passing one night in Mell dri, a ksar inhabited by the Weld Daibo (the name given by the Arabs to one section of the Aswdnek or Wdkor6), and passing the heat in a place called Arj6ga. It is after this town, Jawdira or Jaura, that the Ftltbe call the Swinnki, or Sdb6, as they style themselves (the noblest section of the Aswdnek), by the name of Jaura-n-k6be.

At a short distance from Melldri, south, lies the ksar Jemifmmu, and west of it Sgra.

T. From Kasambdra to Bd-Jeddr or Bakel 1st day. Bisiga, a ksar of Aswinek, having passed the heat of the day in J6ga.
2d. Jor6ni, a ksar of Asw6nek. In the morning, not far from Bisiga, you pass Medina, a large place, and farther on Demmundili, and rest during the heat of the day in A'gwenit, a considerable ksar, likewise inhabited by Asw6nek. 3d. Tdrehhmimme, another ksar of Asw6nek, having passed the heat in a place called Kurche. 4th. Jebdga, a ksar of Aswinek. The traveler enters Kaarta, and the roads divide. Jebdga is said to be two days S.E. of Mesfila. 5th. Samankdde, a place inhabited at present by Bambara. You pass the heat in a village called Ardri, and leave the village Chencha on one side. 6th. El Ktib, a ksar of Asw6nek, having passed another place called Bti-Swgde, and rested during the greatest heat in K6rkor6. 7th. Brenta, one of the chief places of the Asw6nek. You pass the heat in Yri, another place of the Asw6nek. 8th. Tenge, a village inhabited by Bimbara, and dominating a mountain pass. You halt during the hot hours of the day in K4sa, a village inhabited by BAMbara people. 9th. Mdmuru, the residence of a chief called Dembo Weled Mdsa Korho, situated in a wide valley. You rest during the heat in Mowedina, a town inhabited by Bdmbara and governed by a chief of the name of Hassan Bdbeld. 10th. Lewdna, a large place, and residence of a governor dependent on the King of S4go. You rest at noon in a village inhabited by slaves of the Bdmbara. 11th. Gdfrri, the chief place of Jdfunu (evidently identical with Raffenel's Kdghi),* a considerable town built of clay, and containing, according to the statements of informants, not less than sixty msid or places of worship. The inhabitants are Aswinek, forming a peculiar stock, called by the Ftilbe "Jifunanko'be." The population of the country of Kajaiga or Gejiga, S. of Jdfunu, is said to consist likewise of Asw6nek, forming another tribe called Hairank6be by the Ftilbe. You rest at noon in Chaima, a place inhabited by B6,mbara, and governed by a son of Morbo; and beyond that place you enter Jfunu, Jdfuna, or, as the name is pronounced by the Arabs, Jdfena. 15th. Bd-Jeddr, as the French settlement Bakel, to the S.S.E. of Bot-badiye, is universally called by the Arabs. There are many towns and villages on the road, the names of which informant had forgotten. You enter the province of Ftilta on the 12th day. U. Route from Kasambdra to Mesila. 1st day. Bisaiga. From Bisiga to Ben6n is one day's march from morning till sunset, halting at noon in Dilnu. 2d. In the wilderness. 3d. Ferdnni, a ksar inhabited by Aswinck. It is the westernmost ksar of Bdghena, being situated about six miles N.N.W. from Ben6n. 4th. G6gi, a shallow well or hasi belonging to Termessa, a district of El H6dh. Arrivo about noon. 5th. Beyond a well named Talli, rich in water and adorned with small trees, where you pass the heat and proceed on your journey. *Raffenel's Second Voyage, vol i., p. 223, seq.
ROUTES THROUGH BA'GHENA. 699
6th. Bowgr, a copious well, constituting the W. frontier of El H6dh, and frequented by the tribes of the Zenigha or Senh–ja, Henafn, and Fitta.
7th. Mesfila, a group of shallow wells, the first of which is called Akerid. With regard to plants, the "dirs" is almost exclusively found here.

V. Route from Kasambdra to Nydmina.
1st day. N'ama, a ksar of the Welid Mazffk. Rest during the 4iieat of the day in a village called San-figa.
2d. Dynnia, a large and wealthy town of the Welfd Yigger6, residence of a governor called Mdsa Ndjem, son of Bank6ro, and dependent on the King of Bimbara. The town is rich in horses. You pass the heat in a place called Sdredai, inhabited by Aswinek and Bdmbara. Dynnia is distant one day's march W. from Alissa, resting at noon in a ksar called Wdsat, inhabited by Bdmbara.
3d. J6re, belonging to the district of Dynnia. You pass the heat in Witerd, a large Bdmbara place.
4th. Debdla, a Bdmbara town belonging to the northwestern province of the Bimbarn empire, called Kdche. Rest during the heat in Dehinga, a place distant only six or eight miles from J6re.
5th. Mekoye, a large place, residence of the Governor of Kdche. Pass Kasambgu, a large place inhabited by Arabs and Bdmbara.
13th. Nygmina, a considerable town and well-furnished market-place on the N. side of the Dhidilibi. The market of Nydmina excels that of Sansdndi in many respects, and supplies a great proportion of the inhabitants of the western desert. The district intervening between Mekoye and Nydmina is densely inhabited, but informant does not remember the names of the places where he slept. Not far W. from Nygmina a very considerable creek or backwater separates from the river, opening an extensive inland navigation. It divides itself into two branches, the eastern one of which follows an almost northerly direction, approaching close to Tumbdlle, a ksar in the country of A'hel Ydggerd, distant a day and a half S.S.W. from Dynnia, and thence going to Jungfuta, situated to the same distance S. from W. of Dynnia (starting from Dynnia, pass the heat in Farku, sleep in Sillintiggera, arrive in the morning in Jungfiinta), after which the creek turns S. from W. to the country of A'hel Misa.

W. From Kasambdra to Nydmina by way of Murja, and from Mwqja to M'eoye.
1st day. Dili, one of the chief places of the Aswdnek. Pass on the road the villages Zeghdri, probably identical with the of the Arab traveler E'bn Batulta (Journal As. Soc., 1852, p. 50); farther on Serdre, then BNainbila, where you pass the heat of the day. East, at no great distance from Dili, was formerly the ksar called Debbiis. At a short distance E. of B'ainbila is the village K6shi; direction S.E., or rather E.S.E.
2d. Ahissa, a ksar of the tribe of the Teghdaust, of mixed Aswdnek and Arab blood, once very powerful and widely scattered, at present degraded to the condition of "Ihame" or "kh6ddemin," serfs or tributaries, but still distinguished on the score of their learning. The town of Alissa itself is very remarkable on account of its palm-trees, there being besides these no palm-trees in the whole of Bdghena, with the exception of two trees in Kasambdra, where there were
formerly four. About six miles S. S.E. from Alissa lies Safantdra, a large Bambara place. Direction E. of S. You halt during the heat in Yengt. Here you also pass the heat of the first day in going from Aldssa to Jawgra in very short marches; sleep in El Awdna; halt the second day in Segh6, lli, sleep in Jurni (Jor6ni); third day sleep in Kifrice; fourth day sleep in Torangfmbu (Turaghamme); fifth day reach Jawira.

From Alissa to Akdlmb is two and a half days' march S.E. First day Raranrdlle, making a short halt at noon in Tambeb6go; second day Rullhmbo, passing the heat in Fagt; third day Akifmb; distance the same as that between Kibara and Timbufktu. A short distance N. from Akdlmb is Diggena, with a mixed population of Bdmbara, Aswinnek, and Fullin.

3d. Tambe-b6go, a ksar of Bimbara. Rest a couple of hours during the heat of the day in Gala-b6go, likewise inhabited by Bdmbara.

4th. Nygme-b6go, another Bimbara place, about noon.

APPENDIX.
5th. Sleep in the wilderness, having rested at noon in Dambar- (or Damboy-) keseba.
6th. Murja, in the morning.
In going from .urja to Nydmina.
1st day. Khersinne, a Bimbara place; arrive between three and four o'clock, without having halted on the road.
2d. Manzinne.
3d. Karni, a Bdmbara place, about three o'clock P.M.
4th. Ksdr (diminutive form of "ksar") el Mallemin, a place inhabited by Aswinek students, and therefore so designated by the Arabs.
5th. Nyiinina, before noon.

From .urja to Me/coye.
1st day. Gellu, a considerable place. It was formerly dependent upon Murja, but it has succeeded in making itself independent, while the latter place lay deserted and waste for nearly four years, and it has also preserved its independence since the rebuilding of Murja in 1852-3. Several towns or villages in the neighborhood belong to Gellu.
2d. Debila. Pass on the road many ksdr or small towns.
3d. Mekoye. A long day.
I here add a few less distinct data with regard to this region from the information of Didd.
Between Marikoire (probably identical with Mekoye) and Debgla, the following towns and villages: Belala, Dundd, Side, Naweldnna, Kaldmbu, a Bdmbara place, Debila.
Between Debila and Dinga, on a route of a little more than a day's journey, are the following places: Wilter6, Mardnna, Sfrank6ro, Twa, D6cherd, Dinga. Dinga is said by this informant to be the abode of the A'hel Y'eggaxa, a tribe of Blimbara. Between Marikoire and Danfa, in a direction from west to east, two and a half days' fast, or four days' slow traveling: Biile, Tol6kkor6, S61e, Billo, Bdne,
Tdenturubdle, Këssa, Barakéro, Bëssala, two considerable villages or kstir, inhabited by Bdimbara people, Bankorondigta, Danfa.

Between Danfa and Debdla, a two days' journey north, lie the following places: Dogoye, Ar'sa, Mardnna, Nimbara, Babantiuru, Mariam-Babandru, Jefaudu, Bëngel, Debgla.

Between Yt-salime and Sëkolqo, a three days' journey: Nyenchdlle, Nyarinyarinde, Këire (see below), Urli, Sëkolqo; a long uninhabited tract intervening between the last two stations.

X 1. Route from Kasambdra. to Këla direct. 1st day. Chappdto, a ksar of the Bdimbara, a few miles west from DEli. Halt at noon in B'ainbgila.

2d. Jibënfo, a town inhabited by Ftilbe. Pass the heat in U'm el 'Arvik. One day from U'm el 'Artik is Musiweli, a considerable ksar of the Aswinek, about two hours north of Koli. Another road from Mus(Lwelf to Kasambdra leads, 1st, to U'm el 'Ariik; on the 2d day, by Kilsh to Kola; on the 3d, to Serdre; on the 4th, to Kasambdra. One day and a half from Jibënfo is Tangentgha. Halt at noon in Raranntille, a Bimbara village; sleep at Fffrli or Dambo-selli; reach at noon, the next day, Jibdndo.

3d. Kolf, a considerable place; arrive about three o'clock P.M. It is two hours south from Musiweli.

4th. Encamp in the open country, having halted during the heat in Kiimba, which is not farther distant from Koff than Kdbara from Timbaktu, and consists of two villages, separated from each other by a valley, where the market is held; the northern village being called Feibiga, and the southern one Lellfga.

5th. Këla, a Bimbara place, distant two days northwest from Kila, and six from Sansindi. Arrive before noon.

ROUTES THROUGH BA'GHENA-CONTNUED. 701

X 2. Zigzag route from Sansdndi to Kasambdra, according to the Iddsan el ZJu.?khtdr.* Slow rate with camels.

2d day. Karanddgu, dependent upon Bgrmbara. Country level; all ihc houses clay; no reed huts.

4th. Deuf6, a large walled place, under the dominion of Bimbara; residence of a governor; abundance of trees, rice; horned cattle, sheep; much cotton. The natives, dressed in tobes, take their supply of water from wells. In Karanddgu informant changed his north-northeasterly direction for one going west.

5th. Salgkor6, a small village of Bimbara, densely inhabited. Arrive at sunset.

6th. Berninkord, a small village, but well inhabited. Even the smaller towns and villages in this quarter are constructed of clay. Grain in abundance; much honey and butter.

7th. Murja, a large walled place; residence of a governor called Mamdri, and nicknamed by informant Ell1-Bdseruwdl. The inhabitants, including the governor, all idolaters, but dress well; like all the B(Lmbara people, they have a golden stud in the right ear. A great portion of them speak Arabic. They are armed with * muskets and arrows. The country is perfectly level; no valleys, only wells.
8th. Encamp at sunset in the open country. The country here intersected by sandy ridges, nebik or erreg rendering the passage difficult. No cultivation, but tall trees; no water.

9th. Kumba, first town of Bighena, separated by a ravine into two distinct quarters, each ruled by a governor of its own. In the ravine or valley the market is held. The inhabitants are all Mohammedans; speak Bimbara. Informant, from some cause or other, did not take the direct road from Muija to Kasambira by way of Alssa.

10th. Kolf, at sunset; a large walled town, half clay, half reed. The whole country is under cultivation; cattle and sheep; wells; no running water. The Weld e' Rahmdn, the Shdbahin, besides the Aswdnek, have villages on the road. There are also the Fdlbe tribes, the Bowir, with the chief Bdgen6, and the Hsinib6ro, with the chief Sumbdnne, but acknowledging the supremacy of Bdghena.

11th. Rofnga, a temporary dwelling-place of the roving tribes, including the Ildsan. Arrive at four o'clock P.M., having rested at noon.

12th. U’m el ’Ardik, a large village, with shallow wells. Much cotton and indigo. Arrive about noon."

13th. Chapito, a place inhabited by Sellt, a section of Aswinek, Mohammedans; many temporary settlers. Early in the morning.

14th. Kdsh, a large place, residence of the Helbdbu Weld Mahbub, who have no handicraft or market; make war in company with the Arabs; are armed with muskets; their idiom Bdmbara, Aswinek, and Arab; all clay dwellings.

15th. T6norir, small place; as usual, consisting of clay dwellings; residence of the Ardsfyin, with their chief Sidi Sla; herds of cattle; no camels; much honey.

16th. Kser–it Shigge (probably meaning "the manufacturing or weaving towns," shigge being generally the name given to cotton in these quarters). At present the Kesfma, a section of those in Stis, dwell here. Arrival in the morning early.

17th. Kasambgira, large place; clay and reed; residence; at the time of informant's journey, of Mukhtir, son of Mohammed, whom my informant believed able to bring into the field from 6000 to 7000 cavalry, but only a few infantry.

Y. A few Notes on the present state of Bdghena.

The name of Bighena, as it comprises part of the ancient territory of Ghnata, has evidently also supplanted the ancient name. At present it does not comprise a country naturally or politically united; for, naturally considered, Bighena forms part of the district El H6dh, at least that portion of it which is most favored by nature; and in a political point of view it consists of the most heterogeneous elements, comprising districts inhabited by Aswinek, Arabs, and Fulldn. The former, even at the end of the last century, were very powerful, when they became known to Venture under the name of Marka, - through the medium of those two

* It would seem, from many indications, that this informant describes the country in the more flourishing state which it enjoyed some years previously to my visit to Negroland. t Venture, Vocabulaire Berbure, ed. Jaubert, Appendix, p. 225.

APPENDIX.

Moroccain merchants who visited Paris at that time. This name is given to them by the Bdmbara, who call their country Marka-kanne or kanda, and are greatly
intermixed with them. The Fulln hereabouts also formerly had great power, and have become famous under the name Kowtr.
The Aswainek, Swgnfnki, Sbe, or Wdkord, were the original inhabitants of the country, and once formed the principal stock in the vast and glorious empire of Ghdnata, the ruling class not improbably belonging to the Pullo stock, the Leuklethiopes, who were settled in this very region since the time of Ptolemy, till they were overpowered by the nearly-related tribe of the Mandingoes or Jtili, who, on the ruins of the empire of Ghtnata, founded a new empire, extending its influence over the whole middle course of the great river. This new empire was called "Melle," from melle, a word meaning "free," "noble," as the dominating tribe of the Mandingoes called themselves, in opposition to their oppressed brethren, the Aswdnek, just in the same manner as the free, roving portion of the Berbers from ancient times seem to have called themselves Mizigh, Imfoshagh, in opposition to the degraded settlers in the towns. The feeble remains of the empire of Melle, which had been nearly annihilated by the Songhay, were extinguished, as it seems, jin the beginning of the reign of Mtilh Ism'afl, when the Arabs on the one side, and the Bambara on the other, began to take the lead in those quarters, while the Ftfbbe or Fullan appeared in the background.
The catastrophe of the extinction of this last remnant of the empire of Melle is not without interest in the modern history of the western part of Central Africa. For a civil war having arisen between the royal princes Dibo and Sag6ne, sons of Ferdngh Mahmtid, the late king or ruler of Melle (the title "Ferdngh," instead of the more exalted one of Mansa, showing his reduced state of rank), all the most powerful tribes in that part of the continent took part in the quarrel: one faction being formed by the B6.mbara, who, in the mean time, had won Sdgo from their masters and near relations the Mandingoes, the Weld Mazik, the noblest portion of the Weld Mebgrck, and the A'hel Semb6ru—that is to say, a section of the Fullin, who meanwhile had settled in these quarters; while the opposite party consisted of the Runm, or Erm, the Moroccain conquerors of Songhay, who had settled down in certain places of that vast empire, and intermarried with the natives; the Zenigha; the Weld 'Alilsh, a very warlike tribe, mentioned above; and the A'hel Mdsa, or Sdro, a section of the Wikor6. In this struggle the capital of Melle was destroyed; and while the people of Bimbara took possession of the southwestern portion of its dominions, the Welhd Mebirek, with their friends the Welid Maztik, rendered themselves masters of its northeastern districts. For Henmin, the son of B6hedel, son of Mebdrek, who had led this tribe in the sanguinary and long-lasting war, received from the hands of Miliy Ism'afl, the energetic emperor of the Gharb, as a sort of feudal dominion, the lordship of Blghena; and his successors have at least partly retained it up to this day. I here give a list of these chiefs, adding the length of their reigns, wherever I was able to make it out:
'Omir (A'mmer) Weled Henntin, a powerful chief, who has given his name to the ruling tribe, which, after him, is called Weld Om(r (A'mmer), a name corrupted by Park into Lrdamar.
'Ali Weled 'Omdr ruled almost forty years; was visited by Park shortly before his death.
'Om6ir Weled 'Ali, ruled about thirteen years.
Mohammed Weled 'Om-r was chief about the same number of years.
'All Weled Mohammed was chief seven years.
Heuntin Weled Mohammed murdered his brother 'Alf, but was chief only four months, being murdered in his turn by
Mukhtr, a near relative of his, who was chief for about twelve years.
Babiine succeeded him. Between this chief and Hdmel Weled 'All e' Sheikh
Weled Henmin Weled Bohedel, there arose a civil war, which lasted seven years, devastating all Bighena, and weakening especially the power of the Arabs. At the end of seven years Hdmel died, Bbahne, who altogether ruled about nine years, surviving him by one year. He was succeeded by
'Ali Weled el Mukhtdr, the present chief of the Weldd Mebek, who in 1853 had ruled two years.
As for the Fullhn, or Fdilbe, they had become very numerous in Bighena, and were in possession of several kstir, principally Diguni, Jib6nfo, Kemefiy6mo, Nara, Keada, Babdru, and Gurtinge, till they were driven out of these places by 'Omdr

HISTORICAL FACTS RELATING TO BA'GIIENA. 703
Weled Henniln, when most of the ksr remained deserted. But the policy of the Fullhn of Bighena became entirely changed when their brethren on the other side of the river, led on by the fanatical and energetic chieftain Mohammed Lebbo, raised the standard of the Jihad in the year 1821. Jealous of their political independence, which thus became threatened, they then joined the Arabs in their struggle against the new empire of Hamda-Allihi, and supported them. Nevertheless, favored as he was by the civil war among the latter, the chief A'hmudu, son of Mohammed Lebbo, made considerable progress in Bighena, which was not arrested until recently. At present Sumbtinne, son of Bti-Bakr, the present emir of the Fulldn in Bighena, has built a new ksr, the place El Imbediye mentioned above, situated a few miles east from Lombo Tendi, and to the north of another ksr called Gurtinge. There is also a Pullo emir in Bighena, of the name A'bi El H-ji Ibrahima, who seems to enjoy considerable authority.
As for the Aswinek of Bighena, who, as will have been gleaned already from the itineraries, are masters of many kstir, their present policy is said to consist in keeping prudently in the background, and economizing their strength for some great exertion in favor of their own independence. I here insert a list of the several sections into which the Aswinek are divided, as far as I have become acquainted with them:
The Kom~ten, in Sansdndi or Sans~inni, which originally was an Aswinek town.
The Sise, not unlikely related with the Stisu.
The Stsa.
The Konne.
The Berta.
The Berre.
The Dttkker or Dckerit.
The Silldwa or Sillit.
The Kdgordt, a very remarkable tribe, distinguished by a lighter hue, and, according to report, even by a peculiar idiom, while in other respects, especially by the three cuts which they make along both cheeks, they approach closer to the customs of the Bdmbara and A'he Mdsa.

The Kdnratdt.

The Jdwardt, speaking nothing but the pure Aswinek language, and divided into the two sections of the Welhd Ddbo and the Swdgi, the latter especially being very numerous and warlike.

The F6fandt.

The Drisit.

The chief of the Aswdnek in Bdghena is Milsa, son of Benndik, who resides in Ershdn, at no great distance W. from Bisnga.

Related to the Aswdnek are also the Sdro, whose seats are one day S. from Jinni, and who, together with the Bdmbara, fight against the Ftilbe. Their former chief was Chong Weled Mdsa.

The hostilities carried on between the inhabitants of the northern banks of the Niger or Dhidliba as a whole, on the one side, and the Ftilbe of Hamda-Aljdi on the other, exercise their influence also upon the relation which exists between the Arabs of Bighena and the Bimbara, which therefore at present can not but be a friendly one.

On the whole, the country of Bighena, which well deserves the attention of Europeans, is not less capable of fixed settlements than it is fit for rehila life, or nomadic wandering, although it is not suited for the camel. Besides cultivation of dinkhn, or, as it is here called, bishen or hni, and dhurra or sdba, wild rice is procured from the numerous swamps formed in the rainy season, as is also the case in the whole of El H6dh. The trees most common in Bighena are the tddum or baobab, at least in the southern districts, the r6ma or Uyene, the chigfit, the baferdwa, and the adrnal; of the date-tree I have spoken above.

Z. Route from Kasambdra to Tishzt or Shdtu, from the information of El Imdm, a native of the latter place.

1st day. Mabruk, a large well or hasi.

5th. Ajwer, a large and much-frequented well, distant a long day's journey W. from the celebrated well "Bir Nwil." As far as AjwFr the direction is almost N., but here it becomes N.W.

10th. Agdrijit, in former times nothing but a well, but in the year 1850, owing

704

APPENDIX.
to a civil war having broken out in Tishit, one section of the Welld Bille left their home and settled near this well, where they built a small ksar or village. Here the direction of the road changes to the W.

11th. Tishft, or, as the place is called by its original inhabitants, Shdtu. These indigenous inhabitants of Tishit are the Mdsina, a section of the Asw6nek or'Azdr, consisting of two divisions, one of darker and the other of lighter color. These Mdsina are the founders of the kingdom of MAsina or Mdsfn, whose centre was the island or rde formed by the Mdyo Balldo and the Miyo Ranndo, with Tendngu as its chief place. It is still an important market-place. Tishit is said by
the Arabs to have been founded by 'Abd el Mtfmen, about the fifth century of the Hejra; but that means only that about the period indicated the Berbers took possession of the town, the original name of which they thus changed into Tishft. At present there live in the town, intermixed with the Misina, the Weldd Bille, who about two centuries ago formed an extremely rich and powerful tribe, but part of whom, as stated before, have at present emigrated. The consequence is that the town has decayed greatly, and seems scarcely to contain at present more than about 3000 inhabitants. Besides the Weldd Bille, there live also in Tishit a certain number of Zuwaye or Tolba, especially thi A'hec Hindi Nislim. Tisbit lies not far from the southern foot of the K6dia, which encircles El H6dh, and there is at no great distance from it a sebkha where an inferior kind of salt is obtained. The only produce of the place are dates of various quality, the names of which are as follows: Bdsebdrk, Ddrmakfll, Ddrmasdggin, Batiye, Mandinga, Gdti, Habbes, Gctff, Diram, Birkerdwi, Zengit, Tamaranfye. All other articles of food are brought from Nydmi, which forms the great market-place of Tishit and the surrounding country.

There is another more westerly road leading from Kasambira to Tishft, and reaching on the 4th day the well called "Bir F6g," or perhaps "f6k," meaning "the upper well;" on the 8th, another well or hasi called "A'jwe," and bringing the traveler to Tishit on the 10th before noon.

AA. List of stations between Tishit and Valdta.
1 short march, A'gerijit, the well where the road from Kasambdra joins. 1 short march, Tuwdjinit. 1 long march, Bottat el abds. 1 short march, A'ratdn. 1 short march, 'Im6d elin, hills or columns*ofsand, one of them called 'Amad el Abiad. This station is very important, as it is the point where the direct road from Wadin to Waldta joins this track. See lower down. i day, Bi-mehaye. 1 day, I'gheld Timas6ra. - J day, Shebbi, "m'aden sheb abiadh," mines of white alum. I long day, Ojdf. 1 day, Tagorirct. I day, El 'Aydn Khanf6reten Aisa. 1 day, Wddi Niti, with wells (hasidn) and igheldd. 1 day, Waldta.

BB. Route from Tishit to Bot-hadie.
3d day. Tyggebo, a ksar or village inhabited by the Teghdaust, a very remarkable tribe, about whom I shall say more farther on, and by the Tjakdnt. The village belongs to the district called Erkiz, perhaps identical with what others call Taskast. About ten miles west from Tyggebo there is an ancient place called Nyaddsh, inhabited likewise by the Teghdaust.
4th. Ergdebe, or rather a resting-place in the hilly district called by that name. In another part of this hilly tract, on the frontier of Af6l1e, a party of Zuwaye have recently built a ksar or small town of the name of Makdmet.
5th. E'nwasdr, a shallow well or hasi.
10th. Bti-bothd, a well or hasi, evidently near a bothi or swampy depression. Between E'nwasir and this place there are other watering-places, but informant has forgotten their names.
11th. J6k, a well or hasi.
14th. Limfdru, a ksar or village inhabited by the Medrmbmerin, a tribe of the Kunta.
16th. Jigge, a valley with plenty of water in the rainy season.
17th. El Mal, a small island in a lake of fresh water, and not even drying up during the dry season.
19th. Krd el sfar, a creek of the bahr Fdta or Senegal, so called by the Arabs.
21st. Bir el Ghila, a well.
22d. Testaye, a well.
23d. Bothddiye or El Bot-h, as Fort St. Joseph seems to be called by the Arabs.

STATIONS BETWEEN WADA’N AND WALATA.

705

CC. Stations on the route from Waddn to Tishit.
5 days, Bd-Seffye. J day, Khat el Moina or Shwdkh. 1 day, Lobdr. I long, Tin-tt or Ghaldb c’ ddr. 1 day, Felish el milha. 1 day, Kditib. 1 day, El Badiydt. 1 day, El Jerdiyit. 1 day, Ganbe, a well or hasi, with date palms. 1 day, Dikil ghilcb. 1 day, Tishit. From Wad6,n to the sebkha Ijil, a salt basin at the foot of a considerable mountain, is ten days’ journey with laden camels, and seven with unladen ones going at a swift rate. 1 day, Tagtlif, on the northern side of the valley. J day, U’m el bdhd. 2 days, Aushish, in the district called Maght6r, consisting of high sandy downs. J day, Bot-h-6 el haye. 1 day, El Argiye, the nearest well to the salt lake. One day S. from the sebkha is the high mount Ijil.

DD. Stations on the route between Waddn and Waldta.
3J days, Warin. 1 short, Tsserat-d-Lihiat. 1 long, Temnakarfrít. 1 day, Ijdifà, all sandy downs. 1 day, Akdratin e’ sbot and Akirafn el had. 1 day, El Mehúmer. I day, El Ksar-raw6t. 1 day, Engdwel. 1 day, Agamiyirt. 1 day, Im6dhelsn; here this route joins the former one. 1 day, Bd-mehiye. 1 short, Begdre, a dhaye. J day, Shebbi. 1 day, Keddtmu. J day, Warish. 1 short, El Atilt (El Ethelet?) serrye. 1 short, Rek E’rdhedhir. 1 long, El Ogdidh el himmil. 1 day, Rodh el hamra. 1 day, El Felfsh. 1 day, El Derrdmbekdt. day, Walita.

EE. Stations between Waddn and El Khat, by a circuitous route.
1 short day, Tandshirt, a hasi with date-trees; "tani" means vale. 1 day, A’herdr. 4 days, A’wakan; this part of the road passes through a desert tract without wells, called Tdyarit Idiw el Hij. 1 day, Sharaniye. 1 day, Hasi el harka. I day, Itflen, a mound. 1 day, El Khat, having passed the heat in BdSeffye. El Khat is a rich valley, which I shall say more about in the general account of El H6dh, and a very important locality where most of the routes traversing this region join. A’wakan, which will be mentioned in a following itinerary, is thus tolerably well determined.

FF. From Waddn to Rashid, by way of El Khat.*
1 day, Roj, a well. I day, Shingit, an ancient town, which has become very famous in the whole of the East on account of its having given its name to all the Arabs of the West. The reason of this is said to be that a distinguished man, a native of this place, of the name of ’Abd e’ Rahmdn, visited the court of Hartln e’ Rishid. I shall say more about this place farther on. I day, encamp beyond the A’kela without a well. 1 day, Hawdshti. 1 day, Aw(Lzgar (identical with A’wakan?), with a hasi at the foot of the k6dia, leaving the small town of A’tar eastward. 1 day, Tknus and El Kh6sa. 1 day, El Sharanfye, a hasi or well belonging to the Weldd el Waifi, and still forming part of A’derdr e’ temar. I day, El Khat Smnirr, a tract with many
wells, but, as it seems, on high ground, from whence Tejigja, Ksar el Barka, Rashid, and even Tisigi may be seen. 1 day, Tagdnet el bddha. 1 day, Rashid. GG. From A'tar to Tejigja or Rashid.

N.B.-A'tar is two days E. of Shingit and Qjdft, another ksar or village which is two days S.E. of Shingit, and one day S.S.W. of A'tar. (These data I had not made use of in my map.)

1 day, Tozar6tfn, with a well or hasi. 1 short, Zenbe, a dhaye or pond. I day, A'ds, difficult march, high k6dia. 1 day, a locality a short distance to the south of Shingft. 3 days through the A’kela, without a well; then reach Kider Wdmu, a well three days from Shingit. I day, A’wakan, the above-mentioned well. 1 day, Hasi il harka. 1 day, Shwdkh, or Khat el Moina, on the south side of the Khat. 1 day, El Laye, a well. J day, Tantishight. 1 short, Atwdl and Aw6n Tisba. 1 day, E’ Nwalik Warzdk. I day, either Tejigja or Rashid, two villages in Tagdnet, the distance of both places being the same. Tejfgja is a place of considerable renown.

N.B.-This itinerary was not made use of for the map of the western part of the desert which I sent home from Timb(,kta.

VOL. III.-Y Y

706 APPENDIX.

HH. From Tfigja to Jdfena or Jdfunzi.

2 days, Wed~n, with a large dhaye or pond. 1 short, Adfrg el Mejfdj. 1 day, Dhd el Rodiye, passing by Daddad. I day, E’ Nugga. J day, Korkol, a k6dia or hill at the frontier of Tezizzay, between Adkdr and El Kddia. J day, Gdrrugdt. 1 short, Agydrsh Gasimu. 1 day, Gtandge nwamdlen (wan mellen ?) two mountains with hasidn. 4 day, Kifa, a well or hasi. 1 day, U’m el A’khseb, a dhaye or tamurt, surrounded by baobab-trees. 1 day, Samba-sandiggi, a well, with plenty of sgillem (the dilm bush) and deleb palms. 1 day, Isil, a dhaye. 1 day, Gdrallah, a large dhaye. The district Asaba is south from here. 1 day, Erish. 2 day, Elgflte el Khaddra, a large dhaye or pond full of fish. 1 day, encamp in the open country. 1 day, Jdfena or Jifunif, or rather Gdhgi or Gri, the capital of that province, which is four or five days south of Bowdr or ’Akerift, a well in Mesfila.

II. Route from Ksar el Barlka-Bd-telimit.

Ksar el Barka is one short day southwest from Rashid.

1st day, Gebbu, a tamurt or dhaye where sdba or dhurra and wheat are cultivated by the Welid Sidi Haiballa, who usually encamp here. 2d, Tisfgi, a short well at the foot of a k6dia, from whence the passes crossing the range of sand-hills toward the south are seen. 3d, El Jdiwelt e’ Tw.ma, two of these passes, either of which you may choose. 4th, U’m c’ ddr, a hasi or well belonging to the district Agdn.* 5th, El Aini, a hasi or well. 6th, Tit drikt or A’sabay, a well about thirty-five fathoms in depth, and the most eastern of ”1l A’bigr,” or the deep wells, which have given their name to the whole district called ”El A’bigr.” Besides the wells here mentioned, the most famous wells of ”El A’bigr” are the following, all lying west of Aft6t: A’-dddeke, Bd-Telehfye, Ruzelin, Bir el Barka, Dukhn, Bti-Tweringe, Ydres, Btf-Tumbdski. Farther to the northwest from Aftdt, and at the distance of about two days north from Bd-Tweringe, is a famous
well called Bd-telimft, but not to be confounded with the well of the same name mentioned hereafter. In the district of Aft6t there are only shallow wells. 7th, El Wastha, a deep well dug in stony ground. 8th, Twerslt, a group of shallow wells. 9th, a well, being the property of a man called E' Sheikh el Kddhi, with an encampment of the Ijdch6. 10th, Tin-dmmmer AbMl, a well. 11th, Butulimit, a large well or hasi near the camping-grounds of the Brikena, much frequented. From here Bot-hadiye is said to be only one day and a half distant. If that is the case, the latter must be identical with some place in the "Ile de Morfil."

KK. Route from Ksar el Barka to Kaliaide. 2d day, TU5igfi, the locality mentioned above. 3d, Ldtfatir, a large tamurt or pond. 4th (long), Agiyar, a well or hasi. 5th, Gfmf, a hasi, belonging, like the foregoing one, to the district Aft6t. 6th, Kerdni, a hasi. 7th, El Wad, a valley without water. 8th, El A'ruwu, a'hasi. 9th, encamp in the wilderness without water. 10th, Shemmima, a name which is given by the Arabs to the whole district along the north side of the Senegal. You arrive at the river opposite two villages called (by the Arabs) Guru 'l hajar. It seems not to be identical with the Guri 'l haire of the Fdlbe, as that is one short day from Bakel, while our route evidently follows a far more westerly course, even west of the one which I am about to give.

LL. Route from Kahaide to the frontier of Tagdnet, direction N.N.E., according to Hdj Tbrahim from Kahaide.

1st day. E'njekddi, or Tisflit TW4eb Mahmdd, a well with an encampment of Arabs called collectively by my informant Shnagft and Limtdna. 2d. Monge, a village of the Limtdna, consisting of tents made of camels' hair. 3d. Moyet, another village of the Limtdna, or rather two sections of this once powerful but now degraded Berber tribe, the Dagebimbera (this is probably not their proper name), and the Weld 'e' Sheffiga. 4th. Basengiddi, a village inhabited by the Limtdna, the Twa44r (a section of the former), El Hejdj, the Rehila, El Heba, and the Weld 'Abd-Allah. The country rather hilly. * On my MS. map I placed Aghn wrong, giving It an intermediate position between Aft6t and Asba.

FROM BAKEL TO TAGA'NET. 707

5th. Wanja, or Jemfr, as you choose, both of them being settlements of Arabs, and close to each other. Here live the Tagit, the Idiw el Hassan, the Weld Biydri, and the Jdjeba, the food of these people consisting of sour milk, dhurra, and fruits. From this spot you obtain a view of the mountains of Taginet and Asaba. 6th. Marde, a well with an encampment of the same tribes as Wanja. The country is hilly and rich in herbage, the mountains or vales being adorned with plenty of trees. 7th. Tdri, a pool of stagnant water in the rainy season, while during the dry season only a well is to be found here. The country rather hilly. 8th. A'sherdm, a settlement of different tribes. The mountains of Taginet seem to be quite near. 9th. Tisiit Akerarer, a widi in a mountainous tract, with scattered groups of tents inhabited by Arabs.
10th. Dwenki, a mountain with a pool of stagnant water at its foot, but only in the rainy season; during the dry season only a well is found.

11th. Yogbdshi, a mountain with temporary inhabitants. Few trees.

12th. Nufni, a mountain pass, "the entrance or gate of Taginet," the mountains being very high.

From Nufni to Kasr el Barka is a march of two days.

AM. Route from Bakel to the frontier of Tagdnet by way of Asdba.

1st day. Samba-rainji, a considerable place inhabited by Aswainek, and situated in a level tract inclosed between the foot of the mountains and the river.

2d. Hasi Weled 'Ali Biba, a well lying in the vale or depression inclosed between the two mountain ranges along which your road winds. K6mand6, a considerable AswfLnek village, lies on a more easterly road.

3d. Hasi Shagir, another well, with a camp of Arabs in the dry season.

4th. Tektfike, as the place is called by the Arabs, or Bti-tdmke, as it is called by the Aswinek and Fullen or Fiilbe, the population consisting chiefly of Aswgnek. The village lies in the midst of the mountains; the houses are built of clay, and a few gardens are cultivated in the neighborhood, for although there is no running stream, water is said to be found at the depth of only one foot under ground, and the mountains, or "gid6," as they are called in Asw~nek, are full of trees. The country nominally under the dominion of Fdta.

5th. Jibili, or, as the name is pronounced by the Arabs, Jubelli, a village situated in the midst of the mountains, at times inhabited, at others deserted. On pursuing your road you cross a mountain ridge, and then wind along a valley. The mountains contain excellent rock for grindstones, shaped in quadrangular forms, and like the stone found in the mountains near Mekka.

6th. Btinga, an Aswfnek village surrounded by steep rocks; some gardens are cultivated.

7th. Moila, an Aswinek village. The road keeps always in the mountainous tract.

8th. Samma, an Aswfuek village.

9th. Tattopitti, formerly a village, but at present deserted.

10th. W6kurd, as it is called by the Fullin, or Wo16 by the natives, a large place situated in a deep valley or irregular vale, the rivulet Gallifla flowing at no great distance toward the W. from the place.

11th. Babbu, a village in a mountainous tract.

12th. Kachukor6ne, another village.

13th. Gellil.

14th. Garif Bafal, situated in the midst of the mountains, and being the tempo.

15th. Fdmo-bfche, another settlement of that kind.

16th. Fdmo-hlwel, the same.

17th. Nebgk, a place of the same nature; mountainous tract continues.

18th. A'wenet A'r, the beginning of Taginet, the southeastern corner of which is here hemmed in by the mountains of Asiba.

Asdba, according to this informant, is a broad mountain range, diverging as a northern branch from the main range, the general direction of which is toward
Bundu, from which country it is separated by the river. The Fdlbe call this mountainous tract "Hairi-n-gar," and the Aswdnek call it Gidd.

APPENDIX.

NN. Route from Hamda-Alldhi, the present capital of Mdsina, to Meshila, and thence to Kahaide, according to Hdj I'brahii; route rather winding, and to be controlled by other routes which I have already given.

1st day. Kunna (see above), a small town, but an important market-place, situated originally on the western bank of the Mdyo balldo, on an island in the Dhitliba, inclosed by the Mayo balldo, "the blue river," and the M(iyo dhann4o, or "the white river," but at present built on the eastern shore of the Mdyo balldo. What is very remarkable, it is said to be inhabited by Songhay. A short march of three hours.

2d. Ndikuma, a place or district situated on the island, or "rilde," inclosed by the two branches of the river. Here in the beginning of his career resided Mohammed Lebbo. There seem to be several hamlets, one of which is called Se'bberra. 3d. Tummay, still on the island or ride.

4th. Sdredina, a large place, and evidently one of the first towns converted to Islam in these regions, situated on the western bank of the Mdyo dhanndo, which you cross here, at half a day's distance E.N.E. of the ancient town Zdjha or Jdika. Inhabitants Songhay.

5th. T6gor6, a group of villages or hamlets, inhabited by the Fullbe conquerors. In T6gor6 the road divides, one branch leading N.E. in two short days to i7endngu, the original capital of Mdsina, passing by Tumdra, a large district inhabited by Fdlbe. *

6th. Som6girf, a considerable place inhabited by B~mbara of the country.

7th. Diggiserd, an important B~mbara town at some miles distance S.W. from Tendngu, the road leading to which place, and from thence to Yd-salime, whither a person may also proceed from Diggiserd (see above), informant has left on his right. Country open, adorned with zzyphus.

8th. Fetok6le, a small place. The country rich 4h trees, the principal produce consisting in rice and cotton.

9th. Kgere, a B~mbara town, governed by an officer of the name of Btfgoni. The country hereabout rich in cattle and camels, but the wells are said to have an enormous depth, according to informant, not less than sixty fathoms. Cotton strips are the standard currency of the market.

14th. S6ko166, a town inhabited by B~mbara people, but belonging to Mdsina. Between the two stations you traverse for five days an open country inhabited by Arab tribes, as the Welid S'aid, the Welid 'Alifsh, and the Geldgema, and rich in elephants, giraffes, and buffaloes, abundance of water being found in stagnant pools. On the second day of this march you leave the town of Kila on your left.

19th. Aldso or Ahissa, a place belonging to Bdghena, and inhabited by the Weld "Ommin. The country which you traverse is thickly covered with trees, and is the abode of the Nimddi, a wild set of people, who are stated by my informant to
possess nothing but dogs, with which they hunt the large antelope called "bakr el wihesh" by the Arabs. (The name "Nimgdi" is probably not the real name of these people.) You sleep four nights in the open country.

22d. Kabdde, a well with temporary settlers. Pass two nights in the open country without a dwelling.

26th. Md-sgweli, a considerable place of Bdghena. You pass on your march several other places, the names of which informant does not remember.

27th. Ddguni, a middle-sized town.

28th. Debdmnpa, a large town of Bghena. All the houses are built of clay.

29th. Tor6ngu, another place of importance.

30th. Tfnid, a small town about seven days N.W. from Kolf, another town of Bghena. Tindi is inhabited by Aswdnek or Swaninki.

31st. Khat e' dem, a temporary dwelling-place of Arabs belonging to the tribes of the Weldd Mohammed, the Funti, and the Henin, with the Sheikh Mohammed Fddhel, son of the protector Mukhtdr. All the dwellings consist of tents of camels' hair. Khat e' dem forms the beginning of the district called El H6dh.

33d. Tokko, a large pool of stagnant water, round which there is an encampment of Arabs.

35th. Derfs, a dwelling-place of the "White Arabs," as my informant calls them. Many tribes are wandering hereabout; but almost all the towns are at present in

* An interesting account of this district is given in Hodgson's " Notes on North Africa," p. 0, from the information of a slave in the United States.

FROM MESHI'LA TO KAHAIDE. 709

the hands of the Fdlbc or Fulhin. Namd, the small town mentioned above as having been built by the Shurfa, is three days E. a little N. from Deris.

37th. Nwal, a well with an encampment of Arabs.

42d. Tddirt, a well with tents of the same.

47th. Libe, a well of the same character.

50th. Mesila, a spring of running water at the foot of the k6dia which surrounds El Hdh. The water of Mesfla is said to run toward the south.

N.B.-It must be borne in mind in laying down this routt that my informant, a Pdfilo, wished to avoid the seats of the Weldd Mebdrek, and therefore followed in his generally northerly direction a very roundabout way.

56th. Afiflle, or rather an open Arab village in the district so named, the mountainous country having been entered on the fifty-second day. Afille borders on Knaarta, and its eastern part is inhabited by Bdmbara, but the northern portion is inhabited by the following Arab tribes: the Fita, the Welid e’ Nisr, the Elkwdzi or Lighwdzi, the Askir, the Welid B6de, and by two tribes of the Zuwaye or Merbetin, viz., the Tenwaijji6 and the LUghelel. Some of the divisions of these tribes are settled in the mountains, while others live in the plain called El Khdnashish, rich in pasture-grounds, between which and the mountains there is a small town called Tigguba.

59th. Tftirgi, a well with Arab settlers. Country mountainous.
62d. U’mmat el adhm, a well. The last three days no water is found along the road, while in general, even in the tract intervening between two stations marked by my informant, watering-places are occasionally met with.


73d. Ttigguba, an open village inhabited by Arabs. Many springs in the mountains.

76th. Waya, another Arab village.

78th. Meshfla, called by my informant "rds el Fifa," as the beginning of Ftdta (at least in former times).

I now give the route from Meshla to Kahaide:

1st day. Sam6ga, a mountain belonging to the mountainous district Astiba.

2d. Wikord, a village inhabited by Aswgnck, but subjected to Ftita as well as to the Zendgha Arabs, to whom they pay tribute.

3d. Galfila, a village inhabited by Aswdnek, and dependent upon Wtikor6. It is situated at the foot of a mountain, from the top of which a brook of living water rushes down. This water-course is called Galdila, like the village, and is said to be full of fish.

4th. Dd il Kurbin, an Arab settlement on a wiidf, with running water during the rainy season, which is said to flow into the Senegal. Country not under cultivation.

5th. Jamlanfye, another dwelling-place of the Zendigha on the same wddf.

6th. Wau Simberldm, a high mountain ridge extending toward Bundu.

7th. Gflte, another locality in the same ridge. The country not under cultivation, and only temporarily inhabited after the rains.

8th. Tash6t, a wiidf with water in the rainy season. No cultivation.

9th. Bti-’Amdid, an open tract of country, the pasture-grounds for the cattle of the Fulln.

10th. Tara-mdil, a locality on the same wddf. The country full of the large species of antelopes, giraffes, elephants, and buffaloes, and richly clad with large trees.

11th. Shilliylul, the same wddi richly adorned with trees. The country nearly level, only broken by a few hills. Abundance of cattle.


13th. Bailabtibi, on the same wddi. The country hilly; nothing but pasturegrounds.

14th. Pfittangdl, another settlement of Fulldn shepherds.

15th. Bogilchele, a place of the same description. At this point the Gurgul balleo, or black Gurgul, a small water-course coming from the N.E. in the direction of Gallila, joins the Gurgul dhanngo, running from Akerdre in Tagdnet, the two forming henceforward a considerable water-course, at least during the rainy season. According to this informant, the small craft from Kahaide can navigate this creek, but of such communication the French accounts of the Senegal give no indication.

16th. Maktachdichi, or, as the spot is called in the Fulfillde language, Lumbirde-chiltink6be, a large pool of stagnant water, with river-horses, and surrounded by fine pasture-grounds. A section of the Limtdna are said to cultivate this ground.
17th. Rak Hilhdb, the plain of Hilhibe; property of the Brikena.'
18th. Kerfit, the fields of Kahaide.
19th. Kahaide, on the W. side of a great bend of the Senegal. On your road you pass the large village Juri-himburi.

I will here add a list of the chief divisions of Fdta, including the Wolof country, such as Tbrahim communicated them to me: L6re, Damga, Ferl6, Nange-h6re, the centre of Fdta, Tor6, Walbrek, Nddr, U'l, Niyn, Bachfr, Kiminta, Ballinndiingu Silu, Joll6, Kay6r.

00. From Meshila to Bakel. Very short marches.
1st day. Samba-sandiggi, a w6di in the wilderness, with Arab settlers.
2d. Dgwodi, a widi.
3d. Nakbele, settlement of Sidi Makhmd, of the Zentgha.
4th. Dundundlli; few settlers.
5th. Sdlefdl, village of Fillbe.
6th. Tek(ket, all along the valley Mesfla or Meshfla, which runs to the Senegal.
7th. Y6ra, village or town of Fd1be, Aswinek, and Arabs dwelling together.
8th. Ab6l6, a hamlet of Arabs, Welid Wdis, and Full-n Rungf6be, under the chiefs 'Omgr Weled Bdi-Sdfi. W-di Mangol. Few mountains.
9th. Swdna, a hamlet of Fd1be, with a few Arabs.
10th. Nahhd; one day E. of the town Butti.
11th. Biyajim, a small hamlet of Fd1be Rung6be and Hel M6din Alla.
12th. TUsli, small hamlet.
13th. Melge, large village inhabited by Fd1be and Hel M6din Alla.
14th. Village of Chermo-Makkam, who died some time before, when his son, Baidal Chermo succeeded him.
15th. Ddr Salm6, now Aswenek, formerly Hel M6din Alla.
16th. Kidibfl6o, a small hamlet. Aswdnek.
18th. Waigille, a middle-sized place of Aswinek. Country level, small hills, many trees, especially the kuddi. Always along the valley Mangol or Mesila.
19th. Kibu, large place of Aswinek, on the point where the Mesila joins the Senegal.
20th. LUni, considerable place of Asw~nek, on the S. side of the river, which you cross.
21st. Kot-ra, a village of Aswdnek close to Senegal.
22d. Gitchebul (Gditubd of the French), the point where the Faldmd joins the Senegal. On the opposite side lies Yotintur6.
23d. Artnddu, a village of Aswdnek, having crossed the Faldm.
24th. Yiferd, on the Senegal.
25th. Golme, Asw~nek under Bundu.
26th. Guri ’l haire, Aswinek.
27th. Bakel.

Even beyond Bakel, toward Kahaide, the seats of the Aswinek, Cheddo, or Wdkord extend as far as the isolated mountain Waunde, which lies on the N.E. shore, and that is evidently the reason of this tract on the N. bank of the Senegal being called Gingara or Wngara, the country of the W6ikord.
N.B.-The routes from Waddn and I jil to Skiet el Hamrah, of which I have collected an itinerary, I refrain from communicating, as they have been in some measure superseded by Panet’s route. (Revue Coloniale, 1851.)

ARAB TRIBES IN BA’GHENA.

APPENDIX XI.

LIST OF THE ARAB OR MOORISH TRIBES SCATTERED OVER THE WESTERN PART OF THE DESERT, ACCORDING TO THE DISTRICTS OR NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE DESERT IN WHICH THEY ARE SETTLED.

The original inhabitants of these regions, at least since the middle of the eighth century of our era, were the Berbers, especially the Zendgha, or Senhdja; but these tribes, since the end of the fifteenth century, it would seem, have been pushed back and partly conquered by the Arab tribes to the south of Morocco and Algeria, who either intermingled with them or reduced them to a degraded position. Thus there are especially four classes of tribes: the free warlike tribes, 'Ardb, or Ilardr; the Zuwaye, or peaceable tribes; the Kh6ddemdn, or Lahme, identical in the southwestern quarter with the Zenigha, the degraded tribes; and the Hriratfn, or the mixed stock. The characteristic feature of these Moorish tribes is the guffa, or full tuft of hair; that of the Zendgha the peculiar fashion of wearing the hair called gatiya, as they cut the hair on both sides of the head, and leave nothing but a crest on the crown, from whence a single tress hangs down sometimes to their very feet, or they tie the ends round their waist.

The supposed ancestor of the Moorish tribes is Odd ben Hassan ben A'kil, of the tribe of the Rgtafdn, who is supposed to have come from Egypt.

1. ARAB TRIBES IN BAGHENA.

The Wehid Mebdrek (sing. Mebdrki), divided into the following sections: A'hel '0mir Weldd 'Ali, A'liel Henntim (e' Shidkh).

Fita, separated into the following divisions: Weldd Montin, Welid Dokhanin, A'hel Bdi Sdf.

Fdnti, separated into the following divisions: Weldd Hammu el kohol, A'hel Hammu el biadh, A'hel Mtimmu, A'hel Sidi I'brahfm, Welid Zengghi, A'hel 'Omfir Shemiti.

The following tribes are in a state of dependence upon them, or are, as it is called, their lahme, or their kh6ddemin: Idibuk, Ifoldden, A'hel 'Abd el Wghed, El I-Irretin (no proper name), El Mehdireryfn, these only partly degraded, Yadds; Welid el 'Alia, A'hel A'hemed Henndn, whose kh6ddemdn are the following tribes: El Rowasfil, Welid Sflem, Basim, I'shahin, Weldd Bfle (the brethren of the Welid Bille in Tishit, formerly Arabs, that is to say, free independent Arabs, but at present kh6ddemdn, paying however only the meddriye, and not the kerdma), El 'Abedit, A'hel Uddka.

Next to the large group of the Welid Mebirek are the Welid Mazilk, living in the ksilr together with the Welgd 'Omhir.

Then the E'rmetdt and the Ngj; while in a degraded state are El Shdbahfn and El Habsha.
This is the place to mention a particular group or confederation of warlike tribes called "El Imghdfera," or Meghdfera, and consisting of the Weld el 'Alia, Fitra, Abedgt, Wëddd Mæzitik, A'el e' Zemighi, A'el 'Omfr Shemati.

I. a. ZU-wATE, OR bLERABETIN, IN BAGHENA. The Teghdiust, a mixed tribe, but considered as Arabs: the Eddsan, Geligema, Iddi Beli in B6dghena as well as in El H6dh, Tafililet, said to have nothing in common with Tafildlet.

Gesima, living partly in Bighena partly in El H6dh, and divided into the following sections: Weld Tleb, Idfiw-'Esh, Weld 'Abd el Melek, Tnagit, El Arusiyin (a tribe very powerful in ancient times, to whom belonged Shendn el Ardsi, the famous despot of Waldta and Tezdght), E' Nwazir, A'el T6leb Mohammed. Tenwaijio, who collect the gum and bring it to the European settlements, separated into the following divisions: A'el Yintit, Ijj Bdrke, A'el Bbd, A'el Ibrahim e' Shidkh (held in great veneration).

These four divisions live in Bighena, while the two following are scattered over the district called Ergdbee, where the Tenwaijio are very numerous: Weld Del-ma intis (sic), Weldd Bit Mohammed.

APPENDIX.

I. Zemiirik, separated into numerous divisions: Welid Mds, El Horsh, El Hirebit, Jawaule, El Mekhainze, Ardll, Weldd Shdftu, El A'thamin, Weld 'Aleydt, A'el Dombi, A'el 'Abd (these the Shitdkh), A'el e' Sheg-r, Weld e' Dhfb, E' Zemirik (properly so called), very numerous.

Between B6dghena and Taginet live the Welad Lighwdzi, the relatives, but likewise the enemies of the Welid Mebgrek.

II. MOORISH TRIBES IN EL HODH.

El H6dh is a large and extensive district, which has received this name, "the basin," from the Arabs, on account of its being surrounded by a range of rocky hills, "El K6dia," at the western foot of the eastern extremity of which lies Walita, and near its southern foot Tishit, both of which belong to El H6dh. The N.E. part of this district, which some centuries ago was densely covered with small towns and villages, stretching from half a day S. from Walita to a distance of about three days, and being inclosed on the W. and E. by "ellib" or light sand-hills, is called A'rik, and is rich in wells, among which the following are the best known: El Ked4ye, Unkifsa, Btf-il-gedxir, Nejd, A'we-tof-n, El Imbediyelt, El Mebdiiya, Br' Ash, Rgijat, Teshimmimet, Tekifli, Nwaiydr, Tanwallåd, and not far from it Ardngis el telliye and Ardngis el gibliye, Tunbuske, N. from the large well Nwdl, mentioned above, El Bedd'a Ummi e' Dtggemdn, &c.

From A'rik, S.W. as far as Mesfla, extends the district called Ajazimera, to which belongs the famous well El U'ggela, called "surret el 16dh," on account of its being at an equal distance, viz., five days, from Tishit, Waldta, Tagdinet, and B6dghena. Besides these, some of the most famous wells of this district are Ajwdr, almost at its northern extremity, F6gis, Bi-Derge, Bir el Hawdshar, Aj6sh, Gunndu, El Be'adh, these latter near Ergdbee. The N. border of El H6dh, stretching along the base of the k6dia between Walhta and Tishit, is called El Batn. There are besides several districts in El H6dh called Aukdr, a Berber name identical with A'kela, and meaning a waterless district consisting of isolated sand-hills. One
Aukir, perhaps that meant by El Bekri in his description of Ghdnata, lies a short distance west from Walita, near Tezljght; another district of this name lies between Tishit and Mesila, to the north of Ajatfera. I now proceed to enumerate the tribes settled in El H6dh.

The A'gel6l, in several sections, viz.:

- Weldd A'hmed, subdivided into the following divisions or "lelkhit:" A'hel Tdleb Jiddu, A'hel Khalifa, A'hel A'hmed e' Tleb, A'hel Tileb Sidi A'hmed, Wed (sic) Yebtli, Welid Sidi (El K6betdt, A'hel Mahim, A'hel Ismgail, the Soltana, El A'mera).

- Welid Mtisa, subdivided as follows: Welid Hdj 'Abd e' Rahmin, Welidd Hdj el Amin, Welgd Mtisa, properly so called.


The Welid Mohammed of Walita, in several sections, of whom a great part originates from Tishit, while the sheikh family belongs originally to the Bidlikel. Their present chief is 'Ali Weled Nawdri el Kuntawi, whose mother is the daughter of the Sheikh of the Legds: A'hel Tiki, Wehid Legdis e' Shidkh, Lemwalish, Welid e' dhfb, Targdilet, Derigela (belonging originally to the Brfikena), Weldd el Mojdir, Wedd el horma, Sekikena, A'hel e' Tdleb Mustuf (a family of "tolbi"), I'de Msda, Weldd Aili, Welid Ald, Weldd Sdkie, LTikart.
The Wehid e' Ndsir, very powerful, and divided into the following sections: Welid 'Abd el Kerim Weled Mohammed el M'atuik, with Bakr Weled Sendbe as their chief.

- Wehid Mas'aild Weled M'atilk, subdivided: El A'yas-t, El I'kemimera, Berdrsha, Ghdraber, A'hel Msda (the Shiikh, with the powerful chief'Othmn el Habib).

The Jafera, the "jim" pronounced like the Frenchj injour.
The 'Ataris, here and in Bighena.
The I'jum~n, divided into several sections, of which I only learned the names of three: I'junmn el'Arab, I'jumdn e' tolbu, A'hel Mohammed.

The Mdshedtiff, not independent, and, as it seems, of almost pure Berber origin, and a section of the Limtuna, being most probably identical with the Masiffa, a Berber tribe so often mentioned by the Arab writers, such as El Bekri, E'bn Battad-

TRIBES IN TAGA'NET.
Ta, &c., as settled between Sijilmmdsa and Timibdktu. They are divided into several sections: Lahmennid, Welid Mahim, Ujendbje, and others, as the Welid Yo'aza.
The Ldgghalhil, a considerable tribe, divided into five khomiis.

II. MOORISH TRIBES IN TAGANET.
Taginet is a large and well-favored district, bordering toward the E. and S.E. on El H6dh, or rather the k6dia encircling and forming El H6dh; toward the S.W., where there is a considerable group of mountains, bordering on Aft6t, by which it is separated from Fdta, and toward the W. or W.N.W. separated from Adarfir by ranges of hills running parallel to each other, called "e' dhel6a," or "the ribs."
Taginut-evidently a berber name, contrasting as a correlative with the name A'gan-
is divided by nature into two distinct regions, viz., Tagdnet el kihela, or Black
Tagdnet, comprehending the southern part of it, and consisting of fertile valleys,
full of palm-trees, nebek, &c., excellent for the breeding of cattle and sheep, but
infested by numbers of lions and elephants, while it is fit for the camel only in the
dry season; and Tagdnet el bddha, White Taggnet, called in Azdriye, or the
language of Tishit, "Gdr e' kdlle," consisting of white desert sand, with excellent
food for the camel, and with plantations of palm-trees in a few favored spots,
which contain the villages or ksfr.

Of these there are three:
Tejfg'a, four days W.N.W. from Tishit, inhabited by the Idgw 'Ali and the Ghilli.
Rashid, one day from Tejigja, W.N.W., in the possession of the Runta.
Kasr el Barka, the most considerable of the three, two days W.S.W. from Tejigja,
and three days from the mountain pass Nufni, which gives access to it by way of
Aft66, likewise inhabited by the Kunta, who are the traveling merchants of this
part of the desert, and supply Shinghft and all those quarters.
Besides these 'three ksdr, there is, at the distance of one day from Tejfgja and three
days from Tishit, another plantation of date-trees, but without a ksar, called El
Gobbu or El Kubba from the sanctuary of a Weli of the name of 'Abd-Allah, and
belonging to the Iddw 'Al.

As for the Arab tribes not settled in the kstir, but wandering about in Tagkinet,
there are first to mention:
The Zenfigha, or Senhfija, or Idiw-'Afsh, a mixed Berber tribe, who form a
conspicuous group in the history of this part of Africa, and have been the
principal actors also in the destruction of the empire of the Rumfi or Ermd. They
are at present divided into several sections, all called after the sons and grandsons
of Mohammed Shdn, a fanatic man, who arose among this tribe a little more than
a century ago and usurped the chieftainship. His eldest son, Mohammed, who
succeeded him, left at his death the office of chief vacant, when there arose a
sanguinary civil war between his brother Mukhtr, whose partisans were called
Sherait, and his eldest son, Swdd A'hadm, and his party, who were called
Abakdk, from the red fruits of the talha, on which they were obliged to subsist.
The latter, having at length gained the upper hand, killed all his uncles, and was
succeeded after his death by his son Bakr, who is ruling at the present time. The
chief of the Sherait is E' Rastil Weled 'Ali Weled Mohammed Shidn.
Hel 'Omdr Weled Mohammed Shdn, the Soltana kabila of the Zenigga,
subdivided as follows: Hel 'Al Bibd Weled 'Omdr, Bd-Bakr Weled 'Omdr, Rasdil
Weled 'Omir, Hel 'Ali Weled Mohammed Shn, A'hel Swdd (this is the strongest
of the divisions of the Zendgha), A'hel Resifl Weled Alimbugga, Iel Bakr Weled
Mohammed Shdn, A'hel Resil Weled Mohammed Shin.

Besides these, there are also the sons of Mohammed e' Sghir, viz.: Mohammed,
Mukhtdir, Bti-Sdf, 'Alf, Sidi el Amfn, Hmndfn, who have given their names to
various sections of the great tribe of the Zendgha. In consequence of their
intestine feuds, however, this tribe has sunk from the first rank which they
occupied among all the Arab tribes; for, though decidedly of Berber origin, they
are yet considered as Arabs, owing to the tongue which they now speak.
The Kunta, part of this widely-scattered tribe distinguished by their learning and their sanctity, and divided, as far as they live in Tagnet, into the following sections:

Wehid Bd-Sdf (the most warlike tribe of the Kunta).

Wehid Sfdi BTi-Bakr.

Weldd Sidi Haiballa (properly Habib-Alihhi), subdivided: El Nogtidh, Weld el

APPENDIX.

Bah, E’rkabit, these latter being probably the tribe found, according to Scott’s statement, not far from the N.W. shores of Lake Debu, and who can not be the E’rgebit, as Mr. Cooley suspects, who never leave their homes in El Gida; else Scott never saw that lake.

Welid Sidi Wdfi, subdivided as follows: Weld Sidi BtI-Bakr el kihel, Wehld Sidi Bd-Bakr el bddh.

IV. MOORISH TRIBES IN ADERER.

A’derrdr is a rather elevated district, composed of sand-hills grouped round a considerable range of hills, as its name, meaning the mountain range, indicates, which is the same as that of the district lying between A’zawdd and A’fr, being distinguished from it only by a slight difference in the pronunciation. It is encircled toward the north by the awful zone of immense sand-hills called "Maghtgr;" and toward the south by another similar but less sterile girdle called "Wargn," both of these districts joining toward the east of A’derrdr, at a point called "El Ged~m," at the distance of six days from Waddn, in going from east to west: Metweshtiye, first day; M6,derfs hasi, second; Amasir, third; Zwfri w6n Zwemra, fourth - Waddn, sixth day, having passed a good many wells. Between A’derrdr and El Hddh, and separated from that district of El H6dh which is called El Batn by a range of hills to the north of Tag(net, there is a very extensive valley or valley-plain called Khat e’ dem, running, as it seems, about east and west along the northern foot of the ridge of A’derrdr, at the south foot of which lies El H6dh, with abundance of wells, and even a couple of ksir, or perpetually inhabited villages. The following is a list of a few of these localities:

Mochdnge, shallow well, with a ksar belonging to the Gesima. Belle, well, and ksar inhabited by Bmbara (Aswdnek?). These on the south side of the Khat, where there are a number of shallow but full wells, of which the group called Khat el Moina is one of the most considerable. In the middle course of the Khat there is O’fani, a large dhaye or tank; Fctdle, Kdbi, Zortigo, all tanks; but the largest of these tanks is Urn el Meddk, which lies on the road from the celebrated Bir. Nwil to WaUn, then Twdshtair and El Bahdra, also large tanks; on the west side of the Khat there is the large well Tishti. The breadth of this celebrated valley, with whose excellence the wandering Arab is as much enchanted as a European is with the most romantic spots of Switzerland and Italy, is indicated by the distance of three days between the well Tilemist and the famous well Bii-Sefiye, on the road from Tishit to Waddn.

A’derrdr, according to the different nature of its various parts, is divided into "A’dergr e’ temar" and "A’derrdr suttuf." In A’derrdr Proper there are four ksdr, or towns, the most considerable of which, and the only one known in Europe, is
Wadin, a town smaller than Tishit, but at least, till recently, when it has likewise suffered from intestine broils, better inhabited than the latter, and was evidently so even in the first half of the sixteenth century, when the Portuguese established here a factory for a couple of years. Wadin, as well as Tishit, was originally a place of the Az-ir, and the Azeriye is still the language of its indigenous inhabitants. It has, besides, a considerable Arab population, belonging to the following tribes:

- El Arzdzir.
- Idgw el Hij, probably the founders of the empire of Ghdnata, a tribe of great importance in the history of African civilization, and divided into the following sections, as far as they live in A'der-r: A'hel Sidi Makhmild (the Soltana tribe, to whom belongs the Chief of Wadin, 'Abd Allah W. Sidi Makhmild), Idd Yakdb, Siytm, A'hel el Imim; while two other sections of them live in Ergebe, viz: El U'tetid, El Id6-Gejd.

As for the Rayin in Wadin, they are the kh6ddem6n of the Id(w el Htij. The Medrdmberin, one of the tribes of the Kunta.

Wadin has a pretty plantation of date-trees of different sorts, of better quality than those of Tishit, and the names of which are as follow: Sekdni, Tenasidi, Fl Homnor, Tigibirt, Owetdrdel, B6zal el Bagra.

The town, composed of houses built of stone and mud, lies on the east side of the valley, on stony and elevated ground. Its population does certainly not exceed 5000, who supply themselves with necessaries from Tishit, as they do not seem to frequent in person the market of Nygmina or other places.

Shighit, a small place built of stone, the same size as the town of D6l in Bdghe-

TRIBES IN EL GIBLH.

na, two days S.W. from Wadin, which has obtained a great name in the East, all the Arabs of the western desert being called after it. Shinghit, situated in the midst of small sand-hills, where a little salt is found, has a handsome plantation of date-trees, where the tiggedirt and the sukkdn are produced. It seems to have no Negro population, all the inhabitants being Arabs belonging to the following tribes

- Welid Jfihi ben 'Othmsin, divided into the following sections: Welid 'Othmdn (to whom belongs the despotic chief of the town, called A'hmmed ben Sidi A'hmmed ben 'Othmrin), El A'wesidt (who speak the dialect of the Zendgha, and have a chief of their own), E' Redin, Wehid Bd Lhie, Weldd E'gshar, Iddw 'Ali.

Atar, a well-inhabited little town or ksar, said by some to be larger than Shinghft, situated two days nearly east from the latter place, the track descending along the district called El O's, where date-trees and water are met with in several spots. A'tar lies at the foot of a kdia, where the water collects, feeding a small plantation of date-trees. No negroes.

Ojf, a ksar not so well inhabited as the two foregoing ones, two days S.E. from Shinghit, and one from A'tar S.S.W., likewise with a palm grove. Its principal inhabitants are E' Smdsid or Smdsida, Zwaye. The inhabitants of Ojfift, with the exception of the Sm-sida, do not travel, but receive every thing by way of Kasr el Barka, where the people carry on some trade.
Besides the Arab tribes mentioned as living partially in the ksifr, there are still the following tribes to be mentioned as having their encampments principally or exclusively in A'derdr.

The Tdjaknt are regarded as belonging to the Himydritic stock, and wear the gubba; they are a large tribe, and are of great importance in the whole commerce between the W. part of Morocco or "E' Sdhel" and Timbuktutu, which is entirely in their hands. At present, in consequence of their feud with the E'rgeb6it, they are embroiled in a civil war among themselves, while with the Kunta they are at peace. I mention them here with regard to A'derdr, though, as far as they are settled in this district, they have been greatly weakened, and part of them at least seem to have their principal abode in Gfdi; they wander also in El Giblah. With Tagdnet, with which place their name has been connected, they have nothing whatever to do. Tijak-int is the collective form, a single individual being called Jak-nil, fern. Jakanfye. Their chief is Mertibet Mohammed el Mukhtair, an excellent man. They are divided into the following sections: E' Rumadhin or El Armadbin, subdivided: 'Ain el Kohol, Wehid Sidi el 114j, El Msaid, Welid S'aid. Welid Msdnnsi, in two divisions, whose names I did not learn.

El U'jart.
A'hel e' sherk.
Dr'awa.

The three latter tribes form at present one faction of the Tjjakint, the two preceding, together with the Merdbet, the other. Altogether they are certainly able to bring into the field 2000 muskets, but they do not appear to be strong in cavalry.

The Sidi Mohammed, another division of the Kunta.

In general the Kunta and the Weldd e' Nsisir form one group in opposition to the Tjjak-int, Iddiw el Hij, and the Zenigha.

V. MOORISH TRIBES IN EL GIBLAH AND IN SHEMMIX.AH.

The whole tract of the desert between A'derdr and the sea, in a wide sense, is called Tfris, but in a proper and restricted one this name is applied only to the northern part of it, the middle tract of it being called "Magh-tgr," and the southern one " El Giblah ;" but care must be taken not to confound this district with what the Arabs of A'zaw(d and Timbdiktu call "El Giblah," with which very vague name, signifying in their dialect "the west," they indicate all that part of the desert W. of them, from Walsta as far as the sea. El Giblah is bordered toward the N. by Magh-tdr, toward the E. by A'derdr, toward the S. by El Abidr, and toward the S. by the Senegal; this more favored southern tract, however, bearing the particular name of Shemmimah, is covered with thick forests of the gum-tree, while another portion of it, consisting of ranges of sand-hills, is called Igidi or E' Swdhel. El Giblah, as well as all Tins, has no permanent wells, being extremely dry and sterile, but in the rainy season water is found just under the surface. A few of the

* The position of these places, as laid down in my original map, had to be changed a little from my 9wn data given in the itineraries, and from tho data of M. Panet's route to "hinghit, published in the "Revue Colouiale," 1851.
most remarkable expressions of the idiom of the Arabs of the Giblah are: sengetti, dukno; tajimakhet tehemmi; nisha; hasse; ’aganit; busilwa; adelagin, duinguri; tarer, hoy, a kind of vegetables; ghursh, hak; soff, cleverness; aisdif, clever; likshsha, large calabash; bfshena, ssba; mutteri, hdni; tasCret, mat of reed; tarzay, pl. terziyaten, awe’ba; smdngeli, I have forgotten, it has escaped me; selli, let this talk.

Th*Brenena, a large tribe, levying tribute on the harbors of Bot-hadiye, but at present greatly reduced, have partly become the kh6ddemdn and lahme of the more successful Te8rresa (a name totally distinct from Teghiza). They are divided into several sections: A’hel Agridshi, the Soltana tribe, A’hel Weled ’Abd Allah (all the sections of the Brenena being derived from this ’Abd Allah, son of Kertim), Welld Sid, Welld Bakr, Weird ’Aid (formerly very powerful, at present "lahme"), Welgd Mansir, Welld Nurmdsh, Weldd Ahmedu, A’hel Mehmed~t, Weldd A’gram, and perhaps others.

The Terdrza, a powerful tribe, with Mohammed el Habib Weled ’Omgr Weled el Mukhtgir as chief, in two great sections: Weldd A’hmed ben Damin, Welld Damen. The names of the several subdivisions into which both these sections fall I was unable to make out with certainty, with the exception of the name of that division of the former section to which belongs Mohammed el Habib, they being called A’hel ’Omdr Weled el Mukhtir.

The Elleb, a considerable tribe, who seem to have some sort of relation with the TerCrza, while the Erh~hela are in a state of dependence upon them.

The Welld Abdri or Abiydri, a powerful tribe, with a respected chief called "El Sheikh Sadiye," who resides generally near the well Bti-Telimt, mentioned above as belonging to the district El A’bidr, and distant about seven days S.W. from Wadan and nine from Ojdft.

VI. MOORISH TRIBES IN MAGH-TER AND TiRIS.

Tiris, a word meaning in Temdshight the shallow well, is separated from El Giblab, as I have stated above, by Magh-tdr, a girdle of immense sand-hills stretching almost from the sea-shore as far east as five days beyond Wadun, and varying in breadth from three to five days. Tiris is very much of the same nature as El Giblab, being destitute of water in the dry season, but presenting sufficient herbage for the camel; however, the whole tract does not present one and the same character, the western part, or "Tins el Khawdra," being much dryer than the eastern portion, which extends from the hasi "El Auj," to near Ijil, and is called "Iris el Firdr." In these two districts there can not be any permanent dwelling-places, but there are two localities worth mentioning, which occasionally become the scenes of much life and bustle. These are the harbor called A’gadir D6me and
the sebkha of Ijil. The former, being called by the Europeans "Arguin," and seeming to be identical with the place called Welili by the Arab writers, when visited by a European vessel attracts numbers of Arabs, principally of the tribe Malzen, between whom and the strangers the D~mesdt act as brokers. As for the "sebkha" of Ijil, which was discovered, it is said, about sixty years ago, it seems to lie in an opening of the sand-hills of Magh-tdr, which have to be crossed in coming from Waddon, as well as from Sikiet el Hamra, having at some distance toward the south a high mountain, on whose top some holy person, who was certainly an impostor, is said to have seen a grove of palm-trees. It lies about half way between Waddon and Agadir, and has rich layers of salt of a good quality, but of black color, probably of a similar kinUl to the fourth stratum in Ta6dinni, called "El K(hela;" but there being no fresh water nearer than a good day's distance, at El Argyfye, there is no permanent settlement here, and the Arabs, belonging to different tribes, who come in considerable numbers for the salt, endeavor to get off as quickly as possible. The Sheikh Sidi Mohammed el Kuntawi, who generally has his residence near the well Siduti, exercises a sort of supremacy over the sebkha, and levies a small tribute on those who carry away the salt. Besides the sebkha of Ijil there seems to be here-

TRIBES IN EL GA'DA AND EL HA'HA.

about, perhaps nearer the sea, another sebkha, called U'm el Khasheb, and belonging to the Welid Haye ben 'Othmdn, but its exact position I have not been able to make out. Among the Arab tribes wandering about in Tins and Magh-tdr and the adjoining districts, first of all must be mentioned the Welid Deldnm, which tribe seems to be the most numerous of all the tribes of the desert. Weld Delm being classed into two groups, at least by the Arabs of 'Azawtid, called Welid Mdref and Delm el A'hamar. To the former group belong the following three tribes:

Welid Moltid, the most numerous section of the W. Deldm, but ill famed on account of their robberies, living also in Gidi. They are subdivided as follows; Welid Bti–Karsiye (to whom belongs the chief of the whole section, Hennniu Welid Twdta), El Hamiya (with a chief of their own, El Fddhel Welid Shwdn), E’ Shehdli (with a chief, the son of Alld), Welid Shdker, Welid Bdi Hinde (who do not live in Tfris, but in 'Azawgd).

Sekrna, also in several divisions, the name of none of which became known to me, except that of the A’hel Dde, who are the Shidkh.

Schid S6lem, with the chief Mohammed Weled 'Omtir, living here or in Gfidi. To the Deldm el A’hamar belong the following: El 0’dekt (the Soltana tribe of the Welid Deldm, whose famous chief, A’hmed Weled Mohammed el Fodgl, died a few years ago at the age of 120, it is said. They are subdivided into the following divisions: Welid e’ Shiya, Weldd Manstir), Weltd Aillb, Welid Ermithfe, Sertkhna, Weld Tagdddi, Welid Shwdkh, Welid Bti Omtr (whose Shitikh are said to be the A’hel ‘Omdr Weled e’ Sheikh Umbrohi), Wel6,d el Khalbga (?) (with the Shidkh section A’hel ’Omr(iri Weled Barka), Welid Siddtim, L6gora (?), Welid Tdrarin in several (ten?) sections, all paying tribute to the Welid Deldm, Welid I
Yo'aza (9..) (allied with the Medrtmberin, most of whom live in Tiris. They are a powerful tribe, and fight against the Weld Deldm. They do not wander much, and are partly under the rule of Ahmed Sidi Weled Sidi Mohammed, partly under that of Siditi), T6balt, Ldmnier, Shebahin (the kinsfolk of those in El H6dh), Weld 'Abd el W6hod, El Ardsiyiu (the allies of the tribe of the same name), Imergen (a very poor sort of people and of bad character, living near the sea-shore).

More exclusively, with regard to Magh-tdr, are to be mentioned A'hel Efiga, El Khat, Weleld el Hti Jordan.

VII. MOORISH TRIBES IN EL GADA, AZEMMUR, EL IAHHA, ERGSIILSII, GiDI, AND THE ADJOINING DISTRICTS.

These districts, which I treat in one chapter merely on account of the scanty and imperfect information which as yet I have been able to collect with regard to them, comprise a large tract of country in the N.W. quarter of the desert, and are of very different character. El G6,da lies between Tiris and Wtdi Ntun, being separated from the latter by the smaller district called Shebdka, and seems to bear almost the same character as TLris. But it appears to be divided into two different portions, one of which is called "El Mirkh," and the other "El Bddh." Glida in a certain respect forms part of the larger district called Azemmir. The most celebrated localities of this district are Meskdr, A'zafay, A'geshir, Mijik; from here N.E. Asumtrik, Tasumtrit, El Gentter, Zidends, Bgsharif, Kedive-Yetsdllem, El Bellebdna, Stdlet bel Girdin, I'shirgn, Ag6,rzezis, with the sebkha Abina, U'm el Roesdn, El Mdhaalim.

The principal Arab tribes living in Gdda are the E'ergebit, a large and powerful tribe in several sections, living in "El Gtda," as well as in Zini, a district bordering on the E. side of El Gida, Wcld Miisa, E'thaldt (these two the Soltana sections), El Gwsem, El 'Aid-'Esha or A'hel 'Esb, Welid Mohammed ben 'Abd-Allah, and several others.

In Shebdka there are to be mentioned principally the Zergiyfn, belonging to the Tikkena, Yegtit, Wettisa.

East from Shebdka, N.E. from Zini, and N. from the Wddi Sikiet el Hamra, inhabited by the Welid Bti-Seba, there extends the large district called El Hdha, principally inhabited by the powerful tribe of El 'A(rib, who are said to have as many as 1000 horse, and who are the enemies of the Duwdmena and the Idgu Behi. They are divided into several sections, viz: Legerdeba, about two hundred; El Bwadin, about the same number; El Gwsem (the Shidkh), about forty; E' Nwaiji, the Tolba; Ntmena (El Rentineba, Ziydt, Sidi 'All, Medini, Mbtha?).

APPENDIX.

Besides the 'Ainrb, the district of El Hiha is inhabited by the Limtftna, especially the Idgiu-I'dderen, and, according to some informants, the Berber element seems to predominate entirely.

El Hdha appears to be limited toward the east by didi or Igidi, a girdle of high sand-hills, about one and a half to two days in breadth, and rich in palm-trees, yielding a good sort of date, called "jdh." Gidi, at the distance of twenty days east from the principal encampment in Sikiet El Hamra, stretches W. S.W. in the direction of Tishit, from which place its southwestern end is separated by a naked
desert or "meraye" of about ten days. Gidi has no regular inhabitants, the Tjajakint, the Welid Mol-d, and especially the Kunta, visiting it annually and staying some time in order to gather the dates.*

To the S.E. of Igedi is the district, E'rgsksh, separated from it by the smaller districts called Aftt and El Kart, the former one being a narrow girdle only half a day broad, and consisting of white and black soil, while El Kart, adjoining Aftt toward the west, is about one day's journey in breadth, and exhibits an even surface covered with pebbles and much herbage. E'rgshdsh is a long and narrow girdle of sand-hills, which stretches out in the direction from Tawdt to Warln, and, passing at no great distance to the west of Ta6ddnlni, joins Magh-tdr, or rather Warin, at the S.W. end. This district, which is similar in its nature to Gidi, and not destitute of water between the high sand-hills, although not adorned by nature with the equally graceful and useful palm-tree, is only from twenty to thirty miles broad, and is bordered toward the north by the smaller district called El Hank, consisting of black vegetable soil, rich in trees, and intersected by rocky hills or k6dia. There is in this district a famous spot called Lemezarbd, with a large group of palm-trees, the fruit of which is gathered by the Kunta, who, however, leave these trees without any cultivation whatever.

On the S. E. side of E'rgshdsh lies the district called El Ji; to which belongs Taoddnni, rich in salt, but almost destitute of herbage, with the exception of the more favored spot called El Hardsha, situated at half a day's distance from Taadnni, to the E.N.E., where trees are found. The miserable place called Tabdinni, consisting of only a few houses (where, besides the Sheikh Zdn, nobody will stay on account of the bad quality of the water), owes its existence to the desertion of Teghiza about the year 950 of the Hejra. I have spoken of the salt mines of Ta6ddnni in the diary of my stay in Timbdktu; here I will only add that in Ta6ddnni a black tobe purchases four camel-loads of salt or sixteen rds, worth each 3500 or 4000 shells in Timbiiktu. Ta6ddnni is distant ten days from Wargn, going along E'rgshdsh; nine days from Bd-Jebdha; about the same distance from M'amln, W.N.W.; and ten to eleven days from Mabrilk, N.W., viz: (going from Mabrilk) two and a half days to the well Anfshay, five days to the old well called El Gdtara, and three days more to Ta~dnlni. El Jitf is bordered toward the north by the district called Sifie, a sort of hammdda, with strips of herbage. In this district wander the Welgd Deldm, the 'Airfb, the A'turshtn, belonging to the tribe of the 'Aidde, and several tribes of the Kunta, principally the Erggedf, and the Welid el Wdfi; the principal chief also in E'rgsh~sh, Sidi Mohammed, is a Kunti.

VIII. DISTRICTS OF THE SAHARA BETWEEN AZAWID AND TIMBUKTU ON THE ONE SIDE, AND EL H6DH AND BAGHENA ON THE OTHER.

Between A'raw~n and Walita there stretches a waterless desert of ten days, consisting of isolated sand-hills, between which very good food for the camel is found, and plenty of water-melons, sufficient to quench the thirst of man as well as of the camel. This district, which is nearly of the same character as Magh-tdr, is called A'kela, and the K6betst mentioned above are principally wandering hereabout.
South of the A'kela the country is rendered more verdant and fertile by the Niger and its many backwaters, and there is one district especially noted for its pasturage, viz., the famous Rds el md, mentioned by me repeatedly, where Arabs, principally the Kunta and Berabfsh, with the small remnant of the almost extinguished tribe of the Lansgr, and the Weld S'aid el Boridda, encamp occasionally, and where

* At the time when I finished my original map which I sent home from Timbiktu, I had not collected these materials.

I here give the following data, without being able to connect them: From Taiiddnni, one and a half day, Mer6t; then the same distance, Hasi I'mbedir; Zgguma, with the 'Aig Atw~le on Its N. frontier, five days; AsedAreb, one day; from here the Dhdhar (el Hamfir); three days from Tawfit, the hasi Telig, " to 8 fathoms deep.

THE rMO'SHAGH OR TAWAREK. 719

Zdn el 'Abidin, a younger brother of Sheikh A'hmed el Bnk~y had for a long time his encampment. There is here also a small village of the Iddleb6.

Between the A'kela to the N.E., the Dhar Walta toward the N.W., and Ferm~gha toward the S. E., there is the district called Eriggi, with a ksar, or small town, called Basikinnu, mentioned in this volume. Eriggi is the chief district of the Weld 'Aldsh, a not very numerous but warlike tribe, which extends its forays over the whole of A'zawdd, and is divided into two sections: Ell Khatterlit, El Ell6b.

The Weld 'Ahish are at present the principal tribe of a large group called Ddjid, whose elements I shall enumerate here together, though only a portion of the tribes are living hereabout, and most of them have been mentioned by me before, in connection with their respective districts.

El Ddaid, with Sheikh Swddi.

DiUD MOHAMMED.


DAUD 'ARUK.

Weld Zdd, with Nef'a Weled Ked~do, the Erh6mena, Weld 'Aldsh, Welhd Yiines, Welid Rahmdn, Wehid Mazdk, Weld Zayem, Gdsharit, Wehid Ber~hdn, Sgkerd Daye, Welfd Yillwi, and several others at present almost extinguished.

I shall here also enumerate the tribes composing the group called Lddem, with the Sheikh -, son of E' Shdn: A'hel Tiki, A'hel Tleb Mustuf, Dermnissa, Igergf, El A'raglfb.

Before concluding this list of the Arab tribes, which would be enlivened if historical knowledge were not a thing almost unknown in this part of the world, I shall mention a few tribes who have founded something like an empire in the south part of the so-called desert:

El 'Arisfyn, about 600 A.H.

El Erhimena, who wrested the empire from Shendn el 'Arisi.

Wehid Bille, who, having succeeded to the Erh6mena, became very rich and powerful, till, as the Arabs say, they destroyed their empire themselves by
provoking the wrath of the Sheikh El Mukhtgr el Kebir, about sixty years ago, when their power was crushed by the Mesheddif and the Zenfgha. A smaller empire was founded by the Weldd Bd-Faida, who had their principal seats round Kasiri in El H6dh, N.W. from Bighena, till they were overpowered by the A’hel e’ Zendghi. The Im6shagh have peculiar names for the Arab localities, calling Gundgm, Sasdweli; A’rawdu, Eshiggaren; Berabish, Kl-jaberiyie; Kunta, or Kuntargr, Kdl-bordsse; the ‘Arab el Giblah, Udayen (sing. Uday). I shall here add an itinerary of the route from Wadin to A’ghadfr D6me, or, as it is called by the Arabs, E’ Ddkhela, which I omitted in the right place. 1st day, Selaurish. 2d, Shiff. 3d, El MWrwsin, a k6dia. 4th, D6mus, a good well or hasi. 5th, Tenwike, an -dggada, with good water in the rainy season, but brackish during the dry season. 6th, Encamp between Egjir and Rek el Mh6n. 7th, Swcta, a locality encompassed by hilly chains or k6dia. 8th, Tagazimet, a hasi, 7 fathoms in depth. 9th, Takeshtint, a hasi, 2 fathoms deep. 10th, E’ D6khela. The two last days are short marches. The village A’ghadfr is said to contain from 50 to 60 huts of reed, inhabited by the Imrighen, the chiefs of whom are Weled A’hmed Budde E’bn ‘Omr and Mohammed Weled el Mrdma. APPENDIX XII. SECTIONS AND FAMILIES OF THE GREAT SOUTHWESTERLY GROUP OF THE I’MO’SHAGH OR TAWA’REK. As Am6shagh (in the. plural form I’m6shagh) designates rather in the present state of Taw-rek society the free and noble man in opposition to A’mghi (plural, Imghid), the whole of these free and degraded tribes together are better designated by the general term, the "red people," "Tdinet-n-shdggarndn," for which there is another still more general term, viz., "Tfshorgn." 720 APPENDIX. The whole group of these southwesterly Tawirek is now generally designated by the name of Awelimmid, Welimmid, or Awelimmiden, the dominating tribe whose supremacy is acknowledged in some way or other by the remainder; and in that respect even the Tademekket are included among the Awelimmiden; but the real stock of the Awelimmiden is very small. The whole group, therefore, in opposition, I think, to the name "Iregeniten," denoting the mixed group of tribes dwelling S. of the Niger, is called "Tegesfisemt." The original group of the Awelimmiden (" Ulmdn" is the way the name is expressed in Tefinagh) are certainly identical with the Lamta (the t being a hard t, which is continually confounded with the d), the name signifying probably "the children of Lamta," or rather "Limmid ;" or the name may originally be an adjective. They dwelt formerly in Igidi near the Weldd Deldm, a Moorish tribe which has received a great many Berber elements, till they emigrated to A’derfir, the country N.E. of G6g6, from whence, as I have stated in the Chronological Tables appended to this volume (p. 657), under the command of Kariddnne, son of Shwsh, or rather Abdk, they drove out the Tademekket, at that period the ruling
tribe of this whole region. I here give a list of the most common camping-grounds in A'derir: Amisin, 'Araba, Tin-darim, Ydnhan or Gdnhan, E' Silk (the last two were formerly the sites of flourishing towns), Ijenshishen, A'zel ad-h-r, Kidal, regarded often as a separate district, Endeshedait, Taghelfb, Marret, Taldbit, Tadakkit, Asway, Anemellen, Ansittefen, Asher6bbak, Tinzgwenaten, Taijemart, Eldwi, Dohindal, Tinaj6la, Enrar, Ejdarak, A'shu, Alkit, Takelhit, Dafallidna, Endfara: The ancestor of the Awelimmiden is said to have been named Siggene, a man of the tribe of the Himydr.*

I now proceed to give a list of all the tribes belonging to this group, assigning the first place to those who belong to the original stock:

The Kdl-ekimmdt, the royal section, or the Kel-aman6kalen, separated, as it would seem, into two subdivisions, one of which is called after Fatita, and the other, if I am not mistaken, after U'ksem or O'kasem, the son of (ig) Imma, although U'ksem was the father of Fatita. The present ruler of the tribe, and thus the lord of this whole group, is Alkittabu, properly "Kdttub-e'-din," "Pillar of the Faith," a brother of the late and well-known chief E' Ngbegha, son of Kwa; and besides him there is Thgkkefi, the son of E' N~begha, and Legiwi or El A'gwi, between whom and the ruling family there seems to be some little rivalry. Targhay-tamdt (the "u" is not generally expressed in Tefinagh), with the chief Inlehit or Lehit, who likewise rules the tribe of the Tesg6gamet. Sometimes, also, Legdwi is regarded as chief of this tribe. The Targhay-tamiit are subdivided into the sections of the K&l-egduk, the Ikardrayen, the Ihiawen, the Ibreekiten, the Idammgn, the I'segrn, the Kel-tab6nnan, the Ishegdttan or Ishdggattan, the Ikhirkeen, the Kdl-kabiy.

Tahabane.t or Tahabaniten with the chief Kiisel. They are subdivided into the Tahabanatd iktwelen, T. ishdggarndn, Ibatiten (a name which might lead one to infer that the tribe of the same name which at present lives among the degraded tribes of the A'zkar (see vol. i., p. 202), originally belonged to this tribe, a state of things which is not at all impossible), Khorfinniden, Taradgha, Tamizgfda.t Ikh6rmeten,t with the chiefs Intagzutt and Erttare.

Ifogas, a section of that widely-scattered tribe of which I have already spoken repeatedly. As far as they live with the Awelimmiden, they are governed by the chiefs Innitayen, A'msadiwa, Itkgl, and Elrdlmu, and are subdivided into the following sections: K6l-tebighart, KI-Athogal, I'kardrayen, Ibedd.ddawen, Ibbdzawen, Tegdtik, K6l-telatait, Kdl-iiseghalt.

Tin-eger-dgedesh, with the chief Kaulen, subdivided as follows: Ikarn6nayen, Kel-takibut, Telghdsem, K6l-tikkendwen, Tarbddegdn, Kdl-torfdn. K4I-tegilet, with the chief Mokaitel. Kdl-helwat, or I'd el Mashil, with the chief Wdgi.

Sherifen, subdivided into the following sections: Kel-temikkeret, Ihdwan-Allen, Compare the account of A'bf 'Omanr E'bn 'Abd el Ber in E'bn ihaldin (trad. par Macguckin de Slane, vol. i., p. 174). Siggene, who by my informants is stated to be the ancestor of Lamt, may seem to be identical with Asnag, the ancestor of the Senh6ja, or Zengha, with whom the Awelimmiden are intimately related.
t I will here observe that most of the vowels which I have to distinguish by an
accent, as showing the way of pronouncing the name, are not at 411 expressed in
Tefinagh. : The name seems to be nearly the same as that of the Khorimmeden.

SECTIONS OF THE AWEI'MMIDEN.
Kel-rar6r, Kel-n-ker~mmr, Kel-abinaf6gal, Kel-tabiriat, Kel-aribbo, Kel-fdridn,
Ke-tefl11iant, K61-inrdwe, Kdl-gokdn.
Edarragdgen, with the chief Tawil. Edarragdgen wui (or w4n) shdjjerotndn,
identical with sh~ggarndn, Ed. wui jezzolin.
Ekarrab~sa, subdivided as follows: K61-tikkendwen (different from the
abovementioned tribe of the same name) with Afbasu ig (the son of) Ranni; Kdl-
eg4es, with Lawis ig Hawe-Tawdt; Tezg6gamet, with the chief Hamma-Hamma.
Kel-gasse, with Hamma.
Kdl-n-ejiud, with Sinnefel in A'ribinda.
Targagisset or Tagdggesdzt, with the chief Elldfi, very ill-famed as highway
robbers.
Ibelghawen, with the chief Ade'kara.
Ergtaf n, in ancient times a most powerful and celebrated tribe, from whom
Hassan ben A'kil, the forefather of the Udiya, sprung, but at present reduced and
settled on the middle course of the Niger, where I have described them (see p.
525). Their chiefs are 'Omdr and Mohammed el A'mfn.
Tirka, a small fragment of a once powerful tribe, perhaps the Trik6 of Arab
writers (see vol. i., p. 196, n. t), at present settled near Sfnnder on the Niger, where
I have mentioned them, with the chief Almuttu.
Ishedhdnharien, with the chief Inteshekhen.
Imelfggizen (mentioned by me on my route along the Niger), with the chiefs
Warilkim and Ishawaddna.
Ebailaten.
Igw~daren, formerly, when they were settled in A'zawdd, a still more powerful
and totally independent tribe, with the chief A'khbi, ben Silem, who, just at the
time of my journey, when they were settled near Bdmiba, attempted to regain his
independence from his liege lord. This tribe is subdivided into the following
sections: K61-g6gi, the chief's tribe, but having, besides A'khbi, another chief of
the name of Saddktu, hostile to the former; Tarabansa, with the chiefs Tni and
Wdghdughu; Terfdntik; Kel-tebdknorit, with the chief Sadl; Kl-hekfi, with the
chiefs Sillekay, 'Ayudb, Kndha, and Zobbi, this little tribe presenting the most
striking example of the predatory and anarchical character of these nomadic
hordes; Kel-teghtrart, with the chief Kh~item (surnamed or nicknamed by the
Arabs El Gherfe); Kdl-tab6rit, with the chief Khdbar (another section of this tri-
be living with the I'regemiten); the Iwarighen or Aurdghen, another section of this
widelyscattered tribe which, once very powerful, has now lost a great portion of
its independence, with the chief Khazza.
Among the Awelimmiden live also the E'he-n-Dab6sa, or E'he-n-Elli, with the
chiefs Eldkhte, Mushtiba, and El M6telek, originally a section of the Telam~des,
a tribe of the Dinnik.
I now proceed to give a list of the degraded tribes, or Imgkdd, of the Awelimmiden and Igw(daren:
Imedfdderen, a tribe still very numerous, and not quite so much aegraded in the social life of these regions as the other tribes, possessing even a good many horses, but formerly distinguished by their power* as well as by their learning. It was this tribe, together with the Idendn, who founded the first settlement at the place where, in course of time, the city of Timbdktu arose. Their chiefs are B6le, El U’sser, and Khaydr.
They are subdivided into a great many sections:
Kel-g6si, the most warlike section, with the chief El Khatfr, whom I have mentioned repeatedly. They are warlike, and maintain especially a struggle against the Governor of H6mbori. Kel-6he-n-shdggardn, E’debelle, with the chief Dri, Tekante, Kel-sammi, Iboghiliten, Erannarssen, K6l-ankft, or Kel-n-kft; Il6kan, a tribe the name of which is no doubt connected with the town of the same name mentioned by El Bekri (p. 179), as lying in the neighborhood of Kiigha or Ktkfd; Ki-tdrdit, Tibara-juwilt, Idirmaghen; E’he-dekkaten, Eb6njiten; and, finally, a group of four tribes, which collectively bear the name K6l-rdres, but each of which has a separate name, Tafajdjjat, with the chief Maijikma, Ikaw–laten, with Ntagellet, Ekarayen, with Ntdrede, and, finally, A’rkaten. Aurdgen (written Urgh), the larger portion of this once predominant and widely scattered, but now degraded tribe, portions of which we have already met with elsewhere. To the Imedidderen belonged Koslete, the warrior who slew ‘Ukba el Mfstaj fb, the great Mohammedan hero in the history of the conquest of Africa.

APPENDIX.
where. They are divided into the two sections of white and black Aurghen, or Aurdghe-mdluldn and Aurdghe-isdttafnn.
Auragh-Aurighen, or Uraghlighen, with the chief Ofidi.
Tameldtak. *
Imicha, with the chiefs Kfimuwen and Khamdillu.
Imezghdrsen, with Sulliteg and Amdst.
Kel-gosse. Kel-tendri.
I’keddn. Kel-n-eshdab.
Imarrin. Kel-teggswan.
Mekalgn-kaldn, or Imekelkalen, with the chief Sididi.
K4l-wan, with the chief Sfdi Mohammed ig Khdide.
Ishemngten.
Ibflkorayen, originally a section of the Dinnik.
Kel-difli, the tribe so repeatedly mentioned in my journal as my chief protectors during my stay in Timbilktu, divided into two sections, viz., the Kel-efelle, with the chief E’ Shugl, and the Kdl-iddr, with Sh6ri.
Teffrten. Kel-ghdmneshen.
Imassejdnberen. G6ne.
B6ru. Kil-idal.
Eghash6men. Hl6ghmaten.
Ijindwejan.    Tdbakunt.
Ikebergdan.    Meskinderen.
Id6shan or Il6shan.    Hawe-n-adagh or Haye-ladagh.
Udilen.    Iderak (? the same with Id-auragh).
Kdl-ghennesh.    Didd.
Keselbaten or Elkasebatefr.    Iletdmaten.
Id-auragh (written Ddirgh).    K l-tdifirwin.

I now proceed to enumerate the tribes of Anislimen or Tolba, peaceable tribes given to learning and religious devotion, among the group of the Awelimmiden. Shemman-A'mmas, with the chief Mohammed ig Itdkke, once the Amandkalen or Sultan tribe, in the town of Sdik. They are divided into the following sections: Ikarb-genen, Iwirwaren, Kel-n-tashdait or Kel-tbbele, Kel-amdellfa or A'hel E'shelmit, subdivided into the two sections of the El Wankflle and El' Enilli. Debdkar, called in Hiusa Bend Sekki, settled in Kidal.

Dan Sehaik: K6l-abtkkut, Kdl-azdr, Kerzezwaten, Kl-biriyo, Kel-tibalo, different from the homonymous section of the I'gheldd, Dogeritan, Idebbuten. I'denin, once a powerful tribe, hostile to the Kunta, who made use of the assistance of the Igw-dare against them. The I'dendn are subdivided into the following clans: Dindsddakant, I'denin eheawen Kidimmit, Kdl-teshraydn, Izimmaten, I'nheren, Tajerdjit, Imak6rda, Kdl-ghahi, Ildshan.

Kel e' Sdk, a very numerous tribe of a peculiar stock, so called, as I have stated in an other place, from the important town of Silk, probably identical with the town called Tademdkka by El Bekri, of which they were the chief inhabitants. They are subdivided into a great many sections:
First, there is a group of three tribes, which are referred to one common forefather, Yusuf, a native of Tekerdnnat: these are the Kel-tekerdnnat, who are evidently called from the town Tekerdnnat mentioned above; the Kel-tendkse; and the E'gedesh. The Kel-tekerdnnat are subdivided into the Kel-tekerinnat ikiwelen, the Kel-tekerdnnat ishidggarnrn, with the chief Intakhiset, the Dwas Ejimmik, and the Disemdkhshil. To the tribe of the E'gedesh belong the two principal chiefs of the Kel e' Silk at the present time, Khozimaten and Henna. Then there are the Kidl e' Silk wa-n-e' Sdk, whose name is connected with the town of Silk in a twofold manner, as having resided in that place longer than any other section, having probably their nomadic encampments on the site of the town after its destruction. Then the Kdl-bdgu, with Intillumt, formerly Id Mesild; the El Salihu, the Ehe-wen Nakillu, with many subdivisions; the K6l-gtlnhan; the Ki-genshishi the A'hel Igiwish; the IsharamAten, to whom belongs Najib; the Id el Hinefi or Kdl-esikan embiggan; the Ewufnhaddn, with rich herds of cattle; the K4l-jeret; Kdl-adhlir; Kdl-tinhardn; K4l-tdjerit; the Kdl-emdjaus; Kdl-gab6; Kll-cmdssen.

* The latter part of the name appears to me to have some connection with the name of the Berber town Tdtek or Tautek, (, j. from whence the salt was carried to Tademlcka in the time of II Bekri (III Bekri, p. 181).
The Kel 'e' Stik have for themselves two tribes of Imghdd, the Delet6ye and the Ibokhgnnen.

I now proceed to the large group of the Tademekket, who, as I have stated, were settled formerly in A'derir, round the town called after them Tademdkka, but were driven from thence by the Awelimmiden about the middle of the seventeenth century, and have since been settled on both sides of the Niger from Bimba upward, regarding as the limits of their territory Bimba on the east, Gtindam in the west, Bd-Jebdha in the north, and B6ne in the south. As I have stated on a former occasion, every merchant arriving in Bd-Jebdha from the north, on his journey to Timbtiktu, even at the present day, is obliged to take a respectable man of this tribe with him for his protection. The Tademdkket made another attempt to render themselves independent of the Awelimmiden, under their chief Rumdli, about the middle of the last century, I think, and were for a time successful, but were then hunted down by their rivals, and were obliged for a certain period to take refuge in B~mbara.

The Tademdkket are divided since about forty years ago into two great groups, the Tingdregef, who dwell north of the river, and the I'regeniten, whose seats are to the south of the Niger. I first proceed to enumerate the tribes constituting the group of the I'regeniten, who are said to have received this name from the circumstance of their mixed character.

Kdl-tejiwalet, with the chiefs Kendaye and Stile.
Kdl-teb6rit, with Khbbar.
K61-4he-n-sittefen, "the black tent," or tribe called h6gu bilbi by the Songhay, khdme el kahele by the Arabs, with the chief Ingddi.
Kdl-tamulit, with the chief Sadl.
Tejerb6kit, with Ermdtu.
Ajelletlet.
Abeldrlsr (Abelighlagh ?).
Kdl-dej-.
Takdtakayer dwell among the I'regeniten, but belonged originally to the Igwidaren. One division, or kh~me, of the Kel-b6rum also lives among the I'regenaten.

As Imghdd of the I'regenden the following tribes deserve to be mentioned:
The Ehfwen A'darak, in several subdivisions: the KO-efflle, with the chiefs Feriferd, A'den, and Mohammed Eks-mena; the Kel-ider, with Bdl, the chief mentioned by me in my journal, who is the principal chief of the whole tribe of the Ehiwen-n-A'dagh; the Kdljia, with A'shelma; the Kel-d6mberi, with Alaide; the Kdl-t-nelak; the K61-dina; the Tgzuwy-tduwy, with Elfodiyyi; K6rshar.
Ake6ef, with the chief Dalle, with the two subdivisions of the Hfigelel and O'zgar.
Ibuirzazen.
Imitteshen.
Imesr-rsen.
Imakelkalen, another subdivision of this tribe, with the chief Manzulki.
K61-rdmmat.
Tarb6ka.

As Anislimen or tolba of this group, the following tribes became known to me:
Isakkamren, and Kel-sakkamiren, the latter with the chief El Kiidhi Agge Hddmeten, both these tribes being evidently fragments of the tribe of the Seghmara (however the name may be spelled), described by El Bekri and other Arab geographers as settled on the northern bank of the Niger, round about Tadem-kka, and occupying a district of many days' journey in extent; indeed, it must be supposed that the Tademelcka at that time were in a certain degree dependent on the Seghmdra. The greater portion of this tribe we have found settled at the present time in districts much farther toward the north. See vol. i., p. 605, seq. The Ibiddkelen, and finally a group of three tribes which originally belonged to the I'ghelid, namely, the Kdl-trashit, the Kel-kabaye, and the K6l el horma.

The Tin gdregef have received this name from the sandy downs, or " ellib," as they are called by the Arabs, bordering on the north side of the Niger. Their chief is A'wib, whom I have frequently mentioned in my Journal, and they are, as far as I was able to make out, only divided into five sections: Tingdregef dhe-n-tamellelt, or those of the white tent; Tingdregef dhe-n-takswelit, or those of the black tent, to whom belongs A'wib; the E'hemed, En-ka, and Telamddes.

In a certain loose connection with this group are the I'gheldd, a very numerous tribe, at present reduced to the position of Anislimen, who are spread over a large tract of country, but are especially settled in the district Taginet, between A'zawid and Timbuktu. Here they have dug the deep wells which distinguish that district, and their clans into which they are divided are therefore mostly designated from these wells. Their chiefs are Mohammed Ahmed ig Hawli, E'Tiher, and Mohammed 'Ali. The following is a list of their numerous subdivisions:

Kel-antstir, KXdl-n-wiwaten, Kdl-n-Nokifnder, Kdl-n-agszen, Kdl-n-bagsay, Kel-n-tushawdn, K4l-n-wiirTosdn, K4l-n-abdllehan, Kgl-n-m'amtfr, K41-nerazar, Kel-n-giba, Kdl-tintab6n, to whom belonged the learned Sheikh Sidi 'Al in the time of BdbA el kebir, K6l-tneq el hay or Deb6rid, Kel-n-nettik, K&l-n-tinsm.ren, Kel-n-tintazalt, Kel-n-6shel, K6l-inneb, Kel-migigelit on the farthermost well of Taginet, Kel-n-nirzafef, Kdl-tinuddkan, Ke-tinekawit, Kel-n-tshak, Kdl-h6r, to whom belongs the great fgki Tiher, K4l-emaih6r, K6l-tele, K4l-n-tabareLmit, very rich in cattle, K6l-takinkelt, Kdl-tadrak, Inetgben, Kdl-teh6rogdn, Ibiddkelen, Keltighashit, K4l-elhorma, Kdl-kab-y, Kel-sakkomfiren, Kel-tadir, Kdl-n-kdzem, Keltershawen, Kil-t-ndetas, K6l-tinhellatin, K6l-insaid, Kdl-eshinkay, Kel-n-4lshinen, K6l-n-jardn, Kel-n-Ayeren, Ihdwan-nor-eddi, Terb-az, Kel-tegglillit.

I now proceed to mention the most easterly group of the Awelimmiden, who, in a political sense, have totally separated from the stock, and are generally allied with the Ke1-gerds. These are the Awelimmiden wudn Bodhil, or, as they are generally called along the Niger, Dinnik, whose chief, Mdsa, enjoys great celebrity. The sections into which this tribe is subdivided I have not been able to learn.

I will conclude this short notice about these southwestern Tawdrek by stating, in addition to the facts exposed in vol. i., p. 194, et seq., that I have not the slightest
doubt that the Im6shagh are represented in the ancient sculptures of Egypt by the
fourth human race, called T'amh'u, or the inhabitants of the country T'em'h, and
represented as of very light color, with their distinguishing curl on the right side
of the head, and their earrings, for the Mashawash, who are mentioned together
with the T'amh'u, seem to be nothing else but the same tribe under a different
form of name. See Brugsch Geographische Inschriften Altigyptischer DenkmAler,
ii., p. 78, et seq., and Plate I.
APPENDIX XIII.
A VOCAPULARY OF THE TERA'SHIGHT OR TARKI'YE, SUCH AS
SPOKEN BY THE AWEL'IMMIDEN.
A SHORT PROLEGOMENA, BY PROFESSOR NEWMAN.
The materials accumulated by Dr. Barth, enable us to give a more distinct reply to
the question, What relation does the Temishight (abbreviated in future as Temght)
language bear to the idiom of the Kabdil of Mount Atlas, and to the Shilha of
Morocco? The replies hitherto given have seemed to a great authority, the Baron
de Slane, premature, and, therefore, arbitrary.
I will try to write as one recapitulating facts, so far as I can discern facts, throwing
the remarks under separate heads:
1. The system of Pronouns in the Temght differs sufficiently from that of the
Kabial to put a broad separation between the languages. The Baron de Slane has
already given a valuable table, comparing the Pronominal system in the (so
called) Berber tongues; and there is nothing to be added to this. Temght does not
differ more decisively from Kabgil in this respect than each differs from Shilha,
etc. Nevertheless, in the midst of the diversity, appear obvious and decisive marks
of common origin. In fact, the suffixed pronouns differ but little.
2. The Numerals, in so far as they are not superseded by Arabic, are
fundamentally the same in all.
3. So far as Plural nouns can be formed regularly from the singular, the two
languages seem to observe substantially the same rules.
4. The mode of Conjugating the principal tense of the Verb has no greater
diversity in the Temght and Kabfl than that found between mere dialects of the
same language.
The modes of forming the Present Tense are perhaps imperfectly understood as
yet in all these tongues.
It is on the surface of the Kabii that a Present Tense is formed by prefixing adhi,
ayi, or ai to the principal tense. This prefix precedes the pronominal mark of the
verb. Similarly in the Temght we have ee or ege fulfilling the same func-
TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.-PROLEGOMENA.
tion; and (especially since the suffix pronoun of the Kabdfl, ayi or ai ("me"), is
-ahi in Barth) this ee seems to be the same element as Kabdil ayi.
Adhi (in Kab.) often expresses a Future or Subjunctive idea. Yet the element ara
or ere is, perhaps, still more decidedly future. I have found this element, r, in
Barth, though rarely: for instance, ubbok, smoking; and rabakay, I smoke. In
Hanoteau, gh takes the place of r-sounds often confounded. To etymology it is of
interest to know which sound is here more correct. If gh, then we are thrown back
on aghi of Kabdifl, which has the same meaning as ayi, viz., "this." Also the element ad means "this," fem. ati. It seems, then, that, prefixed to a tense, they give the idea of Now or Presently.

Besides these external affixes, in an Appendix to my edition of Sfdi Ibrahim's Narrative, published by the (London) Asiatic Society, I elicited four internal methods of forming the Present Tense in Kabdil, viz., 1. by reduplication of the second radical; 2. by prefixing t to the root (with the sound of ts); 3. by prefixing 0 to the root (sounded t on the lowlands, but English th in the highlands); 4. transitive verbs, formed by s prefixed to the root, affix ai after the root, or sometimes change the last vowel to d. The Temght, with which Dr. Barth's ear was familiarized, disowns the distinction of the thick t (is) from the common t, as well as the sound of English ti/. We can not, therefore (at least at present), distinguish in this language between the second and third methods just recounted. But we may positively assert that in Dr. Barth's specimens a prevalent mode of forming the Present Tense is by prefixing t to the elementary part of the verb. Thus: aniye t, ride ye (from a root which must be nay, he rode); etiine, be rides, mounts; enhi (or eheni), look thou, find thou; inha, I have found; but tehinnen, they see; atenheghi, I find; irma, he said, he spoke; neketinagh tindrahen, I spake peace; iwwen, he went up; tewinagh, I climb up; idcdr, it is dried; itdgar, it is drying up.

On the other hand, where the prefix t is not found, but where Dr. Barth, notwithstanding, assigns a preexit meaning, I am sometimes struck with a broad d, which may perhaps denote present time, as in the fourth method of the Kabdil above noted; but the materials are so few that this needs confirmation. For example, yedfis, he laughed; dsagh, I laugh; ikke4, he turned or returned; ek-dlagh, I come back.

5. The Noun of Action is formed from the verb by a t prefixed, and becomes feminine. In this all the Berber tongues seem to differ little from one another, or from Hebrew and Arabic.

6. The Transitive Verb is formed ia Temght, as in Kabifl, by prefixing s to the root. Thus: arid, washed; saradagh, I wash (a thing); ddirif, a freedman; sidderfagh, I set free; idan, he went in company; isdau, he brought together.

7. A Passive Verb, formed like the Hebrew Niphal, is found sometimes, but rarely, alike in Temght and in Kabdil. Thus, from Barth's ibdyis, he is wounded, comes the transitive sabayasagh, I wound; and from this again a passive, ansabayiisen, they were wounded. Indeed, also war nebtiyis, he was not wounded; formed direct from the primitive. Barth has ekshe, eat thou; 6heri inekshe, "the money is spent;" probably, inekshe, is eaten.

8. A Reciprocal Verb or a Verbal Adjective is formed in both languages by prefixing ?n to another verbal root. The practical use of this is comparable to the vagueness of the Greek Middle Voice. In Kab&il it seems to be oftenest Reflective, sometimes Passive; nor otherwise in Temght. From yohagh, he seized, comes tdmnihaagh (explained by Hanoteau as the Temght for), she was seized, where the m is Passive. But from isitteg, he traded, imisitteg, he exchanged; from idau, he went in company (idiu, in Hanoteau), amidi, a comrade; isharrag, he fetched water, ainsharrag, a water-carrier; ikkel, he turned (generally neuter),
is-kal, he caused to return, he replaced; simiskal, barter thou (cause to replace mutually?); ru, weep, sob (Kabdil root), itru, he weeps (Kab.), irmerauen, (persons) weeping together; irtay, it was joined; imirtayen, mixed; isken, he pointed, showed; enmsken, they deliberate.

In fact n and m of these two heads appear to have no sharp distinction. They are joined in Barth's anemang(h)a, battle; from nfigh, fight thou (Kab.), or from engh, kill thou. In Sidi I'brahim's Shilha, emmaghan, they fought (for emnaghan?).

9. Reduplicate verbs are found in both languages, comparable to those of Hebrew and Arabic. Thus from inghal, it leaks (Barth), [in Kab., inghel, it gushed], we have, as feminine, toraft tinghdinaghel, the boat leaks-qu., is utterly leaky. Many reduplicate verbs occur where we have to conjecture the primitive; as in eshishi-

726 APPENDIX.

wu qh, I trot my horse; sheresherau, work the pump-handle, or pull the cord of the well-lever; imesharlirlarin or ereshaushaun, (the water) is boiling. The Temght sometimes repeats the third radical, as in skedkarash, to till the ground. That the root is keresh we know, since this is the sense of Kabdil kerez; and Kab. z often becomes sh in Ternght. Ergash, walk thou; and yushirgesh, he took a ride. From anjur, the nose-bone (anzer, of Kabfifl), by repeating the second radical comes shinshar, nostrils; shinshor, to clear the nose. Evidently reduplication plays a large part in these languages. It sometimes appears to excess; as from ishwar, he begins (izwer, he began, Kab.); sheshwaragh, I begin.

10. The Temght heaps formation on formation to an extent exceeding what appears in the specimens of Kabal which I have met. In fact, I have often had to refer to Kabdil or to Ghadkmsi for the roots of Barth's verbs. Thus he has sanishlam, look about; a double formation from ishlam, which must be the same as Ghadimisi illem, he saw; esimmiktagh, I call to memory; transitive from the Kab. amekthi, a thought; from root iktha. Out of Kel (a tribe, people) the Teinght develops atkil, empire; amanikal, ruler; temandkalen, government.

11. The Temght, as exhibited in Dr. Barth's specimens, often seems to degenerate into a Negro jabber. When the pronoun nominative is prefixed to the verb, a mere crude form of the verb may seem to suffice, just as though in Latin one were to say ego reg, ille reg, instead of rego, regit; and for the third person the element y (for "he") is often dropped; as amfit, he died, for yamiit. Also, apparently from the influence of vulgar Arabic, we find the first person plural form used for the singular; as Nek nodar(t), I fall (ego cadimus); Nek nufftff, I take (ego cepimus); sometimes also the Arabic form of the second person singular supplants that of Berber, with the inconvenience of seeming to be third person feminine.

12. In Kabii I find a rather rare form of the Passive by prefixing wa to the root. Thus from rebbi, rear, nourish (Brosselard), comes itwarabba, he is reared (Luke iv., 16): from yiirez, he chained; ittdrez, he chains; itwarzan, they are chained (Luke iv., 19); though here w may seem to be in the root: issen, he knew; itwasen, it is known (Luke vii., 44); utsayalaO, sagha attattusayalam (Matthew vii., 1), is intended to express, "Judge not, that ye be not judged;" strictly, perhaps, Non interrogate, ne-forte interrogemini; Sidi HdmI often uses the (Arabic?) verb isayal, he asked, for he judged. Here also we have ilthusayal, he is
judged, which yields usayal or wasayal as the passive root, and wa as the passive element. Again, inwaddar, it was trodden under foot (Luke viii., 5), compared with atar, the foot, suggests that (dd being euphonic for double t?) n and wa here combine for a passive idea. I have recited these cases because the form is rare, and might seem doubtful. Now in Barth, besides irna, he exceeded, surpassed, conquered (superavit), we find itwarna, he is conquered, which denotes a like passive formation.

13. The system of Prepositions is not wholly the same in Temght as in Kabil. Yet they have in common en or na, of; si-, from or by; ghfir, spud (pronounced r6r, with Barth); fel, upon; ger, between; dau, under; g-, in; degh or der, at or in? d-, an untranslatable prefix, sometimes meaning with. This may seem the same as id, d. meaning and. Behind, dar, in Barth, is perhaps a contraction of Kab6il da.ffiJr. Kabfil azzaO, zaO, front, before, is dat in Barth, seemingly the same element. All this shows a very close relation of the two languages.

14. The vocabularies, with very great likeness, show also grave diversities, making it impossible to regard the two idioms as mere dialects of one language. Undoubtedly a stranger is liable to overrate in detail the significance of this, and unduly to assume that words of the one are wholly foreign to the other. Thus, when the Tawtgrek say ishek (De Slane) for a tree, which in Kabdl is easta, Oasatt.a, we are struck by the contrast. Nevertheless, in Kabil, ishiq means a branch: hence it is nearly as our colonists say bush for forest, wood. Barth writes ehiishk for ishek, which still more obscures the relation. But, after all allowance, it remains that the two languages have deviated so widely from their original that, their identity is only an etymological, not a popular fact. If Negro words be duly ejected from the Temght, and intrusive Arabic from the Kabfil, Sblha, etc., the remaining portion of the vocabularies greatly illustrate one another, and seem adequate to reconstruct the chief material of the old Libyan tongue. Barth has the high merit, to us, of giving very little as Temght which can be accounted Arabic. The Arabic words which do enter the Temght are not identical with those of the Kabfil, not even in religion. Thus prayer in Kabgil is tazzallit (from Arabic 0); but in Temght 'umad, from Arabic %4.; Confirmation being confounded

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.

with Prayer, as elsewhere with Baptism. This word may have come from Christianity, since also sin in Temght and Ghadimsi is bekkad (once ebaket in Barth); which seems, like the Welsh pechod, bechod, to be the Latin peccata. It is curious to observe in Temght the root ibekket, he crouched or knelt, perhaps primitively as a religious attitude. (Hanoteau has ibekket of a lion crouching; and Barth gives asibaket for "sit with elbows on the legs against cold!".) In this connection we may note that the Kabili name of God is Rabbi, which in Arabic is "My Lord;" but in Temght, besides A'manay, it is Mesina or Mesinak, which Barth takes for "our Messiah," a Christian importation.

15. The prefix am before a substantive means in Kabfil a possessor. At least Hodgson gives many illustrations of this. I do not know that it distinctly appears in Barth, though there are words thus explicable; as ahuyye, the chase;
amahuyyen, a sportsman. But the Temght has, to express this sense, a very common prefix, ila, unknown to the Kabifl, as far as I am aware.

Thus from Ehen, a tent; ikhen, tended (i.e. married). It, indeed, seems to me that this prefix has the wider sense of changing some other word into an adjective, nearly as the German suffix -ig. Thus from dar, behind (prep.), comes iladara, (one who is?), behind; from dat, before, iladata (one who is?), in front. One may even suspect that i/a here is the element of the verb "to be," from illa, he was; ii, be thou. (Barth also has ik, "here;" and in Kabdíl and Shilha elh is the relative "who," as in vulgar Arabic.)

The general conclusion seems to be that Temght, Shilha, Ghaddmsi, Kabdíl, etc., are distinct languages, related as (we will say) Portuguese, Spanish, and Italian. It may be here added that Dr. Barth unfortunately has not been able (in the rude pronunciation to which he listened) to discriminate t from t, d from d, k from ., z from s (if there is any LP), while gha was perpetually passing into g, k, or r. It appears to me still doubtful how many consonants there are in Temght; whether there is any Ain, and whether there is any such distinction as the ts and th of the Kabtíl. If we knew the sounds accurately, certain families of words might be less confused and confusing.

In general, the pronunciation of words presented to us by Dr. Barth is softer than that of the Kabtíl, and has a fuller and clearer vocalization. In one combination, indeed, the Kabtíl is the softer, and it may deserve attention: it is the English teh (written ch by Barth) for which he has ksh or tk. Thus the Temght ik she, he ate, it kar, it is full, are in Kab'íl ichche, ich chur. From Arabic kheshen, rough, the Kab. makes ichchen, he is ugly. Again: it has ichchah and ichcham, he was hot in anger (answering to Arabic I and p4), for which Barth gives the harsher sound it kar, meaning, perhaps, itkagh or itkakh. These cases are of interest, as pointing out that the Temght has sometimes an older form of the word than that found in Arabic.

F. W. NEWxAN.

PRONOUNS, ETC.

I, nek.

Thou, ke, kay; fem. kam. He, enta. She, entadi. We, nekenet [nekenet ?]; fem. nekdnet-t [nekdnetit ?].

Ye, kawenit [kawenit?]; fem. kametdt. They, entenet [entenet ?]; fem. entdnet-t [entnet-t].

[N.B.-We, ye, they, in Tuareg [Temishight] are given by De Slane as Neknid, Kisnid, Entenid, with final d, and by Ben Mtlsa with final .4 or Of me, mine, eni, i, o, n. Of thee. ineke; fem. inem. Qf him, enis, inis. Of her, tenis, tinis. Of us, ininagh. Of you, in6.wen; fem. inelemet. Of them, in-san; fem. inesnet.

I have, nek ila r6ri (ego, est mihi). Thou hast, ke ila r-rik. -(fem.), kamak ila ro rorin (m. ?). He has, enta ila r6 ris, etc. Myself, iminin; by myself, sim-ni. Thyself, imannek; fem. imannem. Himself, herself, imannis. Ourselves, imannnagh. Yourselves, imannawen; fem. imanekmet. Themselves, imannisen; fem. imannesnet. He went, iggle, yig-le. Thou wentest, teglfit [tegelet ?]. I went, egglfgh.
They went, tigOlfn; fen. tigelfnet. Ye went, tigel~m; fim. tigeldmet. We went, neggle.
There is, eha [iha?=iga of Shilha]; ehan, there being. There is to me, ehay, ebAhi; fem. ethahe.

APPENDIX.
There is to thee, ehik, hik; (there being to thee?) ehan-kay. There was, illa. There is, yilR. There once was, k li ille. One (a certain), iyen. One by one, iyen, siyen. Alone, iyente. Other (alias), iyet, iyed. Other (alter ?), ye.nin, nid.
[Compare Arabic root ay., whence ayedan.]
I and thou, nek id ke.
[And, e. See 126, 127, and 130.] Or, mer.
But, hun. [In apodosis, Hun, ecce! (Prodigal Son.)] Yes, iya.
No, kalf! kali kalt! This thing, idi (masc. ?). This (here) thing, tetid (fem. ?). This year, teni, ten~da, tenidagh Last year, tenindi. Two years ago, t~nendin. This, that, awa, [f er. ata? j]. [These, those, win; fem. ch. of in al?] This, widagh; fem. tidagh. These, wuidagh; fem. tidagh.
- idagh [in both genders and numbers]. To- day, ashel idagh; to- night, chad idagh.
This is he, enta dadagh. That (ille), wun (ilia), t~n [indagh?], tindagh.
[This (neuter? and absolute), Rdi (?)].
- also, tetid and tet, fem. ? Prodig.
Son, (te)selsemastet, tegimastet, imposuistis ei earn.
What is it? nishin?
On this side, sihk, siihie.
There, iliseh~n, ilidihn (dis ? 102). In this place, ilidiha dagh. In what place, ennagh edagh? Where (is it) that, endagh dihan?
endegh diha? (7roi oirov;)
Where? ma ege? Where, diha, ihe (relative adv.)
[Uterque prceteriit, qub prceteriit,
Erdtilset ika, diha ika.]
In what manner ? de kawan entiig ? [degh
The whole tribe has been extinguished with the exception of a few lads, tausit ikdtenis tdminde asel harret iliadan. Much, eg~n; fem. tegt. Multitude, eg6d (129), yeg6t.t [Quantity, fiddle. Number, eket.] Initial ila seems to convert an adverb or substantive into an adjective, -like German -ig (root ila, he was? yet i/i, here, crosses us) ; so ehen, tent; WIlhen, tented. t Agel, perhaps, is Kab. aghel, arm, in the sense of side or direction. Compare ari/a. t In Shilha, yeggtt, it is abundant or numerous. In Hab:dil, yeshat is the same. De Slane treats the latter as the Arabic yeshedd, intendit, constrinxit.

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.

How qf en? merder iiglda? How much ? ma ig~de? At what price; mcder igda? How many? men ek~t? (=menesht of Dclaporte's Kab.) Too much, agoteni. 31a ny of them, awag6t daghsen. lost ol" them, awagin daghsen. [Somewhat, a little, in Ghaddmsi, eket.] A fw, wafar6r; pl. wafariren.

- awandurren [andurren, a little].
imadr6ini [niadrfln, B. 1.].
[Comparing amdddaray, younger (amdaray in Ben Milsa), and the Kabdil adr s, a little (of it), we get the root, drz- or dru, for littleness.]

Very, hullen. [Ghad., hidla, much; h&len, many; Hodgson's Kab.,* herla.] Little by little, sullen sullen. Generally, ordinarily, ennddir. [A little, giak. See 146.] One day, saag5di. Hitherto, har eg~di, 207 (usgue ad nunc).

- endi.
Now, eg6di? azarAdar [=azal adagh (this day F), amaradar (this time)]. Soon, ag6dedak [eg6di idagh]. Not yet, liar eg6di war.
- hereg~di; endi. ENum? anne? hi.]
VERBS ARRANGED ACC( WITH NOTES BY PI

1. Wu~gh, I was born.
Where wast thou born? Endagh akal widagh wuit? (What land that thou-
wastborn?)

2. The woman is bearing (pregnant), temmat t~ren.

3. The woman gives suck, temmat tez
dut [tesatut].
He sucks Ae breast, ititet [ittet].

4. The woman suckles her child, temmat

tesdnkas roris.
He sucks, inakas.

5. I am alive, edargh.
He is alive, iddr. (So Kab.)

6. The boy is ripe (of age), aliad awad.
The girl is ripe (of age), taliad tawad.
Ripeness of age, tagat. An adult, amawad.

7. The girl has a full bosom, taliad tistaurat.

Adhuc anne pervenimus, quh ibamus? Endi hi nussa., diha nikka?
[See also essi in 65, below; but
neither hi nor essi in this sense is confirmed.]
Before, dat (datii, ddtak, etc.), [=Kab.,
zath.]

Behind, dar (dar anagh, etc.), [=Kab.,
daffir.]
[That which is] ifront, ilfidata. [That which is] behind, iliidara. Darret,
after (prepos.), in Prodigal Son. At, d. At the side, d edis. By, s.

In, der, degh. Into. dag. Of (partitive), degh. Under, dau, cd~r [=Kab., edau].
Down, sedir [=sedan]. Inside, anaigesh (from egish). Outside, ageme, dag~ma
[from egem]. 11.7'thout, gema. Between, ger [me gerassen, which betwixt
them! i.e. which of the two?]. For, ror [gluir of Kab.]. Upon, felle, safelle, fel.
-ser? 139. Over, ginnngis, ginnghish [ginnge, 147].

From Kab., enning.
A round, terlaite (after noun). Until, har [Kab., ar.].

)RDING TO CONNECTION. tOFESSOR NEWMAN.

8. He has grown old, iwdshar.
I grow old, wdsharagh.

9. le died, is dead, amdit. (So Kab.) 10. Look! enhi!
I have not found, war enhgh.

Have you jbund my knife? ab~sar eni
tenht?

We have found him, menht. (Prod.
Son.)

We have again found him (we have repeated the finding), nolis tahnait.
(Prod. Son.)

I see, atdnhegh.

Sight, ahanay.
They see not, war tehinnen.
Nobody sees anything, war ihinne widem harret.
I saw nothing, war inhegh harret. 11. I look at with attention, esagtdagh.
Look before you, sagerdhe ddtak.
* The commoner Kab. khiralla, many, much,
is explained by Brosselard as a religious extrav-
8. In Ghad~imsi, fisdr, old.
agance, Kheir Alldh, God is good. Perhaps he 10. Ben Mdsa of Ghadimes gives
iheh, be saw; has proof that I do not know; else it might seem and ehdni, look! as
Tuareg ('remght). Fheni to be a mere development of herla, or compound
enehi, according to Barth, are transpositions ed anomalously of khirh21a, "good
many." ad libitum; also two meanings, see and find, ap1. Yiics2, he was born?
In .hilha, yu, a son. pear.
2. Arau, offspring, Kab. 11. Kab. isag, he looked at; ipel'ed, he
observed.
8. Yew~tet, she gave suck, Kab. ; from ftet, he Asijadan is for asi/Jadan (partic.),
attending. sucked the teat. Eagrah is a compound verb, from

APPENDIX.
I look at with pleasure, esagrthagh.
I listen [to thee], nek asijidAnak.
[You] do not listen [to us], war hanagl
tesjadet.
I looked around, asanishlilmagh.
Let us look around, sanishhimanagh. 12. Ifeel with my hand, tddishagh.
Feeling (subst.), tddisha. 13. I smell insarghagh. Let me smell (snuff" at),
disaraghagh.
Taste (subst.), tilagh. 15. I have eaten, iksh--gh.
Give me (what) I-may-eat, ikfahi awwtkshgh.
16. I am hungry, il6zagh. 17. I have enough, iyflwanagh. (So Kab.)
We have enough, naiwen.
Thou hast enough, tiydwanat. 18. Idrink, aswgh.
Drink! asu ! (So Kab.)
Give me to drink, ikfahi deswagh.
[ We give you], nikfek.
19. Thou gobblest, no stopping! ke tensdat war dikkdra.
20. Hunger Lills me [smites me f], indkh
his.
I kill you, nek inr--kay [inghkay).
21. Thirst overpowers me, inrhfi fat [fad]
[or, inghdthi, kills me]. 22. I perspire, orilfagh.
I"-erspiration (subst.), imselhii.
The water-carriers sweat, imsharrogen
imsdlhesan [(there is) sweat to them]. 23. SmokinRq,ubbok.
I smoke the pipe, rabhkagh eben.
24. I say, enn-gh. (So Kab.)
You told me, ten-hit, [she told it to me?]
Tell him, annas.
25. Utterance, as6kel [aso.el.?].
I answer, as6kelaghlh el jawib.
Answer me, sokal[he el jawf-b.
Sanishlam, frequentative from root shatam, which in Ben Isa's Lhadbimsi is
iztme, and also yellem.
12. Idish, he felt?
13. lsdregh, he smells (Temght of B. M.). If this is a causative form, it implies a
root, iregh, it has a smell; =Arabic r-hh. But it must not be too easily identified
with irgha, it burned. 14. Yalegh, he tasted; so Ben BlMisa's Tuareg (Temght).
15. Rkshe, in Kab. becomes echche. 18. lkfa [Arab. it sufficed] is ifka of Kab. h( gave. See 93.
20. Elsewhere Barth has inakke2, they beat. (Kab. has n2gh, fight thou 1 enqh,kil thou! separate verbs) Heb. jaka is either smite or slay. 21. nra (in Shilha, he
overpowers, conquers) becomes irna (but see 129) in Kab., and unites the senses
Superat and %atperest. 23. The present tense formed by initial r or a2 is rare in
Barth, common in Kabil and Shilha. 25. Isd kal, causative, from kkal, he turned
(neuter). Asokel, utterance, is like reddere voces for edore.
Restore to me my camel sokahihi imenis eni.
I restore to you your thing, sok-lagh harret enak.
They make them go back, isokaln-ten.
lie did not return my salute, war hay isakal essglbm.
I replace the sword, s6kelaghlh tsk-ba.
The copying (of a book), asaikal.
Shut the door, s6kel tefalwat.
1 shut the door, s6kelaghlh tefalwat.
[Properly, turn the door.]
26. lle does vot speak distinctly, ital elis
enis [he has wrapt (or involved) his
tongue].
He rattles [stammers?], enta ahedenddn.
She rattles [stammers ?], tehdidendin. 27. Thou talkest much, ke hek takalt.
I prattle, nek et-hahe takalt.
28. I want to whisper, erhgh asimmetiktikigh.
29. I am eloquent, orfdagh.
Eloquence, erk6d [eghr6d?].
A speech, meggLred.
He is eloquent, israd elis enis [he madeeloquent his tongue].
I praise, egeriddagh.
Be harangues them, imegg--red dassen. 30. Inquire, esistltnguh.
Ask him the news, sistent fel isalen.
(Ar. saal, he asked.)
31. Seek thou, unmagh [Kab. iinig].
He sought for, yummagh, yesummagh.
I seek your advice, nek summaghekay tanhAd.
32. Give us advice, ager tanhid(d?).
I advise you, egerikay tanhid.
Advice, tanh.
, takshit [secrecy].
I tell you this secretly, innaghak awdhagh istakshit.
We confer between ourselves, neger tanhhd gerdnagb.
You must not repeat it to any one, war tfntennit (or war tisellit) awddem. 33. I will, I like, irh~gb.
26. Dendan, or tentan, to ring or rattle, is Kab. and Aiab., and Lat., "tinnio. 27.
Tadt is perhaps formed from Arabic. stral (vox), for ku, is the Kabiil. 28. Itoot tiktk'; the m is reciprocal, and s causative.
29. Perhaps from Arabic, ghered, he warbled, the guttural suffering obliteration.
32. Ger, throw, cast, in hab. and Temght. Neger tanhdd, we cast advice. In the forms summaghekay 31), egerakay (32), irhekdy (33), Yfl.hek- (35), we see that the Taw'rek use the nominative kay or Av for (thee) the accusative after a verb [reserving the Kabtl suffix ak for the dative (tibi) ?], and the final gh of the 1st pl. is absorbed by k. Thus, irh~kay = erhbeghkay. 33. irha in Ghad. is ifrui, in Kab. is Ira. The word is evidently the Berber correlative of Arab. ifrahh, he rejoiced; which the Kabl dialect uses side by side with ira.

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
I like, love you, irh~kay.
I like not, wir terhagh [or, wur-terhagh, I like him not .]. 34. Ican, ed6bcgh, d~begh. 35. We surpass him, nfife-t. {So in Shilha.}
This man surpasses you, halls widagh yifeki.
It is better than, yfifa.
36. It is useful, yinfa. [Arab. yinf'a.]
--., ahitenfa.
It is gone, finished, yimmd~di.
It is enough, yitgeda.
It is suitable, [initdiigi ?].
It is impossible, awar inittiigi.
There is, yil.
37. What shall I do? ma diknegh?
He who makes shoes, wa yekannen ibilshegan.
We did it, neknit.
It may be, im5kan (is feasible).
38. The stars shine forth, itrren ikndn ebarbar.
This day is very fine, ashel idagh ikna tdshel d~je.
It is wonderful, tak~nit.
39. I have done for thee, eg5aghak.
I have committed sin, eg4gh b9ket.
They have formed a line, dgen fMd.
I do [have done?], iggegh.
Imend a rent, tagagh tikist.
Make for me a pretty song, egihi anaya
ih~sken, [Prod. Son, ahas nigge, ut
ei faciamus. ]
Thou hast done wrong, teg~t tellbist.
I have done (a good thing) for you, tagahak.
Thou hast done me a wrong, tagaihi telldbist: [she has done me?].
Shall I fasten the horse? agyagh ais?
[Shall I do the horse?] See 186.
Ye have put this for me, tegim5hi tetid. 40. Do not do this, kissin8di?
A good thing, barret uldgen.
41. Stand up! ebde [so Kab. and Arab.].
I halt, stand still, ebd~dagh.
Rise! enker [so Shilha].
I rise, enk~ragh.
A rising, tennakrat.
Sit down, akim [agim, aghim, Kab.].
4. Mdb (he is able) must be inferred. Hence, also, adb7b, expert, pl. idgtbdben;
and a new verb, iddbab, he is expert.
31. Ken, do thou! fae! (Ben Msa's Temght.)
38. Ikna, it shone? .Rken, he made?
89. Aj (-0) is Ghaddmsi for do thou! In Shilha, igd, factum est; in Temght it is
active, egit. The word seems to be lost in Kabiil. (See etaqagh and ig
in 47.)
40. Ysfhfqrn, good, handsome, is participial; allied, I think, to yflehe, it suits, it is
like; in Kab., elbai, be thou good; with Venture, il/tn, he was handsome or good.
41. In Kab. enker becomes ekker.
I sit down, remain, ek~magh.
We have remained long, nekkim eg~n.
Do not stay! ur t6kktme. 42. I bow, stoop, edunkeagh.
Lie down! gen [so Kab.].
He lay down, igen.
Cause thy camel to lie! siggen amnis.
I rest myself, insegh.
Ipass the night, insegh. [So Kab.]
I lie on the side, insegh s alrsin. 43. Sitting with bent legs, tinekartift.
Sit thou with bent legs, senekaraffet.
[Ie picketed a came4 ikerhf amC-nis.]
Sit thou with elbows on knees, asibaket.
Sitting with elbows on knees, tasbikkit.
Sit like Egyptian statues, asirterfiblrin. 44. I lie in bent form, andkltmeh.
I lie on the face, abumbdagh.
The boat is capsized, toraft tebumbay.
I upset (a boat), subumbdagh.
I lie outstretched, ezdrrhgagh.
[The head] is rested, irammagh?]
I rest the head, eserdimmaghagh.
Resting the head, terfimmeghet.
45. I ink to him the eye, enr-ris tat; ensgas t-t.
I twist up my face, asikaniagh edymm ni.
Blink thou, aunnrnagh.
Blinking, tenir6nltghat.
I start up from having a vision, dmrbnomawagh.
I shut my eyes, and have a vision, emaunaagh.
46. I am sleepy, tened6magh.
I doze(d), enuddemagh.
Sleep, fits, ddis (6tis).
He is asleep, its, ids.
I want to sleep, irh@gh dis.
Sleep is upon me, ehaihe'ddis.
I dreamed, ehorgeagh.
A dream, tihorgft.
47. I start up (from a dream), iggedagh;
eb6rderit [ebordegh-it?].
I snore, esikhgregh.
Snoring, asakhfidu.
I breathe, esfnfosagh.
I make a long breath, etagagh infas makk–ren.
He put his hands into his arm-pits, ig
if-senis dag tidardagh enis. 48. Go thou! mis: sikel.
42. A lar in, my side? Elsewhere, edis, side.
45. Asikaniagh perhaps means I aim, lpoint; as askken, aiming with a gun.
46. In Kab., nuddam, slumber, and ites, sleep; yarqa, he dreamed; tergit, a dream; trgit (or ter.qhit f), a coal.
47. Iggedaoh is, I flew (214), I leaped. Infas is probably imported from Arabic.
48. [18f, move thou. For in Delaporte I find itemmusu, s'agit; asemmusegh, je remue. In the Prod. Son, mus = semm, to name or call. The root sh–rgsh seems to me formed from rqsh. So sh–krsh from krah; the last radical being prefixed.

APPENDIX.
I go [went ?], egeldagh.
- [traveled?], es6kalagh.
A traveler, amas6kal.
I walk, ergishagh.
Let him go! dyit err–gesh!
I take a ride, ushirgshagh.
49. I go on horseback, egeldagh nayagh.
He rides, etinne(y).
Mount ye! annlyet!
Cattle for riding, innemenniyen. 50. Igo sporting, egelagh ahuyye.
A sportsman, amahiyen (plur. ?).
I go by water, esikalagh dar ighrr-u
[I travel by the river].
Igo by land, elfilagh esalim; perhaps,
I follow by the shore (asarim in vocab.,
but alim in 224).
Following, alilen. (105, 201.)
Straight, iseilet.
Even, flat, selilen, nesauel.
Free, alil.
Freed, nellil.
51. Icome, asagh.
I arrive, uss-gh.
-, watagh, w5dagh.
We are arrived, new/ct.
Come! iyu! (Tad.); mellit. (Awelm.) 52. We went [we passed], nikka.
The ball passed his heac tesawe t6ke
eghaf enis.
I wish to go, irh-gh tikaut.
I fee, shun, egewuatagh.
Hefted, ig-wat.
53. Igo in, enter, eggishagh.
Come in to the tent ! eggish ehen!
The rain enters the tent, aman dskgran
dar ehen.
He went up and down, imgha.
He went down, imki (in 209).
Igo about, tamaghagh.
-, kelin falinnagh.
54. Igo out [went out], ebarberagh.
The stars shine out, itftren ikuan ebarbar.
The moon comes out, ay6r ebarbar.
49. Inay, he rides, is the root suggested by the above, and is confirmed by avrnty,
a rider, in Delaporte and Venture. In a passage of Zwawa (Kabhiil) in De Slane,
inig seems to me to mean he rode. Are ndyagh and etinnegh two forms of the
present? Or is ndyagh I rode? In 62, n yjaqh, I ride.
51. In Kab., ?rasa, he came; icsrqh, I am come. Here asagh and ussdgh might
seem different in tense. Itawat, in Kab., he approached.
52. If/-ka, he passed, he went; Kab. and Shil. arigh dakahg, I wish to go, Temght
of Ben Mfisa.
53. Eskdran, in Kab., "doing," faciens. Imagha, he went up (Kab.); he went down
(Ben 1SN if. sa's Temght); he went up and down (Delaporte's Shilha); and here.
54. Barbar, extra, might seem a formative from Arab. barra; but the native root is
ebru in Kabzlil, which exists side by side with barra. There is ibra, dimisit,
repudiavit; inebran, repudium; aberru, manumissio; innabra, emisit (?); sinabra, perhaps the same as simbara above.
I come out of the boat, tabdbrbaragh t6raft.
Set them loose! simbAra!
55. Run! hasten! oshal, figgedigdig, akkra fedigdig.
I run, osh/lagh, olekwualdgh.
Come back [to me] quick! kalfihi shik.
I return, come back, ek/lagh [kalhihi, ekdlagh (?). So Kab., i.kal, he turned himself See 25, above).
Come near! ahaz!
I approach, 6hzagh.
56. He started early, inshaya.
You start early, tinshayat, (subst.) tanshit.
I start early, ismargar~gh.
inshigh semmfit [semmit, cold, fresh?].
Early to-morrow, ashikken semmiiit.
I start in the afternoon, edu~gb, (subst.) tidait.
I wish to start late, erhdgh tidait.
57. You start to-morrow morning from Timbziktu, ke tinshayat ashikke dag Timbutku.
You pass the heat in Kdbara, tek~l6t te Kdbarten [you broil].
You start in the afternoon from Kdbara, ke tedudt dag te Kdbarliten.
You lodge in Lenga, temendagh Lenga.
We pass the heat, nikktla [we broil].
Where do we pass the heat to-day? indeg dih dihennas ehad idagh?
58. I lodge for the night, nemendagh.
I pass the night (I rest), ins~gh (42).
Where (is it) that we shall rest this night?
endeg dih dihennas ehad idagh? [read dinennas ?]
59. Thou dost not keep the path, war t6herit. [Qu. from Turco-Arab., doghere, straight?)
I lose my way, ebehTlhi eberik.
55. Oss&a is dzal of Kab., correlative to 'ujel of Arabic. Lekwual is like leklek (to trot) of Arabic, for which we have keltce in Kab. Shik is zik of Kab.
5T. lklla is here ik/La, Arabic kala, he broiled. Brosselet gives as Kab. ekin, broil thou ; perhaps a root common to both languages. Ek'Net is the imperative for Turn yourself. In fat, to turn and to roast may be modifications of one root. 58. Edag or edagh, a place: (edeg igen, one place; annagh edak? what place ?). Ddj, house
with yard in (haddmsi, which = Arab. d?r. Idegh, he dwelt? (Irhan adedekken Bosebango, they want to dwell at Bosebango.) To this root I am disposed to refer emendagh. Izdegh, he dwelt, is the Kabtsil. 
Ehad, night, must be chad. It is efad of Ghad(umsi, eghed of \Vadreagh, iied of Delaporte, yit of l16med, etc. Tegit in the Tutareg (Temght) ot Hodgson. The root is seen in Arab. U, obscum fuit nox.
5.: Yoher, he has kept the traek? Eb"rik, road, is Tenght of Ben Mfisa; in Kab. ebrid, In Arab. derb.

TEMA'SHIGHT
He has lost his way, ebehas eberk [tefellit eum via].
[Ibdhe, it misleads; ibehe, it misled?]
False, b5ho.
Liar, wambaho.
Renowned, anesb4ho [boasted of extravagantly ?].
60. Ie has found his way, enta igg~rc abiiirbika.
Iam tired, ildashagh.
Weariness, ilidish.
I am very tired, ildishagh hlllen hullen.
J.ly bones are shattered, nek tatgkt~rau eghastinnini.
61. Exhaustion, temnkfit.
Irepose, ekimagh disssfin.
- adeh5gegh fessagh.
Let us repose a little, neh~get andurren. 62. Iride a horse, ndyagh ais. (49.)
I dismount, ez~begh. (66.)
Dismount ye, zbbet.
I make the camel lie down, esigg~nagn am~nis.
Hake thy camel lie, siggen am~nis innek.
I drive my horse on, egeddmegh alsin. 63. Igofast, 4gelegh shik.
I make my horse trot, eshisheriwu~gh nisin.
Ikeep back my horse, esamds~nagh aisin.
I make him gallop, etegeriwu~gh aisin.
I take a ride, ushirgeshagh; adsumnor6maragh.
64. I will go into a boat, erhogh ogish-nt6raft [I desire the entering of a boat].
I entered a boat, egishagh t6raft.
Iget on the sand, tarishagh tamdllelt.
60. iggera (Igra), it lighted upon, is surely Arabic jera. The 6 in igyro may even be the Arabic pronoun him. (? H. B.) Tataktarau seems akin to karrau or kaurau, to be torn, t being inserted as in the Arabic 8th form, not a Berber practice. The root is not unlike zarau; see below.
61. Temankit. Compare War itemandkit, lest it hurt (him). Perhaps from naka. Diseun, my side? Edis, side; uni, eni, of me. 62. Zb in this sense is found in
Brosselard; but the Kabfiil and Shilba for it is uguz, ukuz, eggiz. See ged, gbz, in TO, and oftener kdz, in 99. Egedemmegh, perhaps (Arab. Qedem) I cause to go in front.

Aisin, for a-s-ini (see end of 65), is only a clipped pronunciation.

68. Eshisheriwudgh, eteqeriwu4gh, seem to show wuegh as marking the 1st person of a causative verb, when the root ends in au. Shisheru, per. haps, denotes frequentative alternative movement, nearly as sheresherau, to work the pump-handle. Eadvmisan, causative, from amdsan ? Etegeriungh (I set loose?) has et to mark pres. ent tense. I make the root igherau, it is easy whence egheuraugh, I am easier, eheroen, easy; haroen, spacious.

AdsvmornSmaragh seems to be a causative from a frequentative root mormor. Ad marks present time.

64. Tar(isdnagh (from yardsan), he touchedI he grazed? Tursar (211), ran aground.

VOCABULARY. 733
We have got on the sand, urannar-nakal.
I disembark, tabarbltragh t6raft.

65. Do we cross in a boat? nisger is t6raft.
Or have we to go on foot? nr essi sfdarinnanagh ?
I cross a river, isgeragh.
I ford a river, nek yer teawent.
Take my horse through the river, kulethi aiseni.

66. Ipass a town, kayetdnnagh.
Shall we sleep in Kdbara, or pass it?
awak nemendagh e Kdbaraten, mer nokaitenit?
I alight (and take quarters) at the house of a certain man, ezubbegh rar halis iyen.
I climb down, nek azubbegh.
30hammed E'sghir [probably?] will lodge with El Bakdy, Mohammed essghir kodisen azubbet r~r El Bakgy. 67. I change my dwelling, ehbnagh.
The Tademkkek have transferred their encampments at Gundam to Bosebango, Tademekke t6nit ah6nenit r~r Gundam, irhan adedekken Bosebango. 68. Iswim, shdfagh.
Do you understand swimming ? ke tezay elishaf?
69. I dance, delillagh.
Iplay, edellagh.
lie understands dancing extremely weli,
issan dellul yulighen hullen. 70. Ispring, tiggdagh.
I springq over a ditch, agdddregh itras atukkik.
He jumped down from his camel, egedd65. Esi may seem to he the Latin num, an, as is in Delaporte's Kabil. Isger is izger in KabAil, perhaps more correct. Yer may seem to be for yegh, first person of a verb, so as to mean "I keep the ford' (teawent i. a ford); but enlyi, in Barth, means let, leave, being the Kabil ejji. Kulet, plural, from root kid? Compare ikel, he marched: or is t radical? 66. Ikdyetan, he passed. Compare ikka, 52, and yukaine, 14T. Awak, Latin "utrum?" Mer, "an." Imendagh, he lodged? See 58. 67. Yehin, he encamps? moved his camp? (-Ehe, ehan, a tent.) Ij6&nit and aheneniit seem two verbs of same tense? enit marks 3d pl. fern. Adedekken adedeqghen? See 58. 68. El-iqhaf. If el is here the Arabic article, shaf ought to be imported Arabic. Golius has zdaf, explicuit alas ac caudam; which easily be. comes natavit. Ke tezaq = terayt, it seems. In 89, ezay= esan, he understood. 69. Kab. zullel, to pirouette. In Shilha, adila. Ian, teaching, is from Arab. delli, a different root. 70. TNgedagh (also), I fly; igged, he flew; see 47. Egeddrit and agydereqgh are from another verb, iged.er, or even ider, if ag here marks tense. Ider, be came down, as in Kab. iter. A teras = Ader-as?
Atukkk, a ditch.

APPENDIX.
rit fel tirik. [Fel is upon: down must be in the verb.]
71. I climb up (a mountain, a tree), tewinagh (adar, ehfshk).
I limp [sink down ?], ag6zeagh.
I get down? ag~zeagh.
The thief climbed up the house in the night, and dropped into the middle of it, amakirad awen tdrashim das ehad, atarikat dar amsenis.
Ifall, n6da(gh) (see 104), nistrekegh.
Hefell, isktrek, atariikgtet.
I threw down, satarakegh.
72. Itrip, stumble, tersellidagh, neka gdrt.tif.
Islide down, nek abtirzazawerit. [See eborderit in 47.]
I strip my hand of skin, azelebbegh.
I limp, ehiagagh.
That camel limps with his right foot, amenis wftdagh dhiak s adar-n-arl. 73. I sing, nek eganandsehak.
Do the Tawdrek sing ? Im6shitghe iganandsehak?
They are very fond of singing, irhinne adigdr~shen tdezdk hullen.
They have their peculiar songs, entenet
Ian tarezek imdnnesen.
Sing me a nice song, auiyahi as5hak
ih~skcn; egAhe anaya ihfsken. 74. I laugh, dizagh, tedazagh.
Thou laughest too loud, ke hik tadfs lebiset [tu, est tibi risus pravus].
Much laughing is not becoming, tidasit
tegit war tawge. 75. Ismile, asib-iksagh.
A smile, tibeksit.
I cry out, egerigh [eger~gh].
71. Iwwen, Ghad., he went up; and Kab. thasawint, an eminence. Auen here = iwwen. Das some preposition. Atarak, drop; isatarak, he threw down, let drop; yet isetrek neuter verb. 72. Ireeflad, he struck the foot against. Ag4gh tatuf, I have made a catching. Adar-n-arZl, foot of the right. 73: Asdhak=azghak=agh.zak by transposition; a song, or singing? Also anaya, a song. In nek eganan we must see the participle iganan, canens; but eganan is canunt: for eghannan? the root is Arabic, ghann.
Tareztk, tarezzek = taghez~k.
Irhdmne = irhan, they love; see 33. Lan, there were? = ellan. Adigereshen implies igeresh, he recited? Compare gher; and ghered, warble, as Arabic. 74. Yedez, he laughed (B. M.'s Temght). Tadiz, tdazit, laughter. Lebaeet must be feminine for iebasent, from ibasen, bad.
Tegtt for teqent, fern., from egen, much. But, In 39, tegit, thou hast done. Wge also seems to be a root (compare Arab. wejeh-qu. spectabilis eat) for decuit. Hence fern. tauqe; and war inititegi, it can not be (it will not do).
75. Oher (here as in Kab.), is to call, to cry, to read ; uniting Hebrew kara, call, and Arabic k ara, read. The k is often found for gh; Hodgson says, wrongly. [1] moan, tendtOkt, tehdn~fet.
Wge also seems to be a root (compare Arabic wejeh-qu. spectabilis eat) for decuit.
Why do you weep? mefel tehilit? mas halit?
Do not weep, war telbft. 76. I am silent, es6sanagh.
Be silent, sfisin.
77. I am sorry, nek ezenesjimo.
1 [?] am vexed, igrawent nisgam.
Do,ot be vexed, ease your mind [lift up your heart F], sili ulhinnek.
78. I do not dissemble, isdkinagh imini [I show myself].
[He dissembles], war sekne imainis.
You dissemble, tesirmfirday.
I am content, Iallow, permit, ekeb-lagh.
(Arab., Kab.)
79. I trust, efelisegh.
Confidence, tefRlist, tiffllas.
He confided (in African Arabic), falash (seems to be the same root).
lam merry, nek elidwe.
80. I pity him, nek ergras [eg~ghas?] tehinit.
I do not pity him, urhas ger [gegh?] tehinit.
Have mercy on me, adenihi tehinit.
I am angry (Sa-...
tan has entered etkiragh, eggesh ihe me), j Eblis.
Why are you angry with me? mas ke, tdjds falM (or felkhi) atkar.
81. Ile dishonored him before all the world, tezdmit dedisin idlnet rrirtret.
I slight you, tdzfmegh fellek, nek tezdmilkay.
[Slight, dishonor], tisfmit.
He has dishonored me, enta tezdmilhi.
I fear, eks6dagh.
1heI, he weeps; compare Heb. and Arab. hailet, and Engl. wail. In Delaporte's Shilha, allan, weeping, isillan,'causing to weep; h omitted. 70. In Kab. i46im, be silent. Compare Arab. .amoat, siluit; samm, obturavit, os repressit. 77. Anesgum, or rather anezgum, seems to mean sorrow (as in Kab.); but for the verb nothing nearer appears than Arab. hazan, of which I have thought it an inverted corruption. Nek ezenesjltno, for nek es enezgani-
=Suli, in Kab., lift up, cause to rise. Illhi, heart (Kab. ulna, Arab. kalb, Heb. lib, display the same elements, though in disguise. 79. Ellewegh, I am merry. Elsewhere, iMewen, they were merry. Teslauit, letificasti. Olewet, happy; nli-a, fern. tolba, wide, spacious; qu. laxus, lagus, liber. Also frequentative, Ifelfie, it was let go? See 97.
80. Tehelnit would recall Heb. and Arab. harn. Eger, per, perhaps for eqegh, I make. Aden-aht, spread over me? B .ltkdr, atkar, should be etkakh, or rather etkas, atkah, but the Tawirek can not sound h. It is Kab: erhhah, Arab. aijah. But et'kar means "full;" Kab. eehchur. See 103.
Tejils = tegesh, enters?
81. Te uigeh, tezdmeh. Root, ezem (deficiency, Kab. ?). )zem, he slighted; tiezet, he slight; D edis in-, at side of?

TEM.A'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
Do not fear, ur teks~k [teks6d].
Do not tremble, ur termiiga.
Thou art impatient, unsteady, ke term4det.
I hide myself, efaragh imini; bikegh imni; esiddAkik.
I cover my face with my hands, hltragh idgmfn.
82. I take care, uggsgah.
Beware of that man, ehdwet halls w4dagh, agas-n-niet.
He is of a treacherous disposition, erddar (eghidar?).
I do not care, war ekblagh.
Take care of the luggage, agis fl~len. 83. I wait for you, ezdargh fillek.
Wait for him, zedar fillles.
malardn?
He is impatient, enta war iz~dar.

84. I recall to mind (my friends), nek esimmiktighdt imaraweni.
I am not thinking at all, war indahi iblu. (Thought does noifind me?)
I remember, nek esimmesdykal (?) or kagh (?)).

85. I have forgotten, etuagh.
Thou hast forgotten, tettat.
Forgetfulness, tatat.
I am accustomed to -, nek esilmadarak isiil-n--.
I am accustomed to smoke much, nek eshuaragh almeddak teseisn taba [coepi
discam haustum tobacci].
I teach you, nek esalmddakay. 86. I know, sinagh.

Ternuga: but terimmek, anxiety (with k), and termddet (with d). In Kab. ergigi,
tremble.
Eddakik (-kigh? -ghigh?). From sideris (sideghis ?), "secretly," we might lay
down side h, as the root. But ised egghaf dnis, "he hides his head," gives us simply
ised, he hides, and esiddakik, I hide thee.
Idemin, perhaps, is dual, Two cheeks; Barth has id mdwen (139) for faces, pl.: root uden, cheek, face, Kab.

82. Ehewet = egewet, of 52, "shun."
Niet ? tln Delaporte s Shilha the word means "even," 74ne. ]
IkL., he cares. Compare the Hausa verb knia, to care, in the Rev. Mr. Schin's
vocabulary, and ekull in 104.

84. Iktha, cogitavit, seems to be the Kab. root. Hence imekthi, secum repatavit;
and here, isimmikti, the causative. Imarau-eni, my friends? my sorrows?
Elsewhere immerauen, mutual weeping: root ru, sobbing, Kab. But imidaueni, my
friends (Prod. Son); imidi, a friend. Eoimmesiyakagh suggests a root, suya or uyak;
but esimmesia qhak (I remember thee) a root suya. Both are strange to me.

85. Itu, he forgot, Kab. limed (Arab. and Heb.), he learned; eiamed, he taught;
here, he learned. Esilmadlrak has a syllable too much; read esilmadagh. Then
akisid or isMl means custom? Almeddak = Almeddagh, (ut) discam. Ishuar is for
Kab. izwar, he began. So teshuar torau, incipit pariat - partutit.
Tess n taba; in is the prep. "of?"
I do not know, ur essdnagh.
Do you not know? ke war tessinat? 
I am puzzled, nek amd6ggbg. 87. I understand, cgerdhagh.
I have not understood what you said, war
egerhhagh megergerit.
I understand a little Tarkiye, egerhhagh
andtfrren da Temrshight.
I can not speak it, war d6begh assokel
enis.

88. I am learning Tarkiye, etitiragh almud en Temrshight [peto doctrinam].
I know the Kurdn by heart, ikfasagh cl
Kurdn: et-fagh.

89. Teach me Tefinaghen, agimekkshe Teffinaghen.
I acquaint, inform you, eldrghghak.
I read, nek rarah [gharagh].
Read, tdg~ri [tdgh4!ri].
I have read with the most learned of the
Kelssik, nek dgrdkt r5r el fakkfren
Kelissfik ezay (esan) tdgdri hullen. 90. I write, katitbagh. (Arab.)
Written, iktab.
I count, esedanagh.
Counted, isddan.
Are these cowries counted, or not? timgul idagh is6dnen, mer war is~dAnen?
What is the name of this in Tarkiye?
whdagh, innagh isnennis se Temdshight ?
Your name ? ismdnnek?
91. I pray, um4dagh. [From Arab.
'amad, which degenerated from the idea of confirming into the ecclesiastical
baptizing.] Have you finished your prayer ? ke tesymdet timaddnnnek?
81. .Egerah, understand thou? So agruhet, science. It seems to be a pure native
root, as isen, he knew.
Meggerit is explained by Barth as me gerit= me gherit; or, rather, me teghrit, what
thou hast called out. Meggered (meghered) is a harangue. See 29.
Da, not certain Tem hight, as ITnshaghe, for Kab. Temazight, Zm6zagh. Assokel;
see 25.
88. Itar, petiit. In Kab. I know only the causative isuthar, petiit, which is common.
De Slane, in a Berber (Shilha?) poem, has idder and iter; viz., iw6llik iddernin, toi
que l'on implore (-olv e Nia rolAvotv?); and win itran, he who wishes
Ikas is corrupt Arabic. H afiz, L., Etafagh, I have caught or held iast, often has w,
as though wa.taf were the root. It is Arab.
whether native or imported. Common in Kab. See another etAif in 208. 89.
Ezav, peritus fuit; as appears by comparing this with 68. _Ean is ian, scivit, as in
86. The verb should be plural here? Egerekl-eghregh; and the vowel of the
penultimate distinguishes the past tense from ,haragh, present tense. 91. Tesymdet
belongs to an important root, immda, it is finished (86); imda in Delaporte’s
APPENDIX.
92. (1) fold (my) hands [fingers], asimmdkeris isikkden.
F’old ye your hands, simmekerissit isikkadenawen.
Ifist, ez~magh. [Arab. s6m.]
Are you fasting? ke taz6met?
93. I have had, once I had, krli ille.
[Kdhi, once upon a time; ille, there
was? r6ri or gh6ri seems wanting.] I have not, war r6r ille [read, war r&r
ille].
I have nothing to eat, war ikt-fagh akshegh [non sufficio (quod) edam]. 94. I add, give more, esew5dagh.
Add to me a little, sewadibhi andiirren.
I arrive, widagh [wit.agh].
We are arrived, nuat [newit].
(The cold) decreases, efenis.
I lessen, nek afenis-tennet (?).
- (of fluids), esoddblragh.
95. Bring me something, auyoh-t harret.
I bring it to you, waueghakit.
I leave, let, nek 5yagh.
Let him go (walk), eyit rrfgesh.
96. I set free a slave, sidderfagh 6keli.
A freed slave, dk-li nellil.
A freedman, ad-rif.
Divorce a woman, ezimmizeagh t6Anate.
I marry, itidi'bonagh.
He has divorced his former wife, izimmze hannis, t5dagh r6ris tille [quce ei erat].
(And) has married a young girl, awe tahad andtirret. (On awe, see 95.) 97. 1 hold fast, etffagh.
We take [lay hold qf], nuttef.
Catch it, hold it, 6ttuft. (See 88.)
Hold fast the cord, Atef irriwi.
Shilha. Barth has ejumddade, (the nights) are passed. Causative, isimda, he ended.  Also
intende C = imemde 9], (our food) is finished, gone. See farther under 103.
93. Rald, une fois; Kab. theklilt; Shilba, wal. lktefa seems to be the Arabic 8th form, from kefa, and not to be connected with ikfa, he gave, unless this is itself only a corruption of the Arabic verb.
94 Sewad [tswat] seems to me the causative of iuvat, a root common in Kab. Thus iwat, acessit;" isewat, addidit.
Andurri, a little, combined with nadruln, small, gives a root dru. In Kab., edrus, a little,. The 8 must once have been a pronoun: edrus, a little of it. See also endurret, in 96, for young. 95. In Kab., awid, bring to me hither* -u-i he brought, led.* Auyohz must be fored of auu, bring; dhi, to me. In 96, awe (-yjud) duxit, for married.
Oyagh is a different verb, imperative. Eyl, let, leave; in Kab., eji. 96. N'6Uil, freed, from alit, free. A root of very like sound is in 105, and another in 50.
Izimiz; see in 81, izem, he dishonored.
Ilannis, wife, and halis, man, are peculiar to Temght. (Qu. halls, a "fellow;" hannis, "his mate?")
Taliad, lass; iliad, lad, "are very like Arab. welad, son, which in Temght also appears as abarad.
* In Prod. Son, tauy, tulistie; ahat et agite ferty! IRwuayamas [read etuayamas ?], oducatis oi.
Let go the cord, selluelfieragh. 98. Pluck off, ekas.
I take of, pluck, ekAsagh.
Raise, take away, [tolle!] atkal.
I carry off, Atkalagh.
I put the load on the camel, otigergh ililen fel im~nis; nek etajejegh ililen.
[He heaped things upon him], egag fellas il~len.
99. I take the load (from the camel), etak~zagh ililen; ez6zebagh ilalen (fel aninis).
I put on the (horse's) saddle, nek ek~ral alakif; nek esewiragh alakif.
Put the saddle on, sfiar elakif.
I take the saddle off, ekdssagh elakif.
(98.)
100. I seek, look for, Attfiragh. (88.)
What do you look for? ma tetdrret?
Search well ummagh hullen. (31.)
I entreat, beg, etragh [another form of the present for etdt~xagh ?]. 101. I send, es6kegh.
I call for, dgaragh [Agheragh ?].
Call him, 6g&ret [agherft?].
I show, ese~nagh [point out].
Show me the road, sekenghi abarraka.
I do not show you, nek wax esekenaghak. 102. I collect, etawaragh.
I hid [stored up?] etwftragh.
I cover (my face with my hands), haragh.

97. Sellueluer ? But see 79. 98. There are four roots in Kab. with the radicals ks:
(1.) Ekkss, aufer, exue; ikkee, exuit.
(2.) Ek, pasce (pecus) ; iksa, pavit; ikces, pascit.
(3.) !k pupugit, momordit (serpens). (4.) Eku, plica; iisa, plicuit; ikessu, plicat. To the 3d I refer Delaporte's confrepit arbores ventus. I have tried to resolve (2) and (3) into lwsit, capsit. See also k8 in 167 ; ekos, 218. Atkal at first seems to be the Arabic thaqal; but Ben M6sa spells it with simple k, not k. Yet atktl, government. In Ghad. jejdq means laden. We have here a root gag, gak, or gaqgh, meaning to heap or load; frequentative, ,ejegh. Otdpergh is present tense (for otCdqeghagh ?), and etajejegh apparently the frequentative.
99. Etakizagh might seem to mean, "I come down," but it is here causative: as eozcbaq for s6zebagh, because (I suppose) 8 becomes z through the proximity of the other z. The roots kdz, goz, zob are named in 6.
Fel (upon) is used both of taking down and put. ting up.
Elkeraabqh? ekeral, gird? In 160, ireled, he girded, which perhaps should be igheled. Sewar, put on; and et-awaragh, I collect (102), seem to be akin. But see owar, in 113. 101. Isdka, he sends, is possibly the causative of ika, he passed; fe.
thka.
Mar esekenaghak. Here, as in 105, the power of war to attract the accus. pron. is neglected. Elsewhere, as in 106, 129, we have the Kabil or normal order.

102. Imbkas is the only instance I have observed of s and r interchanging. In Brosselard we read imugger and imcgger, convenistis ad eum? Bear me testimony, githiti. The people gather in the place, idlnet ye- I swear, ehidagh [I swore?].

103. The market is full, ewdet ydtkar. I swear falsely, eh~dagh-s-biho. The people go asunder, idinet ibbedi. Hie swore falsely, yehad-s-baho. The tribe is scattered, tausit tesimande. I make peace between them, etfnagh ting. I [we?] salute you, nigerak es sA-haren [I speak goodness.'

TENIA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.

[ We met there?], membkas dis. 108. I honor you, esimgharrghak. Where did ye meet him? kawenit ddagh Hte has not honored me, warhi isimghar.

104. Imbkas is the only instance I have observed of s and r interchanging. In Brosselard we read imugger and imcgger, convenistis ad eum? Bear me testimony, githiti. The people gather in the place, idlnet ye- I swear, ehidagh [I swore?].

105. The market is full, ewdet ydtkar. I swear falsely, eh~dagh-s-biho. The people go asunder, idinet ibbedi. Hie swore falsely, yehad-s-baho. The tribe is scattered, tausit tesimande. I make peace between them, etfnagh ting. I [we?] salute you, nigerak es sA-haren [I speak goodness.'

im. 110. Igo to law, esherragh. (Arab.) Salute him, igiras es stlm. , nek amisten. I seize your hand, atifagh afWs enik. I overcome you at law, irnfighak se-sheI embrace him, ekdlldghas. riat. He fell on his neck, and kissed him, yFi- I am cast in a suit, etiwarnagh; (the dar fel erinnis ahisi timullut. money is lost), 6dri inekshe. I embrace his knees, (and)kiss them, ne- 111. Ipraise, egeriddagh.

107. Make place [for me], shink~shin fdlle. I punish you, nek akazbhkay. Ie has refused (to) me, indarfehi.
Elsewhere, as'imanle, with a torn dress; [lie refused to me speech concerning it ?], timminde (the tribe) is extirpated; ezzud em. indarihi meggered sirs. mende, our provisions are gone. These three 113. Pardon me! enshbhi. suggest that tearing and rending are the essence of a root isnende. But as this word means (the on you, esghak. food) is finished (see 91), possibly all belong to 108. bimghar (he made great), as in Kab., is the root i-tda, 36. from the root mkkur, great; the k becoming gh

104. Ager-as; either "throw salute," from gher, in the causative, as in some other verbs.
or" cry out salute," from gher; aghuras. See 1101. 109. Geh, "testify thou," shows the root of the Ekull, cherish thou? See ekQI in 82. Different Kab. inige(h), a witness ; in Shilha also enpi.

are ikel (%), he marched, iqgel, he turned aside, Tindhdr-n is explained by Barth as "proteciqla, he broiled: roots liable to confusion. Also tion," and also "goodness." Combine it with kWtet in 65. ehir, wealth, and perhaps with Arab. kheir, good.

Odegh, I fall? nbdagh, we fall (71), war tidu, since khir is common in Kab. lest thou fall; if to be so written denote a root. 110. Irim Kab.), superavit, irnu, superfuit; Idu (compare dau, under). But if tidu is untrust- two verbs which are hard to keep separate. (Irm worthy, adar, or rather atar, is the root; in Kab. in Venture is il triumphe.) Here we have active to go down. and passive irn-qh, superai, etiwarnagh, superaPaden (ifaden ?) pl. of afid, knee? tus sum. See the preliminary remarks.

Aha-sen. Aha=Agaof39? (nekshe, strictly, I think, "is eaten ;" a sort Imbler (imblegh), he kisses? of Niphal passive, from ekshe. 105. Elkms in Kab. "arrive." Qu. may it- Ill. On egerid (eqherid?), see 29. kern, "pertinuit," explain the double use? Elakd&dkay, from ilakad ?

Serhu, victory, primacy. Ydgar (Shilha and .Eieherak, or egishegh-ak ? I enter to thee. Kab.), "it exceeds," and so once (I think) in A'lkawel is corrupt Arabic. G/zadar also is Barth. Thus ugaraghak serhu may seem to mean Arabic. "supero tibi prostantiam." lrk-hed seems a mistake for iahshe (a parttIrhit. Barth suspects it should be "war irhUt," cipial form), "deceiving" (see 115), from Arabic loves not. Final t is then useless. May not t be ghesh, decept. radical, and irhat mean deject, excussit ? Arza.; irza, he broke.

Amanbkal, chief. 2Ynmokolen, they invest 112. Yi"del, he denied? their chief, 125. Atkel, government (spelt tj Indar, he refused. So 218. Azab. seems to be Arab. 'adab, torment; but by Ben Mdsa). These words, with the term what is ak before it? Does k replace lest an? "k6l," seem peculiar to Temfshight. 113. Insha, he pardoned, recalls Arab. ne8,a he 106. Idghel, he helped? forgot.

VOL. III.-A A A

738

APPENDIX.
Pardon me, 0 Lord! e Mesi, takfit felle. Ransom him, s6kilas tdfittaut enis.
I wrong you, nek 6warada kay [6waranakay?]. Thou wrongest me, t6waradfhhi.
114. I doubt, hesitate, ant mistaken, nek amdiggeg. I am not mistaken as to what I said, nek war amdiggeg tidid, au anndgh.
I have been longing fbr you, ez6weragh. 115. I disturb you, nek ashelinakay. You disturb me, ke teshledihi: ke tekesadihi maklna nawa kannak. Let me alone, aiyihi; (trouble me not), war shill~hi.
I tickle, nek akerittegh (tdmnandan). 116. I envy thee, nek munshghakhay. 'Abidin envies Bakdy on account of [the Uliye], 'Abidin emunshagh El Bak~y fel temust innis.
I cheat you, betray you, nek ghadgrakay (Arab.), nek ighdgraghak. Thou hast cheated me, taghdarredahi. 117. 1st seal, 6k~ragh. (So Kab.) Th6f, takar (and tekarak, below). A thief, amkarid. (So Kab.) Thieves have stolen my camel, imakaraden 6karen atninis eni. The Kel-ulli are expert in stealing, Kelulli idgbabdn dag tk~rak. I seduce (?), nek takUrfsak.
That man has seduced the woman (?), halis adagh etaikaras tamnddant.118. I take vengeance, nek azilagh erini. Vengeance is sweet, tamnizilt-n-era tazd. Takfft, "thou hast forgiven," as from akAfa. The k is a corruption of ain, from Arabic "afu. Teffedaut, ransom, from Arab. feda. Sketas, return (repay) for him. See 25. Owar, injure thou (?). Towarat, 2nd peas. 114. Tidid, true? truth? Au = awwa, that which. EzOiragh, from Arab. zr, violence? 115. Shela, disturb, bustle. See oshel, 55. Akeritti (tickle thou?). In Kab. ekret, rake, scrape. Below, karrauet, is torn. 116. Imunnhegh, he envied; am6shagh (um-onshaq 7), envious. Pet, upon; tewust, affair. 11T. Yikar, yhka, , he stole, seems to have secoudary verbs, yekarad, yekarak, yekaras. Temandantftamattut of Kab.? The form does not seem to recur. Ikaras in the Prod. Son is used for igharas, he slaughtered. 118. Brd, the debt of blood. Azal was at first written by Barth as with V. I suspect is is bere IL, and means demand. Zal is of many roots in Kab.
Az~d, azid, sweet. He has revenged on them the blood of his father, izel dassen ishni-n-shis.
I beat you, nek witak.
He beat him, till the blood came out, yawat, har tegmad dshen.
119. I imprison, ergellagh (awadagh iyen).
A prison, ehe-n-err-gal.
I put in chains, egegh As-sar dar erinnis [I do a chain on his neck).
I put a waistchain on his back, a handcuff on his hands, gegh teshim dar darannis,
gegh tiyat dar afasinnis.
120. I circumcise, nek emdnktden, (partic.
Circumcised, imankad, pl. imank6den.
I castrate, nek emeleghgh.
121. I wound somebody, sabdygsagh awAdem.
e is wounded, ab6yis (?).
Wounded, anasbiyas.
122. I box the ear, asittegb.
I slap the face, edebar&bagh.
I kick, stamp with the foot, tersellidagh.
I strike with the knee, nek tesmen kds sfidagh.
I give a foil, nek esflhras [eslltighas]. 123. I wranqle, nek tdy~ragh shlkikfn.
I cut (off) his head, nek tesilgg6rst [testigg6gh-as-t].
Strangle thou (him), or-a-s.
I strangle (him), nek ordgh-as.
124. I go to war, iggel~gh dagh 6g~hen.
[=Egehen, an inroad, or military expedition.] The people gather, idinet tidauen.
They intend an expedition, yeb6ken dgehen.
A'shdni, blood, is nearly as in Iausa. In Kab. we find idemmin, as if Arabic pi.
Shi or ti. father.
Yawat, "he beat," is the root, as in Kab. Tegmad (with adverbial d final), from
igem, he went out; Temght, not Kab.
119. Irn4el, he Imprisoned?
Erl, neck (in Kab.); fel erinnis, on his neck (Prod. Son). Dar (=dafir, back? see the
prepositions). I.fasan, hands. I infer that dsesar is a collar or neckband, teshim, a
waist-chain, tiyat, a handcuff.
121. From 129, buis (or aboyis 7), a wound. The causative verb is sabayas, wound
thou; the passive (or Niphal), inebuy is, he was wounded. Also anasbiyas
(particip.), wounded. Awdden, from Heb. and Arab. adam, man. 122. Ibardh, he
slapped ? (Ibardgh, he treated insolently?) See Abardgh in 138. 123. Ieugg, be cut
off? Oriia, strangle, may be compared with eri, neck, Kab., and in 119.
124, 125. Iqgle, he went or set off, seems to me the same root as tekili, starting,
setting off, which in Kab. is tikli or thikli. I ventured to propose writing the verb
ikdii (see 232), and regarded siket (travel) as its causative (viz., cause to go, i.e.
make the beasts start) : as Arab. s,),k. But Barth insists that iqi,'e is necessarily
sounded with g, and teiddli sikkel, with k. Idinet; Arab. dunia, world? The word
pervades North Africa.
TEMA'SHIGHT
They deliberate, emsakan mden.
125. They are about to start, yebšken ŏdkMlë.
The expedition takes horse, 6ghen f'keb. (Arab.)
They invest their chief, tinm6kolen amanbkal nissen.
The expedition left, eg~hen 6g~le.
We shall fight, adeneknis. [Eknis, battle.]
126. The expedition attacked, eg~hen 6hak.
They fell upon the cattle, eh~kan ishitan.
They plunder the tents, dsfeken ihinnan.
They take away every thing, atifen auay ilkdihen der rurret (they seize whatever (is) there of the whole).
They take the male and female slaves, igfalen k~lan e tikdl~ten.
127. They lead away the horses, wottan iyesan. [They bring up? See iwat in 94.]
They drive away the cows, 6higen iwan.
- the woolly sheep, 6hagen tikfndemen.
- the (hairy) sheep, oh gen tihat~n.
The goats, 6hagen uli.
128. There was nothing but weeping of the women and children, war akfma har tidgdin e iligdeni mmerauen dag timshagh.
[N.B. e, and; as 126, 130.]
They fought hard, tisbsan iigazar.
They would not flee, war eb~kan 6gewet.
(52.)
129. They vanquished them only by numbers, dntenet war tandirnen har s eg6d.
Died, who died, amit, awa amit.
VOCABULARY. 739
Was wounded, who was wounded, dgeshn bitfysen, awa bfiyis.
Was speared, who was speared, dgeshdn tfdk, awa gishen.
Was smitten, who was smitten, dgeshin twit awa gishen.
The whole tribe was extirpated, tausit ikdfnes tdmminde. (91.)
Except afew lads who were absent, asel harret iliaden, war hadarin.
There was not one who was not wounded, war tille dakhsen &r war nebrlyis.
130. len were broken and crushed, idinet arzan e digdfgen.
They ransacked their villages, atikf~lan emazighe nissen.
They took it and went away with it, eluent, dng~len dris.
The enemy despaired, fshlnge arlhtgdn.
I despair, nek ehersihAragh.
The whole town burns, aghfrim ikdtgnes
irrar. (170.)
They fled into the forest, imdr rasang chishkan. [They were broken,
and entered the bushes.]
1. flee, nek arz~gh. [I am broken?] They make a stand, ibddan. (41.)
131. They gather, isart6.yen harem6kisan.
[They caused to join, until they assembled mutually.]
Their chief addressed them, emegered
dassen aman~kal nissen. (29.)
132. He exhorted them to defend their women, innisen hawgin auidagh akwen
igeriven tfdd~n ennawen. [He said to them .... that (?) to you they
set free your women.] ....
Emsdken seems to have m as a reciprocal form. And your children, ezafnet d
iliaden naMden, men, as in Kab.
125. lb~ki is clearly used, just as in Kab. ibgha,
he will, he is about, he means; and seems to be the same word. Yet the latter is
identical with the pron. accus. tan (them). Amen, they overArab. bagha, decuit,
from which I think it is bor-came, as in Kab. rowed. See 125. *
Egbd, multitude, as in Shilba yeggat, it was
inmkel for Inn~kel f See 105. numerous.
126. Ohak, ohag. in Temght, are the root awagh Egisl n seems to come from
egish, enter or of Kab., but take a stronger sense. Awagh is pierce. (So eg.shdhi
terjadaten, cup me behind "6 sume," but ohag, "cape, rape." the ear, i.e.
pierce to me the back-head.) idak.
E/shkan in 127 is 6hagen; but perhaps they he pierced with a spear, Heb. dakar;
Ar. dakk differ in tense,
Asfeken, I conjecture, should be asfeghen, they feminine nouns.
empty; from fagh. See 174. 
Igflal may seem to be the same word as ikfe, 130. Irza, he broke; also, he was
broken; but he ransacked. 130. for the passive we seem presently
to find imarraz;
127. TihaMln seems to be the same word as tig- in Kab~il imrez and irrez.
Idigdeg or idiggid, he haten, goats, from taghat, she-goat, in Kab. Barth crushed;
frequentative. Compare Heb. daka4c, also has tarat (= taghat), she-goat; yet he is
sure Ar. dakk, to pound, etc. that tihatn means (hairy) sheep; and that ulli Itikfel,
present tense from lTkfel7 See Igfal, (which in Kab. is a flock of sheep or goats)
is the in 126. Temght plural for goats. In 137 ulli is sheep ?). Amazaghe.
Compare Timshagh, in 128. [There is no doubt that ulli comprises occasion-
Yelu, be took? (not again.) ally both sheep and goats.-B.] Ingel, N iph.
from iggle r (not again). But in128. Aklmu is from issc, it rested or remained ghel,
it gushed out; qu. enghdlen, eruperunt?
It remained over. Har, except. Irahagh, he despaired. Ehe initial, marking Immerau, reciprocal verb, from iru, he sobbed; present, is a! of Kabi'iil. (imerauen, they sobbed mutually.) 131. 1rtay (neuter verb), it joined; isertay (acAgizar, war. Usdsan (perhaps), "they made tive), he joined; imirtal/en (things), mixed. obstinate;" Ar. 'asa; which might generate a 132. lzM, naked; izafnet, they (fem.) are causative verb, isasa. But for the Arabic root, naked? we have in Kab. azzay, heavy. See azlien in 150. Igerauen, they deliver, set free? rather, eghe. 129. War tan-arnen. The negative war attracts rauen, "laxant." See 63.

APPENDIX.

133. That you may not get a bad name among men (F), imehak witssen t-s& Ur dar m~den. Up! and let us fight till we penetrate to their tents, awar hawenjen har tasne channe nassen. 134. Till we fight them at their very tents, har dirsen tirteyam dar ehenne nessen. Till you drive out their women, tesiffem tfded~n nissen. Take as hostages their children, termissen arrsisen alroren nissen. Their children are your prey, iliaden nissen ewunawan. 135. They raise the war-cry, esaraurawan. They beat their shields, eteddrzen drehe [ghhfre] nissen. 136. They brrm a line, dgen 105d. They make an assault, 6shf1en insirsen. They have surrounded them, ralednten, ktiaben faldssen. They break through them, ibelaggdnten, azraurawdnten. 137. They have dispersed, fibbdtn. These were broken and those were broken, arzen wuin, arzen wuin. They fled like hares, egdwuaden shynd dgewat Atek temarruilt [instar fugm (quam) proeterit? lepus]. Like the sheep or goats before the wolf Let the proud champions fight, ayet inasbarighen ademinghan. (Let) the champions step forth, siggemet dtid inasbariighen. (One) champion the son of Naber (Nabegha), anesbarigh ineg en Nabegh. And (the other) champion the son of Agwi, d anesbarAgh ineg el Agwi. 139. Their countenances are as the countenances of lions, idemwen nissen shynd idemawen dheran. Who are about to spring on their prey,
ainemeharntnin ab6kan adem6kasen.
They fight hand to hand, amiwiten.
The son of Agwi has cut him through the left shoulder, ineg el Agwi istak sere
gere ddzar wa-n-tashilgfin.
140. He parried that blow, tihag arasset.
(They encounter;) their swords are broken, tam6kasen, tikabawen erz-met.
They throw the spears, anemigg-ren s alaghen.
I throw the spear, nek egaragh allighe.
One and the other throw it, igart wuay,
igart wuay.
This pierced him and that pierced him,
idakt wuay, idakt wuay.
141. Both of them are wounded, asen enissen ansabayasen.
The blood gushes from their wounds like a torrent, ingay dhsni dar bilysen nis-
shyd uli ishik ebak [instar gregis ingarmanissen, inter se? In Eab., gar,
be(quam) invadit lupus].
They encounter; also .aigar; and gaigarasan, inter se.
138. They are both aj.aid, dnt-net ane- Ayet, let ye, 95.
Abdrdgh, proud; tebarbghit, opulence; anesmttesen ingarmanissen.
bdr6gh, man of wealth and grandeur. In Ven133. Amehak (ameghagh, anquisivi,
31). ture, ibtdgl, bien, richesse. Wiesen. See isdsan, 128; also tewtit, tribute.
Adem6ghan, subjunctive. Inmho, he killed; 1Wd nm, Audistis.
imangha, he killed mutually, t. e. he fought.
Ihannen, tents.

134. Tirteyam ,jungamlni. See 131. Etid, hither? [Etid, (the cold) increases.]
Tesifem, exire faciatis? See ifay, exit, 141. Ineg or inek, son; only In Temght?
Termissem, prehendatis. Irmee, prehendit, as 139. Udem, check, in Venture; face,
in Ksb. in radmrL, generally; pl. udemin. It is also akadftzm In
135. Kek esraurawegh, I break through, should Kab., which sugget Heb. and
Arab. kedem, be ezraurau-egh, 190, 136. Isaraaruau, he shout- front, as akin. See
81. ed, may be frequentative caustivse from ru, to Bher, lion, is ofur in Ghad, sob,
Kab. (128). lharna seems to mean "he crouched," see 22;
Iderez, he rattled? although Barth has it otherwise in 222: mehar.
136. Afdd, the knee I Egen, see 39. nan, particip.
Oshiten, they hurried, 5. Aina, article or relative plural?
Insirsen, they made a descent? Kab. 1res, he Adem6kasen, occurrant (to
encounter). 'Ad went down; sirs, bring down. marks subjunctive, as in
ademangan, 138.
Raleyen, from iralay, he surrounded: whence Iwat, he struck: imawat, he struck
reciprocally. terlait, around. Istak, has gashed? has inflicted?
Arab. 8th
Kube, form a circle? Compare kubba (Heb. form of ak, impulit? and Arab.), a
(vaulted)maleeping chamber, an arch. Sers, on'him? So in Kab.-Delaporte, etc.
Fal-aseen, against them. GerP, between ?* Kab. gar (or, a wound?
Arab.
lbeaqg. pervasit? (Ar. beagh, pervenit.) Az- jurhh). raurau, freq. to split (190), from irza (130). Dizar, collar-bone? or, ezar F vein.

187. A bbeden, read abbe(n, or abbeden. Kab. Wa-n-tMshiLq-n, which (is) of the left. ibtu, divisit. 140. Uhag, he caught, 126.

Shynd, in Kab. and Shilha, zund, zun, iustar. Aramet?before (him)? See 288. Egewuad, egewat, see 52. Tdkdba, sword, as In Hausa. Temarruelt, a hare, from imerekwe, run away Erzemet = Erzenet, 3d fern. pl. (Hodgson’s Eab.), which is from irwel, he fled; Iger, he threw; igar, he throws, fnemfgger, he Arabic, rahhel. throws reciprocally; neuter verb: hence s, with

Ebak or ebeg, a jackal. the spear.

Ishdk, invadit? Afterward (220) ishek, "(the 141. Asen enissen, two of them.

lion) attacks." Compare shik, quick; Kab. zik. ingay, gushes, engi or enji, a torrent, must be

18. Imettes, be frightened ? (Not again.) akin. In Kab. inrghel, It gushed; see 174.

TE MA’SHIGHT

sen ifay shynd enji [it comes out like, etc.].

142. (Jlwy) lead them from the place, itkelllditen dihen anemanghan [they cause-them-to quit where they have fought mutually].

They bind u)) their wounds, etelldnten ibtiyisen nissen.

They put to them remedies, egenassen

They die, amfiten.

143. They drive them back, ye’knnten, isokalnten.

They have extirpated [crushed?] their trbe, irzan terfrt nissen.

I lay ambush, nek est~daf.

They have razed the whole town to the ground, irzan dghtrim ik4dtnes har am6s shynd ikal.

1441. I draw my sword from the scabbard, erkalbagh takobini dagar titar.

I throw down the scabbard, asindaragh titar.

I replace the sword in its case, esoklagh tikrba dag titar ennis.

I draw the arrow (at him ?), crkdbrigh-as essim.

I let fly the arrow, egeragh s essim (I throw with the arrow).

I replace the arrow in the quiver, es6khlagh essim dag tatinghot.

145. I load the gun, tasdksagh el barfide.

Is the gun loaded or not? cl barade asfksek ? mr war asfksck ?
The left barrel is loaded, 6man teshilge
tezdksak.
The right barrel is not loaded, dman arUl
)fay, it comes out, replaces the Kab. ifagh (see 174): hence, tufay, (the sun) comes
out; tufit, diarrhoea; ofayen, effunduntur (grandines).
142. Ikelli, he caused to quit? see 124. The form reminds one of Arabic.
Itt′, he swathed, wrapped, folded, wound up (so Kab.). Compare Arab. fetel:
whence iftel, ittel r
143. Yjk ′a, they pass? (cause to pass).
Iksal, see 25.
Terjrt, tribe ' also, a cup ' (Is a tribe Teright= 'Parik,'t ?)
Estd.laf, Arab. 8th form? Esdef, obscura fuit nox, Golius.
Agherim, town. Irk′n, all of it. [Some of it, or, .mu ′h of it, one might have
judged. But Barth is positive and consistent.]
Har am6s, until it becomes?
144. Irkeb, evaluAt, is native (180) : see 125 for the very different Ar abic. Dagar,
d ; read daqh. Isuilar, fie threw down? Yet indar, he refused (112), and ennddir,
often. Rather asindarsh is for asintarakgh, from root i2,irak, he fell
(71) ; or for asintarviqh, from it, r, he went down, which iT remght as well as
Kab′dl. 145. Ttak ;ah for tas.akakgh. Zeksak, carefess for seksak? root saksak,
cram, press. Comp. Greek, oay. Teshlqe, differently accented in 13′, 146. Ar 1-,
the right. (These two words differ from the Kab.) Ari′-n-eshel is the noon of day,
i. e. the upright ?
VOCABULARY. 741
war cz6ksak; or, war tehah harret [there is not any thing]; or, war ekdmhrct.
146. Give me a little powder /or the eye of
the gun, ikfMhe Ogil giak, dag tCt-n-el
baraid.
I fire the gun, sinkaragh el bar-id.
I hit, witagh.
le has hit him (?) just under the left eye,
wf.tagh s el barfid dag tagfamast-ndt tan tdshilgf,n.
147. The ball did not enter him, (but) passed over his head, war tiggisht tesawc,
toke eraf [cghaf] enis; ukaine teziwaten ginnige craf enis.
He has not aimed well, war asflkne ds inndmehel; war esninehel; war 64Ln
esinndmihel. (See 172, 195.)
lie does not know how to aim, war esin
asikken.
148. His arm trembled, affis enis ishik(Ltkat. (His hand.)
The ball has swerved, tisdiwaten akdrret. 149. I trade, asittfgagh.
I am not a merchant, war est4jjagh.
I exchange, dstrgagh; mesdttegh.
I barter, simiskilagh. 150. I buy, ndzagh.
Thou hast bought dear, tizet craksen, besh6r!
I provide myself with (store up) millet
All the Arabs of A'zawdd buy their guineacorn in Tisidktu, ArgLben-n-Azawagh. Ek mdret is filled? It seems to me an Arabic feminine form, corrupt for 'artaret, which Delaporte uses.

14G. E'gil, powder (in the vocabulary).

Giak, a little?

Sin kar, cause to rise? (cock the gun?) Inkar, he arose; 41. Tagzlrnast, a tooth? [So, it seems, in Barth's viab.] Tughnas in Kab. Qu. lie hit me in the left e;e-tooth?

Tan, fem. demonst. = tinni of Kab. Elsewhere, t7n and tindagh, illa.

14T. 2oke, 52; ukaine, 66. Eraf = eghaf (or ikhf), head. Gnifge, above, from Kab. ennig, amplius, with Kab. prep. g, in. In Kab, also sennig, aloft. In Shilha, iqi.

1s:kkemse, he points, aims. Mehet? wait, expect, Kab. Elsewhere anionmhett, opera pretium. 149. Ishiketkat, trembled; but shekAntat, shiver.

Tisawaten, plural? Akurret = alcurrent, also plur. ? Compare akerdren, round.

149. Litteg and isteija must be variations of one verb. 'they remind us of Arabic tdjir, merchant. jMeotegh, unless particip., is a reciprocal verb.

Smiskal, complicated form, from ikkl (ikka), he turned?

150. L,I7z, he buys; inz, be bought? Tdzet, for tanzet. This shows the root of izinz, he sold, in Kab.

Erak-s is Arab. rakhis, cheap. Elsewhere Barth has ibkbbas, cheap. 19at, he stores up?

Azien, dear; also hard (meat). Kab. azza, tc be heavy.

lkdt, he measures ? 193.

152. Ro.el, in Arab. to weigh, is in Kab. lend or borrow.

Ehanat-aW, sunt mihi? (fern. pl. ?)

Ehan-k ty, aunt tibi (masc. pl.?) IsirdaLen, may be pl. "loans."

153. Amarwas, a debt, is also Kab., for I find it in Luke, vii., 41, though not in Brosselard. Inarwas, he lent (a thing).

154. Ishashwar, frequentative; from Kab. izwar. So ishwar, 85.

Isint, he begins (not Kab.), strangely like in sound to isimda, he ended. Since the latter is causative (from imda, imida), isint may denote a root Jut, cmptum est. Compare indi, not yet; end (in composition), next; in Kab. net or ned, alter. In Ben Mds'a's Temght, nedin, next to me.

155. Inmd a, see 91.

Yirtem, he completed? (Arab. confregit.)

.Egel=aril, noon? (Aghet may be the true spelling.)

156. Ori =Ar. akl, intellect? So we have arel, he thinks (223), for 'aqaL

Adak=adagh, this.

OHs means "repeat thou." So in Prod. Son, nolis, we have repeated; tulis (adverbially), again.

Smdlis and aghas need fuller explanation.

ur; connected perhaps with eheru, egerhu, loose. See 63.

Teshe = Kab. teje, gray, etc.

Isinbara, he set free. See 54.
155. Tefulwat = tafurt of Ghad. = tawurt of Kab. 
Soke, i.e. turn the door; as in Kab. err, turn, for shut. It is strangely like Arab. sekker el bb.
159. Agfelt seems to be a corruption of Arabic kofl, a lock. The final t is anomalous.
Liakak is Hebrew and Arabic dakak.
160: Ireled, he girded. Araldd, a circuit fence (a girding). In Kab. aghaldd, a city wall. A simpler root is iralay; see 136.
Ehe- and ege- mark present tense, as ai of Kab. In fact we have ahi in 166. Bessa, waist? Kab. ames, middle. See amos, 143.
161. Eles, clothing (of gun); leilse, man's dress; ilds, he dressed himself, put on; temalsat, gar ment. This root is also Kab., where it is apt to be confused with other roots; ties, he touched; ies, he sheared sheep; which I have not found in Barth. "A fleece" combines the ideas of shearing and clothing.
Ih4sann is fem. pl. from hsken (a participial form), handsome.
Isdau, he collected, from idau, it was collected: whence tidauen, they congregate; amidi, a friend. In Kab. this root is replaced by idukkel, whence also amdukkel, a friend; idukkel, he collected.

APPENDIX.

iketenessen ikiten n01i dak Timbyt- 
Until you know it by heart, har tfldadak ku. [tilmdat?].
Sell me your horse, shinshihi ais innak. Are the camels picketed, or not? imm6I do not sell my horse, war shinshdgh ais nts ikerffen, mer war ikeriffen? (43.) in [= ais eni].
152. I borrow [rotolegh?]. Let him eat that fine herbage, gyit adikLend me, sirdelihi. she tdshe tindegh tah6sket. 
I lend you, esirdeagalhak. Set (ye) the horses free, simbarit iyesan.
I have from you money on loan, nek ehi- I set free, asimbaragh.
nitay esirdallnnek. 158. Shut the door, s6kel tefdlwat.
You have from me -, ke ehinkay esir- Open the door, arid tefdlwat. dfl eni. Iopen the door, firegh tefilwat.
He has from him -, enta chant esirdal I cover, ushikimbashagh. enis. 159. Lock ye up, agfeltet.
153. His debt is large, amirwas enis 6gdn. I lock sp, agfeltagh. 
I have a trade debt with you (I am in debt) I knock at the door, ed igakagh tefilwat.
to you), nek chanatat amarwas inne. 160. I put on [change?] my shirt, insskaReturn me what I have lent you, sokelihli lagh rishabin.
awahak ismarwdsagh. [Redde mihi I reverse my shirt, abiregoalegh rishaquod tibi commodavi.] bMini.
154. I begin, sheshwAragh. I gird my loins, eherdegh bessa; ege-asintagh. bessagh.
I have begun copying the book, asintagh 161. I put on fine clothes, eldsagh ter6 lsAslilikal el kitb. He begins an harangue, isint mdggered. The Tawdrek everywhere, in their en155. I finish, end, simdegh. He has finished reading the Kurdn, isimde worst clothing, Imbshagh kodihdn ehh (or yirtem) el Kurin. He celebrates the day, ashel egel elyu-n-sen. limat. (Arab. walhmat, epulum.) My salutes to you for having finished the A.ayh is pres. or fut. of iga, 39. reading of the Kurdn, uim-tun ujibtun. Iira means "to shut" in Kab., but "to loosen and open" in Temght. Two verbs seem to be It is finished, yimm~der [yim~da]. confused, namely, Ghad. efer, shut thou, Temght 156. Repeat, 6lis didak [adagh] soril. eher, which represents Kab. err, related perhaps Repeat this verse, ois aghas (or smilis to Shilha iwerri, he returned (W is the r of Ghaaghagis) tdghgrn, dimsi ?). Kab. irra, he brought back, came back;

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
I assume all my weapons, isdawagh taz6linin iktenes. 162. I sling on my sword, shd19gagh takobini. I (we ?) lay down arms, nekes taz6linin. (98.) I undress, nekes rishabiini. (We take off my shirt?)
163. I wash, siradagh. Washed (not new), arid. [it is washed, ired.]
I wash my face, ridebagh idemfn. I wash my hands, rissemagh ifassin. I wring out the water from my shirt, zymmogh rishabkni. 164. I dry my shirt, bisgragh rishabkni. My shirt is not yet dried, rishabini in ditbsarit. I hang in the air, nekes o~kagh igetan har tejmfat innikki1, or abelinbak [I hang (it) flying, until the moisture comes out ?].
165. I cover, ushikimbashagh. (See 158.) Shave my head, sars~hi eraf in [eghaf ini].
I shave (myself?), erarsegh. I clean, teksrkgragh. Clean this, aferit den, amis. I look into the glass, sdggehagh awinin der tfsit.
166. I mend, nekinagh (nek ganagh? 157).
I will go to the blacksmith, irhigh tfkautn- nhad (vole profectionem fibri :0That he may mend what is spoiled in my gun, ahiyeken, away ikhsheden dagh el baraidin.

167. I cook, boil, esangnegh.
Well boiled, ripe, yignkn.
Not sufficiently done, ur igndn.
Tazzfi, iron, weapon; from Kab. uezzdl, iron. Root, gzl, to cut. etc.

162. Ishela, he put over the left shoulder? Teshilge the left.

163. ired, sired, are also Kab.
Irddeb, he bathes with the hand?
Irdsem, he besprinkles? pours upon? Kab. has ireshshu for this; but so Barth, reshresh, rain-drops.

164. Ibsar, he dried, or was dry?
Tibsrat seems to have Arab. fern. termination? (ikiu in Kal.)
. Nek e8oregagh ? I hang up?
 I qetan, poles? igetan, flying.
 l'ejmat = tegmat, with Arab. fern. termination. See igem, 138, 118.

165. Sers, shave thou; ars, be thou shaved?
lkdrkar, be cleansed?

166. Enhad, compare Arabic hhad-d, iron.
Away ikhsheden, 76 00apv. article and participle. Ikhshed, it is spoiled, nemakzhad, wasteful, in 11 Prodigal Son."

167. Ingn, it is cooked, fern. tingne, partic. inan. Perhaps the true spelling, then, is iane, and causative isaqn". In Sidi Ibrahim (Shilha) I find isenu, he cooked.
Boil water for me, fksahe 6man.
I broil, nek ekdnafagh.
Roasted meat, fsan ndkinaf. 168. Make afire, awet 6feii.
I make a fire, awetagh 6feii.
I kindle the fire, sihedagh dfeii, akensseragh dfe.
Kindle the fire, s6had 6fei.

169. That it may not go out, war etdmmekatit.
Iput out the fire, nek ismikket feii.
The fire is going out, 6feid tfsmaket; 6fedi war ikendsm1ket; Akkenes asismnken dfeii.
The fire has gone out, 6feii temmilt.
The fire revives, 6feii heligle.
170. Light the candle for me, sokihi tdfetelt.
I light the candle, sekdgh tdfetelt.,
I burn, nek neserragh.
You have burnt your shirt, ke teserret rishb innek.

171. I break, destroy, nek nirzagh, nek ediggidagh.
Broken, irzar [irza?].

172. I throw, nek asdnahel.
I threw it on the ground, and crushed it
with my foot, satdrakegh dar akal adartibragh.
173. 1cut, nek nekkdtas.
Mlince the meat for me, akeliskhi isan.
I cut a pen, ekdrdagh.
= tekdrktragh (but 165).
Iks, boil thou. Compare ek~s, hot; akas, a dish. Also 98.
Iknef is also Kab.
Isan = aisz2m = aksum, meat. 168. Awet, make, build, arrange. In Shilha, yegat,
he placed.
Sohad, stir thou?
Akenassaragh is a compound verb, from ken, make, and iseragh, he burned,
which is shortened to iserr in Barth. See 170.
169. Inekat, it is extinguished ?
Imskaket, he extinguishes?
Ikenawdake, compounded with ken, make.
AS-.naken has no final radical t.
Helggle.= ahiggle, present tense, from iliggle, it revived?
1M0. Esbkegh, I send, in 101. Yet here sok, light thou, and sekegh.
Iserra, or iserragh, is causative, from irrar or iragh, it was burnt; Kab. iragh,
ihhragh, identical with Arab. hharak.
Neserragh, nirzagh, with n superfluous, is an anomaly not rare in Earth,
apparently from the perplexity introduced from Arabic, where n initial vacillates
in sense between 1st pers. sing. and let ers. plural.
171. Idigid, he smashed I See Dagak in 159.
172. Asanahel and esnianehel of 14T, have something in common.
Isatark, see 71.
Erdber, (the horse) kicks, 216.
Irbar, (the river horse) upset (the boat), qu. stamped on? crushed? Then ad marks
subjunctive, and adartibragh = (ut) confringam.
17M. Ekketas, cut (189); ikarad, he cut (a pen ?). Heb. karat.

744
APPENDIX.
I slit a pen, shofffaragh Zm arinibin;
suttekdragh [I scrape?] Catch thou (what is thrown), ekbel.
Icatch, ekb~lagh. [Ar. Receive, as in 78.] 174. Ifill with water, atk~ragh s'
6niman.
You have filled this cup, tdikgrat ter~rt.
Till it runs over, har titfak.
I pour it out, nek esdtitfit.
I empty, esingalagh [esingh-].
175. I upset it, subumbiigh-at. (44.) I scoop water, elkawagh 4iman.
I draw, nek teshereshawen aran. (63.) I water the garden, stswagh eshfkkhrash;
singralagh siman der eshflckrash.
(186.)
I give to drink, esisw~gh.
Give the horse to drink, sissu ais se beldas. 176. I go to fetch water, esharrtgagh finan.
The water-carriers, imshтирриген.
Let us pitch the tent, nektar (?)
I pitch the tent, nek takanegh ehan.
[I./&sten or fix? 157.]
I drive in the pegs, tetait.yagh.
177. I draw the ends of the leather covering of the tent, tarerdigh tfssdas.
I draw the ropes of the tent, tareriiswi erdwyen dhen (he tightens to it?).
I spread the carpet in the tent, nek ffitaigh der dhen: idwetagh tisftak.
178. I hang up the dishes, nek selik flkesan.
- the waterskin, the saddle, edid, elaklf.
I take down the tent, bassfagh dhen.
Take down your tents, dbsiet ehennana-wen.
These slaves work hard, fklan idagh areidnan egfn [aghel-nan].
Work (subst.), irtlay [4ghalay].
Emn, the mouth (nib ?).
174. Itkar = Kab. ichohur. Titfak = titfagh ? Yet for i-fagh (it came out, Kab.) we had ifay, 141. Also sifket, fem. tefbket, present tense (20T), it comes forth.
Below, titfar, (the boat) leaks; where r shows gh to be the true spelling, as in Kab. See A'sfdken, 126. Estttefit, see 209.
Isingal, read i.dnghal causative, from inghel, it gushed. Sangralalh should be sanghalaq. 175. Elkeu (Kab. elky), deep; hence telak, deep channel; telkayat, (the boat) founders. But this root is probably different.
176. Isharrag, see 63.
Itaitay, he drove In pegs; he pricked (as a scorpion').
177. Ored (root?), tighten; ore/s, strangle him; ore.iqhas, I strangle him; tarereigh (frequent), I tighten.
Ifit, be spread; corrupt Arabic, from fata h. In tisftak the lost C reappears as final k. Ifter, mat, for iflahh and suftakht, carpet, in 226, 227.
U'wetaq, I arrange; see 163.
Itaitay, he drove In pegs; he pricked (as a scorpion').
178. Slik, for seliqh f Sidi Ibrahim (in Shilha) uses Arabic 'alik'for "hang up ;" hence, perhaps, selik as a causative.
Ebs), ebsih, take down ? Another verb is besay, vomit.
Ardlay, work; areltnan, they work. NVei dra-
179. I dress (F) a goat, agerassaragh tAghat.
I draw back his neck, semelwagh-as.
I cut his throat, agerdssagh-as.
I skin him, 6shegh-at.
180. I shear afleece, nek tliak telsak. 
I pluck the bird, r-kabagh tisigldfn. 
[ I tear off the feathers.] (144.) 
He wrested it from me, irkib deri. 
I peel the fruit, tekedfmmegh. 
I pasture the camels, ddnagh immgnis. 181. I milk the cow, azikagh tis. 
Milk thou, azik. 
Has (this) cow been milked, or not? tQs 
tezak, mer war tezak? 
I shake the milk (for making it sour), autishagh netishnit eshai akh. 182. I make 
ropes, nek attdlemagh. 
Hold me the rope, sennikfkh. 
The Tawdrek are very clever in making good ropes of leather, Im6shagh adibibdn 
dar 6rCnan. 
Those ropes-from (the bark of) what tree do they make them? erdwiyen widagh 
innagh dhishkan wul tell-nin (or, 
wui digmden). 
I weave woolen blankets, z0Ltagh fibbergentin. 
Which understand weaving better - the Fulldn or the Songhay? endekway isan 
[endegh way isan] tdzi teh6ksen, jer Afidan ped (?) E'hatan? or, emillten wuin 
E'hatan du wuin Ffilan megeressen ytdfa tdzeti? 
17n, I sow (a field), seems to be aghalun; root, aghalay. But iralay, he surrounded, 
136. 
179. Igharsa, he cut the throat (Shilha) ; aghard, or emnghards, a butcher, Ghad. 
But Venture gives aghzdr for butcher, which points out a relation to Arab. jezzdr. 
Observe that agharig is "a road" in Delaporte’s liab. and Ibrahim’s Shilha. [LI 
suspect that oqeros saragh should be agherdsagh 
ak, I butcher for thee.] 
Semelluaqh would seem related to emel&agh, I castrate (120), if the sense agreed 
better. 
Oshe, skin thou, is for oze; in Eab. uz or azu. 
180. Teliagh, I cut (corn, rice) ; alihet, cut ye, yield; alihe, cut, shear? 
Tescgdden, from iged, he flew; agadd, bird. In Kab. ighetdr ’ birds. Ikedi, he 
picked? 
Idan, pascit or pastus est; hence, amddan, a shepherd; lab. amaksa. 
181. Azik is zeg or zegh in Kab. 
182. Yellim, he spun, Vent.; Ar. lemm, glomeravit. Presently, for tellemin read 
telldmin, they twine? 
Sennikf ; root nikf? or ilfa? 
Aran, leather rope: pl. erbman (vocab.) 
Erewi, a (hempen) rope; so Kab. 
Izat, he weaves; tezit, weaving. In Kab. zet, weave thou. 
ay-isan, who kndw. 
.Emlleten, the cloths? the garments? the tissues ? 
Wui-n-Ehatan, etc. 
Du, and? 
-Me-ger-awsen, which betwixt them; i. e. which of the two?
Yvfa, surpasses, excels.

TEMA'SHIGHT
All of them know good weaving, esandnet iketendssen tdzit tehsken.
183. The women pluck the cotton, tfddtn
itafash fdsilnit, or, itafash tikurukarfin. 184. I spin thread, tarrayagh.
The women spin thread, tidWd-n rerdmat.
I weave cotton strips, czi-tagh tabgdokfn.
I sew, azarniyagh.
I cut out (a shirt), arrtwagh.
I fbd (a shirt), tddaagh.
I roll up, ekerningkom6gh. 185. I beat (a shirt), titdbfgh.
I beat it well, until it becomes bright, tddifshagh, har tfkkdnc skggeniiigish.
I dye, sddalagh.
Dyeing, tesadalit. [Yet, tesltdalt, an egg.]
I mend my shirt, tdigagh tikist dar rishabdni.
186. I work the ground, shekdrashagh.
I make a fence to the field, egatagh drahid yeshikkirishin.
I saw, nek 'aralan [=aghalan.] (178.)
[Nekegfgli alin ? H. B.]
I root up weed, tikdmagh tdshe.
187. I plant a bush, adbmegh ehlshk.
I dig in a pole, esdktagh ijid.
Icut rice, tgliagh tfakat. (180.)
Cut (ye).for me this, and put it for me in the boat, alihetihi tetid, tegimhi tetid der t6raft.
188. I gather fruit, isirtgtyagh (131) 6raten ehishkan.
Eesanantet must be fern. pl. from ilsn, h knew.
183. Itafashfas, he plucked (cotton).
Tikuruka -rn, cottons; sing. takerdkerit, from .enit, 3d pl. fern.
fkarker, he cleansed? See 164.
184. Iroray, he spun. Rcrt at = Rerainat, fern. 3d pl., as elsewhere.
Iz zmdy, lie sews. In Barth's vocabulary, azamay; in Venture, tismi [tizmi?], a needle.
Irau, he cuts out. Ghad. 'ira, he shaved.
Ideh, he folded? But idd, he pounds, 183.
Ikemin(y)kem, he rolled up, must be frequentative, from ikemin?
185. Itdbu, he beat?
Idesh, he hammered.
Siggenim-ish, from siggcyni, indigo; figish, entrance? or from sig, aspect?
Tikist, a rent? (In Kab. a prick, sting.) Or, rather, it means a patch.
186. Ishekaraih, he tilled, shekarash, garden or field, are frequentative, from root k:ira h; in Kab. karnz, to till, work the ground. It answers
to " Xap'd'tritT.
Yegct, lie placed (found in Shilha, Tale of Saby). Also, he made (a hedge, a pot).

Tagdt, she laid (eggs).

'ek magct, I what do?

War ged ddi, do not this.

dim?)

Tegimdhi (39), from iqa. Two imperatives joined by and are expressed as if we
said secate posustis for secate et pontM. 188. ArIten (arata, a crocodile), read
ardten-neleshkan; or even ardden? In Kab. irden (.fruges), wheat.

E hshk, a tree, is in De Slane's Temfght ishek.

VOCABULARY.

1 pound, edahagh.

I pound rice, tiftikkogh tdf3kat.

I winnow, kintihdgh or tesabirit r gh-at. 189. I tie up the bundles of Guinea-corn,
akitteldagh &shikkerashfn-n-enli [the
fields of corn?].

I knead it, nek osdkshk-at. (145.)

It is not well kneaded, war tikkdne isus. 190. I hid, efdragh (abdidi, so Kab.);
(tw'magh (condidi? seo 102).

I cut wood, ekta sagh fgdtan. (173.)

I split, csraurawhigh [ezr-, 136].

I grind the knife on the stone, emsadagh
absar is tahbnt.

I whet my knife, sdttragh tibasarin.

Whet for me, csteriri.

191. I hammer, tddcshagh. (185.)

I saw, tezezawagh.

I chip, square planks, nek 6,tdki.

I dig a well, rashagh anu [ghdishaghJ.

I build a well, nek 6z-raf ann.

a house, diwetagh tirashim.

-a boat, dwetagh t5raft.

192. I sew a boat, azemdagh tbraft.

(184.)

I repair a boat (by renewing the ropes
along the junctions of the planks), aidagh dar fizainay.

I stop holes along the junctions of the
planks in the boat, asfdagh anabay;

stop the holes well, adegindigi.

I scoop out the water, dikis man, sunkel dman.

193. I make pots, egatagh telikkan. (186.)

I measure, ekdtagh erblan. (150, 178.)

I weigh, tawdzinagh. (Arab.)

I divide, nek ebddkan.

Ve divide, ndbbsdud.

194. I join, asfrteagh (131); nek asmokkasdkkanet [comp. of mdkas (occorro)
and ken (facio)?
I press the limbs (to give them relief),
shampoo, rdbazagh.
I anoint, ashawagh; shsigeagh.
Ifan, awilingwafgh ; azimmegh-at.
I think it is the Kab. ish!k, a branch; branch for bush.
Idah, he pounds? Arab. dakk. Inkinteh, isabir, he winnowed?
18.). Ikittelch, "he sheaved?"
190. I'qtan, sticks, poles.
Im.ind, he grinds * also, sharp. It is from Kab. zed, grind thou; and, perhaps, better written, imz1d.
Tqliit, tehfivt, rock (Temght).
191. Izzeao, he saws ?
Irsha should be iqh-ha; in Kab. i qhza, he dug. Iz.ref, strictly, he built; but awet, arrange, etc., 168.
192. 1, d, he closes ? Akis, take out? 98. Sunk, I, read sunghel, cause to spout, empty out; 174, 175.
193. h bdi kan is against analogy. On ibdu see 137. Ibudud may be frequentative.
But Pbde, ebded of 41 are quite different, allied to Arabic.

APPENDIX.
195. It is wonderful, tejfijab (Arab. 'ajebl tak6nit. (38.)
Thou must go to Gshndam, ahhishel ke ehe temeshilit is Gundam.
It is worthy, animmehel dirs.
Straight on, sinn~mdhel.
This is worthless, wadagh animmehel ahastauyet yewulaghen.
196. Our provisions are gone, ezzud immende. (91.)
The money is spent, eh~ri fmm~hesh.
That is lost, wddagh aba.
That is its character, immek idagh dfal ikne.
197. It pains (me), ikmZhi; uzerdhi.
It itches, ehahi 6kilmasht. [There is to me an itching. 1
It is swollen, eray; ekif tasinnist.
This smells nice, widagh ada yeh6sken.
[Adunn, smell?]
This meat smells bad, isan wiidagh insigak [insiragh]; isan wAdagh adunnis irk.
198. The meat is well boiled, isan ingnb.
(167.)
The loaf is mouldy, tigelet tebdnkat.
The shirt is torn, rishiba anzarrawet
The iron is rusty, taz6li war te tenndk.
- makes sparks, tikkne tesh5ri.
- hisses, ishirardkarak, ishibarikarak. 199. - is red-hot, taz6li tfiwas.
- is melting, taz5li timsheldrlag.
- hisses in the water, taz6li isan afdar fiddar dar Aman.
The water-skin leaks, edid esinge ; edid itadm.
- is torn, edid erarrawet.
- has a hole, edid imbek.
200. The house lets in the rain, tarashim teshinke.
This well never dries up, inu widagh aigin kalM war it6gar (or, war ik~r).
195. A hashel, it is necessary? ke, thou; ehe teneshalit, shouldest travel? (verb imeshal ).
Animmehel dir., (there is) an aim in it, an object in it? See 147. Iseimahal, it is worthy (Parable of "Prodigal Son"). 196. Wadegh aba, read wadaph abad f In "Prodigal Son" we have first abad for "was lost" (which is Hebrew, not Arabic), and next abat, in same sense; verses 24 and 32. 197. Okaymash = ekmez, rub, scratch, Kab. Adunr, corrupt Arabic. IrkS, dirty ? So Venture. In Brosseland, irka, it is decayed. In "Prodigal Son," egigh irk, I have done evil.
Innek, is bright? is clean? 199. Eings (rewritten from faint pencil marks), qu.
isinghel f 1T4.
Yadim, it leaked?
Imbek, it is pierced ?
200. Ishinke, it admits water? Aigin kald. at every time. Ikor, Kab. it was dry. The k is liable to become gh.
It is always full of watery har kfik hant dman.
The water soaks in, sman inses.
The pond has dried up, tibengraw~n inshishnet.
201. The road divides, abzrraka tabarrat tfbbeda.
One branch going to the left and another to the right, alflen iyet fel aria wa-naril, iyet telaudat teshelg~n.
202. The sun rises, tafik liggemit (118);
tafok berber desin enis.
- has mounted the heavens, tafok tasggde ishinnawen.
( - has begun to decline, taf-k teziwal. Arab.)
- is about to set, taf6k tabbk dggdel.
- has set, tafok tbdal.
203. The year is fertile, dwatay ikkgndt~ni.
- is sterile, 6watay igamanna.
204. The rainy season is come, gkase yiise.
is gone, dkase igile, or yimrade.
The cold increases, asemmit didid.
- is strong, asernmt ikkne tigawet.
- lessens, asemmt efenis. (94.)
- is over, asemmt eb6gbag.

205. The (forty) dark nights are passed.
6baden isittefen, or essttafndn, ebarbar, or ejumdde.
The black winter is gone, tdgerist takadelit tabirbar.
Har kUk, usque ad cستنمشً؟. Hant, there are; fem. pL ? Inses, is drunk up?
Tibengraw&n, the tanks? fem. p1.

Inshnet is 3d fem. pl.

01. Abarraka, road. Tebarrat for tabarrakt appears a diminutive for the same. A
!Wen, following, 105.
lyrt, alter, as Kab., yed in Shilha. It is Arab. Val.- [Here it would seem fem. of
iyen.] A’in seems to be plural. Afterward we have arg in like connection. Er is
"branch" of a river. Also s’ri idemennis seems to mean "toward his face." I
interpret ar or end, direction. (Also eri, neck.)

Aril, right, is also the "noon" (of day).- "upright." Since in Nab. offis ayjafas or
awiffis is the "right hand," I conjecture that ael, right, is the same word as Nab.
Del, to stoop? Ahedal, is humble; but 4e1, to cover, darken?

203. Ikkendtni, from iken, it makes; thefi, dates? ten!, dates, Mozabi and
Wadreagh. Also ofdtdni, barren (land). [Ikkena is productive; MANi, this
season?-H. B.3 Igamanna, barren, and emanmet, fertile, and manna-ndwatay,
famine-year, need fuller elucidation. 9

204. Tigawoet for tikuaet, strength; Arab.? 205. Ehad, night; Ghad. efad;
Wadreagh, eghed (compare Arab. ghea, obtexit) : Rab. e’lia’. A sattef, (with t in
Ben Mdsa), black (or dark l. Aknuel, black, is aghogul in Wadreagh, for which
Venture has inghhdt. Ejumddade, freq. from imeda?

TEMA'SHIGHT
The white (i. e. mild part of the) winter
is come, tdgisht tamdllelt tigerist.

206. The leaves are fihllen, Alan atarikat
(71), Alan &min.
The boughs are stripped, afelliga tiktsen.
The tree is getting new leaves, ahelklak
ehishk.
- blooms, ehishk inshar.
- is bearing fruit, ehishk aborirak.
- is not full grown, ehishk war idfiil.
- is dead, ehishk akkCr [is dried]. 207. The dates are ripe, tdh~ni tingnc.
(167.)
- not yet ripe, te’hni har eg~di war
tingne.
The herbage is coming forth, tfishe ebarbar or taf~kat [tafoghat, 174].
The guinea-corn comes forth, dnoli efSkat.
The guinea-corn gets reed, n01li ena k6g~ri.
The reed (stalk) bristles (in stubble), k6gri yikhtd.
208. The corn is making large leaves, dn~li
4je f6irktn.
The guinea-corn is ripe for harvest, 6n1i
itdiftrat (eforat).
The herbage is drying up, t~she takk~r
[tagg~r].
The ear of the corn comes out, figgemat
teg~nt 46n~i.
The ear is ripe, teg~nt tingn6. (167.) 209. The river is rising, t~dfit egish cghirr~u
[flood enters the river?].
The water stagnates, dman ibdiden.
- soaks in, esint6tr~r.
- is sinking, dman abukifirel.
The river is very full this year, 6taf 6nan
teni.
It will not sink at all, war obakimbi.
The rivers are joining, eghirriwan im6kasen or fit'yen. (102, 131.)
210. Almost all the rivers run into the sea,
eghirriwan rurret im6kasen rbr eghirru w6 symmed [meet at the salt river].
Tegisht, as tiqgeniat in 202, etc., seems to have final t as feminine mark, like
Arabic.
206. Ami, is faded?
1.i klak, budded forth?
Inshar, is beautiful? I shagh? compare amonshaq, envious, etc., 116.
P1il (not again). In Kab. itulan or idhl2 lan, kinsfolk, softened from itegulan; as I
4'E.
T2dnit. spike of corn (vocab.).
209. Tetdit, flood? swell? from etaf? Ab2Zki ?iurdl, is about to sinkI Obaki
imghi, chooses to go down. See 50.
Etaf, it pours or runs freely (not the same as eaf, to seize, with 1.) : hence
causative, isattef, he pours, 174. In hab. for etaf we find effid, and also eji, the d
being pronominal.
Teni, this year, = tineda. With tin compare Arab. sen, year.
210. Wa symmed, the salt. I observe that wa retains the meaning of the before an
adjective as
VOCABULARY. 747
The boat is leaking, t~raft nikal [niighal]; t6raft tinral [tinghal]; or tinrAlnarel
[tinghlnaghel] (see 174,
192, sunkel) ; t6raft titfugh (174).
[The boat is foundering]. tiraft telkliyat
(175) ; t~raft titbenekway.
* The people who row (?) the boat get
The people perished, some swam in the water, idinet abaten iyeden yeshaffen dar iman.

Another rolls the boat sportively (?), iyat indfar t-raft sehfiyam.

The people who are (of the?) village, under the water deep (?), idinet audhan amitzagh dedu sman lagat.

Those people lay goat-skins in the middle of the water which .... idinen wuin. degen ideden der mdzen dor 6man auay timlnnt-n.

211. The boat is upset, t-raft tebumbay. (44.)
- breaks asunder, t-raft takaurawen.
The boat ran on rocks, traft tikkesuast tah5nt.
And sunk, and remained on the ground, tursar, telk'yat, tckkel ddir-n-dman [became under-of-the-water].

212. The water enters the tent, dman iggesh 4hen. This water stands still, is stagnant, iiman wadagli ibbdd-iden.
It does not hasten much (has no current), war 6shel hullen. This river has a strong current, eghfiru wddagh 6shel hullen.

213. The water is boiling, dman imesharlarlrtsrn.
- etman ereshaushaun.
- is not yet boiling, dman indi imesharlrlrln.
- is very hot, 6man ek5s hullen.
Boil [heat] water for me, iksihe iman. Let it cool in the skin, dyit yesmat ddr 'did.

214. The birdflies, 6ggdid fgged.
The young bird will fly [wishes to fly], akirt ab6k tUgad.
well as before a participle, though it is lost with a substantive.

* All conjectural.

211. Ibbenskuay, pres. from Ibbenekaf Ikaurau and ikarru (tear, rend violently), remind one of ezraurau, 100, 135, 136. Also tatdktarau, is shattered; with t interposed, as in Arabic 8th form.

lkkesga,-t, pierced it? frequent. from ikes? Tursar, for turza? was broken? Yet see yarasar, 64.

213. Iharlarlar, ishaushau? it boils or bubbles. 214. Kab. intat. birds (sing. agadet, Hodgson: read aaitef); but in Brosselard, ok'et, pl. iktat, a little bird.' We have
here the root iqct, it flew, it sprang aloft, 47, 70; whence se get, it mounted (202, 216), and tesag, 't, a feather.

APPENDIX.
The bird sings nicely, 4g~did elemisli'218. The camel is lying down to receive the yeh6skien. load, Amenis egen, dgal fellas illen
The hen cackles, tkshilt rar midden- [one heaps on him the lugage, 98].
nis. The camel refuses to rise, dimenis tindg,- lays eggs, tik~shilt tagit dsirek. ras tdntkrat.
- zs screaming, tkd~shilt tegabitolt. Too much load on him, dgan fellas if lan
215. The egg is not yet hatched, tds8dalt ag~t ni.
ur tisfgkket. The camels graze, imm~hns idanan.
The egg is spoiled, tdsadalt tigged. The she-camels cry, they want to be
milk.The eggs are spoiled, tesgd~len egaddid~ ed, t6lemin egdwnet, irhind tizit. dnad.
219. The bullock lows, 6nt.ke enfjju.
The young bird picks (at the egg), akau- The cow lows, tds anijju.
kautet akirt. The cows chew the cud, iwan afartdinit.
He will come forth, ahad ef6ket. The cows are sated, fwan iwtnet.
The cock is crowing, ikes egetar6ren. They lie down, ikargmnnet.
216. The horse neighs, ais etehinnit. The cows are returning from the water,
- prances, ais 5kar. iwan asitwanet, iktimet fel dman.
- goes backward, ais 4raren. The cows return the food, iwan is6kal-
rlls, ais abelnbtlet. net. (25.)
- kicks, ais eribar or isikat. 220. The he-goat bleats, esh~lak ahbl1let.
- is lame, ais ehiak. The she-goats bleat, till essilinet.
- rolls in the sand, ais infar. The ram bleats, abikkar Asilef.
- has mounted the mare, ais astigg6- The sheep bleat, Uihatgn esildfnet esmedit
tdbfg6t. dandsnet.
217. The camel is crying, 6menis 4j~u. 221. The lion roars, eher eniggu, eher
- growls, 6nmnis abdggeg. erikku.
- throws up the nose, dm~n isetish. The lion is crouching, eher ehmden abdk
burdel. fellauen ehe.
The she-camel has brought forth, tolamt - [will attack people], eher
chidist6rau. hek idinet.
- is about to bring forth, t6lamt tesh- [tears in pieces?], ashmarauruaest
war t6rau. idinet.
Elemisli may seem a derivative or compound from isla, he heard, amisli, a voice.
Tdk~shillV, a hen; elsewhere, takeshit, which seems more correct, as it is the
feminine form of dikes, the cock, which again perhaps is more correctly akez, the
z in Temght changing to sh. In Kab. the forms are ayazit, a cock, thayazit or
thayazit, a hen; for aghazit, thaghzt, it seems. Even in Temghit it may be inquired
whether gh is not more correct than k; i. e. aghez, a cock, taghdz it, a hen.
Rar, i. c. ghar, cries; R. Midden-nis, her
cackling. On den or dende, see 26.
'scdrek, a litter (of eggs)?
215. Ti!;Sdcn, ii birded? (214), i.e. is quickened. It is fem. sing., and the fem. pl.
egad:ddenat (not -nad). Elsewhere, ikhshed, it is spoiled, 161.
Kaut (for hack, hew, cut) seems a widely-spread root. Arab. kat’a, and above,
ektras.
Ahad e.fbket, may be future tense. See 174 and 220. Final t, feminine mark?
Egetarbren = igeetagahren, present partic. from ighdr.
216. Zhinnit, nearly Latin hinnio.
Oskar, prances. In Kab. isekkar, he caused to stand; iskar, be made; aksar, the
lower part.
'rar, goes backward? Kab. 'anir, the back.
Irdkar, perhaps, "stamps:" 172.
ledkat, kicks.
Isdgge., as in 214, 202, etc.; unless final -tit: is here frequentative.
217. jEu, is crying; =igeica, and fem. pl. egdWdnet. Hence in Niphal, iniggu or
inijju, it bellow.
Tblamt or tdlart, camel, fem. for aim or eghasn, words not used in this dialect.
Evidently elIHm= leb. gemel. It also makes aram in Shilha.
Teshwar, Kab. tezwar, she precedes or begins, 85.
- [destroys them], eshmahishten fdinet.
222. The dog snarls [crouches ? see 139],
idt ch6,rna.
The dog bites, di tid.
- barks, idi itfshut or idtras.
The scorpion bites (me), tataihi tasirdant. 223. The ostrich runs fitst, dnnehel
ehisar hullen.
218. Indar, he refused, 112. It differs from asindar, throw down (which is perhaps
asintar from itar, he went down), and from emendar, to lodge for the night, which
is cmendagh. Egan, it lies.
thayawant or thawant, satiety. Iwedn, cows, may be shortened from Kab.
yugdwen, steers. The root yzg is, as in our tongues, a yoke; whence thaydga, a
pair. Asit-dnet, they have drunk. lktar seems to be Arab. 8th form, from kar. 220.
AhU|let, from elif, to cry aloud. Ghad. eshll, Kab. esiwel, from awal, voice.
Barth has also asilel.
Asdllef, bleat, is more specific. Iherna, he crouched. See 139. Ishek invasin (137);
but future (215) ehadishek, invader.
Imihesh, (my money) is spent; whence frequent. with causative sense, ishmahish,
he annihilated.
222. Thsirdant, more correctly tazerdemt, scorpion, as in 227. In Kab. tegirdumt
and teqeremt.
Tati hid, has stung 7ae F from tatay, drive in a peg, ITO.
223. Enndhel, so Hodgson; not enndhe, ostrich.
ehishk.
ie thinks nobody sees him, aril war tehinn–n idinet.
224. The man was sitting on the shore,  
ahulis akim r–r alim-n-iman.  
Suddenly a crocodile seized him by the  
leg [knee], and went away with it [him?], azfied arte irmast saf6d, ilmar deris.  
(Diris, under it?)
225. The man was sitting on the shore,  
ahulis akim r–r alim-n-iman.  
Suddenly a crocodile seized him by the  
leg [knee], and went away with it [him?], azfied arte irmast saf6d, ilmar deris.  
(Diris, under it?)
225. The man was sitting on the shore,  
ahulis akim r–r alim-n-iman.  
Suddenly a crocodile seized him by the  
leg [knee], and went away with it [him?], azfied arte irmast saf6d, ilmar deris.  
(Diris, under it?)

The man was sitting on the shore,  
ahulis akim r–r alim-n-iman.  
Suddenly a crocodile seized him by the  
leg [knee], and went away with it [him?], azfied arte irmast saf6d, ilmar deris.  
(Diris, under it?)
Erashadet seems to be subjunctive from ishad or ishadet. Compare Arabic shadha, he harmed. Itemandkit, root naka? Temanlat is exhaustion.

228. Agel, place? (Is it the same as aghel, Kab. arm? See 201 on aril.)

VOCABULARY. 749

229. He put it in his polcet, enta egt der elsh-b.

Do not enter the house, war tds-h shit tirushum.

Stay outside, 4bbided d6gima.

Outside the town, dg-m6-n-dgh-rim.

There is nothing but mere sand, war ehet har dkal mellen.

230. Thou hast not given me my (full) right, war he taw-det el hakk.

He went before me, iggmle ilidatai.

Look before you, that you may not fall, sagerdhe dfitak, war tidu.

I went behind him, dgelfgh il dallas.

Let us look behind us, sanishldmanak diranak [sanishhlmanagh ddranagh].

Lest these men betray us, war hanak [hanagh] ighidernit fdinet idagh.

231. All round this mountain, 4dar wadagh terlaita,

there is fine pasture, the dshe teh-ske.

At the side of the mosque, tamizgida d' edisenns [the mosque, at its side],

is a large well, ehe fnu makk6ren.

Sit down at my side, arem d' ddisin.

232. Opposite each other, indhuisan ger san.

Sit opposite to me, thy /ace to me, arim dhikdar annadid seri idimmnek.

le sat opposite, his face to me, ekMm aangidfd seri idemnnis.

To your right, dek nri-l innen. (201.)

Keep to your right, akel sibberin arflinnek [go keeping your right ?].

To your left, fel teshelginak.

233. When you go from Timbtiktu to Glindam, ke tesdkalak dak Timbytka kk Glindam.

Leave the river at your left, 6ye eghfrr-u fel arE wa-n-tdshilg-n.

229. El fib is Arabic.

Dagna, on the outside, aJme:, outside, are from igeni, he went out, 118, 1a8; whence also g-ma, without (sine). Mdc; white; here for pure. Akal, mould, soil, as in Kab. Elsewhere in Temght it is land or country. 230. El hakk is Arab., and final i the Arab. pronoun "my." Tassedet, thou hast made even, squasti. See 168.

Sagerdhe, if it is one word, would seem by 11 to mean "look with pleasure." Tidu (rather tidut F or tidurt?). See 104.
Sanishlam. See 11.
lqhidernit, fern. plur., becaue idinet (duniat, Arab.) is fem.
23L Arem=aghcm=aqm=eklf, sit, stay.
232. lnihdsan=injhdzan, from ihaz, 55, he was near. Gerean, inter se. Dihadar, from Arab. p.-j., "present." Annddid, irapdAXMXno? from ned, aXXor (as Kab.). Ben Misa gives gh!4n nediu, sit near me, as Temght. So endi, nearest, next. It is spelt with d or t thick In Kab.
Akel, go thou? see 124; or, turn thou? See 25.
Sibber, from Arab. )-4?

APPENDIX.
And you have open country on your right, d-6yak b6derfir fel fir wa-n-arflI.

234. [Ordinarily the river is shallow, below the place of this year], ennadir eghirriiu adej~sal, 6der 6diget tenidagh.
This exceeds that, wfidagh yigar widagh.
There is nothing left of it, war akimn ders harret.
235. That is a different thing, w~dagh amils harret.
It is rare, war agit.
Similar, amelehen.
It is like, ydllehe, ydle.
Like, shynd, sund [zund?] All the same, berish.
236. Whichever way you take, every where you find water, atif tigedi titetaffet, dags attiggeraut diman (take straight which-you-take, on it you alight (on) water f).
Keep straight on, dttil tfg6did ghas (keep straight only).
Straight, tfgdid.
237. Do not [trouble yourself? or run?] this way, nor that? war has tishlet, sihA, wolla sThi.
The river runs between mountains, eghirrEu yuishal ger adaren.
The road leads through a thick forest, where are plenty of lions, abirraka teha (igesh) arkit itrmi; ihe tawakast; ehant dwokhsan.
238. I arrived before him, and had to wait for him, nek dsagh ar6ssit awkdagh inde dawat shwirakdts.
I arrived after him [thee 7], nek 6segh dirak.
After the corruption of the whole earth, Jesus will descend, diret adigdig-nAkal ikdtnes, adezaibet 'Afsa.
NOUNS.
God JA'manay. G I Mesi.*
By the great God, so A'manay mikkaren
or imakføen.
Our Lord, Mesi-nak. The great God, Mesi-nak imakdren. God the ruler, Mesi-nak
yikil.
(Mesi-nak enta ghis. The one God, I Mesi-nak iyen ghs.
(Mesi-nak iydntinten.
God; who has no fellow (companion), Mesinak war ilamfdi,
no has shape? (bounds !), war ilgra, nor measure ? war ile'hit. God has no
measure neither of space nor
time, Mesf-nak tri hehdndek war ildoek war ihddek, war ihddek wd, wolladar wi,
war ihedndek, war tigedi tiketi.
Lord of the _imektder-n-talrewfn.
wonders, Mesis-u-talrewfn.
The Uncreated, wardikbalig. (Arab.) The Creator, amakhalig. (Arab.) Cultivator
of the soul? amkarash imman. Lord of the soul, Mesis imman. The Merciful
Shepherd, amadkn-n-tahnint.
The Victorious, emiri.
Oyak, elsewhere, is "1 left."
Boderdr, open country.
234. 8 ennddir, in custom?
Adejfisal, pres. tense from gazat, to be short? (gzl or wzl.)
285. AmUs, moves, changes?
War agtt, it does not do (it)?
Yzlehe, lyle. See 40.
Sund is zund and zun in Kab. (Arab. zain, comely, elegant.)
236. In Kab. tidid, true, seems to be here tidddid or tidfid.
* Mesi, perhaps originally the name of the Messiah, although mns means master
in Temght.
The Extirpator, amng. The Living, emay (from Arab. hay). The Judge Supreme,
ntarna t6gerit (?). All the creatures of the Lord are to gather
in (in the court of) Jerusalem on the day of resurrection, timikhluk-n-in- Mesi
ruret didaunet istdriabat-n-bdt el
Makkadus 6shel wsi-n-el kigmet.
One part of them enter the hell and remain
there, others enter paradise and remain there, wui tajdshen tdmsi ajishente, wul
tajdshen aljennet ajishente.
The evil spirits, alghafiriten. (Arab.) Devil, eblis. (Arab.) Angel, anyglus, * pl.
anyeldsen. Demon, alshin, pl. alshinen. (Arab.) Female demon, talshfn. The
paradise enter the people who (have
been) good, the hell those who (have been) bad, aljennet atajdshen idinet wui
yolphin, tdmsi atajdshen idinet wui labisen.
The throne (of J al kurshi. (Arab.)
God), algharsh. (Arab.)
The day of resurrection, tshel wi-n-el kid1met.
Attil, be thou? = tM?
23T. War ash tishlet: has, for him? tishlet, from yushal, runs, or from shela, disturb, bustle, 115. Ihe or diba, where. Echant, 152, there are. Wokha, wild beast; Arab. u’ahhsh. Tawak(h)ast, wild beasts collectively.

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
The world, eddffnia (rurret). Heaven, ashinna. The seven heavens, say ishinnawen. Sun, tafok. The sun warms his face hot to-day, tafok tenfidit iddminis wakifsen 6ishel din.
[Comp. tencdt, fever heat.] The sun burns, the people are perspiring, tafuk tarra, idinet tufay dersen tide [exit per eos sudor]. The strength of the sun's heat, tisengnit (ntak6s enis). Sunbeams, ezdreran-n-tafbk. Dawn of sun (of day), enardren-n-taf6k. The sun is eclipsed (to-day), tafbk tdmmere dshel idagh. Moon, ay6r. The moon is about to come forth (rise), ay6r ab6ki eb~irbar. The moon rises, ayor ebirbar. The moon is setting, ay6r ab6ki jedel. The moon sets, ay6r 6dal. Full moon, ahadbr (ak6khat ?). Moonlight, timelle-n-ay6r. Halo, ffarak-n-ay6r. The moon has a halo, ay6r yuwgt ifarak. The moon is eclipsed to-night, aybr amdre dhad idagh. Galaxy, mahellen. Star, 6tar; pl. itaren. The stars shineJbrth, itaren iknin ebarbar. The stars shine brightly, itaren iknn ashishillwak. Lucifer, titari. Vesper, amawen-n-6had. V ashimmelesh. Pleiad, shdttahat. Cross (mejbtia), amanr. I tafaut (qf sun). Light, temellolot (of moon). tisikhsar6n (as thrown through lattice-work, etc.). Darkness, tihay. Fata morgana, ele. Shade, shadow, tele. He taks.
 t tnede.
Cold, I ired–m.
1 asammet.
The cold has penetrated to my bones, asamm6, ejiserin darrim eghds eni. North, afelle. South, agis. East, amaina. West, atram. Northeast (between east and north), ger amaina ge de felle. Air, hawa. (Arab.) Summer, iwlen. Beginning of rainy season (called awdra in Timbziktu), ashersigu. Rainy season, 6kase. The rainy season is over, 6kase ibse. Cold season, tigerist. The dark nights (the worst part of the cold season), 6haden es-ittefen. Spring (called tifisko afiske. in Timbziktu), fatiffet.

Wind, gale, tmaddilet. I see there is rising a heavy gale, dhniagh dehdn denikar temaddlet imakk6ren. Storm, whirlwind, teshigwilet. teshwg1et teshigwiilet. Storm gathers, teghd e teshigwilet.

I tegdd teshigwilet. Heavy rain-clouds, tamsiggenaut. Red clouds, tiggerakin. Lightning, esan. Thunder, ejaj. It thunders, et--ijij. Lightning (thunder) has struck the tree and split it.* ijaq 6dagh fel ehishk atakhtak ifardis fargs.

Rain, I ajfnne. gikonay. It is raining, ajinne 6gat. The rain is coming, it is dripping, 6kona fzay, dekun tabdkhtabek. Raindrops (reshresh), tidam. Moderate rain, ahis. Heavy shower, tab6ut. Long-lasting rain, now ceasing, then beginning again, tahaldhalay. Hail, igidirshn. The hail falls, beating and tearing the tents, igidirshn 6fayen, ishohdrnin nibajen ihinnan isararawen ihdnan. Rainbow, agag6nil (ajejdnet?). Fog, abinnag, ebdnag. To-day is a foggy day, nobody can see anything, 6shel idagh ijaebdnag, war ihinne awddem harret. Dew, tdras.

Much dew has/fallen this night, dhad idagh ija tdras tejet.

Time, elwakkat. (Arab.) Year, iwatay. Five years, summus itien. Century, temrde7n-6, watay. A year of famine, manne. Month, ayor. Three months, karid aybren.

Day, dshel.

Four days, ak6s eshlan. This is afine day, 6shel idagh fikena tesheldeje.


N ammas-n- ishel. Zawdl, aziwal. Dhohor (about 2 P.M.), tdzar. 'Aser, tikast.

* The Tawdrek attribute this effect to the thunder.

APPENDIX.

Sunset, dgadel-n-taf6k. Time qfprayer after sunset, almos. Evening, tdduit. Prayer of ashd, tes6tsin. Night, 6had; pl. dhaden. Midnight, ammas-n-6had.

I tazinnne-n-dhad. To-morrow, ashikke. Early to-morrow morning, ashikken semHaft.

To-morrow at noon, arfl-n-gshel ashikkd. The day after to-morrow, 6shel wu--n she]
ashfkke.
Yesterday, endfsbel. Last night, endhded, end6d. The day I ibhelendin. bejbre
ashelnad.
yesterday, ishel wu6n 6sel endizel.
This year, I teni, tingda.
iwatay fdagh. Last year, { inhd.
iteninde.
Two years ago, tessndin. Next year, dwatay wud 'Ikamdn dwuanen
had.
This month, der ay~r idagh. Next month, ay5r wd yfkeme ay~r idagh. This
month is about to close, aydr wadagh
ishwar ibbeded or amfit. Saturday, Ess4bbet. Sunday, Alh~d. |
Monday, Elitnin.
Tuesday, Eltenita. rab.
Wednesday, Lgrba. Thursday, Elkhamis. Friday, Eljmrmna. Week (seven days),
s6. shilen (eshilen). Moharrem, Tamasfdig. Safar, Tdurdtatezaret. Turdn
Ramadhdn, Azfim. Hdj, Tsubdfir. Shawdl, Tesissi tatdzaret. Tsist Dhu el Heje,
Tesissi tatilkamat. saniten. Echo, dmsewel.
E titkoy.
Ashes, dzit-n-df 6u. Smoke, ahfi. Water, 6man. Land, earth, 6kal. Country of the
Awelmaniden, Akal w-nWu01immiden. Island, atltel.
Wilderness, arkit. Clear forest, dhishkan amitarftarden. Impassable covert, tirk
turni. Dense forest, arkit artf, or ak6ren. Desert, afdlle (prop. North). Hammdda,
desert plain, tanazrdft. Plain, dtaras. Large valley, ertirar. Valley with a torrent,
egh&dsher=egbzer
in other dialects.
Small torrent, eggherfr. Mountain, dar; pl. 6daren. Inaccessible mountain, ddar
urn 'war teh'
abdraka.
Hill, tidakt. Sand-hill, tdgift; pl. tdgefan. (Range) of high sand-hills, tdgefn
ogidihenet.
Small sand-hill, teneshm6r. Rock, tah6nit. Stone, tah~n. Source, tat; pl. tittawen.
Well, shallow, jebenk6r.
(deep, nu.
River, eghirr~u.
Branch of river, dr
Idar-n-egbfrru. Current, dmanen (waters). TVave, tinczdm茶rt. Deep place of
channel in river, tdlaq-ndman.
Bank of river, 6sarim, or 6salim. Ford, tdawent. Torrent, rivulet, anghi. Sea (the
salt river), eghirru wa symmen. Temporary lake, pond, abdng. Black naked soil
round a pond, ttirrawen. Green surJurce on stagnant pool, tahizzak. Cavity, hole,
Mud, illebdk. Stones, or, rather, round masses of lump
(called ifaray in Timbuktu), .or building), ebelghetin.
Stubble-field, tddik; pl tedkfn. Hedge, fence, ifarak. (Arab.) Slight fence, tdfarak.
Road, abiiirraka. oad, "tibarit. Tree, ehishk; pl. 4hishkan. Young tree, bush. { absag.
tasdgit.
Branch, illeket; pl. illiktn. Splinter, timetaut; plL timetawen. Leaf, &Ian ehishk.

TEMA'SHIGHT
Large leaves (?), tefdrket n-n-ehishk. Daim-leaves, taklfkaten-n-ak&f. Bark,
Seed, seeds, tsambbn. Thorn, isemnn. Talha: dsaghr (tdsaghart). Mimosa
gummifera, auwdrwar. A thorny tree in the river, tagerdiba. E'til, aghar (taghart).
Duwd (variety officus), tedtimmnt. Sidderet el hod, akellefe. Tamarind (tree and
fruit), bustisu. Afonkey-bread-tree (baobab), tekduust. Fruit of monkey-bread-
tree, tefngora. Tree called dsabay in Timbuktu, Cina. Nebek-tree (zizyphus),
ferkdnnish. Nebek-fruit, tabikkat; pl. tibakkiten. Siwdk, )
El ira/ , I. Capparis sodata, tdshak. Root of siwdk, dke-n-tdshak. Ddm bush
(sgillem), ak6f. Dzim palm, tagait. Fruits of ddim palm, tibdkukwin. Seed of
dtim palm, tibarggrrar-n. Date-tree, tashdait. Date, tdheni. Date-stone, egeft.
Deldb (Borassus flabelliformis F), tektikat;
pl. tekdkaN-n.
Herbage fresh, tdshe.
(dry, teshe yek5r.
Pennisetum distichum (eniti) dizak. Hdd, tashiLret. Talubbtt, teliggit. Bti
rddkeba (Panicum colonum), argfasii. Young, tender herbage, inghalas. Reed,
k6geri. Knot of reed, tekgrdofen
n-k6geri. Pennisetum typhoidum (h4ni), neli.
(white, ab6rak. Sorghum (sdba), I red, kelnki.
(black, sibi.
telltimt.
Bran, dd.
Ibid.
Ear of the corn, tdgenit. Seeds of the corn, tezawen. The large seeds (?),
iggnshiten. The small seeds (?), isemar-ten. Crops about to come forth from the
ground,
sibberg-beligh Afagh. Corn of all kinds, afini.
(as~ka.
Various species of J asralt (asghalt?).
krdb (Pba). tishit.
tjebalt.
Rice, tafakat. Wheat, elgkime. (Arab.) Barley, farkasdbu. Cucurbita melopepo (el
haddsh), berAiberg.
VOL. III.-B
VOCABULARY. 753
Herd of 100 head of” Iwuisigen. camels or cattle. (tdmedent. Ox, assau; pl. eswanen (Hausa, sah, pl. sant). Cow, tas; pl. hiwan. (Tademekket.) oshitan. (Awelimmid.) Fattened cow, not bearing young, tamzak. Ox qf burden, audis; pl. audisen. Bullock, amgke. (.dsek. 4hedel. Calf, al6ki; pl. il6kian. abirkau. ilingeya ; pl. ilingdyaten. All kinds of animals for riding, sawit; pl. sawiten. 'Horse (common good horse), ais; pl. iyesan. Horse of excellent qualities, (ais) anikfor (brave?) Horse of inferior qualities, ibdgge. A favorite horse, tisenit (well known ?) This is my favorite horse; I do not allow any body to mount it, wadagh TAsenitin; war ibk4lagh atetdnne awidem. Nag, Iafikkarem. Na, k6kor5. Horse of peculiar color, ashdlag. Gray horse, with spots of brown, amflas. Other variety, Aderi. Gray, igelhn. Gray, with a shade of green, id–mmi. 6haras. Brown horse, -telak a‘is neggor. Horse with white ftet, ais wf-n-isab–r. Mare, tgbagat (fem. of ibegge ?). Foa4.hogi. Filly, tdhogit. Ass, ished; pl. ishedan. [Ghad., azid; Ben Mzisa’s Temght, ahid.] Female ass, teshdd.

APPENDIX.
{ temaindk. Young of ass, ah6 lil; fern. tah6lilt.
tamay.
tihate-n.
Sheep, teknse, theli. Sheep with long wool, tikfndem-n. Young of 1 kiruwan; pl. kfuwatinc. sheep. ajomara; pl. ajaimarxin. Ram, ibbegug. pl. ibbegin. He-goat, ash6lak. She-goat, tihat; pl. il. Dog, di ; pl. iyedau. Cat, mdis.
Mice, akor.
Field-mice, ad&. Fdret el khel, arar nga. Rat, irallen.
Wild animals, tem-regesht.
W tiwaks-n, twakast.
Lion, jher; pl. 4heran.
o, wukshan.
Young of lion, aledish.
bubinti.
Surnames of lion, budegaye.
(intende).
gerrier.
Hyena, aridaL
Surnames of hyena, erkinni. Jackal, ebeg; pl. ebeggin.
(intande).
Surnames of jackal, intaine s6so.
(rntangren.
Elephant, elu; pl. eluan. Giraffe, amdar; pl. imidderen. Erkemim (buffalo), asarfike. Lymhe, Leucoryx, ashamgl; pl. isheml. U’rik, antelope, 45sham. Urkiye, the female, tdsham; tWrik. Ar, other antelope, agingara. Oryx, tderit; pl. tederigen. Other species of antelope, aibeshaw; pl. tebeshawen.
Gazella mohor, dnhar; fern. tdnhar; pl. tnhardn.
Wild sheep, ulni-ardk. Porcupine, hedgehog (dhurbdn), tmarmait. Ga d (squirrel?), tekendsit. Hare, tem-ruwelt. Small animal like the hare, dshar 6bar6m.
BDi el gedemdt, akazine.
(haya.
Monkey, fon6ten. Mionkey, ibfddawen, pl.
Sabrdawil (?) .
River-horse (called bang in Timbiktu), agdmba.
Crocodile (dkaray), ardet.
Smaller species ( .A. Lacerta monitor ?), zangway.
Chameleon, tahau. Frog. Ogar.
i1fanatus, ayfi. Fish, dmen. Largest species of fish (Perca Nilotica?), tehddelt-n-Aman. Large black fish, dshir. Other species, tashdlin.
I tag6nit.
A species of white color and great thickness, tagursiyat.
tagtindirit.
Other species, <tehdddadash.
(sarfy.
A fish with four large teeth and red tail, zawegirm.
CQprinus Niloticus, dd. Mormyrus oxyrinchus, wusi.
(ho.a.
Other species offish, ej jra.
marambana. (hdnjerit.
A large snake, between green and black, tag iber.
Tabelknke, tajebdiret. Other kinds of j imdggel.
snake, I emellel katettfngu.
Scorpion, tezdrdmt. Lizard, magddar; pl. imegddaren. Bzi-ndna (small black lizard), agaryan. Turtle, large, yifma.
Empty egg of ostrich, placed on the top of the huts, dtakfs-n-4nehe; pl itkds. Vudture, iigadir; pl. igder~n. Iladaya, tegardimmat. Rahme, tardigi. Guinea-hen (called in Timbtiktu el kabdsh), tailt ; pl. ta-alen.
Young qf guinea-hen, isuwiten.

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
Kumare'n, tdnek. 0S-ow, pl. tibkakan. Stork, waliya. Spoonbill (ddanay), gelgdftta; pl. gelgutffen.
Sparrow, ikab6r. Little red bird, sheterjdnne. Fly, pl. 6shan. Horse-fly, azardwal.
( tghaja.
Various kinds of diseases j tikinkarfn.
of horses, "6hrashid.
i tillik.
Ulcer of horse, etc., tfdddit. Dry scab, dshiyfit. El mebbdr, amsdrarigh. Sudden death, rirat. Place where the horses usually lie down,
Asabel-n-bal.
Poliitidim.
Woman, tamtut, jpl. tideddn.
tamat,
Wife, partner, hannis. fongrel, shank-t.
Fahr ti, shi.
(oba, aba.
Twins, i iknewen. Iimakkserns.
t elder, timakart.
younger, tamdarait.
Iateral uncle, s shitnis. (?) Itdshikkiir.
Paternal uncle, 5m1 s. angathmin. Sister's son, tagdshe, tagdse.
from father's side, uhlitemas(His) aunt, n-ti(s).
from mother's side, ulitemas1 n-ma(s).
Family, igadish, 4gedesh. Widow (during the first three months), tdmat tetif alhuddet. (Half Arab.) Embryo, 6ra.
Child j , t pl. iffaden.
Son, inek.
Srri, rdri.
Boy, i 6barad.
alar6ren.
Lad (adult), amiwad; pl. imtwaden. Daughter, welet. Girl, tdliad; pl. tiliaden. Full-grown (handsome girl), tamdsrolt; pl.
timisroy-iti.
is unknown, andkhardim. (Arab.)
I an6be.

755

756
APPENDIX.
Foster-brothers, animittaden. Chief, aman6kal. Great chief, liege lord, aman6kal imak6ren.
Commander-in-chief, amtway-n-dgehen. Great warrior, champiqn, ehd-esbir; pl. wuin-esbir.
Chief counselor, d-ttinhad; pl. miden wui-n-tdnhad.
Followers, party of chief, kel-taman6kala. Freemant amdshigh; pl. im6shagh.
Freeman, ' al; pl. illal. Degraded man, serf, dmghi; pl. imghid (irreg.for'imghin). Slae, ikeli; pl. ikelin. Female slave, tikelit. Concubine, tawdhat; pl. tawdhaten. Son of a female slave, rdiris-n-tikelit. Son of a slave and a free woman, ab6gheli; pl. ab6ghelit.
Freed slave, Aderif; pl. idirfan. Son of a freed slave (hardtii), ineddrfi; pl. ineddrfa.
Eunuch, ag6r; pl. ig6rawen. Countryman, man of the same tribe, hilis ninak (prop. our man, the pron. accordingly to be changed).
Their countrymen, halis nissen. Stranger, young man who goes abroad to study, el mo'aza; pl. k41*-e1-mo'aza. Guest, 6, maghir; pl. imigharen. Friend, imidi.
Herdsman, shepherd, kmad&n. Sportsman, amahgyen; pl. imdhoyen.
Townspeople, k14gherim (the final m is sometimes changed to b).
Boatman, azfmsur; pl. azimsara.
isakkayfmono.
Fsurka. (Surk.) Fisherman,
I korungtiyenan. (Kdronqoy.) Husbandman, anisdamu; pl. inisdum . Smith, a man of a great variety of occupations (m'allem), 4nhad; pl. fnhaden.
Female smith (mallema), tnhad; pl. tdnhaden.
way kassen ebdshege. Sandal maker, way nggeden tfede1en.
* The syllable "I!, which occurs in many of these compositions, means people, inhabitants. See vol. ., p. 278.
' imashdnshit; pl. iminsbinshin.
1erchant, e' Shililkh (prop. a Berber from the North).

(wai essanna issafar (he who Medical man, knows a remedy).

( indssafar. Drummer, ajatftkart e’ thobl.

Hosmn ag-diis ; pl. kel-ivesan.


k-rkore.

Eye, ta; pl. tittawdn.

TEMA’SIGHT VOCABULARY


$ upper Akshar. Arm, lower: Jmazar.

Flesh on arm, akshil.


- of child, tarshat. Fart, tor&t.


* The d seems to have taken the place of ak Compare irk el WLl.

757

APPENDIX.


I kawel. (Arab.) Peace, el muslkh. (Arab.) Feud, igezdr. Expedition, war, 4gehen; pl. ig-hanen.

Fighting, ginemiingh.

Idnikmds.

Line of battle, affid. Victory, sir-hu. Attack (?), afti. Ransom, tdfedaut. (Half Arab.)

I adfyet.

Occupation, eshshughl. (Arab.) Trade, essibbgb. (Arab.) Deposit, tagalfet. Profit, alfaidet. (Arab.) Debt, am-ruws (of goods).


Dance, adellial. Danger, tamtittis. On this road there is danger, tbarak ifdagh dhe tamitfis.

Clapping of hands, t~kast. Snapping with the fingers, asissgrak. Humming of women, tarlfillit; pl. tifrlelfik. Great holiday, tesdbbaddr. Birthday of Mohammed, Ashel wa dfwen e’ nebi.


Charity on occasion of the death of a person, tfkkefr~n.


TEMA’SHIGHT VOCABULARY.

Rejz a (a drink made of cheese and dates), areire.

Common hasty pudding, asink, ashink. Pudding of Indian corn, ashink-n-sdba.

Boiled rice, tdhari. Rice boiled with a profusion of butter, abilo15.

Rice boiled together with meat, markhfi. Mohamsa, tekhmmezin. (Haif Arab.) Soup, baliwan Bread (t-kelit in Songhay), tegfle; pl. ti.

gilwin.

Meat, isan. Bit (a cut) of meat, tamink~t. Megatta, a celebrated j taldfakgt.
dish of meat, J alabdge.

C 4boshit.

Sort of shawl thrown over j arduwi. the shoulder (feruwdl), I tesiggebist. (litel.
Long, black, narrow shawl nagfd. wrapped round the face, I-tesflgemfst.
Ttirkedi, or md lhafa, dleshiik. Shawl of divers colors, 6tel lejen tamwet.
- on the back, telejtimet. Rags, tabdirde. Small leather pocket (bdt)for tobacco, worn round the neck, 4nnefe. The covering of the same, ab6shig. Lace to support it, t-ulil. Firestone, tefarriset. Firesteel, 6nnefet-n-6f'u. Tinder, tdsqirt. Bowl, ebbn. Tube of a pipe, tellak. Bone for smoking, addif-n-tdba. 3fiouthpiece, tfsdant.
elmintdl. (Kd/e’ Stik.) Twist, tenelrlik. Scissors, timuldash. Looking-glass, tisit.
Key, teseririft.
Y' i ayir.
Lock, tasitg filt. Rosary, isddanen (pl. of tasddit, a sinye bean).

759

APPENDIX.

Talisman, tekdrdi. Letter, I
Writing, ikatab. Writing with large letters, izaurawiten. Writing with small letters, tekarmitet.
I at6reu.
Line, essildder; pl. essildderen. (Arab.) Alphabet, 6gamek. Single letter of alphabet, elkharf. (Arab.) Dot on or under the letter, tidebikka. Arm-ring worn by the men, ishebe. Arm-ring worn by the ishinkot–n. females, ishibga.
Foot-ring offemales, izabbr. Finger-ring, t6d-hot. Ring worn in the hair offemales, tebellauten; pl. tubellaw–n.
Ear-ring, tesibboten; pl. fsabin. Necklace, tasghglt. String of beads hanging down from the head of the females, tesfggort.
Khalldla, a ring used by the (Arab) females to fasten their robe, tesikkanast.
A sort of small cover, or umbrella, worn occasionally by females to protect the head, dhenn–k.
Shoe, ebilshege; pl. bdishegan. Sandal, tefddele; pl. tifeddlen. Weapons, tazoi.
I 4sar.
Arrow, assim. Quiver, tatinghot. Barrel of gun, dman. Gun, elbarfid. Pan, dna6ig.
Cord in the buckle, tafillwit. Stirrup, indrkeb.
, aljam. (Arab.) errdba. (Awel.)
Mouthpiece, tflakit.
i tdsirsin.
(Shkdla), izanis. (Derket), simdi. (El haske), tefirrwit. Foot-cord, tfart. Nose-bag, tigerik. Spur, mimi; pl. mimitan. Camel-saddle, 4tterik. Small piece of leather under the saddle, asheb6bot.
Leather tassels ornamenting the camel-sadde, aggruuw–n.
Nose-cord of came Isherlhet.
Iterlhet.
Head-ornament of camel, ddelik. A broad camel-saddle for mounting, takhawit.
(Arab.)
Camel-saddle for luggage, arilku. Nose-cord of ox of burden, dshau. Saddle
hook, ajdkar. Rope, irrivi. Rope from dim-leaves, irrivi-n-ik5f. Rope for securing
the calves during the
night, asiddi.
Leather rope, 6ran; pl. 4ronan. Small leather rope, tUrunt. Hoe, itiddimfit; pl.
itidimun. Hoe for sowing, ak6n. Axe, tiftale. Hammer, afiddis. Iron hammer,
asiwa. Bellows, tishart. Anvil, tah-nt. Any sort of support whereupon to beat any
thing, abardsha.
Tongs, іrimmedin.
assessawen. Nail, dstel; pl. istelen.
Peg, oegirar. Iron ring, taz6but. Chain, tasilggenist. Guitar, sehydrdenit. Horn,
t6refi. Small boat, takarimbet. Our, іtinezimmar. Pole for the boat, igit; pl.
getain. Prow of boat, akarankbn. Covering of boat, girrim t6raft. Bench,
karbindu.

TEMA'SHIGHT VOCABULARY.
Net, t-tart; pl. t-taren. Large net, ttart amikkarit. Harpoon, zui (not prop.
Temght). Harpoon furnished with a barb, hama. Harpoon with three orjbur points,
hargita. Long thin iron chain lbr catching fish, tegdrgerit.
Trap for catching the gazelle, tendirbat. Mfat I of reed, tawsit.
of grass, teselat.
1.atting round the tent, tediwanet.
Saftikkos.
Carpet, ahwar.
as6so.
Other carpet, called el getfa, tagedfnfist. Bed asifer. Bargd, or coarse woolen
blanket, iberfik. Pillow, 6dafrbr; pl. idefran. Sort of diwan oj reeds, tawidarit.
Portable bedstead, teshdgfit. Poles brning the teshdgfit, igesiige. Supports of
for cooking, ihankanayen. Coal-pan, fma. Cooking-pot, telekkenit. IVater-pot .br
making the ablution before
prayer, ehn wd-n-el walla. Water-bottle (of gourd), dkasis.
Water-skin, ddid.
tasifferit.
Skin for victuals, anwar.
- for sour milk, tanwart.
- for butter, tarassahimet.
- for luggage, figerik.
I tebawent.
Small skin, tamshit. Purse, bag, dbelbbt. Bag with a separate bottom, teshelbaks.
Dish, akfis.
t tak-ist.
Drinking vessel, I terazzfit.
girajiit. (Awel.)
tikerbast.
Copper cup, terdrt-n-darfir.
teminnas.
Wooden vessel covered with leather for containing butter, tesggenit. Bucket, agi, gja. Large dish, watering trough, azgwa; pl. iziwen.
Funnel, asiggefl. Spoon, tas6kalt. Drinking spoon, asfilko. Large stirring spoon, asdrwi. Forked stick for stirring the sour milk, efaninfar.
Pole for suspending the skins of milk, tasfskart.
Plaited dish of straw (tebek), tisit. Basket, farinfo.
Sunyye, large basket, tas6wanit. Large vessel for honey, fargnifarS. Wax candle, tab6rit-n-tifelt. Leather tent, dhd;* pl. ch-n-nan. New leather tent, dhd naina.
Leather tent, worn, ehd kit. Middle pole, ternankait; pl. terninkayen. The smaller poles on the two sides, tigittewn.
Rope passing over the poles, 6harak. Double cord, trdonin-dhak. Forkedl affsk.

Interior of tent, bdgu. Exterior of tent, kekke. Aweba, teshdhat. A particular space of the tent called gherdra, tdgharit.
Tent of cotton, ehd mellen. Tent-pole, dfgit; pl. igetin. Village of tents, encampment (rehbla), tdagagh; pl. imzaghen.
Place of/brmer encampment, timshagh. Hurdle of cattle, isgin.
Staircase, btalenn-n-sor5.
tidfnnek; pl. tidinnek. Cowry, taragellit; pl. tfmgel.
* This word is mentioned by E'bn Hafikil in the tenth century, as meaning a Berber encampment. Journ. Asiat., 1842, vol. i., p.40. t A station on the road to Ahdaghost was called by this name. El Bekri, p. 15T.
Compare Capt. Lyon's Travels, p. 315.-H.B.

APPENDIX.
Caravan ('akabir ; pl. 'akwabfr), tdrekeft (rdkeba); pl. ikeberan. Prorisions, dzad. (Arab.) Luggage, flal. Merchandise, fished (?). Packet, ghadfle. Calico (shigge), masr. Figured cotton, talaziggi (formed from the
Silk, el kharir. (Arab.) Atlas, birribirri. Sword-cord (el hamnle), el mejdd. (Arab.)
Iron, taz61i. Sound q iron, temsdrakat.
Fathom, thhid. A measure of four fathoms, ak6s dt-hid. A mouthful, tdhak. A quantity that may be taken by two Jingers, takedimmit. A handful, tagebifzzit. What may be grasped by an outspread hand, t-bart.

What may be grasped by both hands, ibsuten.

THE STORY OF THE PRODIGAL SON IN TEMASHIGHT.
(Luke xv., 11.)
Tinfost: Aliad enne mdkhshat n dh-i.
Tale: The youth who (was) wasteful of substance.
Once was a man one having children, having two youths. Said the younger n dersen y obannis: Ikfahi adegger-eni dare 6hdr wa n nek. Yenker tisan, of them to his father: Give me my portion (? of the substance which (is) thine. Arose their sire, yezon gerCsan eherinnis. 13. Har darretidi s eshilan madfrini, yenker weighed out between them his substance. Until afterwards in days a few, arose Qliad ennin, yessinte eherinnis ikdtenes is-kal yikka ikal iyen ogilgen; son younger (9) gathered (?) his substance all of it, returned passed (to) land one distant; yelim dars; ekhshet eherinnis ger tfdedtn. 14. Darret dkhashat-n- eherinnis, dwelt in it; wasted his substance among women. After the wasting of his substance, aziyet tetfik egel ghalle dar 6kal idaghi: ebhis harret. 15. Enker yikka a heavy thing bread (?) dearth in land that: failed? to him a thing. He arose passed (to) hilis iyen, istifure imannis gh6ris da Argerim idaghi: hak irdfmds shekldrsh man one, hired himself to him in district that: he took? sent? him (to) field enis, edfnas imm-nis enis. 16. Hfin trlis oles war ikslia, asal Man-nof him, he fed for him his camels. But again? he ate not, save leaves of ehishkan wuidagh titen immgns. 17. Enta isigggere dar imannis, inne ye bushes which eat camels. He contemplated in his soul, said to imannis: Nek, obani iMb'klan ag-teni; ertusd daghsen ila wa his soul: As for me, my father (is) having servants many; each of them having what ickshe: hun nek amargdagh enikah lis; behihE harret (or igafelli kh5r ez he eats: but I now kills me famine; fails (9) to me a thing.
zdmen). 18. Amaridagh, t.(t).tragh denkar(agh) geligh gher obinin(i), ahas
Instantly I will seek (that I) arise, I go toward my father, I may innagh: Obkni, nek egtgh irk harret gtrit Mesfnak gdrit ke. 19. Nek to him say: My father, I have done evil thing between? our God, between thee. I war issimmemghalagh damiisagh giliad innek. Amardagh! Agd he ghas dar not am worthy I be called son of thee. Now I make me only in 13. Tidedin, women, may seem to mean '7.1’1, "loves," as deden, verse 80. 14. Tep let, is a loaf: qu. ege? bread? Ibha, deficit; elsewhere, fallit. 1. Amaradar, or amar adagh of vv. 18, 19, 21, seems to be=imir enni of Kab., "that time," or "this time."

19. Dewm wsgh = ad-amas.agh. The root amus seems to represent ism (name), of Arabic, which is also used as substantive.

THE PRODIGAL SON IN TEMASHIGIHT. 763

ik Igmnak. 20. Hun inker, 6se as obinis. Obinis yenh-t har agaide yugig; thy servants. But he arose, came to(?) his father. His father saw him until very far egas tehaninet ghas; yishel sirs ghas; yadar fel erinnis, *ahis made for him mercy only; hastened upon him only; fell upon his neck, that to him i-timullut. 21. Hun innas roris: Obani, hun nek egdgh irk-n-harret he-may kiss? But said to him his child : My father, but I have done evil of thing gerit Mesinak ed ke dar tulis. Hun amarldagh nek war issimmhialthagh between our God and thee in repetition. But now I not am worthy damfisagh liiad innak: ataffbi, udef ijil iklnnak. 22. Inne tis y I be called son of thee: take me, (like one of?) thy servants. Said his-sire to iklannis: Ahauyet tekatkat teh5skken, selsem-as-tet; tayem tathod his servants: Ho I bring-ye a robe beautiful, ye have clad to him it; Ye have brought a ring teh5sken, tegem-as-tet degh asukkot enis; tejimas btishdgan beautiful, ye-have-made-to-him-it on finger of him; ye-have-made-to-him shoes ih6skatndn degh itdfrannis. 23. Et wuayamas 6h6del edddn beautiful on feet of him. Ye have brought for him calf fat tdgh-rslmd, tekönfimdis adenekshit nlewat. 24. Mishdn röri (that) ye butcher for him, ye roast for him, (that) we eat it (and) be merry. Because my child yemmait, tulis ahne: ibat, nölis tehanait. Entenet ffilewen was dead, again (is) alive? he was lost, we have repeated a finding. They rejoiced imanassen. 25. Ewa amakir ennis ihe shekirash-n-issen ekannten, their soul. He who (was) the elder (son) of him fields of them to work them he made theae? har iggel e'hennis, har enn-haz d n tis, isle amisli n tesinsan
until he went (to) his tent, until he approached tent of his sire, he heard a hearing of cymbals? d 'aranf de t-khast. 26. EgklA re iy en dar iklan, isfsten-t, innas:
and timbrels? and dancing? He called one of the servants, asked-him said to him:
Wrda gh mamis? 27. In nas MkPi: A madarainek adosenit tik ; This what-is-it? Said to him the servant: Thy younger (brother) arrives (to) thy sire;
tik eger hisas dh-del idd.rfn, fel am6ye n am6kes enis, thy sire has-butchered-for him calf fat upon cause (?) of meeting of him, en tdro enis sel-rafit. 28. Iggish atkar [atkahh] amakir enis, yunge of receiving (?) of him in safety. Entered anger elder (brother) of him, he refused(?)
adiggesh efhd n tis. I gmat obinnis e'hennis, erdrit. he should enter tent of his sire. Came-out his father (from) his tent, entreated (?) him. 29. Isdkalas mtghred, inne ye obannis: Enhe, legh aitian ag6teni nek
He returned to him harangue, he said to his father: See, I am (?) years many I these I khadmaghak: k11l war ikhshe agh uhi n nek: hun kay kahi war tikffhi shel have served thee: once-not I have wasted heart of thee: but thou once not givest me day iyen taghat iyet, sagarrassagh, hanagh-teslawit, nek d ithiddiweni, one she-goat one I caused to butcher, (that) thou to us cause to rejoice, me and my friends. 30. Hun 6ia d innek widagh, awayikhshet dhri-n-nek ikdtdnes ger dden,
But son of thee this, who wasted substance of thee all of it among loves (?), tdzar ikal, tegharasas hgdel eddrin. 31. In nas tis: the afternoon he came, thou hast butchered for him calf fat. Said to him his sire: Ke tekdme deri sed-s-en(i) harkaik; eheri ni ik&t nes e cheri-n-nek. 32. Thou dwellest with me at side of me always; my substance all of it (is) thy substance. Mlfshin essimmemhel ahas-nigge tarha-n-nis asemurfnitn fel tamfisne
Because it is worthy (that) to him we make joy of him because from? upon the-name innit enta amadaray - innek wa indirren yamult tillis idar; aba., of-this-that he thy-younger (brother) the little (one) was dead again lives; was lost, nenht.
we have found him.
* 20. Or, ahaz itimullut, he approached for the kiss. Timullut is a substantive elsewhere.

764 APPENDIX.
APPENDIX XIV.
EL BAXA’Y’S LETTER OF RECOMMENDATION.
TRANSLATED BY DR. NICHOLSON.
In a preface in rhymed prose, Ah'med el Bak~y, having enumerated ten generations of his ancestors, addresses his letter to all into whose hands it should fall, of his brethren and friends among the Arabs, the Taw~rek, the Fullin, and the Sudgn, in the land of El Islam, and especially in the land of A'la Födiye, the noblest of the sons of 'Abdallah and 'Othmtn the Imam, among whom the Imam 'All ben Mohammed Bello is distinguished; next, to those in the land of the faithful and humane, his brethren of the people of Böru, and especially their excellent Sheikh 'Omdr; and, lastly, to all Moslims in the land. He then enters on his subject of recommending to them the Christian traveler in the following terms: "Our and your guest, 'Abd el Kerfm Barth, the English Christian, has visited us from your part, and we honored him suitably, and were not wanting to him in anything, befriended him openly and privately, and defended him from nomadic wanderers and settlers, until we restored him to you in safety, just as he came from you in respect. Now there is no fault to find with our present reception of him, nor with your treatment of him in time past; for the guest of the munificent is munificently treated, and injury to the good is forbidden; and it is the nature of the good and pure to be helpful, just as malice is the disposition of the wicked; and kind acts and intentions are acceptable both to men and to God. But you require to be urgently admonished to treat our and your guest with honor, beneficence, and equity. And do not be deluded by those who say, 'Behold, he is a Christian! let no kindness be shown to him! let it be counted acceptable to God to hurt him!' For such sentiments are contrary to the Kurin and the Sunna, and are repudiated by men of intelligence. It is written, 'God does not forbid your showing kindness and equity to those who do not wage war with you on account of your religion, nor expel you from your abodes, for God loves the equitable.'- And God says (in reply to those who say 'we are not bound to deal equitably with the heathen'), 'Nay, with whoever is faithful to his pledges, and fears God, for God loves those that fear him.' And we have heard from the saints about the dispositions of the prophets, and their inculcation of beneficence to all men. The Prophet used to say, 'Whenever honorable persons come to you, receive them with honor;' and he used to show respect to all that came to him, whether they were Moslims, or Kitdbi, or infidels. And he gave injunctions concerning those among them who were on terms of compact, and those who were on terms of tribute; so that he said, 'Whoever kills a companion shall not smell the odor of Paradise; and its odor can be perceived at a distance of 500 years' journey.' And his forefather, Abraham, was kind to every body, so that God mentions him in his book with reference to his generous conduct to guests, and extols his mildness in his altercation with the angels sent on account of the unbelievers; for he says, 'He disputed with us about the people of Lot; lo! Abraham is humane:'1j And an embassy from the Christians of Najrdn came to the prophet, and he received them with honor, and did them justice, as it was his disposition and his custom to do; then he made a treaty with them on terms of tribute, and did not molest them or their religion after he had invited them to accept El Islitm, and they had received his missives; and he kept faith with them. This, too, was the way he treated the Jews of Medina, before he went to war with them. Thus God says, 'Thou wilt not cease to discover deceivers among them, with few exceptions; but forgive them, and pardon them, for God
loves the beneficent.' And they used to salute him by saying, 'Assidm 'alaika!

* Sur., ix., 9. t Sur., iii., 69. t i.e. People of the Book, Jews or Christians.


* The name of some bitter tree. This story is told in Mishkit el Masibib, vol. ii., p. 394; but assdm (destruction) is the word there used.

EL BAKA’Y’S LETTER OF RECOMMENDATION. 765

Knd he replied, 'But did not you hear how I returned their salutation? Now what I wished them will be granted, but what they wished me will not be granted.' And it was only as respects the enemies of God-persons fighting against God and his prophet, and waging war with the adherents of El Islm for the sake of their religion-that the prophet forbids what he forbade as to this mode of treatment. The injunction with regard to such is what God says: 'O Prophet, persecute the unbelievers and hypocrites, and be severe with them !' Thus every believer has a special statute. There came to me one day a man of the Fulldn, of the Fullin of the West, who pretended to be learned, but who had no learning, who said to me, 'Does not God say, "You will not find any people who believe in God and the last day, loving those who resist God and his prophet, "t (and the rest of that verse), and yet you love this Christian unbeliever?' I replied, 'Do not you, too, obey this other word of God? " God does not forbid you to show kindness and equity to those who have not borne arms against you on account of religion, and have not expelled you from your dwellings, for God loves those that deal justly; God only forbids your being friends with those who bore arms against you for the sake of religion, and who expelled you from your abode, or who aided in expelling you."' Then he held his tongue. So I said to him, 'Speak! Do you think that one of these verses abrogates the other? If so, you lie, and are made a liar. Or do you think that one is contradictory to the other, and that the contradiction is in the mind of God? If so, you are a fool, and are made a fool of, and lead astray and are led astray. Or do you believe part of the book and disbelieve a part? If so, you are one of those of whom it is said, " Do ye believe one part of the book and disbelieve the other "§ If so, you are an unbeliever crying out against unbelief.' Then he asked me to explain to him. So I said, 'Let it suffice you as to this mystery and difficulty, that your head is sprinkled with gray, but that you are ignorant of the book of your Lord which has been revealed to you, and about the Sunna of your Prophet; for the ordinance about the hostile unbelieverl and the believer who is not hostile, is well known in the book and in the Sunna. As for the unbeliever who is not hostile, there is no prohibition to treat him kindly, whereas to deal justly with him is a positive duty. As for the hostile one, nothing is said about his being treated with kindness, therefore kindness to him is not expressly enjoined; but God has only prohibited friendship with him in preference to Moslims, or helping him against Moslims. But kindness and equity toward an unbeliever who is not hostile is manifestly lawful; whereas friendship with a hostile unbeliever is expressly unlawful, and kindness and equity toward him are among doubtful
duties; and the unbelievers who are hostile, or hinderers, or contumacious belong to one class, and are subject to one ordinance, and with such, affection-whatever belongs to intimate friendship-is forbidden. This is the law with regard to unbelievers. As for Kitibis, they are under special laws, whether they be hostile, or under covenant of peace, or under tribute. We may marry the Kitibis of any description. Now, if any one asserts that it is not lawful to show kindness to a Kitbi, let him tell me what he would do with a Kitabi wife, seeing that God has commanded us to treat our wives with kindness and beneficence, and the Prophet has enjoined it. Therefore, if this were true with regard to the Kitibi wife of a Moslim, there would be absolutely no difference but that of sex between her and her father and brothers; so that whatever kindness and beneficence are due to his wife, the daughter of his connections by marriage, are undoubtedly due to those connections themselves. And the Emir of Misina the Fullini spoke to me both ignorantly and inhumanely about this Englishman, and insisted on absurd and frivolous postulates. And he-nay, his doctors, without learning, piety, or religion-added as evidence certain verses from the book of God which were revealed about hypocrites, about 'Abdallah ben Obbai Ebn Salil and his compiers, and they disgraced themselves by the display of their ignorance of the Kurdn and Sunna. Nay, they could not adduce a single word out of the Sunna, nor a sentence from the Canon Law,** which is their learning, notwithstanding their ignorance of it! Since they did not find either in the Sunna or Canon Law any thing that agrees with their aims, but only what is merely contrary to them, they had recourse to the Kurin, and they perverted it violently, iniquitously, ignorantly, carelessly, 

This is a noted personage in the Kurin.
LJ

766
APPENDIX.
derisively, and sportively. But woe unto them for what their hands have written! and woe unto them for the reward they will reap! Among what I said to them was this: If what you aim at were a part of the Mohammedan religion, either theoretically or practically, I would have outrun you in receiving it, and Khalfl ben 'Abdallah and 'Othmgn ben Mohammed Bello, the two descendants of F6diye, would have outrun you; nay, the great Sultan, our lord Abd e' Rahmgn, the son of your lord, Hisbim, and the Khakin of the two lands and seas, the Sultan 'Abd el Mejfd, the son of the Sultan Mahmdid, the son of the Sultan 'Abd el Hamid, would have anticipated you. As for your postulate,* that you have inherited the duty of doing battle with the infidels and of hating them from the time of our fathers and grandfathers, we are more nearly related to them than you, for you have no ancestry in it, since you have only adopted your present opinions about thirty years ago, and a man only inherits from his father and grandfather. Whose guest is this Christian? And again, in whose alliance and safe-conduct is this Christian? He is the guest and protdg of the Sultan of the Faithful, 'Abd el Mejid, and of the Imgm of the Moslims, our lord 'Abd e' Rahmn. Lo! he inherited
the duty of warring with the infidels from his fathers and grandfathers; and he possesses his religion from the earliest of the fathers, from the time of the prophets. But as for the people of Nfikkuma, t they 'have neither religion, nor learning, nor understanding, nor humanity. What then gives them any superiority or pre-eminence over those eminent persons, seeing that they are the tail of mankind, living in the tail of the world, and that, up to this date, the invitation of the Sunna and of indispensable duties: has not reached them? But there is no need to dilate on what they say in their perversity, nor on what is said to them in disputation. The main thing is that you should know, 0 you body of believers, that God has- sent us prophets with His book and His ordinances, and has elucidated them and made them plain, and that whoever wishes to add to them in what He has enjoined is accursed and cast out, and whoever diminishes aught therefrom is condemned and punished. Therefore treat the Moslim according to the treatment ordered for him in the book of God and in the Sunna of the Prophet, whether the Moslim be an upright or a careless one; treat the Kitdbis as they are to be treated, whether they be hostile, or under compact, or under tribute; and treat the Infidel generally as he is to be treated, whether he be hostile or not hostile: 'For all are His servants; His will is irresistible by them; His ordinance sticks close to them; His knowledge comprehends them.' § Whoever treats these different classes with any other treatment than what He has appointed errs in his judgment and is wicked. And this Christian is to-day the guest of the Moslims, under their protection, their covenant, and safe-conduct. No Moslim can lawfully hurt him. On the contrary, to injure him is a burning shame. Nay, he has the rights of a guest, for the guest of the munificent is munificently treated; and every believer is munificent, and every hypocrite is sordid. And does that munificence which is not imprinted in the disposition make a believer? The recompense of kindness is by kindness, in imitation of the character of the merciful Lord. God says, ' Is theie any recompense of kindness except kindness? '1 And behold! this man's nation, the English, have done us services which are neither doubted or denied: which are their friendship to our brethren the Moslims, and their sincerity to them, and their cordiality with them, and their helpfulness to our two Sultans, 'Abd e' Rahmdn and 'Abd el Mejid. This is publicly known and acknowledged about the English. It is, therefore, our right and duty to show gratitude for their kindness, and to strengthen whatever covenant and confidence there is between us and them. And I apply this to you, my brethren. Therefore whoever belongs to the jurisdiction of our Tawdrek, the people of Kariddnne, the kingdom of Alkkattabu ben Kawa ben Imma ben Ig e' Sheikh ben Kariddnne, and then whoever is behind them of my companions and friends, Dinnik, the kingdom of my brother, and nephew, and pupil, Milsa ben Bodh-l ben Katim ; then those behind them of our partisans the people of Air the Kl-gergs and the K6l-owi; then our darlings, A'la F6diye, their learned men, the intelligent and humane, who have the ordinances and the right of decision, on them be my salutation and el Islim! the people of the Imam.

* That is, main %.fnuple on which you base your wish to hurt a Christian; or it means pretense. t That is. the Fulbe of Mfisina. About Nfikkuma, or Nfkuma, see the note, ante, p. 708.
EL BAKAY'S LETTER OF RECOMMENDATION.

the high-minded, the son of Bello, the Imim ben 'Othmin, the perfect. For, lo! my guest is a guest of theirs, who has nothing to fear from them, since they profess obedience to God,* and know that he protects the ordinances. And especially, as their lord, the Imim Mohammed Bello-God favor him !-said to me, and wrote to me with his own hand, that he and his kingdom were at my disposal so long as it was strung on his string ; therefore I have authority, and I admonish you about my and your guest, indeed about whatever Englishman shall come after him, whether he come to me, or pass near you, or abide among you for a time and then return. And what I demand and charge you, the same injunction I lay upon my brethren (though I have not seen them with my eyes, I have seen them by my faith, and I count kindred with them by the ties of religion), the people of Bdbnu, especially the Sheikh 'Omdr ben Mohammed, the Emir, the Just. Then let not that which is dreaded hinder you.t Lo! he is a distinguished man among the Christians.§ However there are between us and them such protectors of El Islmd and champions[l of the peoples (the Christians), that if they break through them to get at us, and attack us, there is no good of life, and no sufficiency in a host. But God is our reliance: surely He outwits every deceiver, betrays every traitor, and makes every unbeliever a liar; for he says in his book, to us and to His Prophet, 'God is your stay, and those of the believers that follow you.' 'If they try to deceive you, then God is your support. It is He that has strengthened you with His help, and with the faithful, and has united their hearts.'** It is then by the religion of God that we are exalted and are victorious. Religion is weak only through its professors.tt The blessing of the Book of God and the blessing of His Prophet be on us and with us. So let not fear seize any Moslim that they should deceive him and cheat him, on the ground that there is rebellion against the cause of God among them, and that the Sunna of His Prophet is violated among them. And whatever there is of slaughter and battle with him, let him suppress it for its day; for the weakest of men in sense, and the mightiest of them in ignorance, is he who rushes to evil when its season has not come, and who is no match for it on the day when it arrives. And as for me, brethren, I have written for the Englishman specially a general safe-conduct, in which I have included every one in my land, and have added thereto your land, in reliance on your religion and your sure conviction, and in dependence on your intelligence and humanity. Do you then write for him as I have written, on the condition of our being subject to our Imdm, our Lord 'Abd e' Rahmin, and our Sultan, 'Abd el Mejid; and be not like the people of Ndkkuma, for they are like the deaf and dumb, since they are offensive to me. Lo! I love my guest the Christian. Be careful that he be not hindered in any thing; for the Prophet used to love the Kuraish, in spite of their unbelief in him and their hostility to him. God says, 'There has come to you a Prophet from yourselves; grievous to him is your wickedness; he is anxious about you.'§J And he said to him, 'Thou wilt not direct whomsoever thou lovest.'§§ And he used to
love his uncles, and to delight in their conversion to El Islam, especially A'bi Taleb; except that he knew the decrees of God about the community, and was liable to them together with the community. The most ignorant of men is he who is ignorant of the Book of his Lord and the Sunna of His Prophet, so that he licenses for himself what is unlawful, and forbids what is lawful, and draws near to Him with that which removes him to a distance from Him, and keeps aloof from that which brings him near to Him, who fancies that he does well as to his actions while he does evil as to what is enjoined. God is not worshiped by any act (or rite) but what He has ordered, and is not approached by a worshiper that he should remit any thing but what is remitted. Now salutation is what is reiterated to you, and honor is what is wished to you. Farewell."


APPENDIX.
APPENDIX XV.
CHIEF TOWNS AND RESIDENCES OF THE INDEPENDENT SONGHAY BETWEEN THE NIGER AND MY ROUTE BY YA'GHA AND LIBTA'KO.

Ktilman, a large place, the name of which has already become known in Europe through the information of other travelers, in consequence of its great importance as a well-inhabited strong town, as also as a frequented market. The chief part of the inhabitants belong to the tribe of the K6izd, with the chief (koy) Foni, the son of A'rkosd (A'rkosd izze), or, as the Tawgrek call him, ag A'rkosti. It may now be laid down in the map with tolerable accuracy, being said to be distant from Tongi (see p. 499) thirty miles to the west.

'Tira, the town mentioned already by A'hmed Bdbi, said to be even larger than Kalman, and the very largest of the ksdr of the free Songhay, equaling the city of Timbdktu in size, four days from Tongi S.W., two from D6re E.N.E. The inhabitants wear their hair in long tresses, and possess a good many horses; they are totally independent.

Darghol, residence of the Songhay princes, the descendants of the A'skfg or Sikkid, the chief of whom at the present day is Koy Kdlimia; the inhabitants very warlike, armed with shield, spear, and sword, like the Tawdrek. But the energy of these Songhay is counterpoised and baffled by the disunion which prevails among themselves, the inhabitants of Darghol waging war with those of Tra, who do not acknowledge their supremacy. The position of this important town, I am sorry to say, I am not able to determine even approximately. It is very desirable that a European traveler should explore this whole region.

The most important of the other towns of the Songhay are: K6sa; T(kala, ruled by Hawa, a woman (even in Timbutku, before the conquest of the town by the Fitibe, a woman is said to have exercised the chief influence); Dor6gun; Kinseka-koira, B6kar-koira (both called after their chiefs); Kdirchi, with the chief Hemma; Tdzi; G6roshi; Karta; Kkaru, or Bimbelokoire (called from the chief, Bmbelo; a
powerful community, dominating the neighboring towns and villages); Bangtim; Kerggu; Fombiten, with the chief Hamma Fombit; Kginfuli; Hammakoire; Syrbi; Larba (the town mentioned in a preceding part of this volume, said to be as large as Say, with which and Timkala it was intimately allied at the time of the rising of the Reformer 'Othm-n, and offered the most determined resistance) Sffada, Bargill; Kasinni; Alik6nchi; Garubdnnda; Kongozekoire; Wozebingo; Sgtumen; Wdsolo; Badduldi; Barrob6nghala; Kalobndnda.

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.

APPENDIX XVI

FRAGMENTS OF A METEOROLOGICAL REGISTER. Dt. Hour of the Devel
Outside K6kawa al the village Kali. luwa.

Heavy E. gale.
Heavy northerly gale.
Foggy in the morn. ing.
1852. Nov. 25 27 28
29 30
Dec.
1
2 3
4 5
6 7 8 9
10
11 12 13
14 15 16 17,18 19
20 21
sunrise.
1.30 P.M. sunrise. sunset. sunrise.
1.15 P.M. sunset. sunrise.
1.30
sunset. sunrise.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise. sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunrise.
1.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
1.30 P.M. sunset. No obsv'n. 1.30 P.M. sunset. sunrise.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
sunset. sunrise. sunset. sunrise. sunset.
1.20 P.M. 1.45 P.M. sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
sunset.
1.30 P.M.
sunset. No observ'n. 1.30 P.M.
sunset. sunrise. sunrise.
1.40 P.M. sunrise.
24 sunrise. 25 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 26 sunset. 27-31 No observ'n.
1853.
Jan.
1 sunset.
2 sunrise. 3-10 No observ'n. 11 1.30 P.M. 12 sunrise.
1430 P.M. 13 sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
14 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 15 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 16 sunrise. 17 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 18 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 19 sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. 20 sunrise. 21 2.0 P.M 22 sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
23 sunrise.
1.30 P.M. 24 sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
25 sunrise.
1.45 P.M. 26 sunrise.
1.45 P.M. 27 sunrise.
1.50 P.M. 28 sunrise.
1.45 P.M. 29,30 No observ'n. 31 sunset. Feb.
1 sunrise. 2 sunrise. to> 1.30 P.M. 24 sunset. 25
26
52 Cold N.E. gale; very heavy. 77
40 Very cold, but no wind.
Foggy morning.
-Ccc
22
23
V
Sky all this time cloudy.
Fine morning. Fine morning.
5
Strong wind.
5
Cold wind.
7 Fine day.
3
In the evening heatlightning toward the N.
Cloudy, the sun shining forth at times; in the afternoon the whole sky toward the S. over-
OL. III.-
769

APPENDIX.
0 ”,1, in
Date. Hour of the IDemk. Dte. Hour of the sale ID
1.15 P.M. 1.30 P.M. sunrise. sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunset.
sunrise.
1.30 P.M. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunrise. sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M. sunset. sunset.
1.15 P.M. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
1.30 P.M. 1.15 P.M.
No obsv’n. 3.0 P.M.
3.0 P.M. sunrise. sunrise.
2.15 P.M. 5.30 P.M.
31 No obsv’n. April
1 8.0' P.M.
cast with thick clouds; in the evening cool and fresh as if after a rain. Heat-
lightning.
Windy.
Cloudy; heavy gale. Clear.
The evening and the following night
very sultry.
The whole day heavy gale.
Weather clear.
Fine morning.
Fine morning.
Very fine morning.
Heavy gale, sky
thickly overcast; no rain with us, but heat - lightning.
Sky thickly overcast; thunderstorm the following night, but no rain.
Sky thickly overcast in the morning; a few drops of rain.
(Some rain early in the morning.)
1.30 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
sunset. sunrise. sunset. sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
1.30
2.0 P.M.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
2.45 sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
In the cool hall of a
clay house.
In shade outside.
Strong wind.
Sky toward the W.
overcast with
clouds.
4.30 P.M. a few
drops of rain. Sky overcast.
Cloudy in the afternoon.
Sky overcast.
Thunder - clouds from east, only a few drops of rain; heat-lightning.

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>April 2</td>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 1</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td>sunset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 P.M.</td>
<td>sunrise.</td>
<td>82 2.0 P.M. 108</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.0 P.M. 105
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
No obsv’n. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset.
sunrise. 825
2.0 P.M. 104 sunset. 86
sunrise. 76 2.0 P.-M. 103
In the afternoon a thunder - storm rose from the E. 5.15 P.M. heavy gale and a little
rain.
During the night
heavy wind, but
no rain.
During the night
wing, heat-lightning.
In the afternoon
sky cloudy; in the evening heat-lightning.
Sky overcast and
cloudy, but no
rain.
9 o’clock P.M. all on
a sudden, a heavy shower, lasting
about one hour. Air refreshed; windy.
No rain.
A most oppressive
and disagreeable
evening.
About sunset thunder-storm from the N. ; good fall of rain lasting about one hour,
refreshing the air.
sunrise.
sunset. sunrise. No obsv’n. sunrise. sunset.
sunrise. No obsv’n. 2.0 P.M.
sunset.
sunrise. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
4.0 P.M.
5.0 P.M.
In the afternoon thunder-storm with very heavy rain.
In the afternoon clouds.
Clouds toward the S. (Gand6.) Fine cool morning; in the afternoon thunder-storm, but no rain.
In the afternoon thunder-storm from the N.; after sunset a slight shower with us, lasting about half
an hour.
About 4 P.M. thunder - storm from the N. with moderate rain about 5 o'clock.
A slight fall in the
morning; cloudy.
About 4 P.M. thunder-storm in the S.
Early in the morning a few drops
of rain.
Early in the morning a slight thunder-storm with a little rain; the whole day sky overcast.
Early in the morning a little rain.
At 5 P.M. thunderstorm accompani-

APPENDIX.

atks. eg. iRmrs

Daeloro te aeo Date, roft e e.o eab
De. Day. Feb Remarks. Houy. a e ofi emr

sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
7.0 A.M.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
sunrise. 78 7.0 A.M 73
No obsv'n.
2.0 P.M. 91 sunset. 84°5 sunrise. 75
13 No obsv'ln. 14 sunset. 15 sunrise.
ed by heavy rain, lasting till late at night.
Sky gloomy.
Thick clouds gathering. From 7.30 A.. rain half an hour tolerably heavy, then
gentle till 9 o'clock, when the sun shone forth.
A thunder-storm in the distance.
In the night thunder - storm, with much rain, lasting till late in the morning.
Thunder-storm gathered from E.; 6.5 A.M. it began raining, the first hour heavy,
then gentle till about 9 o'clock. Thunder.storm late in the evening, with a few
drops of
rain.
Fine morning.
8 A.M. the sun
broke through the
clouds.
Very fine morning. About three o'clock
in the morning a moderate shower. About midnight
from 10th to It a little rain accompanied by heatlightning, but no
thunder-storm. In the afternoon
thunder - clouds gathering, but the rain went southward.
At 4* o'clock A.M.
a thunder - storm gathering from the E., followed
by violent rain.
No obsv’n.
1.80 P.M.II00
sunset. 84 sunrise. 73°5
The following night
a little rain.
The  sun  broke through the clouds about 8 A.M.
Fine morning; in the afternoon thunderstorm from the E.
passed by.
About 4 o'clock P.M.
thunder - storm from the E., but
no rain.
In the afternoon thunder-storm at some distance.
(Say.)-In the afternoon overcast. After sunset a thunder-storm gathered from
E.N. E., refreshing the air; much wind but no rain. In the following night
thunderstorm, but no rain. The sky clearer.
Sky overcast. 7 A.M.
severe thunderstorm gathered, setting in with a violent gale followed by heavy
rain lasting about
three hours.
Fine morning. Cloudy and stormy. Skylckly overcast,
the clouds proceeding from the N. 6.45 A.M. to 7.25 moderate rain, afterward
gentle
till 9 o'clock.
Sky overcast. About
noon a few drops.
About 1.30 P.M.
heavy rain.
Sky thickly overcast in the morning, afterward
cleared up.
Fine morning, tolerably clear. In the.
afternoon a thunder-storm in the distance i late in the evening a second one
gathered from the -E., and reached us after 11 o'clock,with extraordinary force for
the first hour,

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.
Hour of tho. ,el of Remarks. Date. Hour of the
Date. Day. ofah emk Day. I Fah.
1853.
June July
1
No obsv'n. No obsv'n. No obsv'n.
then more gentle, till 2 o'clock A.M.
Sky about noon thickly overcast and atmosphere oppressive; cleared up in the afternoon.
Clear.
Sky overcast. 8.30
In the afternoon a heavy thunderstorm, but no rain. Sky overcast. rainy.
f1; A.M. the sun broke through the clouds.
4 P.M. a thunderstorm gathered from N. proceeded westward bringing us only a few drops.
In the afternoon a thunder-storm, but only a few drops of rain.
No thunder-storm;
windy. (Libtako.) During the following night heavy thunder-storm, but no rain here. About 4 o'clock P.M. thunder-storm toward the S., but not a drop of rain. In the afternoon again thunderstorm without a drop of rain. Cool.
After 2 P.M. thunder-storm in the distance, the whole sky becoming gradually overcast.
From 5.15 P.M.
moderate rain till 8.30, and afterward a slight fall. Atmosphere refreshed. In the evening moderate rain.
At 2 P.M. considerable rain, with frequent interruptions, but no thunder-storm.
Sky in the morning very cloudy, but no rain.
Wind westerly; no rain.
At 7.40 A.M. a black thunderstorm gathering from the E., followed by moderate rain lasting till 10 o'clock.
Sky mostly overcast. About 5 P.M.
thunder-storm toward the N.W., then turned by the E. toward the S.
and reached us about 8 P.M. again from the W.; first moderate rain, afterward
very heavy, but not accompanied by wind continuing till li
o'clock at night. Fine. sunny day; no
rain.
Clear.
About 2 A.M. heavy
thunder-storm, followed by rain, lasting 7
o'clock.
Late in the evening
thunder-storm followed after midnight by moderate rain, at times interrupted.
At 6.30 A.M. a heavy thunder-storm gathering from E., followed by heavy rain,
lasting till noon. Sky did not clear up till near
sunset.
Clear.
Heavy dew at night,
fine morning, scarcely a cloud to be seen. At 9 o'clock P.M. a violent
thunderstorm with heavy
rain.
The sun broke
through the clouds about 7 A.M., and the day remained
sunset. 1 80

APPENDIX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Hour of the Day</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>Humidity</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Very fine day, but
the heat gradually oppressive; clouds gathering in the afternoon. At 9 o'clock P.M.
heavy gusts of wind and moderate rain
till morning.
At 2 P.M. thunderstorm in S.W.; about 9 P.M. violent thunder-storm with heavy
rain, lasting about 1 hour, followed by a second rain very slight, but lasting
till morning.
At 4.40 p.M.,
heavy shower lasting till 4.55. Clear.
In the evening thunder-storm with
heavy rain. No rain.
Clear.
Sky overcast.
7 P.M. a very violent thunder-storm with heavy gusts of wind and much rain.
No rain.
4 o'clock P.M. a thunder-storm from the E., with rain lasting about an hour, first violent, afterward becoming more moderate.
In the afternoon thunder-storm toward the S.
7 A.M. dark thun.
der-clouds gather.
ed from N, bringing a little rain,
No obsv'n. No obsv'n.
No obsv'n.
2 INo obsv'n.
3
and the electric matter not having been discharged a very sultry day followed.
The whole day thunder-storm toward the N. and W.
Past midnight a violent thunderstorm gathered, followed by moderate rain, and another fall of rain toward morning. At 4 o'clock P.M. a little rain.
Inthenighthunder-storm but no rain.
Clear but very warm. After 6 P.M. a heavy thunder-storm from E., with much wind, but moderate rain; the air not much refreshed. Warm sunny day.
A thunder-storm; heat-lightning without rain.
At noon a thunderstorm from the east. 12.45 a little rain. The rain clouds went from S. to W., then turned northward; in that direction much rain.
Morning cool; in the evening a thunder-storm without rain in our neighborhood.
In the evening the sky thickly overcast; thunder storm gathered only a few drops of rain, heavy gale.
8 P.M. a thunderstorm as in general from the E. 3.4 tolerably heavy rain, only three minutes. 4.35 P.M. a second thunderstorm.
Heat-lightning in the evening; heavy gale.
774
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hour of the rae of Rearks. ate. Hu e L Remarks. Date. Da.ay Real DRr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 7</td>
<td>No obsv'n.</td>
<td>In the evening thunderstorm with heavy clouds, but without rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Heavy westerly gale. (Timbiktu.)-In the evening thunderstorm from the N. ; violent rain from 8 to 8.30 P.M., then less severe till 11.5 ; afterward heavy gale. In the afternoon a little rain. Sky in the afternoon thickly overcast. Cloudy. 2.5 P.M. a little rain; afterward thunder-storm and considerable rain. The clouds driven about by a storm. Greater part cloudy. Tolerably clear. 2 P.M. very violent gale followed by considerable rain. Fine morning. Early in the morning heavy gale with a few drops of rain; air became cooler. Tolerably clear. At 7 o'clock P.M. a thunder-storm with moderate rain. Heavy gale. Clearer. Sunrise not clear; afterward windy. In the evening thunder-storm without rain. Sky not clear. About noon a gale arose. Toward morning a little rain; sky thickly overcast several times ram, especially in the afternoon; in the evening considerable rain. 1.30 P.M. heavy rain, but short. 8 P.M. another fall of rain, moderate, but lasting till 11 o'clock. No obsv'n. go obsv. No obsv'n. } Noobservvation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sunrise.
sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunrise.
1.30 P.M.
In the afternoon thunder-storm passed by toward the W. without bringing rain.
3.33 P.M. thunderstorm with heavy rain, lasting more than an hour.
Clear.
4 o'clock P.M. thunder-storm toward the N.
Overcast; at 4 P.M.
a thunder-storm from the N. with heavy gale, but only a few drops of rain.
Cloudy in the east.
In the afternoon cloudy.
Night cool; fine morning.
Cool night.
Very cold night. Clear cold morning.
Tolerably clear.
Very cold; heavy northerly gale. Month of December no rain; sky generally dull in the morning, only occasionally clear.
Cold.
Clear sky.
23
24 25 26 27 28
29
No obsv'n.

APPENDIX.

Hour of the Remarks. Date. Dt. Day. Fah. Ie rk. 0. Day. scn F Rh.ks

APPENDIX.

Hour of the Remarks. Date. Dt. Day. Fah. Ie rk. 0. Day. scn F Rh.ks

sunrise. sunset.
sunrise. sunset.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunrise. 2.0 P.M.
sunrise. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise. sunrise.
sunrise. sunset.
2.0 P.M.
sunset. sunrise.
2.30 P.M. sunset. sunrise.
Sky overcast; cleared up toward sunset.
Clear sky; cold.
A fine day. Both these days warmer at sunset than in the afternoon.
Very cold day. Not quite so cold. Sky overcast in the morning; about noon clear, then again overcast; thunder in the distance. Toward evening heat lightning; only a few drops of rain after midnight.
Very cold day. Not quite so cold. Sky overcast; very cold and cheerless. 2.30 P.M. a few drops of rain.
Clear.
Sky clear.
Sky clear. (Broke this day in reality my last thermometer.)
No observation. Cold and windy. Clear and cold. Clear. Not quite clear. In this month very few particular observations, but in general the mornings proved colder than those in January.
In the first days of March a very heavy gale in the forenoon.
In the morning clear, then overcast.
Clear.
Clear morning. Heavy northernly gale the whole day long, carrying much sand.
Clear.
Sky not clear. Overcast; the sun scarcely ever came forth. A few drops of rain.
Overcast. Windy, not clear. Heavy gale during the night. Cloudy. In the course of the day a very heavy gale arose.
Overcast; no wind; evening clear. Clear.
Clear in the forenoon, then dull. Overcast. Clear.
In the afternoon sky
dull.
Sky clear in the
morning.
Sky overcast with
clouds, a dropping continued during the whole of the morning. At 8j in the
evening moderate rain. A more regular rain at 11,
o'clock, lasting till 1 o'clock. After midnight, followed by a heavy tornado.
The dropping continued in the morning. Sky thickly overcast drops of rain falling
now
and then.
A warm sunny day. Dull sky. The sky the greater
part of the day

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.
Date. Remarks. IIDt. IRemarks.
1854.
Mar. 26
27
28
29 30 31
April
1 2
No obsv’n.
overcast; toward evening a little sunshine. About 11 o’clock at night some
dropping. Sky dull; some dropping the whole of the day. About 11 o’clock at
night a regular rain began to fall, lasting till about 2 o’clock in the morning. Dull
and cool; dropping continued the whole day long, and dark clouds had been
collecting about noon; a regular rain set in about 2 o’clock P.M., lasting till
5 o’clock.*
Between 1 and 2
o’clock in the morning a light rain lasted about an hour.
After sunrise the sky became clearer, and at 9 o’clock A.M. the sun burst forth;
heavy gale
all the day long. Day clear, but windy; not too warm. Sunny, but strong
gale blowing.
At times sunny, then
dull, rather windy.
Dull; a little dropping in the afternoon.
Clearer. About sunset a heavy gale
sprang up.
A warm day. Fine cool morning.
with the usual northerly gale; in the afternoon
quiet.
Warm day. Morning cool. Fresh wind. Very cool night. Warm day; nowind.
About sunset overcast.
Night not so cool.
About 1 o'clock P.M. heavy gust
of wind.
* All the people assured me that the preceding year the rain-fall about this time of
the year had been much more considerable. They generally reckon four rainy days
in March and three in April, and call this season the Nisn.

Warm. About 2 o'clock P.M. violent gusts of wind. A warm day.
About noon a southerl gale.
No oservation. The sun very troublesome.
Sky dull; windy. Night very warm.
Sky in the morning not clear.
Fine morning; day
very warm.
Very warm day. At
9.30 P.M. a light and short fall of rain followed by a
breeze.
The sky in the evening thickly overcast with clouds. Cloudy; the sun
burst forth about 3 o'clock P.M. All this time along the Niger a heavy dew in the
evening and during
the nig'ht A clear say. Aclearday. 3o'clock
P.M. thunder in the distance, toward the S. and S.E. 3.45 a regular rain, lasting 10
min. Round about us thunder and rain, lasting till evening. Ato o'clock P.M.
another light rain and dropping till
sunset.
Morning tolerably
clear. At 3 P.M.
clouds gathered in the east; thunder in that direction.
Gradually a storm ascended from the south like a battery, breaking forth with a
tremendous gust of wind. At7o'clock P.M. the thunder clouds returned from the
N., whither they had

APPENDIX.

H--urth.J.D in Deg
oomfeDeg. in h i Hour of the IOcule ofl Remarks.
Da. Fah. Fuh.
withdrawn, and a most violent shower of rain came down, lasting for an hour,
with unabated violence, then more moderate till 9 o'clock P.M. At 1 P.M.
temperature constantly between 1040 and 1080. Sky still overcast, the sun
bursting forth about 8 o'clock A.M. Evening clear. The whole day sky overcast,
the atmosphere about sunset very oppressive.
Sky dull. Sky still dull; in the
afternoon clearer. Day dull and cloudy, evening clear. A hot wind from the
desert in the afternoon.
Hazy and overcast
in the afternoon. Clear.
Clear in the morn.
ing; hot wind from the desert in the afternoon. About 1 P.M. temperature between
105' and 1080.
Strong northeaster.
13 wind, called
"erife."
Very cold morning. Cold morning. (Bamba.) - Sky
thickly overcast, a heavy rain toward the S., beyond the Niger. Gradual.
ly a heavy gale came up; rainy.
Even with us a few drops of rain fell. 9j o'clock A.M. a heavy shower lasting ii
minutes. The sun broke through thE clouds about
o'clock P.M.
Sky in the morning
tolerably clear, since noon over.
cast with clouds.
About 2 P.M. a light rain of short
duration. About 8 P.M. another thunder - storm arose, but passed by without rain,
only the thunderclaps being heard.
5 o'clock another thunder - storm with a powerful sand - storm, but
no ram.
Sky overcast. At
2 o'clock P.M. a light shower followed by a second.
On the southern side of the Niger a great deal more rain fell. Later in the
afternoon the sky became clearer, but the whole of the evening much heat-
lightning toward the N. and N.E. 2j P.M. a heavy thunder - storm rose from the
E., but passed by without rain, carr.ying with it an immense quantity of sand.
Warm day; a thunder-storm in A'ribinda.
Clear day. RainT. day; in the
earlier part of the day twice a little rain. At 330P.M.
a very heavy gale arose, but bringing us only sand.
ain in A'ribinda.
Theairbecame much
cooler. Several thunder-storms in the afternoon, the second approaching from the
N. at 6 o clock P.M. followed by a light fall of rainat 5, continuing, with a short
interruption, till 10 o'clock at night, and cooling the hot sandy soil. Cool and
fresh; fine
day.
Fine warm day. In the morning a
thunder-storm to-

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.
(1Hour oo the Day. Fh.o


1854. June
5
6 7 8
9,10
12 13
14 15 16
17 18
19 20 21
22
ward the W.; at 8 o'clock a heavy gale.
A clear day afterward windy. At 5 o'clock P.M. a thunder - storm arose, but
without rain near us. Very warm day. Exceedingly warm; in the evening heat-
lightning in every direction.
2.30 after midnight a thunder - storm rose, followed by light rain, lasting from
3.30 to 8.30 A.M. Then followed a heavy gale. Fine.
Cloudy in the afternoon i heat-lightning in the evening.
A thunder-storm gathered at 2 o'clock after midnight, accompanied by a heavy
gale, but no rain. Sky the
whole day hazy.
At 3 o'clock in the
morning a thunder - storm aproached from the
, but only a few
drops of rain fell. About 4 o'clock in
the morning a thunder - storm gathered, without thunder andlightning, but
considerable rain, lasting till 8.30. Fine.
About sunset a
threatening thun.
der-storm arose, but passed by without any rain.
In the night, how.
ever, tolerable rain without much
wind.
Fine.
Clear.
About 9 o'clockA.M.
the sun broke through the cloudy sky. In the evening heat-lightning; no rain.
A little cloudy; very
hot; heat-lightning in the evening.
Warm.
A little cooler. Cloudy; several times a few drops of rain, with thunder toward
the W.
3.30 P.M. a heavy thunder-storm approached, passed by toward the N., where
much
rain fell.
About 5 o'clock P.M.
a thunder-storm Gassed over our
eads withoutrain
but accompanied by a heavy gale of wind.

Clear and fine morning, about noon very warm, in the evening heatlightning. About 8 o'clock P.M. a thunder-storm without rain; after midnight a second, gathering from the S.W., with a little rain. Fine day; clouds and heat-lightning in the evening.

Clear morning; afterward very warm.

About 2 P.M. a storm gathered from the E., and brought a light rain of short continuance; returned afterward from the W., and approached with a heavy rain at 4.30 P.M., lasting half an hour.

Fine clear morning; no rain.

About 8 o'clock A.M. a strong gale. Clear.

Fine cool morning. About sunset a thunder-storm approached gradually from the E., but without rain.

3 P.M. rain, in the beginning lighter, then more considerable, coming

APPENDIX.

Date. Hour of the 1 Day. Remarks.

Date. Day. Fa. Day. F from the N. At 5 o'clock another heavy fall of rain, lasting about 20 minutes.

Clear.

Early in the morning a thunderstorm passed by without any rain. About sunset a thunder-storm from the E., accompanied by a light rain, lasting till late at night.

Clear.

A fine clear morning.

About 10 o'clock P.M. a thunderstorm, which had long been gathering, broke forth with heavy rain, which with less vehemence continued the whole night long, accompanied by a heavy gale.

About 10 o'clock thick clouds overcast the sky, but were scattered by a heavy gale. At 2.30 in the morning a heavy rain broke forth, not accompanied by thunder, lasting about 20 minutes. The sky thickly overcast in the morning, in the afternoon clear. About 6 o'clock in the morning a heavy thunder-storm gathered, breaking forth with a heavy rain at 6.30, lasting with equal violence till about E o'clock, then gently till 10.30.

The sky beautifully clear in the morning.

noon occasional.

Sky overcast with
clouds.
Clear. At 10 o'clock
in the evening thunder-storm gathered from the S.E., but brought us only moderate rain.
Clear.
5 o'clock in the morning a very black battery of thunder - clouds approached from the S.E., bringing a heavy tornado, but only a few drops of rain.
In the night, from
21st to 22d, a moderate rain.
Cool morning, great humidity. Clear.
In the morning heavy rain-clouds, but no rain. In the afternoon a thunder-storm gathered from the E., but the clouds were scattered. Clear.
3.30 P.M. a thunder-storm in the E., beyond the river.
Warm day. About 4 o'clock P.M. a heavy thunderstorm gathered from the W., but was scattered; then a second one from the N., with violent rain, lasting from 6.30 till 8 o'clock. After half an hour's respite another thunder-storm broke forth, with heavy wind and rain, the drooping continuing till near morning.
The sky overcast, the sun breaking through the clouds at 4 o'clock P.M.
At 9.30 P.M. a heavy thunder-storm arose, although it had been clear before, and a violent rain followed.
Sky the whole day overcast - cleared up in the afternoon.

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.
Hour of the f. o Day. Fah.
Date. Remarks.
1854. Aug. 1
2
3
4
5 6 7

In
Date. Hour of the I Doe 'o
Day. Fa. of
Clear.
Day dark and cloudy, the sun breaking through the clouds about noon.
Fine evening.
Drops of rain continued to fall the whole morning, the sun breaking through the clouds at 2.30 P.M.
8 o'clock A.M. the
sky thickly overcast; rainy. Rain set in at 8.45, continued with interruption; at 3.30 P.M. a very heavy shower, lasting half an hour with great violence, afterward more gentle. Day rainy. 4.50 P.M. a light rain. Lightning early in the morning, followed at 5.45 by a moderate rain without wind, lasting till 7.10; then single drops of rain. The sun broke through the clouds at noon; a fine afternoon. A fine day; no rain. Sky the whole day overcast; after 3 P.M. threatening thunder - clouds gathered, discharging a violent rain, lasting till 5 o'clock; then more moderate, but setting in with fresh violence at 6 and lasting till 7 o'clock. Dry. Clear in the morning, overcast at noon, and drops of rain. At 3 o'clock heavy thunder. cloudy but with. out rain. At 3.5 P.M. a thunder-storm, but only moderate rain, lasting half an hour. Clear. Dte, 1854. Aug. 1. 2. Remarks. The whole day sky overcast, but no rain. A few drops of rain in the morning; during the afternoon sunshine. Sky thickly overcast. The rain commenced at 6.30 A.M., lasting almost the whole of the day, at times light, at others violent. (Gando.) - In the course of the morning the sun broke through the clouds. In the afternoon rain with interruption; after sunset a heavy rain, lasting almost the whole of the night. The rain began toward morning with increased violence; a little rain in the course of the following night. A heavy rain in the
morning, lasting half an hour, then dropping till 9 A.M.; afterward the sun broke through the clouds. Tolerably clear in the morning, at times a few drops of rain, a thunder-storm in the afternoon; regular rain from 4 P.M. till 8 P.M. Tolerably clear; from 11.30 A.M. drops of rain till about 2 P.M. Afterward the sun broke through the clouds. The afternoon clear.

2 o'clock A.M. a heavy shower lasting till 4.30, then a little rain occasionally. At 3 o'clock P.M. a thunderstorm from N.W. with rain at intervals, more continuous from 4 o'clock P.M. till about sunset.

APPENDIX. -

Date. Hour of the io o Dt. Hour otte Ie o Re
Day. Fah. Day. mFah.ar.

About noon a thunder-storm in the distance; 1.50 P.M. a light rain till 3 o'clock; at 4 P.M. the sun broke through the clouds.

Sky cloudy. About 9 o'clock P.M. a few drops of rain, lightning and thunder.

Overcast. At 7 o'clock the sun broke forth, fine and genial. One o'clock P.M. a light shower of rain; from 2 to 4 o'clock another light shower.

Fine day. At sunset a thunderstorm gathered; at 8 o'clock P.M. a light rain; then repeatedly in the course of the night.

Rain in the morning till 7 o'clock A.M. Just after sunset a thunderstorm, with moderate rain; then at 9 o'clock a second one excessively violent, lasting about an hour and a half.

6.45 A.M. a light thunder-storm, with moderate rain, lasting till 8 o'clock, then the weather tolerably clear. At midnight a violent shower.

Day tolerably clear. 2 P.M. heavy rain.

In the evening violent thunderstorm, but without any rain.

In the night heavy rain lasting almost till morning. Dry.

At 4.30 P.M. heavy storm, little rain. Clear. In the afternoon and evening a thunder-storm, with much heat
lightning, but only a few drops of rain. At 11 o'clock P.M.
a heavy thunderstorm with heavy rain, but only of
short duration. Dry
In the latter part of
the night, toward morning, heavy rain; then after a little interruption another
shower
till 8.30 A.M.
At sunset a thunderstorm from the S.
passed by toward the W., bringing
us but little rain. Weather clear. At
10 P.M. thunderstorm with but little rain.
Cloudy. About 9
o'clock P.M. a
heavy shower.
In the evening heat-lightning in the
SW. - no rain. At 7 o'clock P.M.
rain of long continuance.
In the evening thunder-storm, but no
rain.
No rain.
In the evening heat-lightning; no rain. Thunder-storm, but
no rain, in the
evening.
Very warm day; in
the evening again
dry.
No rain.
Very fine morning. In the afternoon
heavy thunderclouds passed by with a few drops
of rain.
About 7 o'clock A.M.
a little dropping; afterward the dark clouds were scattered. About 9 o'clock P.M.
a thunder-storm gathered; only a few
drops of rain. Dry.
Heat - lightning in the evening.
Heat - lightning in the evening.
In the evening clou-

METEOROLOGICAL TABLE.
Hour of the IDeg. in
Day. al. of
Fah.
No obsv'n.
No observation.
12.30 P.M.
2.0 P.M.
2.0 P.M.
No obsv'n. 2.15 P.M.
2.0 P.M.
2.0 P.M.
No obsv'n. sunrise.
2.0 P.M.
2.0 P.M.
No obsv'n.
2.0 P.M. 1106
Remarks.
dy; heat - lightning. After 9 o'clock a thunderstorm gathered with a heavy gale, but little rain about 10 o'clock. Heat - lightning in the evening. Dry. No rain.
At 10 o'clock P.M. a heavy gale, followed by a tolerable fall of rain, lasting till 3 o'clock. No rain.
(Moriki.) - In the night from the 8th to 9th, heavy fall of dew, like rain. Nb observation.
(K6kawa.) - Rainclouds. Repeated thunder. Afewdropsofrain. Not clear. Warm day, with southerly wind. In the evening heatlightning toward the S. and S.E.
3.30 P.M. a tempest, with a sand-storm, a few drops of rain, more toward the N.E. A heavy gale. After sunset a heavy thunder - storm, but without rain. In the night a thunder - storm, with much lightning, and a heavy gale.
Date.
Hour of tho Dogl Ia Day. Fah.
2.0 P.M.
2.0 P.M. 2.30 P.M. No obsv'n. 2.15 P.M. 2.30 P.M. 1.45 P.M. No obsv'n. 2.30 P.1, 2.0 P.M.
sunrise. sunset. sunrise. 2.0 P.M.
sunrise. sunrise. 2.0 P.M.
2.30 P.M. 2.30 P.M. 2.30 P.M. sunset. sunrise. 2.30 P.11.
2.0 P.M. sunrise. sunset. sunrise. 1.0 P.M.
2.0 P.11. 2.30 P.M.
Remarks.
A hot day. Heatlightning in the evening.
2.30 P.M. a thunder-storm from N., passing to the V. Thunder and lightning, but no rain.
Heat-lightning in the evening.
From 4 o'clock till 7 o'clock A.M. a light rain with interruption, accompanied by a strong gale.
Early in the morning a light rain.
At noon a thunderstorm gathering; 12.30 P.M. a light rain; 4 P.M. another light rain.
(Kalala, near Bilma.) A little after midnight a heavy gale arose; 1.45 P.M. a little rain.
Warm day. Heavy gale in the night.
Very heavy sandstorm early in the morning.
A heavy gale.

--- INDEX ---

A'bare, tribe of Mfisgu, numbers of them captured for slave, ii. 405.
A'bbega, the freed Marghi lad, iii. 22. 'Abd-Allah, the learned Tawiti i. 318. 'Abd-Allithi, son of Fddive and brother of 'Othmfn, ill. 635; his children, 143, note; notice of his work, 138.
'Abd el Kdder, sultan of Bagirma, ii. 555. 'Abd el Kder organizes a religious revolution in FCita, iii. 681.
"Abd el Kfderi, sultan of A'gades, L 320; his investiture, 336; his letters, 346; his deposition and his confidence in me, iiL 137. Abils, mount of Air, i. 306. Abi Bakr el Waksahi, first acquaintance, L 382; his kindness to me in Kftsenaj 461.
A'bft el Hassan, governor of Timkala, interview with, iii. 539; his character and position, 541. A'b-Gher, village of Bagirmi, market, ii. 515, 666. A'damdwa, country of, a Mohammedan kingdom ingrafted upon a mixed stock of pagan tribes, ii. 12T, 189; character of, 191; a country for colonies, 15; different character of settlements, 191: itineraries passing through the districts of, L. 626.
Adansonia digitata, the most common tree through the whole breadth of Central Africa, i. 531, ii. 93; in Bigenha, iii. 703; colossal specimens, i. 531, ii. 112; different variety, iii. 66; peculiar domain, i. 449; the constant companion of human society, 451, ii. 221; on the Niger, iii. 524-52T; use of the leaves of, for vegetable soup, i. 433, ii. 57, 110, iii. 39, passim; use of the fruit for imparting an acid taste, ii. 10.

A'dar, governors of, iii. 636; country of, and towns, i. 599; limits of, iii. 121.


A'dar-n-hfuit island and its inhabitants, iii. 463. A'derdr, country of the Awelimmid, list of wells and pasture-grounds of, iii. 472, note.

A'der6r, district described, and Moorish tribes in, iii. 714.

A'dish6n, the Mugu prince, conduct of, toward his female slaves, ii. 347; his reception by the vizier, 359.

A'fadd, town and district, ii. 436, 5T1. A'faq6, town, ii. 338.

Afalessez, character of, arrival at the well, i. 223. African warfare, interesting incident in, iii. 462; cruelty of, il. 394.


VOL. III.-D D D

A'hmed bel Mejfib, Arab traveler, notice of, ii. 35. A'hmedu, Seko (Sheikh), ruler of Msina, his hostility toward me, iii. 312, 314, 341.

Ai grass, with prickly involucre, L 412. 'Ain Zira, described, i. 91; welcome reception in, on home-journey, iii. 629.

Air, or A'sben, ethnographical relations of, L 2T8; A ir not Ahir, 276, note. See A'sben.

Airi, the great salt caravan, its gathering, i. 392,
396; estimate of its numbers, 452; went formerly only as far as Kitsena, 46T.
A'jiri village, i. 553.
A'kanlbay, iron gates of, narrow passage in Niger, iii. 503.
A'la, Alia, B6rnu town and vicinity, ii. 323. Alairik village, ii. 246.
Atili-A'dia valley of Kdnem, ii. 303. Alam-6y, or AllamAy, Bornu town, i. 554, ii
586. AlamAibe, or AllAmAibe, village, hospitable treatment at, iii. 555.
Aldso, or Alissa, town of Bghena and its vicinity, iii- 699, 708.
'Aliyu, sultan of S6koto, first meeting with, iii. 105; his character, 117; sets out on
an expedition against the Gdberiwa 109; his proceedings, 122-124;
returnstoWuruZ, 136; interview with, 559; his justice, 563; farewell interview
with, 565.
Alkuttabu, chief of the Awelimmid, iii. 319, passim.
A'man Semmedn6 valley, sculpture and stone circles at, i. 181.
Aromas, "the islands and swampy grounds in the Niger," iii. 474.
A'nay town, in the valley of Kawdr, iW. 619. Ang Shia, see Ngila.
Anikimma, Tebu town, iii. 619. Anislimen, Meribetin or Tolba, peaceable tribes
of the K61-owi, i. 265 (compare 264, n.); of the Awelimmiden, iii. 722; of the
Tregeniten, 723; See Mer.betin.
A'nnur, chief of Tint6llust, sends us an escort, i. 26T; interview with him, 293;
his character, 293, 425; parting with, 425; visit him at his estate, 43T.
A'nnur karami, a relation of the former, i. 220; his lodgings at A'gades, 330. Ant-
hills of immense size, ii. 499; indicating the
neighborhood of a river, 163.
Antelope, different species, Bbalis. L 225, iii. 611; A. Addix, i. 5T6; A. Leucoryx,
403; bucklers made from its skin, 404; its meat, 408; A. Oryx, ii. 495, il 29; A.
Soemmeringii, L 576, iL 475; other species, 65.
Ants, serious attack of black, ii. 524; battle be.
tween red and white, 524; winged, 230; white on the Niger, iii. 438, note, 528;
northern limit of, i. 416, U1. 606; abundance of ants in Kftsen6, 84.
Arab or Moorish tribes of the western part of the
desert, list of, iii. 711.
Arabs, native Arabs, or Sh6wa, of B6rnu, and neighboring countries, ii. 88; early
settlements in Kinem, iL 652; chiefs of, 638; their intercourse with the Ftilbe, ill
254. Arama, see RumS.
Arborescent Euphorbiacese, ii. 429.
520; more solid architecture in former times, i. 577, ii. 518; Songhay and Hhusa architecture, iii. 526.
Ardkam valley described, i. 228. Asba moutainous district, iii. 707. A'sada, valley of Air, described, i. 308. A'sben, or Air, first view of, i. 236; nature of the country, 252; mountains of, 25T; forms of name, 258, n.
Asclepias gigantea, enormous specimens, i. 219, 264; usefulness of, 417; bears testimony to the fertility of the soil, 315; wide extent, 558 ii.
A'skih, Mohammed ben Abd Bakr, king of Songhay, his greatness, i. 256; his rise, reign, and death, 666–610. Compare i. 361. A'sodi, description of the town, i. 303. Asses, usual beasts of burden of Gëro travelers, iii. 187; compare 363; excellent breed in Air, i. 299; in Dar-Fur, il 96; in Mdsi, il 364, 202; plenty of, on the Niger, 411, 455. A'ssu town, ii. 567; not annie of river, 568. Aswfinek tribe, sections of, iii. 703. A'tar, town of A'derdr, iii. 715. Alantika mount, highest mountain of my route, il 164. Afidaghost notice of, i. 361; il 658, 059. Ailderasn, beautiful valley of Air, described, L. 311. A'ussa district, towns in, iii. 693. Afssa, general term for north bank of Niger, i. 471; ili. passin. Auy6k territory described, iii. 44. A'wb, chief of the Tin-ger-6gedesh, interview and religious discussion with, il 335; his account of Mungo Park, 940. Awelimmiden, origin, iii. 680; sections and families of, 720; peaceable tribes of, 722. Aydru, village and inhabitants, iii. 215. U, or Manatus, found in the BWhuwdi, ii. 193; in the Sluri, 473; in Lake D6bu, iii. 690; and in the Niger in general, 409. A'zawfid, district north of Timbuktu, and adjoining districts, notice of, iii. 684. A'zawfigh, district on the Niger, iii. 684. A'zemay, village on Niger, and its inhabitants, iii. 525.
Azkar, tribe of Im6shagb, historical notices of the, i. 198.
Babfiliyd town of Bagirmi, notice of, iL 693; condition of treaty with regard to, 637. Bdbir tribe, notice of the, iL 120. Bfichikitm, branch of Slultri, great breadth, ii. 678; upward, places along the, 678; downward from MWs-eTifi to Mfisgu, 086.
Badamrsni, or Gadabsni, fresh and natron lakes, lii. 64, 67; village described, 66.
Badanijo, village of A'damAwa, described, ii. 144. Badarfiwa, walled town of Zztnfara, with a considerable market, iii. 100.
Padda-badda, walled town of Kebbi, iii. 149. Baga, remarkable architecture described, iL 412.
Bigeld, mount of A'damhwa, ii. 175; hamlets of, 196, note.
Bighena, identity with part of the ancient Ghfinata, Arab tribes in, iii. 711; present state and historical notices of, 701. Baghzen mount, . 804, 398. Bagirmi, description of the natives ii. 486; females, 521; historical survey of, 54; when first mentioned, 623; general character of, 557-560; arms, language, and dress, 561; government, 562.
Bagma village described, ii. 133. BMhr el Ghazid, large valley east of Tsfid, described, ii. 609.
Bikada village and inhabitants, iM 481, 495. Bakfy, see Sheikh Sidi A'hem.
Balaniaes iEgyptiaeca, northern limit of, i. 227, 395., wide range over Negroland, 564; name in A'damLwa, iL 193; fruit of much value in Bdmu, 57; in Bagirmi, 560; bread made from the fruit of, 515; leaves used likewise, 492, 560; fine specimens on Niger, iii. 518, 521; in Timbktu, 322.
Bamba, or Kasbah, town on the Niger, and inhabitants, il. 442.
Bilinam and its inhabitants, ii. 689. Banana (Musa Parad siaro), i. 480; common in the southern provinces, 621, iL 193, ii. 143. Banfy village, iii. 263.
Banddgo village of A'dambwa, i. 572. Baobab, see Adansonia.
Bilrakat, town and inhabitants, i. 209; vicinity described, 210.
Baratilwa village, fine tamarind-trees near, iii. 62. Brea village of Mdsgu country, ii. 363. Bargu or Barba country, north of Ydruba, iii. 668. Barley cultivated on the Niger, iii. 442. Barno locality on Niger described, iii. 486. Barth, Dr., his previous travels in Barbary, vol. L p. vii ; course of his studies, ii. 167; volunteers to accompany Mr. Richardson in the exploration of Central Africa, vol. i. p. viii; joins the expedition at Tunis, 29; arrival at Tripoli, 39; residence at and excursions around, 40-89; journey across the desert, 90, seq.; residence at Mfrzuk, 150-156; departure from Mrzuk, 158; negotiation with Tawfurek chiefs, 164, 165; joins the caravan, 168; astray in the desert, 188-192; arrival at Ghdt, 193; departure for the open desert, 208; joins the Kdl-owi caravan, 212; reaches
the Tinlkum caravan, 232; alarms from Tawfirek freebooters, 238-255; attacked and pillaged by the Meribetin, 259-262; endangered by a desert torrent, 266; arrival of escort from Annur, 267; arrival at Tindllust 275; residence in Tindllust, 292-298; nocturnal attack, 295; journey to A'gades, 299-317; residence at A'gades, 317-460; interview with the sultan, 320; receives letters of protection, 846; residence in Tin-Tlggana, 879-388; religious conversation with Annur 385; joins the saltcaravan, 389; parting with Mr. Richardson, 425; interview with the governor of Ktseta, 456; theological discussion with Bel-Ghdت, 465; departure from Kfitensa, 480; residence in Kan6, 489-525; severe attack of fever, 492; audiences with the ghaladimas, and governor, 493-495; sets out from Kan6 alone, 525; joins the sherif 'Abd-el-Khafif, 530; interview with ghaladima 'Omnr, 555; enters Bdrnu, 561; news of Mr. Richardson's death, 562; visit to his grave, 52; interview with the governor of Dichli, 584; arrival at Kfkawa, 591; servants and debts of the mission, 592; interviews with the vizier, 593; amicable arrangements, 596; debts of the mission discharged, ii. 45; expedition to Lake Tsdd, 60-76; meeting with Mr. Overweg near

INDEX. 787
Kaltluwili, 80: departure from Kfkawa, 85; 'Beans, cultivation of, i. 54; iii. 35, passim. journey to Ydla, 87-178; interview with the Bean-tressels excellent food for camels, iii. 79; governor, 1A2; anxiety and sickness, 166; mls- B.chi town and neighborhood, i. 486. sion repulsed, 186; return from A'damwa to Bedinga and its inhabitants, ii. 681, 688. Kdkawa, 199-226; interview with the vizier, Bedde territory and its inhabitants described, ill. 38. 227; expedition to Kmnem, 248-316; joins a Bedstead, kind of, necessary for an African trayband of the Weird Slim'mn, 273; interview with eler, i. 429; curious bedsteads in A'gades, i. 350; the sheikh of that tribe, 277; camp taken, 805; Beehives, i. 485; underground, ill. 103. continued illness, 294-311; return to KdkawalBees, dangerous attack by, ii. 407. 816; accompanies the expedition against Mdn- BW-gfungu island, in the Niger, iii. 531. dar', 316-424; discussion on elavery with the Belinde village, ill. 593. vizier, 325-328; cut off from the army, 867-69; Belang, important town of Gurna ilL. 647. return to K61kawa, 423; journey to Bagirni, Bolem, residence of M'allem Delil, town and its 425-503; stopped at the Shri liver, 463; suc-inhabitants, ii. 154, 206. ceeds in crossing, 469; residence at M16 473; Bello, sultan, character, iii. 344; notice of his work, laid in irons, 500; proceeds to Mis-effi, 502; iii. 138. interview with the lieutenant-governor, 504; Bethssa, hnpportant town of M1ci, iii. 648. becomes a retail dealer, 511; arrival of letters Beni-Ulid, troublesome place, iii. 629. and supplies, 531; audience with the sultan, Bennanulba, orBendba, chief town of Gufma, mean535; departure from Mhs.efhi, 543; arrival at ing of name, iii. 646. Kdkawa, 573; treaty of commerce signed by Ben-n, camp where Park was kept a prisoner, iii. the sultan, 575; death of Mr. Overweg 578; 69T.
parting interview with tile Sheikh 'Omar, iii. Bentang-tree. See Silk cotton-tree. 19; departure for Timbfittu, 20; enters the Bnw6 iver, ii. 163, 200; the great arm of the Komfidugu of B6rmu, 27; reaches the moun- Kwlra, 167; period of rising and falling, 172;
tainous province of Mdniy6, 43; interview with its importance for the intercourse with the in the governor, 53; visit to the natron lake, 63; terior, 84, 32T, 329.
arrival of pecuniary supplies, 75; interview with Benzai, town of Manga, i. 543. the governor of Kftena, 83; discussion on po- Brabish (.ig. Berbflshi) tribe, sections of, in lygamy iwith 'Abd-e-Rahmun, 86; journey from A'zawdd, iii. 6ST; their hostility toward me, 331, Ktsena to Sdkoto, 88, seq.; interview with 839; chief of B6rabish murdered of Major Laing, 'Aliyu, 104, 139; letter of franchise, 108; resi- 336; death of his son, 342. dence in Wurn6, 110-139; arrival at Gando, Berber population, historical notices of, i. 194; li142; transactions with the sultan, 145, 146; un- centious manners of frontier tribes, 242 ; iii. 462. safe journey through Kebbi, 148-171; first sight! Bemib6ruwlA well of Msanga country, iii. 43. of the Niger, 171; El Walhti, specimen of a Bcri village and inhabitants, ii. 266; route to from Moorish character, 198; stay in Libtko, 200-Ngdgimi, 26T, note; former importance, 620, seq. 207; transactions with the Tawilrek, 285, 241; Belminkor6, Brmbara village, iii. 701. interview with the emir of Sarayinmo, 256: Beshdr villages and well near Kikawa, i. 590. embarks on a creek of the Niger, 259; interview:BetLA valley of WnVd i, principal villages along with Sidi Alawdte in Kibara, 277; arrival at the, ii. 6T1. Timbftku, 281; religious discussion with Sidi Bting district, character of the Niger in, iii. 508. Alawite, 304; attack of fever, 303-307; first'Bii el F-lammsh, well of Knen, iL 306. interview with Sheikh el Bak. ty, 809-311; Un- Birchi village, iii. 571. settled residence in Timbktu, 312, seq.; dan- Birmendwa town, i. 536, iii. 582. gerous situation, 831; interview and religious Birni, or Ghasr-6ggomo, the old capital of B--ru, discussion with A'witb, 335; his account of founded by whom, ii. 569; description of its .Mungo Park, 340; religious discussion with ruins, iii. 51. Sheikh el Bakdy, 343; discussion on the relation Birni town on Niger and - inhabitant-, iii. 530. of Christ and Mohammed, 349; on the prophets.. Bhmi-n-D6be, site of and forest scenery, iii. 159. "Who is a Moslim?" 384; forced to leave the Birni-n-Kebbi and its inhabitants, iii. 153, 550; town, 383; political meeting, 394; departure N.B. Other names beginning with the term Birni from Timbktu, 403; retrograde movement, 413; look for under the second part of the name. final departure, 432; enters the desert, 449; ar- Bitinkbe tribe, iii. 531. rival at G6g6, 479; parting with El Bakiy, 495; Bizfiggu town, iii. 574. travels along the southwesterl bank of the Ni- Blacksmiths of the Tawfnrek, i. 301; blacksmith's ger, 496-533; an alarming adventure, 529; workshop described, ii. 102. second residence in Say, 534; interview with the Boats on the Tsirl, ii. 65; on the Sliiri, 447, 450; governor, 534; arrival at Ttmkala and inter- of the Msgu, 391 ; on the BWnuw&. 169; on the view with the governor, 539; attack of dysentery Niger, ii. 172, 250, 523; represented in P1. 267. at Wurnd, 560; interviews with 'Aliyu, 558,564; 2T1. second residence in KanD, 537; pecuniary diffi- Bodinga town and market, iii. 55G. culties, 578; meeting with Mr. Vogel, 586; last B--ghel valley, its picturesque and rich character, residence in Kdkawan, 592; arrangements with 1. 314. Mr. Vogel, 593; attack of rheumatism, 596; dif- B6go village, ii. 362. culties and delays, 599; traverses the desert Bokhiri, governor of Khaddja, his expedition with a small Tebu caravan, 602-626; stopped by against Khadeja, his success, and what use he Arabs, 62S; arrival at Tripoli, 629; arrival
BokhAri, learned man of S-koto ill 635.
Bokh, or Bhrwual town and vicipi, iL 258, iL Bokhirl, a learned man of Gando, it. 146.
Bne village, iii. 235.
Basengiddi village, ill. 706. Bongesdmba village, on the Upper Niger, or DshfBasiksnnu town and inhabitants, iii. 694. liba, different quality of the water of the two Basik(mnn and Yfisalfme, list of places between, branches of the river at, iii. 691.
iii. 698. Books should be sent out to Central Africa, iii. 372; Bat-hm large valley and river of Wid4i, ii. 648, manuscript books in Bagirmi, ii. 506.
663, seq. Bdre town, iii. 68T.
Batta tribe in A'dam.wa, ii. 196. Brn, general character of history of, ii. 15; form
Bfiure, a species of fiens, large specimen, i. 314; of government, 26, 591; friends and instructors poorer specimens, iin. 63. in, 35-40.
Bafishi-trees, i. 432. Brnu, chronological table of events and list of Bfiya and its inhabitants, i. 640. kings of, ii. 581.

INDEX.
Brnu army, appearance of, ii. 348; detachments composing the cavalry of, in the expedition to M-ışgu, 638.
Bdrnu proper, boundaries of, i. 561. Bornu-Gungu, or Barnu-Gungu, island in the Niger, scenery round, ft. 497. Borz-ri, town of Brnu, fi. 37. Bse village and inhabitants, ill. 525. Bosebnggo village and inhabitants, iii. 189, 192. Bread of Magfiri6, i. 404; of balanites, ii, 515. idduma, islanders of the Tsdd identical with the Ydinf, ii. 64; their character, 64; their canoes, 66; Overweg's visit to their islands, 232. Bfïgari village, ii. 466; described, 479. Bfïgoma river, fii. 210. Bfigla well, iii. 696.
Bgomfin town on Shiri, Il. 477. Bulila, dynasty of, identical with Gasga, ii. 545; divisions of the, 676.
Bullock-iding, attempt at, i. 299; excellent bullocks in Air, 304, 427; the bullock the native beast of burden, ii. yas.in.
Bulls used by the ancient kings of Fezzikn for drawing their chariots, sculptures confirmatory of, i. 178.
Bnday mountain range, i. 303. Bindí town, i. 156, iii. 586. Bundfe village, dye-
pits at, ill. 192. Bne, Old and New, iii. 46. "Bne Ksyórde S'aid" village and
meaning of % name, iil 390.
Binka town and its inhabitants, iii. 96, 569. Bfij el Melha, a ruined castle, I. 3T.
Bdrgu or Burku, interesting country, il. 245, 613. Burre hamlet, rocky character of
the Niger near,
ill. 504.
Burrum, or Bahr of Ghazft stations along, ii. 611. Bfssumo town, ii. 648. Butter,
fresh, not to be got in B61mu, nor in Negroland in general i 580, iii. 100.
Butter-tree, Bassel butyracea (kadena, t6so), in
Kitsena, 1. 480, 482, iii. 90; A'damawa, ii. 109, 123, 143; in great numbers on
Niger, %i. 263,
527.
Bfiwa tribe, divisions, i. 680. Bdwa-Dasl tribe, ii. 693. B gu, nourishing grass in
Niger, il1. 439, 441;
honey prepared from, 440.
Caill6, RBn6, the traveler, ii. 265, 310. Camel, the, not indigenous in Africa, i. 179; prices
of, in B6rnu, li. 58; camels of B6rnu, 369. Camel races, L 270.
Canoes on the Bünuw6, ii. 168; see Boats. Capparis sodata, uses of, i. 247; wide
extent of,
247, 263, ill. 405, 434, 504; in the Burrum, iL
612; berries of, i. 247, iii. 436.
Caravan trade of Timbftiku with Morocco, 866. Caravans avoid the villages
bordering the desert,
1. 118.
Castle of the Prophetess, a Roman ruin at El Jem,
i. 31.
Cattle, horned, Indigenous or imported, ii. 402;
introduced into many districts by the Ffilbe. Champag6re, town and residence of
Galaijo, described ii 180.
Champal wel town, il. 186. Cher~ka mount, i. 302. Chif6wa town described, i.
545. Chlre described, i. 683. Civilization, false, its influence in furthering the
slave trade, ii. 326; of Negroland, only means
of, 501.
Clapperton, Captain, probable cause of his death,
iii. 131; his great merit as a traveler, 125.
Clay the chief food of the Dingdlng tribe, 1. 647;
clay-houses, insecurity of, ii. 520.
Cocks used in deciding lawsuits by wager of battle, ii. 21T.
Commerce of Lbtiko, ill. 201; of Timbftiku, 675,
357; of Kan6, i. 50D, seq.; of Kkawa, 307,
seq.; of W Vfidy, ii. 65D.
Corchorus olitorius, common vegetable in A'gades, i. 823; in B6rnu, iii. 64; in
Bagirmi, i. 541; in the desert, iii. 615.
Costume of D6mm0 chiefs, ii. 381. Cotton cultivated from Bagirmi to Timbuktu, Preface, p. xv.; best cotton near lakes and rivers, IL 333; in Bagirmi cultivated in ridges, 489; chiefly cultivated by P6rnu people, 559; the wealth of Dikowa, 330, 430; on Niger, iii. 529, 531; the staple in market of Badariwa, 100; cotton extensively manufactured in Kan6, L 510; from tse 11th century in Sills, iii. 865; celebrated in Kor6rofa, i. 621; in Kong, iii. 646; in ZUgba, 691.

Cotton-fields, general neglected appearance, ii. 382; well kept, ii. 95. Cotton-strips as money, ii. 55; in the country towns of B6rni, i. 568; in A'damilwa, ii. 151; in Bagirmi, 511; in Libtfk, iii. 203; in Isay6, 229. Croton tiglium in Bagirmi, I. 560. Urowe, Mr., H. M.'s consul-general in Tripoli, L 89, 495.

Cotton-fields, general neglected appearance, ii. 382; well kept, ii. 95. Cotton-strips as money, ii. 55; in the country towns of B6rni, i. 568; in A'damilwa, ii. 151; in Bagirmi, 511; in Libtfk, iii. 203; in Isay6, 229. Croton tiglium in Bagirmi, I. 560. Urowe, Mr., H. M.'s consul-general in Tripoli, L 89, 495.

Crystallized tubes, iii. 610. Cucurbita lagenaria, ii. 142, 323. Cucurbita Meloppo, i. 401; in general use for seasoning the food, 341, iii. 348. Cultivation of tWne different species of corn in various districts greatly varying, i. 143, 192. Currency, defection in Kkawa, ii. 55; very varying in different districts, difficult to know beforehand, if!. 196.

Cyperus esculentus, ii. 105, 427; porridge of, 142. Dmbuwa village, il. 430. Ditglel village, residence of Othmn the Reformer, iii. 125.

Dfiikkwa, meaning of the term, i. 430. Dalla town, iii. 687.

dalla province, iii. 218. Dnimaral, ancient capital of 136, ii. 593. DAmbedA village iii. 7. Damerghd, corn-felds, 1. 413; animals and vegetation of, 416; list of villages, 421; origin of the name, 420.

Dan-Fwa, town and inhabitants, iii. 568. Dankania, site of, i. 450. Dan-Shulmrna district, towns and villages in. Ill. 566, note.

Dan-Shfiurn, walled town, ill. 565. Darghol and its inhabitants, iii. 524, 768. Dfirmagwi village, i. 559. Darroro town, L 618. Dafra, eldest state of 16usa, 1. 472; province of, 611; character of governor, iii. 76.

Dates of A'sben, L 252; Kan6, 524; of Tawft, species of, il. 846 note; of Bambe, 443. Date palms in A'sben, J. 252, 262; in Tafiwa, 439; in Kan6, 524; in A'dam:ia, ii. 193; in Log6n, 438, 450; in Kinem, 800, 307; in Bagirmi, 683; in Timbftktu, ili. 322; In Bamba, 443; in G6g6 473; loaded with fruit, 555; palm.

bushes, 523, 580. Dilway village, iUl 590. Dawerghfi described, ii. 246. Day, islands of, in the Niger, iii. 269. DWbe, site of, ill. 547. D6bu lake, its shallow character, iL 687; ayt or manatus found in, 690. Dffowa town, i. 53. Dekir well, iii. 65.

Del~b palms, i. 449, iM 136; the fruit and its uses, 138; wide range of this palm, 862, 397, 405, 442, 450, 493, 525, 560, iii. 89, 579, 581, 1)assir.

D-mmo village and scenery, IL 379; pagan priests
and chiefs, 381.

IND
Denham, Major, his adventures in MAndar, ii. 320; his want of accuracy, iii. 125.
Deris, a dwelling-place of the "White Arabs," iii. 708.
Desert, journey across, i. 1TI, seq.; highest mountain pass in, iii. 505; torrent, effects of, 551; heart of the, i. 222, iUl 609; extent of rain into the desert, 614.
Desert near Timbaktu, residence in, iii. 315. D6shi hamlet and inhabitants, iii. 219. Devil's dance at Tegelel, i. 424. Diggera and vicinity, ii. 341. Diggera, a tribe of Tawdrek, formerly of wide extent, now reduced, i. 472, ii. 594, iii. 19, 51.
Dik town, iii. 689. * Dirma province, il. 290. Dirki town, iii. 614; historical notice of, ii. 595. Dodfe, worship of, L 424. Dod6wa cakes, L 414,433; an important article of trade with S6koto, il. 98.
Ddgo, southernmost village of Bagirmil described, ii. 682.
Digo village, near Say, iii. 533. Ddgo-n-d-tji town, ii. 555. Domestic slavery in Negroland, i. 527. Dondri town, iii. 42.
D6rechief town ofLibtiko,iii.200; market,201-204. Dor6wa (Parkia), chief tree in the provinces of Kilitsena and Ziriya, iii. 89, paessi. D-nnia town and inhabitants, iii. 629. Dfichi district described, i. 584. Dfichi town described, iiL 99, 569. Dfim palm, exclusive region near Zurrikulo, i. 558; wide range of over Negroland; in Air, 262, 308; near Y6, ii. 250i in Log6n, 442; Gazzlwa, . 439, iii. 80; in Foghaa 162; in M:uri, 647; on the Niger, 406, 518, 521, 526, 528, 620; use of the fruits of in Say, 525; in Tamkala, 538; the kernel, ii. 54, 253.
Duncan, his route from Baffo to Adafudia full of errors, iiL 644.
Dunki-tree leaves used as vegetable, il 532. Ddnu village described, i. 566.
Dyeing, the art of, imparts to several regions of Negroland a certain tincture of civilization, i. 444; superiority of in Kane, 512; in tUj6, ii. 95; in Bagirmi, 488; in Zinfara, il. 98, 570. Dwentsa town, iii. 687. Dirregu, the freed Husa boy, iii. 23, passim.
Ebn Batfita's Travels, L 365; mentions Edris as King of Børnu, i. 22.
E'deri and its caverns, i. 138. Edible wild fruits, ii. 104, 109; edible poas, see
Poa; edible productions, 142.
Edris Alaw6ma, greatest king of B6rnu, il. 593; expeditions of from B6rnu to Kinen, 617.
E'tadaye, lawless tribe, i. 28T; their strength, 3S3. Eg6, fertile valley, described, il. 612. E ger, valley of, i. 219. Eghell mount and village, i. 303; valley, 304.
Egyptians, ancient, probable intercourse of the Songhay with, iii. 293, 464.
El Giblah and Shemmimah described, and Moorish tribes in, iii. 715. El Hiha district and tribes, iii 717. El Hank district described, iii. 718. El Hasi, the well at the foot of the Hamnida, L 130.
El Hdhdh district described, and Moorish tribes in, il. T12.
EX. 789
El Jem, Roman remains at, i. 31. El Jef district described, iii. 718. Elkeb, singular monuments on the plain of, L 71. El Khwin described, i. 29. El Medaina, a ruined Roman station, i. 36. El Walhiti, his character and appearance, iii. 198; his knavery, 240, et passim; final separation from, 356.
El War, or Temmi, well, iii. 623. Elephants, frequent in A'dAmfiwa, il. 193; herd of, going to water, 262; predominant in M(isgua, 345, 346, 350; in Gurma, Lii. 192. Em-n-kiris headland, camping-ground at, iii. 437. Encampment, Arab, private life in, iiL 328; of Tawfirek represented, 423. L English house” at Kukawa, ii. 45. English hill near Tin-tellust, i. 275. Eritaffni (Ghatafdn, compare Ebn Khaldin, trans. by De Slane, L 38), camp of the, iL 519. E'razar valley, i. 263. E'rgshesh, district described, il. 718. Ern~sse camping-ground described, iii. 426. Euphorbil, poisonous, i. 411, iiL 405. European goods brought to Kian6, L 517; to Tmbciktu, iii. 336.
Europeans, in what little esteem held by some people, iii. 402. Exogyra Overwegi found near Wadi Tagije, i. 116. Fdki el Bahr, most learned man in WAdhii ii. 662. Fhki S.imbo, a very learned Pllo at Mfise58, il.
506. FlilalM, village and costume, iUL 645. Fall tribe in Finbinil, ii. 196. Finyakangwa town, iii. 584. Farara described, i. 422. Fdro river, ii. 171, 200. Fatilwel, great ivory market, ii. 346. Female chiefs and sovereigns in Bdrnu, il. 593; of the Welid R~ishid, 655. Female infidelity rare among the nobler tribes of
the Tawdrek, iL 425; female head-dress in Bagirm, i. 470; in Kand, i. 497. Female apparel in general in Negroland, i. 440; in Mfisgu, ii 406; in Songhay, iUi 481. Fdnorang valley, i. 239. Ferdn-mangha, explanation of the title, ill 292, note.

Ferry-boats made of calabashes, L 581, iii. 34. Festival of the 'Aid el Kebir in A'gades, i. 336; of the Fotr at Khskawa, ii. 237; in Kane, ib.; in AMseffi, 532; in Timbsktu, iii. 352; in Ya'ghi, 197.

Ficlus, very large specimens, . 314, iiL 42T. Filiyo village and its inhabitants, ill. 214. Fire-arms, their influence in furthering the slave trade, ii 327; numerous in Blrnu in the second half of the sixteenth century, 593.

Firki-ground, a peculiar kind of soil, i. 58W, ii. 88, passim.

Fish very plentiful in Mfisgu, iL 408, 411; different species found in Niger, iL 54; dried fish, an important article of commerce in Bdnru, iL 247; value of, as a medium of commerce at A'shenifima. iii. 618.

Fittri, the "lake" of the Kak, more considerable places around, i. 675; the districts mentioned, 621, 633.

Fleas in Kfikawa, ii. 4S; in Tmkala, iii. 539. F6det valley, mountain scenery, L 269. F6gha valley, iiL 162; mode of preparing salt, 164; character of the people, 165; separation between the Hfiusa and Soughay races, 166. French, excitement caused at Timbktu by their movements in the north, ill 415-421. Fugfib6 Kdbber, village of the, iL 288. Ffilbe of MindarfA ii. 353; degenerate Filbe, 113; their intelligence and veracity, 132; first appearance in B6rnu, 592, 595; immigration into Bagirms, 549; facilitated by the Shfiwa 503; history of, and growth of their power in Skoto ill. 112; tribes of, 113, note; their important

790

INDEX.

mission, 331; along Upper Niger, 679; their policy in Timbskftu, 394; tribes in S6koto, 636; F be inhabiting suburbs of larger towns, ii. 322, ini. 555; their way of preparing butter, i. 580.

Ffilbe huts figured, il 223. Filbe of A'damfiwa, their famous expedition to the far South, ii. 204.

Fumbinh, extent of, ii. 191; described, 192; various tribes, 196-198.

Funeral Dance, at l'ige, ii. 216. Furi village, iii. 649. Fura, favorite drink, mode of drinking, L 331. Futa country, chief divisions of, iii. 710.

Gibatfi, sacred site of, iii. 60. Gfibberi and its inhabitants, ii. 687. Gfi-bero, description of the tribe, iL 484; their hospitality, 485; divisions of the tribe, 485, note.

GA-bibi tribe, iii. 497. Gabdre hamlet, iii. 580. Gagliuffi, Mr., British Agent at Mtrzuk, i. 151, 15T, 541.
Gakoira town, site of, iii. 265. Galula village and water-course, iii. 709. Gimerghu district, iL 92; tribe nearly related to the Mkindard, 93.

Gando empire, climate and extent of the, iii 147; rulers of, 635.

Gando town described, iii. 143, 566; average rainfall in, 554.

Gaogo, kingdom of the, ii. 544; reason of its power, 557.

Gfirbo village, iii. 168, 544. Gfireji village, i. 543. Gfisgarb, iron used in Bagirmi obtained from, ii. 682.


Gdwasu village, interview with the sultan of Sokoto, iii. 104.


Ghadmes, inhabitants of, great merchants, settled in Kfitsena, i. 462; Kan6, 500, 503; Timbuktu, iii. 326 676, 366.

Ghaladima 'Omfr, interview with, i. 554. Ghfimaru, brick ruins of, i. 57; favorite residence of the former kings of B6ru, ii. 634.

Ghfinia, or Ghanata, kingdom, historical notices of, iii. 657, 660.

Ghariyo el gharbiya, Roman gateway at, i. 120; and Arab tower, 122.

Ghariya e' sherkiya, i 125. Ghasr-6ggomo, former capital of B6ru (see Birni), ruins of described, iii. 29.

Ghfit, arrival at, i. 198; description of, 204. Ghtrgo, Songhay town on the Niger, and inhabitants, iii. 438.

Ghurdin and its villages, i. 60-64; hatred against the Turks, 63; subterranean dwellings, ib. Gida-n-Alla village, iii. 580. Giraffe, home of the, i. 403; rare in the populous districts, in Mfisgu, ii. 91, 346; frequent on the Niger, iIL 468, 440.

Gilmirim, wells of, i. 427. Giber, princes of, iii. 634; connection of the noblest family with the Copts, i. 277; the G6berdwa, once masters of A'sben, ib. G5gd, Gigho, or G’ao, capital of the Songhay empire, noticed, iii. 658, 659, 660; conquered by the Awelimmid, 682; town and inhabitants described, 479; survey of the Niger, 493.

Gold, the chief commercial staple of Timbuktu iii.
359; import of gold into Kan6, i. 522; gold trade in former times in Kfikia, iii. 645, 660; gold found in Bdnud, ii. 109; rivers containing gold, iii. 646.

Gdna, locality on the Niger, ill. 496. Gonda-trees (Erica Papaya) i. 432, 482, 646, ii. 152, 330, iii. 555; fruit of, i. 463, ii. 151, passim; wild Gonda bush, i. 486, ii. 97, iii. 553; its delicious fruit, i. 119.

Gongungo village, iii. 193. Gdnja (country of the k6la-put), routes to, iii. 646; trade to, 364.

Goreba fruit (see Dfim palm), L 432. Gdrebi torrent, iii. 186. Gorgom town, iii. 79.

Gdsuwa down, i. 543.

Gdte district, iii. 526.

Government: a feudal form spread from Aielle over great part of Negroland, iii. 662; in Bdnru, eclectic, with a very strong aristocratic element, ii. 27; in Fillbe states more republican, 9; of Bagi rmi, 562; of Wfiddi, 653; in Songhay, more despotical, iii. 288.

Gozenfikko village and its inhabitants, i. 432. Grain, different prices of, ii. 56, iii. 561. Granaries, tower-like, iii. 229; granaries or cornstacks as usual in Negroland, i. 416, 426; in the Manga country, iii. 36.

Ground-nuts, an essential article of native food, and important article of export trade, ii. 142, 4T9; in Bagirmi, in general cultivated to a small extent, 193, 558, passim; cultivated between the corn, 143.

Guinea-worm disease, i. 231; produced by drinking stagnant water, ii. 224; not met with in women, ib.

Gdlbi, general meaning, ii. 451. Gfilbi-n-Ldkoto swamps, iii. 549, Gfilumb6, walled town, iL 151, 551. Gumda village, iL 79.

Gfimmel, town, its commercial importance and its inhabitants, i. 536; its state of decay, iii. 582. Gfimrek, lake, i. 412.

G(Indam town described, iii. 687. GhIndumi wilderness, passage through, iii. 103. Gfiram town, iii. 690.

Gurhra river, Lander's Rfi, i. 612. Gfiri and inhabitants, iii. 698.

Gurman, hilly country of, iL 179; colonized by the Songhay, 184; province and inhabitants of, 643; their connection with the Tombo, b.

Gfiro-nuts, a commercial staple of Timbktu, ill. 362; their import into Kan6, i. 514; conditions of the trade in, ib.
Gfishi territory, villages in, iWi. 64. Gwanin el Kohol, section of the Berabish, notice of the, iii. 385.
GwAsem, Roman sepulchre near, i. 95.
Hadddda, peculiar tribe in Khnem, account of, ii. 608.
Hdj Beshir, biographical notice of, ii. 40; end of his career, 605; policy with regard to the pagan tribes, 398, 419.
HAj Mohammed A'skid, iii. 286. See A'skii. liamda-Allfhi, capital of empire of Mfisina, iii. 321, 689, passim.
Hfimiien, warm springs of, described, ii. 668. Hamma, son-in-law to Annur, i. 298, 342; parting with, 402.
HammAda, description of the, i. 127-133; meaning of the term, 132.

INDEX. 791
Hfin'dari village, iii. 71. passim; their dread of mentioning the name of tiusa, historical notices of, i. 4”0; intelligence their deceased father, 416; encampments of the of race and general character, 535; character tribes settled on the Niger, 422; tile great southand importance of language, passim; its rela- westerly group of, 719; the I'm.,iaghgs representation to the Berber, 471, n.; nobleman and reti- ed on the Egyptian monuments, 724.
Hai, iii. 543. Indigo, first appearance of plant, i. 394; way of Hatita, chief of the A'zkdr, arrival of, i. 162; his raising, in Bagirmi, ii. 494; in Wd-i, 061; culdealings, 171; sketch of, on his camel, 173. tivated to great extent, iii. 141, passim.
Hallff, Khnemma chief, ii. 290, seq. Inscriptions, Roman, in Ghdriya, i. 123; Berber,
Haw-n-fidak, an encampment, iii. 241. 146, 233, pasoun ; Rock, ii. 139.
Hay, method of storing, in the Misgu country, ii. i'regenaten, subdivisions of, iii. 723; peaceable
355. tribes of, 723.
Headdress of females in Bagirmi, ii. 470; in KA- Iron, best iron in Bibanjidda, ii. 102, 195; good
no, i. 497; in Kfikawa, ii. 59; in Belfrigo, 53; quality in Mia ndard, 216, but indifferent in Kand,
curious ornaments of, in LibtAko, iii. 204. i. 522; in Bagirmi, 682; in Wdflwi, 661.
Hendi-kiri, camping-ground near, on the Niger, Irrigation by I.imbona or khattatir, i. 263, 480; ii.
Hereditaments with some African tribes descend I'sa, Scighsy name of the Niger, iii. 268
from the possessor to his sister's son, i. 280; I'sa-bdre, the principal branch of the I'sa, towns probable foundation of the custom, 281. and villages along the bank of the, from Dire to
Hibiscus esculentus, ii. 246, 544; in general use Sansindil iii. 689; towns and villages on the
in Bagirmi, 559. southeastern branch between Mdbti and Jenin,
Hillet 'Sheikl Sidi el Mukhtdr, a celebrated place of worship, i. 607, iii. 309. I'say6 village, tower-like granaries, iii. 228; in Hogaир, or Hagara, account of the, i. 605. habitants, 229; deserted at a later period, 369.
Holcus eernuus, cultivated to great extent in B6r- I'sge district of Marghi, ii. 111; village and its innu, i. 588, ii. 88; different varieties of, found in habitants, 141; hut and costume, 215; funeral different districts, 192; sorghum, the general dance, 216.
grain in Bdrnu, 220; h. saccharatus, in south. Islamism, struggle between, and paganism, i. 450; em provinces of Mrnu, in Msgu, ii. 339; the when introduced into Central Negroland, 474; red species in MAsgu, 354. into K.inem, ii. 23, 512; into Logdn, 455; into H6mbori mountain range figured, iii. 226; de- Bagirmi, 550; into W-dfij, 643; into Songhay, scribed, 228. 283, 659.
Hdmbori town, route to, iii. 220, note. Itisan, historical notices of, i. 28S; subdivisions of,
Horses, indifferent, in A'gades, i. 316; fine in Da- 290.
merghii, 418; Bdrnu horses, their excellence, ii.
58, 242; exposed to all changes of weather, Jacob, Jew servant to Denham and Clapperton, i. 31.
156; barbarous MCisgu mode of securing seat on, Jafarabe, group of islands in Upper Niger, import374; fine race of, in Libtiko, iii. 205; of Tawfi- ant for commercial intercourse, ill. 327, 691.
rek, on Niger, 240, 241; numerous in Saraymo, Jawira, Park's Jarra, former capital of Melle, iii.
255, 258; indifferent in Timbiktu, 386; of the 698.
Songhay, 473; value of, in the desert, 621. Jebel Manterfiss, ascent of, i. 59.
House, in Kan6, plan of, i. 509; in Khkawa, plan Jebel Msid, ascent of, i. 70.
of, ii. 46; in Timbiktu, plan of, iii. 307; houses J(ga, important town of Kebbi, commerce of, iii.
in A'gades, i. 350, 352. 1 147, 551.
Hfilluf, Logdn town, famed for sorcery, ii. 440. Jehaya valley, or well, iii. 621.
Huts, general character of, i. 415; huts called ban- Jeur village and habitants, iii. 70.
go or bongo, 440, ii. 97, 119; hut in Mfibi, 211; Jerma, old, described, i. 144;
Roman sepulchre,
various species of, in B6rnu, 226; of Shftwa, 90; 146; new, 146.
of Marghi, 105; of Mhsgu, 416; see Architect-Jibill village and mountains, iii.
707.
ure; in Ygha, iUi 195; of nomadic Fdlbe fig- Jidder, ruined hamlet, fine crops, iii.
537.
ured, 223; of Flbe in Bagirmi, iL 503; in Song- Jimb lla district on Niger, towns
in, iii. 692.
hay, iii. 226, 228. Jingeri village, iii. 590.
Jinni, or Jenni, founded, iii. 659; adopts Islfim, bawfijiten, notice of the tribe, iii.
473. 660; subject to Melle, 661; conquered by Sonni
I'bo tribe, notice of, i. 647.
I'dinen, mount, the holy and dreaded mountain of Jinninau valley, magnetic iron-
stone near, i. 245.
the A'zkfir, i. 186; visited, 188; led astray on Judicial decision among the Marghi
by cock-fight.
return from, 190. ing, ii. 216.
I'ggeba well, iii. 620. Jiiggurh territory, iii. 156.
Igdmaren, encampment at, on the Niger, iii. 455. J-ju district, hamlets in, iii. 561,
note. Ikadsimmelrang valley, singular formations in, i.
234. Kfbara town and inhabitants, iW. 273-277, 321;
IkAnnu and Gindam, list of places between, iii. 694. special governor in former
times, 289; passage Ik-izkezan, general character of tribe, i. 282; a wrongly
understood, ii. 590,
freebooter, 418. KAbowa village, i. 568.
Uidri, large town ofYdruba, i. 540. Kfda-mdrga village, ii. 502.
Imeggdile6 district, iii. 240. Kadammdlet mount, i. 257, 258.
Imghdd, meaning of the term, L 202; historical Kadfnia river, i. 612, 613.
notices of the, of the A'zkdr, 202; of the valleys Kagzs, well of, iii. 26.
round A'gades, 314; of the I'regenditen, iii. 720; Kfrali village, ii. 369.
of the Awelimmiden, 721. Kfkarfi town, iii. 768.
I'mmanang district, iii. 642. Rfla, westernmost town of territory of Logan, ii.
Immenin valley, threatened attack in, i. 253. 439.
I'mshah, or Tawdrek, sections and families of KAlN, considerable Bimbara
town, former import.
the A zkfir, i. 198; origin and antiquity of the ance, iii. 662, 697.
name, 202; of the KA-owi, 282; of the K6i-gerds Kalfla Tebu village, mode of
preparing salt at, ii.
and Itisan, 290; their encampments, 408; the 613.
Sakomdren, 605; of the Hogdr, 606; their cus- Klemri Bdrnu village, in its state of
welfare, L
toms, how changed by their settlement on the 558; half deserted, iii 558.
Niger, iii. 410; their way of covering the mouth, Kalikgori village, ii. 247.
KaliluwA village, near Kfikawa, first arrival at, i. Kebbi, province of, iii. 148; form of name, 122; 590; encampment in, on setting out for Tim- note; partition of, between Sdkoto and Gando, bitktu, iii. 23. 637; fertile but swampy valleys, 551; former

Kdlina village, school at, ii. 222. 591; importance of, 548; dynasty of Kantal 158, 670; Kalliyl town, on the valley of Fgha, notice of number of walled towns in, 151; bravery of inhabitants, iil 165, 545. 42. Kechidfiniy village, iii. 42. Kdowa village described, i. 564. Keghmma, former dignity in B6rnu, ii. 591. Kdmbas, walled town of Kebbi, iii. 149; speci-Keghmmma, in Kfnem, ii. 3. mens of civil strife, ib. Keli antelope, notice of, ii. 65.

Kimman6 town of Zfinfara and inhabitants, 569. K61, meaning of the word, i. 204, 278. Kinem, the original portion of the Bdrnu Empire, K61 e' Sik tribe, whence named, ii. 458; their ii. 21, 550; power of, 588; when given up to the peculiar character, 468; subdivisions of, 722.

Bulfla, 587; reconquered, 590; most important Kelno district, rich in natron, described, iii. 63; indigenous tribes of, 29; general character of, K l-fad&$, their former nobility, i. 28T. 256; Bdrnti white shirts the medium of com- KOl-gers, historical notices of, i. 286; subdivimerce in, 283; account of the eastern parts of, sious of, 290. 607; Imanm Ahmed's account of, 617. Kel-i-Nokander, notice of the, iii. 406; second Khnemb6, their superior appearance in compari- residence with them, 42T. son with the Kanfiri, iii. 005; settled on shores Kel-owi, historical notices of, i. 2T8; rule of sucof the Tsfd, ii. 6T; cattle-breeders, 71; their cession, 280; their degraded character, 281; original native attire, 68; manner of protecting sections of the tribe, 282; hostility against the their heads from rain, 210; huts figured, iii. 603. K61-ger-ss, 289, 316; expedition against the WeKan6 and its inhabitants, i. 4S9; ground plan of lId bliman, ii. 274. town.495; quarters of, 107; history of, 504,611; Kennilye, tribe of, in Kinem, ii. 31, 32, 634. not identical with Ghfnna, 505; population, 509; Kendiji island, wild scenery of the Niger at, iHL commerce, 510; revenues and administration of 516.

the province, 522; chief places in the province, Kenga Mataya described, ii. 681, 689. 609; second residence in, UL. 573; climate unfa- Rhalifa, valley and villages, 1. 49-51. vorable to Europeans, 374. Khalilu, sultan of Gando, character of, il. 143.

Kan6 to A'lanoy, route by way ofKhadja, L 557, 553; extent of his empire, 147. note. Khat, fertile valley in the western desert, iii.
Kanta, fights the King of Brnu, ii. 590; dynasty 705. of, in Kebbi, ill. 153; vanquishes the King of Khat e’ Dem, a temporary Arab dwelling-place Songhay, 670. of camel-hair tents, iii. 708. Kanfiri, identical with Bomfiwi, origin of name Khat el Moia, celebrated well in the Khat, iiL [changed by the Mandingoes into the form KA- 705. nin-k6] ; characteristics of, i. 536; fine speci- Kher-Alla, the slave governor, interview with, i. mens of Kandri females, ii. 206. 584. Kany6nni, important market-place ofWangardwa, Khurmet bd Mitek, a defile, i. 105. noticed, iii. 646. Kibbo valley, the northern limit of the white ant, Karimmia-trees, . 432. iii. 605. Karfiwa, former capital of M.indarb, ii 595. Kikla, district of, described, i. 56. Krba village, i. 87. Kings of B6rnu, singular ceremonies at the eleKardi, walled town of Kebbi, corn-magazine, iii. tion of, ii. 27; sensible of fine scenery, 333. 153. KAre town and vicinity, iii. 708. Kirodji hills, iL 531. KARGha, or Karka, the S.E. corner of the Tstd, i. Woghdoghd6, 646. 560, it. 632, 646. Koberat tribe, rely for their supply of water on Kfirgimawa village, i. 553. water-melons, iii. 696. Keri, or Konna, important town on Upper Niger. Kdchii village, ill. 551. ill. 688. Koiretdgo town, iii. 268. Kasambdra, chief place of Bfghena, iii. 701. Kdkia-tree, . 449; the most common tree in the Kasfnii hamlet and vicinity, ii. 525. Mdsgu country, ii. 370, et..as-im. Kashimma town, i. 575. Kdkoroch6 Bagirmi village, it. 497, 567. Kiso village, iii. 79. K6la, strong walled town of Kebbi, i. 155. Kasr Khaflji ‘Admer, el glarbi and e’ sherki, re- Kola-nuta. See Gro-nuts. markable specimens of ruins of Byzantine and Koli, walled town, and vicinity, iii. 701. middle-age architecture, L 101. K6lle-kblle, Bagirmi village; iJ. 493, 566. Kasr Dawhn, remarkable specimen of a stronghold Komaidugu of Bornu, described, i. 574, iii. 27. of Arab chieftain, i. 82. Kong, town of Wangara, noticed, iii. 646. Kasr Ddga, Roman sepulchre of immense size in K6ra, large island in Upper Niger, iii. 264. the Tarh6na, . 79. K6ra, other smaller island, iii. 410. Kasr el Jahaliyeh, Mohammedan legends concern- Koramma, general meaning of ”small watering, i. 41. course,” L 212. Kasr el Jebel, Turkish fortress of, i 45; excursion Koria village, iJ. 200. from, 45-52. Koriftina and its inhabitants, ii. 68T. Kasr Jefisra and its vicinity, i. 89. Korna or kurna tree, wide extent over Negroland,
Kasr Ghurifn, Turkish fortress of, i. 60, 64; ii. 47; its fruit not unpleasant, 431; beautiful Kdtsena, town of, Li. 452; more healthy than Ka- specimens, 105.
n6, 478; history and description of, 470; kings K6rom village and vicinity, ii. 355.
of, 418; surrounding country, 480; quarters of Korome, outer harbor of Timbftktu, iii. 269.
the town, 608; chief places in the province, 609; Kororofa, its former power, i. 504; description of,
return to, iL 82; interview with the governor, 622.
84; amount of tribute paid by, 101. Kortita tribe, on the Niger, iii. 526.
Kattsru, walled town of Z&nfara, iii. 102. K6toko, province of, historical view of, ii. 436;
Kauye-n-SAlakh, magnificent tulip-tree near, i.430. different dialects of, 4392.
Kawa, great chief of AwetImmid in former times, Koyum district and inhabitants described, iii. 24;
Kiwa village, ii. 75. Krenik, former capital of the Soy, ii. 438.
Kfika, tribe of, settled in Fittri and Lord Russell's letter, il 432.
Khwo, the characteristic weed of Negroland. See Keerfdt Shigge, town. iii. 701.
Asclepias gigante. Klbo, Sougbay town', described, iii. 220.

INDEX.

INDEX. 793

d6gha, identical with Klkia, the old capital of 454; food, manufactures, and language, 45T,

INDEX. 793

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

INDEX.

Maduwri village, near the Tsid, and its inhabitants, ii. 768.

Kumkilmmia, a Euphorbia, from which poison M3-faras, southern well of, arrival in a state of exhaustion, iii. 621.

Kuna, or Kunna, town and important market- MagA district, ii. 91.

Kurfilu village and mount, ii. 145. Mlakfm, holy station, Mlakdm el Kerim, i. 310; Makam, on road from As-u to Tawfit, 603.

Mande, or Mond6, important town of eastern part Lahfula Marghi village and its inhabitants, i. 60), 611.

Mange province and its inhabitants described, iii.
Laing, Major, dates of his journeys, murder of, 36; Manga female, 36; places in, 36, note; wariii. 683; probable motives of the conduct of the riors and their equipment, 549.5
Tawrek toward him, 309, note; kindness of Mansa Musa, greatest king of Melle, notice of, iLi.
The Sheikh el IBaky's father toward him, 309 661.
(compare i. 607); his stay in the "hille," i Manure used by Mdsgu, iL. 382. 607 ; none of his papers in existence, ill. 310. Manzo, Kashella Manzo, ill. 37.
Lake of Bibdn, i. 35. Mardrraba, half way between Ghat and A'ir, i.

Lam iso town and market of B6rnu, ill. 585. 235; between Sdkoto and Wurn6, ill. 648.
Larba, or LISRABA, independent Songhay town, iiL Marde well and vicinity, iii. T07. 189, 527, 768. Marghi tribe, notice of the, ii. 117;
superiority of
Leather of Kdtsena celebrated, iii. 85. their race, 117; relation to country, list of places.
Leather tents, iii. 235. 120, note; funeral dance, 216.
Leather work of A'gades, i. 358; of Kano, 514; Mari mount, i. 304.
of S6koto, iii. 134; of 'imbilktu, 357. Maridmari village, lion at, iii. 590.
Leeldli village and vicinity, iii. 531. Mariaw ridge, i. 221.
Leo Africanus, a very good authority for general Marikoire and Debsla, places in Bfiighena, towns
relations, but not to be trusted in single in- and villages between, iii. 700.
* stances, ii. 24 ; quoted passim. Marikoire and Dinga, towns and villages between,
Leptis and its ruins, . 87. iii. 700.
Ldrei village and vicinity, iii. 694. Market frequented during the hottest
hours of the
Letter worn as a charm, iL. 207; impression of day, i. 539; of A'gades, 374;
Tasiwa, 437; Galetter received near Timb(iktu, 432. z-iwa, 448; Klstsena,
463; Kan6, 493; Kfikawa,
Lewina town, iii. 68. ii. 53; Uj& , 98; Sarhwu, 150; Dikowa, 333;
Liftiko province, iii. 197 ; its capital, 201; polit- Mfis-ena, 511; at A'b-Gher, 515; principal
ical state, 204; places in, 206, note; fine breed market-places in Wadiii, 660; in Timb1ktu, ill.
of horses, 105. 326, 357; l)re, 201-204; in Mdsi, 647; along
Lion of A'ir, i. 377; and of the whole border re- the Upper Niger, 694, 699 ; in the
country of the
gion of the desert, iii. 519; in great number Wangarfiwa, 646.
along the Niger, 405, 418, 427, 519. Marriage ceremonies of the Kandri, ii.
252, note.
Locusts roasted, a favorite dish, i. 443. I shal here adduce what I forgot to remark with
Locusts and hawks, swarms of, i. 571; great regard to Timbuktu, that there the young husdroves of, iii. 497. Band and his wife are obliged to remain three Log6n, province of, ii. 439; historical account of I days at home after the marriage ceremony.

794

INDEX.
Sanctity of marriage even among the pagan tribes, i. 435, passim.
Mfirte town and inhabitants, ii. 322. Mds-eflh, capital of Bagirmi, its commerce and inhabitants, ii. 503-543; ground-plan, 51T; palace of the sultan, 518; arrival of the sultan, 526; his triumphal entry, 527.
Mhshena, Bornu town, i. 552, iii. 585; interview with the governor of, i. 546.
Mdsakw-a (Holcus cernuus), cultivation of, in B6rnu, i. 588; got in in December and January, ii. 441.
Mdsina country on the Upper Niger; description of principal districts, iii. 691; its ruler, 312, 322, note; his hostility toward me, 334, passim. MAuri district, places in, iii. 642. M’aw6 town of KAnem, account of, ii. 606; valleys in the neighborhood, 60T; its ancient celebrity, 619.
Mbutfidi village, and its picturesque character described, ii. 187.
MWhedi, the expectation of his speedy appearance, iii. 248.
MWheres, town of, described, i. 32. Mdheri, swift camel, i. pasbim. M616 ferry, on the Shfiri, ii. 468; detained for the first time, 472; second time, 419. Melle kingdom, iii. 661, 662; begins to decline, 664; important in power and the gold trade, 664; forms of government, 662; cause of extinction, 702.
Mnde6fi mounf, probably trachytic, ii. 115. Meribetin identical with Anislimen tribes, given to a holy life and study; the Meriibetin of fintaghode attack and pillage the expedition, i. 260; suffer from a foray of the Awelimmid, 265 are punished by the Sultan of A’gades, 140; their warlike and revolutionary character, 384. Merk6 fruit said to preserve horses from worms, iii. 92.
Mesflaje at A’gades, i. 355. Meselhta, plain of, i. 83; fortress, 84. M1sheron well, surrounded by human bones, iii 623.
Meteorological Registers, i. 651, ii. 695. Mice, abundance of, i. 416.
Minge village, iii. 538; visit to the governor, 539. Mints district, iii. 244.
Miriira town described, iIl. 72. Mithkdll a weight of gold of different value of A’gades, i. 367, 375; of Timbuktu, iii. 360; San sanne Mangho, 645.
Mizda, its scenery and inhabitants, . 100. M6bti town, iii. 691.
Mohammed ben A’hmed Sherlf, his journey to Lake Nyassa, ii. 182.
Mohammed ben 'Abd el Kerim, great apostle of Central Negroland, place of prayer in the valley of Tfighist, founded by, i. 310; his influence in Kftesna, 473, 475; his death and connection with the history of Songhay, iii. 671. Mohammed B6ro joins the expedition, i. 151; irritated against us, 163; stirs up the camp, 235; rendered friendly, 252; his house and family at A’gades, 322; friendly parting from, 343; his patriarchal character, 322. Mohammed ben Khottfir, the Sheikh El Bakhy's nephew, iii. 388, 444, 490, 495, passim. Mohammed Gafijo, chief of uhammad, i. 182, 315; his son, 320.

Mohammed Tit’wi, ominous meeting with him, ii. 77.

Mohammed c Sfiksi disputes with the Tawfirek chiefs, i. 164; debt toward him contracted by the mission, 593; at length discharged, ii. 575; last trouble with him, iii. 87; final meeting, 583.

Mohammed Lebbo, founder of Pullo kingdom of Mfisina, iii. 182, 68t’.

Mohammed Lowel, governor of A’damAwa, interview with, ii. 183.

Mohammed Trumba, or el ’Akert, and his slave caravan, i. 166; his service in bringing me a good supply of money, iii. 75.

Molt6, town of Bagirmi, described, ii. 665. M6kori village of Bagirmi, ii. 481, 491. Mfkor6 district and its inhabitants, ii. 569. Molghoy district, i. 104; village and its inhabitants, 105, 218.


Morocco, emperor of, sends an army to invade Soughay, iii. 678; a second time, and with success, 675; conquers the whole of Negroland from Bhghena to DIndina, 679; merchants of, their jealousy against me during my stay in Timblktu, 334, 349; trade of Morocco with Timbiktu, 3866. M6si province and inhabitants, notices of, iii. 643; importance of the country in the struggle between Paganism and Islamism, 643; their cotton strips, 202; their asses, 202. Mountain group, sketch of an interesting, i. 245; ranges, view of, 246; uniform character of, in North Africa, pasm.

Mount Tekflt, ascent of, i. 60. Mowedina town, iii. 698. Moyet village, iii. 706.

MiWi town and vicinity, ii. 131, 211; description of a hut, 211.

Mdglebi village, ii. 209; its rich vegetation after the rains.

Mdjerdein lake, a part of Niger, iii. 695. M614y Himed. See Morocco. M6hAy el Mhedi, his knowledge of astronomy, iii. 354.

Mules rare in Negroland, i. 530. 3lundero village, curious thatch-work, iii. 225.

Mfiniy6, mountainous province of, iii. 43; revenues derived from, 53; principal towns and villages, 56, note; singular ceremony at the eletion of its rulers, ii. 27.

Mfiniy6ma, governor of Mfiniy6, his princely character, iii. 55.

Munke village, ii. 441.

Murja, walled town of Wghena, and its inhabitants, iii. 701.

Mirzuk, arrival at, i. 149; description of, 152; its character approaching that of a town of Negroland, 156; return to, iii. 626.
Mdiegu country, expedition to, ii. 344; enter, 353; pillaged village, 354; chief places in, 356, note; its unfavorable situation, 359. Mdiegu tribe, notices of, ii. 556; industry in manuring their fields, 382; worship their ancestors, 367; their fetish, 357; weapons, 374; women, national dress of, 406; dwellings, 380, 414, 416.

Mosquitoes, great nuisance in Kebbi, ii. 34T. Mxistafaji village, ii. 476. N’ama town and inhabitants, iii. 697: Namantfgn and its inhabitants, iii. 198. Natron caravans, i. 533. Natron incrustations in Air, i. 312; chief places where natron is procured in Negroland, ibidesn. Natron lake, iii. 45; of Jeleno, 64; of Badamfn, 72. Natron trade in Kan6, ii. 260; in Gummel, 539. Neat-dung, salt prepared from, ii. 260. Neat-dung, fresh used for plastering the inside of the walls and excluding vermin, i. 48. Needles, value of, as an article of exchange, ii. 349; various kinds of needles wanted in different regions, iii. 216; the general custom of giving needles as small presents to people on the road, passim. Negro, few really Negro tribes in the interior of the continent, ii. 106. Negroland, El Bekri’s account of, ill. 659; El Edrisi’s account of, noticed, 660; Leo’s account of, . 363; ii. 24, and passim; policy in, 398; sad condition of, iii. 563. Nestse, pendulous, i L51.

INDEX.

Ngla town described, ii. 432. Ngiirrow’1 town, iii. 43. Ng’gimi village and inhabitants, ii. 261, iii. 605 route from, to Beri, ii. 267T, note. Ngalkei, north limit of the balanites, description of the valley, i. 22T. Ng6runu town and vicinity, ii. 61, 573. Ngrfttuwa (general name, meaning "a place ful of river-horses"”), grave of Mr. Idichardson at i. 572; towns of similar name, passion. Niger, first view of, iii. 171; its various name mean "river," 1 2 (origin of name Niger fron "n-eghirr:ue"); boats on, 172; net-work of creeks, 249; probable explanation of its anomalous rising, 850; difference in the quality of the water of the two branches of the Upper Niger, 691; nutritious grass growing in, see Byrgo; information of districts along the Niger from Timbdtktu to Sansfinding, 689; place along, between Waraka Island and Ans6Dgho 429, note.

Nimfdi, a wild set of hunters, iii. 708. Njiimie, old capital of Kfnem, ii. 19, 590, 620 623.

Nomadic herdsmen in B6rnu, i. 580. Nfigkuma district on island Rude, iii. 708. Nux purgans, iii. 127.

Nyi’mina town and market-place, iii. 699. Nydngay lake, iii. 252. Oil palm in A’damdwa, ii. 192; isolated specimen in the valley of F6gha, iii. 546.

Oitilli island (identical with Ghitil), appearance of the Niger at, iii. 532.
Ojdt, town of A'derr, and inhabitants, iii. T15. Olal6wa, town of Damergh6, described, i. 401. O'm e hammhm, village of Fezzin, described, i. 157.

Onions introduced together with wheat, ii. 57, 512; great benefit to European travelers, ib.

Wdshek, uiL 60; very excellent in Gando, 147; introduced into Timbaktu, 274.

Orthography adopted, explanation of the, i. 17. Orleteropas .JEthiopicus, i. 497, 592. 'Othmain Bhgn iu, prince of Bagirmi, career of, ii. 551-555.

'Othmfn dan Fddiye the Reformer, his influence, ini. 115; his song, 636.

Overweg, Dr., his qualifications, i. 12; arrives at Tunis, 29; his memoranda, ii. 233; his journey to TasAwa, i. 431; arrival at Kikawa, ii. 80; voyage on the TsAd, 232; journey to G-jeba and Fika, 574; his death and burial on the borders of Lake °£s~d, 578.

Pagan charm, ii. 427.

Paganism, struggle of, with Islamism, L 450, ii. 328, 359; Mosi champions of paganism, iii. 643; remains of paganism in Mohammedan communities, ii. 427T, 503.

Palm, the three species of palms common to Negroland in the same locality, iii. 142.

Park, Mungo, revenge for injuries inflicted by, a probable motive to the attack of the Tawtsrelt upon Major Laing, iii. 309, note; A'wab's account of, 340; fired at any one who approached in a threatening attitude, 469; bad effects of this, 470; reminiscences of, 447, 457, 481, 499; mistaken with regard to Se-go, 316, note.

Pennisetum distichum, its annoyance and uses, i. 313, 405, 409, ill. 62, 482, et passim.

Pepper indispensable in hot countries, iii. 78. Pharaoh, tradition regarding the visit of a, to Burrum on the Niger, iL 464. Pigeons, multitudes of wild, and device against, i. 503; pigeons in great request and cheap in Timbaktu, iii. 316. Pilgrim traders, ii. 96, 464, iii. 167, passim. Pirtwa village, ii. 87.

Plow drawn by slaves in the valley of Aitderas, i. 311; no plow used in Negroland, 311. Poa, edible, in B6rnu, i 247; various species, 428; in great use in Bagirmi and Wfidi, 528, 559.

Poisoned arrows, remedy against, i. 538. Polygamy, singular illustration in favor of, iii. 86; polygamy limited by Flbe of Misina to bigamy, 183.

Portuguese, their endeavors to open up the interior of Africa, iii. 669, 6T.


P11o Ibrahim, the pious and learned pilgrim, notice of, ii. 36.
Rabda and its villages, i. 5T-59. Ri fi-n-Iduri, large, swampy valley, iii. 160.
Rains, great diversity of, in different localities, ii. 229; rare in the morning, i. 272,
ii. 210; in Air, i. 294; in the desert, iii. 614; little in Kikawa, ii. 229; much in
Gando, iii. 554; for the register of the fall of rain, see Meteorological Tables.
Rainy season in Kikawa, ii. 229. Ralle, pass of, described, i. 182. Ris el mi.
celebrated creek of Niger, iii. 605. Reade, Mr., H. M.'s vice-consul in Tripoli, his
kindness, i. 39, il 629.
Rdarn district described, iii. 26. Red worms, march of, iii. 222. Religious
structures, . 71, 82. Ren town of Log6n, described, ii. 434. Ribgo village and
district, ii. 176. Rice, wild, in the forests south of Brnu, iK 345; cultivated in part
of A'dam:iwa, 177 ; in Kebbi, iii. 134, 148, pssint; rice tiggra in Bagirmi, ii.
507 ; not cultivated in Brau, easternmost limit of cultivation, iii. 80 ; in Bagirmi,
ii. 553; introduced from Egypt to Burrun on the Niger, iii. 465; rice only to be got in the husk, 466; in El
lh'ld, 703.
Richardson, Mr., his arrival in Tripoli, i. 39; his trouble with the chiefs of Ghit,
207 ; his death, i. 562. (For account of his sickness see my letter, published in the
Preface to his own JournaL) Ilis grave, 572; his property, 595.
River-horses very common in almost all stagnant
or running waters in Negroland, pasaim; their
wrath at being disturbed, iii. 488.
Rivers, their names in Negroland merely signify
water, ii. 451.
Roman remains at El Jem, L 31; at El Medaina,
36; and near Um e' Zerziin, 52; in Tarhena, 77,79; Gwsem, 95; ruinsin Wfidi
Talha, 111 in Wfidi Tagije, 113 ; sepulchres near the well
Tahoniye, 120,121; gateway at Ghariya el gharbiya, 121 ; in e' Sherkiye, 125 ;
near Jerma, the
southernmost relic of their dominion, 145. Routes :
A'damdwa: from Chdmiba to Bfiya, i. 642.
Chamba to Tibiti, L 645, 646; Tibiti to the
Ibo country, 646.
Chbowa to Lime, i. 638.
Gwwe to Kiirnak L6gone, L. 633; to LUnre, 636.
Gider to Fitawel, i. 632.
Gdrin to Ray-ltuba, i. 635; Ray-Bïiba to rlibigo, 635; Riblgo to Sariwu, 636.
Ham irruwa to Yfia, i. 626; by way of Kncha, 627.
K6ncha to Jdro-Fhngel and Biys, i. 648 ; JbroFhngel to the Jtem country, 648.
M6sso, by Hina, to I'ssege, i. 633.
MorA to Y6a, i 628.
Ngadndere to the Batl, i. 650.
O'blo to Ddmmo, i. 637; D6mmo to L4ga, 639.
Ray to LAmre and L3ga, i. 639; to Ldre, 637.
Ray-lfibia to BAYa, i. 640 ; to Mbdifu, 640.
Sar.-wn, by Giddr, to F-tawel and Binder, i.
631.
Y61a, by Gdrin, to Btya, i. 641.
A’gades to Azawfid, i. 606; to Bilma, 601; to

INDEX.

Routes--continued.
Damcrghb, 600; to Marfdi, 600; to S6koto, 599; to Tawfit, 602.
Desert, western half; A’tar to Tejigja or Rashid, iii. 705; Tejigja to Jsfena’, 706.
Afisef to Mabritk, western road, ill. 684.
Bakel, by Asiba, to the frontier of Tagnet, iiL 707.
Ilamda-Alldihi, by S’a. to Khbara, iii. 691; tc
Kfnima, 632; to Kahaide, by Meshila, 708;
Kabaide to the frontier of Taghnet, 706.
'Inzize to G6go, iiL 684.
Kasamblira to Bfi-Jeddrr, iii. 698; to Jawdra, 697; to K6la, direct, 700; to Mesila, 6D8; to Nydmina, 699; by Murja to
Nydmina, 699; to Tishit, 703; to Waldta, 617.
Kasr el Barka to Bfi-t6limit, iii. 706; to Kahaide, 706; Kahaide to the frontier of Ta.
gdnet, 707.
Meshila to Bakel, iii. 710.
Murja to Mekoye, iii. 700.
Sansfindi to Kasambdra, zigzag, iiL 701; to Timbdktu, 094.
Tawdt, by M ,brk, to Timb(lktu, iii. 683.
Timbktu, by Gindam and Y6waru, to Hamda-Alihi, iii. 687; by Basikunnu, to
Saneandi, 6D4; to Waldta, 695; to the billet
Sidi el Mukhtir, 310 note.
Wadin to A’ghadir D6nhe, iii. 719; to El Khat, circuitous, 705; to Pashid, by El Khat, 705;
to Tishit, 705- to Walita, 705.
Walita to Sansindii, ill. 696.
Y6waru to Tendngu, iii. 68; to Yasalfime, 690, note.
Dar-Fur:
TendLilti to A'm.maj(lra, ii. 614; to Runga, 674.
Ddndina province: from S6koto to Komba, on the Niger, iii. 641.
Ylul to Y- turii, 639.
Gurma and M6si provinces : from odne, by Konna, to l-amda-AllAhi, iii. 687;
Chainpag6re to Land6, 647.
1-6mbori,by Konna, to Ilamda-All ihi, iii. 687.
Jibe to Kaye, iiL. 647.
Kdnima to Ilainda-Allfiihi, iiL. 632.
Kaye to Wdghodogh6, iii. 647; to Belfissa and Beltnga, 648.
Kirotdshi to W6ghodoghd, iii. 646.
Komba to Maj6ri, iii. 644; to Sans6nne Mangbo and Salga, 644.
Mini to Kong, ii. 018; return, 649.
Pissela to D6re, iii. 648.
Palga, by Kong, to Tanlra, iii. 646.
Sgo to Muggara, iii. 641.
Tonkurgh to Sansenne Mangho, iii. 647.
Ybgha to Bel nga, iii. 647.
lendi to YAg ha, iii. 187, note.
Kdnem: from 'Alimari to Kdrnak Ldgone, ii. 610.
Beri to TAghgel, ii. 609; Tfhigkel, by 'Alimari, to Moito, 610.
Bir el Kurna, by Dir el 'Atesh and MUtssebi, to Eg6, ii. 612; Eg6 to Yen or Beled ei 'Omiytin, 613.
MWaw6 to 'rtgligel, ii. 608.
Routes in Kinem in the sixteenth century, ii. 617-637.
Ngdgimi to Eg6, ii. 612.
Y'awd to M'aw6, ii, 611.
Kan6 and neighboring provinces: from Dfiras6 to Yttkoba, i. 624.
Kan6 to Katab, 1. 616; Katab to Yfikoba, 618;
Kan6 to Ytkoba, 617; to Zinder, 610; by Zdriya, to Keffi-n-Abdezdna, 611.
Jermmia-n-narr6ro to Keffi-n-Abdezdna, with branch to Lttfiya Bereber6, 1. 614.
Katdgum to Sh6ra, L 625; Shra to Yekoba, 626.
Keffi-n-Abdeznda to T6to and Fhnda, i 614.
Ziriy, by Katab, to Darr6ro, 1. 613. To Ydkoba, from different points, i 619.
Routes-continued.
W/diy and Bargimi: from Babflilyd to Motto, ii. 693.
Bus6 to Miltl, ii 678; to Bang-Day, 684.
Chiken to Kim, ii. 683.
Fitrri to M'aw6, ii. 676.
Hikkawa, by Log6n Birni and Bus6, to BangBay, ii. 691.
Lifiani to Bang-Bay, iM 682.
Lay to Slin, ii. 683.
Mubbeld to Fong, and from Fong to Bus6, ii.
685; to Lay and Kim, 683.
Mus-eflA to iBang-Bay, ii. 684, 686; to Bus6,
by Lairy, 680; to Gongomi, 680; to Kdnga Matiya, 680; to Klrbe, 679; to Ldiffanf and B-us6, 677; to Lairy and Motto, by K6ll1, 681; to M'aw6, by Gfwi, 698; to Wlddebh, 694; to loito by Debiba, 682; to Mfsgu, 686; to Runga and Silli, 688; to Salin, 684; to W ra, 663-666.

Mitlfri to Gdgome, ii. 679.

Mild and Day and from Day to Lay, ii. 685.

Shenini, by 0 grog6, to B6rorit, i. 668 i to Dunta, 671; to Jurl6, 671; to the Moku, or Iron mines, 672; to Ny6ser6, 671; to Sil16 by way of A'ndelh, 672; to Silla, direct, 6h3.

Wbra to Dumta, il 670; to Runga, 674; to Shenini, 667; to WMAdi 'Ordha, 677.

Yturi province: from Bunza to Yiuri, and from Yduri to KotA-n-kor6 il 641.

Zabdrma province: from Atgi by Mduri and Zab6rma to Tdimkala, 111. 642.

Ylni to Kfirfay, 642.

Zanfaa province: from Bfinagfi to A'inka and to Kotdr-koshd, ii. 684.

Kan6 to S6koto by Kfurt-n-Nam6da, iii. 663. Rfi6, sleeping-hut, described and figured, ii. 102. Ruined monastery in the Sch'abet Um el Kharb, i. 107.

RumA, historical notice of the, 111. 296; at Bamba. notice of the, 446; in SdbI, on the Niger, 689, 692; their complexion, 463.

S'a, important town on Upper Niger and neighborhood, ii. 691; in former times, 290. Sab6n Birmi, wailed town, ill. 100. Sahara, districts and tribes of, between A'zawfid and Timbiktu on one side, and El Hddh and Blighena on the other, ill. 718.

S'aid ben SAlah, chapel of, . 37; legend concerning, 41.

Saint Augustine's statement regarding the use of bulls for chariot-drawing by the ancient kings of Fezzfn, sculptures confirming i 178. Sakomfiren tribe, account of the, . 65.


Salla-leja, religious festival at A'gades, i. 842. Salt, a commercial staple of Timbkdktu, ill. 360; prices of in Timbkdktu, 362, 431; salt and gold, principal articles of barter from the most ancient times, 861; bitter quality of salt at Bilma, L 392; excellence of salt of Tadenni, lii. 164; how it is obtained, 361; salt of Ingal, 1. 366; crust of, on elevated ground, 139; corn-fields, thickly encrusted with, 147; localities of, between Asiu and Tawdt, 604; prepared from capparis and neat-dung, ii. 260; mode of extracting from earth in the vale of F6gha, ill. 164; mode of preparing, and saltpits at Kahl'a village, 613; mode of preparing In Buminda, on the Bdnuw6, il. 191, note; in Miltu, on the Sh:ri, 260; want of, how deeply felt, il. 674, note.

Salt trade in Kan6, i. 515; in Timbiktu, ii. 28, 361.

Salt caravan, i. 392; estimate of its number, 453.

See AirL
INDEX.

Sanch-rugu, farming hamlet, iii. 179.

Sand-hills between Sbyldti and El Gharbl, journey notices of, 328; villages, 340; remarkable charover, i. 139-143; menace the plantations, 141; acteristics, 328, 504; amount of their cavalry, Isolated sand-hills without water, called Aukfr, 640. or A’kela, i. 712; immense ridges of sand-hills Shfiwa tribes in Bagirml, iL 652. in the Western desert, 716, 718. iSidi A’lawfite, interview with, iii. 276; presents Sdnem ben ltamed. n, ruins of the temple of, 1. 86. extorted by, 300; religious discussion with, 304. San-kor6, mosque of, ii. 324; how restored, 395. Sidi 'Ali ben 6dlah chapel and ruins, . 81. San-shlrfu, te Rdhi, iL 656. Sidi ‘Ali, merchant in lian, 4’J2, iii. 573. Sansnune 'Aisa, walled town, ili 102. Sidi Mohammed, El I'akiy's elder brother, arrives Sansnne Mangho, Mandingo town, iii. 645; the at Timbdktu, 373; interests himself in my gold weight of, 360. favor, 378; his character, 395. Snydre town, iL 266. Siggedim oasis, ili. 620. Sdr described, iL 690. Silla, very important town on upper Niger, where Sardwu, important double village; hut described, cotton weaving first flourished, iii. 364. ii. 14; 14T. Silk cotton-tree, immense specimens of, placed at Sarayitmo town and inhabitants, iii. 256. the gates of many a town in Negroland, i. 43. Shre-dina town, on upper Niger, iL 78. iii. 566. Say, important town on the Niger, ill. 171; mar. Sing-meldk, the vizier, in Widay, ii. 657. ket, 176, 177; its importance for European traf- Sirba river, iii. 190; reed-raft, 190; country befic, 177; second residence at, 534; market, 535; yond, 191; its appearance at Grbegur6, 5M7; appearance of the Niger at, 536. and at Kuttukdle, 528. ay, valley of, iil. 533. Scorpion, effects of bite of a, ii. 340. Sinder town and island, in the Niger, iii. 521. Scott the sailor, iL. 689. Sitter village, il. 434. Slave-hunting and butchery, i. 869, 379; Sebkha, explanation of the term, i. IT. and civilization Sculpures in the desert, i. 394. upon the increase of, i. 326; Sebba, chief place of Ydigha, town and inhabitants, Slavery in A'damiwa, iL 190. ii. 194-1 7; hut described and figured, 195. Slavery and the slave-trade, influence of firearms Sebkha, explanation of the term, i. 35. and civilization of Berber origin, 26. and civilization in Kaud, i. 515.
Segro village and neighborhood, ii. 141. Slaves cruelly treated by the Tebi, ii. 606; yoked
Sefifiet, valley and village, L 262. to the plow in the valley of Aï'dcras, i. 311;
Senhdja tribe noticed, ill. 661. prices of, in the countries S. of Bagirmi, ii. 515;
Senuddbu village and hills, iL 528. in Mfs-efia, 540.
Sepulchre of Sidi Mukhtdr at Timbuktu, iii. 380. Smelting furnaces described and figured, iii. 138. Sepulchral monument in Wadi Tagije, L 114; at Smoking, M-sgu passionately fond of, ii. 396; in Taboniye, 119.
habitants of Niger likewise, il. 446.
Sepulchres of the Mfisgu, ii. 366. Snake, large, killed, ii. 270.
Sesamum, cultivation of, i. 48, ii. 142, 595; in So or Soy tribe, of its former power, ii. 32, 585, 586;
Adamdwa, 193, 480, 494, 553, iii. 538. reduced by the king Edris A'law6ma, 53; one of
Sfakes, halt at, i. 31; voyage hence to Zarzis, 31, their former capitals, 438.
35. Soda, corn-fields thickly incrusted with, i. 147.
Shabire village, iii 79. 86f e'jin, rich valley, its fertility, i. 105.
Sh'abet el Kadim, Roman milestones near, i S. 8S6kna town noticed, iii. 627.
Sh'abet Um el Kharb, Christian remains in the, S6koto, present state of, iii. 11; aspect of the country, 124; rulers of, 635; Fdlbe tribes in,
Sh'ame district, ii. 102. 636.
Shfri river, ii. 403, 48, 477; places on the, from Sokoto town described, iWi. 128; second visit to,
Bfgomin upward, 677; from B-gomdn downward, 553; swollen torrent, 557.
ward, 894; meaning of name, 38.
Shecheri village, ill. 588. Songhay, historical notices of, iii. 281; its civil
tu, iii. 30; first interview with, 309, 811; reli- army, 225; and neighboring kingdoms, chronogous discussions with, 327, 343; his attachment logical table of, 657.
to his family, 328; pedigree of, 649; two poems Songhay, independent, between the Niger and my by, 650; translated, 655; his letter of recom- route by Ybgha and Libtiko, chief towns and mendation, 764; his unceasing kindness, 355; residences of the, iii. 76S; an inhospitable race, delivers a lecture on the equal rank of the proph- 170, 494; their mode of carrying water in buckets, 372; prays at the sepulchre for his mother- ets, 219.
in-law's soul, 380; his noble family, 44T7; part- Songhay and Fdlbe costume and weapons, iH. 529.
ing with, 493. Songho-sare, farming village, iii. 169.
Shell money, mode of reckoning i 442; shells Sonni 'All, king of Negroland, ii 286, 664; plun principal currency in Kand, 522; recently in- ders Timb(ktu, 665; conquers Bgdhena, 65;
introduced into Kfikawa, il. 55; current in Mfini- drowned, 66.
y6, iL 53; in Zinder, 75; in Sekoto, 122, 126; Spider, large poisonous, iiL 454.
in Gando, 145; in Say, 177; in Yriga 197; in Stirrup, Arab, valuable properties of, ii. 324. D re, 202; in Timbktu, 303; in Bunkae, 569; Subterranean villages in the Ghusirin, i. 63.
no currency in the country towns of Bdrnu, i. Sfd-o-melle market-place, iii. 645.
55; in A'damiswa, 151; in Bagirmi, 511; none Sugirti tribe, costume of, ii. 67.
in I'say6, ill. 230. S6k town, notice of, iii. 458, 654.
Shibdkwa village, rich scenery, i. 4q2. Suldri town, ii. 162, 20; described, iii. 44.
Shigge, term for cotton in Western Negroland, iL Sdmmoli, peculiar species of wild cat, described,
308 note; Kserrt shigge, 701. ii. 850.
Shinghit town and inhabitants described, ill. 705, Sungurur5 village, iL 101.
714; extension of name, Shenfigita, ib. Superstition, i. 549; ii. 381.
Shirts, common white of Bdrnu, the commercial Surk, tribe, iL 339, 68. medium
in Kfinen ii. 288; also in Bagirmi, Siwa-KoldUuwa well, ill. 51. 511; and in A'damlwa, 151; even in Kfikawa, SyllebAwa, or Sissilbe, divisions of the tribe, iiU for buying large objects, 155. See Tobes. 130, note.
Shitdti district, vales of, ii. 308; Shitdti tribe called after the district, 60T.
Tabonlye, Roman sepulchres near this well, i. 118,
Shiwa Arabs, notices of the, ii. 88; population, 120.

798
INDEX.
TAbu, or great army of the Awelimmidin, iii. 382. Tadm6kket tribe, historical
notice and subdivisions of, il 723; the town called Tademk-ka by
the Arab geographers, 335, 65D, 458, 684. Tagabdta village, mountain scenery,
iii. 528. Tagma, account of the habits of this tribe, . 40T. Tagan..ma town
described, i. 547. Tagdnet, district of Western desert described, and
Moorish tribes in, iL 713.
TagAnet, other more limited district of same name
to the north of rmbktu, iL 685, 686. Thgeel, village of A'nnur, described, i. 421.
Ta-gerh-st and picturesque fountain, i. 47. Tighist valley, celebrated place of
prayer, i. 310. Tah6nt-n-6ggish, first rocky island in the Niger,
iii. 452.
Tailelt tobes, i. 345, 513, passim. TAjakdnt tribe keep up the communication
between Timbdktu and Morocco, iii. 330, 346, 366. Tfikala town, 4i. 768.
T.i.kulum, valley of Kimen, ii. 306. Talba, walled town, il 150. Talisman, curious
one at Tagantma, i. 540. Tamarind-tree, its beautiful shady character, principal
ornament of Negroland, . 418; first fullgrown specimen, 430; splendid
specimens, ii. 61, iii. 62; on the Niger 443, 504; silk-worm feeding on the leaves
of the tamarind-tree, i. 513, note; thefruit themost refreshingdrink, it 50S, passim;
best medicine for usual tropical disease, 560 i with fried onions, pleasant lunch, ii. 127. Tamki, dress and food of the, ii. 608. Tanda town, iii. 646. Tdnatanab, mountain, probable [uncertain] identification of, t. 215. Tarabanisa, their camp and costume, iii. 408. Tkrmt district, W. of G6g6, iiL 495. Tarhnda, the district and its ruins described, . 75-83. Tasdwia territory, revenues of, li. 434; the town and its inhabitants, 436; market, 443. Tas-wa, village of Fezzbn, i. 162. Tadtilt camping-ground described, iii. 410. Tawdrek, , lmdshagh, chiefs arrive at the camp near Tasdwa village, negotiations with them, i. 165; their continual advance into Negroland, iii. 19; chief at Tinbbktu, letter of franchise obtained from, 340; encampment, 236-238; costume, 243 ; want of unity, 371. TawAsh, Roman sepulchre near, i. 145. Tawfit, the people of, the chief merchants in A'gades, i. 317 ; in Timbktu, iii. 346, 36S ; my chief protectors, 389, 420; their relation to the rench, 421 ; said to pay tribute to them, 618; the horse of Tawdt, l. 838, note. Tcbu, form of the name, It 26 624 ; their near relation to the Kan6ri: 30, 24d; their long wars with the former, 583; their tribes, families, and settlements, 613; their former settlements in Knem, 632, 633; their settlements along the Komddugu, t 570, ii. 595, iii. 27; their cruelty toward their slaves, 606; the towns and villages along Tebu road, 612; their predilection for dried fish, 618 ; their commercial journeys to Mndarh, il 150. Tefinagh inscription, i. 233; writing, iii. 416. Teg-rii village in Fezzn, iL 624. Teghdauat, important tribe of western desert, iii. 711. Tejigja, town in the district A'derdr, il. 713. Tektdke village and inhabitants, il 707. Tedshera peak, ascent of, t 390. Telisagho, remarkable sculptures at, t 174. Teminshight, story of the Prodigal Son in, iii. 762; vocabulary, 724, 761 Tenge village, iii. 698. Tdnigik, the most elevated peak in Air, . 256, 262. Tents, the kind suitable for travelers in hot climates, i. 90 ; advantage of a few days' residence previous to starting, 91. Tra and its inhabitants, iii. 768; the last Songhay king's leave-taking in Tra, 677. Tergulkwen well, dangerous locality, i. 404. Termites used as food, ii. 230. See Ants. Tessammak described, l. 169. Tewiwa and its population, L 147. Thniye e' seghira and Thniye el kebira, rugged passages, ii. 623. Tibordwen, rapids of the Niger near, il 506. Tidik valley, i. 257. Tig6re, farming village, iii. 169. Tigedda valley described, . 307. Tiggera-n-dfimma mountain group, i!. 621. Tigger-urtin and its inhabitants, t 300. Tih6re, village, iti. 170. Tillage, peculiar mode of, in Bagirimi, ii. 503, 525. Tilli town and inhabitants, it 155 548. Timbdktu, approach to, iti. 278; political situation, 297; view over the town, 302; plan of a house, 307 ; the great mosque, 322, 662 ; Mosque Sankor6, 662; ground-plan of the town, 323; description of the town, 325; its former extent, 324; population, 326 ; the inundation, 344; subsides, 376; its origin, 284; when founded, 660; becomes dependent on Melle, 662; destroyed by the King of M6si, 662; visited by E'bn Batfita, 663; becomes known to Europeans, 664; conquered by the Im6shagh, 664; plundered by Sonni 'Ali, 665; becomes more important, ib.; conquered by Jodar, 676; commerce, 675; present
commercial relations of, 35T; commercial importance of its position, 369; identity
of its language with that of A'gades, . 334 ; why so few trees In the town, ill. 822 ;
not considered very healthy 341 ; late hours, 348, 385. Timme town, itl. 687.
Timmisau well, footprint of Moses' horse near, iii. 684.
Tindirma town, Li. 290, 789. Tinge town and inhabitants, iii. 214. Tin-ger-
gedesh, notice of the tribe, il. 469. Tin-rdssen, interesting incident in African
warfare at, iii. 462.
Tin-shamn, former capital of A'sben, L 277. Tin-sherifen district, itL 457;
appearance of the
Niger at, 460.
Tin-tagh-od6, important village of, 1. 264. Tin-tdgana valley, i. 3 . Tint-llust
valley described, i. 274; village residence of the powerful chief A'nnur, ibid;
deserted, 378.
Tinthhma desert, ill. 608. Tinylkm, account of this tribe, i. 158; their conduct in
our adversities, 250, 254
Tishit town, its inhabitants and produce, ill. 704. Tobacco cultivated in K itsena, i.
485; of Idtsena
much esteemed, iii. 85; little cultivated in B6rnu, 90; varieties in or near
Timbdktu, 368; In Gh-rgo, 439; Bamba and E'gedesh, 448; cultivated in great
extent by the Mdsgu, il. 386; formerly in great extent along the Niger, itL 411,
442; prohibited in Timbfktu, 368; tobacco
chewed with natron by the (61-owi, t. 312.
Tobes, varieties of, . 510; made in Sansindl, iL
494.
Toe, destruction of the little, by a flesh-worm, it 486.
Tolba, or Zuwaye, peaceable tribes of Arabs, identical with the term Anislimen
among the TawArek, iii. 711, pam in.
Tombs in Mdsgu country, ii. 366. Tombo province and inhabitants, notice of, iii.
643. T6ddibi mount, iii. 472.
Tndiffd village, iii. 171 ; swarms of birds at, 537.
Tongi hamlet, iii. 499.
T6nordtr village, iii. 701. TornAre village on the Niger, busy state of the river at,
iii. 518.
Tsaye, remarkable narrowing of the Niger at, ill. 468.
T6so, edible fruit of the Bassia Parkil, it 109.
See Butter-tree.
Trik el Merh6ma track, iii. 628.

INDEX.
Tripoli, arrival at, i. 89 ; excursion from, 40-89 Warm clothing, would find a
ready sale in Cenfinal departure from, 91 ; return and embarka-1 tral Africa, ii.
334. tion for Marseilles, iii. 69,630; importance of Warrington, I- rederic, his kind
services, i. 39, iii. rippoli for the intercourse with the interior, 624, 62T.
'refuce, p. xi.'

I Wdse town, iii. 580.
Truffles common in many parts of the desert, i. Water, scarcity of, in many
districts of B6rnu,
12S. i. 551, 587; in Bagirmi, ii. 480; water unwholeTsld, excursion to the, ii. 63; description of its sonic, iii. 532, 548.

characteristic features, 64; representation of the Water combat, ii. ;'5.
grounds along its swampy shore, 71; the open Water communication between the basin of the water, 70 ; a fresh-water lake, 26; mentioned Tsad and the Bay of Biyafra, ii. 301.
in document, 620. Water lilies in Tsdd, ii. 75; in Niger, iii. 59.
Tftburi and their lake, ii. 33T; Dr. Vogel's exag- 441.
gerated opinion of its size and importance, 2b. Water-melons the principal food of the K6betdt

Compare i. 638. tribe, iii. 66.
Tulip-tree, i. 430. Waza district described, ii. 420.
Tumpinga town, desolate site of, iii. 199. Welad lif-Sef, account of this tribe, i. 11T.
Tftngurc va lley, cotton plantations and palm Velad Sliman, camp of, ii. 271; history of the
grove, iii. 52.

Tynjur, tribe of, their dominion, ii. 54S, 643; re- Wells of Koyam very deep, iii. 25, 591 ; A'zawzid,
mains of them in 3Mondo, 572, 611. the most famous of, 66 ; of Dibbela impregnated with natron, 611; of lul and Unglurutin, U'ba, northern frontier town of A'damwa, de-

Tynjur, tribe of, their dominion, ii. 54S, 643; re- Wells of Koyam very deep, iii. 25, 591 ; A'zawzid,
mains of them in 3Mondo, 572, 611. the most famous of, 66 ; of Dibbela impregnated with natron, 611; of Dibbela impregnated with natron, 611; of lul and Unglurutin, U'ba, northern frontier town of A'damwa, de-

Ugr6fe, the village and its inhabitants, i. 143. Wheat, cultivated in Ngornu, ii. 57, 42T; princely Uj6, fertile and populous district, the finest dis- dish in A'gades, i. 327; at Y6, ii. 253; in Wtrict of Bbrnu, i. 93, 219; relation to slave shek, iii. 60; on the Niger, 442; at the Ris el trade, 98. AI, 65; wheat and rice fetch double the price

Uldkiiis, deep well, iii. 695. of the native corn, ii. 57.
U'le-Tehdrge sandy downs described, iii. 428. White ant, northern limit of, iii. 306. U'm el 'Arfk village, iii. 701. Wild oxen, numerous in the desert, i. 225, iii. 611.

Uim e' Zerzisn, i. 52; Roman sepulchre near, 52. S.,e Antilope Bubalis. Unim, valley, i. 399. Women of Kilkawa contrasted with those of Kan6, U'ra, well of, i. 5S5. ii. 5.;

Wufeccleri stockade, i. 550. Vegetables, common, of the country, i. 481. Wukari, capital of Kor6rufa, and its inhabitants, Vocabulary of the Tem'shight, as spoken by the i. 62o.
Awelimmiden, iii. 724. Wiliya district, beauty and careful cultivation of Vogel, Dr., meeting with, in the forest, iii. 536; the, ii. 353. and at Kftkawa, 593; his journey to Ciombe and N\ Vilu village and inhabitants, iii. 208. Ydkoba, L 618, 623; to Wiidhy, ii. 618. Vurn6 described, iii. 118; second visit to, 560; attack of dysentery at, 560. Waddn, town in Ader6r, and inhabitants de. Wushek town and inhabitants, described, ii. 57. scribed, iii. 714; Portuguese factory in, 665. Vadhn, town in Fezzan, formerly belonging to Ydgba principality, iii. 194; places belonging to, Bornn, ii. 584. 196, note. Waddo (ovis tragelaphus), i. 22T, panassint. Yakoba, its position, ii. 611. Wid, y, historical sketch of, ii. 644; ethnograph- Yali water, iii. 197. ical account of, 649; government of, 653; army, Yalowe. river bed, ii. 332. 658; household of the sultan, 651; towns and Ytimiya well, iii. 44. villages, 653.; commerce and market - places, Yams not indigenous in the interior of Africa, iii. 659; manufactures and productions, 661; learn- 90; not cultivated in B6rnu, ii. 57 ; cultivated ing and food, 661. to some extent in A'damdwa, 205; in Kordrofa, Witi town, i. 567. 621; in Keble, iii. 140; eastern limit of culttWdidi Kawdr, iii. 614. vation, near Kdtsena, ib. WHdi RIn and its caverns, i. 6T. Yara, ruined town, iii. 150. Wfidi .f-e'-jin, ruined castle at, i. 10T. YA-salame and Kon.ri, list of places between, il W..di Tagije, fine sepulchral monument in, i. 693. 113. Yd-salime and Saredina, list of places between, Whdi Talha, Roman ruins at, i. 111. iii. 63. Wfidi Zennzem and its wells, i. 117, iii. 628. Y1-salime and SMkolo, towns and villages beWdikor6, indigenous name of a great section of the tween, iii. 700. Mandingoos, iii. 7TO2. Yduri, towns, villages, and tribes in, iii. 641. Wdkur, village, iii. 7T. Yele district, ii. 224. Wahita town and inhabitants, important trading Ydlu town, ii. 165. place in the time of Ebn Batdta, iii. 665; de- Yen, chief town of Burgu, described, ii. 613. cline, 665, 695. Yendi town noticed, iii. 645. WIndald (Mnddar) mountains, ii. 115. Yerimari town, iii. 580. Wandering Arabs migrating, ii. 223. Yerimari village, ii. 103. Wingara village, ii. 5 2. Y6 town and vicinity, ii. 24q; stay at, iii. 602. Wangarawa, name of the eastern Mlandingoes, iii. Yola town and its inhabitants, ii. 179; described, 111, 202, 645, 646; merchants in K.atsena Wan- 189.
garawa, i. 479. Ydwaru, important town on Niger, described, ii.
Wdni river, i. 560. 688, 68).
Wanja village and inhabitants, iUi T07. Y6waru and YA-saldme, list of places between, iii.
Wfinntila village, iii. 528. 693.
WAra described, ii. 664. Ydri, cliffs on the Niger, iii. 532.

800
INDEX.
ZA Alaykmin founds the dynasty of ZA, iii. 657. Zabrma, towns, villages, and tribes in, iii. 642; historical notice of, 289.
Zfgha town, on Upper Niger, of great importance in former times, ii. 691.
Zfgha, town of Dndina, iii. 289, 639. Zfinfara, present condition of the province, iii. 9U, 633 ; historical notices, 634. Zangway, monitor, footprints of the, iii. 435.
Zinkara district, towns in, iii. 693. Zfriya, its astronomical position, i. 611 ; tribute paid by, iii. 95.
Zarzis described, i. 35; journey hence to Zow-ra, 35-ST.
Zawiya, nd surrounding country, L 42.
Zngiri kom-dugu at, ii. 32. Z_kka, town and fortifications, iii. 94. Zenne, or plaid, varieties of, i. 510. Zenzdtr, town of, described, i. 41. Zinder town, account of, iii. 72.
ZintAn, account of the people of, i. 105. Zoghfiwa, tribe of, iL 652.
Zogirma and its inhabitants, iii. 150. Z6goma, town, ii. 338. Zoromhwa, or Zoghorfn, their first appearance, iii. 6T9; their amalgamation with the Ffilbe, 112 ; their importance in S6koto, 129. ZowAra and surrounding country, i. W3.
THE END.